BARRON'S

The Leader in Test Preparation

STUDENTS' #1 CHOICE

TOEFL® iBT

MOST UP-TO-DATE REVIEW AND PRACTICE TESTS CURRENTLY AVAILABLE

15TH EDITION

Pamela J. Sharpe, Ph.D.

- Read the orientation to the TOEFL iBT and become familiar with the latest information about the test
- Review the major question types for each section of the exam—Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing
- Learn the TOEFL academic skills and master note taking, paraphrasing, summarizing, and synthesizing
- Take eight full-length model tests that simulate the actual test and study the answer explanations, sample essays, and speaking responses
- Access QR codes for video lessons with the author

AUDIO

CD-ROM

ONLINE



®TOEFL is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service (ETS). This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.

BARRON'S

TOEFL® iBT

Internet-Based Test

15TH EDITION

Pamela J. Sharpe, Ph.D.



TOEFL® iBT is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service (ETS). This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.

To my students at home and abroad with best wishes
***for* success on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL**

About the Author

Dr. Pamela Sharpe is an internationally recognized educator in the field of English as a second language (ESL). She has been a member of the faculty at many prestigious colleges and universities in the United States including the University of Florida, University of Texas at Austin, Miami Dade Community College, and the Ohio State University. In addition, she was the founding director of the American Language Institute at the University of Toledo, a curriculum specialist for federal bilingual education programs, and chair of Modern Languages at Arizona Western College. As a member of the statewide television faculty of Northern Arizona University, she taught graduate courses for teachers via the interactive television network throughout the state of Arizona. She has received numerous awards for teaching. An educational consultant for schools across the globe, Dr. Sharpe has been actively involved in teacher training and development both in the United States and as a Fulbright Scholar in Latin America.

Dr. Sharpe is a preeminent authority in test preparation for the TOEFL and the TOEIC. Her text, *Barron's TOEFL iBT* is in the fifteenth edition, and has been a consistent best seller worldwide. She has published twelve books, including four for TOEFL preparation that have been used successfully by millions of students.

She earned her bachelor's degree Phi Beta Kappa with honors from the Ohio State University, her master's degree in Linguistics from the University of Florida, and her Ph.D. in TESL, the Teaching of English as a Second Language, from the Ohio State University.

© Copyright 2016, 2013, 2010, 2006 by Barron's Educational Series, Inc.

Previous edition under the title *How to Prepare for the TOEFL Test: Test of English as a Foreign Language* © copyright 2004, 2001, 1999, 1996, 1994, 1989, 1986, 1983, 1979, 1977 by Barron's Educational Series, Inc.

All rights reserved.
No part of the book may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means without the written permission of the copyright owner.

All inquiries should be addressed to:
Barron's Educational Series, Inc.
250 Wireless Boulevard
Hauppauge, New York 11788
www.barronseduc.com

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 2016932829

ISBN: 978-1-4380-7624-9 (book with audio CDs)
ISBN: 978-1-4380-7625-6 (book with audio CDs and CD-ROM)

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



TABLE OF CONTENTS

About the Author **ii**
Acknowledgments **viii**
Sources/Credits **ix**
Timetable for the TOEFL® iBT **xii**

ORIENTATION 1

Orientation to the TOEFL® iBT **1**
To the Student: How to Use This Book to Succeed **2**
To the Teacher: Recommendations and Resources **4**
Syllabus Options **7**
FAQs—Frequently Asked Questions About the TOEFL® iBT **13**
- TOEFL Programs **13**
- Registration **15**
- Test Administration **17**
- Examination **18**
- Score Reports **21**

Study Habits **23**
- Accept responsibility **23**
- Get organized **23**
- Set realistic goals **24**
- Make a plan **24**
- Establish priorities **24**
- Manage time **24**
- Learn from mistakes **25**
- Stay motivated **25**
- Choose to be positive **25**

REVIEW OF TOEFL® iBT SECTIONS 27

Reading **27**
- Overview of the Reading Section **27**
- Review of Prompts and Questions **28**
- Reading Strategies **36**
- Applying the Academic Skills to the TOEFL **38**
- Quiz for the Reading Section **39**
- Study Plan **44**
- Extra Credit **44**
- Advisor's Office **44**

Listening **45**
Overview of the Listening Section **45**
Review of Prompts and Questions **45**
Listening Strategies **53**
Applying the Academic Skills to the TOEFL **55**
Quiz for the Listening Section **56**
Study Plan **59**
Extra Credit **59**
Advisor's Office **59**
Speaking **60**
Overview of the Speaking Section **60**
Review of Prompts and Questions **60**
Speaking Strategies **71**
Applying the Academic Skills to the TOEFL **76**
Quiz for the Speaking Section **77**
Study Plan **79**
Extra Credit **79**
Options for Evaluation **79**
Advisor's Office **79**
Writing **80**
Overview of the Writing Section **80**
Review of Prompts and Questions **80**
Writing Strategies **86**
Applying the Academic Skills to the TOEFL **90**
Quiz for the Writing Section **91**
Study Plan **93**
Extra Credit **93**
Options for Evaluation **93**
Advisor's Office **93**

3 ACADEMIC SKILLS 95

Campus Vocabulary **95**
Taking Notes **110**
Paraphrasing **131**
Summarizing **158**
Synthesizing **180**

4 MODEL TESTS 207

Model Test 1: Pretest **207**
Reading Section **207**
Listening Section **223**
Speaking Section **243**
Writing Section **250**
Model Test 2: Progress Test **253**
Reading Section **253**
Listening Section **273**
Speaking Section **288**
Writing Section **295**
Model Test 3: Progress Test **298**
Reading Section **298**
Listening Section **312**
Speaking Section **333**
Writing Section **340**
Model Test 4: Progress Test **343**
Reading Section **343**
Listening Section **361**
Speaking Section **375**
Writing Section **382**
Model Test 5: Progress Test **385**
Reading Section **385**
Listening Section **399**
Speaking Section **418**
Writing Section **425**
Model Test 6: Progress Test **428**
Reading Section **428**
Listening Section **448**
Speaking Section **464**
Writing Section **471**
Model Test 7: Progress Test **474**
Reading Section **474**
Listening Section **489**
Speaking Section **509**
Writing Section **516**
Model Test 8: CD-ROM Test **519**

5 ANSWERS AND AUDIO SCRIPTS FOR ACTIVITIES, QUIZZES, AND MODEL TESTS 521

Answers and Audio Scripts for Quizzes in Chapter 2 **521**
- Reading **521**
- Listening **522**
- Speaking **527**
- Writing **533**

Answers and Audio Scripts for Practice Activities in Chapter 3 **535**

Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests **580**
- Model Test 1: Pretest **580**
  - Reading **580**
  - Listening **583**
  - Speaking **602**
  - Writing **606**
  - Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **607**
- Model Test 2: Progress Test **614**
  - Reading **614**
  - Listening **618**
  - Speaking **631**
  - Writing **636**
  - Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **636**
- Model Test 3: Progress Test **643**
  - Reading **643**
  - Listening **645**
  - Speaking **666**
  - Writing **670**
  - Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **671**
- Model Test 4: Progress Test **678**
  - Reading **678**
  - Listening **681**
  - Speaking **695**
  - Writing **699**
  - Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **700**
- Model Test 5: Progress Test **706**
  - Reading **706**
  - Listening **709**
  - Speaking **728**
  - Writing **732**
  - Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **733**

Model Test 6: Progress Test **739**
Reading **739**
Listening **743**
Speaking **756**
Writing **761**
Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **762**
Model Test 7: Progress Test **769**
Reading **769**
Listening **772**
Speaking **792**
Writing **796**
Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing **797**
Model Test 8: CD-ROM Test **802**

6 SCORE ESTIMATES 803

Important Background Information **803**
Procedure for Scoring **803**
Reference Charts **805**
Examples for Scoring Model Tests **807**
Score Comparisons **808**
Feedback **809**
Options for Personal Evaluation **809**

7 RESOURCES 811

Websites for TOEFL **811**
TOEFL® iBT Resource Centers **813**
Glossary of Campus Vocabulary **816**
Barron's CD-ROM Documentation **851**
Audio CD Tracks **852**

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

With affection and appreciation, I acknowledge my indebtedness to the friends, family, and colleagues who have been part of the TOEFL team for so many years.

Dr. Jayne Harder, former Director of the English Language Institute at the University of Florida for initiating me into the science of linguistics and the art of teaching English as a second language;

Robert and Lillie Sharpe, my parents for their assistance in typing and proofreading previous editions and for their enthusiastic encouragement throughout my career;

The late Dr. Tom Clapp, former Dean of Continuing Education at the University of Toledo for the maturity and confidence that I gained during our marriage because he believed in me;

Carole Berglie, former Editor at Barron's Educational Series, Inc. for her guidance in seeing the first edition of the manuscript through to publication;

Kristen Girardi, Editor at Barron's Educational Series, Inc. for assembling an expert team, providing leadership, and creating an environment that encouraged our best work, as well as for her invaluable insights and wise counsel during every stage of development and production;

Debby Becak, Senior Production Manager at Barron's Educational Series, Inc. for the creative suggestions and designs, large and small, that have improved every chapter;

Bob O'Sullivan, Former Publisher, Test Prep Division at Barron's Educational Series, Inc. for making important decisions at critical times for previous editions;

Peter Mavrikis, Editorial Director, Test Prep Division at Barron's Educational Series, Inc. for a fresh perspective on the TOEFL and key support for the TOEFL team;

John Rockwell, Editor and President of Rockwell Audio Media, for casting and directing the talented voices and bringing the script to life;

Sara Black, Copy Editor for her constructive criticism and helpful corrections throughout the manuscript;

Kathy Telford, Proofreader at Proofreaders Plus for her attention to the important details, her positive approach to errors, and her friendship;

Dennis Oliver, Professor at Estrella Mountain Community College for collaborating on the original version of *Glossary of Campus Vocabulary*;

Robin Fogg, Professor at the Address English Center for key suggestions that made the book much easier for students to use;

John T. Osterman, my husband—a special thank you for the unconditional love and the daily interest in and support for my writing career, as well as for checking my math in the evaluation tables. Each revision of this book is better than the last, and every new and revised year with John is the best year of my life.

SOURCES/CREDITS

"Altruism"
Excerpt pp. 1138–1140 from BIOLOGY, 8th ed., by Neil A. Campbell et al. Copyright © 2008 by Pearson Education, Inc.

"Beowulf"
From *World Mythology*, 3rd ed., by Donna Rosenberg. © 1998 by National Textbook/McGraw Hill Education.

"Building with Arches"
From *Gilbert's Living with Art*, 8th ed., by Mark Gettein. Copyright © 2008 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

"Civilization"
From SPEILVOGEL. *Western Civilization*, 7E. © 2009 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning Inc.

"The Evolution of Birds"
Excerpt pp. 718–719 from BIOLOGY, 8th ed. by Neil A. Campbell et al. Copyright © 2008 by Pearson Education, Inc.

"Exotic and Endangered Species"
From Starr/Taggart. *Biology: The Unity and Diversity of Life* w/*CD & Info Trac,* 10E. © 2004 Brooks/Cole, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Four Stages of Planetary Development"
From SEEDS. *The Solar System*, 6E. © 2008 Brooks/Cole, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Geothermal Energy"
From *Environmental Science: Earth as a Living Planet*, 6th ed., by Botkin/Keller. Copyright © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

"Group Decision Making"
From LEWIS/GOODMAN/FANDT. *Management*, 4E. © 2004 South Western, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"The Heredity Versus Environment Debate"
From ORNSTEIN. *Foundations of Education*, 10E. © 2008 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"The Hydrologic Cycle"
From *Environmental Science: Earth as a Living Planet*, 6th ed., by Botkin/Keller. Copyright © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

"Jackson Pollock"
Photo: © Lauren Jade Goudie/Shutterstock.com
Photo: © 1991 Hans Namuth Estate/Center for Creative Photography, University of Arizona.

"Layers of Social Class"
From ANDERSEN/TAYLOR. *Sociology*, 5E. © 2009 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Life In Our Solar System"
From SEEDS. *Horizons*, 11E. © 2010 Brooks/Cole, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Looking at Theatre History"
From Oscar G. Grockett & Franklin J. Hildy. *History of the Theatre*, 10/e. Published by Allyn and Bacon/Merrill Education, Boston, MA. Copyright © 2008 by Pearson Education, Inc.

"Migration from Asia"
Faragher, John Mack; Czitrom, Daniel; Buhle, Mari Jo; Armitage, Susan H, *OUT OF MANY: A HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN PEOPLE, COMBINED VOLUME,* 5th ed., © 2006 by Pearson Education, Inc.

"New Women of the Ice Age"
PRINGLE, HEATHER. *Applying Cultural Anthropology: An Introductory Reader,* 6th ed., by Aaron Podolefsky, Peter J. Brown. Published by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Copyright © 2003.

"Organic Architecture"
From KLEINER. *Gardner's Art through the Ages*, 13E. © 2009 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Paleolithic Art"
From KLEINER. *Gardner's Art through the Ages, A Global History* 13E. © 2009. Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Piaget's Cognitive Development Theory"
From *Life-Span Development*, 12/e, by John W. Santrock. Published by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. © 2009.

"Producers, Consumers, and Decomposers"
CHRISTOPHERSON, ROBERT W., *GEOSYSTEMS: AN INTRODUCTION TO PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY*, 7th ed., © 2009. Pearson Education, Inc.

"Prosperity in the Early Empire"
SPIELVOGEL. *Western Civilization*, 7E. © 2009 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Resources and Industrialism in Canada"
Excerpt pp. 222–223. From *A Brief History of Canada*, 2nd ed., by Roger Riendeau. Published by Facts on File, Inc. © 2007.

"Rising Sea Levels"
CHRISTOPHERSON, ROBERT W., *GEOSYSTEMS: AN INTRODUCTION TO PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY*, 7th ed., © 2009. Pearson Education, Inc.

"Social Readjustment Scales"
From WEITEN/LLOYD/DUNN/HAMMER. *Psychology Applied to Modern Life*, 9E. © 2009 Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Solar Energy"
CHRISTOPHERSON, ROBERT W., *GEOSYSTEMS: AN INTRODUCTION TO PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY*, 7th ed., © 2009.

"Speech and Writing"
From *Language Files 10*, 10th ed. Department of Linguistics, the Ohio State University. Copyright © 2007 by the Ohio State University.

"Symbiotic Relationships"
From *Environmental Science—A Study of Interrelationships*, 11/e by Elson D. Enger and Bradley F. Smith. © 2008 by McGraw-Hill Companies.

"Tattoo in Polynesia"
From KLEINER, *Gardner's Art through the Ages*, 13E. © 2009. Wadsworth, a part of Cengage Learning, Inc.

"Thermoregulation"
Excerpt pp. 864–866 from BIOLOGY, 8th ed. by Neil A. Campbell et al. Copyright © 2008 by Pearson Education, Inc.

"Weather and Chaotic Systems"
From *The Cosmic Perspective*, 5th ed., by Jeffrey Bennett, Megan Donahue, Nicholas Schneider and Mark Voit. Copyright © 2008 Pearson Education, Inc. publishing as Addison Wesley.

TIMETABLE FOR THE TOEFL® iBT

Test Section	Questions	Time
Reading	3–4 passages with 12–14 questions	60–80 minutes
Listening	2–3 conversations with 5 questions each 2–3 lectures with 6 questions each 2–3 discussions with 6 questions each	60–90 minutes
BREAK		10 minutes
Speaking	2 independent tasks 4 integrated tasks	20 minutes
Writing	1 integrated task 1 independent task	20 minutes 30 minutes

Note: The tests in this book contain three reading passages, three conversations, three lectures, and discussions, *or* four reading passages, two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions because that is the standard length for an official TOEFL. Every official test includes either reading or listening material that is being field-tested for future use. There is no tutorial on the iBT.

Important Note

There are currently three different packages for *Barron's TOEFL® iBT*. The book is the same in all three packages.

1. *Barron's TOEFL® iBT* Book with 2 MP3 CDs. Prepare using the audio for the practice activities, quizzes, and the 7 model tests in the book. MP3 CDs do NOT show visuals on the computer.*
2. *Barron's TOEFL® iBT* Book with 2 MP3 CDs and 1 CD-ROM. Prepare using the audio for the practice activities and the quizzes. Use the CD-ROM for the 7 model tests in the book as well as for Model Test 8, which is a bonus test on the CD-ROM. The CD-ROM simulates the TOEFL® iBT tests on the computer, including the ability to record and play back responses in the Speaking section and save your essays.
3. *Barron's TOEFL® iBT Superpack* consisting of the *Barron's TOEFL® iBT* book with 2 MP3 CDs and CD-ROM, *Barron's Essential Words for the TOEFL*, *Barron's TOEFL Strategies and Tips* with MP3 CD, and *Barron's Writing for the TOEFL iBT* with MP3 CD.

All of the packages also include four video lessons for academic skills and access to a website that provides interactive pronunciation practice for campus vocabulary.

*If you wish to purchase the CD-ROM separately, please visit *www.barronseduc.com* for details.

1

ORIENTATION

ORIENTATION TO THE TOEFL® iBT

The TOEFL® iBT tests your ability to understand and use English for academic purposes. There are four sections on the TOEFL, with special directions for each section.

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. There are three passages on the short format and four passages on the long format. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it.

LISTENING SECTION

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and answer questions about them. There are two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions on the short format and three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions on the long format.

SPEAKING SECTION

The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question; a reading passage and a conversation; a reading passage and a lecture; a conversation or a lecture.

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write one essay about an academic topic and one essay about a familiar topic.

TO THE STUDENT: HOW TO USE THIS BOOK TO SUCCEED

A STUDY PLAN

Many students do not prepare for the TOEFL before they take the exam. They do not even read the *TOEFL® iBT Information and Registration Bulletin* when they register. You have an advantage. Using this book, you have a study plan for success.

STEPS TO SUCCESS

This book is easy to use. More than one million Barron's students have succeeded on the TOEFL. You can be successful too, by following twelve steps.

➤ 1. Inform yourself about the test.

Read the answers to "FAQs—Frequently Asked Questions About the TOEFL® iBT" in this chapter. Then, if you cannot find a copy locally, visit the TOEFL web site at *www.ets.org/toefl* to download a copy of the *TOEFL Information and Registration Bulletin*. Research demonstrates that students who know what to expect will perform better on an examination.

➤ 2. Invest time in your study plan.

Be realistic about how much time you need to prepare for the TOEFL. Choose a syllabus from the choices in this chapter. Use distributed practice—two hours every day for two months will give you better results than twelve hours every day for ten days, even though you will be studying 120 hours for both schedules.

➤ 3. Develop study habits.

The study habits explained at the end of this chapter will help you succeed on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL when you are admitted to a college or university, or when you continue your professional training to keep your licenses current. Successful students understand the value of these habits.

➤ 4. Evaluate your strengths and weaknesses.

Take the Pretest, Model Test 1 in Chapter 4 and check your answers using the Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests in Chapter 5. Which sections of the TOEFL were easier for you? Which were more difficult? Plan to spend more time on the sections on which you received lower scores.

➤ 5. Master academic skills.

Chapter 3 contains a summary of the academic skills that you will need to complete the tasks on the TOEFL® iBT. Read the strategies, complete the practice activities, and check your answers. By going systematically through this chapter, you will acquire valuable academic skills. Take your time and learn them well.

➤ 6. Check your progress.

After you finish the work in Chapter 3, you will be ready to check your progress. Take the first Progress Test, Model Test 2 in Chapter 4 and check your answers using the Explanatory or Example Answers in Chapter 5. You should begin to see how the academic skills are used on the new TOEFL® iBT.

➤ 7. Improve English proficiency.

Chapter 2 will show you how your English proficiency is tested on the TOEFL. Review important types of questions and identify strategies for the language skill that corresponds to each section—Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing. Take the quizzes and check your answers. Although you need to know more English than it is possible to include in one chapter, this review will help you apply the English you know to the test situation. You will improve your English proficiency as measured by the TOEFL.

➤ 8. Understand the directions.

Take the time to read and understand the directions for each problem in Chapter 2 and each section on the model tests. If you already understand what to do in order to complete a certain type of question, you will not have to spend as much valuable time reading and analyzing the directions when you take the official TOEFL.

➤ 9. Practice taking model tests.

Students who have an opportunity to take at least one model test will almost always increase their scores significantly on the official TOEFL test. Experience is a great teacher. This book provides you with seven model tests for practice and a bonus model test on the CD-ROM. In order to take advantage of these experiences, you should always follow the test directions carefully and time each section. Take each model test without stopping for a break until you finish the Reading and Listening sections. Then take a ten-minute break and work without stopping until you complete the Speaking and Writing sections. By simulating the test conditions, you will become familiar with the way that it feels to take the TOEFL and you will be able to concentrate on the questions instead of trying to figure out what is going to happen next. You will also learn to pace yourself so that you can finish each section within the time limits. Remember, you should not try to memorize the questions on the model tests. You will find similar questions on the official TOEFL, but you will not find exactly the same questions. Try to improve your skills, not your memory.

➤ 10. Estimate your TOEFL score.

Chapter 6 gives you a method for estimating your TOEFL score from scores on the model tests in this book. If you do not have a teacher or a reliable grader to evaluate your speaking and writing sections, you may want to consider using one of the services listed at the end of the chapter. You need to know how your speaking and writing will factor into the total score.

➤ 11. Maintain a positive attitude.

Throughout the book, you will find advice for staying positive and motivated. Most of it can be found under the heading "Advisor's Office." Take the time to read the suggestions and think about them. Other successful students have benefited from the same advice.

➤ 12. Take the test when you are ready.

Some students try to succeed on the TOEFL before they are ready. Be realistic about your study schedule. If you are not scoring very well on the model tests and the estimates of your TOEFL scores are below the minimum for you to achieve your goal, you should reconsider your registration date. Knowing when to take the test is part of a successful study plan. If you give yourself the time you need and if you follow the study plan using this book, you will reach your goal. In the future, you will not be asked whether you took the TOEFL a month earlier or later but you *will* be asked to produce the required score. You can do it! Take the test when you are ready.

TO THE TEACHER: RECOMMENDATIONS AND RESOURCES

PERSPECTIVES

In the Middle Ages, a man approached two stonemasons and asked them what they were doing. The first stonemason replied, "I am laying stones." The other answered, "I am building a cathedral."

I have been teaching TOEFL preparation classes since 1970 and writing TOEFL materials since 1975. As I go into my classes, I ask myself: Am I teaching TOEFL prep or am I helping students achieve their career goals? As I prepare each new edition of my books, I ask myself: Am I writing TOEFL preparation books or am I making tools that will help students succeed on the TOEFL and *after* the TOEFL? It is a very different perspective and inspires in a different way.

Certainly, we have seen many changes in the TOEFL across the decades. Often Educational Testing Service has revised the TOEFL in an effort to keep pace with changes in our ESL/EFL teaching paradigms, and occasionally the revisions in the TOEFL have produced changes in our teaching paradigms in something referred to as a *washback effect*.

This is probably the most challenging time in TOEFL preparation that I have experienced because the Internet-Based TOEFL (iBT) is more than a revision. It is a completely different kind of test, which requires a new approach to learning. Our students will have to demonstrate their ability to integrate the language skills by completing tasks similar to those that they will be expected to accomplish in academic settings. They will have to speak and write at high levels of proficiency.

Eventually, *I believe that* the changes on the TOEFL® iBT will be beneficial for our students and for us, their teachers.

TEACHING TIPS

These ideas work for me. I invite you to try some of them in your classes.

➤ 1. Begin with a positive message.

It can be very simple. For instance, "The highest tower is built one brick at a time."
If you put a new message in the same place every time—on a slide or on the board—students will learn to look for it when they come into the room. Music serves the same purpose. It sets a positive mood for the session.

➤ 2. *Write* three important goals for the class so that students can see them.

Three goals are manageable for one class session. When they are visible, they keep us all on track. At the end of the class, referring to the goals gives everyone a sense of progress and closure for the day.

➤ 3. Arrange for model tests to be taken in a lab or at home on the honor system.

Your time with students is too valuable for you to spend four hours proctoring each model test. That would add up to twenty-eight hours of class time for all of the model tests in this book.

➤ 4. Allow students to grade the Reading and Listening sections of their model tests.

If students take responsibility for grading the objective sections of their model tests, and for referring to the explanatory answers, you will save hours that you would have had to use doing routine clerical tasks. If the students take the model tests on the computer, the scoring for these sections will be done automatically; if they are using the book, the answer key is printed in Chapter 7. This will afford you the time you need to concentrate on answering questions.

➤ 5. Ask your students to send you their questions on email before class.

When students refer to the explanatory answers, many questions are resolved for them without asking the teacher. If students write down their questions, sometimes the answer becomes apparent to them at this stage. The questions that they bring to class are really worth discussion. If you have them on email, you can prepare your answers for the question-and-answer session at the beginning of the next class. You always have the answer!

➤ 6. When several students have the same question, prepare a short presentation.

When the question is repeated, it gives us an indication of what our students need to know. By using their questions for class preparation, we show that we are teaching people, not subjects.

➤ 7. Make slides of test questions and show the students how you choose an answer.

Let the students "listen in" on your thought processes as you decide why answers are incorrect and which answer choice is correct. Use the explanatory answers in the book to help you. For example, you might say, "I know that A is not correct because the professor did not include this research in his lecture. Choice B looks possible, but it is not complete. The choice leaves out the second part of the answer. That means it must be either Choice C or D. I know that D is not correct because the professor said that there were three types, not two. It must be Choice C." Modeling *how* to think helps students *learn* to think when they see similar test items.

➤ 8. Use class time to teach and practice academic skills.

Make slides of material from Chapter 3 and go over it in class. Take the quizzes in class, using "Think, Answer, Compare, Discuss." Students have time to think and respond to each answer independently, and then they compare their answers to the correct answer and discuss why that choice is a good one.

➤ 9. Focus on speaking and writing in class.

Provide many good models of responses to speaking and writing questions in class. Show students how to use the checklists to evaluate speaking and writing.

➤ 10. Assign speaking tasks and writing tasks as homework.

Have students turn in speaking assignments and essays. Students can send sound files to you with one-minute responses to speaking tasks. Spend grading time on these important sections. Bring samples of good work to class—good organization, good openings, good support statements, good closings. Catch your students doing something good and use it as an example.

➤ 11. Don't worry about covering all the material in the book.

This book has more material than most teachers need for a course, but all of it was written for self-study as well as for classroom instruction. That means that students can work on their own for "extra credit," and all of the pages don't have to be referred to in class. In my experience, when we teachers try to cover too much, we are the only ones who can keep up. The material gets covered, but the students don't understand it. I trust that teachers know which pages to select for the students in our classes.

➤ 12. Provide counseling and encouragement as part of the class routine.

Ideally, one minute at the end of class can be used for a pep talk, a cheer, or a success story about a former student. This is one of my favorite cheers: T-O-E-F-L. We're making progress. We're doing well. T-O-E-F-L. I also like to stand by a poster at the door when students are leaving my class. The last thing they see is the affirmation on the poster: "I know more today than I did yesterday. I am preparing. I will succeed." Some students want a handshake, a high five, or a hug. Others just smile and say good-bye. Some hang by the door, and I know that they need to talk. Every excellent TOEFL prep teacher I know is also a very good counselor. You probably are, too.

RESOURCES

Several resources for teachers are listed in Chapter 7. Four syllabus options are listed in the next section. It is also worthwhile to read the "Steps to Success" for students printed on the previous pages. The most frequently asked questions (FAQs) are answered at the end of this chapter. If I can be of help to you or your students, please contact me at *sharpe@teflprep.com* or by visiting my website at *www.teflprep.com*.

SYLLABUS OPTIONS

A *syllabus* is a "study plan." There are four options from which to choose. The estimated number of hours for each option is the minimum time that is required to complete the plan.

The Standard Syllabus requires 12 weeks and 100 hours of your time. It is the best option because it allows you to study about 8 hours each week, and you can build in some review if you need it.

The Accelerated Syllabus also requires 100 hours, but it is possible to complete it in half the number of weeks by making a commitment to studying 15–20 hours each week. *Accelerated* means "fast." This calendar does not include time for review.

The Abbreviated Syllabus should be chosen only when you cannot find the time in your schedule to follow one of the other calendars. *Abbreviated* means "shorter." This calendar does not allow you to complete all the study materials in the book. A concise version of this book, *Barron's Pass Key to the TOEFL, 9th Edition*, contains material in the abbreviated syllabus.

The Individualized Syllabus is often chosen when you have already taken the TOEFL and you are very sure which sections will be most difficult for you when you take it again. This calendar allows you to concentrate on one or two sections without repeating information that you have already mastered on other sections.

Note: For a classroom syllabus instead of a self-study syllabus, teachers can contact Dr. Sharpe at *sharpe@teflprep.com.* The classroom syllabus includes an outline for class, lab, homework, and extra credit.

Standard Syllabus—12 Weeks/100 Hours

Barron's TOEFL® iBT 15th Edition

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
1	Orientation Model Test 1: Pretest	Chapter 1, Pages 1–25 *Read the Orientation* Chapter 4, Pages 207–252 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 580–613 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
2	Review of TOEFL Sections	Chapter 2, Pages 27–38, 45–55, 60–76, 80–91 *Read the review of question types for each section* *Take the quiz for each section* Chapter 5, Pages 39–44, 56–59, 77–79, 91–93 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
3	Model Test 2: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 253–297 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 614–642 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
4	Academic Skills	Chapter 3, Pages 95–130 *Study Campus Vocabulary and Taking Notes* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 535–545 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	8 hours
5	Academic Skills	Chapter 3, Pages 131–179 *Study Paraphrasing and Summarizing* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 545–563 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	8 hours
6	Academic Skills	Chapter 3, Pages 180–206 *Study Synthesizing* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 564–579 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	8 hours
7	Model Test 3: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 298–342 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 643–677 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
8	Model Test 4: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 343–384 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 678–705 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
9	Model Test 5: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 385–427 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 706–738 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
10	Model Test 6: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 428–473 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 739–768 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
11	Model Test 7: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 474–518 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 769–802 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	8 hours
12	Model Test 8: CD–ROM Test	*Take all four sections of the test on the CD-ROM in Test Mode* *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers in Practice Mode*	12 hours

Accelerated Syllabus: 6 Weeks/100 Hours

Barron's TOEFL® iBT 15th Edition

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
1	Orientation Model Test 1: Pretest Review of TOEFL Sections	Chapter 1, Pages 1–25 *Read the Orientation* Chapter 4, Pages 207–252 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 580–613 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 2, Pages 27–38, 45–55, 60–76, 80–91 *Read the review of question types for each section* *Take the quiz for each section* Chapter 5, Pages 39–44, 56–59, 77–79, 91–93 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	15 hours
2	Model Test 2: Progress Test Academic Skills	Chapter 4, Pages 253–297 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 614–642 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 3, Pages 95–130 *Study Campus Vocabulary and Taking Notes* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 535–545 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	20 hours
3	Academic Skills	Chapter 3, Pages 131–179 *Study Paraphrasing and Summarizing* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 545–563 *Study the Answers and Scripts* Chapter 3, Pages 180–206 *Study Synthesizing* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 5, Pages 564–579 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	20 hours
4	Model Test 3: Progress Test Model Test 4: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 298–342 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 643–677 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 4, Pages 343–384 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 678–705 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	15 hours

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
5	Model Test 5: Progress Test Model Test 6: Progress Test	Chapter 4, Pages 385–427 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 706–738 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 4, Pages 428–473 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 739–768 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	15 hours
6	Model Test 7: Progress Test Model Test 8: CD–ROM Test	Chapter 4, Pages 474–518 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 769–802 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* CD-ROM *Take all four sections of the test on the CD-ROM in Test Mode* *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers in Practice Mode*	15 hours

Abbreviated Syllabus: 4 Weeks/50 Hours

*Pass Key to the TOEFL® 9th Edition

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
1	Orientation Model Test 1: Pretest Review of TOEFL Sections	Chapter 1, Pages 1–35 *Read the Orientation* Chapter 4, Pages 187–244 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 7, Pages 401–448 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 2, Pages 37–134 *Read the review of question types for each section and the quiz for each section* *Skim the Explanatory and Example Answers*	12 hours
2	Model Test 2: Progress Test Academic Skills	Chapter 5, Pages 245–302 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 7, Pages 449–489 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 3, Pages 135–153 *Study Campus Vocabulary and Taking Notes* *Read the Practice Activities* Chapter 7, Pages 380–382 *Skim the Answers and Scripts*	12 hours
3	Academic Skills	Chapter 3, Pages 154–170 *Study Paraphrasing and Summarizing* *Read the Practice Activities* Chapter 7, Pages 383–389 *Skim the Answers and Scripts* Chapter 3, Pages 170–186 *Study Synthesizing* *Complete Practice Activities* Chapter 7, Pages 389–400 *Study the Answers and Scripts*	20 hours
4	Model Test 3: Progress Test	Chapter 6, Pages 303–358 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 7, Pages 490–538 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	6 hours

**The book you are using is a larger version of this concise format. It contains all of the material for all syllabi, including this one.*

Individualized Syllabus: Variable Weeks/Hours

Barron's TOEFL® iBT 15th Edition

Week	Topic	Reference Chapter	Estimate
1	Orientation Model Test 1: Pretest Review of TOEFL Sections	Chapter 1, Pages 1–25 *Read the Orientation* Chapter 4, Pages 207–252 *Take all four sections of the test* Chapter 5, Pages 580–613 *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers* Chapter 2, Pages 27–93 *Read the review of question types for each section and the quiz for each section* *Study the Explanatory and Example Answers*	15 hours
2	Group and Individual Assignments	Concentrate on the most challenging sections	As needed

Barron's TOEFL® iBT, 15th Edition, is designed to support self-study. After analyzing the Pretest, the teacher can assign individualized review by selecting the chapters and pages that focus on the most challenging sections of the test for each student. It is often helpful to divide the class into groups of students who have similar patterns of error on the Pretest. Model tests provide a process for monitoring individual progress and redirecting student effort. Students who are not in a class can determine which sections of the test require the most time for self-study. *Barron's Practice Exercises for the TOEFL, 8th Edition*, and *Barron's TOEFL Strategies and Tips: Outsmart the TOEFL, 2nd Edition*, are additional resources for individual practice.

FAQs—FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TOEFL® iBT

The TOEFL is the Test of English as a Foreign Language. More than 30 million students from 180 countries have registered to take the TOEFL at 4,500 test centers throughout the world. Some of them do not score well because they do not understand enough English. Others do not score well because they do not understand the examination. The following questions are frequently asked by students as they prepare for the TOEFL.

TOEFL PROGRAMS

➤ What is the purpose of the TOEFL?

Since 1963, the TOEFL has been used by scholarship selection committees of governments, universities, and agencies such as Fulbright, the Agency for International Development, AMIDEAST, and Latin American Scholarship Programs as a standard measure of the English

proficiency of their candidates. Some professional licensing and certification agencies also use TOEFL scores to evaluate English proficiency. The admissions committees of more than 9,000 colleges and universities in the United States, Canada, Australia, Great Britain, and 130 other countries worldwide require foreign applicants to submit TOEFL scores along with transcripts and recommendations in order to be considered for admission. In addition, workers applying for visas often use TOEFL scores as part of their applications.

➤ When will the TOEFL® iBT be administered in my country?

The TOEFL® iBT is offered in 180 countries at thousands of sites, and new sites are opened every month. It is now very convenient to take the TOEFL® iBT. The Paper-Based TOEFL (PBT) is still offered in a few remote areas or in locations where the Internet is difficult to access, but 96% of all TOEFL administrations are iBT exams. The TOEFL® iBT is offered more than 50 times every year. To see a schedule of times and test centers, visit the TOEFL website or check the *TOEFL® iBT Registration and Information Bulletin* on the TOEFL website at *www.ets.org/toefl*. A revised timeline is continuously updated on the TOEFL website.

➤ May I choose the format that I prefer—iBT or PBT?

The official TOEFL is offered in two formats—the Internet-Based TOEFL (iBT) or the Paper-Based TOEFL (PBT). The format that you take depends on the test center location for which you register. Only 4 percent of the sites continue to offer the PBT, and it is being phased out.

➤ What is the Institutional TOEFL Program (ITP)?

Many schools, colleges, universities, and private agencies administer the Institutional TOEFL (ITP). The Institutional TOEFL is used for admission, placement, eligibility, or employment only at the school or agency that offers the test. The dates for the Institutional TOEFL usually correspond to the beginning of an academic session on a college or university calendar. The fees are set by the institution administering the test. The format is paper-based. If you plan to use your TOEFL score for a different college, university, or agency, you should not take the Institutional TOEFL at another site. You should register for the official iBT.

➤ Which language skills are tested on the TOEFL?

Institutional TOEFL (ITP)	*Internet-Based TOEFL (iBT)*
Listening	Listening
Structure	Speaking
Reading	Reading
Optional Essay	Writing

➤ Does the TOEFL have a Speaking section?

The Internet-Based TOEFL (iBT) includes a Speaking section with six questions. No Speaking section is currently planned for the Institutional ITP.

➤ Why was the Structure section removed from the TOEFL® iBT?

Grammar is tested as part of the other sections. It is important to use good grammar in the Speaking and the Writing sections.

➤ Will the TOEFL® iBT writing topics be published?

Not at this time. However, many of the topics that were previously published are similar to the types of topics found on the independent writing task for the iBT.

➤ Which keyboard will be used for the Writing section?

A standard English language QWERTY keyboard will be used for the Writing section on TOEFL® iBT examinations worldwide. QWERTY is the most common keyboard for English-language computers. Its name refers to the first six letters on the top row left. It is a good idea to practice on this type of keyboard when you prepare for the TOEFL, using the model tests in this book.

➤ Is it possible to take the iBT without the Speaking or the Writing sections?

The Speaking section and the Writing section are required on the Internet-Based TOEFL. You must take all sections of the TOEFL in order to receive a score.

➤ Is the Internet-Based TOEFL more difficult than previous TOEFL formats?

Although the Reading and Listening sections contain longer passages, the questions are not very different from those on previous TOEFL formats. However, most students find the Speaking and Writing sections more challenging. That is why it is a good idea to practice, using this book.

REGISTRATION

➤ How do I register for the TOEFL?

You can register for the Internet-Based TOEFL online, by mail, or by telephone.

Online	*www.ets.org/toefl* for testing worldwide
Phone	1-800-GO-TOEFL (1-800-468-6335) or 1-443-751-4862 for testing in the United States, U.S. territories, and Canada, or call your Regional Registration Center for testing outside the United States and Canada.
Mail	Download a registration form from the TOEFL website and mail it to the closest Regional Registration Center (addresses listed in the *TOEFL® iBT Registration and Information Bulletin* and on the ETS website as well as in the Resources on pages 813–815 of this book).

➤ Where can I find a free *TOEFL® iBT Registration and Information Bulletin*?

This important bulletin includes the information that you will need to register for the TOEFL. It can be downloaded free from the TOEFL website *www.ets.org/toefl*. In addition, most Regional Registration Centers have paper copies of the bulletin, or it can be found at many libraries, universities, and educational counseling centers around the world.

➤ Where are the TOEFL® iBT Resource Centers?

Resource centers support the test sites and counseling centers in each region. They are listed in the Resources found in Chapter 7 of this book. Remember, TOEFL® iBT Resource Centers cannot usually assist with registration or score reporting.

➤ Will my registration be confirmed?

Your registration number can be printed when you register online, and you will also receive your number by email.

➤ When should I register for the TOEFL?

You must register at least seven days before the test date. If there is space, you may register three days before the test date. The late fee for a three-day registration is $40. Because test centers fill rapidly during desirable times, it is a good idea to register three or four months in advance. You will have a chance to see a list of available testing centers and dates before you complete your registration. If you are taking the TOEFL as part of the application process for college or university admission, you should plan to take the test early enough for your score to be received by the admission office before the application deadline.

➤ May I change the date or cancel my registration?

To receive a refund, you must reschedule or cancel three full days before your test date. For example, if your test is on Friday, you must call to cancel your registration on Monday. If you cancel your registration, you will usually receive half of your test fee as a refund. Some countries have additional requirements.

➤ What are the fees for the TOEFL® iBT?

The fee for the test administration, including four score reports depends on the location that your choose. Current fees range from $160 to $250 U.S.

➤ How may I pay the fees?

You may pay by credit card, e-check from bank accounts in the United States and its territories, PayPal, paper checks for accepted currencies, or money orders in U.S. dollars drawn on a bank in the United States, checks in Canadian dollars drawn on a bank in Canada, and euro checks drawn on a bank in the same country as the person writing the check. For a list of centers and resellers in your area, visit the TOEFL website at *www.ets.org/toefl*. Accepted currencies include U.S. dollars, British pounds, Canadian dollars, euros and Japanese yen.

TEST ADMINISTRATION

➤ How is the TOEFL® iBT administered?

The TOEFL is offered on a schedule of dates in a network of test centers throughout the world. The room in which the TOEFL is administered is usually a computer lab. You will be assigned a seat. If you are late, you will probably not be admitted.

➤ Where can I take the TOEFL?

The TOEFL website at *www.ets.org/toefl* lists test centers and schedules.

➤ When should I arrive at the test center?

You must arrive at least 30 minutes before your test is scheduled to begin so that you can complete the check-in procedure. You should allow plenty of time to travel to the center so that you are not feeling rushed and stressed before you begin your exam.

➤ In what room will the test be offered?

The room may be a computer lab or a language laboratory. It may be a classroom with about fifteen computers at least four feet apart. You will be assigned a seat.

➤ What should I take with me to the test room?

Take your registration confirmation with your registration number on it and your valid identification to the test site. You are not permitted to take anything with you when you enter the test room except your identification. No cell phones, watches, paper, dictionaries, pens, or pencils are allowed. The test supervisor will give you a headset, paper, and pencils. Some of the sites have lockers for you to store your personal items, but some sites do not have secure storage spaces. You should not take anything to the test site that is too large for a small locker.

➤ What kind of identification is required?

In the United States, only your valid passport will be accepted for admission to the TOEFL. In other countries, your valid passport is still the best identification, but if you do not have a passport, you may refer to the TOEFL website for special directions. Your photograph will be taken at the test center and reproduced on all official score reports, along with your signature. Be sure to use the same spelling and order of your name on your registration materials, the test center log that you will sign when you enter and leave the test area, the forms on the computer screens, and any correspondence that you may have with the TOEFL office. You should also use the same spelling on applications for schools and documents for agencies that will receive your score reports. Even a small difference can cause serious delays or even denial of the applications. You should also take your registration number with you. You will find this number on the confirmation receipt that you are sent when you register. At some

centers, thumb prints, hand-held metal detectors, biometric voice identifications, and other forms of technology will be used to verify your identity.

➤ What are the procedures before testing?

You will be asked to copy a paragraph in which you agree not to share information about the test. Then you will have your photograph taken and other security procedures will be performed.

EXAMINATION

➤ How long is the testing session?

The TOEFL® iBT takes about four to four and a half hours to administer, including the time required for giving directions and the break between the Listening and the Speaking sections.

➤ What kinds of questions are found on the TOEFL® iBT?

The majority of the questions on the iBT are multiple choice. Some computer-assisted questions are also on the iBT. These questions have special directions on the screen. You will have many examples of them in the model tests in this book.

➤ Are all of the TOEFL® iBT tests the same?

Unlike some computer-based tests that present questions based on your responses to previous questions, the iBT is a linear test. That means that on the same form, all of the test questions are the same. More than one form may be administered on the same day, however.

➤ Why are some of the Reading and Listening sections longer?

Some of the tests include questions that are being field tested for use in future exams. Test developers include the experimental questions for either the Reading or the Listening section. Your answers to these experimental questions will not be calculated as part of your score, but you must do your best on all the questions because you will not know which questions are experimental and which are test questions that will be scored. For example, you may be taking the iBT with someone who has experimental questions in Reading, but you may have experimental questions in Listening. For this reason, your friend's test may have a longer Reading section, and your test may have a longer Listening section. The experimental questions may be at the beginning, middle, or end of the section.

➤ May I choose the order of the sections on my TOEFL?

You may not choose the order. Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing are tested in that order on the TOEFL, with a 10-minute break between the Listening and Speaking.

➤ What kinds of questions are found on the TOEFL® iBT?

Most of the questions are multiple choice, but some questions have special directions on the screen. You will have examples of the most frequently-tested items in Chapter 2 in this book.

➤ May I take notes?

You are permitted to take notes and use them to answer the questions on the iBT. You will be given scratch paper for that purpose when you enter the test room. Your notes will not be graded. They will be collected and shredded after the test.

➤ May I change an answer?

The Reading section is divided into passages. You can change your answer by clicking on a new answer. You can change your answer as many times as you wish, and you can go back to previous answers in the same passage or previous passages. On the Listening section, you can change your answer by clicking on a new answer. You can change your answer as many times as you wish until you click on the **Confirm Answer** (**OK**) button. On the Speaking section, you will be cued with a beep to begin and end speaking. Everything that you say during the recording time will be submitted. You cannot change an answer. On the Writing section, you can revise your essays as much as you wish until the clock indicates that no time is remaining. If you submit your essays before time is up, you cannot return to them. The CD-ROM that supplements this book will provide you with practice in choosing and changing answers on the computer screen.

➤ If I am not sure of an answer, should I guess?

If you are not sure of an answer, you should guess. The number of incorrect answers is not subtracted from your score. First, eliminate all the possibilities that you know are NOT correct. Then, if you are almost sure of an answer, guess that one. If you have no idea of the correct answer for a question, choose one letter and use it for your "guess answer" throughout the entire examination. The "guess answer" is especially useful for finishing a section quickly.

➤ What if I cannot hear the audio for the Listening section?

You will receive your own headphones with a microphone attached. Before the test begins, you will have an opportunity to adjust the volume yourself. Be careful to adjust the volume when you are prompted to do so. If there is a problem with your headset, raise your hand, and ask the test supervisor to provide you with another headset.

➤ Will everyone speak at the same time to record the answers for the Speaking section?

Speakers will begin to record their answers at slightly different times. The problem is that you may be disturbed by the noise while you are trying to concentrate on your answers either on the Speaking section or on other sections of the TOEFL. It is a good idea to keep your earphones on during the entire test in order to block out as much of the noise as possible.

➤ What can I do if there is a problem during the test?

If there is a problem with the Internet connection or the power that supplies the computers, and if the test must be discontinued, everyone who is taking the test at that site is entitled to a refund or a free test on another date. This does not happen very often.

➤ What if I have a personal problem during the test?

If you become ill or you are being disturbed by the behavior of another person in the room, raise your hand and tell your test supervisor immediately. If you think that your score may be affected by the problem, ask the supervisor to file a report.

➤ Are breaks scheduled during the TOEFL?

A mandatory 10-minute break is scheduled between the Listening and the Speaking sections. If you need to use the restroom at another time during the test, you may, but the test clock will not stop while you are gone.

➤ How often may I take the TOEFL® iBT?

You may take the TOEFL® iBT as many times as you wish to score to your satisfaction, but only once within 12 days.

➤ If I have already taken the TOEFL, how will the previous scores affect my new score?

TOEFL scores are valid for two years. If you have taken the TOEFL more than once but your first score report is more than two years ago, the first score will not be reported. If you have taken the TOEFL more than once in the past two years, a report will be sent for the test date that you request.

➤ May I keep my test?

You cannot save your test to a disk or send it to an email address. If you try to do so, the TOEFL office may take legal action.

➤ What happens to someone who cheats on the TOEFL® iBT?

Entering the room with false identification, tampering with the computer, using a camera, giving or receiving help, or trying to remove test materials or notes is considered cheating. Do not cheat. In spite of opportunity, knowledge that others are doing it, the desire to help a friend, or fear that you will not make a good score, *do not cheat*. On the TOEFL, cheating is a very serious matter. If you are discovered, you will be dismissed from the room, your score will be canceled, and you may not be able to take the test again on a future date.

SCORE REPORTS

➤ How is the Speaking section scored?

Trained raters listen to each of the speaking responses and assign them a number 0–4. The scores for all six responses are converted to a total section score 0–30. The raters grade the Speaking section using checklists similar to those printed in this book.

➤ How is the Writing section scored?

Trained raters read your essays and assign them a number 0–5. Automated machine scoring called e-rater complements the scores by human raters. If there is disagreement about your score, a team leader will also read your essays. The scores for each essay are combined and converted to a section score 0–30. Raters grade the Writing section using checklists similar to those printed in this book. The combination of human raters for content and meaning and *machine* scoring for language and mechanics provides a more objective evaluation.

➤ How is the total TOEFL score calculated?

The iBT has converted section scores for each of the four sections. The range for each section score is 0–30. When the scores for the four sections are added together, the total score range is 0–120.

➤ How do I interpret my score?

You cannot pass or fail the TOEFL. Each school or agency will evaluate the scores according to its own requirements. Even at the same university, the requirements may vary for different programs of study, levels of study (graduate or undergraduate), and degrees of responsibility (student or teaching assistant). Many universities are setting minimum requirements for each section. The following range of requirements is typical of admissions policies for North American, European, Australian, and U.K. colleges and universities. This assumes, of course, that the applicant's documents other than English proficiency are acceptable.

Reading	20–25
Listening	20–25
Speaking	20–25
Writing	20–25
TOTAL	80–100

To be certain of the requirements for your school or agency, contact them directly.

➤ How do the scores compare on the iBT and ITP formats?

The following chart compares TOEFL scores on the two current formats—the Internet-Based TOEFL (iBT) and the Institutional TOEFL Program (ITP). More detailed charts are posted on the website maintained by Educational Testing Service at *www.ets.org*.

iBT	ITP
111–120	640–677
96–110	590–639
79–95	550–589
65–78	513–549
53–64	477–512
41–52	437–476
30–40	397–436
19–29	347–396
6–18	311–346
0–5	310

➤ When can I see my scores?

You will be able to see and download your score report online about 10–13 days after you take the TOEFL. You will receive an email to verify that the score has been posted. Official score reports will be mailed to you and to the schools and agencies that you designate a few days after they have been posted online. You should expect delivery by mail in ten days in the United States and as long as six weeks outside the United States. You are entitled to five copies of your test results, including one copy for you and four official score reports.

➤ What is on the score report?

The score report includes your scores for each section of the test and your total TOEFL score, as well as a statement explaining the typical performance skills of test takers with the same score. The report does not include scores for tests that you have taken previously.

➤ May I cancel my scores?

If you choose to report your scores, you will choose four institutions or agencies to receive score reports. All of this is arranged by responding to questions on the computer screen at the end of the TOEFL exam. If you do not want your scores to be reported, click on **Cancel** when this option appears on the screen.

➤ How can I send additional score reports?

If you need more than four score reports, which are provided as part of your test fee, you may order more at $19 each. Order online or mail in the order form that you will find in your *TOEFL® iBT Registration and Information Bulletin*. You may also fax your order to 1-610-290-8972. Reports are sent in four to seven days when you order them online. Fax orders are mailed two weeks after payment.

➤ How long are my scores valid?

Your scores are valid for two years after the test date.

➤ Is there a direct correspondence between proficiency in English and a TOEFL score?

There is not always a direct correspondence between proficiency in English and a score on the TOEFL. Many students who are proficient in English are not proficient in how to approach the examination. That is why it is important to prepare by using this book.

➤ Can I estimate my TOEFL score before I take the official test?

To estimate your TOEFL score, after you complete each of the model tests, use the score estimates in Chapter 6 of this book. If you complete the model tests on the CD-ROM that supplements this book, you will see an estimate of your TOEFL scores on the screen.

➤ Wiii i succeed on the TOEFL?

You will receive from your study what you give to your study. The information is here. Now, it is up to you to devote the time and the effort. More than one million students have succeeded by using *Barron's TOEFL*. You can be successful, too.

STUDY HABITS

A habit is a pattern of behavior that is acquired through repetition. Research indicates that it takes about twenty-one days to form a habit. The following study habits are characteristic of successful students. Be successful! Form these habits now. They will help you on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL.

➤ Accept responsibility.

Successful students understand that the score on the TOEFL is their responsibility. It doesn't happen because of luck. It is the result of their own efforts. Take responsibility for your TOEFL score. Don't leave it to chance.

- Don't rely on luck.
- Work diligently.

➤ Get organized.

You will need a place to study where you can concentrate. Try to find a place where you can arrange your study materials and leave them until the next study session. If that is not practical, then find a bag that you can use to store all your materials so that you can have everything you need when you go to the library or another place to study. Don't use the bag

for anything else. This will save time because you will not be looking for everything in different areas of your house or room, and you will not be trying to find TOEFL preparation material among other things in the bag. You are less likely to lose important notes.

- Find a study area.
- Keep your materials in one place.

➤ Set realistic goals.

Be honest about your preparation. Students who are just beginning to learn English are not prepared to take the TOEFL. Give yourself the time you need to prepare. By setting an unrealistic goal, for example, to finish preparing with this book in one week, you will probably be very disappointed. Even advanced students need time to learn academic skills and review language skills as well as to take model tests.

- Evaluate your English.
- Set a goal that you can achieve.

➤ Make a plan.

It is not enough to have a goal, even a realistic goal. Successful students also have a plan to accomplish a goal. What are you going to do to achieve the goal you have set? You will need to have time and resources. What are they? To help you make your plan, look at the options for a syllabus on page 7.

- Dedicate time and resources.
- Select a syllabus.

➤ Establish priorities.

The pretest on pages 207–252 in this book will be helpful to you when you set priorities. By analyzing your strengths and weaknesses on the test, you will know which sections of the test will be the most difficult and which will be easy for you. You will also know which problems within each section require the most study. By focusing on those sections and problems, you can set priorities and use your time wisely.

- Take the pretest.
- Analyze your strengths and weaknesses.

➤ Manage time.

How do you spend time? Clearly, a certain amount of your time should be spent sleeping or relaxing. That is important to good health. However, you should think about how much time you spend worrying or procrastinating. That is not a healthy way to spend time. Successful students have a schedule that helps them manage their time. Preparing for the TOEFL is written down on the schedule. TOEFL preparation is planned for on a regular basis just like a standing appointment. If it is written down, it is more probable that you will give it the time necessary to achieve your goal. When you start to worry, use that energy to do something

positive. Learn to use time while you are waiting for an appointment or commuting on public transportation to study. Even a 5-minute review will help you.

- Schedule study time.
- Use unscheduled time well.

➤ Learn from mistakes.

If you knew everything, you wouldn't need this book. Expect to make mistakes on the quizzes and on the model tests. Read the explanatory answers, and learn from your mistakes. If you do this, you will be less likely to make those mistakes again on the official TOEFL.

- Study the explanatory answers.
- Review your errors.

➤ Stay motivated.

It is easy to begin with enthusiasm, but it is more difficult to maintain your initial commitment. How do you stay motivated? To keep their energy up, some students give themselves small incentives. Without small rewards along the way, it may be more difficult to stay motivated. Just be sure that the reward doesn't take more time than the study. Remember, an incentive is supposed to keep you moving, not slow you down.

- Give yourself small incentives.
- Keep moving.

➤ Choose to be positive.

Your attitude will influence your success on the TOEFL examination. To be successful, you must develop patterns of positive thinking. To help develop a positive attitude, memorize the following sentences and bring them to mind after each study session. Bring them to mind when you begin to have negative thoughts:

I know more today than I did yesterday.
I am preparing.
I will succeed.

Remember, some tension is normal and good. Accept it. Use it constructively. It will motivate you to study. But don't panic or worry. Panic will cause loss of concentration and poor performance. Avoid people who panic and worry. Don't listen to them. They will encourage negative thoughts.

You know more today than you did yesterday.
You are preparing.
You will succeed.

More advice for success appears in the "Advisor's Office" throughout the book. Please read and consider the advice as you continue your TOEFL preparation.

2

REVIEW OF TOEFL® iBT SECTIONS

READING

OVERVIEW OF THE READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change questions or answers that you may have left blank throughout the entire section. The passages are about 700 words in length.

There are two formats for the Reading section. On the short format, you will read three passages. On the long format, you will read four passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. Only three passages will be graded. The other passage is part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which passages will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 60 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the short format and 80 minutes to read all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

REVIEW OF PROMPTS AND QUESTIONS

➤ Prompts

A prompt for the Reading section is usually a passage from an undergraduate college textbook in one of the natural sciences, social sciences, humanities, or arts. The length of the passage is from 650 to 800 words. If there are technical words, they are explained in a glossary after the passage. There are either three or four prompts in the Reading section with twelve to fourteen questions after each prompt. When you are presented with three prompts, all three will be graded. When you are presented with four prompts, only three will be graded, and one will be used for experimental purposes. You should do your best on all four prompts because you will not know which of them will be graded. Questions 1–14 in this review refer to the following prompt:

"Producers, Consumers, and Decomposers"

P1 ➔ Organisms that are capable of using carbon dioxide as their sole source of carbon are called *autotrophs* (self-feeders), or **producers**. These are the plants. They chemically fix carbon through photosynthesis. Organisms that depend on producers as their carbon source are called *heterotrophs* (feed on others), or **consumers**. Generally, these are animals. From the producers, which manufacture their own food, energy flows through the system along a circuit called the **food chain**, reaching consumers and eventually *detritivores.* Organisms that share the same basic foods are said to be at the same *trophic* level. Ecosystems generally are structured in a **food web**, a complex network of interconnected food chains. In a food web, consumers participate in several different food chains, comprising both strong interactions and weak interactions between species in the food web.

P2 Primary consumers feed on producers. A Because producers are always plants, the primary consumer is called an **herbivore**, or plant eater. A **carnivore** is a secondary consumer and primarily eats meat. B A consumer that feeds on both producers (plants) and consumers (meat) is called an **omnivore.** C

P3 Detritivores (detritus feeders and decomposers) are the final link in the endless chain. D Detritivores renew the entire system by releasing simple inorganic compounds and nutrients with the breaking down of organic materials. Detritus refers to all the dead organic debris—remains, fallen leaves, and wastes—that living processes leave. Detritus feeders—worms, mites, termites, centipedes, snails, crabs, and even vultures, among others—work like an army to consume detritus and excrete nutrients that fuel an ecosystem. **Decomposers** are primarily bacteria and fungi that digest organic debris outside their bodies and absorb and release nutrients in the process. This metabolic work of microbial decomposers produces the rotting that breaks down detritus. Detritus feeders and decomposers, although different in operation, have a similar function in an ecosystem.

P4 → An example of a complex community is the oceanic food web that includes krill, a primary consumer. *Krill* is a shrimplike crustacean that is a major food for an interrelated group of organisms, including whales, fish, seabirds, seals, and squid in the Antarctic region. All of these organisms participate in numerous other food chains as well, some consuming and some being consumed. *Phytoplankton* begin this chain by harvesting solar energy in photosynthesis. *Herbivorous zooplankton* such as krill and other organisms eat Phytoplankton. Consumers eat krill at the next trophic level. Because krill are a protein-rich, plentiful food, increasingly factory ships, such as those from Japan and Russia, seek them out. The annual krill harvest currently surpasses a million tons, principally as feed for chickens and livestock and as protein for human consumption.

Efficiency in a Food Web

P5 Any assessment of world food resources depends on the level of consumer being targeted. Let us use humans as an example. Many people can be fed if wheat is eaten directly. However, if the grain is first fed to cattle (herbivores) and then we eat the beef, the yield of available food energy is cut by 90% (810 kg of grain is reduced to 82 kg of meat); far fewer people can be fed from the same land area.

P6 In terms of energy, only about 10% of the kilocalories (food calories, not heat calories) in plant matter survive from the primary to the secondary trophic level. When humans consume meat instead of grain, there is a further loss of biomass and added inefficiency. More energy is lost to the environment at each progressive step in the food chain. You can see that an omnivorous diet such as that of an average North American and European is quite expensive in terms of biomass and energy.

P7 → Food web concepts are becoming politicized as world food issues grow more critical. Today, approximately half of the cultivated acreage in the United States and Canada is planted for animal consumption—beef and dairy cattle, hogs, chickens, and turkeys. Livestock feed includes approximately 80% of the annual corn and nonexported soybean harvest. In addition, some lands cleared of rain forest in Central and South America were converted to pasture to produce beef for export to restaurants, stores, and fast-food outlets in developed countries. Thus, lifestyle decisions and dietary patterns in North America and Europe are perpetuating inefficient food webs, not to mention the destruction of valuable resources, both here and overseas.

Glossary

phytoplankton: a plant that lives in the sea and produces its own energy source
trophic level: category measured in steps away from the energy input in an ecosystem

➤ Questions

This review presents the types of questions that are most frequently tested on the TOEFL. They will appear randomly after a reading passage. Directions will appear with the questions, but if you already recognize the type of question presented, and you are familiar with the directions, you will save time. The less time you have to spend reading directions, the more time you will have to read the passages and answer the questions. The number of points assigned to each question is based on the evaluation system for the TOEFL. The frequency level for each question is based on the average number of 12–14 questions that are usually included in a reading passage.

Low	0–1
Average	1
High	2–4
Very high	3–5

1: True-False

A *True-False* question asks you to identify the true statement.
Choose from four sentences.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Low

1. According to paragraph 1, which of the following is true about autotrophs?

   ● They use a chemical process to produce their own food.
   Ⓑ They require plant matter in order to survive.
   Ⓒ They need producers to provide them with carbon.
   Ⓓ They do not interact with other organisms in the food chain.

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

2: Vocabulary

A *Vocabulary* question asks you to choose a general synonym.
Choose from four words or phrases.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Very high

2. The word sole in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ major
   Ⓑ steady
   ● only
   Ⓓ ideal

3: Terms

A *Terms* question asks you to explain a word that is specific to the reading passage.
Choose from four definitions.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Low

3. Based on the information in paragraph 1, which of the following best explains the term "food web"?

   Ⓐ Energy manufactured by producer organisms in the food chain
   Ⓑ Another term that defines the food chain
   ● An interactive system of food chains
   Ⓓ Primary and secondary consumers in the food chain

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

4: Inference

An *Inference* question asks you to draw a conclusion based on information in the passage.
Choose from four possibilities.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

4. It may be concluded that human beings are omnivores for which reason?

   Ⓐ People feed on producers for the most part.
   Ⓑ People are usually tertiary consumers.
   ● People generally eat both producers and consumers.
   Ⓓ Most people are the top carnivores in the food chain.

5: Reference

A *Reference* question asks you to identify a word or phrase in the passage that refers to another word or phrase.
Choose from four words or phrases in the passage.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Low

5. The word others in the passage refers to

   Ⓐ debris
   ● feeders
   Ⓒ processes
   Ⓓ nutrients

6: Purpose

A *Purpose* question asks you to understand why the author organizes a passage or explains a concept in a specific way.
Choose from four reasons.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

6. Why does the author mention "krill" in paragraph 4?

Ⓐ To suggest a solution for a problem in the food chain
Ⓑ To provide evidence that contradicts previously stated opinions
Ⓒ To present an explanation for the killing of krill
● To give an example of a complex food web

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7: Paraphrase

A *Paraphrase* question asks you to choose the best restatement.
Choose from four statements.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

7. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Part of the one million tons of krill harvested annually is used for protein in animal feed.
Ⓑ Both livestock and chickens as well as humans eat krill as a main part of their diets.
Ⓒ The principal use of krill is for animal feed, although some of the one million tons is eaten by people.
● More than one million tons of krill is eaten by both animals and humans every year.

8: Detail

A *Detail* question asks you to answer a question about a specific point in the passage.
Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Very high

8. According to paragraph 7, how much land is used to grow crops for animal feed?

Ⓐ 80 percent of the acreage in Europe
Ⓑ Most of the rain forest in Central America
● 50 percent of the farm land in Canada and the United States
Ⓓ Half of the land in North and South America

Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

9: Cause

A *Cause* question asks you to explain why something in the passage occurred. Choose from four reasons.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

9. According to paragraph 7, why are food webs inefficient?

   ● Consumers in developed nations prefer animal protein.
   Ⓑ Politicians are not paying attention to the issues.
   Ⓒ There are not enough acres to grow crops efficiently.
   Ⓓ Too much of the corn and soybean harvests are exported.

   Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

10: Opinion

An *Opinion* question asks you to recognize the author's point of view. Choose from four statements.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Low

10. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about food issues?

    Ⓐ Too much grain is being exported to provide food for developed nations.
    Ⓑ More forested land needs to be cleared for food production in developing nations.
    ● Food choices in developed nations are very costly in terms of the environment.
    Ⓓ More animal protein is needed in the diets of people in developing nations.

11: Insert

An *Insert* question asks you to locate a place in the passage to insert a sentence. Choose from four options marked with a square.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

11. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    A tertiary consumer eats primary and secondary consumers and is referred to as the "top carnivore" in the food chain.

    Where could the sentence best be added? [B]

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

12: Exception

An *Exception* question asks you to select a statement that includes information NOT in the passage.
Choose from four sentences.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

12. According to the passage, all of the following characteristics describe producers EXCEPT

    Ⓐ Producers serve as food for consumers.
    Ⓑ Producers make their own food.
    Ⓒ Producers form the first trophic level.
    ● Producers include bacteria and fungi.

13: Classification

A *Classification* question asks you to match phrases with the category to which they refer. Choose phrases for two or three categories. Two phrases will not be used.

Points—1–4 points for seven choices
1 point for 4 correct answers
2 points for 5 correct answers
3 points for 6 correct answers
4 points for 7 correct answers
Frequency Level—Low

Points—1–3 points for five choices
1 point for 3 correct answers
2 points for 4 correct answers
3 points for 5 correct answers

13. **Directions:** Complete the table by matching the phrases on the left with the headings on the right. Select the appropriate answer choices and drag them to the type of organism to which they relate. TWO of the answer choices will NOT be used. ***This question is worth 3 points.***

    To delete an answer choice, click on it. To see the passage, click on **View Text.**

Answer Choices	**Producers**
A Depend upon photosynthesis to survive	• A
B Has a weak interaction among species	• F
C Generally consist of animal life forms	**Consumers**
D Include both herbivores and carnivores	• C
E Eat *meat* as one of its primary food sources	• D
F Are always some variety of plant life	• E
G Made exclusively of inorganic materials	

14: Summary

A *Summary* question asks you to complete a summary of the passage.
Choose three sentences from six choices. Three sentences will not be used.

Points—1–2
1 point for 2 correct answers
2 points for 3 correct answers
Frequency Level—Average

14. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

The food web is comprised of producers, consumers, and decomposers, which interact in endless cycles.

- A
- B
- C

Answer Choices

A Consumers, primarily animals, feed on producers, plants which manufacture their own food source through photosynthesis.

B Decomposers digest and recycle dead plants and animals, releasing inorganic compounds into the food chain.

C Since more energy is depleted into the environment at each level in the food chain, dietary choices affect the efficiency of food webs.

D Among consumers, human beings are considered omnivores because they eat not only plants but also animals.

E An example of an undersea food web includes phytoplankton, krill, and fish as well as birds, seals, and whales.

F Rain forests are being cut down in order to clear pastureland for cattle that can be exported to countries with fast-food restaurants.

READING STRATEGIES

In addition to the academic skills that you will learn in Chapter 3, there are several reading strategies that will help you succeed on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL.

➤ Preview

Research shows that it is easier to understand what you are reading if you begin with a general idea of what the passage is about. Previewing helps you form a general idea of the topic. To preview, first read the title, the headings and subheadings, and any words in bold print or italics. You should do this as quickly as possible. Remember, you are reading not for specific information but for an impression of the topic. Next, read the first sentence of each paragraph and the last sentence of the passage. Again, this should take seconds, not minutes, to complete. This time you are looking for the main idea.

- Look at the title and headings
- Read the first sentence of every paragraph
- Read the last sentence of the passage

➤ Read faster

To read faster, read for meaning. Try to understand sentences or even paragraphs, not individual words. To do this, you should read phrases instead of reading word by word. Practice using the vision that allows you to see on either side of the word you are focusing on with your eyes. This is called *peripheral vision*. When you drive a car or ride a bike, you are looking ahead of you but you are really taking in the traffic situation on both sides. You are using peripheral vision to move forward. This is also important in learning to read faster. Your mind can take in more than one word at the same time. Just think if you stopped every time you wanted to know what was going on in the next lane! You would never get to your destination. To read faster, you have to read for ideas. If you don't know the meaning of a word but you understand the sentence, move on. Don't stop to look up the word in your dictionary. Don't stop your car or your bike.

- Use peripheral vision
- Read for meaning

➤ Use contexts

Before you can use a context, you must understand what a context is. In English, a *context* is the combination of vocabulary and grammar that surrounds a word. Context can be a sentence or a paragraph or a passage. Context helps you make a general prediction about meaning. If you know the general meaning of a sentence, you also know the general meaning of the words in the sentence. Making predictions from contexts is very important when you are reading a foreign language. In this way, you can read and understand the meaning of a passage without stopping to look up every new word in a dictionary. On an examination like the TOEFL, dictionaries are not permitted in the room. Of course, you have to know some of the words in order to have a context for the words that you don't know. That means that you need to work on learning a basic vocabulary, and then you can make an educated guess about the meaning of new words by using the context.

- Learn basic vocabulary
- Guess new words in context

➤ Make inferences

Sometimes you will find a direct statement of fact in a reading passage. Other times, you will not find a direct statement. Then you will need to use the facts as evidence to make an inference. An *inference* is a logical conclusion based on evidence. It can be about the passage itself or about the author's viewpoint. For example, you may begin reading a passage about the Native Americans who lived on the plains. You continue reading and note that they used buffalo for food. Later, you read that they used buffalo for clothing and shelter. From these facts, you can draw the conclusion that the buffalo was very important in the culture of the plains people. The author did not state this fact directly, but the evidence allows you to make an inference.

- Locate the evidence
- Draw conclusions

➤ Skim and scan

To *scan* is to let your eyes travel quickly over a passage in order to find something specific that you are looking for. By scanning, you can find the place in a reading passage where the answer to a question is found. First, read the question and look for a reference. A reference in the TOEFL will identify a paragraph where the answer to the question is found. For example, you may read, *Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].* You know that you need to scan for the arrow at the beginning of paragraph 2 in the passage. The paraphrased sentences and the vocabulary words on the TOEFL are shaded to help you find them.

If a question does not have a reference like an arrow or shading, then you should find the important content words in the question. *Content words* are usually nouns, verbs, or adjectives. They are called content words because they contain the meaning of a sentence. Now scan the passage for the same content words or synonyms of the words in the questions. Finally, read those specific sentences carefully, and choose the answer that corresponds to the meaning of the sentences you have read.

- Refer to arrows and shading
- Locate the details
- Check for exceptions

➤ Make connections

Reading is like having a conversation with the author. Your mind makes connections with the passage. Sometimes this will happen when you are reading and a word or phrase refers back to a previous point in the passage. On the TOEFL, one question requires you to insert a sentence at the most logical place in a passage. In this case, you are connecting a new sentence with the ideas in the passage. Active readers are always thinking about how the next sentence fits in with what they have already read.

- Find references
- Insert sentences

➤ Summarize

A summary includes only the main idea and the major points in a passage. Although a passage may contain many points, only the most important are included in a summary. In English, many writers tend to use a formula with one main idea and three major points. It is customary to find between two and four major points in a short passage.

When you are reading content material in textbooks or on examinations, pause at the end of a section to summarize. First, reread the title or the section heading. State the main idea. Then, summarize the major points from that section. You can summarize by speaking or writing. The last question on the TOEFL is often a summary of the entire passage.

- State the main idea
- List the major points

APPLYING THE ACADEMIC SKILLS TO THE TOEFL

➤ Campus Vocabulary

This important skill is tested in other sections of the TOEFL® iBT.

➤ Taking Notes

For some people, taking notes while they read the passage is a good strategy. For other people, it is not a good use of their time. They prefer to read once to get a general idea of the passage and then to go back and scan for each question. The way that you use your time is a very personal choice. When you take the model tests in the next chapter, practice by taking notes on some passages and by scanning on other passages. Use the model tests to determine whether you should spend time taking notes on the reading passages.

➤ Paraphrasing

This is the most important academic skill for the Reading section. Many of the questions and answer choices are paraphrases of information from the passage. Your ability to recognize paraphrases will be essential for you to score well on this section.

➤ Summarizing

The last question for every reading passage will require you to summarize the passage either by classifying information or by distinguishing between major points and minor points. Your skill in summarizing will be important because the last question is worth more points than the other questions.

➤ Synthesizing

This important skill is tested in other sections of the TOEFL® iBT.

QUIZ FOR THE READING SECTION

This is a quiz for the Reading section of the TOEFL® iBT. This section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. During the quiz, you will read one reading passage and respond to 14 questions about it. You will have 20 minutes to read the passage and answer the questions. You may take notes while you read. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

"The Heredity Versus Environment Debate"

P1 The past century has seen heated controversy about whether intelligence, which relates strongly to school achievement, is determined primarily by heredity or by environment. A When IQ tests were undergoing rapid development early in the twentieth century, many psychologists believed that intelligence was determined primarily by heredity. B

P2 → **Environmentalist view.** By the middle of the twentieth century, numerous studies had counteracted the hereditarian view, and most social scientists took the position that environment is as important as or even more important than heredity in determining intelligence. C Social scientists who stress the **environmentalist view of intelligence** generally emphasize the need for continual compensatory programs beginning in infancy. Many also criticize the use of IQ tests on the grounds that these tests are culturally biased. D

P3 James Flynn, who collected similar data on other countries, found that "massive" gains in the IQ scores of the population in fourteen nations have occurred during the twentieth century. These improvements, according to Flynn's analysis, largely stemmed not from genetic improvement in the population but from environmental changes that led to gains in the kinds of skills assessed by IQ tests. Torsten Husen and his colleagues also have concluded, after reviewing large amounts of data, that improvements in economic and social conditions, and particularly in the availability of schooling, can produce substantial gains in average IQ from one generation to the next. In general, educators committed to improving the performance of low-achieving students find these studies encouraging.

P4 → **Hereditarian view.** The **hereditarian view of intelligence** underwent a major revival in the 1970s and 1980s, based particularly on the writings of Arthur Jensen, Richard Herrnstein, and a group of researchers conducting the Minnesota Study of Twins. Summarizing previous research as well as their own studies, these researchers identified heredity as the major factor in determining intelligence—accounting for up to 80 percent of the variation in IQ scores.

P5 Jensen published a highly controversial study in the *Harvard Educational Review* in 1969. Pointing out that African-Americans averaged about 15 points below whites on IQ tests, Jensen attributed this gap to a genetic difference between the two races in learning abilities and patterns. Critics countered Jensen's arguments by contending that a host of environmental factors that affect

IQ, including malnutrition and prenatal care are difficult to measure and impossible to separate from hereditary factors. IQ tests are biased, they said, and do not necessarily even measure intelligence. After his 1969 article, Jensen has continued to cite data that he believed link intelligence primarily to heredity. His critics continue to respond with evidence that environmental factors, and schooling in particular, have a major influence on IQ.

P6 ➔ **Synthesizers' view.** Certain social scientists have taken a middle, or "synthesizing," position in this controversy. The **synthesizers' view of intelligence** holds that both heredity and environment contribute to differences in measured intelligence. For example, Christopher Jencks, after reviewing a large amount of data, concluded that heredity is responsible for 45 percent of the IQ variance, environment accounts for 35 percent, and interaction between the two ("interaction" meaning that particular abilities thrive or wither in specific environments) accounts for 20 percent. Robert Nichols reviewed all these and other data and concluded that the true value for heredity may be anywhere between 0.40 and 0.80 but that the exact value has little importance for policy. In general, Nichols and other synthesizers maintain that heredity determines the fixed limits of a range; within those limits, the interaction between environment and heredity yields the individual's intelligence. In this view, even if interactions between heredity and environment limit our ability to specify exactly how much of a child's intelligence reflects environmental factors, teachers (and parents) should provide each child with a productive environment in which to realize her or his maximum potential.

Glossary
IQ: intelligence quotient; a numerical value for intelligence

1. According to paragraph 2, which of the following is true about environmentalists?

Ⓐ They had only a few studies to prove their viewpoint.
Ⓑ They did not agree with the use of IQ tests to measure intelligence.
Ⓒ They did not believe that educational programs could raise IQ scores.
Ⓓ They were already less popular by the mid twentieth century.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

2. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Changes in the environment rather than genetic progress caused an increase in IQ scores, according to studies by Flynn.
Ⓑ Flynn's studies were not conclusive in identifying the skills that resulted in improvements on IQ tests.
Ⓒ IQ test results in research by Flynn did not improve because of genetics and environment.
Ⓓ The reason that gains in IQ tests occurred was because of the changes in skills that were tested.

3. The word data in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ experts
   Ⓑ advice
   Ⓒ arguments
   Ⓓ information

4. Why does the author mention the "Minnesota Study of Twins" in paragraph 4?

   Ⓐ To argue that environment is more important than heredity
   Ⓑ To prove the importance of heredity in measuring IQ
   Ⓒ To establish the synthesizer's view of intelligence
   Ⓓ To summarize previous research before designing a new study

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

5. According to paragraph 4, what can be inferred about the results of the Minnesota Study of Twins?

   Ⓐ Twins brought up in different environments probably had similar IQ scores.
   Ⓑ The environments were more important to IQ than the genetic similarity of twins.
   Ⓒ The study did not support the previous work by Jensen and Herrnstein.
   Ⓓ The IQ scores of twins can vary by as much as 80 percent.

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

6. According to Jensen's opponents, why are IQ tests unreliable?

   Ⓐ Heredity is not measured on the current forms of IQ tests.
   Ⓑ It is difficult to determine whether a factor is due to heredity or environment.
   Ⓒ Learning abilities and patterns are different for people of diverse racial heredity.
   Ⓓ They only measure intelligence and not many other important factors.

7. The word these in the passage refers to

   Ⓐ differences in measured intelligence
   Ⓑ a large amount of data
   Ⓒ particular abilities
   Ⓓ specific environments

8. Based on the information in paragraph 6, which of the following best explains the term "synthesizing"?

   Ⓐ A moderate position between the two extremes
   Ⓑ A position for which the evidence is overwhelming
   Ⓒ A controversial position that is hotly debated
   Ⓓ A modern revision of an outdated position

   Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

9. According to a synthesizer's view, how does heredity influence intelligence?

   Ⓐ Heredity is very important but not as influential as environment.
   Ⓑ Heredity sets limits on intelligence, but environment can overcome them.
   Ⓒ A productive environment influences intelligence more than any other factor.
   Ⓓ Heredity and environment interact within the limits set at birth.

10. According to the passage, all of the following are true of the hereditarian view EXCEPT

    Ⓐ Studies by Jensen and Herrnstein support this point of view.
    Ⓑ Many psychologists in the early twentieth century were hereditarians.
    Ⓒ Intelligence as measured by IQ tests is a result of genetic predisposition.
    Ⓓ Environmental factors are not able to be separated from heredity.

11. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about IQ tests?

    Ⓐ The author believes that IQ tests should be used continuously from infancy.
    Ⓑ According to the author, there are too many disadvantages to IQ testing.
    Ⓒ The author maintains a neutral point of view about IQ tests in the discussion.
    Ⓓ IQ tests should be used in research studies but they should not be used in schools.

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    Those who took this *hereditarian* view of intelligence thought that IQ tests and similar instruments measured innate differences present from birth in people's capacity.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. Complete the table by matching the phrases on the left with the headings on the right. Select the appropriate answer choices and drag them to the views of intelligence to which they relate. TWO of the answer choices will NOT be used.
    This question is worth 4 points.

    To delete an answer choice, click on it. To see the passage, click on **View Text**.

Answer Choices	**Hereditarian**
A *Proposed interaction between heredity and environment.*	•
B Attributed lower IQ to malnutrition and lack of health care.	•
C Suggested an innate range of IQ was influenced by environment.	•

		Environmentalist
D	Was supported by the Minnesota Twins study in the 1970s.	
E	Claimed racial composition was a factor in measured IQ.	•
F	Maintained that IQ tests were often biased in favor of the majority culture.	•
G	Cited schooling as a positive consideration in the gains in IQ.	•
H	Stated that social improvements improve performance on IQ tests.	•
I	Advanced this viewpoint when IQ tests were being developed.	•

14. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Historically, psychologists have proposed three viewpoints to explain the influence of heredity and environment on IQ scores.

•

•

•

Answer Choices

A. Studies by James Flynn verified significant increases in IQ scores among populations in fourteen nations in the last century.

B. By the 1970s, psychologists reversed their position, citing heredity as the primary determiner of intelligence as measured by IQ tests.

C. Because IQ tests are unfair to minority cultures, the current view is to disregard previous studies that use them as a basis for measurement.

D. In the mid-1900s, the popular view was that environment was the more important factor in the development of intelligence.

E. Before the development of IQ tests, both heredity and environment were thought to influence the relative intelligence of children.

F. Some modern psychologists have proposed a theory that relies on the interaction between heredity and environment to determine IQ.



This is the end of the Reading Quiz. To check your answers, refer to the Progress Chart for the Reading Quiz, Chapter 5, pages 521–522.

STUDY PLAN

What did you learn from taking the quiz? What will you do differently when you take the model tests in the next chapter? Take a few minutes to think, and then write a sentence or two to help you revise your study plan.

EXTRA CREDIT

After you have completed this chapter, you may want to continue a review of reading. Here are some suggestions.

Practice reading on a computer screen. Reading on a computer screen is different from reading on a page. First, there is generally less text visible. Second, you must scroll instead of turning pages. Finally, there may be quite a few icons or other distracting visuals surrounding the passage. To become comfortable with reading on a computer screen, you should take advantage of every opportunity you have to practice. If you have a computer, spend time reading on the screen. Everything you read will help you improve this new skill.

Practice reading the kinds of topics that you will find in the Reading section. The reading passages are similar to the information that you will find in textbooks from general courses taught in colleges and universities during the first two years. If you can borrow English language textbooks, read passages from natural sciences, social sciences, the humanities, and the arts. The kinds of passages in encyclopedias are usually at a reading level slightly below that of textbooks, but they offer an inexpensive way to obtain a lot of reading material for different content areas. If you have access to the Internet, free encyclopedias are available online. An encyclopedia on CD-ROM is another option, which you may be able to use at a local library. If you purchase an encyclopedia on CD-ROM, an edition from a previous year will be cheaper and just as useful for your purposes.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

If your body is relaxed, your mind can relax more easily. During the TOEFL examination, if you find yourself pursing your lips, frowning, and tightening your shoulders, then use a few seconds to stretch. Clasp your hands and put your arms over your head. Then turn your palms up to the ceiling and look up at your fingers. Pull your arms up as high as you can to stretch your muscles. Be sure not to look at anything but your own hands and the ceiling. That way, you won't be suspected of signaling to a friend. Even a two-second stretch can make a difference. Now, yawn or take a deep breath in and out, and you'll be more relaxed and ready to go on.

LISTENING

OVERVIEW OF THE LISTENING SECTION

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

There are two formats for the Listening section. On the short format, you will listen to two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions. On the long format, you will listen to three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it. Only two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions will be graded. The other passages are part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which conversations, lectures, and discussions will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You have 20 minutes to answer all of the questions on the short format and 30 minutes to answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

REVIEW OF PROMPTS AND QUESTIONS

➤ Prompts

A prompt for the Listening section is either a conversation on a college campus or part of a lecture or discussion in a college classroom on one of the natural sciences, social sciences, humanities, or arts. Each conversation, lecture, or discussion is between three and six minutes long. There are either 6 or 9 prompts in the Listening section with 5–6 questions after each prompt. When you are presented with 6 prompts, all 6 will be graded. When you are presented with 9 prompts, only 6 will be graded, and 3 will be used for experimental purposes. You should do your best on all 9 prompts because you will not know which of them will be graded. Questions 1–4 in this review refer to the first prompt. Questions 5–10 refer to the second prompt. The scripts for the prompts in this review chapter have been printed for you to study while you listen to them. On the official TOEFL® iBT, you will not see the prompts, but you will see the questions while you hear them. The quiz at the end of this review and the model tests are like the official TOEFL® iBT. You will not see the scripts while you listen to the prompts for the quiz and the model tests.

CONVERSATION



Questions 1–4, Conversation, CD 1 Track 2
Listen to a conversation on campus between two students.

Man: Wait up. I need to ask you about something.
Woman: Oh, hi Jack.
Man: Hi. Listen, I was just wondering whether you understood what Professor Carson was saying about the review session next Monday?
Woman: Sure. Why?
Man: Well, the way I get it, it's optional.
Woman: Right. He said if we didn't have any questions, we should just use the time to study on our own.
Man: Okay. That's what I thought. Maybe I'll just skip it then.
Woman: Well, it's up to you, but the thing is . . . sometimes at a review session, someone else will ask a question, and, you know, the way the professor explains it, it's really helpful, I mean, to figure out what he wants on the test.
Man: Oh I didn't think about it that way, but it makes sense. So, you're going to go then.
Woman: Absolutely. Um, I've had a couple of other classes with Carson and the review sessions always helped get me organized for the test.
Man: Oh.
Woman: And, if you've missed any of the lectures, he usually has extra handouts from all the classes. So . . .
Man: Well, I haven't missed any of the sessions.
Woman: Me neither. But I'm still going to be there. Look, uh, if it's like the other review sessions, the first hour he's going to go over the main points for each class, kind of like an outline of the course. Then from five-thirty to six-thirty, he'll take questions. That's the best part. And the last half hour, he'll stay for individual conferences with people who need extra help. I usually don't stay for that.
Man: Okay. So we just show up at the regular time and place for class?
Woman: Or not, if you decide to study on your own.
Man: Right. But, don't you think he'll notice who's there?
Woman: He said he wasn't going to take attendance.
Man: Yeah, but still . . .
Woman: It's a fairly large class.
Man: But if he's grading your final and he remembers you were at the review, it *might make* a difference.
Woman: Maybe. I think the important thing is just to study really hard and do your best. But, the review sessions help me study. I think they're really good.
Man: Okay. Thanks. I guess I'll go, too.
Woman: So I'll see you there.
Man: Yeah, I think I . . . I'd better go.

➤ Questions

This review presents the types of questions that are most frequently tested on the TOEFL. The number of points assigned to each question is based on the evaluation system for the TOEFL. The frequency level for each question is based on the average number of 17 questions that are usually included in a Listening set of three prompts.

Average	1–2
High	3–4
Very high	5+

1: Purpose

A *Purpose* question asks you to explain why the speakers are having a conversation or why the professor is presenting the material in a lecture. Choose from four reasons.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

1. Why does the man want to talk with the woman?

Ⓐ To ask her to help him study for the exam
Ⓑ To get some handouts for a class he has missed
● To clarify his understanding of the review session
Ⓓ To find out her opinion of Professor Carson

2: Detail

A *Detail* question asks you to answer a question about a specific point in the conversation or lecture.
Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Very high

2. Why does the woman think that the review session will be helpful?

Ⓐ Because she has some questions that she wants to ask the professor
Ⓑ Because Professor Carson will tell them some of the test questions
● Because it helps to hear the answers to questions that other people ask
Ⓓ Because she needs an individual conference with the professor

3: Inference

An *Inference* question asks you to draw a conclusion based on information in the conversation or lecture. Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—High

3. Why does the man decide to go to the review session?

Ⓐ Because the review session will make up for absences
● Because the woman convinces him that it is a good idea
Ⓒ Because the professor has recommended the session
Ⓓ Because he needs help to organize his class notes

4: Pragmatics

A *Pragmatics* question asks you to comprehend the function of language on a level deeper than the surface meaning. You may need to understand the purpose or motivation of the speaker, or you may need to interpret the speaker's attitude or doubt about something in the conversation or lecture. Listen to a replay of the sentence or sentences that you must interpret. Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Very high

4. Listen again to part of the conversation. Then answer the following question.

Woman: He said he wasn't going to take attendance.
Man: Yeah, but still . . .
Woman: It's a fairly large class.

Why does the man say this: "Yeah, but still . . ."?

● He thinks that the professor will notice if a student is absent.
Ⓑ He agrees with the woman about the attendance policy.
Ⓒ He wants to change the subject that they are discussing.
Ⓓ He tries to encourage the woman to explain her opinion.

LECTURE



Questions 5–10, Lecture, CD 1, Track 3
Listen to part of a lecture in a zoology class.

Professor:
As you know from the textbook, mimicry isn't limited to insects, but it's most common among them, and by mimicry I'm referring to the likeness between two insects that aren't closely related but look very much alike. The insects that engage in mimicry are usually very brightly colored. One of the insects, the one that's characterized by an unpleasant taste, a bad smell, a sting or bite, that insect is called the *model*. The mimic looks like the model but doesn't share the characteristic that protects the model from predators. But, of course, the predators associate the color pattern or some other trait with the unpleasant characteristic and leave both insects alone.

Henry Bates was one of the first naturalists who noticed that some butterflies that closely resembled each other were actually unrelated, so mimicry in which one species copies another is called Batesian mimicry. I have some lab specimens of a few common mimics in the cases here in the front of the room, and I want you to have a chance to look at them before the end of the class. There's a day flying moth with brown and white and yellow markings. And this moth is the model because it has a very unpleasant taste and tends to be avoided by moth eaters. But you'll notice that the swallowtail butterfly mounted beside it has very similar coloration, and actually the swallowtail doesn't have the unpleasant taste at all. Another example is the monarch butterfly, which is probably more familiar to you since they pass through this area when they're migrating. But you may not know that they have a very nasty taste because I seriously doubt that any of you have eaten one. But for the predators who *do* eat butterflies, this orange and black pattern on the monarch is a warning signal not to sample it. So, the viceroy butterfly here is a mimic. Same type of coloring but no nasty taste. Nevertheless, the viceroy isn't bothered by predators either, because it's mistaken for the monarch. So how does a predator know that the day flying moth and the monarch aren't good to eat? Well, a bird only has to eat one to start avoiding them all—models and mimics.

A stinging bumblebee is another model insect. The sting is painful and occasionally even fatal for predators. So there are a large number of mimics. For example, there's a beetle that mimics bumblebees by beating its wings to make noise, and the astonishing thing is that it's able to do this at the same rate as the bumblebee so exactly the same buzzing sound is created. I don't have a specimen of that beetle, but I do have a specimen of the hoverfly, which is a mimic of the honeybee, and it makes a similar buzzing sound, too. When you compare the bee with the fly, you'll notice that the honeybee has two sets of wings, and the hoverfly has only one set of wings, but as you can imagine, the noise and the more or less similar body and color will keep most predators from approaching closely enough to count the wings.

Some insects without stingers have body parts that mimic the sharp stinger of wasps or bees. Although the hawk moth is harmless, it has a bundle of hairs that protrudes from the rear of its body. The actual purpose of these hairs is to spread scent, but to predators, the bundle mimics a stinger closely enough to keep them away, especially if the hawk moth is moving in a threatening way as if it were about to sting. There's a hawk moth here in the case, and to me at least, it doesn't look that much like the wasp mounted beside it, but remember when you're looking at a specimen, it's stationary, and in nature the *movement* is also part of the mimicry.

Oh, here's a specimen of an ant, and this is interesting. Another naturalist, Fritz Muller, hypothesized that similarity among a large number of species could help protect *all* of them. Here's what he meant. After a few battles with a stinging or biting ant, especially when the entire colony comes to the aid of the ant being attacked, a predator will learn to avoid ants, even those that don't sting or bite, because they all look alike and the predator associates the bad experience with the group. And by extension, the predator will also avoid insects that mimic ants, like harmless beetles and spiders.

Look at this.



I have a drawing of a specimen of a stinging ant beside a specimen of a brownish spider and the front legs of the spider are mounted so they look more like antennae because that's just what the spider does to mimic an ant. That way it appears to have six legs like an ant instead of eight like a spider.

Okay, we have about ten minutes left, and I want you to take this opportunity to look at the specimen cases here in the front of the room. I'll be available for questions if you have them. How about forming two lines on either side of the cases so more of you can see at the same time?

5: Main Idea

A *Main Idea* question asks you to identify the topic of the lecture, that is, what the lecture is mainly about.
Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—High

5. What is the lecture mainly about?

- ● An explanation of mimicry among species in the insect world
- Ⓑ A comparison of the features of the viceroy and the monarch butterfly
- Ⓒ A hypothesis to explain why similarity among species protects them all
- Ⓓ A response to questions about the specimens displayed in the cases

6: Organization

An *Organization* question asks you recognize the rhetorical structure of a lecture or part of a lecture. For example, chronological order, steps in a sequence, cause and effect, comparison.
Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

6. How does the professor organize the lecture?

- ● He shows specimens to demonstrate his points.
- Ⓑ He compares the theories of two naturalists.
- Ⓒ He classifies different types of mimics.
- Ⓓ He puts the ideas in chronological order.

7: Details

A *Details* question asks you to answer a question about a specific point in the conversation or lecture.
Choose two or three answers from four to six possibilities.

Points—1–2
Frequency Level—Very high

7. According to the lecture, what are some characteristics of a *model*?

Click on 3 answer choices.

- [A] A pair of wings
- ■ A foul odor
- ■ A bad taste
- [D] A drab color
- ■ A painful sting

8: Technique

A *Technique* question asks you to identify the way that a professor makes a point, for example, by comparing, by providing a definition, by giving an example.
Choose from four possible answers.

Points—1
Frequency Level—Average

8. How does the professor explain Batesian mimicry?

Ⓐ By giving a precise definition
● By providing several examples
Ⓒ By referring to the textbook
Ⓓ By contrasting it with another hypothesis

9: Yes-No

A *Yes-No* question asks you to decide whether statements agree or disagree with information in the lecture.
Mark a list of statements in a chart as either *Yes* or *No*.

Points—1–2
Frequency Level—Low

9. In the lecture, the professor explains Fritz Muller's hypothesis. Indicate whether each of the following supports the hypothesis.
Click in the correct box for each choice.

		Yes	No
A	Predators avoid species of insects that have harmed them in the past by stinging or biting them.	✔	
B	Predators may be killed when an entire colony of insects joins forces against them.		✔
C	Predators leave harmless insects alone if they are part of a group that includes stinging insects.	✔	
D	Predators will refrain from attacking harmless insects if they look like insects that have stung them before.	✔	
E	Predators protect themselves from harmful insects by stinging or biting them before they are attacked.		✔

10: Connections

A *Connections* question asks you to relate ideas or information in the lecture. Match answers with categories, list the order of events or steps in a process, and show relationships on a chart.

Points—1–4/Seven choices
1–3/Five choices
Frequency Level—Low

10. Indicate whether each insect below refers to a model or a mimic.
Click in the correct box for each phrase.

Insects	Mimic	Model
A A viceroy butterfly		
B A brown spider		
C A hawk moth		
D A bumblebee		
E A biting ant		

LISTENING STRATEGIES

In addition to the academic skills that you will learn in Chapter 3, there are several listening strategies that will help you succeed on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL.

➤ Get organized

Before you begin the Listening section on the official TOEFL, you will have an opportunity to adjust the volume on your headset. Be sure to do it before you dismiss the directions and begin the test. After the test has begun, you may not be able to adjust the volume without missing some of the information in the audio. When you practice using the model tests in this book, adjust the volume at the beginning. Learn to get it right without touching the volume button again during practice. Then, prepare to listen. The directions tend to be long and boring, especially if you have experience taking model tests and know what to do. Don't get distracted. Be ready to hear the first word in the introduction to the first listening passage.

- Adjust the volume first
- Prepare to listen

➤ Preview

The introductions for the conversations and lectures contain important information that will help you prepare your mind to listen. For example, the narrator may say, "Now get ready to listen to part of a lecture in a history class." When you hear the introduction, you learn two

useful facts. First, you know that you will be listening to a lecture. Second, you know that the lecture will be about history. This is helpful because it is a preview for the listening passage.

- Pay attention to the introductions
- Glance at the photo

➤ Use visuals

The photographs and other visuals are there to provide a context for the conversations and lectures. In general, the pictures of people are for orientation to the conversations and lectures, whereas the visuals of objects, art, specimens, maps, charts, and drawings support the meaning of the conversations and lectures. Do *not* focus on the pictures of people. *Do* focus on the other visuals that appear during the conversations and lectures. They could reappear in a question. When you take the model tests, practice selective attention. Look briefly at the pictures of the professor and the students, but be alert to the other visuals. If you become too involved in looking at the people, you may pay less attention to the audio, and you could miss part of the passage.

- Glance at the photos of people
- Focus on content visuals

➤ Read screen text

During the questions for conversations and lectures, watch the screen carefully. You will hear the questions, and you will also see them as text on the screen. If you find that it is to your advantage to close your eyes or look away from the photo during the short conversations, be sure to give your full attention to the screen again while the questions are being asked and the answer choices are presented. By using the model tests, you will be able to develop a rhythm for interacting with the screen that is best for you.

- Read the questions
- Develop a rhythm

➤ Understand campus context

The conversations and lectures take place in a campus context. A glossary at the end of this book contains a listing of campus vocabulary. These words and phrases will help you understand the conversations between campus personnel, professors, and students. Pragmatic understanding will help you understand the function of a sentence. A few examples of function are an apology, an explanation, or a way to get the listener's attention or to change the topic. Pragmatic understanding will also help you interpret the speaker's attitude and the nature of the information—a fact or an opinion. Studying the glossary is an important strategy for the Listening section. Start now.

- Learn campus vocabulary
- Study pragmatic cues for lectures

➤ Concentrate

Sometimes the environment for the TOEFL is not ideal. If the room is small, you may hear a very low hum from another headset, the scratch of pencils on paper when others are taking

notes or even their spoken responses for questions on the Speaking section. These sounds can be distracting, especially during the Listening section. The earphones on your headset should suppress most of the noise, but it will be helpful if you have some strategies to help you concentrate. Some students press their earphones more tightly to their ears by holding them with their hands during long listening passages, but this may be clumsy for you when you reach for the mouse to answer questions. Other students train themselves to concentrate in a somewhat distracting environment by taking at least one model test in a small room where other people are studying, such as a library or a study lounge in a dormitory. Remember, you may not be able to control the test environment, but you can control your response to it. By keeping your eyes on the screen and the scratch paper and by remaining calm, you will be able to concentrate better. If the test situation is noisy, don't get angry and start negative talk in your mind. Don't let your emotions interfere with your concentration.

- Focus on the test materials
- Stay calm

APPLYING THE ACADEMIC SKILLS TO THE TOEFL

➤ Campus Vocabulary

The first listening passage in each set of three passages is a conversation that takes place on a college or university campus. Your facility to understand campus vocabulary will help you gain valuable points when you respond to the questions about these conversations.

➤ Taking Notes

Taking notes is probably the most important academic skill for the Listening section. When you take notes, you will organize the information into major points and minor points. You will also record information that you can refer to when you answer questions. Your ability to take notes will be critical for you to score well on this section.

➤ Paraphrasing

Many of the answer choices are paraphrases of information from the passage. Your ability to recognize paraphrases will be helpful as you choose your answers.

➤ Summarizing

The first question in each conversation usually requires you to understand the purpose of the conversation, and the first question in each lecture usually requires you to recognize a summary of the main idea. By mastering the academic skill of summarizing, you will be able to respond correctly to the first question in each prompt. You will also be better prepared to relate ideas and make connections.

➤ Synthesizing

This important skill is tested in other sections of the TOEFL® iBT.

 **Questions 1–4, Conversation, CD 1, Track 4**

QUIZ FOR THE LISTENING SECTION

This is a quiz for the Listening section of the TOEFL® iBT. This section tests your ability to understand campus conversations and academic lectures. During the quiz, you will listen to one conversation and one lecture. You will hear each conversation or lecture one time and respond to questions about them. You may take notes while you listen. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Once you begin, do not pause the audio. For your reference, the script for this quiz is printed on pages 522–525.

CONVERSATION

Questions 1–4, Conversation.
Listen to a conversation on campus between a professor and a student.

1. Why does the man go to see his professor?

   Ⓐ To borrow a reference book that he needs
   Ⓑ To ask a question about the material
   Ⓒ To get advice about studying for a test
   Ⓓ To pick up some handouts from the class

2. Why does the student say this: 

   Ⓐ To challenge the professor's idea
   Ⓑ To encourage the professor to explain
   Ⓒ To try to change the subject
   Ⓓ To interrupt the professor respectfully

3. How should Jack prepare for the test?

   Ⓐ He should memorize the material in the book.
   Ⓑ He should study the questions before the test.
   Ⓒ He should organize his notes by topic.
   Ⓓ He should not change his usual study plan.

4. Why does the professor give open-book tests?

   Ⓐ Because she believes it helps students with memorization
   Ⓑ Because her tests contain a large number of small facts
   Ⓒ Because her students are more successful with the course
   Ⓓ Because she thinks it provides a better learning experience

LECTURE



Questions 5–14, Lecture, CD 1, Track 4 continued
Listen to part of a lecture in an economics class.

5. What is the lecture mainly about?

   Ⓐ Changes in economic systems
   Ⓑ Tax incentives for business
   Ⓒ Supply-side economics
   Ⓓ A favorable balance of trade

6. How does the professor organize the lecture?

   Ⓐ By contrasting several economic systems
   Ⓑ By taking a historical perspective
   Ⓒ By arguing against Friedman and Asmus
   Ⓓ By pointing out the benefits of Reaganomics

7. According to the lecturer, what did Kennedy and Reagan have in common?

   Ⓐ They were both honored as Nobel laureates in economics.
   Ⓑ They cut taxes to spur the economy during their administrations.
   Ⓒ They identified themselves with supply-side economics.
   Ⓓ They both taught at the Chicago School of Economics.

8. What would Milton Friedman most likely say about moving a manufacturing plant from the United States to a site abroad?

   Ⓐ He would oppose it because it would cause people to lose their jobs.
   Ⓑ He would consider it an opportunity for business to cut costs.
   Ⓒ He would view it as a natural process in the shift to technology.
   Ⓓ He would be concerned about the decrease in productivity.

9. According to Barry Asmus, what are two key ways that consumers contribute to the creation of new jobs?

   Click on 2 answer choices.

   [A] By investing their tax savings

   [B] By purchasing cheaper goods

   [C] By moving on to better paying jobs

   [D] By spending more money

10. How does the professor explain the shift from manufacturing to technology?

Ⓐ He points to the global economy as the explanation for it.
Ⓑ He disagrees with most economists about the long-term effects.
Ⓒ He compares it with the change from agriculture to manufacturing.
Ⓓ He believes that it is too soon to draw any conclusions about it.

11. Why does the professor mention the General Electric plant?

Ⓐ Because the plant is a good example of increased productivity
Ⓑ Because unemployment resulted from company decisions
Ⓒ Because the company was able to retrain their employees
Ⓓ Because the plant was down-sized and many jobs were lost

12. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He would like the students to answer the question.
Ⓑ He is joking with the students about the supply-siders.
Ⓒ He wants the students to follow his logical answer.
Ⓓ He is impatient because the students aren't paying attention.

13. In the lecture, the professor explains supply-side economics. Indicate whether each of the following strategies supports the theory.
Click in the correct box for each choice.

	Yes	No
A Reduce tax rates		
B Cut government spending		
C Increase productivity		
D Tolerate temporary unemployment		
E Discourage consumer spending		

14. Put the following events in the correct order.

Ⓐ Businesses hire more employees with the tax savings.
Ⓑ The government works to affect a reduction in taxes.
Ⓒ The businesses and their employees pay more taxes.
Ⓓ Profits increase because of the growth in businesses.



This is the end of the Listening Quiz. To check your answers, refer to the Progress Chart for the Listening Quiz, Chapter 5, page 526.

STUDY PLAN

What did you learn from taking the quiz? What will you do differently when you take the model tests in the next chapter? Take a few minutes to think, and then write a sentence or two to help you revise your study plan.

EXTRA CREDIT

After you have completed this chapter, you may want to continue a review of listening. Here are some suggestions.

Listen to an international news broadcast in English. Be sure to select a television or radio program that includes reporters from various English-speaking countries, especially Canada, the United States, Australia, and Great Britain. The Listening section of the TOEFL now includes voices that represent a variety of English accents. The purpose of this activity is to understand diverse speech. Don't take notes. Just listen and try to understand as much as you can.

Watch educational television programs. The Learning Channel, Discovery, PBS, BBC, and others provide narrated programming with visuals on subjects that simulate lecture topics on the TOEFL. Take notes while you watch the program. During commercial breaks, mute the program and try to summarize the major points that you have heard, using your notes.

Attend lectures in English. Local colleges and clubs often have free lectures in English. Choose to attend lectures that simulate college classrooms. In addition, several websites offer lectures and talks. Use the resources listed on pages 811–812. Select topics from natural science, social science, humanities, and the arts.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

There is usually a ten-minute break after the Listening section. What you do during the break is important. If you start to talk in your language with friends who are nervous or negative, you will go back into the Speaking section nervous and negative. If you are permitted to talk, choose a friend who is willing to speak English with you during the break. Use the time to encourage each other with positive talk. If you speak English, you will continue thinking in English, and you will make a smooth transition into the next section of the TOEFL. If you are also thinking positively, you will be ready to do your best. If you are instructed not to talk to others, then prepare some positive phrases in English to repeat in your mind or begin to rehearse some of the phrases that you have prepared for the first two tasks, page 71 and page 73 in this chapter.

SPEAKING

OVERVIEW OF THE SPEAKING SECTION

The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time, and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

REVIEW OF PROMPTS AND QUESTIONS

➤ Prompts

A prompt for the Speaking section is either spoken or written. For example, a prompt might be a question, a conversation, part of a lecture, a written announcement, or part of a textbook passage. Each question has a slightly different prompt. There are six sets of prompts in the Speaking section with 1 question after each set. Questions 1–6 in this review refer to the kinds of prompts that are typical on the TOEFL® iBT. The scripts for the spoken prompts have been printed for you to study while you listen to them. On the official TOEFL, you will not see the spoken prompts. You will see the written announcements and textbook passages, and you will also see the questions while you hear them. The quiz at the end of this review and the model tests are like the official TOEFL® iBT. You will not see the scripts while you listen to the prompts for the quiz and the model tests.

➤ Questions

This review presents the types of questions that are most frequently tested on the TOEFL. The task for each question is explained. Each question appears as one of the 6 tasks included in the Speaking section.

1: Experiences

In Question 1, you will be asked to speak about a personal experience. This may be a place, a person, a possession, a situation, or an occasion. After you hear the question, you will make a choice from your experience and then explain why you made that choice.

You will have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to speak.

Task

- Describe your experience
- Explain the reasons or give examples

 **Example Question, CD 1, Track 5**

Where would you like to study in the United States?

Example Notes—Answer and Reasons

Washington, D.C.

- Family in the area–advice, help
- International city–food, stores
- Tours–sites, trains to other cities
- Universities–excellent, accepted at 1

 **Example Answer, CD 1, Track 5 continued**

I'd like to study at a university in Washington, D.C., because I have family in the area, and . . . and it would be nice to have them close by so I could visit them on holidays and in case I need advice or help. I've been to Washington several times, and I like it there. It's an international city with restaurants and stores where I can buy food and other things from my country while, uh, while I'm living abroad. And Washington is an exciting place. I've gone on several tours, but I still have many places on my list of sites to see. Also, um, there are trains to New York and Florida so I could take advantage of my free time to see other cities. Um, as for the universities, there are several, uh, several excellent schools in Washington and . . . and I'd probably be accepted at one of them.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

2: Preferences

In Question 2, you will be asked to speak about a personal preference. This may be a situation, an activity, or an event. You may be asked to agree or disagree with a statement. After you hear the question, you will make a choice between two options presented and then explain why you made that choice.

You will have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to speak.

Task

- Choose between two options
- Explain the reasons for your preference



Example Question, CD 1, Track 6

Some students live in dormitories on campus. Other students live in apartments off campus. Which living situation do you think is better and why?

Example Notes—Choice and Reasons

Dormitories

- More interaction–practice English, study
- Less responsibility—meals, laundry, cleaning
- Better location–library, recreation, classroom buildings



Example Answer, CD 1, Track 6 continued

A lot of my friends live off campus, but I think that living in a dormitory is a better situation, uh, especially for the first year at a new college. Dormitories are structured to provide opportunities for interaction and for making friends. As a foreign student, it would be an advantage to be in a dormitory to practice English with other residents and to find study

groups in the dormitory. And dorm students have, uh, less responsibility for meals, laundry, and . . . and, uh, cleaning because there are meal plans and services available, uh, as part of the fees. Besides, there's only one check to write so the bookkeeping . . . it's minimal. And the dormitory offers an ideal location near the library and, um, all the recreational facilities, and . . . and the classroom buildings.

Checklist 2

✔ The talk answers the topic question.
✔ *The point* of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

3: Reports

In Question 3, you will be asked to read a short passage and listen to a speaker on the same topic. The topic usually involves a campus situation and the speaker's opinion about it. After you hear the question, you will be asked to report the speaker's opinion and relate it to the reading passage.

You will have 45 seconds to read the passage. After you have listened to the talk, you will have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to speak.

Task

- Summarize a situation and an opinion about it
- Explain the objections or support
- Connect listening and reading passages

Reading
45 seconds

Announcement concerning a proposal for a branch campus

The university is soliciting state and local funding to build a branch campus on the west side of the city where the I-19 expressway crosses the 201 loop. This location should provide convenient educational opportunities for students who live closer to the new campus as well as for those students who may choose to live on the west side once the campus is established. The city plan for the next ten years indicates that there will be major growth near the proposed site, including housing and a shopping area. By building a branch campus, some of the crowding on the main campus may be resolved.



Talk, CD 1, Track 7

Now listen to a student who is expressing an opinion about the proposal.

I understand that a branch campus on the city's west side would be convenient for students who live near the proposed site, and it might attract more local students, but I oppose the plan because it will redirect funds from the main campus where several classroom buildings need repair. Hanover Hall for one. And, uh, a lot of the equipment in the chemistry and physics labs should be replaced. In my lab classes, we don't do some of the experiments because we don't have enough equipment. And we need more teachers on the main campus. I'd like to see the branch campus funding allocated for teachers' salaries in order to decrease the student-teacher ratios. Most of the freshman classes are huge, and there's very little interaction with professors. A branch campus would be a good addition, but not until some of the problems on the main campus have been taken care of.

Example Notes—Situation and Opinion

Plans to open a branch campus

- convenient for students near
- might attract more students
- relieve crowding on main campus

But will redirect funds from main campus

- buildings need repair
- equipment should be replaced
- more teachers–smaller classes



Example Question, CD 1, Track 7 continued

The man expresses his opinion of the proposal in the announcement. Report his opinion and explain the reasons he gives for having that opinion.



Example Answer, CD 1, Track 7 continued

The man concedes that the branch campus might be advantageous for students living close to the new location, but he's concerned that the funding for a branch campus will affect funding on main campus for . . . for important capital improvements such as classroom buildings that are, uh, in need of repair. Um, and equipment in the science labs is getting old, so it needs to be replaced. And he also points out that more teachers are needed for the main campus in order to reduce student-teacher ratios, which . . . which would improve the quality of the teaching and the amount of interaction in classes. So the man feels that more attention should be given to the main campus and funding should be directed to improve the main campus before a branch campus is considered.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

4: Examples

In Question 4, you will be asked to listen to a speaker and read a short passage on the same topic. The topic usually involves a general concept and a specific example of it. After you hear the question, you will be asked to explain the example and relate it to the concept.

You will have 45 seconds to read the passage. After you have listened to the talk, you will have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to speak.

Task

- Summarize the concept in the reading
- Explain how the example in the listening supports the concept

Reading

45 seconds

> The telegraphic nature of early sentences in child language is a result of the omission of grammatical words such as the article *the* and auxiliary verbs *is* and *are* as well as word endings such as *-ing, -ed*, or *-s*. By the end of the third year, these grammatical forms begin to appear in the speech of most children. It is evident that a great deal of grammatical knowledge is required before these structures can be used correctly, and errors are commonly observed. The correction of grammatical errors is a feature of the speech of preschoolers four and five years old. The study of the errors in child language is interesting because it demonstrates when and how grammar is acquired.



Lecture, CD 1, Track 8

Now listen to a lecture on the same topic.

English uses a system of about a dozen word endings to express grammatical meaning—the *-ing* for present time, *-s* for possession and plurality, and, uh, the *–ed* for the past, to mention only a few. But . . . how and when do children learn them? Well, in a classic study by Berko in the 1950s, investigators . . . they elicited a series of forms that required the target endings. For example, a picture was shown of a bird, and . . . and the investigator identified it by saying, "This is a Wug." Then the children were shown two similar birds, to, uh, . . . to elicit the sentence, "There are two___." And if the children completed the sentence by saying "Wugs," well, then it was inferred that they had learned the *-s* ending. Okay. Essential to that study was the use of nonsense words like "Wug," since the manipulation of the endings could have been supported by words that the children had . . . had already heard. In any case, charts were developed to demonstrate the gradual nature of grammatical acquisition. And the performance by children from eighteen months to four years confirmed the basic theory of child language that the gradual reduction of grammatical errors . . . that these are evidence of language acquisition.

Example Notes—Concept and Example

Word endings–grammatical relationships

- -ed past
- -s plural

Wug experiment–Berko

- Nonsense words–not influenced by familiar
- Manipulated endings
- Data about development



Example Question, CD 1, Track 8 continued

Describe the Wug experiment and explain why the results supported the basic theory of child language acquisition.



Example Answer, CD 1, Track 8 continued

In English, there are several important word endings that express grammatical relationships, for example, the *-ed* ending signals that the speaker's talking about the past and the *-s* ending means "more than one," uh, when it's used at the end of a noun. So, when children learn English, they, um, they make errors in these endings, but they gradually refine their use until they master them. In the Wug experiment, Berko created nonsense words to get children to

*u*se end*i*ngs . . . so . . . so the researchers could, uh, follow their development. It was important not to use *real* words because the children might have been influenced by a word they'd heard before. So this experiment provided data about the time it takes and the age when endings are learned. It supported the basic theory of child language that, um, sorting out grammatical errors is a feature of the speech of four-year-olds and a stage in language acquisition.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

5: Problems

In Question 5, you will be asked to listen to a conversation and explain a problem as well as the solutions that are proposed.

After you have listened to the conversation, you will have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to speak.

Task

- Summarize the problem discussed in the conversation
- Explain why you think that one solution is better than the other



Conversation, CD 1, Track 9

Student 1: Did your scholarship check come yet?
Student 2: Yeah, it came last week. Didn't yours?
Student 1: No. That's the problem. And everything's due at the same time—tuition, my dorm fee, and let's not forget about books. I need about four hundred dollars just for books.
Student 2: Well, do you have any money left from last semester, in your checking account, I mean?
Student 1: Some, but not nearly enough. The check probably won't be here until the end of the month and I won't get paid at work for two more weeks . . . I don't know what I'm going to do.
Student 2: How about your credit card? Could you use that?

Student 1: Maybe, but I'm afraid I'll get the credit card bill before I get the scholarship check and then I'll be in worse trouble because of, you know, the interest rate for the credit card on top of everything else.

Student 2: I see your point. Still, the check might come before the credit card bill. You might have to gamble, unless . . .

Student 1: I'm listening.

Student 2: Well, unless you take out a student loan. A short-term loan. They have them set up at the Student Credit Union. Isn't that where you have your checking account?

Student 1: Umhum.

Student 2: So you could take out a short-term loan and pay it off on the day that you get your check. It wouldn't cost that much for interest because it would probably be only a few weeks. That's what I'd do.

Example Notes—Problem and Possible Solutions, Opinion, and Reasons

Problem—not enough money

- Scholarship check late
- Books, tuition, dorm due

Solutions

- Use credit card
- Take out student loan

Opinion—support student loan

- Paid same day
- $ not much



Example Question, CD 1, Track 9 continued

Describe the woman's budgeting problem and the two suggestions that the man makes. What do you think the woman should do and why?



Example Answer, CD 1, Track 9 continued

The woman doesn't have enough money for her expenses. Um, she has to pay tuition and her dorm fee is due at the same time. Besides that, she needs to buy books. So the problem is everything has to be paid now, and she won't get her scholarship check until the end of the month, and she won't get her paycheck for two weeks. Um, the man suggests that she use her credit card because she won't have to pay it off until the end of the month, but the problem is the interest would be substantial if the scholarship check is delayed. The other idea—to take out a student loan—that seems better because the loan could be paid off on the day the check arrives instead of a fixed date, and it wouldn't cost much to get a short-term loan at the Student Credit Union. So . . . I support applying for a student loan.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

6: Summaries

In Question 6, you will be asked to listen to part of an academic lecture and to give a summary of it.

After you have listened to the lecture, you will have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to speak.

Task

- Comprehend part of an academic lecture
- Summarize the main points



Lecture, CD 1, Track 10

Two types of irrigation methods that are used worldwide are mentioned in your textbook. Flood irrigation—that's been a method in use since ancient times—and we still use it today where water's cheap. Basically, canals connect a water supply like a river or a reservoir to the fields where ditches are constructed with valves that allow farmers to siphon water from the canal, sending it down through the ditches. So that way the field can be totally flooded, or smaller, narrow ditches along the rows can be filled with water to irrigate the crop. But, this method does have quite a few disadvantages. Like I said, it's contingent upon cheap water because it isn't very efficient and the flooding isn't easy to control, I mean, the rows closer to the canal usually receive much more water, and of course, if the field isn't flat, then the water won't be evenly distributed. Not to mention the cost of building canals and ditches and maintaining the system. So let's consider the alternative—the sprinkler system. In this method of irrigation, it's easier to control the water and more efficient since the water's directed only on the plants. But, in hot climates, some of the water can evaporate in the air. Still, the main problem with sprinklers is the expense for installation and maintenance because there's a very complicated pipe system and that usually involves a lot more repair and even replacement of parts, and of course, we have to factor in the labor costs in feasibility studies for sprinklers.

Example Notes—Main Points

Flood

- Not efficient
- Difficult to control–flat fields
- Initial expense to build canals, ditches
- Requires maintenance

Sprinkler

- Complicated pipe system
- Expensive to install, maintain, repair, replace
- Labor cost



Example Question, CD 1, Track 10 continued

Using examples from the lecture, describe two general types of irrigation systems. Then explain the disadvantages of each type.



Example Answer, CD 1, Track 10 continued

Two methods of irrigation were discussed in the lecture. First, flood irrigation. It involves the release of water into canals and drainage ditches that flow into the fields. The disadvantages of the flood method, um, well, it isn't very efficient since more water is used in flooding than the crops actually, uh, need, and also it isn't easy to control. Another problem is the initial expense for the construction of the canals and the connecting ditches as well as . . . as maintenance. And besides that, if the fields aren't flat, the water doesn't—I . . . I mean, it isn't distributed evenly. The second method is sprinkler irrigation, which uses less water and provides better control, but there is some evaporation, and the pipe system's complicated and can be expensive to install and maintain. So . . . there's usually a lot more labor cost because the equipment must be repaired and replaced more often than a canal system.

Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.

✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

SPEAKING STRATEGIES

In addition to the academic skills that you will learn in Chapter 3, there are several speaking strategies that will help you succeed on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL.

➤ Anticipate the first question

You will probably be asked to talk about familiar topics at the beginning of the Speaking section. If you think about some of these topics, you will know how to answer when you hear the questions. A few seconds to prepare does not give you enough time to organize your thoughts unless you have the advantage of prior preparation.

You may be asked to choose a favorite person, place, activity, or item to talk about. To prepare for this question, spend a few minutes thinking about your personal favorites.

- Prepare some answers
- Read them aloud

EXAMPLE

My favorite pastime is traveling.

1. My favorite teacher is _____.
2. My favorite city is _____.
3. My favorite class is _____.
4. My favorite book is _____.
5. My favorite movie is _____.
6. My favorite sport is _____.
7. My favorite vacation place is _____.
8. My favorite holiday is _____.
9. My favorite music is _____.
10. My favorite person is _____.

➤ Support your answers

The directions in speaking questions usually ask you to give examples or reasons to support your answers. Develop the habit of adding the word *because* after your opinions, and provide at least two reasons to support your position. You will become a better thinker and a better speaker. For example, "My favorite pastime is traveling *because* I like to meet people and I enjoy learning about different places." "My favorite city is San Diego *because* the climate is beautiful year round and there are many interesting sights in or near the city."

- Use the word *because*
- Give two or three examples or reasons

➤ Understand the task

You must listen to the question to understand how to organize your answer. If you are being asked to state an opinion, you should state your opinion and argue only one side of the issue. If you are being asked to argue both sides of the issue and take a stand, then the task is very different. In that case, you will have to make a case for both sides before you state your opinion.

- Read the question carefully
- Respond to the topic

➤ Pronounce to communicate

Everyone has an accent in English. People from Australia have an Australian accent. People from the United States have an American accent. People from Britain have a British accent. See what I mean? The important point is that your accent is okay as long as the listener can understand you. It is good to try to improve your pronunciation, but communication is more important for the TOEFL and for your academic and professional life.

- Accept your accent
- Improve communication

➤ Sound confident

If you speak in a very low voice, hesitating and apologizing, the listener makes some negative assumptions. This person is not confident. This person probably doesn't know the answer. Try to speak up and sound assertive without being aggressive. It helps to start with a smile on your face.

- Speak up
- Be assertive

➤ Read 135 words per minute

Yes, this is a speaking strategy. To succeed on the Speaking section, you will be asked to read short passages of about 100 words each, and you will have about 45 seconds in which to complete the reading. This reading speed is not impossibly fast, but you will have to avoid re-reading phrases in order to finish within the time limit. When you take the quiz at the end of this section, you will hear a cue to start reading, and a question at the end of 45 seconds.

This will help you time yourself. You probably already read 135 words per minute. If not, work on reading faster, using the reading strategies at the beginning of this chapter.

- Time yourself
- Increase speed to 135

➤ Adapt notes

The system for taking notes that you will learn in Chapter 3 can be made more effective by adapting it for each question. Use the task and the question to anticipate an outline for your notes. Refer to the example notes for Questions 1–6 on pages 61, 62, 64, 66, 68, and 70 for models of adapted notes.

- Use a system for taking notes
- Adapt the format for each question

➤ Pace yourself

There is no time for a long introduction. You have one minute or less to make your point. Start immediately with a direct statement. For example, "The lecturer compares bacteria and viruses." Include the most important points. When you practice speaking, using the model tests in this book, you will hear a prompt to start and a beep to end your speech. On the TOEFL, you must stop when the beep sounds. Always time yourself when you are practicing for the Speaking section. If you are not using the audio timing, then set a kitchen timer for the number of seconds that corresponds to the type of test problem that you are practicing—45 or 60—and then begin speaking. When the bell rings, stop speaking. Did you complete your thought or did you have more to say? Learn to pace yourself. Soon you will develop a sense of timing for the questions and you will know how much you can say in a short answer.

- Start with a direct statement
- Make a few major points
- Set a timer

➤ Prepare key phrases

Some key phrases are useful for each of the problems in the Speaking section. Refer to pages 118–119 for additional words and phrases.

Question 1: Experiences

My favorite _____ is _____ because _____ .

Question 2: Preferences

Although some people _____ , I prefer _____ because _____ .

Although there are many good reasons why _____ , I favor _____ because _____ .

Although a good argument can be made for _____ , my preference is _____ because _____.

Question 3: Reports

The speaker supports _____ because _____ .

The speaker opposes _____ because _____ .

Question 4: Examples

According to the (reading, lecture) _____ .

_____ is an example of _____ .

Question 5: Problems

The problem is that _____ .

According to _____ , one solution is to _____ .

Another possibility is to _____ .

I think that the best solution is to _____ because _____ .

It seems to me that _____ is the best solution because _____ .

Question 6: Summaries

Definition:	According to the lecturer, a _____ is _____ .
Description:	According to the lecturer, a _____ has (three) characteristics.
Classification:	(Two) types of _____ were discussed in the lecture.
Chronology:	The lecturer explained the sequence of events for _____ .
Comparison:	The lecturer compared _____ with _____ .
Contrast:	The lecturer contrasted _____ with _____ .
Cause and Effect:	The lecturer explains why _____ .
Problem and Solution:	The lecturer presents several solutions for the problem of _____ .

- Study the key phrases
- Practice using them

➤ Use verbal pauses

If you get to a point where you don't know what to say, it is better to use some verbal pauses to think instead of stopping and thinking in silence. Silence on the tape is going to lose points for you. You can say, *Okay*, *Now*, *Um*, *And,* or *Uh*. All of these verbal pauses are very common in the speech of native speakers. Of course, if you use these too often, you will also lose points because they will distract the listener and you won't have enough time to answer the question completely.

- Learn verbal pauses
- Use them when necessary

➤ Correct yourself

How can you correct yourself while you are speaking? First, recognize the difference between mistakes and slips. Most of the time, you *don't know* that you have made a mistake, but you *do know* when you make a slip. Even native speakers make mistakes and slips in grammar. In a very long sentence, we can forget whether the subject was singular or plural, and we can make a mistake. But sometimes we hear our mistake, and we correct slips by backing up and starting over. Some commonly used phrases to correct a previous grammatical slip are *I mean* or *that is*. For example, "The worker bees that take care of the young is called, I mean are called, nurses." These phrases can be used to correct content, too. For example, "Drones are female bees, I mean, male bees." A good rule is to always correct slips in content and correct slips in grammar and word choice if you can do it quickly and move along without interrupting the flow of your speech.

- Correct slips
- Use common phrases

➤ Speak to the criteria for evaluation

There are checklists for each question on the Speaking section. Use these checklists to evaluate your speaking. If you do not know how to use the checklist, get some extra help. For other options to evaluate your speaking, see page 79.

- Keep the checklists in mind
- Take advantage of other options

➤ Stay positive

It is natural to be a little anxious about speaking in a second language, but it is important not to become negative and frightened. Negative thoughts can interfere with your concentration, and you may not hear the questions correctly. Take some deep breaths before each question and say this in your mind: "I am a good speaker. I am ready to speak." If you begin to have negative thoughts during the test, take another deep breath and think "confidence" as you breathe in. Focus on listening to the questions. Focus on taking notes.

- Take deep breaths
- Use positive self-talk

APPLYING THE ACADEMIC SKILLS TO THE TOEFL

➤ Campus Vocabulary

Campus vocabulary is important when you are responding to Questions 3 and 5 on the Speaking section. In Question 3, you will read a campus announcement and listen to a conversation about it. In Question 5, you will listen to a campus conversation. Your ability to understand campus vocabulary will help you understand the announcement and the conversations. If you can use campus vocabulary correctly in your responses to these questions, you will impress the raters.

➤ Taking notes

Taking notes is an important academic skill for the Speaking section because you will use them to organize your talk and you will refer to them while you are speaking. When you take notes, it will help you to adapt to the type of question presented. Use the example notes in this chapter to help you. Your ability to take notes will support your success on every question in the Speaking section.

➤ Paraphrasing

Many of the answer choices are paraphrases of information from the passage. Your ability to recognize paraphrases will be helpful as you choose your answers.

➤ Summarizing

You will be speaking a minute or less in response to each question. You must be brief, but you must also include all of your major points. In other words, you must summarize. The first two questions in the Speaking section require you to talk about familiar topics. In these questions, you can summarize your experiences. The last two questions require you to summarize the information in a conversation and a lecture. Your ability to summarize will be crucial for you to score well on this section.

➤ Synthesizing

This important skill is tested in two questions on the Speaking section. Question 3 requires you to synthesize the information in a talk and in a short reading. Question 4 requires you to synthesize the information in a reading passage and in a lecture. You will receive points not only for speaking well but also for including accurate content. The ability to integrate reading and listening by synthesizing information will be necessary for you to achieve a high score on the Speaking section.



Quiz for the Speaking Section, CD 1, Track 11

QUIZ FOR THE SPEAKING SECTION

This is a quiz for the Speaking section of the TOEFL® iBT. This section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic context. During the quiz, you will respond to six speaking questions. You may take notes as you listen. You may use your notes to answer the questions. The reading passages and the questions are written (printed in the book), but the directions will be spoken. Once you begin, do not pause the audio.

QUESTION 1

If you were asked to choose one movie that has influenced your thinking, which one would you choose? Why? What was especially impressive about the movie? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

QUESTION 2

Some people think that teachers should be evaluated by the performance of their students on standardized tests at the end of the term. Other people maintain that teachers should be judged by their own performance in the classroom, and not by the scores that their students achieve on tests. Which approach do you think is better and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

QUESTION 3

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Policy for Tuition

In order to qualify for instate tuition, a student must have lived within this state for a period of not less than one year. Furthermore, the instate address must be the permanent residence of the student. College campus addresses may not be used as permanent residences. The student's driver's license and any vehicles must be registered in the state, and the previous year's state tax form must have been submitted to this state. Voter registration and a high school diploma may also be used as evidence of instate status. Spouses and children of military personnel qualify for instate tuition without residence requirements.

The student expresses his opinion of the policy for instate tuition. Report his opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

QUESTION 4

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Communication with Primates

Early experiments to teach primates to communicate with their voices failed because of the differences in their vocal organs, not their intellectual capacity. Dramatic progress was observed when researchers began to communicate by using American Sign Language. Some chimpanzees were able to learn several hundred signs that they put together to express a number of relationships similar to the initial language acqusition of children. In addition, success was achieved by using plastic symbols on a magnetic board, each of which represented a word. For example, a small blue triangle represented an apple. Chimpanzees were able to respond correctly to basic sequences and even to form some higher-level concepts by using the representative system.

Explain how the example of the Kanzi experiment demonstrates progress in research on primate communication.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

QUESTION 5

Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

QUESTION 6

Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the habitable zone, and then explain how the definition has been expanded by modern scientists.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds



This is the end of the Speaking Quiz. To check your answers, refer to the Progress Chart for the Speaking Quiz, Chapter 5, page 531. Example answers can be heard on CD1, Track 12.

STUDY PLAN

What did you learn from taking the quiz? What will you do differently when you take the model tests in the next chapter? Take a few minutes to think and then write a sentence or two to help you revise your study plan.

EXTRA CREDIT

After you have completed this chapter, you may want to continue a review of speaking. Here are some suggestions.

Listen to good models of speaking in similar situations. Research is clearly on the side of those who advocate listening as a method to improve speaking. This means that one of the best ways to learn to speak well is to listen to good speakers. It is also important to simulate the kind of speaking situation that you will be required to complete. On the TOEFL, you have six questions and six situations. If you ask similar questions to excellent speakers and listen carefully to their responses, you will learn a great deal. That is why this book contains recorded examples of the answers that excellent speakers might provide for the questions in this review chapter and in the Speaking section of each model test. For extra credit and improvement, ask teachers or English-speaking friends to record their answers to the Speaking questions in this book. Don't give them the questions in advance. Use the same presentation and timing that you are using for the model tests. Then listen to their answers.

Practice using the telephone to speak. Call a friend to practice some of the speaking questions by phone. Speak directly into the phone. Ask your friend to confirm that you are speaking at a good volume to be heard clearly and that you sound confident, but not arrogant. If your friend is a native speaker, you can ask some of the Speaking questions and listen to the responses. Most telephones have a recording option. With your friend's permission, you can record the call. Be sure to time the responses.

OPTIONS FOR EVALUATION

It is difficult to evaluate your own speaking. If you are taking an English class, ask your teacher to use the checklists in this chapter to evaluate your speaking. You need to know how you are progressing in relationship to the criteria on the checklists because that is how you will be evaluated on the TOEFL® iBT.

If you do not have good options to have your speaking evaluated without a fee, there is a fee-based option that will provide professional evaluations. See page 809 for details.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

When you face a challenge, "fake it until you can make it." This means that you should act as though everything were working out well, even when you have doubts. Put a smile on your face, even if it isn't real, and eventually it will be a real smile. Stand up straight with your head high and walk with purpose. You will start to actually feel more confident. If you are acting like a successful person, it may feel strange at first. But the more you practice your role as a successful person, the more comfortable you will be. Soon, when you reach your goals and you are truly successful, you will have practiced the role, and you will be the person you have been playing.

WRITING

OVERVIEW OF THE WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

REVIEW OF PROMPTS AND QUESTIONS

➤ Prompts

A prompt for the Writing section is either a question that refers to both a spoken and written text for the integrated essay or a written question for the independent essay. Questions 1 and 2 in this review present the kind of prompts that are typical on the TOEFL. On the official TOEFL® iBT, you will be asked to respond to one integrated question and one independent question. The scripts for the spoken prompts have been printed for you to study while you listen to them. On the official TOEFL® iBT, you will not see the spoken prompt. You will see the written question and the textbook passage.

➤ Questions

This review provides the types of questions that are most frequently tested in the Writing section on the TOEFL. The task for each question is explained here.

1: Synthesis of Opposing Ideas

In this integrated essay question, you will be asked to read a short passage from a textbook and then listen to part of a short lecture about the same topic. The ideas in the textbook and the lecture will not agree. After you read the question, you write an essay that includes information from both the reading and the lecture.

You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Task

- Read a short passage and take notes
- Listen to a short lecture and take notes
- Answer a question using information from *both* the reading and the lecture

Note: A six-step plan is presented in Chapter 3, beginning on page 195.

Reading Passage

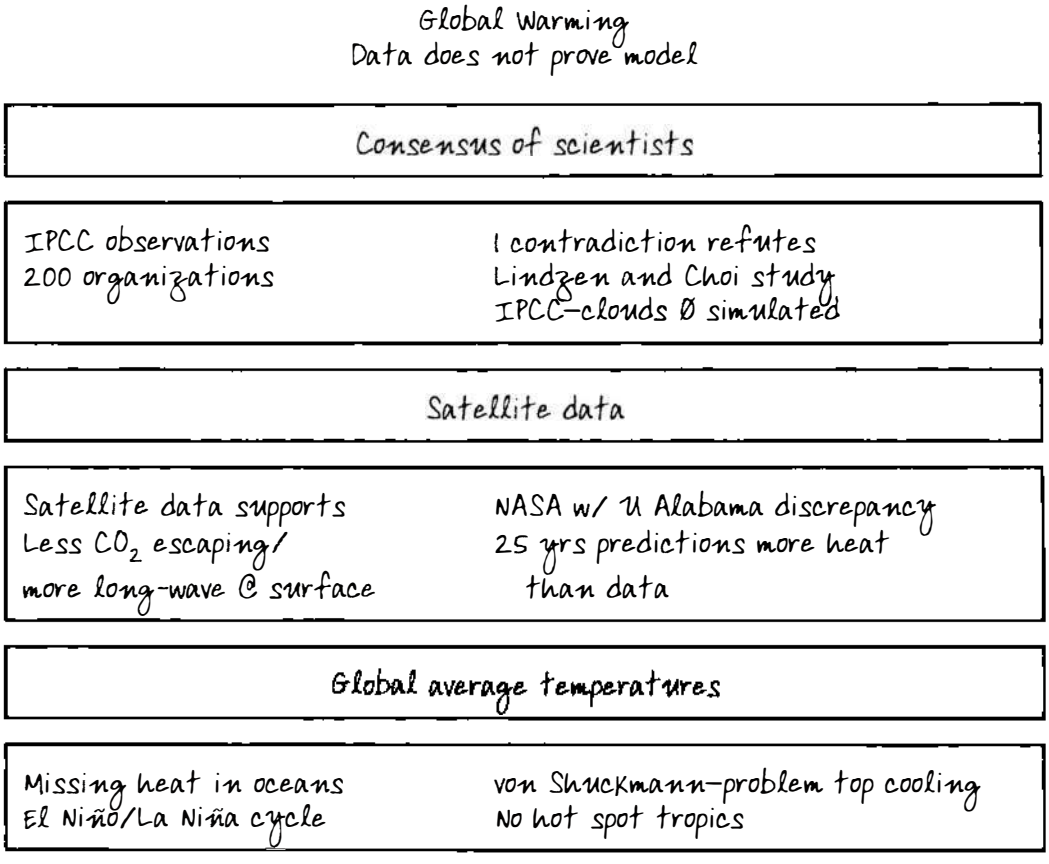
Time: 3 minutes

Global warming has become a hotly contested issue. Although they concede that changes will be different from one region to another globally, a consensus of scientists support the theory that greenhouse gases produced by human activities are causing unprecedented changes. According to the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), the warming of the climate system is evident from observations of increases in global average air and ocean temperatures, widespread melting of snow and ice, and rising global average sea levels. The panel cites 200 worldwide scientific organizations that hold the same position.

Satellite data also supports the position on climate change. Earth orbiting satellites and other technological advances have enabled scientists to collect information about the planet and climate on a global scale. For example, we know that less CO_2 has been escaping to outer space at the specific wavelengths of greenhouse gases but increased long-wave radiation is measured at the surface of the Earth at the same wavelengths.

Finally, in spite of the fact that the global annual temperature is lower than would have been expected by models of warming, supporters of the global warming model account for the missing heat by postulating that it can be found in the oceans. Variations in ocean temperatures occur on a 15- to 30-year cycle. In the positive phase, El Niño tends to warm the atmosphere. In the negative phase, La Niña brings cold waters up from the depths along the Equator and cools the planet. By inserting this cyclical factor into the climate change model, the lower temperatures fit the general pattern predicted.

Example Notes



Lecture, CD 1, Track 13

Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage you have just read.

Although the dominant argument for global warming is that a majority of scientists support the model, well, any scientist would have to agree that consensus is a false proof of a scientific theory. Why? Because only one contradictory piece of empirical evidence is sufficient to refute a theory. That is, to quote Richard Feynman, "The exception proves that the rule is wrong." That's the core of the scientific method. And many scientists with credentials equal to those of the proponents of global warming have put forward objections to the models that argue the global warming issue. To cite only one example, Lindzen and Choi have measured changes in the *outgoing* long-wave radiation from the top of the atmosphere during periods of warming, and their findings directly contradicted the global warming model because the increased carbon dioxide didn't block outgoing long-wave radiation. Even the latest IPCC report acknowledges that the models don't simulate clouds well and that's where the main uncertainties lie. So there isn't a consensus, even among the proponents of the global warming models.

Now let's look at the satellite data, that supposedly proves the theory. In a joint study by the University of Alabama with NASA, . . . in their study, they found a huge discrepancy between the forecasts by the United Nations, using computer models and the actual amount

of heat that's trapped, especially over the oceans. In fact, the NASA data show that the models put forward for the past 25 years have consistently predicted more heat being trapped than real-world satellite data actually records.

Finally, we must examine the primary explanation for the difference between the climate change in global average temperature that global warming has predicted and the much lower change in global average temperature that we've experienced. Now according to a model by von Shuckmann, the missing heat is in the ocean at depths of about 2000 meters but the problem here is that the top of the ocean is cooling, so how can the bottom be warming? And furthermore, we should see a hot spot close to the tropics because more water should have evaporated to this part of the atmosphere and would have caused rapid warming if the models were accurate, but again this doesn't conform to the scientific data.

Essay Question

Summarize the main points in the lecture, and explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Integrated Essay

The lecturer refutes all three arguments for global warming presented in the reading passage. First, she points out that a consensus does not prove a theory. For scientific proof, all the evidence must support the hypothesis. However, many credible scientists disagree with those who champion the global warming issue. For example, the results of experiments by Lindzen and Choi contradicted the global warming model. Furthermore, the most recent IPCC report recognizes that the model doesn't simulate clouds well, which introduces uncertainty even among those who come down on the side of global warming.

Next, satellite data released by NASA in a joint study with the University of Alabama revealed a major inconsistency between the predictions by the United Nations, using computer models and actual data collected by satellites for the past 25 years. The models projected more heat, especially over the oceans, than the satellite data recorded.

Last, global warming proponents have offered a weak explanation for the lower average temperatures on Earth as compared with the expected temperatures in the model. According to von Schuckmann, for instance, the missing heat can be found in the ocean at depths of about 2000 meters. One flaw in this argument is the inconsistency of cooling on the surface and warming below it. A second problem is the absence of a hot spot near the tropics where more water should have evaporated, causing rapid warming, as predicted in the global warming model.

In short, at this point, many highly regarded experts disagree with the model because the scientific data contradicts it.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.

Independent Essay

Although I understand students who desire to concentrate all of their energy on applications to their first-choice schools, I support making application to several different schools. There are two reasons why I feel this is important. First, application does not guarantee admission, even for a very highly qualified applicant. The school that a student prefers may have very competitive standards for acceptance. In spite of excellent academic credentials, high scores on admissions tests such as the SAT and the TOEFL, and exceptional supporting documents, some qualified applicants may be turned away because of not enough space to accommodate them. If students apply to their first-choice schools, and they are not accepted for reasons that could not be anticipated, they may find themselves in the position of being without a school for at least a semester while they scramble to apply to the schools they had considered as second or third choices. It is expensive to apply to a large number of schools because of the application fees, but making applications to three schools can save time, which is also a valuable commodity.

Another reason to apply to several schools is the opportunity to learn more about each the educational options during the application process. While materials are being submitted and communication is occurring between the student and the school officials, advantages at the second- or third-choice school may be discovered as a result of the information exchanged. Scholarships, grants, and other opportunities may be extended when the committee is reviewing the application at one of the schools. For example, an unpublicized research assistantship may be available because of the prior work experience that an applicant has included on the application form. Conversely, the experience that the student has in applying to the first-choice school may be so negative that another school will be more attractive than the first-choice institution.

When I am ready to study at a university, I plan to apply to three schools—two with very competitive standards, and one with moderate standards. If I am admitted at my first-choice school, I will be happy, but I will leave my options open during the application process just in case I discover some advantages at one of the other schools.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well-organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

Evaluator's Comments

The writing sample is well-organized. It addresses the question and does not digress from the topic. There is a logical progression of ideas, and the writer uses good transitions. Opinions are supported by examples. The writer demonstrates excellent language proficiency, as evidenced by a variety of grammatical structures and acceptable vocabulary. The reader can understand this opinion without re-reading. There are only a few grammatical errors that appear to have occurred because of time constraints. They have been corrected below:

Line 5	in spite of
Line 7	because there is not enough space
Line 14	each of the educational options

WRITING STRATEGIES

In addition to the academic skills that you will learn in Chapter 3, there are several writing strategies that will help you succeed on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL. Some of the strategies are more appropriate for the integrated essay and others are more useful for the independent essay.

Integrated Essay

The integrated question asks for a synthesis of the content in a lecture and a reading passage. It is usually the first essay question.

➤ Report

When you are writing about content, it is important not to offer your opinions. To do this, you must distinguish between content and opinion. Content may include both facts and the ideas of the author or lecturer. Opinion is what *you* think. Your job in an integrated essay is to report the facts and ideas without making judgments and without expressing your opinions.

- State the facts and ideas
- Avoid expressing your opinions

➤ Identify sources

In the question for the integrated essay, you will be directed to the primary source. For example, the question may ask you to summarize content *from the reading* or to summarize the main points *in the lecture*. This is a cue to begin with a summary from the primary source identified in the question—either the reading or the lecture. Then, you will be asked to support or contrast the *information* in the primary source with the information in the secondary source. Go to the other source after you have completed your summary. Be sure to include information from both sources, but begin with the primary source.

- Begin with the primary source
- Include both sources

➤ Make connections

Supporting Transitions	*Opposing Transitions*
When the secondary source agrees with the primary source, use supporting transitions.	*When the secondary source does* not *agree with the primary source, use opposing transitions.*
Moreover,	In contrast,
Furthermore,	On the other hand,
In addition,	

- Establish the relationship between sources
- Choose appropriate transitions

➤ Include a variety of structures

Essays with a variety of sentence structures are more interesting, and they receive higher scores. Complex sentence structures, achieved by combining simple sentences, also improve scores. Refer to pages 159–165 to review sentence combining.

- Vary sentence structures
- Combine sentences

➤ Edit your writing

If you use all of your time to write, you won't have enough time to edit your writing. Students who take the time to read what they have written will find some of their own mistakes and can correct them before submitting the final essays. Be sure to edit both the independent essay and the integrated essay. To edit most effectively, use the grading checklist that raters will use to evaluate your writing.

- Re-read your essay
- Edit with the checklist

Independent Essay

The independent question on the TOEFL asks for your opinion. It is usually the second essay question.

➤ Respond to the topic

It is very important to read the question carefully and analyze the topic. If you write on a topic other than the one that you have been assigned, your essay will not be scored.

- Analyze the topic
- Write on the assigned topic

➤ Be direct

When you are asked for your *opinion*, it is appropriate to begin with a direct statement. The following phrases and clauses introduce an opinion:

Introduction	*Opinion*
Introductory phrase, In my opinion, In my view, From my point of view, From my perspective,	**Direct statement = Subject + Verb** school uniforms are a good idea.
Introductory Clause I agree that I disagree that I think that I believe that I support the idea that I am convinced that It is clear to me that	**Direct statement = Subject + Verb** school uniforms are a good idea.

- Begin with an introductory phrase or clause
- Make a direct statement of opinion

➤ Concede the opposing view

Sometimes you will be offered two choices. When stating a *preference*, it is polite to concede that the opposing view has merit. The following words and phrases express concession: *although, even though, despite,* and *in spite of.* For example:

Concession	*Opinion*
Concession clause Although there are many advantages to living in the city,	**Direct statement = Subject + Verb** I prefer life in a small town.
Even though technology can damage the environment,	I think it causes more good than harm.
Despite the differences among cultures,	I believe that peace is possible.
In spite of the benefits of studying in a group,	I prefer to study alone.

- Begin with a concession clause
- Make a direct statement of opinion

➤ Use an outline sentence

Some books call the second sentence in an essay the *topic sentence,* the *controlling sentence,* the *thesis statement,* or the *organizing sentence.* The purpose of this sentence is to outline the essay for the reader. Here are some examples of outline sentences.

First sentence:
Although there are many advantages to living in the city, I prefer life in a small town.
Outline sentence:
Three personal experiences convince me that small towns provide a better life style.

First sentence:
Despite the differences among cultures, I believe that peace is possible.
Outline sentence:
History provides several encouraging examples.

First sentence:
In spite of the benefits of studying in a group, I prefer to study alone.
Outline sentence:
There are three reasons why I have this preference.

- Outline the essay for the reader
- Write an outline sentence

➤ Think in English

How do English-speaking writers think? According to research by Robert Kaplan, they organize their thoughts in a linear pattern. This means that they think in a straight line. Details and examples must relate to the main points. Digressions are not included.

For essays that require an opinion, the organization would look like this:

Opinion	In my view, school uniforms are a good idea.
↓	
Outline Sentence	Three reasons convince me that wearing uniforms will improve the educational experience of students.
↓	
Reason 1	In the first place, uniforms are not as expensive as brand name clothing.
↓	
Example/Detail	For example, a new school uniform costs about $30, but designer jeans and a name-brand shirt cost five times that amount. An expensive book would be a better investment.
Reason 2	Second, it is easier to get ready for school.
↓	
Example/Detail	When there are five choices, it requires time and thought to decide what to wear. Uniforms simplify the problem of choosing a shirt to complement a certain pair of pants and, furthermore, selecting socks and shoes to go with them. All of these decisions take time and divert attention from preparing for classes.

Reason 3	Finally, students who wear uniforms identify themselves with their school.
↓	
Example/Detail	Wearing the school colors establishes that each student is part of the group.
Conclusion	In conclusion, I think schools that require uniforms send a positive message to their students. They communicate that it is more important to be the best student than it is to have the best clothing.

- Think in a straight line
- Connect each idea with the next

➤ Write a strong conclusion

In TOEFL essays, it is not appropriate to apologize for not having written enough, for not having enough time, or for not using good English skills. An apology will cause you to lose points. In addition, a good conclusion does not add new information. It does not introduce a new idea. A strong conclusion is more like a summary of the ideas in one last sentence.

- Summarize the main idea
- Avoid apologies and new topics

APPLYING THE ACADEMIC SKILLS TO THE TOEFL

➤ Campus Vocabulary

Campus vocabulary is more important to success in other sections of the TOEFL. The essays require more formal, academic English.

➤ Taking Notes

Taking notes is an important academic skill for the Writing section because you will use them to organize your essay. Because you will not be graded on the notes, you should not worry about making them perfect. It is more important for them to be useful to you.

➤ Paraphrasing

In the integrated essay, you must be careful not to use the exact words from the reading or the lecture. Plagiarizing will result in a failing score on the essay. You must use the skills that you learned to paraphrase in your essay.

➤ Summarizing

As you will remember, summarizing is one of the steps in synthesizing. You will often be asked to summarize the primary source before you relate it to the secondary source.

➤ Synthesizing

Part 1 of the Writing section is the integrated essay. It is a synthesis of information from a reading passage and a lecture. Synthesizing is the most important academic skill for the integrated essay.

QUIZ FOR THE WRITING SECTION

This is a quiz for the Writing section of the TOEFL® iBT. This section tests your ability to write essays in English. During the quiz, you will respond to two writing questions. You may take notes as you read and listen to academic information. You may use your notes to write the essays. Once you begin, you have 20 minutes to write the first essay and 30 minutes to write the second essay.

QUESTION 1

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

Stonehenge

Stonehenge, located on the Salisbury Plain in England, is a circular arrangement of bluestones and sarsen stones. Each bluestone weighs several tons and each sarsen stone weighs ten tons, or more. The question is, what was the original purpose of this monument?

Many theories have been put forward, the most popular being that ancient astronomers may have used Stonehenge as a solar calendar; however, excavations by researchers from the Stonehenge Riverside Project support a newer hypothesis. Evidence of burials and cremations dating back to 3000 B.C.E. influenced researchers involved in the Riverside Project to conclude that the real purpose of Stonehenge was to serve as a burial site. More than 50,000 cremated bone fragments of 63 individuals were excavated and studied by the team, including about equal numbers of men and women, as well as an infant.

In addition to cremated remains, chalk dust in several holes suggested that fifty-six bluestones once stood in the circular arrangement. According to the lead researcher, Professor Mike Parker Pearson, bluestones have been closely associated with burials from similar time periods, and their presence serves as further support for the burial ground hypothesis.

Finally, although few artifacts have been unearthed at Stonehenge, the head of a stone mace, an object similar to a scepter, supported the assumption that important persons were selected for burial in the site. A small bowl, burned on one side, may have held incense, further suggesting that the dead could have been religious and political leaders and their immediate families. Most prehistorical burials in England involved leaving the dead in the wild for animals to clean or throwing the bodies into the rivers, another indication that the Stonehenge burial site was reserved for leaders. Clearly, a possession like the stone mace would have belonged to someone of high rank and status among those who occupied the site and could have been buried with the body.



Question 1, Lecture, CD 1, Track 14
Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage you have just read.

Question
Summarize the points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Writing Time: 20 minutes
Typical Response: 150–225 words

Question 2
Some people like to communicate by email and voice mail. Other people like to communicate by telephone or face-to-face. Which type of communication do you prefer, and why? Be sure to include details and examples to support your opinion.

Writing Time: 30 minutes
Typical Response: 300–350 words

This is the end of the Writing Quiz. To check your answers, refer to the Progress Chart for the Writing Quiz, Chapter 5, page 534.

STUDY PLAN

What did you learn from taking the quiz? What will you do differently when you take the model tests in the next chapter? Take a few minutes to think and then write a sentence or two to help you revise your study plan.

EXTRA CREDIT

After you have completed this chapter, you may want to continue a review of writing. Here are some suggestions.

Become familiar with the independent writing topics. Topics previously used for independent questions on the CBT TOEFL Writing section are listed in the TOEFL® iBT *Information Bulletin* available free from Educational Testing Service. They are also listed on the web site at *www.ets.org.* Read through the questions, and think about how you would respond to each of the topics. Since most of them require you to state an opinion, it is helpful to form a general opinion on each topic.

Read good examples of expository writing. Research confirms that reading is important to the development of writing. This means that one of the best ways to learn to write well is to read good models of writing. By being exposed to good writing, you will acquire good techniques. That is why this book contains examples of the answers that excellent writers might create *in* response to the questions in this review chapter and in the Writing section of each model test. It is important to read these example answers carefully. Remember that you will be asked to produce expository, not literary essays. For this reason, you should read opinion essays instead of short stories. It is also a good idea to read summaries of content material. Many popular college textbooks in English provide summaries at the end of the chapters. In general, these summaries are good models for you to read.

OPTIONS FOR EVALUATION

It is difficult to evaluate your own writing. If you are taking an English class, ask your teacher to use the checklists in this chapter to evaluate your writing. You need to know how you are progressing in relationship to the criteria on the checklists because that is how you will be evaluated on the TOEFL.

If you do not have good options to have your writing evaluated without a fee, there are fee-based options that will provide professional evaluations. See page 809 for details.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

Keep your eyes on the destination, not on the road. There are short roads and long roads to the same destination, but the important point is to arrive where you want to be. Of course, there are several reasons why you prefer to achieve a successful score on the TOEFL the first time that you attempt it. It is costly to take the test again, and you are eager to begin your academic studies or professional life. Nevertheless, a goal is seldom destroyed by a delay, so don't destroy your positive attitude, either. If you take the time to prepare, you will probably be able to take the short road, but if you have not studied English very long, you may need more practice. Please don't compare yourself to anyone else. They are on their road, and you are on yours. Just keep going. You will get there.

3

ACADEMIC SKILLS

The TOEFL iBT is a test of academic English. This means that you need more than English language proficiency to succeed. You need academic skills as well. You won't find a chapter like this in any other TOEFL preparation book. Campus Vocabulary, Taking Notes, Paraphrasing, Summarizing, and Synthesizing will help you succeed on the TOEFL and on campus in your college or university program.

CAMPUS VOCABULARY

Many references provide a list of academic vocabulary, which contains words that are commonly found in textbooks and academic journals, but the *Glossary of Campus Vocabulary* at the end of this book is unique. It includes the most common vocabulary that you will hear and use in conversations on campus at English-speaking colleges and universities. There are three problems that you will confront when you are using campus vocabulary on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL when you are on an actual college or university campus.

1. **The meaning of the word is specific to a college or university campus.** This means that you have to understand the glossary meaning of campus vocabulary words.
2. **Intonation might change the meaning of the word.** This means that you also have to understand the meaning that is implied when the word is spoken in a conversation.
3. **You need to be able to pronounce the words so that you are understood.** This means that you have to be able to use campus vocabulary when you respond to some of the speaking tasks on the TOEFL and, afterward, when you are on campus.

This chapter will help you improve your campus vocabulary. You will learn how to

- **Become familiar with the definitions**
- **Recognize patterns of intonation**
- **Improve your pronunciation**

BECOME FAMILIAR WITH THE DEFINITIONS

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Understand the meaning when you hear it
- ➤ Look up unfamiliar campus vocabulary

How will these strategies help you on the TOEFL? By learning campus vocabulary, you will be able to understand the conversations on the Listening section and respond to questions that refer to them. You will also be able to understand the conversations in Tasks 3 and 5 on the Speaking section and prepare better responses to these tasks. After you are admitted to a college or university program, you will continue to use this important list to help you interact with professors, staff, and other students on campus.

➤ Understand the meaning when you hear it

Practical Strategy

Using a pronouncing glossary is not like using a traditional dictionary. You can read the words and learn the meanings as you would when you use a dictionary, but you can also learn how the words are pronounced. The *Glossary of Campus Vocabulary* on pages 816–847 is also on a dedicated Internet site, exclusively for those who have purchased this book. The site presents a flash card for each vocabulary entry. Click on the speaker icon beside the word or phrase to hear the correct pronunciation. Then click on the speaker icon beside the example sentence to hear it again in a longer context.

Practice Activity 1

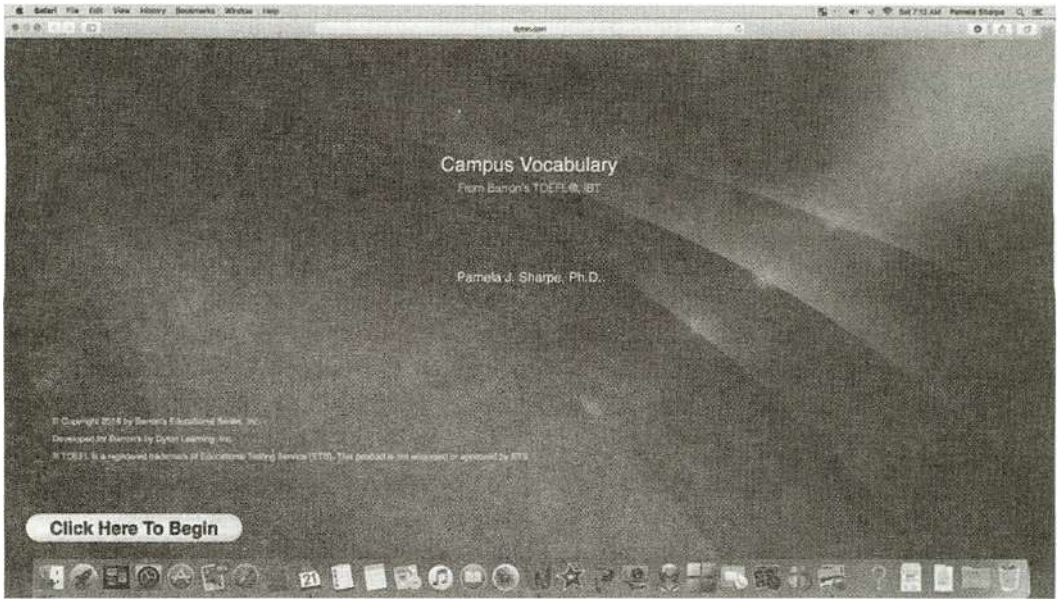
Did you understand? Listen to the words and example sentences from the *Glossary of Campus Vocabulary*, which you will find by accessing the Barron's web page at:

http://barronsbooks.com/tp/toefl/flashcards/

Identify five entries to practice every day. Repeat the word or phrase after the speaker. Then repeat the example sentence. Do you understand the meanings when you see them? When you hear them? The example in Activity 1 shows you how to interact with the glossary.

EXAMPLE

Go to http://barronsbooks.com/tp/toefl/flashcards/



Click on **Click Here To Begin** to see the list of Campus Vocabulary words.



Click on a word to see the flash card.



Click on the **Arrow** button beside the word to hear the pronunciation.
You can click more than one time to repeat it.
Click on the **Arrow** button under the Example to hear the word in the context of a sentence.
Click on the **Term Selector** button to see the list of all the Campus Vocabulary words.
Click on the **Previous** button to return to the flash card for the previous word in the alphabetical list.
Click on the **Next** button to progress to the flash card for the next word in the alphabetical list.

➤ Look up unfamiliar campus vocabulary

Practical Strategy

Use the glossary in the book and online to look up unfamiliar vocabulary as you continue to prepare for the TOEFL with the model tests in the next chapter. Don't stop to search for a word or phrase while you are taking a model test, but when you are using the answer key and the explanatory answers, you can note campus vocabulary that you want to add to your list of five entries to practice every day.

RECOGNIZE PATTERNS OF INTONATION

Strategies to Use
- ➤ *Interpret* expressions of surprise
- ➤ Comprehend requests for confirmation
- ➤ Become familiar with options for suggestions

➤ Interpret expressions of surprise

Two ways to express surprise are commonly used in conversation—question statements and emphatic statements.

Practical Strategy

A rising intonation is usually heard at the end of a *question*. When a rising intonation is heard at the end of a *statement*, it shows surprise. The speaker had assumed the opposite.

Practice Activity 2

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Anticipate the rising intonation at the end, which expresses surprise. You may also hear emphasis and a rising intonation in a key word or phrase in the statement. Try to repeat each sentence after the speaker, using the same intonation. Notice that question statements include a question mark at the end.

 **Activity 2, CD 1, Track 15**

EXAMPLE

ace
Kathy aced her computer science class?

tuition
1. Tuition at private colleges is more?

prerequisites
2. You took the prerequisites last year?

handout
3. You lost the handouts?

laptop
4. Your laptop crashed?

article
5. You read the articles already?

skip class
6. Ron skipped class yesterday?

review session
7. The review session was productive?

call on
8. You sat in the front of the room and weren't called on?

curve
9. Dr. Graham grades his tests on the curve?

book bag
10. Your brand new book bag fell apart?

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Sometimes a statement of surprise is introduced by the phrase *You mean*.

Practice Activity 3

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Identify the intonation that signals surprise. Try to repeat each question after the speaker, using the same intonation.



Activity 3, CD 1, Track 16

Example

off campus
You mean Carol doesn't want to live off campus?

notes
1. You mean you lent your notes to someone?

audit
2. You mean you're auditing the course?

turn in
3. You mean I could have turned in my paper tomorrow?

cram
4. You mean you crammed for the biology final?

draft
5. You mean you wrote the first draft in one night?

drop
6. You mean you dropped the class because it was too hard?

*ex*tension
7. You mean your request for an extension was denied?

lower division
8. You mean all the lower-division classes are full?

plagiarize
9. You mean you know someone who plagiarized?

sophomore
10. You mean Bill is only a sophomore?

Practical Strategy

An auxiliary verb in a statement can express both emphasis and surprise. Usually the auxiliary verbs are *do, does,* and *did*. Sometimes the auxiliary verbs *is, are*, *has* and *have* are also used. Often the statement begins with the word *So*. In these statements, the speaker had assumed the opposite.

Practice Activity 4

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Identify the auxiliary verbs that express emphasis and surprise. Try to repeat each sentence after the speaker, using the same intonation.

 **Activity 4, CD 1, Track 17**

Example

T.A.
So Bill *did* apply to be a T.A.

degree
1. So you *did* graduate with a degree in music theory.

studies
2. So Jane *is* beginning her studies.

dean
3. So you *did* speak with the dean.

assignment
4. So you *do* read the assignments after all.

snack bar
5. So you *are* going to the snack bar after class.

report
6. So you *did* listen to Ken's report.

all-nighter
7. So your roommate *did* pull another all-nighter.

credit hour
8. So you *did* complete fifteen credit hours last summer.

makeup test
9. So Dr. Peterson *did* let you take a makeup test.

library card
10. So you *did* bring your library card with you.

➤ Comprehend requests for confirmation

Practical Strategy

A statement that ends with the word *right* or a tag question with a rising intonation is a request for confirmation. These questions at the end mean that the speaker wants to confirm that he or she has understood correctly.

Practice Activity 5

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Identify the question that signals a request for confirmation. Try to repeat each question after the speaker, using the same intonation.



Activity 5, CD 1, Track 18

Example

elective
You're going to take an elective in art appreciation, right?

transfer
1. Dana transferred to State University, right?

student I.D. number
2. Pat has a student I.D. number, doesn't she?

transcript
3. You got your transcripts, didn't you?

incomplete
4. Bill took an incomplete in sociology last semester, didn't he?

undergrad
5. You're an undergrad, right?

cheat
6. Gary was expelled because he cheated, right?

extra credit
7. You signed up for extra credit, right?

get caught up
8. Sue got caught up over vacation, didn't she?

fill-in-the-blank(s)
9. The test was all fill-in-the-blanks, right?

hand back
10. Dr. Mitchell hasn't handed back your exam yet, has he?

Practical Strategy

Sometimes the speaker asks for repetition to confirm that he or she has understood correctly. These sentences often begin with the phrase *Did you say.*

Practice Activity 6

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Identify the question that signals a request for confirmation. Try to repeat each question after the speaker, using the same intonation.



Activity 6, CD 1, Track 19

Example

probation
Did you say you're on probation?

fee
1. Did you say there are fees for using the recreational facilities?

admissions office
2. Did you say you couldn't find the admissions office?

flunk
3. Did you say you might have flunked the test?

fine
4. Did you say you were charged a fine for parking there?

tuition hike
5. Did you say you graduated before the tuition hike?

pop *quiz*
6. Did you say you passed all of the pop quizzes?

married student housing
7. Did you say there are no vacancies in married student housing?

shuttle
8. Did you say there's no shuttle on Sundays?

dorm
9. Did you say you've lived in a dorm for four years?

drop out
10. Did you say Diane dropped out after her junior year?

➤ Become familiar with options for suggestions

Practical Strategy

The modal auxiliary words *should*, *could*, *would*, and *had better* are used for suggestions. Each auxiliary adds a different meaning to the suggestion. *Had better* means that it is necessary to follow the suggestion or some consequence will result. *Should* means that the speaker is presenting a strong suggestion. *Could* means that the speaker is presenting an option. *Could* is not as strong a suggestion as *should*. *Would* is used with the phrase *If I were you*. A speaker who makes a suggestion by beginning *If I were you* is presenting what he or she would do in similar circumstances.

Practice Activity 7

Did you understand? Listen to the following sentences from your glossary. Identify the words and phrases that signal a suggestion. Try to repeat each sentence after the speaker, using the same intonation.



Activity 7, CD 1, Track 20

assistantship
1. If I were you, I'd apply for an assistantship.

audit
2. You could audit the course if you don't need the credit.

get behind
3. You'd better study this weekend or you'll get behind in English.

excused absence
4. You could take an excused absence in your Friday class so we could leave early.

withdraw
5. You should withdraw so you won't have failing grades on your transcript.

student union
6. You could meet Ken in the student union before the concert.

work-study
7. Dana should apply for the work-study position next fall.

group project
8. You should select your group project before midterm.

check out
9. If you want to check out books for your research paper, you'd better go to the library soon.

room and board
10. You should plan to include the price of room and board in your budget.

IMPROVE YOUR PRONUNCIATION

Saying the word or phrase clearly

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Practice TOEFL listening tasks
- ➤ Practice TOEFL speaking tasks

➤ Practice TOEFL listening tasks

Practical Strategy

Listen to an example of Listening Task 1 while you read along. Notice the campus vocabulary in the conversation. Listen for meaning, intonation, and pronunciation. Remember, this is a practice activity. You will not be able to read while you listen to a conversation on the actual TOEFL.

Practice Activity 8

Do you understand the general meaning of the conversation? Can you understand and pronounce each of the campus vocabulary words? Which speaker expresses surprise? Which speaker asks for confirmation? The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 535–536.



Activity 8, CD 1, Track 21

Listening Task 1

Man: Hi Jane. How's it going?

Woman: Good. You?

Man: Same old problem. My roommate is driving me crazy.

Woman: But I thought you lived in a dorm.

Man: I do.

Woman: Oh. Then why don't you see your resident advisor?

Man: Been there, done that. I even went to the head resident.

Woman: Really? And it didn't help?

Man: Nope. He says that we should work it out between the two of us.

Woman: Wow. How do you do that when he's always partying in the room?

Man: I know. I keep waiting for him to flunk out.

Woman: He's on probation, right?

Man: Again. He cuts class, I never see him doing any homework, but he crams for his finals and always seems to just get by.

Woman: I'm so sorry. I suppose you could go to the study lounge or the library to study, but you're probably already doing that.

Man: I *am*, but it's not very convenient. I mean, I have all of my stuff in my room but now I have to pack it up every time I want to study . . .

Woman: . . . and then you have to pack it all up again when you want to go back to your room.

Man: That's about the size of it.

Woman: Are you getting behind?

Man: Not really. But I have a scholarship so I have to keep my G.P.A. up. And I'm a senior.

Woman: You're a senior? Well then, you need to start thinking about graduate school.

Man: I've already applied. But I need to submit this quarter's grades before they make a decision.

Woman: So you really must be hitting the books. What can I do to help?

Man: Not much. But thanks for listening.

➤ Practice TOEFL speaking tasks

Practical Strategy

Listen to an example of Speaking Task 3. Notice the campus vocabulary in the conversation. Listen for meaning, intonation, and pronunciation. Remember, this is a practice activity. You will not be able to read while you listen to a conversation on the actual TOEFL.

Practice Activity 9

Do you understand the general meaning of the conversation? Can you understand and pronounce each of the campus vocabulary words? Which speaker asks for confirmation? Which speaker makes a suggestion? The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 536.

Speaking Task 3

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Announcement from Student Services
During spring break, County College will offer an alternative to the trips that many students plan to relax at beaches and resorts. Community service trips will be offered to assist low-income communities throughout the country. Students who sign up for these trips will be part of a team that will live and work with social service groups in the local area. Previous community service trips have provided tutoring for elementary school students in Texas and caregiving for senior citizens in Chicago. The trips are paid for by grants to the college.



Activity 9, CD 1, Track 22

Man: Are you going on the community service trip over spring break?

Woman: I never go anywhere on break. I just visit my family for a few days and then come back and get ready for the next semester.

Man: I know, but this is different. It seems made to order for *you*.

Woman: Are you serious? I don't drink, I don't like the beach, and I don't have the money to waste on airfare and hotels.

Man: That's what I mean. This spring break trip isn't about any of that. It's a community service trip. Look, you work with a team on a project in a low-income area. You're minoring in social work, aren't you?

Woman: Yeah.

Man: So you can see why I thought you might be interested.

Woman: Actually, that does sound interesting. And I think it's a great idea. Spring break is so wild and crazy for a lot of my friends. Maybe this kind of alternative will attract some of the people who just want to get away from campus and do something different before they start another term.

Man: I was thinking about going or at least checking it out over at student services.

Woman: Yeah, but it would be expensive . . . unless the community is close by.

Man: No. Here's the thing: a grant pays for your transportation and your living expenses so there aren't any fees. You just have to be willing to work.

Woman: What kind of work is it? Do you know?

Man: Not exactly. Some of the projects that were funded in the past have served senior citizens and I'm pretty sure that there was tutoring for kids.

Woman: Now you've really got me interested.

Man: I thought you would be. We should go over to student services to get a few more details, like where they're planning to go and what projects are funded. I think Professor Keller has his office hours now, and he's the one who's organizing the trip.

Woman: Well, sure. I'm free right now until my next class at two. That ought to give us plenty of time.

Man: Okay then.

Woman: And if it doesn't work out for me to go, I think it's a great idea to give people an alternative to . . . to . . . going crazy on some beach with a bunch of strangers from other colleges. That's never been my thing.

Practical Strategy

Listen to an example of Speaking Task 5. Notice the campus vocabulary in the conversation. *Listen for m*eaning, intonation, and pronunciation. Remember, this is a practice activity. You will not be able to read while you listen to a conversation on the actual TOEFL.

Practice Activity 10

Do you understand the general meaning of the conversation? Can you understand and pronounce each of the campus vocabulary words? Which speaker asks for confirmation? Which speaker makes a suggestion? The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 537.



Activity 10, CD 1, Track 23

Speaking Task 5

Man: Hi Linda. I was hoping I might run into you today.

Woman: Really?

Man: Yeah. I wanted to ask you for . . . I wanted some advice.

Woman: Oh, okay.

Man: So you have Dr. Jackson for your academic advisor, don't you?

Woman: Unhuh. He's the advisor for most of the biology majors.

Man: I know. And he's *my* advisor, too. But I'm just having problems communicating with him. I mean, he's nice and everything, but I feel like he just doesn't listen to me, and I leave the meetings thinking that I didn't get done what I needed to do. Do you ever feel like that?

Woman: I can't say that I do, but it's a problem for sure if that's what's happening to *you*. Have you ever just had a serious talk about this with him? That's what I'd do.

Man: I've tried, but I'm just not getting through. I'm so frustrated.

Woman: Well, you could request another advisor. I think Dr. Chee advises biology majors.

Man: I thought about that, but if I change advisors then I'll have to sign up for a couple of my upper-division courses with Dr. Jackson, and he might resent it that I wanted a different advisor. Besides, he's on the committee for my thesis.

Woman: I don't think he'd mind all that much. He has a lot of graduate students to advise. Listen, you could make an appointment to talk with him before he finds out about the change and you could give him some reason that isn't personal, like your schedule makes it hard to see him during his office hours or something.

Man: I *could* say that, but what if he offers to see me at a different time?

Woman: Right. Well, that could happen, but I don't think so.

TAKING NOTES

Taking notes is writing down information while you are listening or reading. There are three problems that you will confront when you are taking notes.

1. **The professor determines the pace of a lecture.** This means that you have to take notes as quickly as the professor speaks.
2. **The notes must include all the main ideas and major facts.** This means that you have to know how to identify important information when you hear it or read it.
3. **The notes may be used for different reasons.** This means that you have to organize the notes to help you remember, to add to the information from another assignment, or to plan a speech or an essay.

This chapter will help you improve your note taking skills. You will learn how to

- **Organize *your* notes**
- **Identify important information**
- **Take notes quickly**

How will these strategies help you on the TOEFL? By learning to take better notes when you hear lectures, you will have the information you need to respond to the listening comprehension questions and to prepare your speaking and writing questions. You will even improve your reading comprehension. Taking excellent notes is one of the most important academic skills for success on the TOEFL and after the TOEFL when you are enrolled in a college or university program.

ORGANIZE YOUR NOTES

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Anticipate the purpose
- ➤ Divide the paper into columns
- ➤ Separate the major and minor points

➤ Anticipate the purpose

If you can anticipate the purpose of a reading or a lecture, you will be able to prepare your mind to receive the information, and you will already know how to organize your notes.

Practical Strategy

The most common purposes for academic English are to provide the answers to basic questions. These questions are answered in textbooks and lectures to help you learn the academic subjects.

Purpose	Question
Definition	What is it?
Description and Example	What are the characteristics?
Classification	Which group does it belong to?
Sequence	What is the order—first, second, and so on?
Comparison and Contrast	How is it the same or different from something else?
Cause and Effect	How does it cause something? What happens?
Problem and Solution	Why is it a problem? What is the solution?
Persuasion or Evaluation	Why should it be supported or rejected?

The headings and subheadings in textbooks help you anticipate the purpose of the chapter or the sections within a chapter. For example, a heading in an earth science textbook that includes only one noun, **The Atmosphere**, will probably be a definition or a description of the atmosphere. A heading such as **Forces Within the Atmosphere** implies that several forces will be discussed and further implies that this will be a classification or perhaps a comparison and contrast of the forces. **Atmospheric Patterns of Motion** introduces a process and could anticipate a sequence or even a cause and effect. **Problems in Predicting Weather** is a heading that contains the purpose in the word *problems.* You know that this is a problem and solution section. Persuasion can usually be identified because of words like *should* and *must* as well as subjective or judgmental phrases like *better* or *worse*, whereas evaluation contains both sides of an issue.

Practice Activity 11

Did you understand? Try to anticipate the purpose of each section in a textbook by reading the headings and subheadings. Here are some headings and subheadings for practice. The first one is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 537.

Sometimes you will make a mistake anticipating the purpose. Your prediction will be different from the way that the reading or lecture proceeds. Don't worry. Trying to predict is still a good idea, and you will become more skilled as you practice using other activities and tests in this book.

Example

Subheading: The Enlightenment **Purpose:** definition *or* description

1. Settlement Patterns
2. The Functions of Art
3. Language Development
4. How Important Is Relativity?
5. Causes of Schizophrenia
6. Evaluating Kohlberg's Theory
7. Types of Financial Services
8. A History of Plate Tectonics
9. Estimating Population
10. Black Holes

Practical Strategy

The lectures on the TOEFL begin with an introductory screen followed by a narrator's introduction. They will give you a general direction for your listening. Most of the time, the narrator will tell you in which class the lecture is given. Sometimes the narrator will also provide the main topic.

Practice Activity 12

Did you understand? Try to anticipate part of the narrator's introduction by viewing the introductory screen. Here are some introductions to lectures for practice. The first one is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 537–538.

EXAMPLE

Astronomy

"Listen to part of a lecture in an astronomy class."



Activity 12, CD 1, Track 24

1. **Business**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

2. **Music Appreciation**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

3. **Biology**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

4. **Anthropology**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

5. **Engineering**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

6. **Linguistics**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

7. **Art History**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

8. **Psychology**

   Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

9. **Geology**

Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

10. **History**

Listen to part of a lecture in _____.

Practical Strategy

A good lecturer will also give you ways to anticipate the purpose of a lecture or part of a lecture with verbal cues. Sometimes the lecturer will announce the topic in such a way that the purpose is directly stated. Other times you will have to draw a conclusion. Although the topic is stated at the beginning of the lecture, there may be some references to previous lectures or some classroom business to conclude before the topic is announced. When the topic for a lecture is stated, the lecturer may either pause just before saying the topic or stress the topic by raising the volume or using very clear pronunciation.

To be a good listener, you should prepare your mind to accept the information. If you know which class the lecturer is teaching, you already know how to focus your attention. By hearing the cue that identifies the topic, you have a context for the rest of the lecture.

Practice Activity 13

Did you understand? Try to anticipate the purpose of a lecture by listening to the beginning of it. Here are some short introductions to lectures for practice. The first one is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 538.

Example

"Okay then, let's get started. Uh, today we're going to talk about the *biosphere*."



Activity 13, CD 1, Track 25

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

➤ Divide the paper into columns

There are many variations of column note taking. This style is very simple and effective. Draw a line down your note paper from the top to the bottom about two inches from the left margin, as shown on the next page. This is called two-column notes. When you are taking notes, put the topics or main ideas in the left column and add details and examples in the right column. This system helps you take notes more quickly because you don't have to identify the main ideas and the details or examples by writing out words or by using a more complicated outline format that requires letters and numbers. Placement to the left or to the right of the line sorts the ideas in order of importance and shows their relationship.

Practical Strategy

Draw a line across the paper from the left to the right about two inches from the top. This is a space for the main idea. Draw another line about two inches from the bottom, as shown. This is a space that you can use for your thoughts and ideas as you are taking notes. Later, when you look at your notes, you will know which ideas are from the textbook or lecture and which are yours.

Main Idea

Major point 1	Examples and details
Major point 2	Examples and details
Major point 3	Examples and details

My Ideas

Practice Activity 14

Did you understand? Try to put the information in the following sentence outline into two-column notes. Refer to the two-column format above as an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 538.

There are three arguments in support of protecting endangered species.

I. Aesthetic justification states that the various forms of nature influence the life experience of human beings in a positive way.
   A. Many endangered species are uniquely beautiful.
   B. They are appreciated universally in art and literature.
   C. Some are important to the religious community.

II. Ecological self-interest assumes that a balance of nature benefits *all* species.
   A. All species perform essential functions.
      1. For example, an endangered species may be the unique carrier of a cure for a human disease.
   B. In order to protect ourselves, we must protect other species.

III. Moral justification asserts that the creatures themselves have rights.
   A. The United Nations World Charter for Nature declares that all species have the right to exist.
   B. Human beings have the responsibility to preserve all species.

IV. The professor does not directly promote any argument, but advocacy for the protection of endangered species is implied in the lecture.

➤ Separate the major and minor points

In order to use two columns for notes, you must be able to classify the ideas into major and minor points. There are usually three or four major points in a short lecture or reading passage. Each of the major points is supported by examples and details. The examples and details are minor points.

Practical Strategy

When you hear a major point, write it on the left. When you hear a minor point, write it on the right.

Practice Activity 15

Did you understand? Look at the notes under each topic. The sentences in the notes refer to either the major points or the minor points. Try to organize the notes under the topic by putting the major points in the left column and the minor points in the right column. Your answer is correct if the points are placed correctly on either the left or right. The points do not have to be in exactly the same order. The first one is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 539–540.

Example

There are three types of managers in addition to the general manager.

The line manager is responsible for production.
For example, a production manager is a line manager.
A staff manager is in charge of support activities such as human resources.
Information systems is also overseen by a staff manager.
A functional manager is the head of a department.
A department chair at a college is a functional manager.
The manager of a sales department at a company is also a functional manager.

3 managers	
line manager production	production manager
staff manager support activities	human resources information systems
functional manager head dept	dept chair college sales dept company

1. According to Mead, the self has two sides: the "I" and the "me."

   It is predictable because social conformity is expected.
   This part of the self is less predictable because it is unique.
   This part of the self is formed through socialization by others.
   The "I" represents the individuality of a person.
   For instance, a spontaneous reaction might reveal the "I."
   The "me" represents the expectations and attitudes of others.

2. The mystery of pulsars was resolved in the 1960s.

   We see pulses of light each time the beam sweeps past the Earth.
   The pulsar in the Crab Nebula, for example, currently spins about thirty times per second.
   We also know that pulsars are not perfectly timed because each revolution of a pulsar takes a little longer.
   We know that pulsars are neutron stars, like lighthouses left by supernova explosions.
   It will probably spin about half as fast two thousand years from now.
   Like a lighthouse, the neutron star revolves.

3. Britain transported convicts to Australia in an effort to solve the problems of overcrowding in prisons.

   There were 11 ships with 750 prisoners aboard.
   Four companies of marines sailed with them as guards.
   They took enough supplies for two years.
   In 1787, the first fleet left for Botany Bay in New South Wales.
   Shortly after arriving in 1788, the colony was moved to Sydney Cove.
   In Sydney, the water supply and soil were better.
   Although Sydney was the new site, for many years it was called Botany Bay.

4. Frederick Carl Frieseke was an American impressionist.

   In Normandy, he began to paint indoor settings.
   In 1905, Frieseke moved to Giverney where he lived until 1920.
   He studied with Whistler in the late 1800s.
   Born in Michigan, he went to Paris in 1897.
   In his later work, he began to use a darker palette.
   From Whistler, he learned the academic style of the salons.
   At Giverney, Frieseke was influenced by Monet.
   Monet was experimenting with the effects of sunlight.
   The style of Monet and his school is known as impressionism.
   By 1920, Frieseke had left Giverney for Normandy.

5. Two types of weathering will break down rock masses into smaller particles.

   Interaction between surface or ground water and chemicals causes chemical weathering.
   With increased precipitation or temperature, chemicals tend to break down faster.
   Mechanical weathering occurs when force and pressure grind rocks down.
   A common example is the wearing away of granite facades on buildings.
   The weathering of feldspar in granite can be caused by a reaction to acids in rain.
   Pressure from freezing and thawing causes rocks to expand and contract.
   When a rock is broken in two by physical forces, it is more vulnerable to weathering.

IDENTIFY IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Pay attention to key words
- ➤ Notice cues in speech and writing

➤ Pay attention to key words

Key words help you identify the important information in a textbook or a lecture. Certain key words appear more often in a reading passage or a lecture with a particular purpose.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

The key words below are listed under the purpose for which they are frequently used. These key words are not 100 percent accurate, but they do give you a starting point. Key words are especially important in lectures since the sentences that the professor uses in speech are not edited like the sentences in textbooks, and are, therefore, more difficult to follow.

Definition
Is known as
Is called
Is
Refers to
Means

Description and Example
Consists of
Adjective
For example
For instance
Namely
Specifically
That is

Classification
Kinds of
Types of
Classes of
Groups of
Parts of
Properties of
Characteristics of
Varieties of

Sequence—Chronology or Process
First, second, third
Next, then, last
Finally
Before
After
At the same time
Meanwhile
Now
As soon as
Later
Subsequently
Eventually
Step
Stage
Phase

Comparison and Contrast
Like
Similar to
Differ from
Compared with
In comparison
Similarly
In the same way
In contrast
Whereas
Adjective + -er
Although
But
Conversely
In spite of
Even though
However
Instead
On the contrary
On the other hand
Despite

Cause and Effect
As a consequence
As a result
Thus
Therefore
Because
Because of
For this reason
Consequently
Since
So

Problem and Solution
Problem

Persuasion or Evaluation
First, second, third
Should, must, ought to
Therefore
In conclusion, in summary

Practice Activity 16

Did you understand? Try to identify the key words in the sentences. Underline them. Then decide in which kind of reading passage they might be found. Here are some sentences for practice. The first one is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 540.

Example

Mesopotamia refers to the land between two rivers. *Definition*

1. There are two types of mixtures—heterogeneous and homogeneous.
2. As a result, the litmus paper turns blue when the solution is a base.
3. In contrast, a counterculture exhibits behavior that is contrary to the dominant culture.
4. The first stage of sleep produces alpha waves.
5. The main properties of soil include color, texture, and structure.
6. Community service should be a requirement for graduation from the College of Education.
7. For example, the Navajo create sacred images in colored sand in order to restore the spiritual and physical health of the sick.
8. The maximum amount of water that air can hold at a given temperature and pressure is known as saturation.
9. Whereas an objective is specific and measurable, a goal is broader and is usually not time specific.
10. Dutch explorers in the early seventeenth century called the west coast of Australia "New Holland," a name that was used to describe the continent until the beginning of the nineteenth century.

➤ Notice cues in speech and writing

Sometimes professors will tell you that a point is important while they are presenting their lectures. Some phrases to listen for include the following:

Pay particular attention to
Be sure to
Especially important is
And this is important
And this is the key point

Written cues will also appear in textbooks. Look for headings, bold letters, and italics.

Practical Strategy

Underline the information or put a star beside it to indicate that the professor has identified it as an important point.

Practice Activity 17

Did you understand? Listen to the beginning of a lecture on language and try to identify the important information in the notes. Underline it or put a star beside it. A sentence from the lecture is shown here along with a star beside the corresponding point in the notes to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 540–541.

Example

"And this is important—standard language is appropriate in both speech and writing."
Notes: *appropriate speech + writing

Listen to the beginning of a lecture in a linguistics class.

 **Activity 17, CD 1, Track 26**

Definition + comparison = three types of language

Standard usage	definitions words + phrases found in dictionary
Permanent core	used formal + informal situations
	*appropriate speech + writing
Colloquial language	included in dictionary marked as colloquial idioms
Often evolves into standard	understood + used in informal situations, not formal
	more common in speech
Slang expressions	sometimes in dictionary marked as slang
Temporary phenomenon	used by some speakers in informal situations
	more common in speech
Continuum	most formal—least formal
	standard—colloquial—slang

TAKE NOTES QUICKLY

Strategies to Use

- ➤ Know what to ignore
- ➤ Use abbreviations and symbols
- ➤ Draw relationships

➤ Know what to ignore

Sometimes professors will pause to think before they continue their lectures. Some professors will use verbal pauses, for example, *uh* and *um*, as well as words like *now*, *so*, *okay*, *well*. Other professors will use repetition or restatement as a way to gather their thoughts or to clarify a previous point. In repetition, the professor will use the same words or phrases several times. In restatement, the professor will say the same thing in a slightly different way. Since repetition and restatement do not add to the meaning, you can ignore them.

Practical Strategy

The time that the professor uses to think is advantageous to you because you can ignore these pauses, repetitions, and restatements and you can use the additional time to take notes.

Practice Activity 18

Did you understand? Try to identify the important information in the lecture. Cross out everything in the transcript that you could ignore. The first sentence from the lecture is shown to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 541–542.

Example

Status [redacted] position [redacted] society [redacted] group.

Sociology

Listen to the beginning of a lecture in a sociology class as you read the transcript. The professor is discussing status and roles.



Activity 18, CD 1, Track 27

Status refers to, uh, a position in society or . . . or in a group. But there are really two types of status—ascribed status and achieved status. Okay, in ascribed status, the status is automatic, so you don't have a choice. In other words, it's an involuntary status. And some examples that come to mind are status because of race or sex. Not much you can do about that. On the other hand, achieved status requires some effort, and there's a choice involved. For instance, a marriage partner, or the type of education, or, for that matter, the length of time in school. Well, these are choices, uh, achievements, and so they fall under the category of achieved status. So, that brings us to the status set. A status set is the combination of all statuses that an individual has. Me, for example. I'm a professor, but I'm also a husband and a father, and a son, since my mother is still living.

So, in each of these statuses I have certain behaviors that are expected because of the status. Okay, all of the behaviors are roles, I mean, a role is the behavior expected because of status. Okay, back to status set. All of the statuses—husband, father, son, professor—combine to form the status set, and each of the statuses have certain expectations. Let me use that professor status again. So, as a professor, I have a teaching role, and I have to pre-

pare classes. That's expected. I also advise students, grade assignments, and evaluate my students. But this role has very different expectations. As a researcher, I, I have to design studies, raise funds for grants, and uh, then perform the research, and, and, finally, I write articles and reports. So, I think you see what I mean.

But, one more thing, and this is important, sometimes role conflict can occur. Let me say that again, *role conflict*. And that means that meeting the expectations for one role will cause problems for an individual who is trying to meet other expectations in a different role. Okay, let's say that one of my students is dating my daughter. I don't recommend this. But anyway, I may have role strain that could even develop into role conflict because it will be difficult for me to meet the expectations for my role as teacher and uh, when the student comes to my house, I'll have to remember my status as father and my role that requires me to welcome a guest into my home, and well, form an opinion about someone who wants to take my daughter out on a date. The textbook actually . . .

➤ Use abbreviations and symbols

Use abbreviations for important words and phrases that are repeated. There are two ways to do this. You can use capital letters that will remind you of the word or phrase. For example, in a lecture about Colonial America, you might use C A as an abbreviation for the phrase; in a lecture about the philosophy of John Dewey, you could use D as an abbreviation for the name. Or you can write the beginning of the word or phrase. For Colonial America, you could write Col Am; for John Dewey, J Dew. The abbreviation can be anything that will remind you of the word or phrase when you are reading your notes.

You should also use symbols and abbreviations for small words that are common in the language. The following list includes some of the most commonly used words in English. The abbreviations here are shortened forms for these frequently heard words.

+	and
w/	with
w/o	without
=	is, are, means, refers to, like, is called
Ø	different, not
#	number
X	example
→	results in, causes, produces, therefore
←	comes from, derives from
ex	example
@	about, approximately
1, 2, 3	first, second, third
<	less, smaller
>	more, larger
btw/	between
↑	over, up
↓	under, down

Beyond the Book
Mini-Lesson for the TOEFL
Note Taking

To view the lesson, swipe the code with the QR reader on your smartphone or enter the following private access address on your computer:

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ztC_Nh6SLic&feature=youtu.be

Practical Strategy

The abbreviations in the list printed above are part of my system for taking notes and some of my students use it, but I encourage you to create your own system because you will probably come up with symbols and abbreviations that will have meaning to you, and you will understand them later when you are reading your notes. There is space for additional words. Be sure to choose something that makes sense to you.

Symbol	*Word*
	and
	with
	without
	is, are, means, refers to, like, is called
	different, not
	number
	times
	results in, causes, produces, therefore
	comes from, derives from
	example
	at
	first, second, third
	less, smaller
	more, larger
	between

Practice Activity 19

Did you understand? Now practice taking notes with your system. First, listen to each of the sentences and write your notes here. When you are finished taking notes for all ten sentences, try to write the original sentences using only your notes. Then compare your sentences with the sentences printed in the answer key. An example is shown using my system. Your answer is correct if *you* can read it and if the meaning is the same as the original sentence. The words do not have to be exactly the same. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 543.

Listen to some sentences from college lectures. Take notes as quickly as you can.



Activity 19, CD 1, Track 28

Example

Friction between moving air and the ocean surface generates undulations of water called *waves.*

Short: Friction btw air + ocean surface → waves
Very short: Fric btw air + Ø surf → waves

Friction between air and the ocean surface causes *waves.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

➤ Draw relationships

To take notes, you can use symbols and diagrams. By using this system, you can reduce the number of words that you have to write. Here are some examples of notes for each of the common relationships.

DEFINITION

Definitions are part of every academic subject because the vocabulary must be introduced in order to understand and learn new concepts. Definitions often appear in italic or bold print in textbooks. Many textbooks have a glossary of specialized vocabulary in the back of the book.

Professors often give new words special emphasis in their lectures by pausing after the word and before the definition or by stressing the word the first time it is introduced. Look at these examples of definitions and notice the diagrams that show the relationship between the word and the definition.

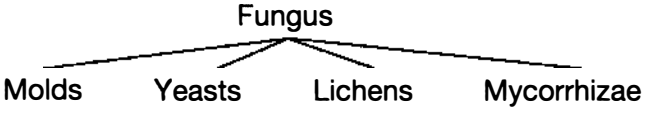
A *menu* is a list of computer functions that appears on the screen.
Menu = list /functions on screen

The *id* consists of instincts.
Id = instincts

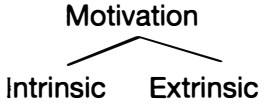
CLASSIFICATION

Classifications are also found in every subject. To classify means to organize into groups with similar characteristics. Look at these examples of classifications and notice how the diagrams show the relationship between the main category and the classification of types or kinds.

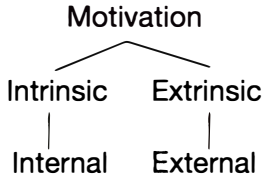
This chapter explores four highly specialized forms of fungus, which include molds, yeasts, lichens, and mycorrhizae.



Two types of motivation have been identified by cognitive psychologists. *Intrinsic motivation* is based on internal factors, as for example curiosity or the challenge to succeed, whereas *extrinsic motivation* involves external incentives such as rewards or even punishments.



Sometimes this diagram is enough for you to remember other details, but a word or a brief phrase can help you recall a definition for each type.



SEQUENCE

Sequence is often found in narrations of historical events, in descriptions of research studies, and in directions for scientific experiments or processes.

The Roman Empire was built in three stages, which consisted of the conquest of Italy, the conflict with Carthage and expansion into the Western Mediterranean, and, finally, the domination of the Greek kingdoms and the Eastern Mediterranean.

Roman Empire

- Conquest Italy
- Conflict Carthage + expansion W Med
- Domination Greek + E Med

The history of Cubism falls into three phases—the Cezanne phase, which lasted only two years from 1907 to 1909, followed by the Analytical phase from 1910 to 1912, which, by the way, was the phase in which the most abstract purification of the form was realized, and finally, the Synthetic phase, beginning in 1913.

Cubism

- Cezanne phase 1907–9
- Analytical phase 1910–12
  abstract purification
- Synthetic phase 1913

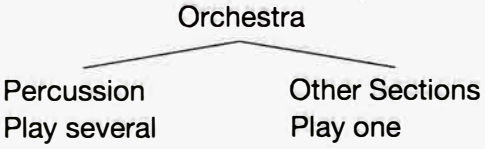
COMPARISON AND CONTRAST

Comparison and contrast identifies how two or more objects or ideas are the same or different. A side-by-side chart shows the relationships efficiently.

Cirrus clouds are the highest at altitudes between 17,000 and 50,000 feet, but they don't produce rain, in contrast with cumulonimbus clouds, which also penetrate the upper atmosphere, but cause lightning storms, rain, and tornados.

Cirrus	*Cumulonimbus*
17–50,000 ft	upper atmos
Ø rain	rain–lightning–tornados

Although each person is responsible for one instrument in most sections of the orchestra, the members of the percussion section are required to play several instruments in one concert or even for one composition.



CAUSE AND EFFECT

Cause and effect or cause and result are found in research studies for all subjects, but the natural sciences contain many examples.

Mercantilism is an economic concept that assumes that the total volume of trade is unchangeable and, therefore, that trade causes conflict.

Mercantilism = total volume trade unchangeable
Trade → Conflict

When the temperatures on Earth dropped below the melting point of the rocks on the surface, the outer crust gradually solidified.

Temp Earth < melt pt rocks → crust solid

PROBLEM AND SOLUTION

A problem and solution relationship is similar to a cause and effect relationship and can be represented by a similar drawing.

Because employees can begin to expect incentives simply for doing their jobs, and this can become a problem, it is better to reserve incentives for occasions that require exceptional effort.

Expect incentives/job → Reserve incentives/exceptional

The problem is that most populations of ginseng in Canada are too small to survive unless they are completely protected from harvesting by humans.

Ginseng survive → ∅ human harvesting

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

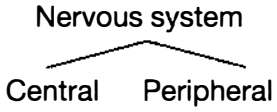
Sometimes it is faster to represent an idea with a symbol or a diagram than it is to write notes in words. This is especially true of relationships.

Practice Activity 20

Did you understand? Now practice drawing diagrams to represent relationships. First listen to each of the sentences from lectures on different topics. Then stop the audio and draw your diagram. Compare your drawings with the drawings in the answer key. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if it shows the same relationship as the drawings in the answer key, even if the diagram is not exactly the same. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 543–545.

Example

The nervous system is divided into two major parts: the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system.



Listen to some sentences from college lectures. Take notes by drawing diagrams.

 **Activity 20, CD 1, Track 29**

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

This advice from Dr. Charles Swindell is framed on the wall of my office near my computer so that I can see it every day. I am happy to share it with you.

The longer I live, the more I realize the impact of attitude on life. Attitude to me is more important than facts. It is more important than the past, than education, than money, than circumstances, than failures, than successes, than what other people think or say or do. It is more important than appearance, giftedness, or skill. The remarkable thing is, we have a choice every day regarding the attitude we embrace for that day. We cannot change our past. We cannot change the fact that people may act in a certain way. We cannot change the inevitable. The only thing we can do is play on the one string we have, and that is our attitude. I am convinced that life is 10 percent what happens to me and 90 percent how I react to it. And so it is with you. We are in charge of our attitudes.

Henry Ford said it another way: "If you think you can or you think you can't, you are probably right."

PARAPHRASING

Paraphrasing means using different words to express the same meaning. When you paraphrase, you express an idea that you have heard or read, but you say or write it in your own words. Because you are including all of the information when you paraphrase, the paraphrase is usually about the same length as the original. There are three problems that you will confront when you are paraphrasing.

1. **There is a natural tendency to repeat the same words instead of paraphrasing them.** This means that you need to listen and read for meaning instead of focusing on individual words and grammatical structures.
2. **Reference materials such as a thesaurus may not be used on the TOEFL.** This means that you have to know synonyms for words and phrases.
3. **Sometimes it is not possible to think of a paraphrase.** This means that you must learn how to give credit to sources when you use them in speaking or writing.

This chapter will help you improve your paraphrasing skills. You will learn how to

- **Choose synonyms for words and phrases**
- **Use alternative grammatical structures**
- **Cite expressions and ideas**

How will these strategies help you on the TOEFL? By learning to paraphrase well, you will achieve a higher score on all four sections of the TOEFL. There are questions that require you to recognize or produce paraphrases on the Reading, Listening, Writing, and Speaking sections. Paraphrasing is a very important academic skill for success in college or university classes as well. Using someone else's words is called *plagiarizing.* Plagiarizing is a very serious offense and can result in your being expelled from school.

CHOOSE SYNONYMS FOR WORDS AND PHRASES

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Substitute multiple synonyms
- ➤ Use phrases
- ➤ Make an explanation

➤ Substitute multiple synonyms

When you use the strategy of substituting synonyms, you must substitute more than one word or phrase. An excellent paraphrase will also be expressed by a different grammatical structure. You will learn about using alternative structures later in this chapter.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Paraphrases with synonyms must be restatements. Substituting only one vocabulary word in a sentence is not a restatement. It is so close to the original that it is not an acceptable paraphrase. Here is an example statement and an unacceptable paraphrase:

Original Statement: The hardest woodwind instrument to learn is the oboe.

Unacceptable Paraphrase: The *most difficult* woodwind instrument to learn is the oboe.

Why is the first paraphrase unacceptable? Did you notice that only one word was different from the original statement? Remember that substituting one synonym is not a restatement and not an acceptable paraphrase.

Now look at an acceptable paraphrase:

Original Statement: The hardest woodwind instrument to learn is the oboe

Acceptable Paraphrase: The *most difficult* woodwind instrument to *master* is the oboe.

Why is the second paraphrase acceptable? Did you notice that more than one synonym was different? The phrase *most difficult* was substituted for the word *hardest* and the word *master* was substituted for the word *learn*. But this paraphrase is still very close to the original sentence.

This is an improvement in paraphrasing:

Original Statement: The hardest woodwind instrument to learn is the oboe.

Excellent Paraphrase: The oboe is the most difficult woodwind instrument to master.

Why is this paraphrase considered excellent? Like the acceptable paraphrase, more than one synonym was different. The phrase *most difficult* was substituted for the word *hardest* and the word *master* was substituted for the word *learn.* Did you also see how the structure of the sentence changed? The subject of the original statement was *the hardest woodwind instrument* and the complement was *the oboe.* In the excellent paraphrase, *the oboe* was the subject and *the hardest woodwind instrument* was the complement.

Practice Activity 21

Did you understand? Try to rewrite each sentence that you may see in a textbook by substituting synonyms for the underlined words and phrases. As you have learned, an excellent paraphrase will also change the structure of the sentence, but in this practice activity, let's begin by writing acceptable paraphrases. Substitute multiple synonyms. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if the words or phrases you use are synonyms for the underlined words or phrases and the meaning of the sentence is the same. The synonyms do not have to be the ones that are used in the answer key. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 545.

EXAMPLE

Original: Thomas Edison was a very curious child, performing his first experiment when he was only three years old.

Paraphrase: Thomas Edison was a very inquisitive child, conducting his first experiment at the age of three.

1. The copperhead, a snake that strikes without warning, is considered much more dangerous than the rattlesnake.

2. Because J. P. Morgan was known as a reputable and prudent businessman, he was able to persuade others to remain in the market even after the crash had begun.

3. Phosphorus is used in paint on highway signs and markers because it is bright at night.

4. Rain forests are often located near the equator.

5. By the mid-nineteenth century, land was so expensive in large cities that architects began to conserve space by building skyscrapers.

6. Research studies of vertebrates show development from a very simple heart in fish to a complex four-chamber heart in humans.

7. When two products are fundamentally the same, advertising can influence the choice that the public makes.

8. As a whole, in birds, the male of the species is more brilliantly colored.

9. The price of gold on the world market is subject to several variables, including but not limited to supply and demand.

10. The idea of a submarine is not recent, dating from the 1400s when Drebbel and da Vinci drew initial sketches.

➤ Use phrases

There is a tendency to try to find one word to paraphrase, but phrases can be a useful alternative.

Practical Strategy

The English language contains many phrasal verbs that express the same meaning as a one-word verb. In general, the phrasal verb is used for informal writing and speaking, and the one-word verb is used for more formal language. Some of the phrasal verbs that are common to academic language are listed here.

Bring about	cause
Carry on	transact; continue
Carry out	complete; accomplish
Clear up	clarify
Come about	happen
Come across	find
Come by	find accidentally
Come out with	publish; produce
Come up with	create
Cut down on	reduce
Fall through	fail
Figure out	understand
Find out	discover
Give off	emit
Go after	follow
Go back	return
Go before	precede
Go down	decrease
Go on	continue; happen
Go over	review
Go through	experience; penetrate
Go up	increase
Keep on	continue
Keep up	remain current
Leave out	exclude; omit
Look for	seek
Look into	investigate
Look like	resemble
Look over	examine
Look up	locate information
Look up to	respect
Make out	understand with difficulty
Make up	invent; compose
Pick out	select
Point out	show; indicate
Put off	postpone

Put up with	tolerate
Rule out	eliminate
Run across	find accidentally
Run into	meet by accident
Set up	arrange
Show up	appear unexpectedly
Spell out	state in detail
Stand for	represent
Stick out	protrude
Take into account	consider
Take over	assume control
Take place	occur
Think through	reason
Throw away	discard
Touch on	mention briefly
Try out	test
Turn into	transform
Turn out	conclude
Turn up	discover
Wind up	finish
Work out	active
Write up	report

Practice Activity 22

Did you understand? First read each sentence. Then try to say each sentence using a phrase instead of a one-word verb. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if the phrases that you use are synonyms for the underlined words and the meaning of the sentence is the same. The phrases do not have to be the ones that are used in the answer key. Example answers are recorded on CD 1, Track 30 of the audio and also printed in Chapter 5 on pages 545–546.

PHRASAL VERBS

Example

Written: A balance of international payment refers to the net result of the business that a nation transacts with other nations in a given period.

Spoken: A balance of international payment refers to the net result of the business that a nation carries on with other nations in a given period.



Activity 22, CD 1, Track 30

Listen to the example answers after you complete your answers.

1. Because light travels faster than sound, lightning appears to precede thunder.
2. Congress respected Jefferson because of his intelligence and creativity.
3. The lower teeth in crocodiles protrude when their mouths are closed.
4. Some sponges resemble plants.
5. The first census was accomplished in Great Britain in 1801.
6. People who have experienced a traumatic event may have recurring images of it.
7. In algebra, letters and other symbols represent numbers.
8. During periods of stress or excitement, the heart rate increases and airways to the lungs become dilated.
9. Theories of prehistory and early humans are constantly changing as we consider the new evidence from archeological finds.
10. Dreams may have been the inspiration for the Surrealists to create their works of art.

➤ Make an explanation

Sometimes even native speakers cannot retrieve a word from memory when they are paraphrasing, especially when they are speaking. When this happens to you, there are several ways to compensate for the word that has slipped your mind. Make an explanation.

Practical Strategy

If it is an adjective, you can use an opposite adjective with the word *not*. For example, if a synonym for the adjective *large* slips your mind, you can say, *not small. The sum was not small.* If it is a verb, you can use a general verb instead of a specific synonym. For example, if you forget the synonym for the verb *rely on*, you can say, *use*, which is a very general verb that includes many meanings. Early traders *used* barter instead of money to exchange goods. If it is a noun, you can describe the noun with a descriptive phrase or clause. For example, if you forget the synonym for the noun *farmer* or if the word *farmer* slips your mind, you can describe it by saying, *the person who engages in agriculture.*

These compensatory strategies are used to get out of a problem when you are speaking. They should be used as a last resort instead of stopping when you are speaking.

Practice Activity 23

Did you understand? Try to restate each sentence that you may see in a textbook by explaining the meaning instead of substituting a synonym for the underlined word. The first one is completed to give you an example. Example answers are recorded on CD 1, Track 31 of the audio and also printed in Chapter 5 on page 546.

Example

The Constitution guarantees that private homes will not be searched without a warrant. The Constitution guarantees that private homes will not be searched without written authorization.



Activity 23, CD 1, Track 31

Listen to the example answers after you complete your answers.

ADJECTIVES

Use an opposite.

Example

The second movement of a symphony is usually slow.
The second movement of a symphony is usually not fast.

1. The temperature in many desert regions is cold at night.

2. Facial expressions may be common across cultures.

3. Obsidian is shiny because it cools too quickly for crystals to form.

4. Few musical instruments play louder than 100 decibels or softer than 20 decibels.

5. The people who have adapted to life at very high altitudes are usually short.

NOUNS

Use a phrase.

Example

Skyscrapers are representative of the International Style of architecture.
Tall buildings are representative of the International Style of architecture.

1. In many cities, vendors must have a license to set up their booths in public places.

2. Studies show that small pets are a positive influence in elderly people's lives.

3. Staircases were an important feature of the palaces constructed during the Baroque period.

4. Global wind patterns are affected by the Earth's rotation.

5. Bilingual education is more common in regions where language minorities live.

VERBS

Use a general verb.

EXAMPLE

Many managers employ teams to accomplish complex goals.
Many managers use teams to accomplish complex goals.

1. Unlike cast iron, pure wrought iron contains no carbon.

2. Hypnosis achieves a heightened state of suggestibility in a willing participant.

3. Productivity increases when fewer employees are required to accomplish the work.

4. Normally, the plasma in human blood constitutes 50–60 percent of the total blood volume.

5. Three fourths of the goods manufactured in Canada for export are sold to the United States.

USE ALTERNATIVE GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Produce restatements
- ➤ Read and listen for meaning
- ➤ Edit problem paraphrases

➤ Produce restatements

Learning to identify possibilities for alternative structures will improve your paraphrasing skills. A restatement with an alternative structure is not a paraphrase because it uses too many of the same words and phrases. Later in this chapter, you will use restatements with synonyms to produce paraphrases.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Study the examples of restatements in each of the categories below. Learn to make restatements using alternative structures. When you can use both synonyms and alternative structures, you will be able to paraphrase appropriately. For now, focus on alternative structures.

Chronology	before/after/during
Coordination	not only-but also/neither-nor/not-but/both-and/as well as
Cause	because/because of/since/as a result
Comparison	similar/like/the same/differ/different/more/less
Concession	although/even though/despite/in spite of/but/whereas
Negatives	not + un-/not once/not one/very rarely/very seldom
Passives	BE + past participle

CHRONOLOGY

Original: After the Missouri Compromise was abandoned by Congress, the Republican party was formed in 1854, partly in opposition to the spread of slavery in the United States.

Restatement: Before the Republican party was formed in 1854, in part to oppose the spread of slavery in the United States, the Missouri Compromise had already been abandoned by Congress.

COORDINATION

Original: Byzantine art consisted not only of oriental style but also of Greek ideas that maintained its popularity for more than eleven centuries.

Restatement: Popular for more than eleven hundred years, Byzantine art consisted of both oriental style and Greek ideas.

CAUSE

Original: In the classic experiment in operant conditioning, Pavlov's dog salivated when he heard a bell because he associated the sound with food.

Restatement: Since Pavlov's dog associated the sound of a bell with being fed, he salivated when he heard it in the classic experiment in operant conditioning.

COMPARISON

Original: As a conductor of heat and electricity, aluminum exceeds all metals except silver, copper, and gold.

Restatement: Silver, copper, and gold are better conductors of heat and electricity than aluminum is.

CONCESSION

Original: Despite the great differences in size, shape, and function, all human cells have the same forty-six chromosomes.

Restatement: Although the forty-six chromosomes are the same in all human cells, there are differences in the size, shape, and function.

NEGATIVE

Original: It is not illegal in some cultures to be married to more than one woman at the same time, but the monogamous relationship is the most common.

Restatement: In some cultures, it is legal to be married to several women at once, but it is more common to be married to just one woman.

PASSIVE

Original: The explosive properties of nitroglycerin, later one of the components of dynamite, were discovered by Ascanio Sobrero, an Italian chemistry professor.

Restatement: Italian chemistry professor Ascanio Sobrero discovered that nitroglycerin, later used in the production of dynamite, had explosive properties.

Practice Activity 24

Did you understand? Try to restate each sentence that you may see in a textbook by writing an alternative grammatical structure. Make changes to the grammar but do not make changes in the meaning of the sentence. The first one for each structure is completed to give you an example. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 546–547.

CHRONOLOGY

Example

Chronology: After the death of Queen Mary in 1558, her half-sister Elizabeth ascended the throne of England.

Chronology
Restatement: Before Elizabeth ascended the throne of England in 1558, her half-sister Mary ruled.

1. Not until the Triassic Period did the first primitive mammals appear.

2. Glass became a major construction material during the late Middle Ages.

3. Helium replaced hydrogen as a power source for dirigibles because it was safer.

4. The Moriori people settled the Chatham Islands off the coast of New Zealand long before the Europeans arrived in 1791.

5. Always rinse your test tubes and pipettes with a small amount of distilled water before you store them in the lab cabinets.

COORDINATION

EXAMPLE

Coordination: Before the introduction of the musical staff, composers preserved their work not only by writing it down but also by teaching it to a younger musician.

Coordination Restatement: Before the introduction of the musical staff, composers preserved their work by teaching it to a younger musician, as well as by writing it down in a book.

1. Both genes and viruses are made of essential chemicals called nucleoproteins.

2. Successful managers neither proceed without a plan nor ignore opportunities that arise.

3. Technically, not only glass but also water is considered a mineral.

4. Neither corn nor winter wheat is native to the Americas.

5. Ethnicity is usually based on race and religion as well as national origin.

CAUSE

EXAMPLE

Cause: The diesel engine that runs on oil is more efficient than most other engines because it converts more of the useful energy stored in the fuel.

Cause Restatement: The diesel engine runs more efficiently than most other engines because of the oil that converts more useful energy.

1. Psychologists suggest that incentives cause workers to increase productivity.

2. Because many flakes have been found in excavations of Stone Age settlements, anthropologists conclude that they were used as tools for cutting and scraping.

3. Too much water can cause plants to turn brown on the edges.

4. Blood pressure can become elevated as a result of increased salt consumption.

5. Since the interstate highway system linking roads across the country was built in the 1930s, most of the roads in the system need to be repaired.

COMPARISON

EXAMPLE

Comparison: Although they are smaller in size, for the most part, chipmunks are like most other ground squirrels.

Comparison Restatement: Chipmunks are mostly like other ground squirrels except for their smaller size.

1. Viruses and the first life forms that appeared on Earth millions of years ago have a similar structure.

2. The lungs have a higher oxygen concentration than the blood does.

3. The Indian Ocean is smaller but deeper than the Atlantic Ocean.

4. Picasso's work was not the same during various artistic periods.

5. The difference in the gravitational attraction of various places on the Earth's surface is the reason that the weight of objects is not the same.

CONCESSION

EXAMPLE

Concession: Although oil paint tends to yellow with age, tempera colors retain their vibrancy for centuries.

Concession Restatement: Oil paint tends to yellow with age, but tempera colors retain their vibrancy for centuries.

1. Whereas insulin levels are close to or above normal in type 2 diabetes, target cells cannot respond adequately.

2. Although the idea of an English language academy is regularly proposed, the response has never been very positive.

3. Even though the Jovian planets are grouped together, each one has had a very different evolutionary history.

4. Despite the advantage that young people enjoy for recall in vocabulary studies, older people appear to be better at word recognition.

5. In spite of the fact that interviews are the most common strategy for assessing job applicants, they tend to have low validity.

NEGATIVE

EXAMPLE

Negative: The addiction to gambling is not unlike the addiction to substances.

Affirmative Restatement: The addiction to gambling is like the addiction to substances.

1. Not once has the geyser known as Old Faithful failed to erupt on time.

2. Nonstandard dialects are not used as educational models in schools.

3. Never has there been such wide access to news from so many media.

4. The construction of a city on the ruins of a previous settlement is not uncommon.

5. Not until the Triassic Period did the first primitive mammals develop.

PASSIVE

EXAMPLE

Active statement: Sea gulls need either fresh or salt water for them to survive.

Passive Restatement: Either fresh or salt water is needed by sea gulls for them to survive.

1. It is interesting that people over the age of sixty-five experience fewer mental health disorders.

2. In the stringed instruments, a bow produces the tones when it is played across a set *of* strings made of wire or gut.

3. High-frequency radiation from the Sun and other sources partly ionize gases in the ionosphere.

4. Architects can use a domed roof to conserve floor space.

5. The Egyptians used papyrus to make paper, sails, baskets, and clothing.

➤ Read and listen for meaning

When you read or listen for meaning, you learn to think about the ideas that the writer or speaker is communicating, not the individual words or grammar used.

Practical Strategy

Practice reading and listening for meaning. By focusing on sentences or even paragraphs, you will train your mind to make connections and comprehend the ideas instead of trying to understand word by word. The important question is this: What does the author or the lecturer mean? What ideas are being expressed?

Practice Activity 25

Did you understand? Try to identify the sentences that express the same idea. The first one is completed to give you an example. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 548.

Example

What does the professor mean by the following statement:

> Poet and humorist Ogden Nash tried but failed to adapt himself to the academic and later the business world.

Ⓐ He was a better businessman than he was a teacher.
● He did not succeed in either teaching or business.
Ⓒ He tried teaching before he finally succeeded in business.
Ⓓ He made no effort to succeed in teaching and business.

1. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

   After hitting a bar several times with similar results, an animal learns that it can get food by pressing the bar.

   Ⓐ An animal is able to press the bar more after it is fed three or four times.
   Ⓑ Three or four animals are used in the experiment with similar results.
   Ⓒ There are several trials by an animal before the food is released.
   Ⓓ An animal learns how to get food by hitting a bar.

2. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

   Although he wrote many short stories, it was a poem, "The Raven," that brought Poe his greatest recognition as a writer.

   Ⓐ Poe is remembered more for a poem than for his short stories.
   Ⓑ "The Raven" is less well-known than Poe's short stories.
   Ⓒ Poe is famous for writing both short stories and poetry.
   Ⓓ Poe wrote more short stories than poems during his career.

3. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

It was an atom that contained in the form of pure energy the fundamental components of the entire universe.

Ⓐ The universe was made up of many atoms of pure energy.
Ⓑ The effect of a pure atom in the universe was to produce energy.
Ⓒ Everything in the universe was reduced to pure energy in one atom.
Ⓓ The energy in the universe was stored in pure atoms.

4. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

Although a bear does not eat during the winter, sustaining itself on body fat, its temperature remains almost normal, and it breathes regularly.

Ⓐ When a bear survives on body fat instead of eating, its temperature and respiration are reduced.
Ⓑ Not eating during the winter does not affect the bear's breathing, but it does affect its temperature.
Ⓒ During the winter, the bear's temperature is normal and its respiration is regular, but it does not require food.
Ⓓ The bear's diet of fat during the winter does not affect its temperature and respiration.

5. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

It is generally true that as long as the CEO maintains the confidence of the board of directors, they will not intervene to dictate specific policies.

Ⓐ Policies are dictated by the board with the approval of the CEO.
Ⓑ The board will assume control only if they lose confidence in the CEO.
Ⓒ The confidence of the CEO is important to decisions that the board makes.
Ⓓ The intervention by the CEO in board policies does not occur often.

6. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

Temperature variations cause pressure differences in the air.

Ⓐ Fluctuations in the air pressure are a result of changes in temperature.
Ⓑ Changes in the air pressure and temperature vary at different times.
Ⓒ The temperature is usually different from the air pressure.
Ⓓ Changeable temperatures are caused by reversals in the wind.

7. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

To maintain a healthy body weight, an animal must balance energy intake with energy output, largely by metabolic activity and regular physical exertion.

Ⓐ Metabolism regulates activity and exercise reduces body weight for a healthy life style.
Ⓑ A healthy life style includes exercise in order to control weight gain that is caused by the metabolism.
Ⓒ Metabolism and exercise are ways to stabilize consumption and production of energy for a healthy weight.
Ⓓ Animals generally balance their metabolisms by healthy eating and exercise, which also controls their weight.

8. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

   An example of children's literature that supports the natural inclination to play with language is the *nursery rhyme.*

   Ⓐ The nursery rhyme is a good example of children's literature because it is fun.
   Ⓑ Children like nursery rhymes because they enjoy them during playtime.
   Ⓒ Children's literature is written in language that the child can understand.
   Ⓓ The child's interest in playing with language is encouraged by the nursery rhyme.

9. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

   For employees whose jobs involve sitting at a computer terminal entering data or typing reports, the location of the computer relative to the company is of no consequence.

   Ⓐ Employees who work at their computers like to choose their locations.
   Ⓑ It does not matter where employees work at their computers.
   Ⓒ The location of their computers should be comfortable to employees.
   Ⓓ Computer terminals must be located near each other in a company.

10. What does the professor mean by the following statement:

    Ireland was first settled around 7500 B.C. by hunting tribes from Scotland, followed by people from the Mediterranean know as the Firbolgs.

    Ⓐ The Firbolgs arrived in Ireland from the Mediterranean after the Scottish people had already settled there.
    Ⓑ Irish tribes went to Scotland and then followed a hunting route all the way to the Mediterranean area called Firbolgs.
    Ⓒ The Irish and Scottish people explored Europe, reaching as far as the Mediterranean where they settled.
    Ⓓ Looking for a place to live, the Firbolgs went to Scotland and then to Ireland where they finally settled.

➤ Edit problem paraphrases

Here are some problems that you can learn to avoid:

- Don't change the meaning
- Don't leave out information
- Don't use too much of the original wording
- Don't copy the original

Original Sentence:

Sometimes students plagiarize material from lectures and reading passages because they don't understand how to make the appropriate changes for an excellent paraphrase.

Don't change the meaning

This is not an excellent paraphrase because the meaning has been changed from the original:

> On occasion, students use paraphrases of excellent lectures and reading passages without understanding the purpose of the changes that they have made in them.

Don't leave out important information

This is not an excellent paraphrase because it does not include all of the important information in the original:

> On occasion, students use lecture and reading material verbatim.

Don't use too much of the original wording

This is not an excellent paraphrase because it looks and sounds too much like the original:

> On occasion, students plagiarize material from lectures and reading passages because they don't comprehend how to make the necessary changes for an excellent paraphrase.

Don't copy the original

This is *n*ot an excellent paraphrase because it is an exact copy of the original.

> Sometimes students plagiarize material from lectures and reading passages because they don't understand how to make the appropriate changes for an excellent paraphrase.

Practice Activity 26

Did you understand? Try to find the problem in each paraphrase and edit it. The first one is completed to give you an example. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 548–549.

Example

Original:	Tides are caused by the gravitational pull of both the Sun and the Moon.
Paraphrase:	Tides are produced by the gravitational pull of both the Sun and the Moon.
Problem:	The paraphrase is too much like the original. Only one word was changed.
Edited Paraphrase:	The combined gravitational effects of the Sun and Moon produce tides on Earth.

Why is this better? Because synonyms have been substituted, and an alternative grammati*cal* structure has been used, but the meaning has not changed.

1. Original: Proteins are molecules that regulate the movement of materials across cell walls.
   Paraphrase: Molecules that regulate the movement of materials across cell walls are proteins.

2. Original: The invention of the steam engine played a major role in the Industrial Revolution because it caused the factory system to extend itself to many areas of production apart from the cotton industry.
   Paraphrase: The invention of the steam engine was a primary influence in the Industrial Revolution.

3. Original: Although big companies are trying to maintain a balance between traditional advertising and some of the newer alternatives like blogging, it is often the smaller entrepreneurs who are using bloggers as an efficient way to stack their competition.
   Paraphrase: Big companies are using bloggers to defeat their smaller rivals.

4. Original: Fossils of bones have the appearance of stone, but the holes and pores are actually infused with mineral deposits from the surrounding sediments.
   Paraphrase: Fossils of bones look like stone, but there are mineral deposits from the surrounding sediments in the holes and pores.

5. Original: Pictograms found in many parts of the world about 1500 B.C. constitute the earliest system of writing, although written symbols have been discovered that date from as early as 3500 B.C.
   Paraphrase: Pictograms found in various parts of the world are the earliest evidence of a written system despite the discovery of written symbols.

6. Original: The modern atmosphere is probably the fourth atmosphere in the history of the Earth.
   Paraphrase: The modern atmosphere is probably the fourth atmosphere in the history of the Earth.

7. Original: Whereas alcohol is a depressant, coffee is a stimulant.
   Paraphrase: Alcohol is not like coffee.

8. Original: The Pacific Basin, which includes the continent of Australia and the thousands of islands grouped together as Oceania, covers one third of the surface of the Earth.
   Paraphrase: The Pacific Basin is also called Oceania because it encompasses one third of the Pacific Ocean.

9. Original: In fresco painting, the pigments may be mixed with water and applied to the plaster before it dries so that the lime in the plaster fuses with the pigments on the surface.
   Paraphrase: The lime in wet plaster bonds with the pigments on the surface when the colors are mixed.

10. Original: As Linnaeus originally conceived the biological classification chart, he segregated all living creatures solely according to their degree of physical similarity.
    Paraphrase: Linnaeus originally created the biological classification chart by categorizing all living creatures according to their degree of physical similarity.

CITE EXPRESSIONS AND IDEAS

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Introduce the source before quoting
- ➤ Mark quotations in writing and in speaking
- ➤ Use strong verbs to report ideas
- ➤ Mention the source appropriately

➤ Introduce the source before quoting

It is important to cite the expressions and ideas of others. To cite means to give credit to the source. This is especially true when the idea is a definition, an opinion, a unique expression, or research data that is not common knowledge.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

There are several phrases and clauses that can be used to introduce the source of your ideas. Let's say that Professor Thompson makes the following statement in a lecture: "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions." You may want to quote this opinion. If you do, the words in the quotation must be exactly the same as those in the original. Here are five ways to introduce the source before the quotation.

According to Professor Thompson, "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions."

In the words of Professor Thompson, "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions."

To quote Professor Thompson, "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions."

As Professor Thompson puts it, "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions."

Professor Thompson said, "The shift from manufacturing to service has resulted in lower paying jobs and a decline in the strength of labor unions."

On the TOEFL examination, sometimes the professor is not named. In that case, you can still introduce your source by changing the introductions slightly:

According to the professor,
In the words of the professor,
To quote the professor,
As the professor puts it,
The professor said,

Practice Activity 27

Did you understand? Try to quote each sentence that you hear in a lecture by an unnamed professor. Be sure to use one of the introductory phrases or clauses before you begin your quotation. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if you write any of the introductions and if the words in your quotations are exactly the same as those of the professor. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 550.

Example

"Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

According to the professor, "Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

Also correct:

In the words of the professor, "Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

To quote the professor, "Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

As the professor puts it, "Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

The professor said, "Communicating is the act of transmitting information."

1. A stock is equity in a company, and, therefore, it represents ownership.
2. The desalination of the ocean is going to be a crucial aspect of water management.
3. The theme of a worldwide flood is found in the mythology of many cultures.
4. Psychology focuses on the individual, whereas sociology focuses on social groups.
5. The ethics of science will become more important in this decade.
6. I call my idea the simplification principle.
7. The three-domain system is superior to the five-domain system of classification in biology.
8. The term *relief* describes any printing method with a raised image.
9. Training programs must address the issue of technology in the workplace.
10. Quasars are difficult to study because they are so far away.

➤ Mark quotations in writing and in speaking

Quotation marks are used before and after the words that you are quoting. This is easy to see when you are quoting in the written language. But when you are quoting in the spoken language, you need to *hear* the quotation marks. Words and phrases must be used to mark quotations in speaking.

Practical Strategy

There are several phrases and clauses that can be used to mark quotations. Let's say that Professor Smith makes the following statement in a lecture: "Additives are chemicals that manufacturers add to food and other products." You may want to quote this definition. If you use the quotation in writing, you must use quotation marks before and after the words that you are quoting. If you use the quotation in speaking, you must use words and phrases in place of the quotation marks. The words in the quotation must be exactly the same as those in the original. Here are several ways to mark the beginning and ending of a quotation in speaking:

According to Professor Smith, *and I am quoting here,* "Additives are chemicals that manufacturers add to food and other products." *End quote.*

According to Professor Smith, *and I quote,* "Additives are chemicals that manufacturers add to food and other products." *End quote.*

To quote Professor Smith, "Additives are chemicals that manufacturers add to food and other products." *End quote.*

Practice Activity 28

Did you understand? Try to quote each sentence. First, put the quotation marks around the written quote. Be sure to put them above the line, not on the line. Then use verbal quotation marks for a spoken quote. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if you use any of the verbal quotation marks and if the words in your quotation are exactly the same as those of the source. Spoken answers are recorded on CD 1, Track 32 of the audio. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 550–551.

Example

A mirage *is* an optical illusion in the atmosphere.

Written quote: According to Professor Brown, "A mirage is an optical illusion in the atmosphere."

Spoken quotes: According to Professor Brown, *and I quote,* "A mirage is an optical illusion in the atmosphere." *End quote.*

According to Professor Brown, *and I am quoting here,* "A mirage is an optical illusion in the atmosphere." *End quote.*

To quote Professor Brown, "A mirage is an optical illusion in the atmosphere." *End quote.*



Activity 28, CD 1, Track 32

Listen to the example answers after you complete your answers.

1. According to a study by Professor Carter, patients can lower their blood pressure by losing weight and decreasing their intake of salt.

2. According to Professor Jones, over fourteen billion euros were introduced into the world economy in January, 2002.

3. To quote a study in the *Journal of Psychology*, many people who have achieved their career ambitions by midlife are afflicted by depression.

4. According to the textbook, an organ is a group of tissues capable of performing some special function.

5. According to Professor Stephens, John Philip Sousa was the greatest composer of marches for bands.

6. In Professor Davison's opinion, Ben Johnson may be the author of several plays attributed to William Shakespeare.

7. Professor Davis said that statistical data can be very difficult to interpret because correlations are not causes.

8. As Professor Gray puts it, the prime minister serves at the pleasure of the parliament.

9. According to the reading passage, moving water is the single most important factor in determining the surface features of the Earth.

10. In Professor Russell's opinion, the most important quality for a scientist is the ability to make careful observations.

➤ Use strong verbs to report ideas

Practical Strategy

Sometimes you will want to refer to the ideas and research of others without using a direct quotation. When the ideas are specific to an author or researcher, it is still necessary to cite the source. Choose verbs that report the idea and convey the meaning that you wish to attach to the idea. You may choose verbs that express doubt, neutrality, or certainty.

Beyond the Book
Mini-Lesson for the TOEFL
Paraphrasing



To view the lesson, swipe the code with the QR reader on your smartphone or enter the following private access address on your computer:

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SNPu_UUbE3U

Doubtful	Neutral	Certain
Allege	Explain	Argue
Assume	Indicate	Assert
Believe	Illustrate	Conclude
Claim	Mention	Confirm
Imply	Note	Contend
Predict	Observe	Demonstrate
Propose	Point out	Discover
Suggest	Report	Find
Suppose	Say	Insist
Suspect	Show	Maintain
Think	State	Verify

Practice Activity 29

Did you understand? Try to report each quotation. Choose a verb to express doubt, neutrality, or certainty. The first one is completed to give you an example. Your answer is correct if you use any of the verbs listed under the correct heading—doubtful, neutral, certain. Notice that both verbs in reported language are in the past tense. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 551.

Example

Quotation: Psychologist Carl Rogers said, "Negative feedback causes people to develop a poor self-concept."

Certain Report: Carl Rogers argued that negative feedback caused people to develop a poor self-concept.

Also Correct: Carl Rogers maintained that negative feedback caused people to develop a poor self-concept.

1. Sociologist Lee Clark said, "When danger arises, the rule is for people to help those next to them before they help themselves." "Panic: Myth or Reality," *Contexts I* (Fall 2002), p. 21.
   Neutral report:

2. Biological anthropologist Barry Bogin said, "We can use the average height of any group of people as a barometer of the health of their society." "The Tall and Short of It," *Applying Anthropology: An Introductory Reader,* Mountain View, California: Mayfield Publishing Company, 2001, p. 54.
   Doubtful report:

3. Physician Stanley Joel Reiser said, "Machines direct the attention of both doctor and patient to the measurable aspect of illness, but away from the human factors that are at least equally important." *Medicine and the Reign of Technology,* New York: Cambridge University Press, 1978, p. 229.
   Certain report:

4. Educator Harry Wong said, "There is but one correlation with success, and that is attitude." *The First Days of School: How to Be an Effective Teacher,* Sunnyvale, California: Harry K. Wong Publications, 1991, p. 35.
   Certain report:

5. Choreographer Martha Graham said, "Technique and training have never been a substitute for that condition of awareness which is talent." *Dance as a Theatre Art,* Hightstown, New Jersey: Princeton Book Company, 1974, p. 136.
   Doubtful report:

6. Psychologist Carl Jung said, "The collective unconscious seems to be something like an unceasing stream or perhaps an ocean of images and figures which drift into consciousness in our dreams." "The Basic Postulates of Analytical Psychology," *Modern Man in Search of a Soul,* Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1933.
   Doubtful report:

7. Computer entrepreneur Bill Gates said, "The key for Microsoft™ has always been hiring very smart people." Transcript of video history interview, National Museum of American History, January 11, 2005.
   Neutral report:

8. Geneticists James Watson and Francis Crick said, "DNA structure has two helical chains each coiled around the same axis." "A Structure for Deoxyribose Nucleic Acid," *Nature,* Volume 171 (April 2), 1953, p. 737.
   Doubtful report:

9. Environmentalist John Sinclair said, "Many politicians are hostile to the environmental movement because they see it in conflict with the economic model they support." "The Legacy of Voluntary Conservationists." 1998 Romeo Lahey Lecture for the National Parks Association of Queensland, Australia.
   Neutral report:

10. Astrophysicist Carl Sagan said, "Even a relatively small nuclear war may be capable of producing a global climatic catastrophe." Speech before the Commonwealth Club, February 8, 1985.
    Certain report:

➤ Mention the source appropriately

You already know how to introduce a source, but sometimes you need to mention the source more than one time. In that case, there is a pattern that is customarily used to mention the source appropriately.

Practical Strategy

When you cite the source the first time, use the first and last name. The title is optional. When you cite the second time, use the last name only. If you cite a third time, use a pronoun, for example, *he* or *she.* After the third citation, you may use the pronoun again if the meaning is clear, or you may repeat the last name for clarity.

In the case of speakers or writers who are not named, the source should still be cited. You may be able to identify and cite the source as a professor, a speaker, an author, a writer, or a student, based on the context in which the information is presented. Use this general description the first time that you cite the source. If it is clear that the person is a man or woman, you can use the correct pronoun when you cite the source a second or third time. After the third citation, you may use the pronoun again if the meaning is clear, or you may repeat the general description for clarity.

Practice Activity 30

Did you understand? Try to report the information in the notes. Cite the source appropriately. The first report is completed to give you an example. Listen to the example answers on CD 1, Track 33, and read the script printed in Chapter 5 on pages 551–552.

Example

Source: Edwin Hubble (man) astronomer

- demonstrated Andromeda nebula located outside our galaxy
- established the islands universe theory = galaxies exist outside our own
- study resulted in Hubble's constant = standard relationship/galaxy's distance from Earth and speed recession

Astronomer Edwin Hubble demonstrated that the Andromeda nebula was located outside our galaxy. Hubble established the islands universe theory, which states that galaxies exist outside our own. He published a study that resulted in what is now called Hubble's constant, a standard relationship between a galaxy's distance from Earth and its speed of recession.



Activity 30, CD 1, Track 33

Listen to the example answers after you complete your answers.

1. Source: Theodore White (man)
   Book—*The Making of the President*
   - 1960 presidential debate—press conference
   - Nixon proceeded—personal debate
   - Kennedy spoke directly to TV viewers
   - estimated Kennedy gained 2 mil votes

2. Source: Paul Cezanne (man)
   - all forms in nature—based on geometric shapes
   - cone, sphere, cylinder primary
   - used outlining to emphasize shapes

3. Source: Marie Curie (woman)
   - won Nobel p physics 1903 w/husband—discovery of radium
   - won Nobel p chemistry 1911—isolation pure radium
   - 1st person 2 Nobel p

4. Source: Erik Erikson (man) psychologist
   - proposed eight stages/personal development
   - psychological crises/each stage shaped sense/self
   - lifelong process

5. Source: Margaret Mead (woman)
   - first fieldwork in Samoa 1925
   - book *Coming of Age in Samoa* best seller—translated many languages
   - still one/most well-known anthropologists
   - people/simple societies provide valuable lessons/industrialized

6. Source: *Leonardo da Vinci* (man)
   - quintessential Renaissance man
   - brilliant painter
   - interested in mechanics
   - work in math clear in perspective

7. Source: Peter Drucker (man) author
   - *Management Challenges for the 21st Century*
   - five transforming forces
   - trends have major implications for long-term strategies of companies

8. Source: Freidrich Mohs (man)
   - devised hardness scale/10 minerals
   - assigned 10 to diamond—hardest known
   - lesser values other min
   - scale still useful/relative hardness

9. Source: Maria Montessori (woman)
   - proposed educational model
   - not transmission knowledge
   - free to develop
   - success child working independently

10. Source: Jane Goodall (woman)
    - collaboration Louis Leaky
    - years living w/chimpanzees—Gombe Reserve
    - imitated behaviors
    - discovered chimp complex social organization
    - first document chimp making/using tools
    - also identified 20 different sounds/communication

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

Do you talk to yourself? Of course you do. Maybe not aloud, but all of us have mental conversations with ourselves. So the question is *how* do you talk to yourself?

Negative Talk	*Positive Talk*
I can't study all of this.	I am studying every day.
My English is poor.	My English is improving.
I won't get a good score.	I will do my best.
If I fail, I will be so ashamed.	If I need a higher score, I can try again.

How would you talk to good friends to encourage and support them? Be a good friend to yourself. When negative talk comes to mind, substitute positive talk. Encourage yourself to learn from mistakes.

SUMMARIZING

Summarizing is related to paraphrasing because you are using your own words to express an idea that you have heard or read. Remember that when you paraphrase, you are including all of the information, but when you summarize, you are including only the main ideas. A paraphrase is about the same length as the original, but a summary is shorter than the original. There are three problems that you will confront when you are summarizing.

1. **A summary does not include everything in the original.** This means that you should not try to write too much.
2. **Details and examples that support the main points are usually not included in a summary.** This means that you have to be able to discriminate between the main points and the details or examples.
3. **The author's point of view must be maintained.** This means that you cannot express your opinion when you report the information.

This chapter will help you improve your summarizing skills. You will learn how to

- **Condense the ideas**
- **Identify the main points**
- **Report the information**

How will these strategies help you on the TOEFL? By learning to summarize, you will be able to answer the questions that are worth the most points on the Reading section. There are also questions that require you to produce summaries on the Writing and Speaking sections. Moreover, research demonstrates that students who understand how to summarize and use this skill when they prepare for tests will be able to remember information better.

CONDENSE THE IDEAS

Strategies to Use
➤ Be brief
➤ Combine sentences

➤ Be brief

A summary is a shorter version of the original. For example, if the original is 1,000 words, a summary would be 200–500 words. A paraphrase is about the same number of words as the original, but a summary should be brief and concise.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Details and examples are used to explain and extend the main points in a reading or a lecture. To be brief, delete the details and examples in a summary.

Practice Activity 31

Did you understand? Try to mark out all the example sentences in the following passage and lecture. Then recopy the remaining sentences below the originals. You will have a good start for writing your summaries. But remember that you cannot use someone else's words. You still need to paraphrase when you summarize. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 552–553. Your answers are correct if you have paraphrased the same ideas.

1. Reading

Although speech is the most advanced form of communication, there are many ways of communicating without using speech. Signals, signs, and symbols may be found in every known culture. The basic function of a signal is to impinge upon the environment in such a way that it attracts attention. For example, the flashing lights at an intersection are designed to direct the driver's attention to the road. Smoke from a distant fire can also send a message, as does the more detailed version in the dots and dashes of a telegraph. Unlike signals, which, in general, are coded to refer to speech, signs contain meaning in and of themselves. A barber pole or a picture of a loaf of bread can convey meaning quickly and conveniently when placed in front of a shop. A stop sign means *stop* even though the words may not be written out on the red octagon. Finally, gestures are actions, which are more difficult to describe because of their relationship with cultural perceptions. For instance, in some cultures, applauding in a theater provides performers with an auditory symbol of approval. In other cultures, applauding can mean that the performance was not well received.

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in a botany class. Write down the major points but do not take notes on the examples. Then write a summary.



Activity 31, CD 1, Track 34

➤ Combine sentences

Another good way to condense the ideas is to combine sentences. Connecting words put sentences together and show the relationships between them. There are several types of sentences with connecting words for each type. Connecting words for clauses introduce a subject and a verb. Connecting words for phrases introduce a noun.

Clauses of Addition	
and	addition
moreover	addition

1. Penguins are the most highly specialized of all aquatic birds.
2. Penguins may live for twenty years.

Penguins are the most highly specialized of all aquatic birds, and they may live for twenty years.
or
Penguins are the most highly specialized of all aquatic birds; moreover, they may live for twenty years.

Clauses of Reversal	
but	reversal
however	reversal

1. Penguins may live for twenty years.
2. Penguins have several obstacles to their survival.

Penguins may live for twenty years, but they have several obstacles to their survival.
or
Penguins may live for twenty years; however, they have several obstacles to their survival.

Clauses of Result		**Phrase of Result**	
although	unexpected result	because of + noun	expected result
even though	unexpected result		
because	expected result		
since	expected result		
when	absolute scientific result		

1. Both parents have brown eyes.
2. Their children may be born with blue eyes.

Although both parents have brown eyes, their children may be born with blue eyes.
or
Their children may be born with blue eyes although both parents have brown eyes.

Even though both parents have brown eyes, their children may be born with blue eyes.
or
Their children may be born with blue eyes even though both parents have brown eyes.

1. Their children are born with blue eyes.
2. Both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes.

Because both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes, their children are born with blue eyes.
or
Their children are born with blue eyes because both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes.

Since both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes, their children are born with blue eyes.
or
Their children are born with blue eyes since both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes.

Because of recessive genes, their children are born with blue eyes.
or
Their children are born with blue eyes because of recessive genes.

When both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes for blue eyes, their children are born with blue eyes.
or
Their children are born with blue eyes when both brown-eyed parents have recessive genes.

Clauses of Contrast		**Phrases of Contrast**	
whereas	on the contrary	in spite of + noun	contradiction
		despite	

1. Many Native American tribes waged isolated battles against white settlers.
2. Under Chief Tecumseh, the Shawnees tried to establish a confederacy to unify resistance against white settlers.

Whereas many Native American tribes waged isolated battles against white settlers, under Chief Tecumseh the Shawnees tried to establish a confederacy to unify resistance against them.

1. Tecumseh's fearless opposition.
2. Tecumseh's coalition was defeated at the Battle of Fallen Timbers.

In spite of Tecumseh's fearless opposition, his coalition was defeated at the Battle of Fallen Timbers.
or
Despite Tecumseh's fearless opposition, his coalition was defeated at the Battle of Fallen Timbers.

Descriptive Clauses	
which	not human
who	human

1. Magnesium is the lightest of the structural metals.
2. Magnesium is important in engineering industries.

Magnesium, which is the lightest of the structural metals, is important in engineering industries.

1. Engineers often need lightweight metals.
2. Engineers use magnesium for their designs.

Engineers, who often need lightweight metals, use magnesium for their designs.

More Descriptive Clauses

that	human or not human

1. The bill was not passed until 1920.
2. The bill allowed women the right to vote in the United States.

The bill that granted women the right to vote in the United States was not passed until 1920.

Chronology Clauses

while	same time
before	earlier time
after	later time

Chronology Phrases

during	same time

1. The Romans invaded England.
2. The Celts were living in England.

The Romans invaded England while the Celts were living there.
or
The Romans invaded England during the Celtic occupation.

1. First the Iberians had been living in England.
2. Then the Angles and Saxons came to England.

The Iberians had been living in England before the Angles and Saxons came there.
or
The Angles and Saxons came to England after the Iberians had been living there.

Conclusion Clauses

therefore	logical conclusion
thus	logical conclusion

1. The amount of land cannot be increased.
2. The amount of water cannot be increased.
3. Efficient agricultural methods must be employed.

The amount of land and water cannot be increased; therefore, efficient agricultural methods must be employed.
or
The amount of land and water cannot be increased; thus, efficient agricultural methods must be employed.

Parallel Structures

Similar structures connected by commas
Nouns
Verbs
Adjectives

1. Best known for creating the Sherlock Holmes mysteries, British author Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was a physician.
2. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was also a world traveler.
3. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle wrote numerous adventure stories.

Best known for creating the Sherlock Holmes mysteries, British author Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was a physician, a world traveler, and a writer of numerous adventure stories.
or
Best known for creating the Sherlock Holmes mysteries, British author Sir Arthur Conan Doyle practiced medicine, traveled the world, and wrote numerous adventure stories.
or
Best known for creating the Sherlock Holmes mysteries, British author Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was well educated, adventuresome, and prolific.

Introductory Verbal Modifiers (-ing and -ed)
-ing forms and *-ed* forms may be used as verbals. Verbals function as modifiers. An introductory verbal modifier with *-ing* or *-ed* should immediately precede the noun it modifies. Otherwise, the relationship between the noun and the modifier is unclear, and the sentence is illogical.

1. Lindbergh designed his own plane, the *Spirit of St. Louis.*
2. Lindbergh flew from Roosevelt Field in New York to Le Bourget Field outside Paris.

Having designed his own plane, the *Spirit of St. Louis*, Lindbergh flew from Roosevelt Field in New York to Le Bourget Field outside Paris.

The plane was designed by Lindbergh.
The plane flew across the ocean with few problems.

Designed by Lindbergh, the plane flew across the ocean with few problems.

Practice Activity 32

Did you understand? Try to combine the sentences. Copy the combined sentences below the originals. The first sentence is completed to give you an example. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 553–554.

Example

An attitude is a positive or negative evaluation.
A positive or negative attitude may affect behavior.
An attitude may play an important role in perception.
which

An attitude, which is a positive or negative evaluation, may affect behavior and play an important role in perception.

1. Charlie Chaplin was a comedian.
   Charlie Chaplin was best known for his work in silent movies.
   who

2. Water is heated to 212 degrees F.
   Water becomes steam.
   when

3. Quasars are relatively small objects.
   Quasars emit an enormous amount of energy.
   which

4. The Earth moves into the shadow of the Moon.
   A total eclipse occurs.
   during

5. The Jamestown colony was founded by John Smith.
   Jamestown became the first successful English colony in America.
   -ed introductory verbal modifier

6. Many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language.
   Early missionaries and settlers from Spain had extended their influence in the area.
   since/because/because of

7. The oceans cover two thirds of the Earth's surface.
   The oceans are the object of study for oceanographers.
   which

8. A chameleon is a tree lizard.
   The chameleon can change colors to conceal itself in vegetation.
   that

9. First cultural nationalism arose among people with similar languages and traditions.
   Then political nationalism threatened the existing order.
   before/after

10. Empowerment increases the autonomy of employees in organizations.
    Empowerment improves communication between workers and management.
    and/moreover

11. Monogamy means being married to one spouse.
    Serial monogamy involves marriage, divorce, and remarriage.
    whereas

12. Humor is associated with fun.
    Humor is also used as a coping strategy to relieve stress.
    but/however

13. Solar panels can convert sunlight into electricity.
    Solar panels are still not being exploited fully.
    although/even though

14. The root system of the alfalfa plant allows it to survive.
    Drought conditions do not kill alfalfa.
    despite/in spite of

15. Pain warns the victim before further damage is done.
    Pain has a positive function.
    therefore/thus

IDENTIFY THE MAIN POINTS

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Find a topic sentence
- ➤ Identify the major points
- ➤ Identify the minor points

➤ Find a topic sentence

The topic answers the question: What is this reading or lecture about? A topic sentence is a very general statement that includes the subject of the reading or lecture and also the way that the author or speaker plans to develop the topic. For example, a topic might be *management strategies in business*. This topic could be developed in a number of different ways. For example, *management strategies* could be developed by listing several types of strategies or by comparing different strategies. When you are looking for the topic, you should look for a sentence that includes a subject and a verb. *Management strategies in business* is a subject, but without a verb in the sentence, we still don't know how the topic will be developed. Some books call this kind of topic sentence *a controlling idea.*

Practical Strategy

The first sentence in a summary should be a direct statement. It should give the reader or listener a general idea of the topic for the reading or lecture and the way that the topic will be developed. Sometimes you can paraphrase a topic sentence from the original reading or lecture, but sometimes you must create it yourself from several sentences in the original.

Practice Activity 33

Did you understand? Try to write one sentence that summarizes the entire reading or lecture. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 554–555. Your answers are correct if your ideas are the same as the example answers.

1. Reading

The nuclear family, consisting of a mother, father, and their children, may be more an ideal than a reality. Although the so-called traditional family was always more varied than we had been led to believe, reflecting the very different racial, ethnic, class, and religious customs among different American groups, today the diversity is even more obvious.

The most recent government census statistics reveal that only about one third of all current American families fits the traditional mold of two parents and their children, and another third consists of married couples who either have no children or have none still living at home. An analysis of the remaining one third of the population reveals that about 20 percent of the total number of American households are single people, the most common descriptor being women over sixty-five years of age. A small percentage, about 3 percent of the total, consists of unmarried people who choose to live together, and the rest, about 7 percent, are single parents, with at least one child.

There are several easily identifiable reasons for the growing number of single-parent households. First, the sociological phenomenon of single-parent households reflects changes in cultural attitudes toward divorce and also toward unmarried mothers. A substantial number of adults become single parents as a result of divorce. In addition, the number of children born to unmarried women who choose to keep their babies and rear them by themselves has increased dramatically. Finally, there is a small percentage of single-parent families that have resulted from untimely death. Today, these varied family types are typical and, therefore, normal.

Moreover, because many families live far from relatives, close friends have become a more important part of family life than ever before. The vast majority of Americans claim that they have people in their lives whom they regard as family although they are not related. A view of family that only accepts the traditional nuclear arrangement not only ignores the reality of modern American family life but also undervalues the familial bonds created in alternative family arrangements. Apparently, many Americans are achieving supportive relationships in family forms other than the traditional one.

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in a chemistry class. Then summarize the lecture in one sentence.



Activity 33, CD 1, Track 35

➤ Identify the major points

Practical Strategy

A major point is almost always directly stated. A major point has examples and details that refer to it. A major point is often found at the beginning of a new paragraph. Inferences and conclusions or examples and details are usually NOT major points.

Beyond the Book
Mini-Lesson for the TOEFL
Summarizing



To view the lesson, swipe the code with the QR reader on your smartphone or enter the following private access address on your computer:

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=i8GBBf5tztg&feature=youtu.be

Practice Activity 34

Did you understand? Try to identify the major points. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 555–557.

1. Reading

The body of an adult insect is subdivided into three sections, including a head, a three-segment thorax, and a segmented abdomen. Ordinarily, the thorax bears three pairs of legs and a single or double pair of wings. The vision of most adult insects is specialized through two large compound eyes and multiple simple eyes.

Features of an insect's mouth parts are used in classifying insects into types. Biting mouth parts called mandibles, such as the mouth parts found in grasshoppers and beetles, are common among insects. Behind the mandibles are located the maxillae or lower jaw parts, which serve to direct food into the mouth between the jaws. A labrum above and one below are similar to another animal's upper and lower lips. In an insect with a sucking mouth function, the mandibles, maxillae, labrum, and labium are modified in such a way that they constitute a tube through which liquid such as water, blood, or flower nectar can be drawn. In a butterfly or moth, this coiled drinking tube is called the proboscis because of its resemblance, in miniature, to the trunk of an elephant or a very large nose. Composed chiefly of modified maxillae fitted together, the insect's proboscis can be flexed and extended to reach nectar deep in a flower. In mosquitoes or aphids, mandibles and maxillae are modified to sharp stylets with which the insect can drill through surfaces like human or vegetable membranes to reach juice. In a housefly, the expanding labium forms a spongelike mouth pad that it can use to stamp over the surface of food, sopping up food particles and juices.

- Ⓐ An adult insect has a three-section body that includes a head, a thorax, and an abdomen.
- Ⓑ Mandibles are mouth parts that facilitate biting and usually include upper and lower labrum.
- Ⓒ A mouth pad similar to a sponge allows flies to attract crumbs and juice on the surface of food.
- Ⓓ Insects are classified according to their mouth parts, which are specialized for feeding.
- Ⓔ Insects are the most numerous creatures on the planet and also the most adaptable.
- Ⓕ A proboscis is a tube that stretches to penetrate flowers where nectar is stored.
- Ⓖ The three-part thorax usually has six legs and two or four wings attached to it.
- Ⓗ The pointed stylets of mosquitoes and aphids facilitate drilling through skin on plants and humans.

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in an English class. Then identify the major points from the options on page 168.



Activity 34, CD 1, Track 36

Ⓐ Noah Webster had a degree in law and practiced for a short time before he became a school teacher.
Ⓑ *The American Spelling Book*, Webster's first successful textbook, afforded him an income while he was writing his dictionary.
Ⓒ *An American Dictionary of the English Language* was written to demonstrate the unique usage of English in the United States.
Ⓓ *An American Dictionary of the English Language* has had many revised editions.
Ⓔ *The Compendious Dictionary of the English Language*, published in 1807, provided Webster with practice in compiling a dictionary.
Ⓕ Although he had a copyright for *The American Spelling Book*, ironically Webster did not have a copyright for the original dictionary and subsequent editions that bear his name.
Ⓖ Webster graduated from Yale only two years after the end of the Revolution that won independence for the United States from England.

➤ Identify the minor points

A minor point can be an example or a detail that supports a major point, or it can be a point that is not very well developed. A minor point may be mentioned without supporting examples or details in the original reading or lecture.

Practical Strategy

Minor points are usually not included in a summary. If you can identify the minor points, you can eliminate them. You can shorten your summary.

Practice Activity 35

Did you understand? Try to identify the minor points. Then write a summary that includes only the major points. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 557–558. Your summary is correct if it includes the same ideas.

1. Reading

In the fifteenth century, two important advances in painting were introduced. Prior to that time, most paintings were created on wood panels; however, in the second half of the century, many artists began to prefer linen canvas. The canvas offered several important advantages. Whereas wood panels were heavy and difficult to transport and hang, the lighter linen canvas could be rolled up for shipment and was relatively easy to transport, frame, and mount. Moreover, if patrons were at a distance from the artist, the finished work might have to be hauled in a cart. It was difficult to protect it from damage as it bumped along the primitive roads. In addition, the patrons were demanding larger and larger works and the large wood pieces had a tendency to crack. In contrast, the linen canvases could be stretched to almost any size and remained perfectly smooth.

The oil paints themselves were also superior to previous paints. One of the most obvious improvements was the fact that the paint dried slowly, and thus, layers of paint could be brushed on top of previously applied layers, allowing the artist to erase a section that was not perfect. Another refinement was the range of consistencies possible with oils. Thin oil paints take on the characteristics of a glaze, but thick oils look like paste and can be layered to create a three-dimensional aspect.

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in an engineering class. Then write a summary. Do not include the minor points.



Activity 35, CD 1, Track 37

REPORT THE INFORMATION

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Use the same organization as the original
- ➤ Report the content accurately
- ➤ Retain the original emphasis
- ➤ Maintain an objective point of view
- ➤ Check the summary

➤ Use the same organization as the original

A summary should retain the same organization as the original reading or lecture. For example, if the passage identifies three different types of evergreen trees, then the organization is classification. Your summary should also be organized to classify the three different types of trees. If the passage explains the cause of deforestation in Canada, then the organization of the passage is cause and effect. Your summary should also be organized to demonstrate cause and effect. If the passage explains the life cycle of a pine tree, then the organization is chronological. Your summary should also be organized in chronological order. It is also important NOT to rearrange the order. A good summary begins with the first major point and follows with each major point in the order that it appears in the original.

Practical Strategy

First, determine the organization of the reading or lecture. Then list the major points in the order in which you read or heard them. This list gives you an outline for your summary.

Practice Activity 36

Did you understand? Put the major points in the order that they should appear in a summary. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 558–559. Your answers are correct if they are in the same order as the original.

1. Reading

Although stage plays have been set to music since the era of the ancient Greeks when the dramas of Sophocles and Aeschylus were accompanied by lyres and flutes, the usually accepted date for the beginning of opera as we know it is 1600. As part of the celebration of the marriage of King Henry IV of France to the Italian aristocrat Maria de Medici, the Florentine composer Jacopo Peri produced his famous *Euridice*, generally considered to be the first opera. Following his example, a group of Italian musicians, poets, and noblemen called the Camerata revived the style of musical story that had been used in Greek tragedy. Taking most of the plots for their operas from Greek and Roman history and mythology, they began the process of creating an opera by writing a libretto or drama that could be used to establish the framework for the music. They called their compositions *opera in musica* or musical works. It is from this phrase that the word *opera* was borrowed and abbreviated.

For several years, the center of opera was Florence in northern Italy, but gradually, during the baroque period, it spread throughout Italy. By the late 1600s, operas were being written and performed in many places throughout Europe, especially in England, France, and Germany. However, for many years, the Italian opera was considered the ideal, and many non-Italian composers continued to use Italian librettos. The European form de-emphasized the dramatic aspect of the Italian model, however, introducing new orchestral effects and even some ballet.

Furthermore, composers acquiesced to the demands of singers, writing many operas that were little more than a succession of brilliant tricks for the voice, designed to showcase the splendid vocal talent of the singers who had requested them. It was thus that complicated arias, recitatives, and duets evolved. The aria, which is a long solo, may be compared to a song in which the characters express their thoughts and feelings. The recitative, which is also a solo of sorts, is a recitation set to music, the purpose of which is to continue the story line. The duet is a musical piece written for two voices, a musical device that may serve the function of either an aria or a recitative within the opera.

Major Points

Ⓐ Three types of musical pieces in opera
Ⓑ The first opera in Italy
Ⓒ The growth of opera throughout Europe

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. Then put the major points in the same order as the lecture.



Activity 36, CD 1, Track 38

Major Points

Ⓐ A method of classification for protozoans—the three types motility
Ⓑ Current research—questions, redefinitions
Ⓒ Similarity to plants—make food from water/CO_2
Ⓓ A definition of protozoans—single cell
Ⓔ Considered animals—eating, breathing, reproducing

➤ Report the content accurately

You will be evaluated not only on how well you use language to write a summary but also on how accurately you understand and report the content of the original.

Practical Strategy

Read and listen for meaning. When you have finished reading or listening, review the content. Ask yourself some basic questions. Include the questions that reporters use in their writing—*who, what, when, where, why, how?* The content may not include answers to all of the questions, but, with practice, you will be able to identify the questions that are important to the content you have read or heard.

Practice Activity 37

Did you understand? Answer the content questions. Then, copy the answers to the questions in paragraph form to make a summary. The answers and the example summaries are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 559–560.

1. Reading

According to the controversial sunspot theory, great storms on the surface of the Sun hurl streams of solar particles into space and eventually into the atmosphere of our planet, causing shifts in the weather on the Earth and interference with radio and television communications.

A typical sunspot consists of a dark central umbra, a word derived from the Latin word for shadow, which is surrounded by a lighter penumbra of light and dark threads extending out from the center like the spokes of a wheel. Actually, the sunspots are cooler than the rest of the photosphere, which may account for their apparently darker color. Typically, the temperature in a sunspot umbra is about 4000 K, whereas the temperature in a penumbra registers 5500 K, and the granules outside the spot are 6000 K.

Sunspots range in size from tiny grains to complex structures with areas stretching for billions of square miles. About 5 percent of all sunspots are large enough so that they can be seen from Earth without instruments; consequently, observations of sunspots have been recorded for thousands of years. They have been observed in arrangements of one to more than one hundred spots, but they tend to occur in pairs. There is also a marked tendency for the two spots of a pair to have opposite magnetic polarities. Furthermore, the strength of the magnetic field associated with any given sunspot is closely related to the spot's size.

Sunspots have also been observed to occur in cycles, over a period of eleven years. At the beginning of a cycle, the storms occur between 20 and 40 degrees north and south of the equator on the Sun. As the cycle continues, some of the storms move closer to the equator. As the cycle diminishes, the number of sunspots decreases to a minimum, and they cluster between 5 and 15 degrees north and south latitude.

Although there is no theory that completely explains the nature and function of sunspots, several models show scientists' attempts to relate the phenomenon to magnetic field lines along the lines of longitude from the north and south poles of the Sun.

1. What is the author's main purpose in the passage?

   Ⓐ To describe the nature of sunspots
   Ⓑ To propose a model for cycles in the solar year
   Ⓒ To compare the umbra and the penumbra in sunspots
   Ⓓ To argue for the existence of magnetic fields in sunspots

2. Why are solar particles hurled into space?

   Ⓐ Undetermined causes on Earth
   Ⓑ Disturbances of wind on the Sun
   Ⓒ Small rivers on the surface of the Sun
   Ⓓ Changes in the Earth's atmosphere

3. How can we describe the effect of matter from the Sun that enters the Earth's atmosphere?

   Ⓐ It causes volcanic eruptions on the surface of the Earth.
   Ⓑ It affects changes in the weather patterns on Earth.
   Ⓒ It results in shadows across the Earth's surface.
   Ⓓ It produces higher temperatures on the Earth.

4. How would you describe most sunspots?

   Ⓐ A shadow encircled by bright and dark lines extending out like spokes in a wheel
   Ⓑ A bright wheel with a dark shadow that covers part of the spokes that extend out
   Ⓒ A wheel with alternating spokes of dark shadows and bright spaces in between
   Ⓓ A spoke of a wheel with a bright trail partially covered by a dark shadow

5. What does the author mean by the statement "Actually, the sunspots are cooler than the rest of the photosphere, which may account for their apparently darker color"?

   Ⓐ Neither sunspots nor the photosphere is hot.
   Ⓑ Sunspots in the photosphere do not have any color.
   Ⓒ The color of sunspots could be affected by their temperature.
   Ⓓ The size of a sunspot affects its temperature.

6. In which configuration do sunspots usually occur?

   Ⓐ In one spot of varying size
   Ⓑ In a configuration of two spots
   Ⓒ In arrangements of one hundred or more spots
   Ⓓ In groups of several thousand spots

7. How are sunspots explained?

   Ⓐ Sunspots appear to be related to the pull of highly magnetic fields on the Earth.
   Ⓑ Sunspots may be related to magnetic fields that follow longitudinal lines on the Sun.
   Ⓒ Sunspots are explained by large storms that occur on the surface of the Earth.
   Ⓓ Sunspots have no theory or model to explain their occurrence or reappearance.

8. The sunspot theory is

   Ⓐ not very important
   Ⓑ widely accepted
   Ⓒ subject to debate
   Ⓓ relatively new

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. Then answer the questions and use the answers to write a summary.



Activity 37, CD 1, Track 39

1. According to the lecturer, fossils are considered valuable for all of the following reasons EXCEPT

   Ⓐ They suggest how the climate may have been.
   Ⓑ They provide information about migration.
   Ⓒ They document the evolution of the horse.
   Ⓓ They maintain a record of life prior to the Miocene.

2. What does the lecturer mean by the statement, "Geologists believe that the first horses appeared on Earth about sixty million years ago as compared with only two million years ago for the appearance of human beings."

   Ⓐ Geologists claim that horses appeared on Earth millions of years before human beings.
   Ⓑ Both horses and human beings appeared several million years ago, if we believe geologists.
   Ⓒ The geological records for the appearance of horses and human beings are not very accurate.
   Ⓓ Horses and human beings cannot be compared by geologists because they appeared too long ago.

3. According to the lecture, the anchitheres

   Ⓐ never lived in the North American continent
   Ⓑ had migrated to Europe in the Miocene Period from North America
   Ⓒ developed larger bodies than the hipparion from North America
   Ⓓ were only about the size of a small dog when they invaded North America

4. Which of the following conclusions may be made on the basis of information in the lecture?

   Ⓐ Following the same route, the hipparion migrated to Europe in the Pliocene.
   Ⓑ There are no fossil remains of either the anchitheres or the hipparion in Europe.
   Ⓒ Both horses were in North America when the first European colonists arrived.
   Ⓓ Very little is conclusively known about the evolution of the horse in Europe.

5. What happened to the anchitheres when the hipparion invaded Europe?

   Ⓐ They interbred with the hipparion.
   Ⓑ They migrated into Asia.
   Ⓒ They did not survive.
   Ⓓ They evolved into large horses.

6. What do we know about horses in North America during the Pleistocene?

   Ⓐ They were very large and strong.
   Ⓑ They were already extinct.
   Ⓒ They lived in the Bering Straits.
   Ⓓ They migrated south from Alaska.

7. What happened to the hipparion in Europe?

   Ⓐ They developed into a sturdy animal, like modern breeds of horses.
   Ⓑ They were replaced by other larger, stronger animals.
   Ⓒ They evolved into modern ponies instead of modern horses.
   Ⓓ They disappeared because they were hunted into extinction.

8. How was the domesticated horse introduced in North America?

   Ⓐ Early hunting tribes from Europe herded them across the Bering Straits.
   Ⓑ They were used as transportation by immigrants who used a land route.
   Ⓒ Europeans returned the horse to the American colonies on ships.
   Ⓓ They migrated to find better grasslands than they had in Europe and Asia.

➤ Retain the original emphasis

The emphasis should be the same in both the original and the summary. For example, a passage about the three different types of leaves may include all three types, but it may dedicate half of the passage to one type—palmate leaves. In this case, your summary should retain the same emphasis by dedicating half of the summary to palmate leaves.

Practical Strategy

When you read, think in terms of space. How much space does the author devote to each point? When you listen, think in terms of time. How much time does the speaker devote to each point? When you do this, you are determining the emphasis for each point in the original, and you will know how much emphasis to give to these points in your summary.

Practice Activity 38

Did you understand? Try to identify the emphasis for each part of the original and assign percentages. Then write a summary that retains the original emphasis. The answers and example summaries are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 560–561.

1. Reading

The Federal Reserve System, commonly called the Fed, is an independent agency of the United States government charged with overseeing the national banking system. Since 1913, the Federal Reserve System has served as the central bank for the United States. The Fed's primary function is to control monetary policy by influencing the cost and availability of money and credit through the purchase and sale of government securities. If the Federal Reserve provides too little money, interest rates tend to be high, borrowing is expensive, business activity slows down, unemployment goes up, and the danger of a recession is augmented. On the other hand, if there is too much money, interest rates decline, and borrowing can lead to excess demand, pushing up prices and fueling inflation. In addition to controlling the money supply, the Fed has several other responsibilities. In collaboration with the U.S. Department of the Treasury, the Fed puts new coins and paper currency into circulation by issuing them to banks. It also supervises the activities of member banks abroad and regulates certain aspects of international finance.

The Federal Reserve System consists of twelve district reserve banks and their branch offices along with several committees and councils. All national commercial banks are required by law to be members of the Fed, and all deposit-taking institutions like credit unions are subject to regulation by the Fed regarding the amount of deposited funds that must be held in reserve and that, by definition, therefore, are not available for loans. The most powerful body is the seven-member board of governors in Washington, appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate. Although it is true that the Federal Reserve does not depend on Congress for budget allocations, and therefore is free from the partisan politics that influence most of the other governmental bodies, it is still responsible for frequent reports to the Congress on the conduct of monetary policies.

In many ways, the Federal Reserve is like a fourth branch of the United States government because it is composed of national policy makers. However, in practice, the Fed does not stray from the financial policies established by the executive branch of the government.

Major Points

- The function and responsibilities of the Fed
- The composition of the Fed
- A comparison of the Fed to a fourth branch of government

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class. Then assign a percentage to each of the following points from the lecture and write a summary using the percentages to determine how much to write on each point.



Activity 38, CD 1, Track 40

Major Points

- The level of sophistication for human memory
- The memory trace
- Working memory

➤ Maintain an objective point of view

An objective point of view is a neutral position. A summary is not an analysis or a commentary. A summary does not invite an opinion.

Practical Strategy

In your summary, you should not agree or disagree with the author's or the speaker's ideas. Don't make judgments. Don't add information. When you report, you should not include *your* opinions or comments. The conclusion should be the author's or the speaker's conclusion, not yours.

Practice Activity 39

Did you understand? Try to find the opinions in the summary and delete them. Use the original reading to compare the content. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 562–563.

1. Reading

Charles Ives, who is now acclaimed as the first great American composer of the twentieth century, had to wait many years for the public recognition he deserved. Born to music as the son of a bandmaster, Ives played drums in his father's community band and organ at the local church. He entered Yale University at twenty to study musical composition with Horatio Parker, but after graduation he chose not to pursue a career in music. He suspected correctly that the public would not accept the music he wrote because Ives did not follow the musical fashion of his times. While his contemporaries wrote lyrical songs, Ives transfigured music and musical form. He quoted, combined, insinuated, and distorted familiar hymns, marches, and battle songs, while experimenting with the effects of polytonality, or the simultaneous use of keys with conflicting rhythms and time. Even when he could convince some musicians to show some interest in his compositions, after assessing them conductors and performers said that they were essentially unplayable.

Ives turned his attention to business. He became a successful insurance executive, building his company into the largest agency in the country in only two decades. Although he occasionally hired musicians to play one of his works privately for him, he usually heard his music only in his imagination. After he recovered from a serious heart attack, he became reconciled to the fact that his ideas, especially the use of dissonance and special effects, were just too different for the musical mainstream to accept. Determined to share his music with the few people who might appreciate it, he published his work privately and distributed it free.

In 1939, when Ives was sixty-five, American pianist John Kirkpatrick played *Concord Sonata* in Town Hall. The reviews were laudatory. One reviewer proclaimed it "the greatest music composed by an American." By 1947, Ives was famous. His *Second Symphony* was presented to the public in a performance by the New York Philharmonic, fifty years after it had been written. The same year, Ives received the Pulitzer Prize. He was seventy-three.

Summary

Charles Ives started his musical career as a member of his father's band and received a degree from Yale University in music, but he became a businessman instead because he was afraid that his music would not be well accepted. His music was very different from the

popular songs of his era because he used small phrases from well-known music with unusual rhythms and tones. Fifty years after he wrote his *Second Symphony*, it was performed by the New York Philharmonic, and he was awarded the Pulitzer Prize.

I think that Charles Ives was wrong not to pursue his musical career from the beginning. If he had continued writing music instead of selling insurance, we would have more pieces now.

2. Lecture

Listen to part of a lecture in a geology class. Then delete the opinions from the summary.

 **Activity 39, CD 1, Track 41**

In my opinion, geysers are interesting. They happen when underground water gets hot and pressure from above causes the water to get hotter and lighter so it goes up to the surface and explodes out. Then, the water runs back into the ground and starts all over again. Geysers have to have heat, a place to store water, an opening where the water can shoot up, and cracks in the ground for the water to go back down into a pool. Geysers are in New Zealand, Iceland, and the United States. Old Faithful in Yellowstone is the most famous geyser, but the best place to see geysers is in New Zealand. I saw the Pohutu Geyser there on my vacation two years ago, and it was awesome.

➤ Check the summary

If you know how your summary will be evaluated, you can use the same criteria to check it before you submit it.

Practical Strategy

Save some time at the end of your written summary to re-read it and check it. Keep a short checklist in mind as you review your content and organization.

Practice Activity 40

Did you understand? Try to find the problems in the following summaries. Use the original reading to compare the content and the short checklist to identify which problems to correct. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 563.

Short Checklist for Summaries

- ✔ Be brief
- ✔ Use the same organization as the original
- ✔ Include the major points
- ✔ Report the content accurately
- ✔ Retain the original emphasis
- ✔ Paraphrase using your own words
- ✔ Maintain an objective point of view

Reading

Very few people in the modern world obtain their food supply by hunting and gathering in the natural environment surrounding their homes. This method of harvesting from nature's provision, however, is not only the oldest known subsistence strategy but also the one that has been practiced continuously in some parts of the world for at least the last two million years. It was, indeed, the only way to obtain food until rudimentary farming and very crude methods for the domestication of animals were introduced about 10,000 years ago.

Because hunter-gatherers have fared poorly in comparison with their agricultural cousins, their numbers have dwindled, and they have been forced to live in the marginal wastelands. In higher latitudes, the shorter growing season has restricted the availability of plant life. Such conditions have caused a greater dependence on hunting and, along the coasts and waterways, on fishing. The abundance of vegetation in the lower latitudes of the tropics, on the other hand, has provided a greater opportunity for gathering a variety of plants. In short, the environmental differences have restricted the diet and have limited possibilities for the development of subsistence societies.

Contemporary hunter-gatherers may help us understand our prehistoric ancestors. We know from observation of modern hunter-gatherers in both Africa and Alaska that a society based on hunting and gathering must be very mobile. Following the food supply can be a way of life. If a particular kind of wild herding animal is the basis of the food for a group of people, those people must move to stay within reach of those animals. For many of the native people of the great central plains of North America, following the buffalo, who were in turn following the growth of grazing foods, determined their way of life.

For gathering societies, seasonal changes mean a great deal. While the entire community camps in a central location, a smaller party harvests the food within a reasonable distance from the camp. When the food in the area is exhausted, the community moves on to exploit another site. We also notice a seasonal migration pattern evolving for most hunter-gatherers, along with a strict division of labor between the sexes. These patterns of behavior may be similar to those practiced by humankind during the Paleolithic Period.

Summary 1

By studying hunter-gatherers in today's world, we can better understand the people from prehistoric times. In a hunter-gatherer society, the surrounding vegetation limits the dietary options. In addition, the length of the growing season restricts the amount of gathering that can be done and requires more hunting and fishing for groups to survive. We note that groups must follow the herds and travel to new sites where edible plants are in season. Although few people are now dependent upon hunting and gathering, it is the most ancient lifestyle, and perhaps the only way to subsist before agricultural communities arose during the past 10,000 years. Furthermore, men and women have specialized tasks. Competition with agricultural societies has crowded hunter-gatherers into harsh terrains.

Summary 2

Although few people are now dependent upon hunting and gathering, it is the most ancient lifestyle, and perhaps the only way to subsist before agricultural communities arose during the past 10,000 years. Competition with agricultural societies has crowded hunter-gatherers into harsh terrains. In a hunter-gatherer society, the surrounding vegetation limits the dietary options. In addition, the length of the growing season restricts the amount of gathering that can be done and requires more hunting and fishing for groups to survive. By studying hunter-gatherers in today's world, we can better understand the people from prehistoric times. We

note that groups must follow the herds and travel to new sites where edible plants are in season. Furthermore, men and women have specialized tasks.

Summary 3

Few people are now dependent upon hunting and gathering; however, it is the most ancient lifestyle, and perhaps the only way to subsist before agricultural communities arose during the past 10,000 years. Competition with agricultural societies has crowded hunter-gatherers into harsh terrains. In my opinion, we should help these groups to learn how to grow their own crops so that they will not have to have limited diets and will not have to move to new sites where edible plants are in season. By studying hunter-gatherers in today's world, we can better understand the people from prehistoric times, and that is good, but we should help them, too.

Summary 4

Although very few people in the modern world obtain their food supply by hunting and gathering, this method is the oldest known subsistence strategy. Because hunter-gatherers have fared poorly, they have been forced to live in harsh environments with limited possibilities for their diet. By observation of modern hunter-gatherers, we know that people must move to stay within reach of the herds they hunt. When the food in the area is exhausted, the community moves on to exploit another site.

Summary 5

Few people are now dependent upon hunting and gathering, but it is the most ancient lifestyle, and perhaps the only way to subsist before agricultural communities arose during the past 10,000 years. It has been part of human cultures beginning two million years ago and continues to the present in some parts of the world. Modern hunter-gatherers provide us with information about prehistoric people. They probably moved to stay close to the herds they hunted and moved to take advantage of seasonal plants.

ADVISOR'S OFFICE

Why are you preparing for the TOEFL? What goal is motivating you to study and improve your score? Do you want to attend a university in an English-speaking country? Do you want to try for a scholarship from a sponsor in your country or region? Is the TOEFL required for graduation from your high school? Do you plan to apply for an assistantship at a graduate school? Do you need the score for a professional license?

Goals can be experienced as mental images. You can close your eyes and imagine everything, just like a movie. See yourself achieving your goal. Watch yourself as you attend school or practice your profession in your ideal environment. See other people congratulating you. Enjoy the success.

Understand that you cannot control reality with visualization. However, it does change your attitude, it helps you to focus, provides motivation, and reduces stress. Positive visualization is an excellent way to take a short break from studying.

SYNTHESIZING

Synthesizing means to combine two or more sources in order to create something new. It is probably the most complex academic skill because it includes the other academic skills that you have studied—taking notes, paraphrasing, and summarizing. In addition, the result of a synthesis should be more than the sum of the parts. There are three problems that you will confront when you are synthesizing.

1. **The relationship between the sources may not be obvious.** This means that you may have to figure out the connection.
2. **One source appears to contain all of the necessary information.** This means that you need to be sure to balance the information so that all of the sources are used.
3. **Synthesis requires a high level of thinking.** This means that you should have a plan in order to create a synthesis.

This chapter will help you improve your synthesizing. You will learn how to

- **Analyze the task**
- **Include information from both sources**
- **Follow a plan**

How will these strategies help you on the TOEFL? By learning to synthesize information from readings and lectures or talks, you will develop ways of thinking that will help you prepare important integrated speaking and writing questions. The ability to synthesize is also required for success in making presentations, taking exams, and writing research papers for college or university classes.

ANALYZE THE TASK

Strategies to Use
➤ Identify the question
➤ Clarify the relationships

➤ Identify the question

At least two sources are required for a synthesis. The primary source presents the major points, and the secondary source provides additional information. The wording of the question or the assignment will direct your thinking.

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Questions found in Task 4 of the Speaking section often, but not always, include agreement words because you are usually asked to show how the lecture clarifies or extends the information in the reading passage. The reading passage typically introduces a general concept, theory, definition, or idea and the lecture that follows provides an example, a case study, a research study, a model, or an illustration. Start your thinking by recognizing words in the question or assignment as *agreement* words.

Agreement/Extension/Clarification

Adds to	includes more evidence
Affirms	maintains to be true
Agrees with	has the same opinion
Clarifies	makes easy to understand
Concurs with	has the same opinion
Confirms	establishes that something is true
Corroborates	shows the same evidence
Demonstrates	shows with proof or evidence
Endorses	gives approval
Explains	makes clear
Proves	shows that something is true
Provides an example of	gives an illustration
Provides evidence for	gives proof
Reinforces	makes stronger
Substantiates	offers proof
Supports	maintains a position
Validates	shows the facts
Verifies	shows the truth

EXAMPLE

Summarize the points that the lecturer makes, explaining how they support the information in the reading.

Show how the points in the lecture agree with the information in the reading passage.

Practice Activity 41

Did you understand? Without looking at the list above, underline the agreement words. Then write a short explanation of the question. The answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 564.

1. Referring to the main points in the reading passage, show how the example in the professor's lecture demonstrates the principle of Occam's razor.

2. Explain how the lecturer's view substantiates the opinions expressed in the reading passage.

3. The professor describes the behavior of dolphins. Explain why this behavior provides an example of higher-level intelligence, as defined in the reading passage.

4. Explain how the example of learning to drive clarifies the automaticity of learning.

5. Using the case study discussed by the professor, explain how the results reinforce the argument in favor of direct mail marketing presented in the reading passage.

Practical Strategy

Questions found in the Integrated Writing Task often, but not always, include disagreement words. The reading passage generally presents a position or a point of view and the lecture that follows provides an opposing or contrasting position or point of view. Start your thinking by recognizing words in the question or assignment as *disagreement* words.

Disagreement/Contrast/Opposition

Casts doubt on	shows uncertainty
Challenges	makes doubtful
Contradicts	maintains the opposite
Contrasts with	shows differences
Counters	shows the opposite
Differs from	shows difference
Disagrees with	gives a different opinion
Discredits	shows that something is probably not true
Disproves	establishes that something is not true
Disputes	argues that something is wrong
Opposes	argues the opposite
Provides an alternative to	gives a different option
Refutes	proves false

EXAMPLE

Summarize the points that the lecturer makes, explaining how they cast doubt on the information in the reading.

Show how the points in the lecture make the points presented in the reading passage less certain.

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 42

Did you understand? Without looking at the list above, underline the disagreement words. Then write a short explanation of the question. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 564–565.

1. Summarize the main points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they challenge the specific claims made in the reading passage.

2. Summarize the main points in the lecture, showing how they discredit the specific arguments in the reading passage.

3. Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they oppose specific points made in the reading passage.

4. Summarize the major points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they contrast with the specific problems presented in the reading passage.

5. Summarize the main points in the lecture, showing how they cast doubt on the point of view in the reading passage. Be sure to address each point in the passage.

➤ Clarify the relationships

You already know how to identify the question, and you know that, whether you are speaking or writing, your first task is to clarify the relationship between the lecture and the reading passage. After reading the passage and listening to the lecture, you will know whether the relationship between them is agreement or disagreement. You should usually express this relationship in the first sentence that you speak or write on an integrated task. Let's think of this first sentence as a *relationship sentence* that begins your response. A good relationship sentence states agreement or disagreement. A better relationship sentence uses a strong verb to signal agreement or disagreement. The best relationship sentence includes a strong verb *and* detail about the relationship between the information in the reading and in the lecture.

Practical Strategy

Using the lists of words that signal agreement or disagreement on pages 181 and 182, use one of the strong verbs to rewrite relationship sentences. Then try to add detail to the sentences.

Example

Reading passage: Solutions to eradicating disease on a worldwide basis

Lecture: World Health Organization's successful campaign against smallpox
Relationship: Agreement

Basic: The example in the lecture agrees with the suggestions for eradicating disease in the reading passage.

Better: The example in the lecture clarifies the suggestions for eradicating disease in the reading passage.

Best: The example in the lecture of the World Health Organization's successful campaign against smallpox clarifies the suggestions for eradicating disease on a worldwide basis listed in the reading passage.

Practical Strategy

In Task 3 on the Speaking section, you will read a short passage and then hear a conversation about the passage. The reading passage is usually an announcement about a policy on campus. The conversation includes opinions about the policy. First, determine whether the speakers agree or disagree with the policy. Then write a relationship sentence that expresses the opinion. The three verbs listed below are commonly used for opinions in conversational English. A basic *relationship* sentence will state an opinion that shows agreement or disagreement with the passage. A better relationship sentence will state agreement or disagreement and will also include a summary of the reasons for the opinion. Remember that you are not being asked for *your* opinion. You are being asked to summarize *the speaker's* opinion.

Opinion Verbs
Believes
Says
Thinks

Practice Activity 43

Did you understand? First, state the speaker's opinion. Next, identify the reasons for the opinion. Finally, write a relationship sentence that includes both the opinion and the reasons. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on page 565.

Example

Reading passage: A change in the bus schedule
Conversation: The man is giving his opinion
Relationship: Disagreement
Reasons: Fewer stops, inconvenient times, more expensive

Basic sentence: The man believes that the change in the bus schedule is a bad idea.

Better sentence: The man believes that the change in the bus schedule is a bad idea because there are fewer stops, the new times are inconvenient, and the passes are more expensive.

Also good examples:

The man says that the change in the bus schedule is a bad idea because there are fewer stops, the new times are inconvenient, and the passes are more expensive.

The man thinks that the change in the bus schedule is a bad idea because there are fewer stops, the new times are inconvenient, and the passes are more expensive.

1. Reading passage: A new location for the cafeteria
   Conversation: The woman is giving her opinion
   Relationship: Disagreement
   Reasons: Farther from the dorm, smaller space

   Basic sentence:

   Better sentence:

2. Reading passage: A change in the final exam schedule
   Conversation: The man is giving his opinion
   Relationship: Agreement
   Reasons: More time to study, fewer conflicts with other exams

   Basic sentence:

   Better sentence:

3. Reading passage: More lighting around the square
   Conversation: The woman is giving her opinion
   Relationship: Agreement
   Reasons: Safer for bikers, better security for walkers, will look nicer

   Basic sentence:

   Better sentence:

4. Reading passage: Closing the post office on campus
   Conversation: The woman is giving her opinion
   Relationship: Disagreement
   Reasons: The campus post office is always busy, the closest post office off campus is not within walking distance

   Basic sentence:

   Better sentence:

5. Reading passage: Eliminating all single rooms in the graduate dorms
   Conversation: The man is giving his opinion
   Relationship: Disagreement
   Reasons: No inexpensive alternative on campus, no adjustment in fees, and no opportunity to provide input

   Basic sentence:

   Better sentence:

Practice Activity 44

Did you understand? First, read the summary of the main ideas in the reading passage and the lecture and the relationship between them. Next, study the basic relationship sentence. Then try to substitute a stronger verb to make the relationship sentence better. Finally, include more detail to make the relationship sentence the best. Example answers are printed in Chapter 5 on pages 566–567.

1. Reading passage: Advantages of cooperative learning in education
   Lecture: Research study in Chicago schools
   Relationship: Agreement

2. Reading passage: Methods to solve the problem of noise pollution in technological societies
   Lecture: European noise ordinances
   Relationship: Agreement

3. Reading passage: Nuclear power is too dangerous
   Lecture: Opposing view—three points
   Relationship: Disagreement

4. Reading passage: Ideas for successful international advertising campaigns
   Lecture: Toyota's marketing plan in the United States
   Relationship: Agreement

5. Reading passage: Meteor impact caused the disappearance of dinosaurs
   Lecture: Opposing view—three points
   Relationship: Disagreement

6. Reading passage: More than 40 Van Gogh paintings are fakes
   Lecture: Opposing view—three points
   Relationship: Disagreement

7. Reading passage: The theory of flow
   Lecture: A Harvard University study on flow
   Relationship: Agreement

8. Reading passage: Successful marriages require similarities
   Lecture: Opposing view—three points
   Relationship: Disagreement

9. Reading passage: Definition of a biogeographic realm
   Lecture: A biome
   Relationship: Agreement

10. Reading passage: Censorship is necessary in the media
    Lecture: Opposing view—three points
    Relationship: Disagreement

INCLUDE INFORMATION FROM BOTH SOURCES

Strategies to Use
- ➤ Get organized
- ➤ Discuss each point

➤ Get organized

PRACTICAL STRATEGY

Even before you read the passage, you can begin to get organized. First, quickly draw a chart for your notes like the one below. Then, as you begin reading, note the main points in the passage and write them under **Reading** in the chart. Next, listen to the **Conversation** or **Lecture** and take notes. Listen carefully for information that relates to ***each point*** from the reading passage. Finally, decide whether the speaker agrees or disagrees with the general information in the reading passage. Write a **Relationship sentence** at the top of the chart. Remember, three points are usually included, but sometimes only two are mentioned.

Relationship sentence: _____.

Reading	Conversation/Lecture
Point 1	Point 1
Point 2	Point 2
Point 3	Point 3

Practice Activity 45

Did you understand? Read a passage and then listen to a conversation on the same topic. Get organized, using a chart like the one in the example above. Draw it quickly on your scratch paper before you begin reading. Then fill it in as you read the passage and listen to the conversation. Compare your chart with the example chart in Chapter 5 on pages 567–568.

Integrated Speaking Task 3

SCRATCH PAPER

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Summer School Announcement
In an effort to conserve energy during summer session, all classes will be held Monday through Thursday to allow for air conditioning and lights to be shut down completely for three days per week. During the four-day school week, thermostats will be set at 78 degrees for air conditioning units, and all units will be automatically switched off at eight o'clock at night and switched on at eight o'clock in the morning. In addition, motion-sensitive light panels will replace current manual switches in all buildings, including classrooms, offices, meeting rooms, and bathrooms. When no motion is detected in a room for more than one minute, the lights will turn off until motion reactivates them.



Activity 45, CD 1, Track 42
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Practice Activity 46

Did you understand? Read a passage and then listen to a lecture on the same topic. Get organized, using a chart like the one in the example above. Draw it quickly on your scratch paper before you begin reading. Then fill it in as you read the passage and listen to the lecture. Compare your chart with the example chart in Chapter 5 on page 568.

Integrated Speaking Task 4

SCRATCH PAPER

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Marsupials

Marsupials are a group of mammals that are born alive after a very short gestation period. In order to survive, the young, underdeveloped marsupial must crawl from the exit of the reproductive tract over its mother's body to attach itself to a nipple inside a fold of skin called the *marsupium* or pouch. During embryonic development, a marsupial stays with the mother, climbing in and out of the pouch to nurse or sleep.

Like other mammals, marsupials are covered with hair. Auditory and olfactory senses are highly developed in marsupials because they are nocturnal creatures that depend on their ears and eyes to locate food at night.



Activity 46, CD 1, Track 43

Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class.

Practice Activity 47

Did you understand? Read a passage and then listen to a lecture on the same topic. Get organized, using a chart like the one in the example above. Draw it quickly on your scratch paper before you begin reading. Then fill it in as you read the passage and listen to the conversation. Compare your chart with the example chart in Chapter 5 on page 569.

SCRATCH PAPER

Integrated Writing Task 1: Integrated Essay

Reading Time: 3 minutes

Although bottled water was an alternative during even the earliest civilizations, it has become more popular in the past few decades, for a variety of reasons. First, it is a healthier choice. In the United States, bottled water is comprehensively regulated by the Food and Drug Administration as a packaged food product. Minerals such as magnesium and chloride have been removed, along with salt. In contrast, the potential for heavy metals exists in public water supplies, such as copper and lead from storage tanks and industrial chemicals like dry-cleaning toxins. Of course, these issues are not a concern for bottled water, which is pure and free of contamination.

Furthermore, bottled water tastes better. Most bottled water comes from natural springs and wells, whereas local water supplies come from ground water that is trapped in aquifers or from wells drilled near rivers and streams. To make these water supplies safe to drink, water treatment plants remove contaminants and disinfect their tap water with chemicals, usually chlorine, which smells and leaves an aftertaste.

Finally, bottled water is convenient, and the packaging is, for the most part, reusable and recyclable. In fact, most plastic water bottles are 100 percent recyclable and are among the most recycled packaged products in the recycle system. In recent years, campaigns have raised public awareness and the recycling of water bottles has increased by as much as 6 percent per year. The introduction of lighter-weight plastics has also allowed the bottling industry to further reduce its environmental footprint.



Activity 47, CD 1, Track 44

Now listen to part of a lecture in a general science class. The professor is talking about bottled water.

➤ Discuss each point

Practical Strategy

You will receive a lower score for your integrated speaking and writing tasks if you do not relate all of the main points in the reading to the conversation or lecture. Be sure to refer to the main points in your notes while you are speaking and read your essay after you have written it. Check to make sure that you have a complete response.

Example

These responses refer to the integrated speaking and writing tasks in Activities 45, 46, and 47, Tracks 42, 43, and 44. When you compare the example responses and example essay with the notes, you find the relationship sentence. You also find all three points from the reading passage and ideas that the speaker or lecturer presented to support or refute each point.



Activity 47, CD 1, Track 45

Question

The woman expresses her opinion of the announcement. State her opinion and give the reasons that she gives for the opinion.

Example Response

The woman doesn't agree with the idea to shut down the campus for three days every week in order to conserve energy. Although she supports the conservation of resources, she thinks that the intensive weekend courses that will be cancelled are important, especially for working people like her sister. The online courses replacing them won't provide the personal interaction that weekend courses do for those who are already taking online classes. She concedes that the idea of motion-sensors for lighting makes sense, but she's not sure that turning off the power completely is an energy efficient plan because power outages could occur when the power is turned on in all the buildings on campus at eight o'clock Monday morning.

Question

The professor describes a koala. Using information from both the reading and the lecture, explain why a koala would be considered a marsupial.

Example Response

A koala is a good example of a marsupial because it completes its embryotic development in its mother's pouch, it's hairy like other mammals, and it has a keen sense of smell and hearing, which are important to its nocturnal nature. Like all marsupials, a koala crawls from the birth canal to the mother's pouch and attaches itself to a nipple to nurse. It stays with the mother for about eight months until it's too big for the pouch and then it begins independent life in trees, using its sensitive nose to feed on eucalyptus leaves at night.

Question

Using the main points in the reading passage, show how the lecturer contradicts the claims.

Example Essay

The lecturer discredits the claim in the reading passage that bottled water is better than tap water. First, she refutes the assertion that bottled water is healthier by pointing out that 40 percent of all water in bottles comes from city water sources. In other words, it is just tap water in a bottle. Furthermore, she contends that bottled water is actually less healthy than tap water because it contains a lower level of fluoride, a mineral that retards tooth decay.

Second, she maintains that minerals actually make the water taste better. Sodium, calcium, magnesium, and fluoride keep water from tasting flat. She backs up this statement by citing a taste test by *Good Morning America* in which 45 percent of the participants chose New York City tap water over bottled water.

Third, she concedes that it would be possible to recycle the plastic bottles used for bottled water, but she points out that only 15 percent of all water bottles are ever recycled, which means that 59.5 million of the 70 million bottles used daily in the United States are thrown into landfills.

Practice Activity 48

Did you understand? Read a passage and listen to a conversation or lecture on the same topic. Then listen to the example response or read the example essay. Is it complete? Are all of the points in the reading passage mentioned? Are all of the same points from the conversation or lecture included? Compare your answer with the example answers in Chapter 5 on pages 570–572.

Speaking Task 3

SCRATCH PAPER

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Announcement from the Office of the President
The Board of Trustees approved tuition, mandatory fees, and room and board rates during its June meeting on Friday. The plan provides for tuition for instate students to be frozen at $12,000, the same rate as last year. Out-of-state tuition is scheduled to increase 3 percent over the last academic year. Tuition for current international students will also increase by 3 percent; however, the tuition for new international students will increase by 5 percent over the last academic year. Instate students make up approximately 80 percent of undergraduate students, out-of-state students 12 percent, and international students 8 percent.



Activity 48, CD 1, Track 46
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Question
The man expresses his opinion of the announcement. State his opinion and give the reasons he has for holding that opinion.

Example Response

Speaking Task 4

SCRATCH PAPER

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Strategic Alliances

In a global economy, collaboration and strategic alliances may be essential to success. Although there are a number of ways to cooperate, including mergers in which two companies form a legal union, or a joint venture where several companies pool resources to create a separate entity, a strategic alliance is much less involved than either one. Quite simply, a strategic alliance is a mutual agreement between two or more companies in order to work more effectively toward their goals. This usually involves a plan to share resources for mutual benefit. The major advantages of strategic alliances are that each company retains its separate identity and that the alliances may be easily formed and easily dissolved, which makes them a perfect vehicle in a rapidly changing business environment.



Activity 48, CD 1, Track 47

Now that you have read the explanation of strategic business alliances in the reading, listen to part of a lecture on a similar topic.

Question

Explain how the example that the professor provides demonstrates the concept of strategic alliances defined in the reading passage.

Example Response

Integrated Essay

SCRATCH PAPER

Reading Time: 3 minutes

In a recent survey of developed nations, it was found that workers in the United States receive the least number of paid vacation days in the world. Although many Americans are paid for ten national holidays, they are not legally entitled to any paid vacation time in spite of the fact that paid vacations bring benefits not only to the employee but also to the company.

Employees with paid vacation are less likely to call in unexpectedly. Companies with paid vacation benefits have more control over unscheduled absenteeism, which allows for a more predictable coverage of responsibilities. Being able to plan is critical to most companies.

Moreover, time off from the work environment assures the company of a workforce that is healthier and more productive after the break. People who take vacations exhibit lower stress levels, less risk of heart disease, a more positive attitude, and higher motivation to achieve goals. Surprisingly, the effects of a vacation appear to be beneficial for as long as eight weeks before the actual leave from work. Employees looking forward to a break tend to tie up loose ends on their jobs before they go. After they return, they are rested and their productivity is significantly higher than it was before their time away from work.

Vacation time also has the advantage of attracting more highly qualified employees. Those employees with the best qualifications can select from among several offers. Candidates who are the most difficult to recruit will be more likely to sign on when a company provides an attractive vacation plan. For a company to be most competitive, it is advantageous to appeal to a highly qualified team.

Companies that do not choose to offer paid vacation time may save money in the short term; however, an investment in time off for their employees would probably be smarter in the long run.



Activity 48, CD 1, Track 48

Now listen to part of a lecture in a business class. The professor is talking about vacation time.

Question

Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Example Essay

The lecturer contradicts the points in the reading passage that make a case for more paid vacation time for employees. First, he disagrees with the assumption that companies will have more control over absenteeism because employees will schedule their time around vacation days. He explains that emergencies cannot be predicted or arranged around a vacation schedule; therefore, the company is not able to control or plan for absences at critical times in spite of generous paid vacations.

Second, he concedes that some evidence suggests a relationship between vacations and good health as well as productivity. However, he argues that many employees do not use their vacation days to rest and relax. In fact, many employees use the time to participate in stressful activities that they are unable to accomplish during the usual workweek. Instead of taking a break, they rush to do as much as possible in a short time, leaving them exhausted by the time that they return to the work schedule.

Third, although paid vacation days could be attractive to some employees that a company may wish to recruit, the lecturer points out that contract negotiation is a highly individual process. Whereas some candidates would like more paid vacation days, others would prefer other benefits such as health care, higher salaries, or a fast track to promotion.

In short, the lecturer does not believe that more paid vacation days would be in the best interest of American companies.

FOLLOW A PLAN

Strategies to Use

- ➤ Memorize the steps
- ➤ Practice with the plan

➤ Memorize the steps

Practical Strategy

Three tasks on the TOEFL require synthesis: Task 3 and Task 4 in the Speaking section and Task 1 in the Writing section. Each task requires a slightly different approach, but in general, you *follow* the same steps for all of them:

1. Draw a chart with space for a relationship sentence at the top and 3 points underneath.
2. Read a short passage and take notes on the chart.
3. Listen to a conversation or a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart.
4. Write a relationship sentence.
5. Respond, using information from both the reading and the conversation or lecture.
6. Use the points on the chart to check for a complete response.

Practice Activity 49

The examples below will show you specific steps for each of the integrated tasks. Take your time as you study each example. You will have an opportunity to practice the steps in Activity 50.

Example Speaking Task 3

Be careful! This task does NOT ask you for your opinion, although you will be asked about the opinions of the speakers in the conversation or talk.

1 Draw a chart with space for a relationship sentence at the top and 3 points underneath.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Conversation
Point 1	Point 1
Point 2	Point 2
Point 3	Point 3

2 Read a short passage about a campus-related topic and take notes on the chart.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Announcement from Campus Security
On Monday, all State University residence halls will begin requiring students to scan their fingerprints at the door in order to gain access to their building. As part of a continuing effort to make residence halls safer, fingerprint scanners have been installed at every building entry point. To prepare for this, students must scan their fingerprints at the campus security office in the student union. Guests are still allowed into residence halls but must now leave a valid ID in exchange for a guest pass.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Conversation
Point 1 Mon scan prints Access dorms	Point 1
Point 2 Prepare scan at Campus Security S Union	Point 2
Point 3 Guests ID–pass	Point 3

3 Listen to a conversation on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 49
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Relationship sentence: The woman approves of the security policy because it is a serious plan, it will be easy to use, and it should be a deterrent to theft and safety.

Reading	Conversation
Point 1 Mon scan prints Access dorms	Point 1 Current plan not enforced New plan serious
Point 2 Prepare scan at Campus Security S Union	Point 2 Easy—devices secure Students too
Point 3 Guests ID-pass	Point 3 Deterrent crime

Question
The woman expresses her opinion of the announcement. State her opinion and the reasons that she has for having that opinion.

4 Write a relationship sentence.

5 Respond, using information from both the reading and the conversation.

Example Response
The woman approves of the new security policy because it's a serious plan, it will be easy to use, and it should be a deterrent to crime. She explains that the previous system that required a pass to enter the dorm wasn't enforced. But now, without a scan, it won't be possible to go in the door. She also points out that it's really easy, like scanning to access a secure mobile device. She argues that scanning a fingerprint will be a deterrent to theft and the dorms will be safer because it'll be better than a guest pass to keep track of everyone who's in the buildings.

5 Use the points on the chart to check for a complete response.

This is a complete response because it includes all three points that the woman makes to explain her opinion that the security policy is a good idea: It is a serious plan, easy to use, and will be a deterrent to crime.

Example Speaking Task 4

Be careful! The reading usually presents the definition of a term, a concept, a principle, or a theory, and the lecture usually provides an example, evidence, a case study, a research study, or a specific instance. In other words, this task is usually a synthesis of agreement, extension, and clarification. But sometimes, it can be a synthesis of disagreement and opposition.

1 Draw a chart with space for a relationship sentence at the top and 3 points underneath.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Lecture
Point 1	Point 1
Point 2	Point 2
Point 3	Point 3

2 Read a short passage about an academic topic and take notes on the chart.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Endangered Languages

Recent estimates of language populations indicate that half of the world's languages will likely become extinct in the 21st century. Three main criteria are used as guidelines for considering a language endangered: the number of speakers currently living, the average age of native speakers, and the percentage of the youngest generation acquiring fluency.

Given these criteria, it is obvious that language extinction occurs gradually across generations. Fewer and fewer speakers use the traditional language until only the older generation is familiar enough with the grammar to understand and express themselves in it.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 Number speakers	Point 1
Point 2 Average age native	Point 2
Point 3 Percent youngest gen	Point 3

3 Listen to a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 50

Now listen to part of a lecture in a linguistics class. The professor is talking about endangered languages.

Relationship sentence: The Christensen study in 1995 provided evidence that Ojibwa should be on the endangered language list.

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 Number speakers	Point 1 500–3 states
Point 2 Average age native	Point 2 elders 80+
Point 3 Percent youngest gen	Point 3 Almost no children

Question

The professor reports a study of the Ojibwa language. Explain why the study confirms that Ojibwa is an endangered language.

4 Write a relationship sentence.

5 Respond, using information from both the reading and the lecture.

***Example* Response**

Ojibwa is considered an endangered language because it meets all three criteria for that classification. First, few speakers are fluent in the language. In Christensen's study in 1995, only about 500 of the tribal members in the tri-state area studied were fluent speakers. Second, the average age of native speakers is older. Among the 500 fluent speakers, most were elders 80 years of age or older. Finally, the percentage of speakers in the youngest generation is small. Among Ojibwa speakers, almost *no* children were fluent. Unfortunately, this study confirmed that Ojibwa is endangered, and despite efforts to teach the language in federally funded preschools, its future is very uncertain.

6 Use the points on the chart to check for a complete response.

The response is complete because it includes all three criteria for a language to be considered endangered and provides evidence from the Christensen study to prove that Ojibwa meets all three criteria.

Example Writing Task 1: Integrated Essay

The reading usually presents a position or argument in favor of a topic. The lecture presents information that calls into question the position or a counterargument. In other words, this task is usually a synthesis of disagreement, contrast, or opposition.

1 Draw a chart with space for a relationship sentence at the top and 3 points underneath.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Lecture
Point 1	Point 1
Point 2	Point 2
Point 3	Point 3

2 Read a short passage about an academic topic and take notes on the chart.

Reading Time: 3 minutes

Homeownership is a goal for many people because they see it as a sound investment with many other positive outcomes as well.

Although it is true that the housing market can be volatile, from an individual perspective, buying a home to live in is still one of the best ways to acquire wealth. In the first place, homes appreciate. Over the long term, even initial losses reverse themselves and property values rise. Moreover, the cost for a rental tends to go up every year, whereas the cost of a 30-year mortgage is fixed. If the purchase is made when financing costs are low, then the investment is even more attractive. Traditionally, tax advantages have been offered to homeowners, providing additional financial incentives to enter the real estate market.

Another positive aspect of homeownership is the control that owners have over their living situation. Landlords can change the terms of rental agreements at the end of a short contract, forcing tenants to increase their expenditure or move. In contrast, homeowners have a sense of security and stability. By owning a home in a community, it is possible to maintain a stable environment without being compelled to make changes that may not be advantageous or well timed.

Finally, there are some unexpected social benefits for homeowners. In general, research supports positive outcomes in education, health, and crime. Specifically, the children of homeowners tend to achieve higher grades in school, both adults and children living in their own homes report better health and higher self-esteem, and crime rates are significantly lower in neighborhoods with a high percentage of resident homeowners.

Relationship sentence: _____

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 wealth creation–homes appreciate, fixed mortgage, tax incentives	Point 1
Point 2 control over living situation–rental contracts change	Point 2
Point 3 social benefits–health, education, crime	Point 3

3 Listen to a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 51

Now listen to part of a lecture in an economics class. The professor is talking about home-ownership.

Relationship sentence: The lecturer refutes the idea in the reading passage that homeownership is a goal promising positive outcomes.

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 wealth creation–homes appreciate, fixed mortgage tax incentives	Point 1 recession–high mortgage, half value
Point 2 control over living Situation–rental contracts change	Point 2 foreclosure–insecurity, loss control
Point 3 social benefits–health, education, crime	Point 3 one paycheck from losing home–stress, children lower grades, less involved in school

4 Write a relationship sentence.

5 Respond, using information from both the reading and the lecture.

Question

Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Example Essay

The lecturer refutes the idea in the reading passage that homeownership is a goal promising positive outcomes. He makes a case for a reversal of this trend in the current economy, addressing the three assumptions in the passage.

First, he questions whether a home is a good way to create wealth. Although homes appreciated in the past, in today's market, homes are, in fact, depreciating to such a low that some homeowners are paying a high fixed mortgage for a home that is worth about half the value of its purchase price.

Second, the lecturer disagrees that homeownership provides control over one's living situation. During the recession, foreclosures and forced sales created a loss of control and a climate of insecurity in the market. He points out that many first-time homeowners would rather rent but cannot solve the problem of how to return to a rental without losing a significant investment in the home that they now own.

Third, studies confirm that many owners are only one paycheck away from losing their homes, a situation that creates stress for all family members, reversing the social benefits that homeownership once assured, including lower grades and less involvement in school activities on the part of the children.

Clearly, economic instability has affected the value of homeownership in serious ways.

6 Use the points on the chart to check for a complete response.

The essay is complete because it includes all three arguments proposed in the reading passage with the opposing argument for each one presented in the lecture.

➤ Practice with the plan

Practical Strategy

Remember that three tasks on the TOEFL require synthesis: Task 3 and Task 4 in the Speaking section and Task 1 in the Writing section. Now that you have memorized the steps, practice using them. Don't worry! The model tests in this book and on the CD-ROM will give you more practice, and soon you will be able to respond with confidence within the time limits on the iBT. For now, don't worry about timing yourself.

Practice Activity 50

First, write the step after the number. Then practice the step to complete the task. Compare your answers with the example answers in Chapter 5 on pages 575–579.

Speaking Task 3

1

2

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Announcement from the Office of the President
After five months of remodeling, the Faculty Club will move into a new space on the top floor of Anderson Hall. The facilities, open to all full-time faculty, will include a restaurant open for breakfast, lunch, and dinner, a private dining area that seats twenty, and a bar that will serve beer and wine. The Club will be open next Monday. The Honors Program that formerly occupied the Anderson Hall space has moved to a smaller suite of offices and a lounge in the basement of Harkins Hall. The offices are already open and the lounge will be available for honors students to use next month.

3



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 52
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Question
The man expresses his opinion of the announcement. State his opinion and give the reasons that he gives for the opinion.

4

Response
5

6

After you have completed your response, listen to the example response for Speaking Task 3 in Chapter 5 on page 576.

Speaking Task 4

1

2

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Courtship Display

A courtship display is a series of behaviors that an animal might use to attract a mate, and occasionally to warn rivals who may intrude. In general, the males initiate the courtship displays to arouse a female's interest and to win her selection among competing males. These behaviors may include ritualized dances or vocalizations that showcase the beauty or strength of the potential mate. In birds, these courtship displays often include postures by males to expose their plumage. Fanning and shaking the tail feathers, turning them to catch the light, and strutting around the female bird are common elements of the display.

3



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 53

Now listen to a lecture in a biology class about the same topic.

Question

The professor discusses peacocks. Explain how their behavior conforms to the usual rituals for courtship displays.

4

5

Response

6

After you have completed your response, listen to the example response for Speaking Task 4 in Chapter 5 on page 577.

Writing Task 1

1

2

Reading Time: 3 minutes

> Government censorship of the Internet benefits society in three ways. First, like other forms of mass media, including television and movies, censorship protects children. Restricting adult content and providing punitive measures for pornographic websites discourages the exposure of young children to inappropriate images and explicit language. Since children are growing up in an environment in which they can easily access the Internet, some restrictions should be in place to protect them.
>
> Second, censorship curtails criminal activities. Censorship discovers and discourages financial frauds, theft, and harassment, or even potentially violent encounters. Because the Internet affords criminals a high degree of anonymity, unless their activities are monitored, they can sell illegal substances, threaten or bully individuals, or intrude into the lives of large numbers of people with spam advertising. Censorship reduces the instances of these disturbing contacts.
>
> Finally, censorship assures personal privacy. Censorship laws establish standards for websites and security measures to protect identity, financial records, and personal information. Censorship restricts access to credit cards and bank accounts, as well as medical and employment records, and it reduces the incidents of identity theft.

3



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 54

Now listen to a lecture about the same topic.

Question

Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Question
The professor talks about censorship on the Internet. Explain how the lecture casts doubt on the information in the reading passage.

4

5

Essay

6

After you have completed your response, read the example essay for Writing Task 1 in Chapter 5 on page 579.

Beyond the Book
Mini-Lesson for the TOEFL Synthesis



To view the lesson, swipe the code with the QR reader on your smartphone or enter the following private access address on your computer:
https://www.youtu.be/nta5oJ9P9s4

4

MODEL TESTS

MODEL TEST 1: PRETEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the short format for the Reading section. On the short format, you will read three passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 60 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Beowulf"

Historical Background

P1 ➔ The epic poem *Beowulf*, written in Old English, is the earliest existing Germanic epic and one of four surviving Anglo-Saxon manuscripts. Although *Beowulf* was written by an anonymous Englishman in Old English, the tale takes place in that part of Scandinavia from which Germanic tribes emigrated to England. Beowulf comes from Geatland, the southeastern part of what is now Sweden. Hrothgar, king of the Danes, lives near what is now Leire, on Zealand, Denmark's largest island. The *Beowulf* epic contains three major tales about Beowulf and several minor tales that reflect a rich Germanic oral tradition of myths, legends, and folklore.

P2 ➔ The *Beowulf* warriors have a foot in both the Bronze and Iron Ages. Their mead-halls reflect the wealthy living of the Bronze Age Northmen, and their wooden shields, wood-shafted spears, and bronze-hilted swords are those of the Bronze Age warrior. However, they carry iron-tipped spears, and their best swords have iron or iron-edged blades. Beowulf also orders an iron shield for his fight with a dragon. Iron replaced bronze because it produced a blade with a cutting edge that was stronger and sharper. The Northmen learned how to forge iron in about 500 B.C. Although they had been superior to the European Celts in bronze work, it was the Celts who taught them how to make and design iron work. Iron was accessible everywhere in Scandinavia, usually in the form of "bog-iron" found in the layers of peat in peat bogs.

P3 The *Beowulf* epic also reveals interesting aspects of the lives of the Anglo-Saxons who lived in England at the time of the anonymous *Beowulf* poet. The Germanic tribes, including the Angles, the Saxons, and the Jutes, invaded England from about A.D. 450 to 600. By the time of the Beowulf poet, Anglo-Saxon society in England was neither primitive nor uncultured. A

P4 ➔ Although the *Beowulf* manuscript was written in about A.D. 1000, it was not discovered until the seventeenth century. B Scholars do not know whether *Beowulf* is the sole surviving epic from a flourishing Anglo-Saxon literary period that produced other great epics or whether it was unique even in its own time. C Many scholars think that the epic was probably written sometime between the late seventh century and the early ninth century. If they are correct, the original manuscript was probably lost during the ninth-century Viking invasions of Anglia, in which the Danes destroyed the Anglo-Saxon monasteries and their great libraries. However, other scholars think that the poet's favorable attitude toward the Danes must place the epic's composition after the Viking invasions and at the start of the eleventh century, when this *Beowulf* manuscript was written.

P5 ➔ The identity of the *Beowulf* poet is also uncertain. D He apparently was a Christian who loved the pagan heroic tradition of his ancestors and blended the values of the pagan hero with the Christian values of his own country and time. Because he wrote in the Anglian dialect, he probably was either a monk in a monastery or a poet in an Anglo-Saxon court located north of the Thames River.

Appeal and Value

P6 *Beowulf* interests contemporary readers for many reasons. First, it is an outstanding adventure story. Grendel, Grendel's mother, and the dragon are marvelous characters, and each fight is unique, action-packed, and exciting. Second, Beowulf is a very appealing hero. He is the perfect warrior, combining extraordinary strength, skill, courage, and loyalty. Like Hercules, he devotes *his* life to making the world a safer place. He chooses to risk death in order to help other people, and he faces his inevitable death with heroism and dignity. Third, the *Beowulf* poet is interested in the psychological aspects of human behavior. For example, the Danish hero's welcoming speech illustrates his jealousy of Beowulf. The behavior of Beowulf's warriors in the dragon fight reveals their cowardice. Beowulf's attitudes toward heroism reflect his maturity and experience, while King Hrothgar's attitudes toward life show the experiences of an aged nobleman.

P7 Finally, the *Beowulf* poet exhibits a mature appreciation of the transitory nature of human life and achievement. In *Beowulf*, as in the major epics of other cultures, the hero must create a meaningful life in a world that is often dangerous and uncaring. He must accept the inevitability of death. He chooses to reject despair; instead, he takes pride in himself and in his accomplishments, and he values human relationships.

1. According to paragraph 1, which of the following is true about *Beowulf*?

   Ⓐ It is the only manuscript from the Anglo-Saxon period.
   Ⓑ The original story was written in a German dialect.
   Ⓒ The author did not sign his name to the poem.
   Ⓓ It is one of several epics from the first century.

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

2. The word major in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ basic
   Ⓑ principal
   Ⓒ distinct
   Ⓓ current

3. Why does the author mention "bog-iron" in paragraph 2?

   Ⓐ To demonstrate the availability of iron in Scandinavia
   Ⓑ To prove that iron was better than bronze for weapons
   Ⓒ To argue that the Celts provided the materials to make iron
   Ⓓ To suggest that 500 B.C. was the date that the Iron Age began

   Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

4. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

   Ⓐ Society in Anglo-Saxon England was both advanced and cultured.
   Ⓑ The society of the Anglo-Saxons was not primitive or cultured.
   Ⓒ The Anglo-Saxons had a society that was primitive, not cultured.
   Ⓓ England during the Anglo-Saxon society was advanced, not cultured.

5. The word unique in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ old
   Ⓑ rare
   Ⓒ perfect
   Ⓓ weak

6. According to paragraph 4, why do many scholars believe that the original manuscript for *Beowulf* was lost?

   Ⓐ Because it is not like other manuscripts
   Ⓑ Because many libraries were burned
   Ⓒ Because the Danes were allies of the Anglo-Saxons
   Ⓓ Because no copies were found in monasteries

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7. In paragraph 4, the author suggests that *Beowulf* was discovered in which century?

   Ⓐ first century
   Ⓑ ninth century
   Ⓒ eleventh century
   Ⓓ seventeenth century

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

8. Why does the author of this passage use the word "apparently" in paragraph 5?

   Ⓐ He is not certain that the author of *Beowulf* was a Christian.
   Ⓑ He is mentioning facts that are obvious to the readers.
   Ⓒ He is giving an example from a historical reference.
   Ⓓ He is introducing evidence about the author of *Beowulf.*

   Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

9. Why did the author compare the Beowulf character to Hercules?

   Ⓐ They are both examples of the ideal hero.
   Ⓑ Their adventures with a dragon are very similar.
   Ⓒ The speeches that they make are inspiring.
   Ⓓ They lived at about the same time.

10. The word exhibits in the passage is closest in meaning to

    Ⓐ creates
    Ⓑ demonstrates
    Ⓒ assumes
    Ⓓ terminates

11. The word reject in the passage is closest in meaning to

    Ⓐ manage
    Ⓑ evaluate
    Ⓒ refuse
    Ⓓ confront

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    Moreover, they disagree as to whether this *Beowulf* is a copy of an earlier manuscript.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

***Beowulf* is the oldest Anglo-Saxon epic poem that has survived to the present day.**

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The Northmen were adept in crafting tools and weapons made of bronze, but the Celts were superior in designing and working in iron.

B In the Viking invasions of England, the Danish armies destroyed monasteries, some of which contained extensive libraries.

C King Hrothgar and Beowulf become friends at the end of their lives, after having spent decades opposing each other on the battlefield.

D The poem chronicles life in Anglo-Saxon society during the Bronze and Iron Ages when Germanic tribes were invading England.

E Although *Beowulf* was written by an anonymous poet, probably a Christian, about A.D. 1000, it was not found until the seventeenth century.

F *Beowulf* is still interesting because it has engaging characters, an adventurous plot, and an appreciation for human behavior and relationships.

Reading 2 "Thermoregulation"

P1 ➔ Mammals and birds generally maintain body temperature within a narrow range (36–38°C for most mammals and 39–42°C for most birds) that is usually considerably warmer than the environment. Because heat always flows from a warm object to cooler surroundings, birds and mammals must counteract the constant heat loss. This maintenance of warm body temperature depends on several key adaptations. The most basic mechanism is the high metabolic rate of endothermy itself. Endotherms can produce large amounts of metabolic heat that replace the flow of heat to the environment, and they can vary heat production to match changing rates of heat loss. Heat production is increased by such muscle activity as moving or shivering. In some mammals, certain hormones can cause mitochondria to increase their metabolic activity *and p*roduce heat instead of ATP. This **nonshivering thermogenesis (NST)** takes place throughout the body, but some mammals also have a tissue called **brown fat** in the neck and between the shoulders that is specialized for rapid heat production. Through shivering and NST, mammals and birds in cold environments can increase their metabolic heat production by as much as 5 to 10 times above the minimal levels that occur in warm conditions.

P2 ➔ Another major thermoregulatory adaptation that evolved in mammals and birds is insulation (hair, feathers, and fat layers), which reduces the flow of heat and lowers the energy cost of keeping warm. Most land mammals and birds react to cold by raising their fur or feathers, thereby trapping a thicker layer of air. A Humans rely more on a layer of fat just beneath the skin as insulation; goose bumps are a vestige of hair-raising left over from our furry ancestors. B Vasodilation and vasoconstriction also regulate heat exchange and may contribute to regional temperature differences within the animal. C For example, heat loss from a human is reduced when arms and legs cool to several degrees below the temperature of the body core, where most vital organs are located. D

P3 ➔ Hair loses most of its insulating power when wet. Marine mammals such as whales and seals have a very thick layer of insulation fat called blubber, just under the skin. Marine mammals swim in water colder than their body core temperature, and many species spend at least part of the year in nearly freezing polar seas. The loss of heat to water occurs 50 to 100 times more rapidly than heat loss to air, and the skin temperature of a marine mammal is close to water temperature. Even so, the blubber insulation is so effective that marine mammals maintain body core temperatures of about 36–38°C with metabolic rates about the same as those of land mammals of similar size. The flippers or tail of a whale or seal lack insulating blubber, but countercurrent heat exchangers greatly reduce heat loss in these extremities, as they do in the legs of many birds.

P4 ➔ Through metabolic heat production, insulation, and vascular adjustments, birds and mammals are capable of astonishing feats of thermoregulation. For example, small birds called chickadees, which weigh only 20 grams, can remain active and hold body temperature nearly constant at 40°C in environmental temperatures as low as –40°C—as long as they have enough food to supply the large amount of energy necessary for heat production.

15. Based on information in paragraph 1, which of the following best explains the term "thermogenesis"?

Ⓐ Heat loss that must be reversed
Ⓑ The adaptation of brown fat tissue in the neck
Ⓒ The maintenance of healthy environmental conditions
Ⓓ Conditions that affect the metabolism

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

16. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ An increase in heat production causes muscle activity such as moving or shivering.
Ⓑ Muscle activity like moving and shivering will increase heat production.
Ⓒ Moving and shivering are muscle activities that increase with heat.
Ⓓ When heat increases, the production of muscle activity also increases.

17. The word minimal in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ most recent
Ⓑ most active
Ⓒ newest
Ⓓ smallest

18. In paragraph 2, how does the author explain the concept of vasodilation and vasoconstriction?

Ⓐ Describing the evolution in our ancestors
Ⓑ Giving an example of heat loss in the extremities
Ⓒ Comparing the process in humans and animals
Ⓓ Identifying various types of insulation

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

19. The word regulate in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ protect
Ⓑ create
Ⓒ reduce
Ⓓ control

20. According to paragraph 3, why do many marine animals require a layer of blubber?

Ⓐ Because marine animals have lost their hair during evolution
Ⓑ Because heat is lost in water much faster than it is in air
Ⓒ Because dry hair does not insulate marine animals
Ⓓ Because they are so large that they require more insulation

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

21. Why does the author mention "chickadees" in paragraph 4?

Ⓐ To discuss an animal that regulates heat very well
Ⓑ To demonstrate why chickadees have to eat so much
Ⓒ To mention an exception to the rules of thermoregulation
Ⓓ To give a reason for heat production in small animals

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

22. The word sufficient in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ established
Ⓑ valuable
Ⓒ safe
Ⓓ adequate

23. In paragraph 6, the author states that evaporative cooling is often accomplished by all of the following methods EXCEPT

Ⓐ by spreading saliva over the area
Ⓑ by urinating on the body
Ⓒ by panting or fluttering a pouch
Ⓓ by immersing themselves in water

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

24. The word enhance in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ simplify
Ⓑ improve
Ⓒ replace
Ⓓ interrupt

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

The insulating power of a layer of fur or feathers mainly depends on how much still air the layer traps.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete *the* summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Thermoregulation is the process by which animals control body temperatures within healthy limits.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Although hair can be a very efficient insulation when it is dry and it can be raised, hair becomes ineffective when it is submerged in cold water.

B Some animals with few adaptations for thermoregulation migrate to moderate climates to avoid the extreme weather in *the* polar regions and the tropics.

C Mammals and birds use insulation to mitigate heat loss, including hair and feathers that can be raised to trap air as well as fat or blubber under the skin.

D Some birds have a special pouch in the mouth, which can be fluttered to increase evaporation and decrease their body temperatures by as much as 20°C.

E Endotherms generate heat by increasing muscle activity, by releasing hormones into their blood streams, or by producing heat in brown fat tissues.

F Panting, sweating, and spreading saliva or urine on their bodies are all options for the evaporative cooling of animals in hot environmental conditions.

Reading 3 "Social Readjustment Scales"

P1 ➔ In 1967, Holmes and Rahe developed the Social Readjustment Rating Scale (SRRS) to measure life change as a form of stress. A The scale assigns numerical values to 43 major life events that are supposed to reflect the magnitude of the readjustment required by each change. In responding to the scale, respondents are asked to indicate how often they experienced any of these 43 events during a certain time period (typically, the past year). The person then adds up the numbers associated with each event checked. B

P2 ➔ The SRRS and similar scales have been used in thousands of studies by researchers all over the world. C Overall, these studies have shown that people with higher scores on the SRRS tend to be more vulnerable to many kinds of physical illness—and many types of psychological problems as well. D More recently, however, experts have criticized this research, citing problems with the methods used and raising questions about the meaning of the findings.

P3 First, the assumption that the SRRS measures change exclusively has been shown to be inaccurate. We now have ample evidence that the desirability of events affects adaptational outcomes more than the amount of change that they require. Thus, it seems prudent to view the SRRS as a measure of diverse forms of stress, rather than as a measure of change-related stress.

P4 ➔ Second, the SRRS fails to take into account differences among people in their subjective perception of how stressful an event is. For instance, while divorce may deserve a stress value of 73 for *most* people, a particular person's divorce might generate much less stress and merit a value of only 25.

P5 ➔ Third, many of the events listed on the SRRS and similar scales are highly ambiguous, leading people to be inconsistent as to which events they report experiencing. For instance, what qualifies as "trouble with the boss"? Should you check that because you're sick and tired of your supervisor? What constitutes a "change in living conditions"? Does your purchase of a great new sound system qualify? As you can see, the SRRS includes many "events" that are described inadequately, producing considerable ambiguity about the meaning of one's response. Problems in recalling events over a period of a year also lead to inconsistent responding on stress scales, thus lowering their reliability.

P6 Fourth, the SRRS does not sample from the domain of stressful events very thoroughly. Do the 43 events listed on the SRRS exhaust all the major stresses that people typically experience? Studies designed to explore that question have found many significant omissions.

P7 ➔ Fifth, the correlation between SRRS scores and health may be inflated because subjects' neuroticism affects both their responses to stress scales and their self-reports of health problems. Neurotic individuals have a tendency to recall more stress than others and to recall more symptoms of illness than others. These tendencies mean that some of the correlation between high stress and high illness may simply reflect the effects of subjects' neuroticism. The possible contaminating effects of neuroticism obscure the meaning of scores on the SRRS and similar measures of stress.

The Life Experiences Survey

P8 In the light of these problems, a number of researchers have attempted to develop improved versions of the SRRS. For example, the Life Experiences Survey (LES), assembled by Irwin Sarason and colleagues, has become a widely used measure of stress in contemporary research. The LES revises and builds on the SRRS survey in a variety of ways that correct, at least in part, most of the problems just discussed.

P9 ➔ Specifically, the LES recognizes that stress involves more than mere change and asks respondents to indicate whether events had a positive or negative impact on them. This strategy permits the computation of positive change, negative change, and total change scores, which helps researchers gain much more insight into which facets of stress are most crucial. The LES also takes into consideration differences among people in their appraisal of stress, by dropping the normative weights and replacing them with personally assigned weightings of the impact of relevant events. Ambiguity in items is decreased by providing more elaborate descriptions of many items to clarify their meaning.

P10 The LES deals with the failure of the SRRS to sample the full domain of stressful events in several ways. First, some significant omissions from the SRRS have been added to the LES. Second, the LES allows the respondent to write in personally important events that are not included on the scale. Third, the LES has an extra section just for students. Sarason and colleagues suggest that special, tailored sections of this sort be added for specific populations whenever it is useful.

27. Based on the information in paragraph 1 and paragraph 2, what can be inferred about a person with a score of 30 on the SRRS?

Ⓐ A person with a higher score will experience less stress than this person will.
Ⓑ It is likely that this person has not suffered any major problems in the past year.
Ⓒ The amount of positive change is greater than that of a person with a score of 40.
Ⓓ This person has a greater probability to be ill than a person with a 20 score.

Paragraph 1 and paragraph 2 are marked with arrows [➔].

28. The word outcomes in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ opportunities
Ⓑ conditions
Ⓒ results
Ⓓ issues

29. The word diverse in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ necessary
Ⓑ steady
Ⓒ limited
Ⓓ different

30. In paragraph 4, why does the author use divorce as an example?

Ⓐ To show how most people respond to high stress situations in their lives
Ⓑ To demonstrate the serious nature of a situation that is listed as a stressful event
Ⓒ To illustrate the subjective importance of a situation listed on the scale
Ⓓ To identify the numerical value for a stressful event on the SRRS

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

31. In paragraph 5, how does the author demonstrate that the response events on the SRRS are not consistent?

Ⓐ By asking questions that could be answered in more than one way
Ⓑ By giving examples of responses that are confusing
Ⓒ By comparing several ways to score the stress scales
Ⓓ By suggesting that people do not respond carefully

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

32. According to paragraph 7, why is the SRRS inappropriate for people with neuroses?

Ⓐ They are ill more often, which affects their scores on the scale.
Ⓑ Their self-reporting on the scale is affected by their neuroses.
Ⓒ They tend to suffer more stress than people without neuroses.
Ⓓ Their response to stress will probably not be recorded on the scale.

Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

33. The word assembled in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ announced
Ⓑ influenced
Ⓒ arranged
Ⓓ distributed

34. The word relevant in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ occasional
Ⓑ modern
Ⓒ related
Ⓓ unusual

35. According to paragraph 9, why does the LES ask respondents to classify change as positive or negative?

Ⓐ To analyze the long-term consequences of change
Ⓑ To determine which aspects of change are personally significant
Ⓒ To explain why some people handle stress better than others
Ⓓ To introduce normative weighting of stress events

Paragraph 9 is marked with an arrow [➔].

36. According to the passage, which of the following is true about the SRRS as compared with the LES?

Ⓐ The SRRS includes a space to write in personal events that have not been listed.
Ⓑ The SRRS features a section for specific populations such as students.
Ⓒ The SRRS assigns numbers to calculate the stress associated with events.
Ⓓ The SRRS has hints to help people recall events that happened over a year ago.

37. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion of the SRRS?

Ⓐ There are many problems associated with it.
Ⓑ It is superior to the LES.
Ⓒ It should be studied more carefully.
Ⓓ The scale is most useful for students.

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

This sum is an index of the amount of change-related stress the person has recently experienced.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions**: An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Several social readjustment scales have been developed to measure stress from life changing events.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The Life Experiences Survey (LES) takes into consideration both positive and negative changes as well as the individual differences among people assigning values for stressful events.

B The Life Experiences Survey (LES) was developed to correct a number of problems in the Social Readjustment Rating Scale (SRRS).

C The Social Readjustment Rating Scale (SRRS) assigns mathematical values to major life events and collects data about the events that an individual has experienced during a specific time.

D Researchers have called into question the usefulness of instruments like the Social Readjustment Rating Scale (SRRS) and the Life Experiences Survey (LES) and have begun to develop a new scale to measure stress.

E People who have neurotic tendencies are not good candidates to take the Social Readjustment Scale (SRRS) because they may provide higher values for stressful events.

F Positive events and negative events can both cause stress, according to social readjustment scales designed to measure them.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 1, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 1

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

This is the long format for the Listening section. On the long format, you will listen to three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it. Only two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions will be graded. The other passages are part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which conversations, lectures, and discussions will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

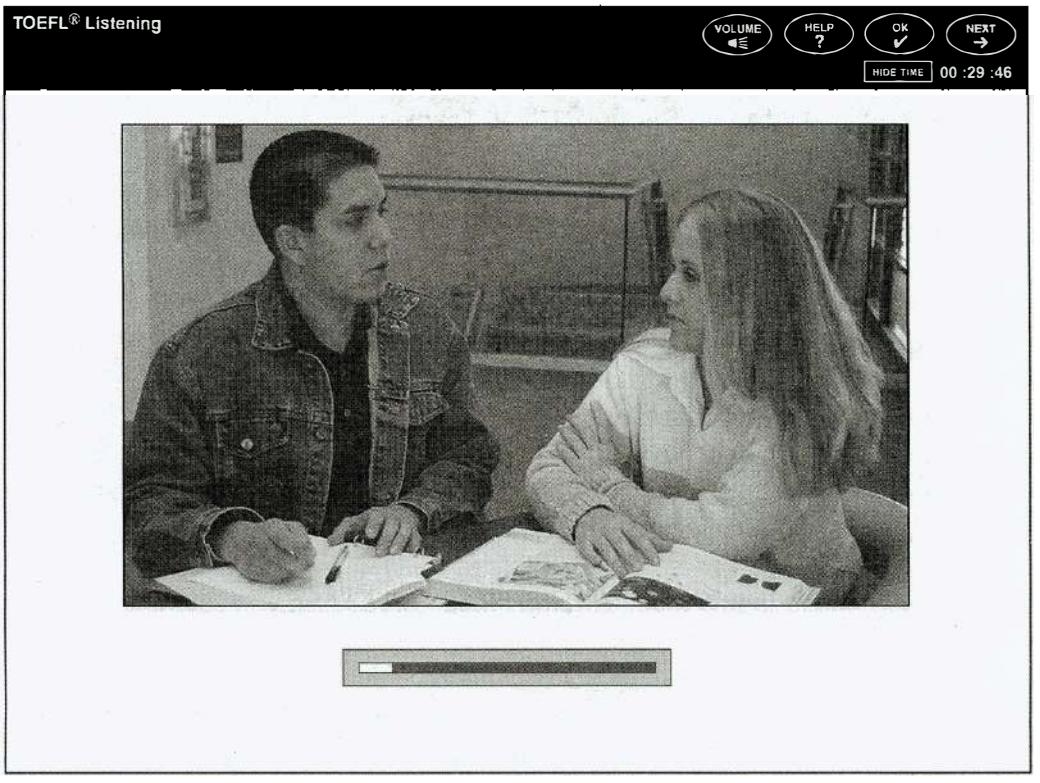
Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 30 minutes to answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

IMPORTANT NOTE

The audio for the Listening, Speaking, and Writing sections of the 7 model tests in this book is available on MP3 CDs. If you purchased this book with 2MP3 CDs, you will hear the audio but you will not see visuals on the computer. If you purchased this book with 2 MP3 CDs and 1 CD-ROM, you will see a computer simulation of the TOEFL on the CD-ROM for each of the 7 model tests in this book. You will also see a computer simulation for Model Test 8, which is a bonus test on the CD-ROM.

Listening 1 "Learning Center"



1. What does the woman need?

   Ⓐ A meeting with Professor Simpson
   Ⓑ An English composition class
   Ⓒ An appointment for tutoring
   Ⓓ Information about the Learning Center

2. Why does the woman say this: 

   Ⓐ She is worried that she cannot afford the service.
   Ⓑ She is trying to negotiate the cost of the sessions.
   Ⓒ She is showing particular interest in the man.
   Ⓓ She is expressing surprise about the arrangement.

3. Why is the man concerned about the woman's attendance?

   Ⓐ If she is absent, her grade will be lowered.
   Ⓑ He will not get a paycheck if she is absent.
   Ⓒ She has been sick a lot during the semester.
   Ⓓ Her grades need to be improved.

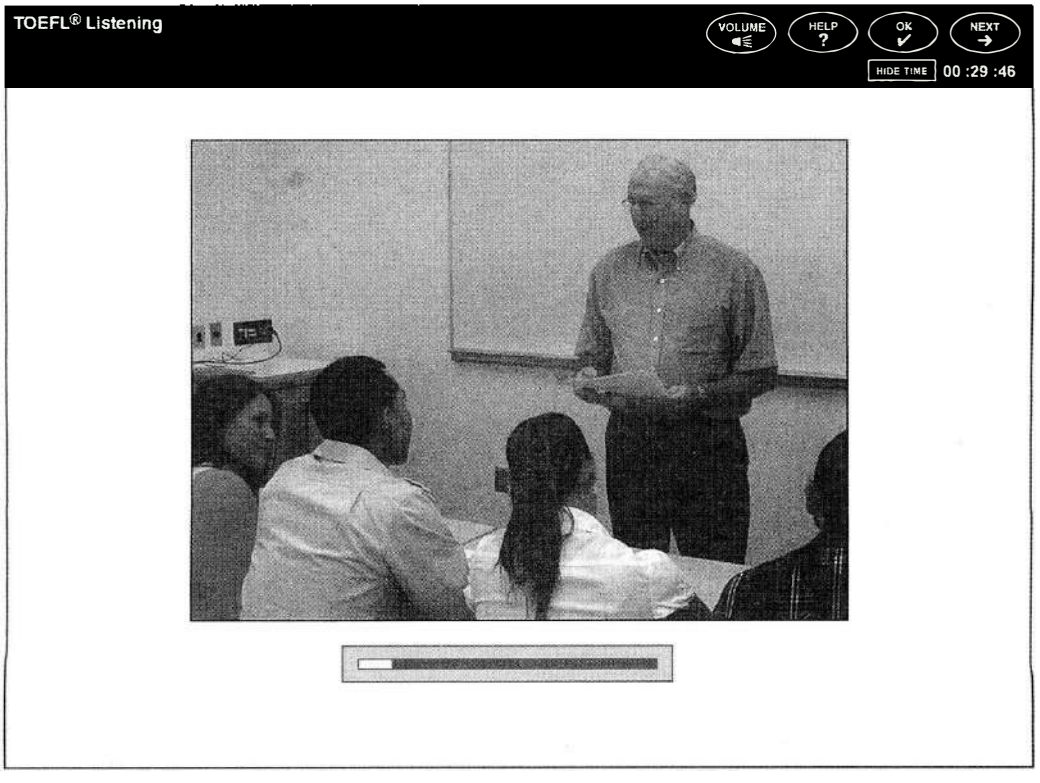
4. What does the man agree to do?

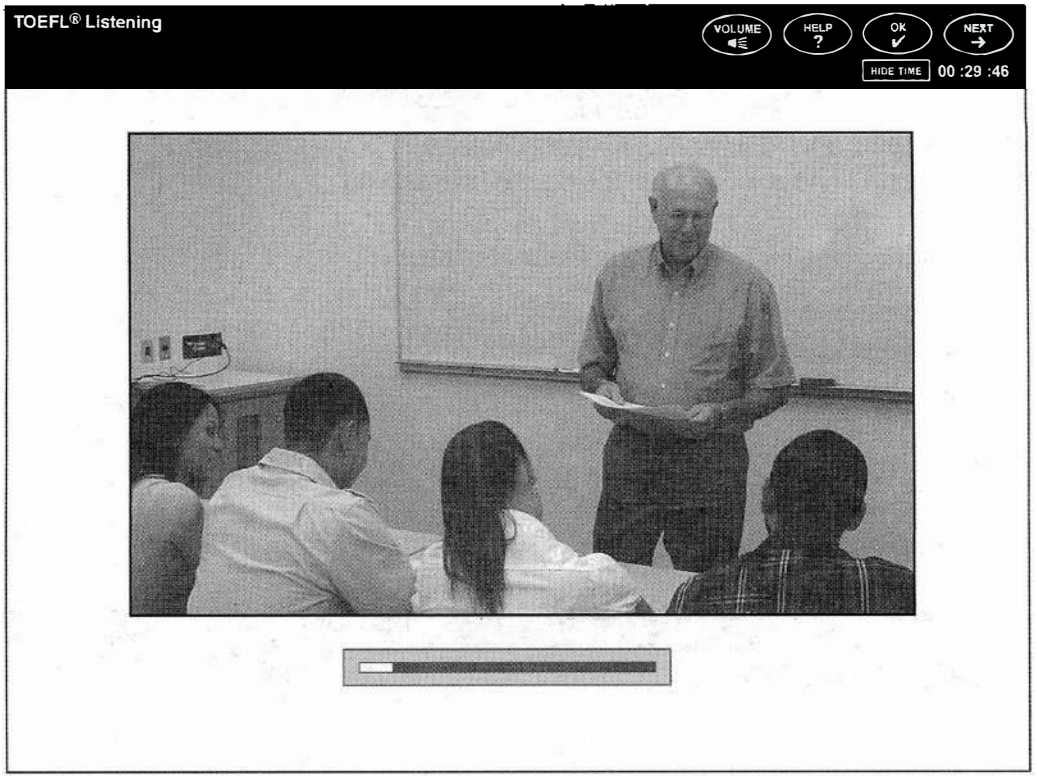
   Ⓐ He will show the woman how to use the library.
   Ⓑ He will write some compositions for the woman.
   Ⓒ He will talk with the woman's English professor.
   Ⓓ He will show the woman how to improve her writing.

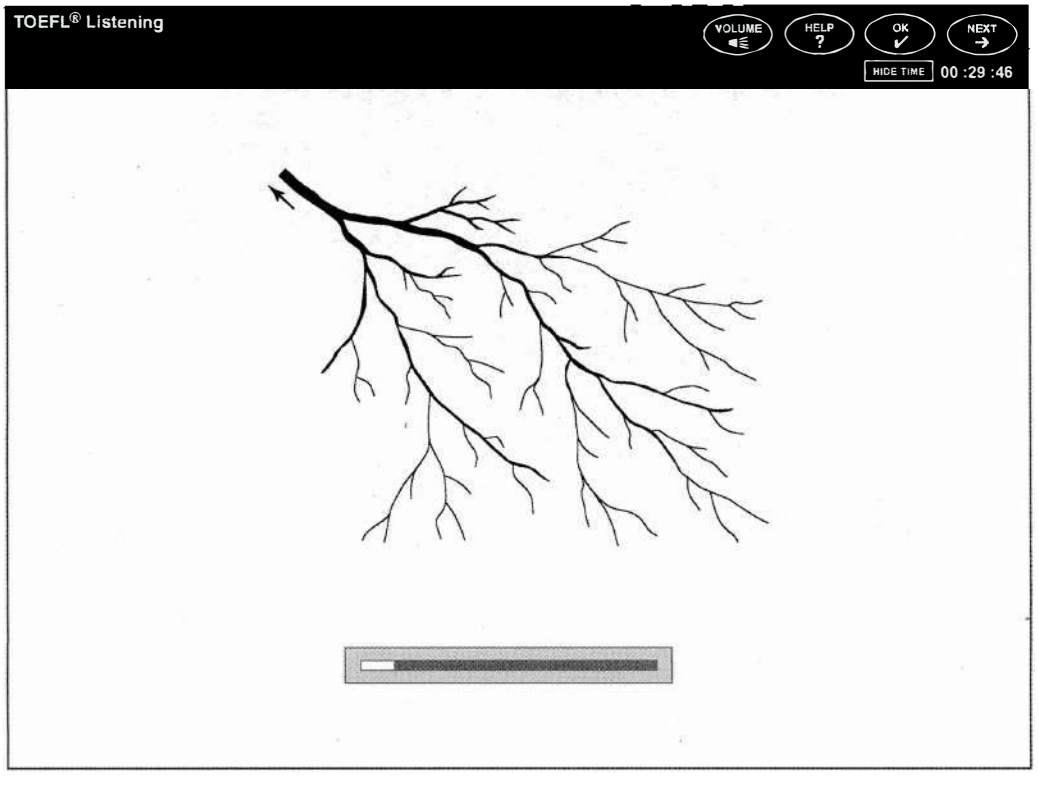
5. What does the man imply about the woman's teacher?

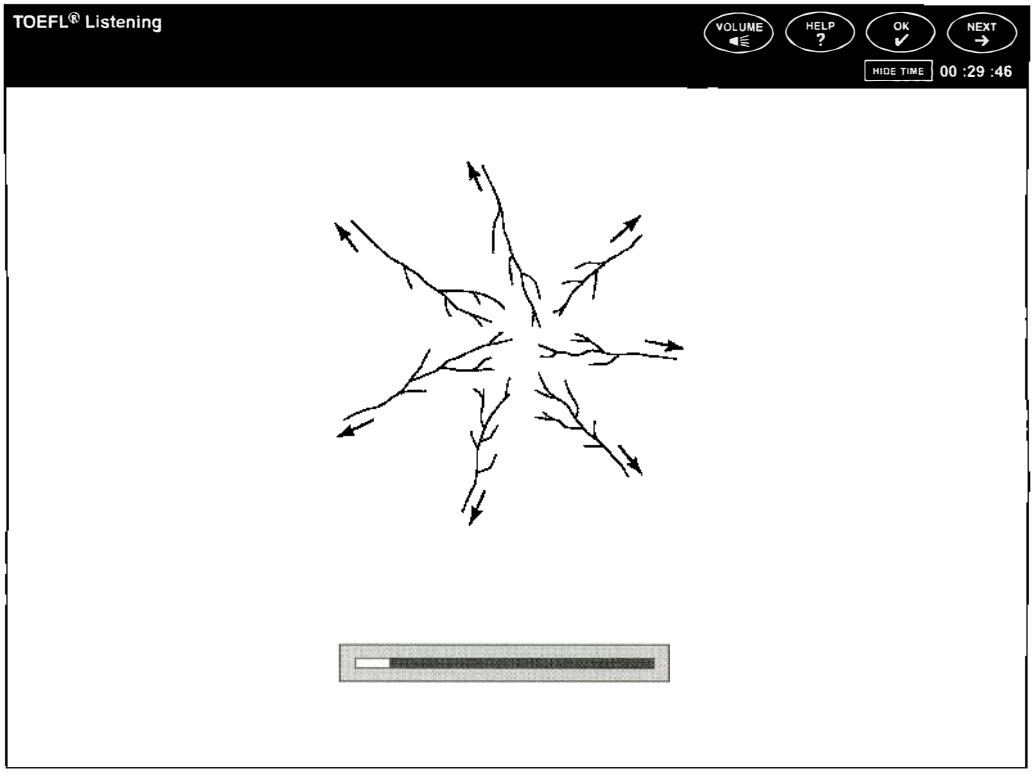
   Ⓐ The professor is very difficult to understand.
   Ⓑ He does not know where she came from.
   Ⓒ Her students seem to like her teaching style.
   Ⓓ He is familiar with her requirements.

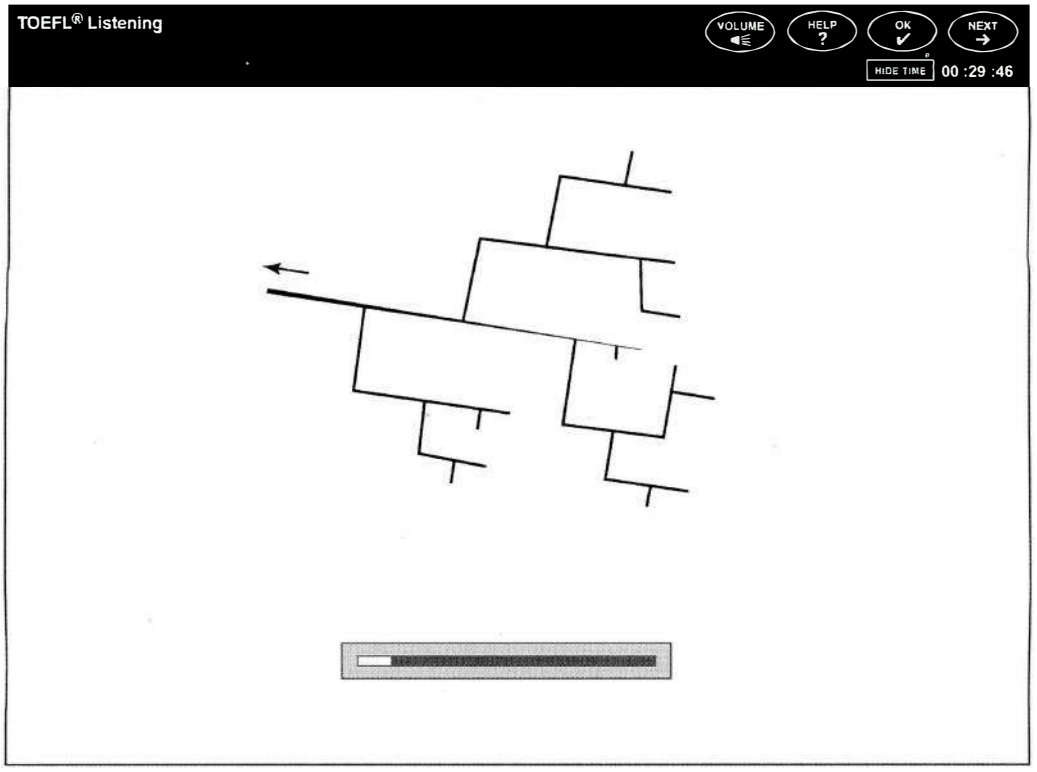
Listening 2 "Geology Class"

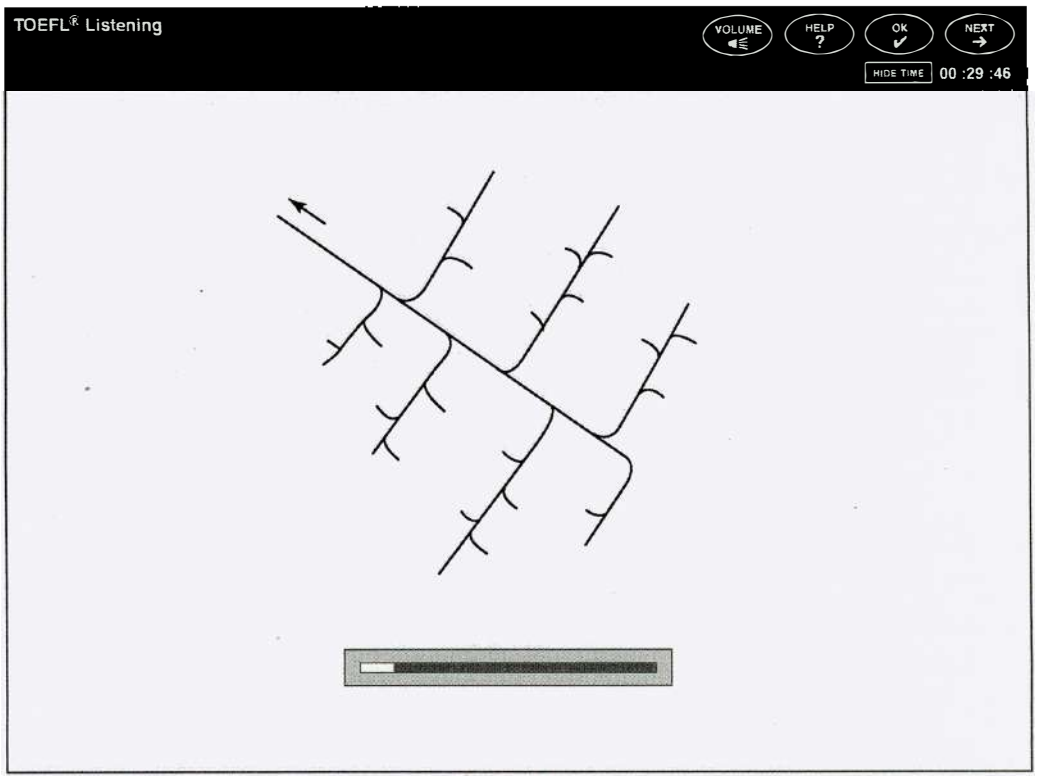



TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46



6. What is this lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ A process for improving drainage systems
Ⓑ A comparison of different types of drainage systems
Ⓒ The relationship among the most common drainage systems
Ⓓ The changes that occur in drainage systems over time

7. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To remind the students of the topic for today's session
Ⓑ To indicate that he expects the students to read the textbook
Ⓒ To encourage the students to participate in the discussion
Ⓓ To demonstrate his respect for the students in his class

8. How does the professor introduce the dendritic drainage system?

Ⓐ By demonstrating how this very old system has evolved
Ⓑ By comparing it to both a tree and the human circulatory system
Ⓒ By criticizing the efficiency of the branches in the system
Ⓓ By drawing conclusions about the climate in the area

9. Why does the professor mention the spokes of a wheel?

   Ⓐ To make a point about the stream beds in a trellis pattern
   Ⓑ To contrast the formation with that of a rectangular one
   Ⓒ To explain the structure of a radial drainage system
   Ⓓ To give an example of a dendritic drainage system

10. In the lecture, the professor discusses the trellis drainage pattern. Indicate whether each of the following is typical of this pattern. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

	Yes	No
A Parallel stream beds flowing beside each other		
B Stream beds with sharp 90 degree turns		
C Drainage from the top of a central peak		
D Hard rock formations on top of soft rock formations		
E Geological evidence of folding with outcroppings		

11. What does the professor imply when he says this: 

   Ⓐ The test questions will be very difficult.
   Ⓑ The students should read their textbooks before the test.
   Ⓒ The basic patterns from the notes will be on the test.
   Ⓓ The test will influence the final grade.

Listening 3 "Psychology Class"



12. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The difference between suppression and repression
Ⓑ Why Freud's theories of defense mechanisms are correct
Ⓒ Some of the more common types of defense mechanisms
Ⓓ How to solve a student's problem with an unfair professor

13. How does the student explain the term *repression*?

Ⓐ He contrasts it with suppression.
Ⓑ He identifies it as a conscious response.
Ⓒ He gives several examples of it.
Ⓓ He refers to a study by Freud.

14. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is getting the class to pay attention.
Ⓑ She is *making* a joke about herself.
Ⓒ She is asking for a compliment.
Ⓓ She is criticizing a colleague.

15. Which of the following is an example of *displacement* that was used in the discussion?

Ⓐ Insisting that the professor dislikes you, when you really dislike him
Ⓑ Defending the professor even when you are angry about his behavior
Ⓒ Blaming someone in your study group instead of blaming the professor
Ⓓ Refusing to acknowledge that a problem exists because of the low grade

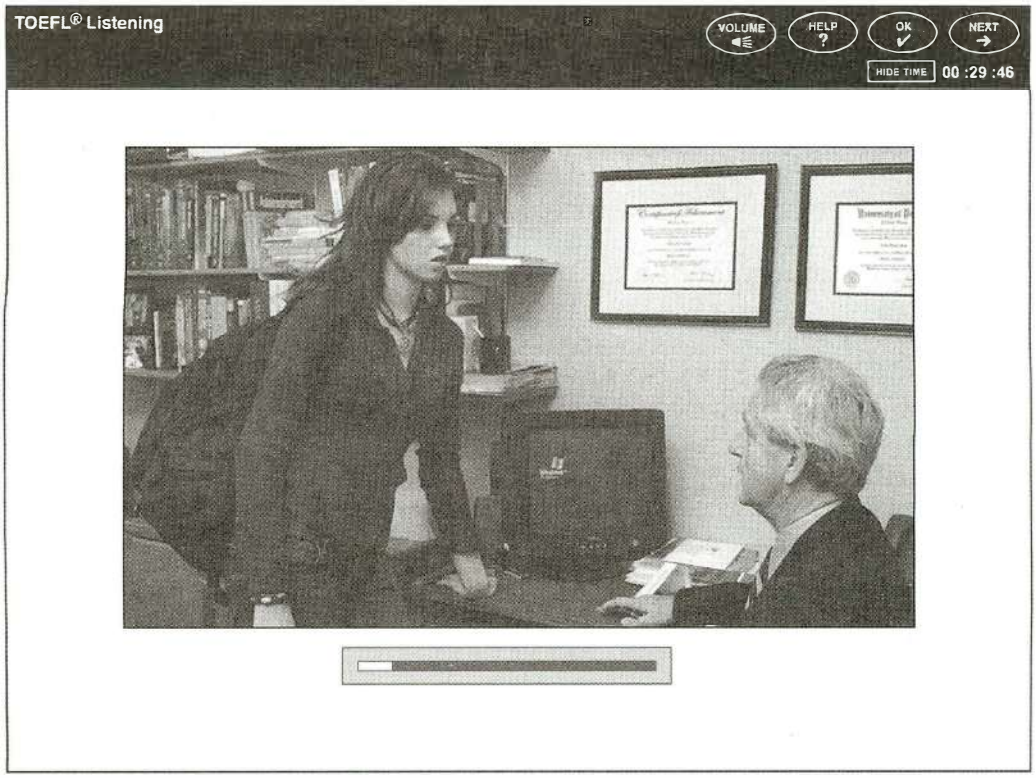
16. According to the professor, what happened in the 1990s?

Ⓐ The concept of defense mechanisms was abandoned.
Ⓑ New terms were introduced for the same mechanisms.
Ⓒ Modern researchers improved upon Freud's theory.
Ⓓ Additional categories were introduced by researchers.

17. How does the professor organize the discussion?

Ⓐ She has visual aids to explain each point.
Ⓑ She uses a scenario that students can relate to.
Ⓒ She provides a handout with an outline.
Ⓓ She helps students read the textbook.

Listening 4 "Professor's Office"



18. Why does the woman go to see her professor?

Ⓐ To get notes from a class that she has missed
Ⓑ To clarify some of the information from a lecture
Ⓒ To talk about her career in international business
Ⓓ To ask some questions about a paper she is writing

19. According to the professor, which factor causes staffing patterns to vary?

Ⓐ The yearly earnings for all of the branch offices
Ⓑ The number of employees in a multinational company
Ⓒ The place where a company has its home office
Ⓓ The number of years that a company has been in business

20. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To indicate that he is getting impatient
Ⓑ To encourage the woman to continue
Ⓒ To show that he does not understand
Ⓓ To correct the woman's previous comment

21. Which of the following would be an example of a third-country pattern?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] A Scottish manager in an American company in Africa

[B] A German manager in a Swiss company in Germany

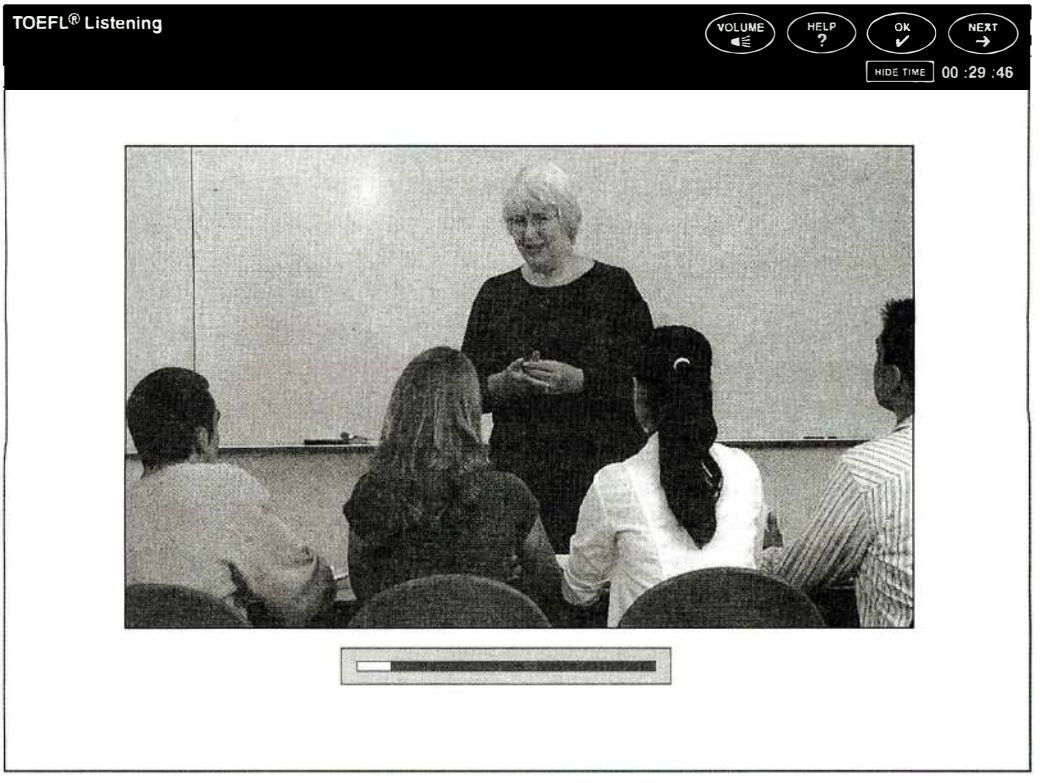
[C] A British manager in an American company in India

[D] A French manager in a French company in Canada

22. According to the professor, how do senior-level Japanese managers view their assignments abroad?

Ⓐ They consider them to be permanent career opportunities.
Ⓑ They use them to learn skills that they will use in Japan.
Ⓒ They understand that the assignment is only temporary.
Ⓓ They see them as a strategy for their retirement.

Listening 5 "Art Class"



23. What is the lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ The way that drawing has influenced art
Ⓑ The relationship between drawing and other art
Ⓒ The distinct purposes of drawing
Ⓓ The reason that artists prefer drawing

24. According to the professor, why do architects use sketches?

Ⓐ Architects are not clear about the final design at the beginning.
Ⓑ To design large buildings, architects must work in a smaller scale.
Ⓒ Engineers use the architect's sketches to implement the details.
Ⓓ Sketches are used as a record of the stages in development.

25. What does the professor mean when she says this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is checking to be sure that the students understand.
Ⓑ She is expressing uncertainty about the information.
Ⓒ She is inviting the students to disagree with her.
Ⓓ She is indicating that she is in a hurry to continue.

26. Why does the professor mention the drawing of Marie Antoinette?

Ⓐ It is an example of a work copied in another medium.
Ⓑ Drawing was typical of the way that artists were educated.
Ⓒ The sketch was a historical account of an important event.
Ⓓ The size of the drawing made it an exceptional work of art.

27. What is the professor's opinion of Picasso?

Ⓐ Picasso was probably playing a joke by offering drawings for sale.
Ⓑ At the end of his career, Picasso may have chosen drawing because it was easy.
Ⓒ Picasso's drawings required the confidence and skill of a master artist.
Ⓓ Cave drawings were the inspiration for many of Picasso's works.

28. According to the lecture, what are the major functions of drawing?

Click on 3 answer choices.

A A technique to remember parts of a large work

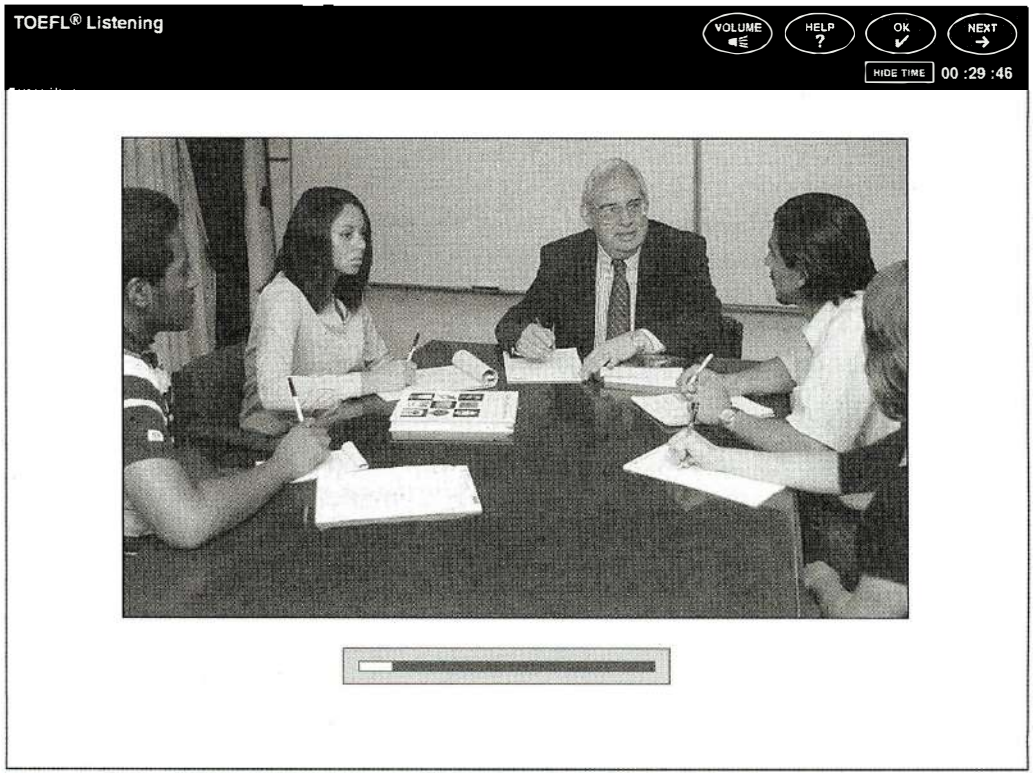
B A method to preserve a historical record

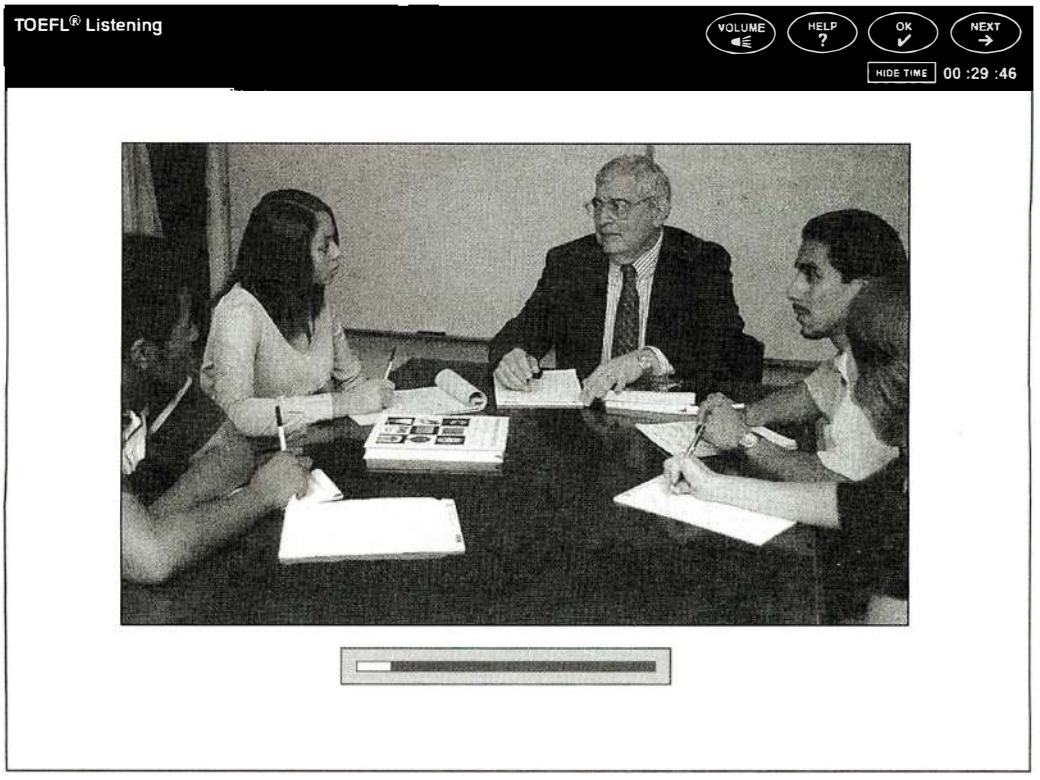
C An example of earlier forms of art

D An educational approach to train artists

E A process for experimenting with media

Listening 6 "Astronomy Class"





29. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The discovery of the Alpha Centauri system
Ⓑ The reason solar systems are confused with galaxies
Ⓒ The vast expanse of the universe around us
Ⓓ The model at the National Air and Space Museum

30. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ The students can read the details in the textbook.
Ⓑ The professor wants the students to concentrate on listening.
Ⓒ The facts are probably already familiar to most of the class.
Ⓓ This lecture is a review of material from a previous session.

31. Why wouldn't a photograph capture a true picture of the solar system walk?

Ⓐ It would not show the distances between the bodies in space.
Ⓑ The information on the markers would not be visible in a picture.
Ⓒ The scale for the model was not large enough to be accurate.
Ⓓ A photograph would make the exhibit appear much smaller.

32. How does the professor explain the term *solar system*?

Ⓐ He identifies the key features of a solar system.
Ⓑ He refers to the glossary in the textbook.
Ⓒ He gives several examples of solar systems.
Ⓓ He contrasts a solar system with a galaxy.

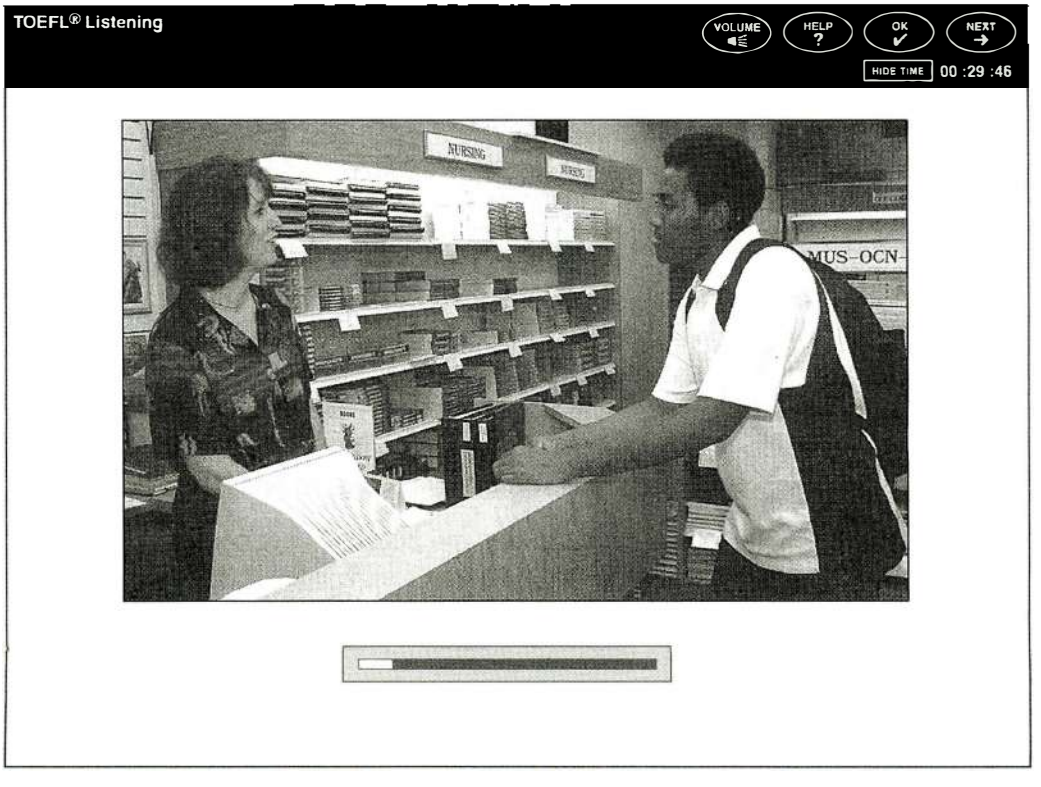
33. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He is trying to get the students to pay attention.
Ⓑ He is correcting something that he said earlier in the discussion.
Ⓒ He is beginning a summary of the important points.
Ⓓ He is joking with the students about the lecture.

34. What can be inferred about the professor?

Ⓐ The professor used to teach in Washington, D.C.
Ⓑ The professor likes his students to participate in the discussion.
Ⓒ The professor wants the students to take notes on every detail.
Ⓓ The professor is not very interested in the subject of the discussion.

Listening 7 "Bookstore"



35. What does the man need from the bookstore?

Ⓐ A schedule of classes for next term
Ⓑ A form to order books
Ⓒ Specific books for his classes
Ⓓ Information about employment

36. What does the man need if he wants a full refund?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Identification

[B] His registration form

[C] A receipt for the purchase

[D] Proof of his deposit

37. What does the woman mean when she says this: 

Ⓐ She is not sure that the student employee will give her the form.
Ⓑ She thinks that he will have to wait for the student employees.
Ⓒ She does not want the man to bother her because she is busy.
Ⓓ She is is not sure that the man understands what to do.

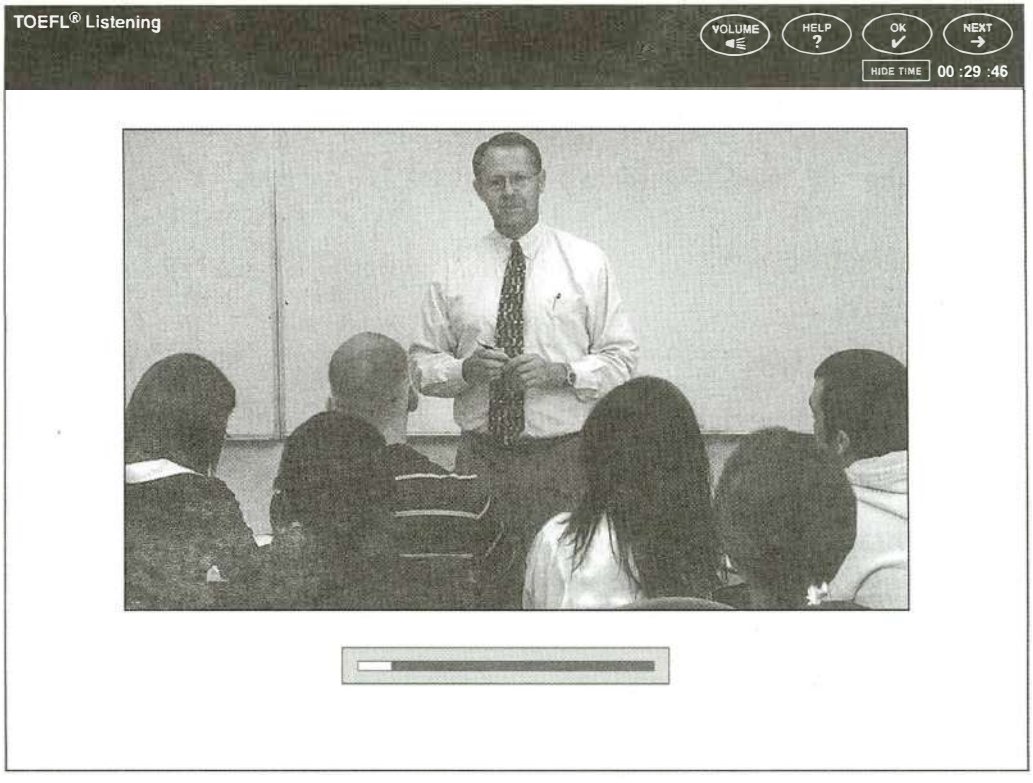
38. What does the woman imply about the used books she sells?

Ⓐ They are purchased before new books.
Ⓑ They do not have marks in them.
Ⓒ She does not recommend buying them.
Ⓓ She would rather sell new books.

39. What does the man need to do now?

Ⓐ Go to the bank to get money for the deposit
Ⓑ Sit down and fill out the form to order books
Ⓒ Take his books back to the dormitory
Ⓓ Locate the section numbers for his classes

Listening 8 "Environmental Science Class"





40. What is this lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ An overview of fuel cell technology
Ⓑ A process for producing fuel cells
Ⓒ A comparison of fuel cell models
Ⓓ Some problems in fuel cell distribution

41. What does the professor mean when he says this: 

Ⓐ He wants the students to take notes.
Ⓑ He would like the students to participate.
Ⓒ He is impressed with these options.
Ⓓ He does not plan to talk about the alternatives.

42. Why does the professor mention the STEP program in Australia?

Ⓐ He has personal experience in this project.
Ⓑ He is referring to information from a previous discussion.
Ⓒ He is comparing it to a successful program in Japan.
Ⓓ He thinks it is a very good example of a project.

43. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To indicate that the date is not important
Ⓑ To provide a specific date for the contract
Ⓒ To correct a previous statement about the date
Ⓓ To show that he is uncertain about the date

44. What are some of the problems associated with fuel cell technology?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Noise pollution

[B] Public acceptance

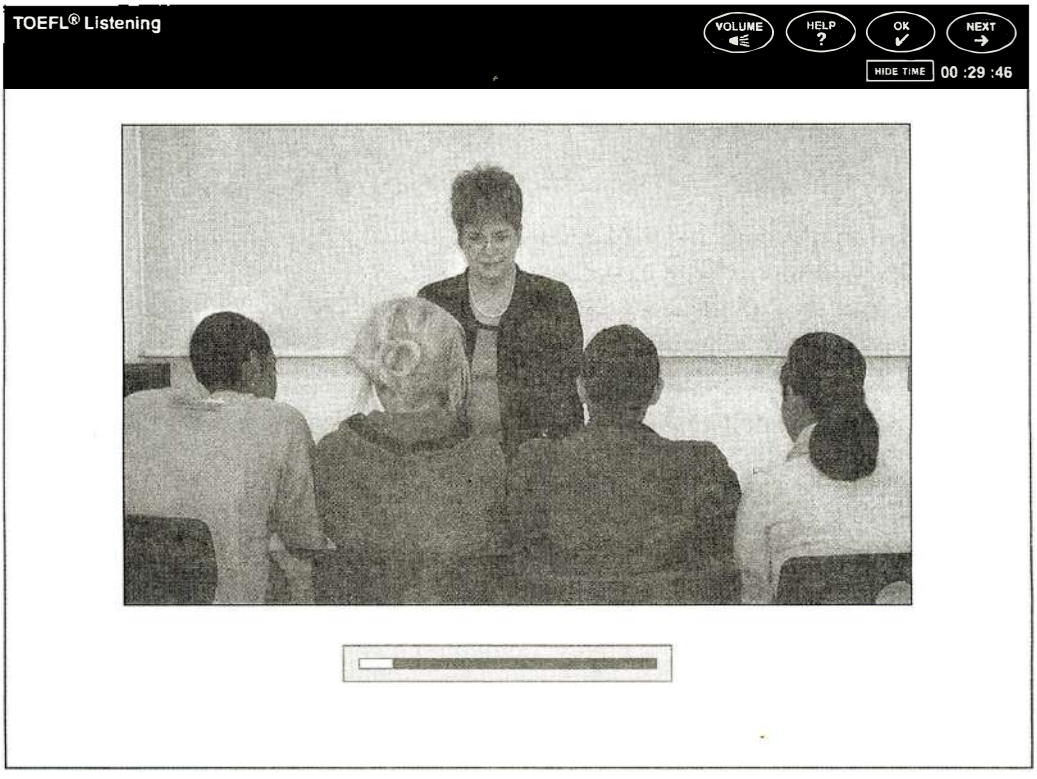
[C] Supplies of hydrogen

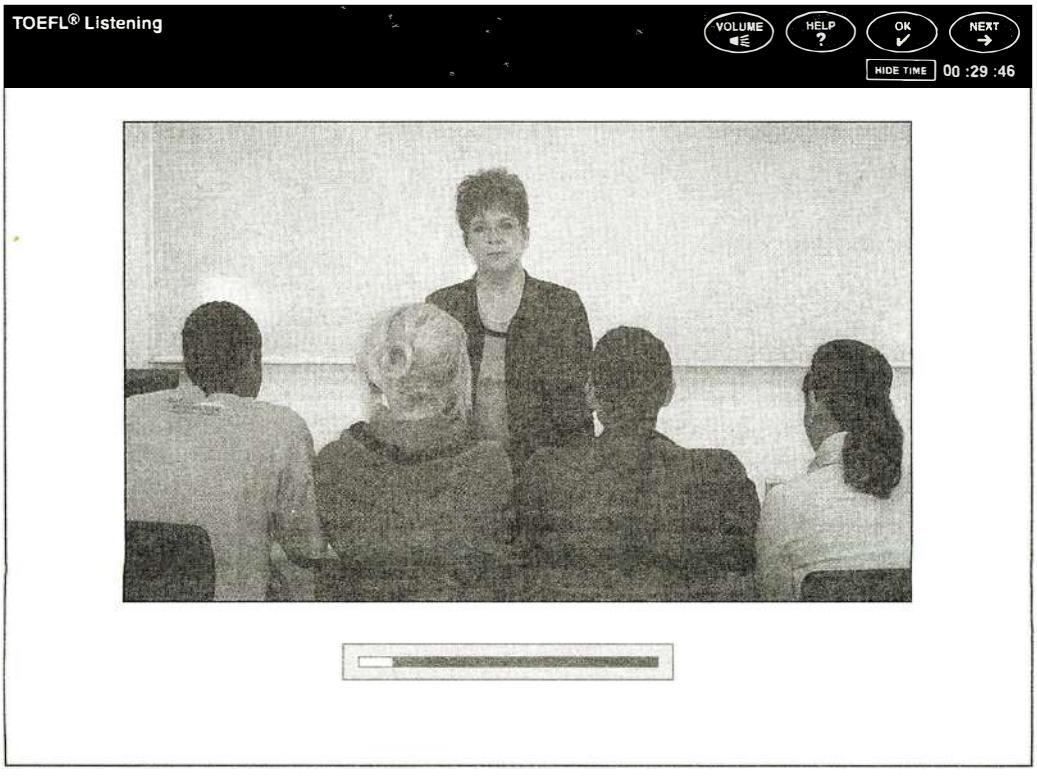
[D] Investment in infrastructures

45. What is the professor's attitude toward fuel cells?

Ⓐ He thinks that the technology is not very efficient.
Ⓑ He is hopeful about their development in the future.
Ⓒ He is doubtful that fuel cells will replace fossil fuels.
Ⓓ He is discouraged because of the delays in production.

Listening 9 "Philosophy Class"







46. What is the main focus of this discussion?

Ⓐ The Renaissance
Ⓑ Important scholars
Ⓒ Humanism
Ⓓ Political reform

47. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She thinks that the spelling of the term is not important.
Ⓑ She assumes that the students know how to spell the term.
Ⓒ She knows that the term can be found in the textbook.
Ⓓ She does not want to spend time explaining the term.

48. Why does the professor mention the drawing by Leonardo da Vinci?

Ⓐ She wants the students to refer to their textbook more often.
Ⓑ She uses it as an example of the union of art and science.
Ⓒ She says that it is one of her personal favorites.
Ⓓ She contrasts his work with that of other artists.

49. According to the professor, what was the effect of using Latin as a universal language of scholarship?

Ⓐ It facilitated communication among intellectuals in many countries.
Ⓑ It made Rome the capital of the world during the Renaissance.
Ⓒ It caused class distinctions to be apparent throughout Europe.
Ⓓ It created an environment in which new ideas were suppressed.

50. According to the professor, what can be inferred about a Renaissance man?

Ⓐ He would probably be a master craftsman.
Ⓑ He would have an aptitude for both art and science.
Ⓒ He would be interested in classical philosophers.
Ⓓ He would value logic at the expense of creativity.

51. All of the following characteristics are true of humanism EXCEPT

Ⓐ Mankind is innately good.
Ⓑ Scholars must serve society.
Ⓒ The individual is important.
Ⓓ Human beings are rational.



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 1, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 2

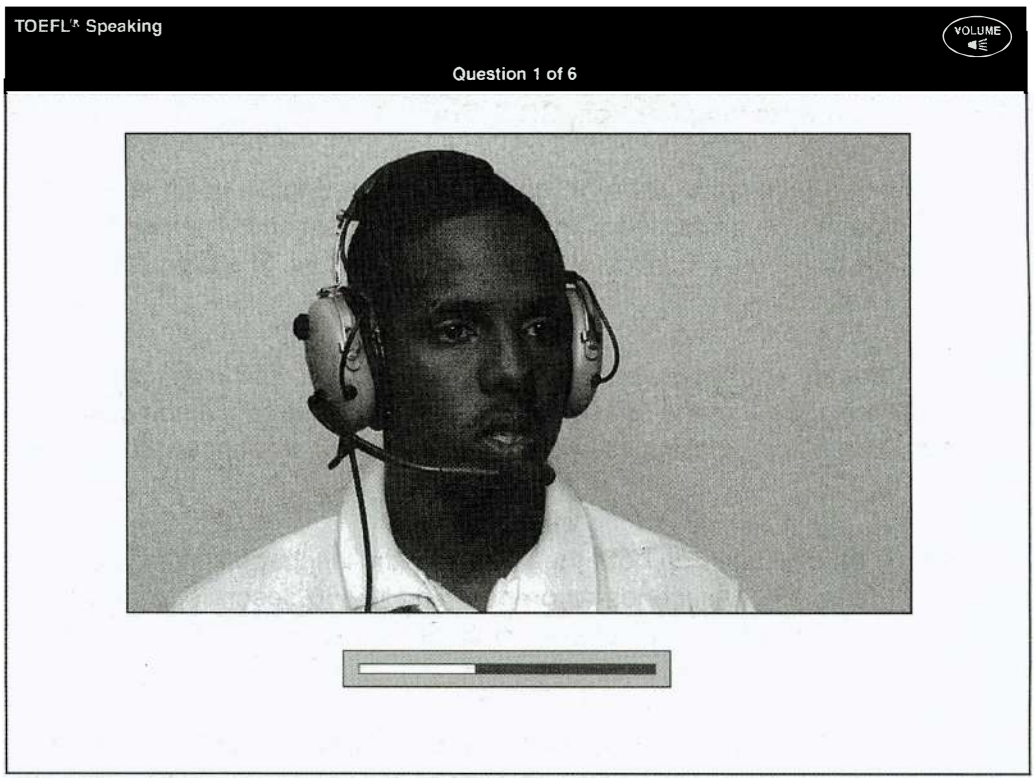
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Marriage Partner"

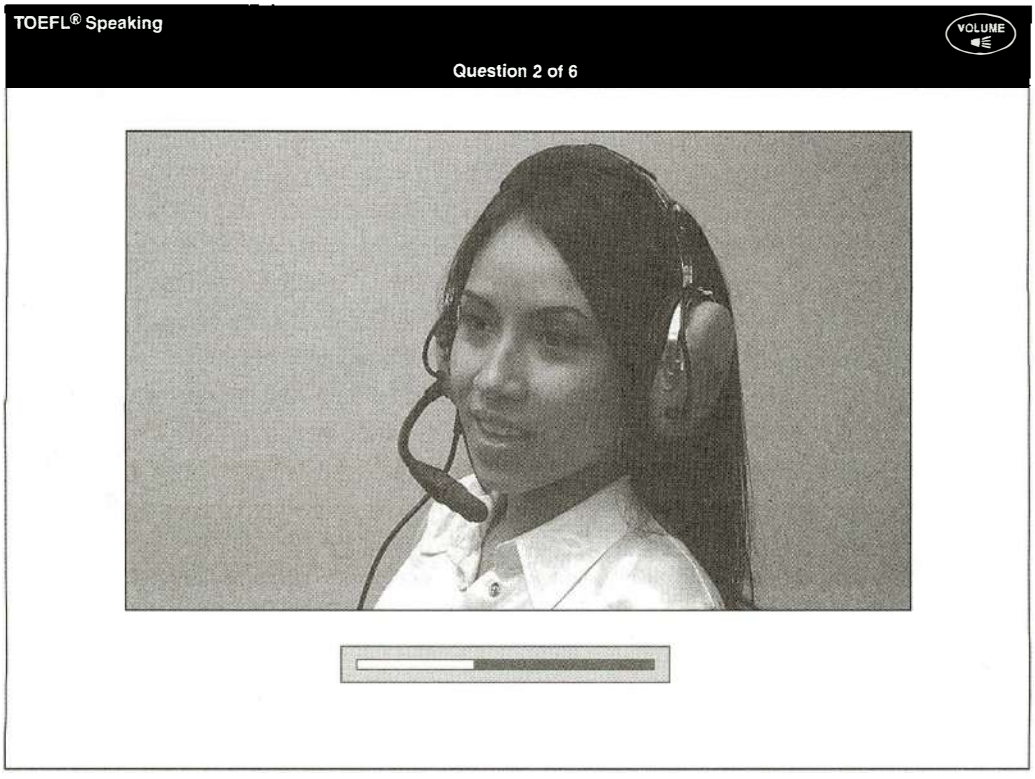


Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
Describe an ideal marriage partner. What qualities do you think are most important for a husband or wife? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choices.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "News"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Agree or disagree with the following statement:

Getting news on TV or on a computer is better than reading it in a print newspaper.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

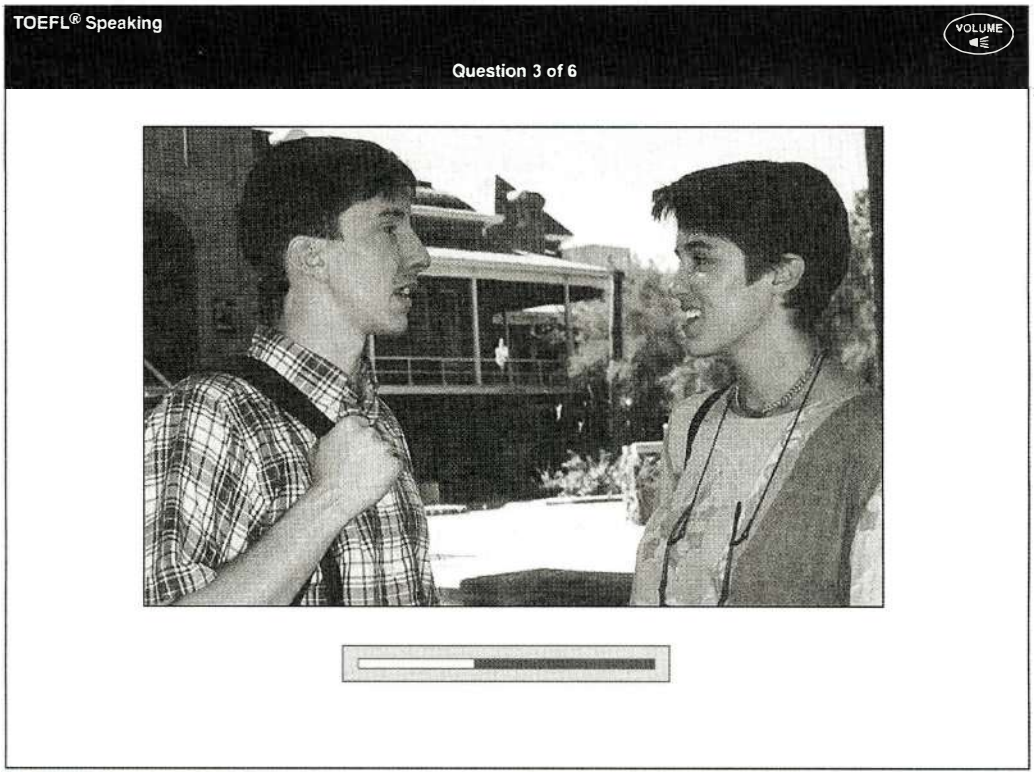
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Meal Plan"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Change in Meal Plans

Residence hall students are no longer required to purchase seven-day meal plans. Now two meal plan options will be offered. The traditional seven-day plan will still be available, including three meals every day at a cost of $168 per month. In addition, a five-day plan will be offered, including three meals Monday–Friday at a cost of $120 per month. Students who elect to use the five-day plan may purchase meals on the weekend at three dollars per meal. The food court in the College Union provides several fast-food alternatives. In addition to burgers and pizza, Chinese food, Mexican food, and a salad bar are also available.



Now listen to two students who are talking about the plan.

Question
The man expresses his opinion of the new meal plan. Report his opinion, and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

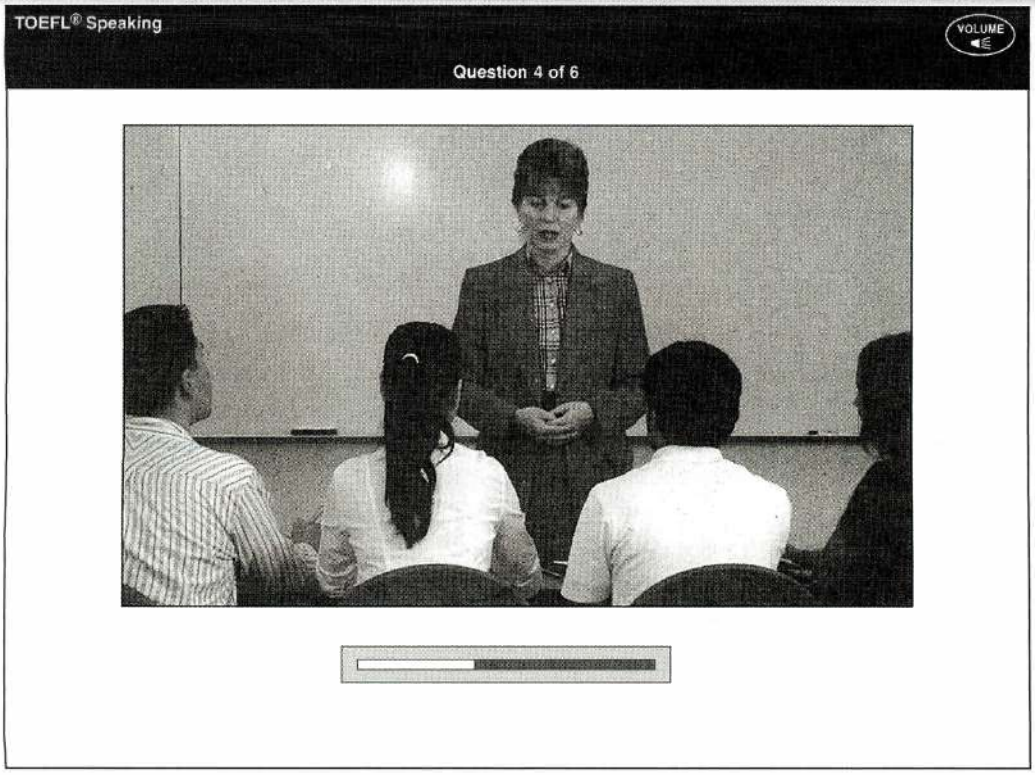
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Aboriginal People"

Read a short passage and listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Aboriginal People

Although the first inhabitants of Australia have been identified by physical characteristics, culture, language, and locale, none of these attributes truly establishes a person as a member of the Aboriginal People. Because the Aboriginal groups settled in various geographical areas and developed customs and lifestyles that reflected the resources available to them, there is great diversity among those groups, including more than 200 linguistic varieties. Probably the most striking comparison is that of the Aboriginal People who inhabit the desert terrain of the Australian Outback with those who live along the coast. Clearly, their societies have developed very different cultures. According to the Department of Education, the best way to establish identity as a member of the Aboriginal People is to be identified and accepted as such by the Aboriginal community.



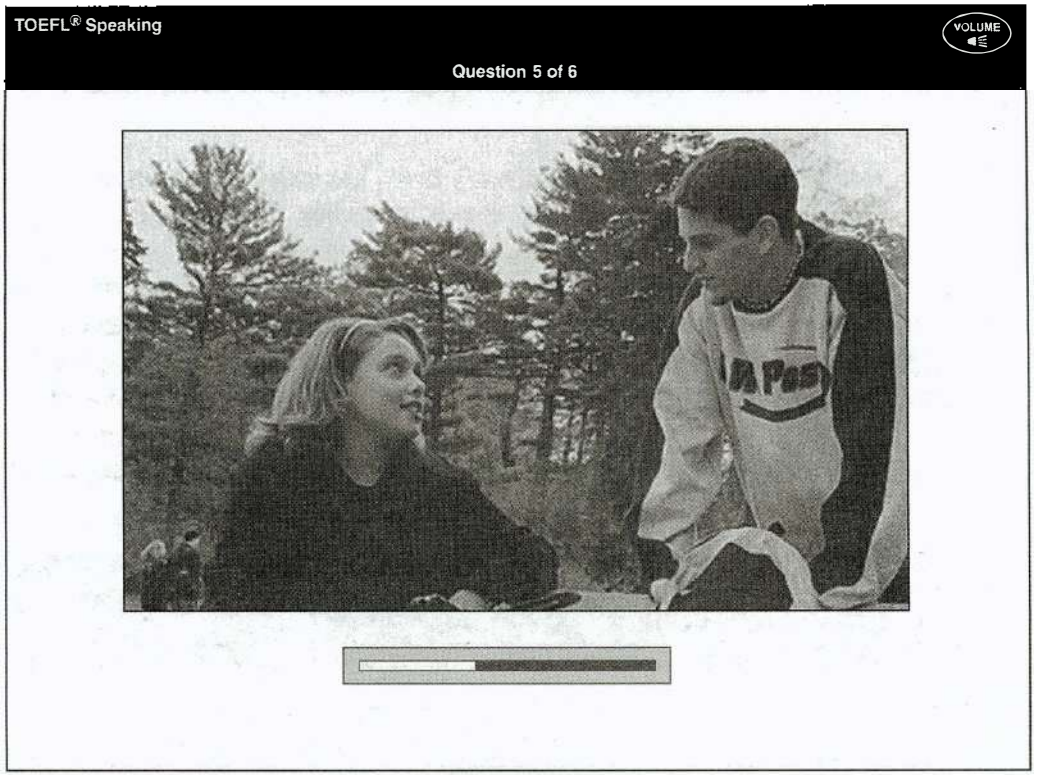
Now listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. The professor is talking about Aboriginal People.

Question

Explain how the Aboriginal People are identified. Draw upon information in both the reading and the lecture.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Scheduling Conflict"



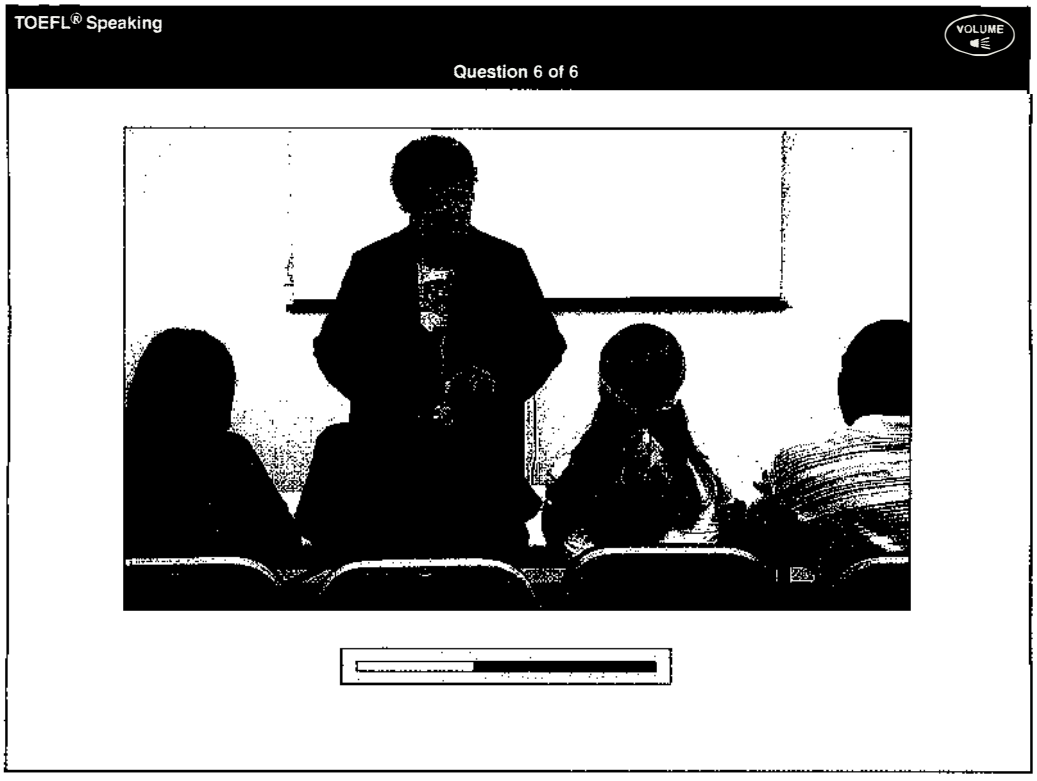
Now listen to a short conversation between a student and his friend.

Question

Describe the man's problem and the two suggestions that his friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the man should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Laboratory Microscope"



Now listen to part of a talk in a biology laboratory. The teaching assistant is explaining how to use the microscope.

Question
Using the main points and examples from the talk, describe the two major systems of the laboratory microscope, and then explain how to use it.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Online Graduate Programs"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

Online graduate degree programs are being offered worldwide. In many respects, the programs are like the same degree programs available in a traditional campus environment, but in several key aspects, they are very different.

First, online degree programs do not offer one-on-one time with the professors. On campus, professors hold regular office hours and expect to have conferences with their graduate students. In addition, many opportunities present themselves for informal interactions before and after class or in chance meetings on campus. Some professors invite their graduate students to their homes or otherwise make themselves available in semi-social settings. In contrast, online professors are unable to see their graduate students in person and, consequently, do not know them very well.

Second, many online graduate programs are not as challenging or as high quality as their on-campus counterparts. In fact, some courses are so easy that students are able to complete them online in one weekend. For the most part, senior faculty members refuse to teach the online courses, contributing to the difference in quality of the online and on-campus courses with the same titles. Many excellent professors view the huge numbers in the online classes as an impediment. Technology allows for more students to take the same course, and junior faculty or graders provide feedback on assignments that are graded by senior faculty teaching on campus.

Third, top schools do not offer online degree programs. Although non-credit courses or even a handful of credit courses may be available, the best schools still require that graduate students complete a more conventional program with most of their time spent in residence on campus. For students who want a graduate degree from a prestigious university, online options are not open to them.

Model Test 1, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 3



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "An Important Leader"

Question
Leaders like John F. Kennedy and Martin Luther King have made important contributions to the people of the United States. Name another world leader you think is important. Give specific reasons for your choice.

STOP

This is the end of Model Test 1.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 1," Chapter 5, pages 580–613.

MODEL TEST 2: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the long format for the Reading section. On the long format, you will read four passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation. Only three passages will be graded. The other passage is part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which passages will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 80 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Resources and Industrialism in Canada"

P1 ➔ While the much-anticipated expansion of the western frontier was unfolding in accordance with the design of the National Policy, a new northern frontier was opening up to enhance the prospects of Canadian industrial development. [A] Long the preserve of the fur trade, the Canadian Shield and the western Cordilleras became a treasury of minerals, timber and hydroelectric power in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. As early as 1883, CPR [Canadian Pacific Railway] construction crews blasting through the rugged terrain of northern Ontario discovered copper and nickel deposits in the vicinity of Sudbury. [B] As refining processes, uses, and markets for the metal developed, Sudbury became the world's largest nickel producer. The building of the Temiskaming and Northern Ontario Railway led to the discovery of rich silver deposits around Cobalt north of Lake Nipissing in 1903 and touched off a mining boom that spread northward to Kirkland Lake and the Porcupine district. [C] Although the economic importance of these mining operations was enduring, they did not capture the public imagination to the same extent as the Klondike gold rush of the late 1890s. [D]

P2 ➔ Fortune-seekers from all parts of the world flocked to the Klondike and Yukon River valleys to pan for gold starting in 1896. At the height of the gold rush in 1898, the previously unsettled subarctic frontier had a population of about 30,000, more than half of which was concentrated in the newly established town of Dawson. In the same year, the federal government created the Yukon Territory, administered by an appointed commissioner, in an effort to ward off the prospect of annexation to Alaska. Even if the economic significance of the Klondike strike was somewhat exaggerated and short-lived, the tales of sudden riches, heroic and tragic exploits, and the rowdiness and lawlessness of the mining frontier were immortalized through popular fiction and folklore, notably the poetic verses of Robert W. Service.

P3 ➔ Perhaps less romantic than the mining booms, the exploitation of forest and water resources was just as vital to national development. The Douglas fir, spruce, and cedar stands of British Columbia along with the white pine forests of Ontario satisfied construction demands on the treeless prairies as well as in the growing cities and towns of central Canada and the United States. British Columbia's forests also supplied lumber to Asia. In addition, the softwood forest wealth of the Cordilleras and the Shield was a valuable source of pulpwood for the development of the pulp and paper industry, which made Canada one of the world's leading exporters of newsprint. Furthermore, the fast flowing rivers of the Shield and Cordilleras could readily be harnessed as sources of hydroelectric power, replacing coal in the booming factories of central Canada as well as in the evolving mining and pulp and paper industries. The age of electricity under public ownership and control was ushered in by the creation of the Ontario Hydro-Electric Power Commission (now Ontario Hydro) in 1906 to distribute and eventually to produce this vital source of energy.

P4 → Western settlement and the opening of the northern resource frontier stimulated industrial expansion, particularly in central Canada. As the National Policy had intended, a growing agricultural population in the West increased the demand for eastern manufactured goods, thereby giving rise to agricultural implements works, iron and steel foundries, machine shops, railway yards, textile mills, boot and shoe factories, and numerous smaller manufacturing enterprises that supplied consumer goods. By keeping out lower-priced foreign manufactured goods, the high tariff policies of the federal government received much credit for protecting existing industries and encouraging the creation of new enterprises. To climb the tariff wall, large American industrial firms opened branches in Canada, and the governments of Ontario and Quebec aggressively urged them on by offering bonuses, subsidies, and guarantees to locate new plants within their borders. Canadian industrial enterprises became increasingly attractive to foreign investors, especially from the United States and Great Britain. Much of the over $600 million of American capital that flowed into Canada from 1900 to 1913 was earmarked for mining and the pulp and paper industry, while British investors contributed near $1.8 billion, mostly in railway building, business development, and the construction of urban infrastructure. As a result, the gross value of Canadian manufactured products quadrupled from 1891 to 1916.

1. Why does the author mention "the railroads" in paragraph 1?

   Ⓐ Because miners were traveling to camps in the West
   Ⓑ Because mineral deposits were discovered when the railroads were built
   Ⓒ Because the western frontier was being settled by families
   Ⓓ Because traders used the railroads to transport their goods

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [→].

2. In paragraph 1, how does the author identify Sudbury?

   Ⓐ An important stop on the new railroad line
   Ⓑ A large market for the metals produced in Ontario
   Ⓒ A major industrial center for the production of nickel
   Ⓓ A mining town in the Klondike region

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [→].

3. The word enduring in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ disruptive
   Ⓑ restored
   Ⓒ identifiable
   Ⓓ lasting

4. According to paragraph 2, why was the Yukon Territory created?

   Ⓐ To encourage people to settle the region
   Ⓑ To prevent Alaska from acquiring it
   Ⓒ To establish law and order in the area
   Ⓓ To legalize the mining claims

   Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

5. The word previously in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ frequently
   Ⓑ suddenly
   Ⓒ routinely
   Ⓓ formerly

6. How did the poetry by Robert Service contribute to the development of Canada?

   Ⓐ It made the Klondike gold rush famous.
   Ⓑ It encouraged families to settle in the Klondike.
   Ⓒ It captured the beauty of the western Klondike.
   Ⓓ It prevented the Klondike's annexation to Alaska.

7. According to paragraph 3, the forest industry supported the development of Canada in all of the following ways EXCEPT

   Ⓐ by supplying wood for the construction of homes and buildings
   Ⓑ by clearing the land for expanded agricultural uses
   Ⓒ by producing the power for the hydroelectric plants
   Ⓓ by exporting wood and newsprint to foreign markets

   Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

8. The word Furthermore in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ Although
   Ⓑ Because
   Ⓒ Therefore
   Ⓓ Moreover

9. The word distribute in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ develop
   Ⓑ recognize
   Ⓒ supply
   Ⓓ continue

10. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

    Ⓐ New businesses and industries were created by the federal government to keep the prices of manufactured goods low.
    Ⓑ The lower price of manufacturing attracted many foreign businesses and new industries to the area.
    Ⓒ Federal taxes on cheaper imported goods were responsible for protecting domestic industries and supporting new businesses.
    Ⓓ The federal tax laws made it difficult for manufacturers to sell their goods to foreign markets.

11. According to paragraph 4, why did British and American businesses open affiliates in Canada?

    Ⓐ The Canadian government offered incentives.
    Ⓑ The raw materials were available in Canada.
    Ⓒ The consumers in Canada were eager to buy their goods.
    Ⓓ The infrastructure was attractive to investors.

    Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    Railway construction through the Kootenay region of southeastern British Columbia also led to significant discoveries of gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

The northern frontier provided many natural resources that contributed to the industrial expansion of Canada.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The Yukon Territory was created in 1898 during the gold rush in the Klondike and Yukon River valleys.

B The frontier was documented in the popular press, which published tales of heroes and gold strikes.

C Significant discoveries of mineral deposits encouraged prospectors and settlers to move into the territories.

D Wheat and other agricultural crops were planted after the forests were cleared, creating the central plains.

E Powered by hydroelectricity, lumber and paper mills exploited the forests for both domestic and foreign markets.

F Incentives encouraged American and British investors to help expand manufacturing plants in Canada.

Reading 2 "Looking at Theatre History"

P1 ➔ One of the primary ways of approaching the Greek theatre is through archeology, the systematic study of material remains such as architecture, inscriptions, sculpture, vase painting, and other forms of decorative art. A Serious on-site excavations began in Greece around 1870, but W. Dörpfeld did not begin the first extensive study of the Theatre of Dionysus until 1886. B Since that time, more than 167 other Greek theatres have been identified and many

of them have been excavated. [C] Nevertheless, they still do not permit us to describe the precise appearance of the *skene* (illustrations printed in books are conjectural reconstructions), since many pieces are irrevocably lost because the buildings in later periods became sources of stone for other projects and what remains is usually broken and scattered. [D] That most of the buildings were remodeled many times has created great problems for those seeking to date the successive versions. Despite these drawbacks, archeology provides the most concrete evidence we have about the theatre structures of ancient Greece. But, if they have told us much, archeologists have not completed their work, and many sites have scarcely been touched.

[P2] ➔ Perhaps the most controversial use of archeological evidence in theatre history is vase paintings, thousands of which have survived from ancient Greece. (Most of those used by theatre scholars are reproduced in Margarete Bieber's *The History of the Greek and Roman Theatre*.) Depicting scenes from mythology and daily life, the vases are the most graphic pictorial evidence we have. But they are also easy to misinterpret. Some scholars have considered any vase that depicts a subject treated in a surviving drama or any scene showing masks, flute players, or ceremonials to be valid evidence of theatrical practice. This is a highly questionable assumption, since the Greeks made widespread use of masks, dances, and music outside the theatre and since the myths on which dramatists drew were known to everyone, including vase painters, who might well depict the same subjects as dramatists without being indebted to them. Those vases showing scenes unquestionably theatrical are few in number.

[P3] ➔ The texts to classical Greek plays were written down soon after the performance and possibly even before, though it is not always clear when or by whom. By 400 B.C.E., there was a flourishing book trade in Greece, but the texts for plays were a challenge. Hellenistic scholars dedicated years to sorting out the text and removing what they believed to be corruptions generally added by actors, but each time a text was copied there were new possibilities for errors.

[P4] ➔ The oldest surviving manuscripts of Greek plays date from around the tenth century C.E., some 1,500 years after they were first performed. Nevertheless, the scripts offer us our readiest access to the cultural and theatrical conditions out of which they came. But these scripts, like other kinds of evidence, are subject to varying interpretations. Certainly performances embodied a male perspective, for example, since the plays were written, selected, staged, and acted by men. Yet the existing plays feature numerous choruses of women and many feature strong female characters. Because these characters often seem victims of their own powerlessness and appear to be governed, especially in the comedies, by sexual desire, some critics have seen these plays as rationalizations by the male-dominated culture for keeping women segregated and cloistered. Other critics, however, have seen in these same plays an attempt by male authors to force their male audiences to examine and call into question this segregation and cloistering of Athenian women.

P5 ➔ By far the majority of written references to Greek theatre date from several hundred years after the events they report. The writers seldom mention their sources of evidence, and thus we do not know what credence to give them. In the absence of material nearer in time to the events, however, historians have used the accounts and have been grateful to have them. Overall, historical treatment of the Greek theatre is something like assembling a jigsaw puzzle from which many pieces are missing: historians arrange what they have and imagine (with the aid of the remaining evidence and logic) what has been lost. As a result, though the broad outlines of Greek theatre history are reasonably clear, many of the details remain open to doubt.

Glossary
skene: a stage building where actors store their masks and change their costumes

14. According to paragraph 1, why is it impossible to identify the time period for theatres in Greece?

Ⓐ There are too few sites that have been excavated and very little data collected about them.
Ⓑ The archeologists from earlier periods were not careful, and many artifacts were broken.
Ⓒ It is confusing because stones from early sites were used to build later structures.
Ⓓ Because it is very difficult to date the concrete that was used in construction during early periods.

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

15. What can be inferred from paragraph 1 about the *skene* in theatre history?

Ⓐ Drawings in books are the only accurate visual records.
Ⓑ Not enough evidence is available to make a precise model.
Ⓒ Archeologists have excavated a large number of them.
Ⓓ It was not identified or studied until the early 1800s.

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

16. The word primary in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ reliable
Ⓑ important
Ⓒ unusual
Ⓓ accepted

17. The word precise in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ attractive
Ⓑ simple
Ⓒ difficult
Ⓓ exact

18. In paragraph 2, how does the author explain that all vases with paintings of masks or musicians may not be evidence of theatrical subjects?

Ⓐ By arguing that the subjects could have been used by artists without reference to a drama
Ⓑ By identifying some of the vases as reproductions that were painted years after the originals
Ⓒ By casting doubt on the qualifications of the scholars who produced the vases as evidence
Ⓓ By pointing out that there are very few vases that have survived from the time of early dramas

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

19. The word controversial in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ accepted
Ⓑ debated
Ⓒ limited
Ⓓ complicated

20. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about vase paintings?

Ⓐ Evidence from written documents is older than evidence from vase paintings.
Ⓑ The sources for vase paintings are clear because of the images on them.
Ⓒ The details in vase paintings are not obvious because of their age.
Ⓓ There is disagreement among scholars regarding vase paintings.

21. According to paragraph 3, scripts of plays may not be accurate for which reason?

Ⓐ The sources cited are not well known.
Ⓑ Copies by hand may contain many errors.
Ⓒ They are written in very old language.
Ⓓ The printing is difficult to read.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

22. In paragraph 4, what does the author state about female characters in Greek theatre?

Ⓐ They had no featured parts in plays.
Ⓑ They were mostly ignored by critics.
Ⓒ They did not participate in the chorus.
Ⓓ They frequently played the part of victims.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

23. The word Overall in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ Supposedly
Ⓑ Generally
Ⓒ Occasionally
Ⓓ Finally

24. Why does the author mention a "jigsaw puzzle" in paragraph 5?

Ⓐ To demonstrate the difficulty in drawing conclusions from partial evidence
Ⓑ To compare the written references for plays to the paintings on vases
Ⓒ To justify using accounts and records that historians have located
Ⓓ To introduce the topic for the next reading passage in the textbook

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

These excavations have revealed much that was previously unknown, especially about the dimensions and layout of theatres.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Greek theatre has been studied by a variety of methods.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Because the Greeks enjoyed dancing and music for entertainment outside of the theatre, many scenes on vases are ambiguous.

B Historical accounts assembled many years after the actual theatrical works were presented give us a broad perspective of the earlier theatre.

C Although considered less reliable, written records, including scripts, provide insights into the cultural aspects of theatre.

D Archeological excavations have uncovered buildings and artifacts, many of which were vases with theatrical scenes painted on them.

E For the most part, men wrote the plays for Greek theatre, but choruses and even strong roles were played by women.

F Computer simulations can recreate the image of a building that is crumbling as long as the dimensions and layout are known.

Reading 3 "Geothermal Energy"

P1 ➔ Geothermal energy is natural heat from the interior of the Earth that is converted to heat buildings and generate electricity. The idea of harnessing Earth's internal heat is not new. As early as 1904, geothermal power was used in Italy. Today, Earth's natural internal heat is being used to generate electricity in 21 countries, including Russia, Japan, New Zealand, Iceland, Mexico, Ethiopia, Guatemala, El Salvador, the Philippines, and the United States. Total worldwide production is approaching 9,000 MW (equivalent to nine large modern coal-burning or nuclear power plants)—double the amount in 1980. Some 40 million people today receive their electricity from geothermal energy at a cost competitive with that of alternative energy sources. In El Salvador, geothermal energy is supplying 30% of the total electric energy used. However, at the global level, geothermal energy supplies less than 0.15% of the total energy supply.

P2 ➔ Geothermal energy may be considered a nonrenewable energy source when rates of extraction are greater than rates of natural replenishment. However, geothermal energy has its origin in the natural heat production within Earth, and only a small fraction of the vast total resource base is being utilized today. Although most geothermal energy production involves the tapping of high heat sources, people are also using the low-temperature geothermal energy of groundwater in some applications.

Geothermal Systems

P3 ➔ A The average heat flow from the interior of the Earth is very low, about 0.06 W/m^2. B This amount is trivial compared with the 177 W/m^2 from solar heat at the surface in the United States. However, in some areas, heat flow is sufficiently high to be useful for producing energy. For the most part, areas of high heat flow are associated with plate tectonic boundaries. Oceanic ridge systems (divergent plate boundaries) and areas where mountains are being uplifted and volcanic island arcs are forming (convergent plate boundaries) are areas where this natural heat flow is anomalously high. C

P4 On the basis of geological criteria, several types of hot geothermal systems (with temperatures greater than about 80°C, or 176°F) have been defined, and the resource base is larger than that of fossil fuels and nuclear energy combined. A common system for energy development is hydrothermal convection, characterized by the circulation of steam and/or hot water that transfers heat from depths to the surface. D

Geothermal Energy and the Environment

P5 ➔ The environmental impact of geothermal energy may not be as extensive as that of other sources of energy. When geothermal energy is developed at a particular site, environmental problems include on-site noise, emissions of gas, and disturbance of the land at drilling sites, disposal sites, roads and pipelines, and power plants. Development of geothermal energy does not require large-scale transportation of raw materials or refining of chemicals,

as development of fossil fuels does. Furthermore, geothermal energy does not produce the atmospheric pollutants associated with burning fossil fuels or the radioactive waste associated with nuclear energy. However, geothermal development often does produce considerable thermal pollution from hot waste-waters, which may be saline or highly corrosive.

P6 ➔ Geothermal power is not always popular. For instance, geothermal energy has been produced for years on the island of Hawaii, where active volcanic processes provide abundant near-surface heat. There is controversy, however, over further exploration and development. Native Hawaiians and others have argued that the exploration and development of geothermal energy degrade the tropical forest as developers construct roads, build facilities, and drill wells. In addition, religious and cultural issues in Hawaii relate to the use of geothermal energy. For example, some people are offended by using the "breath and water of Pele" (the volcano goddess) to make electricity. This issue points out the importance of being sensitive to the values and cultures of people where development is planned.

Future of Geothermal Energy

P7 At present, the United States produces only 2800 MN of geothermal energy. However, if developed, known geothermal resources in the United States could produce about 20,000 MW which is about 10% of the electricity needed for the western states. Geohydrothermal resources not yet discovered could conservatively provide four times that amount (approximately 10% of total U.S. electric capacity), about equivalent to the electricity produced from water power today.

27. In paragraph 1, how does the author introduce the concept of geothermal energy?

Ⓐ By explaining the history of this energy source worldwide
Ⓑ By arguing that this energy source has been tried unsuccessfully
Ⓒ By comparing the production with that of other energy sources
Ⓓ By describing the alternatives for generating electric power

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

28. What is true about geothermal energy production worldwide?

Ⓐ Because it is a new idea, very few countries are developing geothermal energy sources.
Ⓑ Only countries in the Southern Hemisphere are using geothermal energy on a large scale.
Ⓒ Until the cost of geothermal energy becomes competitive, it will not be used globally.
Ⓓ Geothermal energy is already being used in a number of nations, but it is not yet a major source of power.

29. The word approaching in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ hardly
Ⓑ mostly
Ⓒ nearly
Ⓓ briefly

30. The word alternative in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ numerous
Ⓑ optional
Ⓒ nearby
Ⓓ equivalent

31. In paragraph 2, why does the author state that geothermal energy is considered a nonre*newable* resource?

Ⓐ The production of geothermal energy is a natural process.
Ⓑ Geothermal energy comes from the Earth.
Ⓒ We are not using very much geothermal energy now.
Ⓓ We could use more geothermal energy than is naturally replaced.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

32. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ High heat is the source of most of the geothermal energy but low heat groundwater is also used sometimes.
Ⓑ Even though low temperatures are possible, high heat is the best resource for energy production for groundwater.
Ⓒ Both high heat and low heat sources are used for the production of geothermal energy from groundwater.
Ⓓ Most high heat sources for geothermal energy are tapped from applications that involve low heat in groundwater.

33. According to paragraph 3, which statement is true about the heat flow necessary for the production of geothermal energy?

Ⓐ It is like solar heat on the Earth's surface.
Ⓑ It happens near tectonic plate boundaries.
Ⓒ It must always be artificially increased.
Ⓓ It may be impractical because of its location.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

34. The word considerable in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ large
Ⓑ dangerous
Ⓒ steady
Ⓓ unexpected

35. In paragraph 5, why does the author mention the "atmospheric pollution" and "waste" for fossil fuel and nuclear power?

Ⓐ To introduce the discussion of pollution caused by geothermal energy development and production
Ⓑ To contrast pollution caused by fossil fuels and nuclear power with pollution caused by geothermal energy
Ⓒ To argue that geothermal production does not cause pollution like other sources of energy do
Ⓓ To discourage the use of raw materials and chemicals in the production of energy because of pollution

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

36. According to paragraph 6, the production of geothermal energy in Hawaii is controversial for all of the following reasons EXCEPT

Ⓐ The volcanoes in Hawaii could be disrupted by the rapid release of geothermal energy.
Ⓑ The rainforest might be damaged during the construction of the geothermal energy plant.
Ⓒ The native people are concerned that geothermal energy is disrespectful to their cultural traditions.
Ⓓ Some Hawaiians oppose using geothermal energy because of their religious beliefs.

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

37. What is the author's opinion of geothermal energy?

Ⓐ Geothermal energy has some disadvantages, but it is probably going to be used in the future.
Ⓑ Geothermal energy is a source that should be explored further before large-scale production begins.
Ⓒ Geothermal energy offers an opportunity to supply a significant amount of power in the future.
Ⓓ Geothermal energy should replace water power in the production of electricity for the United States.

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

One such region is located in the western United States, where recent tectonic and volcanic activity has occurred.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions**: An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Geothermal energy is natural heat from the interior of the Earth that is converted to electricity.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Geothermal energy sources that convert natural heat to electricity account for 30% of the total energy supply in El Salvador at relatively competitive cost to the consumers.

B Although geothermal energy is nonrenewable when more is used than can be replaced naturally, only a small amount of the potential energy is being exploited worldwide.

C The heat from geothermal sites is thought to be the breath and water of the volcanic goddess Pele, worshiped by some native groups on the Hawaiian Islands.

D Hot geothermal systems at both divergent plate boundaries and convergent plate boundaries could provide more energy than fossil fuels and nuclear power.

E Some groups oppose the exploitation of geothermal sources because of pollution and other environmental problems or because of their cultural values.

F Thermal waste water can be very corrosive or can contain high levels of saline, which causes problems in disposal and water treatment at development sites.

Reading 4 "Migration from Asia"

P1 The Asian migration hypothesis is today supported by most of the scientific evidence. The first "hard" data linking American Indians with Asians appeared in the 1980s with the finding that Indians and northeast Asians share a common and distinctive pattern in the arrangement of the teeth. But perhaps the most compelling support for the hypothesis comes from genetic research. Studies comparing the DNA variation of populations around the world consistently demonstrate the close genetic relationship of the two populations, and recently geneticists studying a virus sequestered in the kidneys of all humans found that the strain of virus carried by Navajos and Japanese is nearly identical, while that carried by Europeans and Africans is quite different.

P2 ➔ The migration could have begun over a land bridge connecting the continents. During the last Ice Age 70,000 to 10,000 years ago, huge glaciers locked up massive volumes of water and sea levels were as much as 300 feet lower than today. Asia and North America were joined by a huge subcontinent of ice-free, treeless grassland, 750 miles wide. Geologists have named this area Beringia, from the Bering Straits. Summers there were warm, winters were cold, dry and almost snow-free. This was a perfect environment for large mammals—mammoth and mastodon, bison, horse, reindeer, camel, and saiga (a goatlike antelope). Small bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers were attracted by these animal populations, which provided them not only with food but with hides for clothing and shelter, dung for fuel, and bones for tools and weapons. Accompanied by a husky-like species of dog, hunting bands gradually moved as far east as the Yukon River basin of northern Canada, where field excavations have uncovered the fossilized jawbones of several dogs and bone tools estimated to be about 27,000 years old.

P3 ➔ Other evidence suggests that the migration from Asia began about 30,000 years ago—around the same time that Japan and Scandinavia were being settled. This evidence is based on blood type. The vast majority of modern Native Americans have type O blood and a few have type A, but almost none have type B. Because modern Asian populations include all three blood types, however, the migrations must have begun before the evolution of type B, which geneticists believe occurred about 30,000 years ago.

P4 By 25,000 years ago human communities were established in western Beringia, which is present-day Alaska. [A] But access to the south was blocked by a huge glacial sheet covering much of what is today Canada. How did the hunters get over those 2,000 miles of deep ice? The argument is that the climate began to warm with the passing of the Ice Age, and about 13,000 B.C.E. glacial melting created an ice-free corridor along the eastern front range of the Rocky Mountains. [B] Soon hunters of big game had reached the Great Plains.

P5 ➔ In the past several years, however, new archaeological finds along the Pacific coast of North and South America have thrown this theory into question. C The most spectacular find, at Monte Verde in southern Chile, produced striking evidence of tool making, house building, rock painting, and human footprints conservatively dated long before the highway had been cleared of ice. D Many archaeologists now believe that migrants moved south in boats along a coastal route rather than overland. These people were probably gatherers and fishers rather than hunters of big game.

P6 ➔ There were two later migrations into North America. About 5000 B.C.E. the Athapascan or Na-Dene people began to settle the forests in the northwestern area of the continent. Eventually Athapascan speakers, the ancestors of the Navajos and Apaches, migrated across the Great Plains to the Southwest. The final migration began about 3000 B.C.E. after Beringia had been submerged, when a maritime hunting people crossed the Bering Straits in small boats. The Inuits (also known as the Eskimos) colonized the polar coasts of the Arctic, the Yupiks the coast of southwestern Alaska, and the Aleuts the Aleutian Islands.

P7 While scientists debate the timing and mapping of these migrations, many Indian people hold to oral traditions that include a long journey from a distant place of origin to a new homeland.

40. The word distinctive in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ new
Ⓑ simple
Ⓒ different
Ⓓ particular

41. According to paragraph 2, why did Stone Age tribes begin to migrate into Beringia?

Ⓐ To intermarry with tribes living there
Ⓑ To trade with tribes that made tools
Ⓒ To hunt for animals in the area
Ⓓ To capture domesticated dogs

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

42. The phrase Accompanied by in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ Found with
Ⓑ Joined by
Ⓒ Threatened by
Ⓓ Detoured with

43. The word estimated in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ clarified
Ⓑ judged
Ⓒ changed
Ⓓ noticed

44. Why does the author mention "blood types" in paragraph 3?

Ⓐ Blood types offered proof that the migration had come from Scandinavia.
Ⓑ The presence of type B in Native Americans was evidence of the migration.
Ⓒ The blood typing was similar to data from both Japan and Scandinavia.
Ⓓ Comparisons of blood types in Asia and North America established the date of migration.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

45. How did groups migrate into the Great Plains?

Ⓐ By walking on a corridor covered with ice
Ⓑ By using the path that big game had made
Ⓒ By detouring around a huge ice sheet
Ⓓ By following a mountain trail

46. Why does the author mention the settlement at Monte Verde, Chile, in paragraph 5?

Ⓐ The remains of boats suggest that people may have lived there.
Ⓑ Artifacts suggest that humans reached this area before the ice melted on land.
Ⓒ Bones and footprints from large animals confirm that the people were hunters.
Ⓓ The houses and tools excavated prove that the early humans were intelligent.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

47. The word Eventually in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ In the end
Ⓑ Nevertheless
Ⓒ Without doubt
Ⓓ In this way

48. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Beringia was under water when the last people crossed the straits in boats about 3000 B.C.E.
Ⓑ Beringia sank after the last people had crossed the straits in their boats about 3000 B.C.E.
Ⓒ About 3000 B.C.E., the final migration of people in small boats across Beringia had ended.
Ⓓ About 3000 B.C.E., Beringia was flooded, preventing the last people from migrating in small boats.

49. According to paragraph 6, all of the following are true about the later migrations EXCEPT

Ⓐ The Athapascans traveled into the Southwest United States.
Ⓑ The Eskimos established homes in the Arctic polar region.
Ⓒ The Aleuts migrated in small boats to settle coastal islands.
Ⓓ The Yupiks established settlements on the Great Plains.

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

50. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about the settlement of the North American continent?

Ⓐ The oral traditions do not support the migration theory.
Ⓑ The anthropological evidence for migration should be reexamined.
Ⓒ Migration theories are probably not valid explanations for the physical evidence.
Ⓓ Genetic markers are the best evidence of a migration from Asia.

51. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

Newly excavated early human sites in Washington State, California, and Peru have been radiocarbon dated to be 11,000 to 12,000 years old.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

52. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

There is considerable evidence supporting a theory of multiple migrations from Asia to the Americas.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Ancient stories of migrations from a far-away place are common in the cultures of many Native American nations.

B The people who inhabited Monte Verde in southern Chile were a highly evolved culture as evidenced by their tools and homes.

C Genetic similarities between Native American peoples and Asians include the arrangement of teeth, viruses, and blood types.

D Hunters followed the herds of big game from Beringia south along the Rocky Mountains into what is now called the Great Plains.

E Excavations at archaeological sites provide artifacts that can be used to date the various migrations that occurred by land and sea.

F The climate began to get warmer and warmer, melting the glacial ice about 13,000 B.C.E.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 2, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 5

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

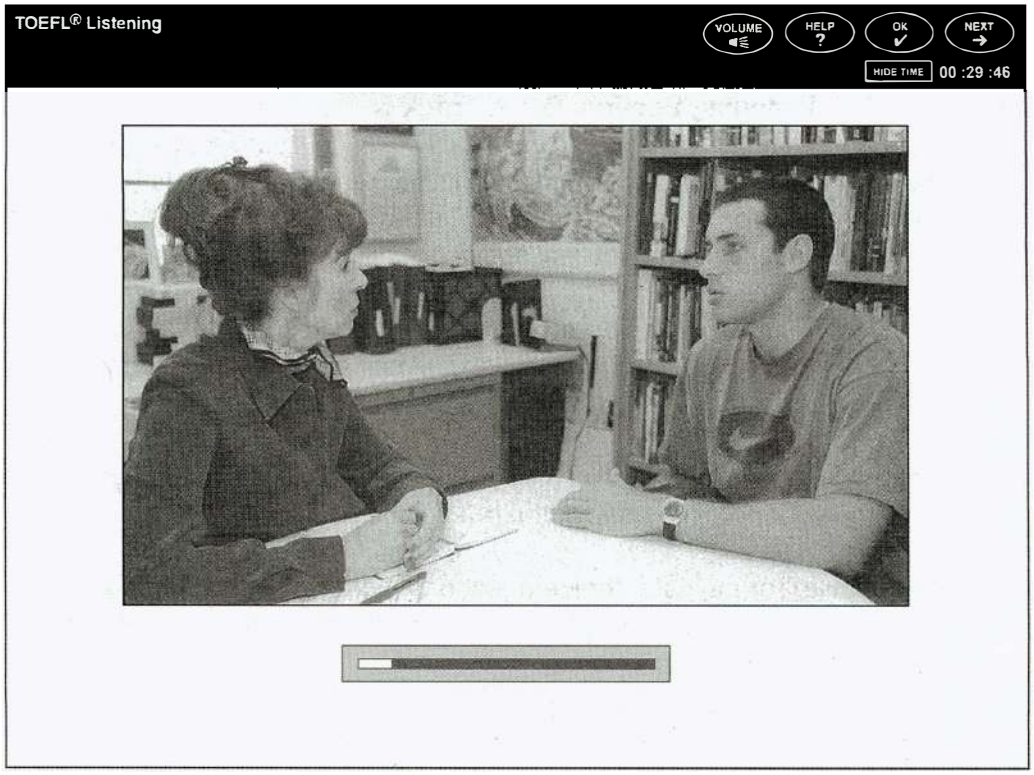
This is the short format for the Listening section. On the short format, you will listen to two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You will have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 20 minutes to answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"



1. Why does the man go to see his professor?

   Ⓐ To prepare for the next midterm
   Ⓑ To clarify a question from the midterm
   Ⓒ To find out his grade on the midterm
   Ⓓ To complain about his grade on the midterm

2. Why does the man say this: 🎧

   Ⓐ He is giving something to the professor.
   Ⓑ He is trying to justify his position.
   Ⓒ He is apologizing because he does not understand.
   Ⓓ He is signaling that he will explain his problem.

3. What did the man do wrong?

   Ⓐ He did not finish the test within the time limit.
   Ⓑ He did not study enough before the test.
   Ⓒ He did not answer one question completely.
   Ⓓ He did not understand a major concept.

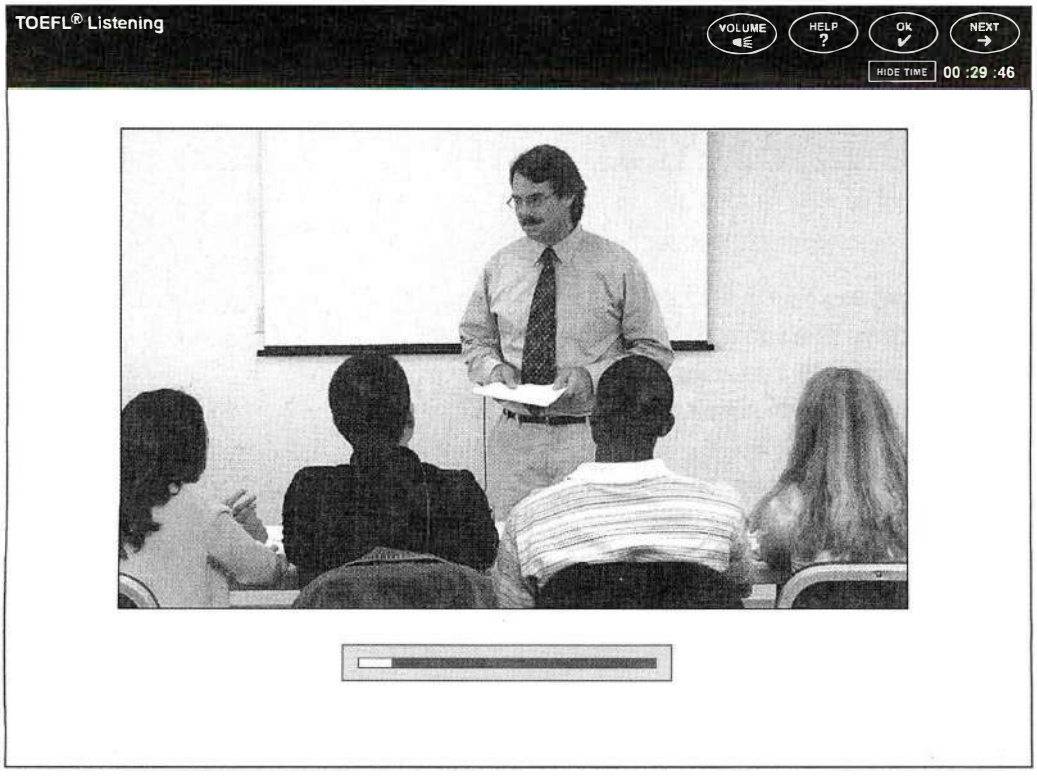
4. According to the student, what is *divergent evolution*?

   Ⓐ A population that evolves differently does not have a common ancestor.
   Ⓑ A similar environment can affect the evolution of different species.
   Ⓒ A similar group that is separated may develop different characteristics.
   Ⓓ The climate of an area will allow scientists to predict the life forms.

5. What will Jerry probably do on the next test?

   Ⓐ He will look for questions with several parts.
   Ⓑ He will read the entire test before he begins.
   Ⓒ He will ask for more time to finish.
   Ⓓ He will write an outline for each essay.

Listening 2 "Art History Class"





6. What is the main topic of this lecture?

   Ⓐ The process of fixing a photograph
   Ⓑ The problem of exposure time
   Ⓒ The experiments by Louis Daguerre
   Ⓓ The history of early photography

7. According to the professor, what two limitations were noted in Daguerre's process for developing and fixing latent images?

   Click on 2 answer choices.

   [A] The photograph disappeared after a few minutes.

   [B] The images were very delicate and easily fell apart.

   [C] Multiple images could not be made from the plate.

   [D] The exposure time was still several hours long.

8. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

   Ⓐ He is trying to generate interest in the topic.
   Ⓑ He makes reference to a story in the textbook.
   Ⓒ He is not sure whether the information is accurate.
   Ⓓ He wants the students to use their imaginations.

9. What substance was first used to fix the images?

   Ⓐ Copper powder
   Ⓑ Table salt
   Ⓒ Mercury vapor
   Ⓓ Hot water

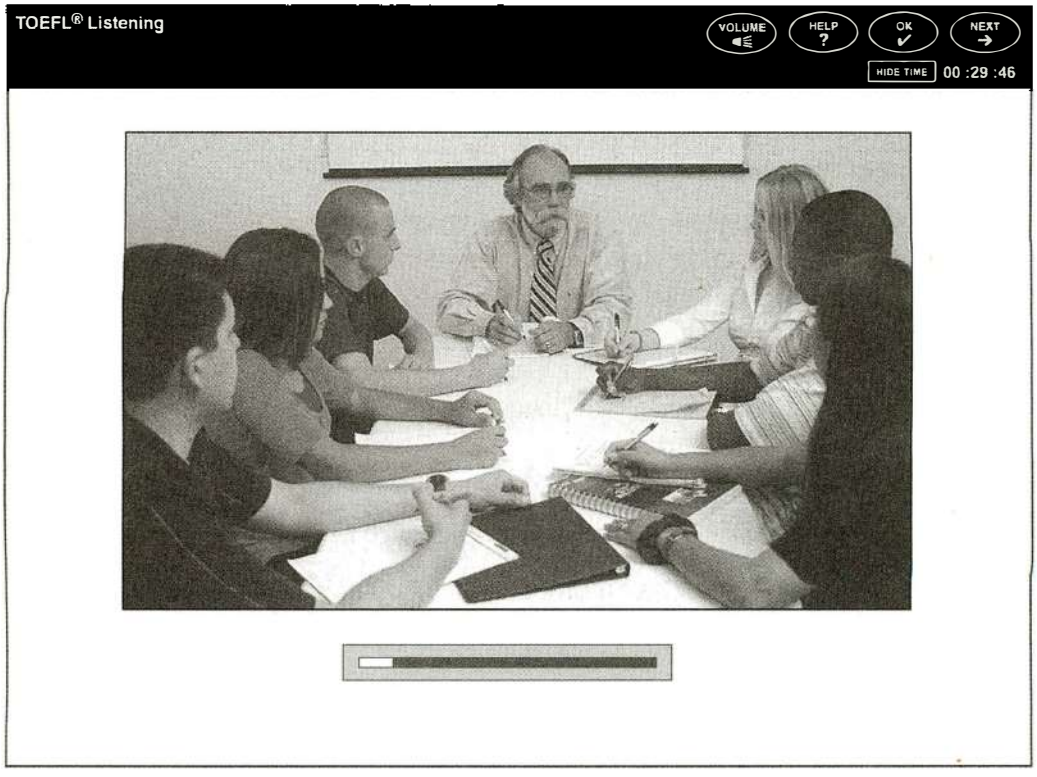
10. What can we assume about photographers in the 1800s?

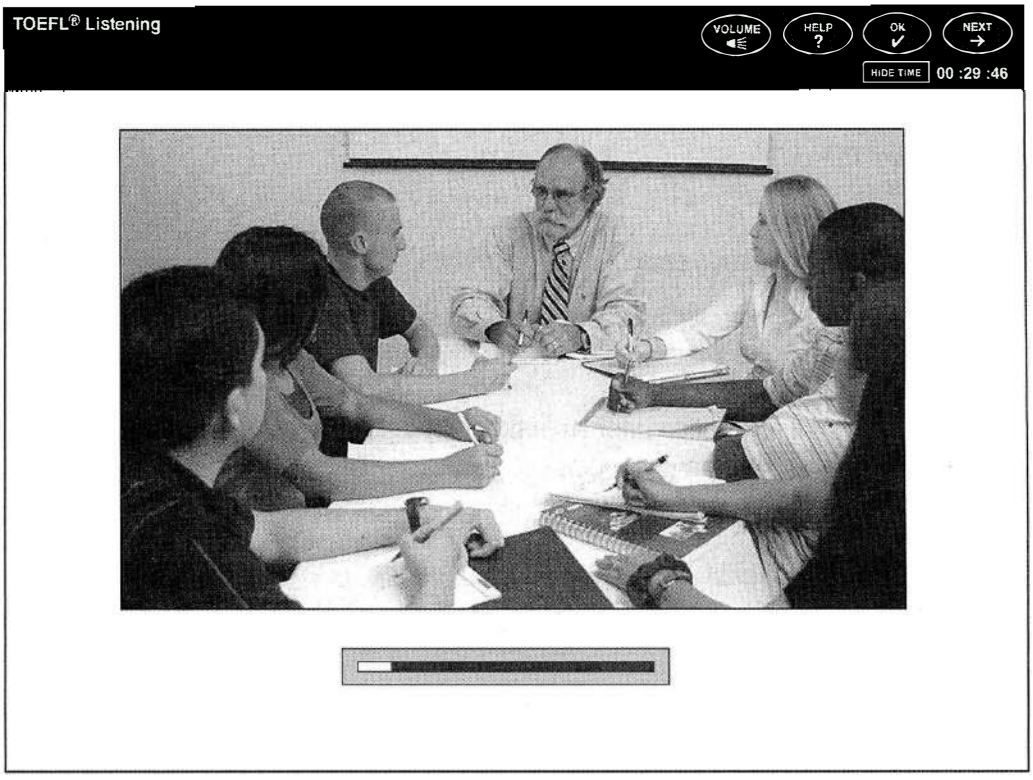
   Ⓐ Most of them had originally been painters before they became interested in photography.
   Ⓑ Portrait photographers were in the highest demand since people wanted images of their families.
   Ⓒ There were only a few photographers who were willing to work in such a new profession.
   Ⓓ Some of them must have experienced health problems as a result of their laboratory work.

11. In what order does the professor explain photographic principles?

   Ⓐ From the least to the most important facts
   Ⓑ In a chronological sequence of events
   Ⓒ The order of the steps in the photographic process
   Ⓓ The advantages before the disadvantages

Listening 3 "Linguistics Class"





12. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The history of the English language
Ⓑ Different types of grammar
Ⓒ A linguistic perspective for Latin
Ⓓ Standard language in schools

13. How does the professor make his point about *native intuition*?

Ⓐ He explains how to perform an easy experiment.
Ⓑ He tells the class about his personal experience.
Ⓒ He provides several examples of sentences.
Ⓓ He contrasts it with non-native intuition.

14. What are two key problems for descriptive grammar?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] The information is very complicated and subject to change.

[B] The formal language must be enforced in all situations.

[C] The language can be organized correctly in more than one way.

[D] The description takes time because linguists must agree.

15. Why does the student say this: 

Ⓐ She is disagreeing with the professor.
Ⓑ She is confirming that she has understood.
Ⓒ She is trying to impress the other students.
Ⓓ She is adding information to the lecture.

16. According to the professor, why were Latin rules used for English grammar?

Ⓐ Latin was a written language with rules that did not change.
Ⓑ The Romans had conquered England and enforced using Latin.
Ⓒ English and Latin had many vocabulary words in common.
Ⓓ English was taking the place of Latin among educated Europeans.

17. Why does the professor discuss the rule to avoid ending a sentence with a preposition?

Ⓐ It is a good example of the way that descriptive grammar is used.
Ⓑ It shows the students how to use formal grammar in their speech.
Ⓒ It is a way to introduce a humorous story into the lecture.
Ⓓ It demonstrates the problem in using Latin rules for English.

Listening 4 "College Campus"



18. What is the purpose of this conversation?

Ⓐ The woman is encouraging the man to be more serious about his studies.
Ⓑ The woman is looking for alternatives to living in dormitory housing.
Ⓒ The man is convincing the woman to join the International Student Association.
Ⓓ The man is trying to find out why the woman didn't go to the talent show.

19. What does the man imply about the house where he is living?

Ⓐ He prefers the house to the dorm.
Ⓑ He is living at the house to save money.
Ⓒ He does not like doing chores at the house.
Ⓓ He thinks that the house is very crowded.

20. How does the man feel about the International Student Association?

Ⓐ He is sorry that only women can join the club.
Ⓑ He enjoys meeting people with different backgrounds.
Ⓒ He wishes that they would have more activities.
Ⓓ He will probably join the organization.

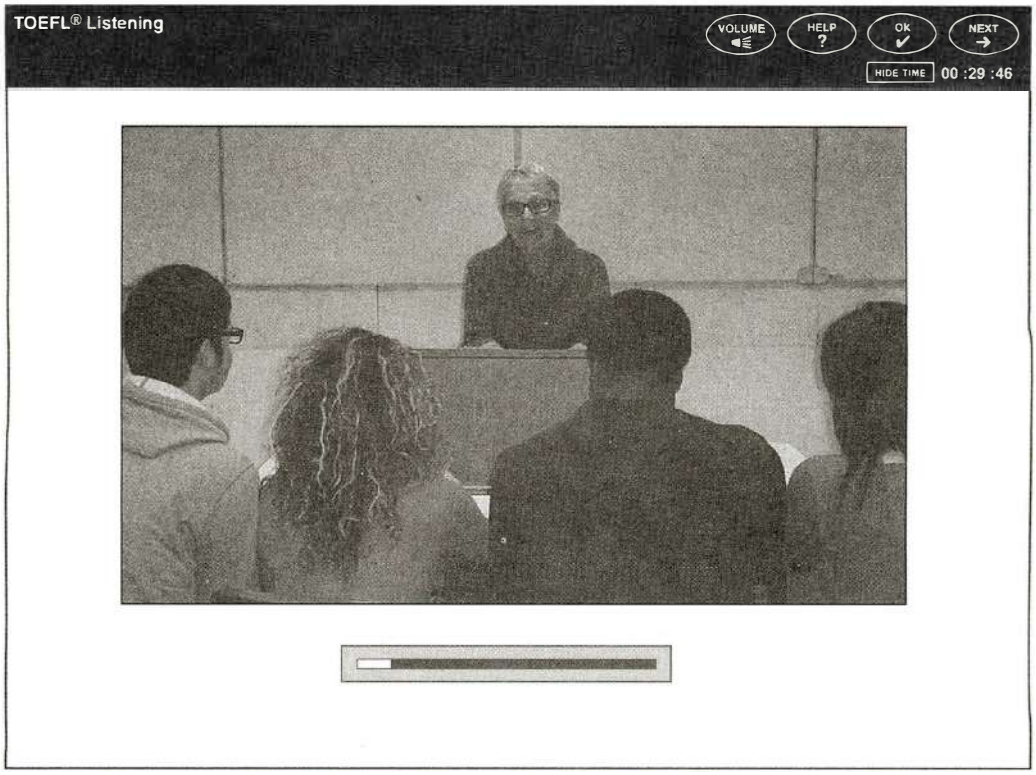
21. What does the woman mean when she says this: 

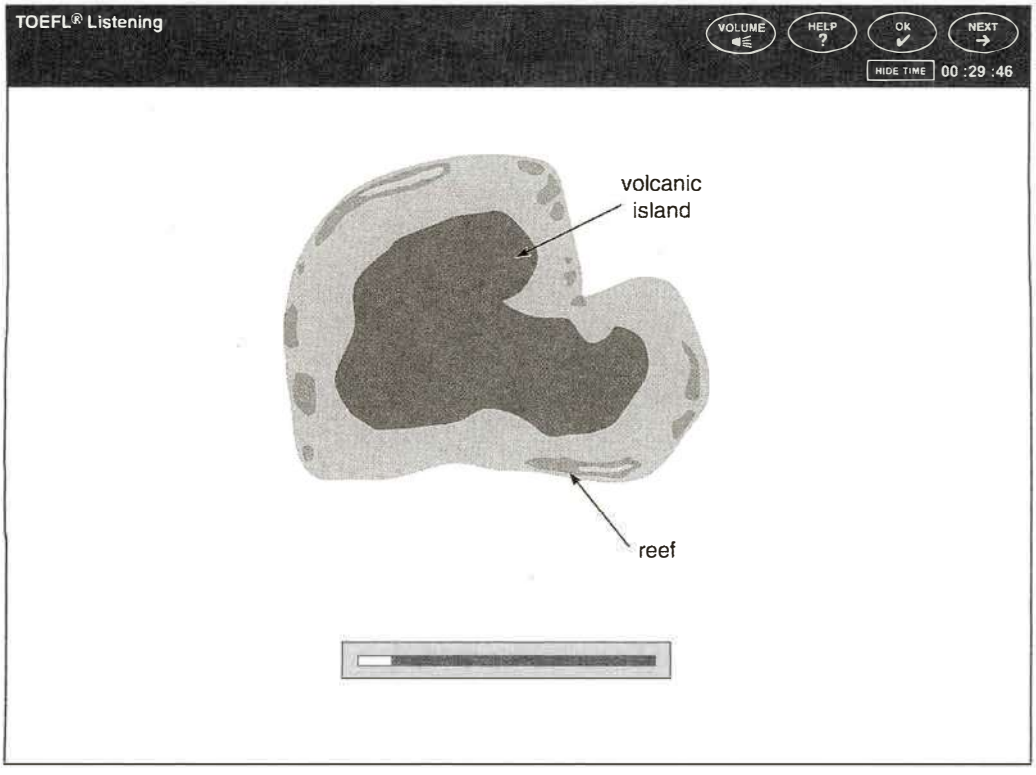
Ⓐ She is trying to persuade the man.
Ⓑ She is not sure that she understood.
Ⓒ She is expressing doubt about the time.
Ⓓ She is changing her mind about going.

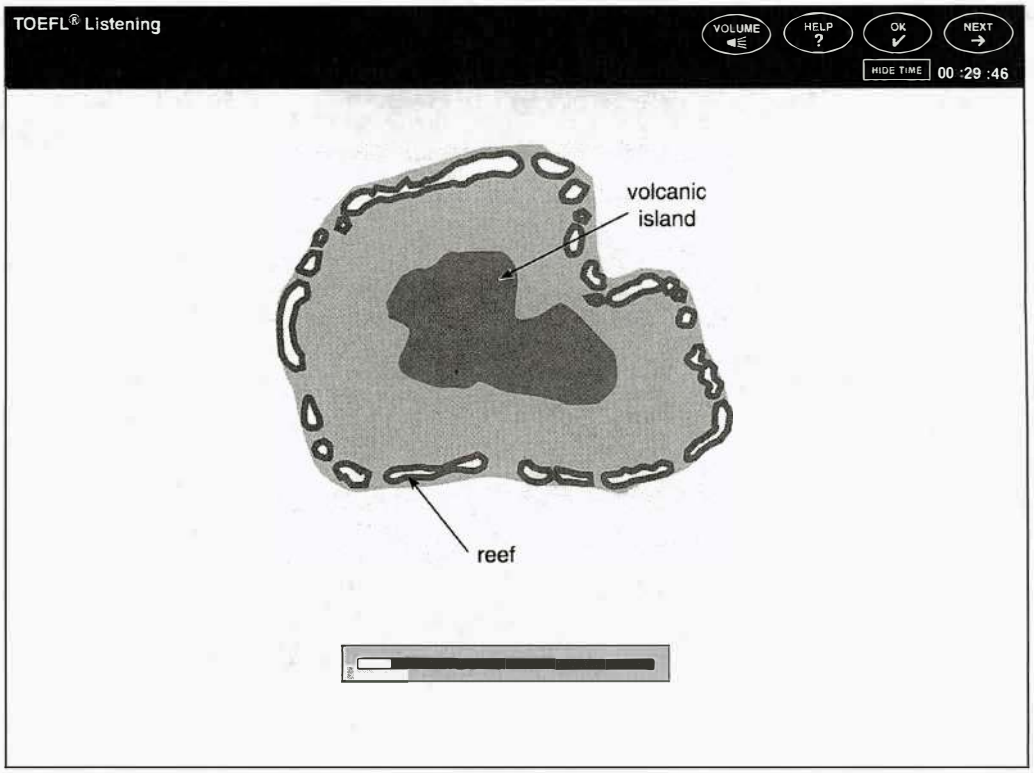
22. What does the woman agree to do?

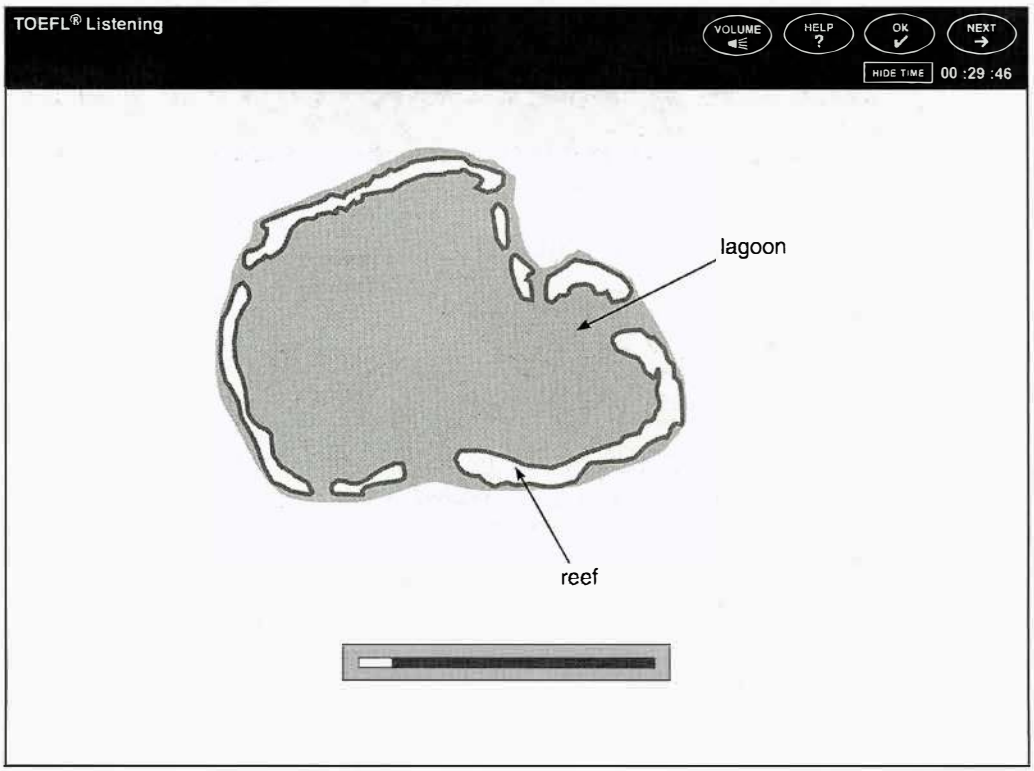
Ⓐ Join the club
Ⓑ Eat at a restaurant
Ⓒ Go to a meeting
Ⓓ Study with the man

Listening 5 "Zoology Class"






TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
volcanic island
reef


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
lagoon
reef

23. According to the professor, how do coral reefs grow?

Ⓐ They become very large by eating other species.
Ⓑ They connect corralite shells to build structures.
Ⓒ They fill with ocean water to expand their size.
Ⓓ They collect debris from ocean life in their habitat.

24. Why are so many egg bundles released during mass spawning?

Ⓐ Some of the egg bundles will not be fertilized.
Ⓑ Half of the egg bundles will not float.
Ⓒ A number of the egg bundles will be eaten.
Ⓓ Most of the egg bundles will break open.

25. According to the professor, what is *budding*?

Ⓐ The division of a polyp in half to reproduce itself.
Ⓑ The growth of limestone between the shells of polyps.
Ⓒ The diversity that occurs within a coral reef.
Ⓓ The increase in size of a polyp as it matures.

26. What is the relationship between zooxanthella and coral polyps?

Click on 2 answer choices.

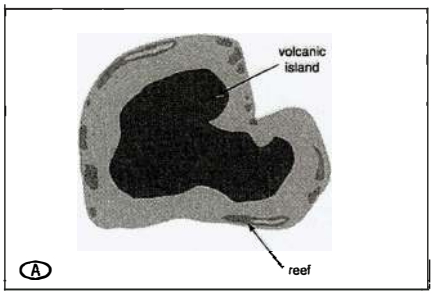
[A] The coral and the zooxanthella compete for the same food.

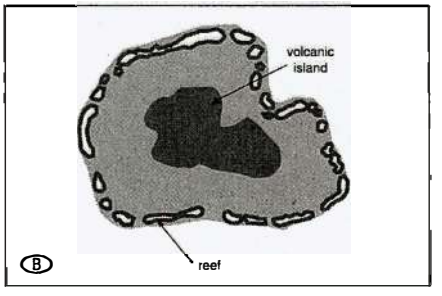
[B] The zooxanthella uses the coral for a shelter from enemies.

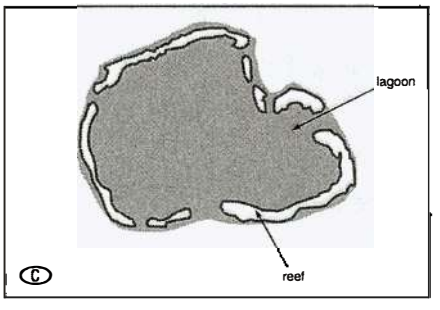
[C] The coral eats food produced by the zooxanthella.

[D] The same predators attack both coral and zooxanthella.

27. Which of the following reefs is probably an atoll?



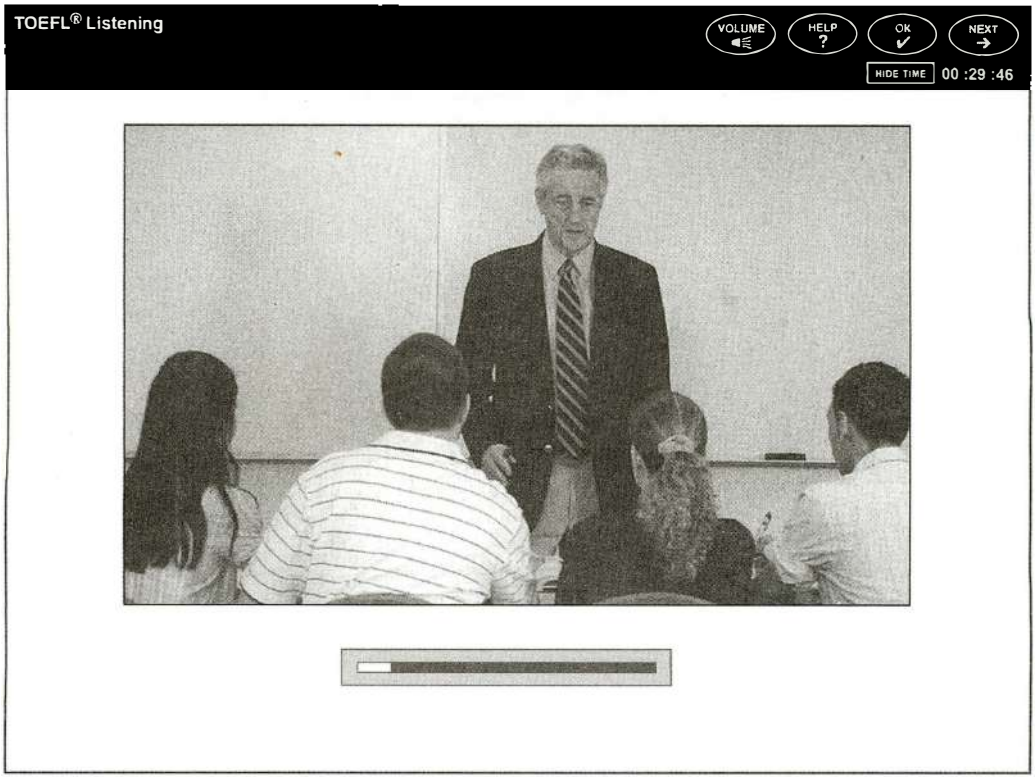


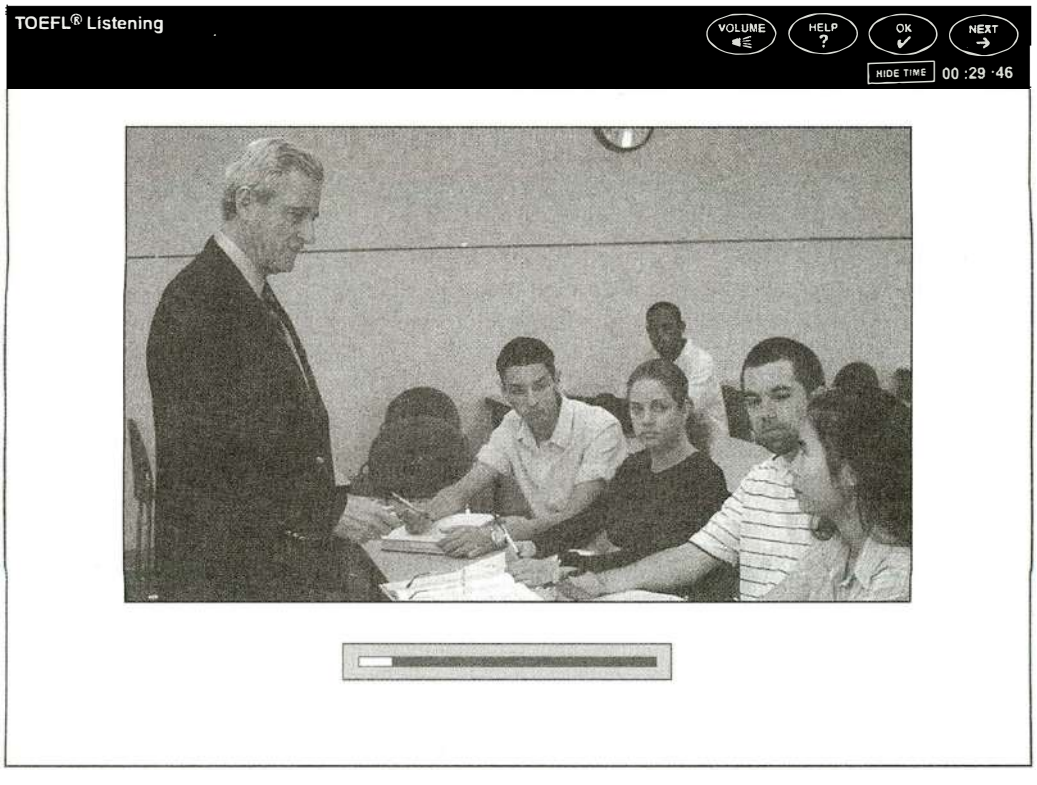


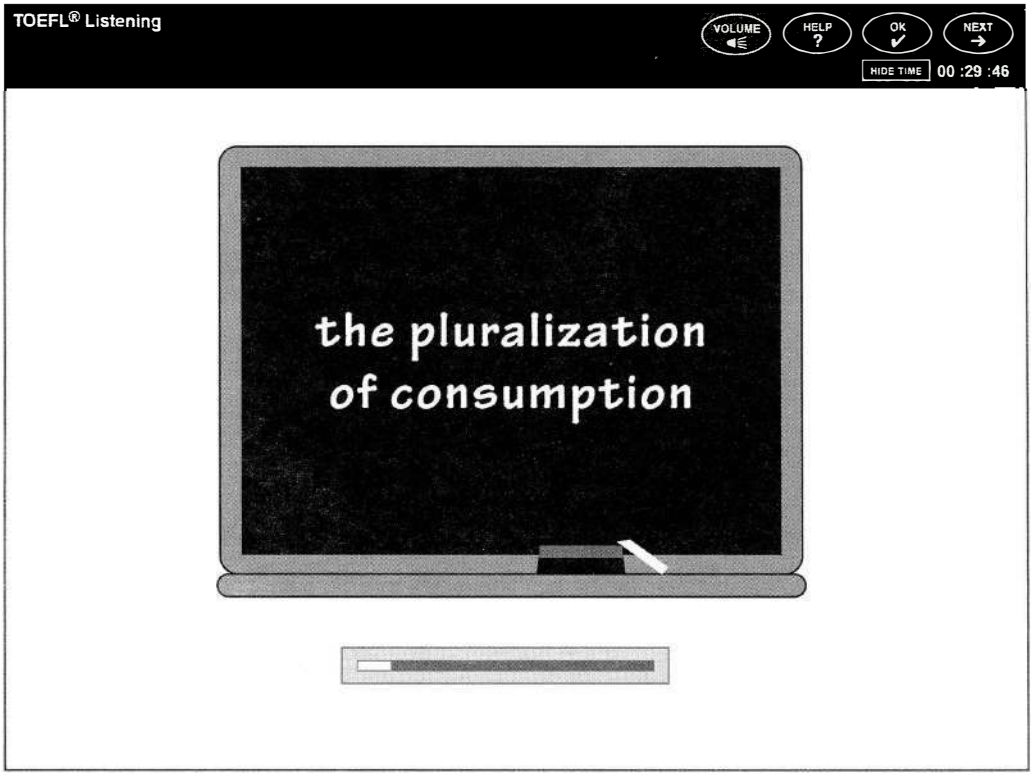
28. In the lecture, the professor explains coral reefs. Indicate whether each of the following is a true statement about coral reefs. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

		Yes	No
A	In general, the organism is quite simple.		
B	The structure of a reef can be very large.		
C	The living coral grows on top of dead shells.		
D	Mass spawning is not very effective.		

Listening 6 "Business Class"







29. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Global marketing of food products
Ⓑ International business in Europe
Ⓒ Surprises in food preferences abroad
Ⓓ Packaging food for exportation

30. How does the professor organize the discussion?

Ⓐ He compares domestic and foreign products.
Ⓑ He relates the textbook to his professional experience.
Ⓒ He refers to case studies from the textbook.
Ⓓ He presents information from most to least important.

31. Why does the student say this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is asking the professor a question about his previous point.
Ⓑ She is offering a possible answer to the professor's question.
Ⓒ She is changing the subject of the class discussion.
Ⓓ She is checking her comprehension of the professor's opinion.

32. What technique does the professor use to encourage student discussion?

Ⓐ He gives students positive reinforcement by praising their efforts.
Ⓑ He asks the students to talk among themselves in small groups.
Ⓒ He assigns a different part of the textbook to each student.
Ⓓ He calls on each student by name to contribute to the discussion.

33. What did Ted Levitt mean by "the pluralization of consumption"?

Ⓐ More people would begin to travel.
Ⓑ More multinational corporations would produce brands.
Ⓒ More consumers will have the means to afford goods.
Ⓓ More people will want the same products.

34. What does the professor say about television and movie companies?

Ⓐ He indicates that some companies hire foreign marketing experts.
Ⓑ He criticizes the way that they advertise their programs and films.
Ⓒ He notes that they are one of the most widely distributed exports.
Ⓓ He points out that they are paid to display brand-name products.



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 2, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 6

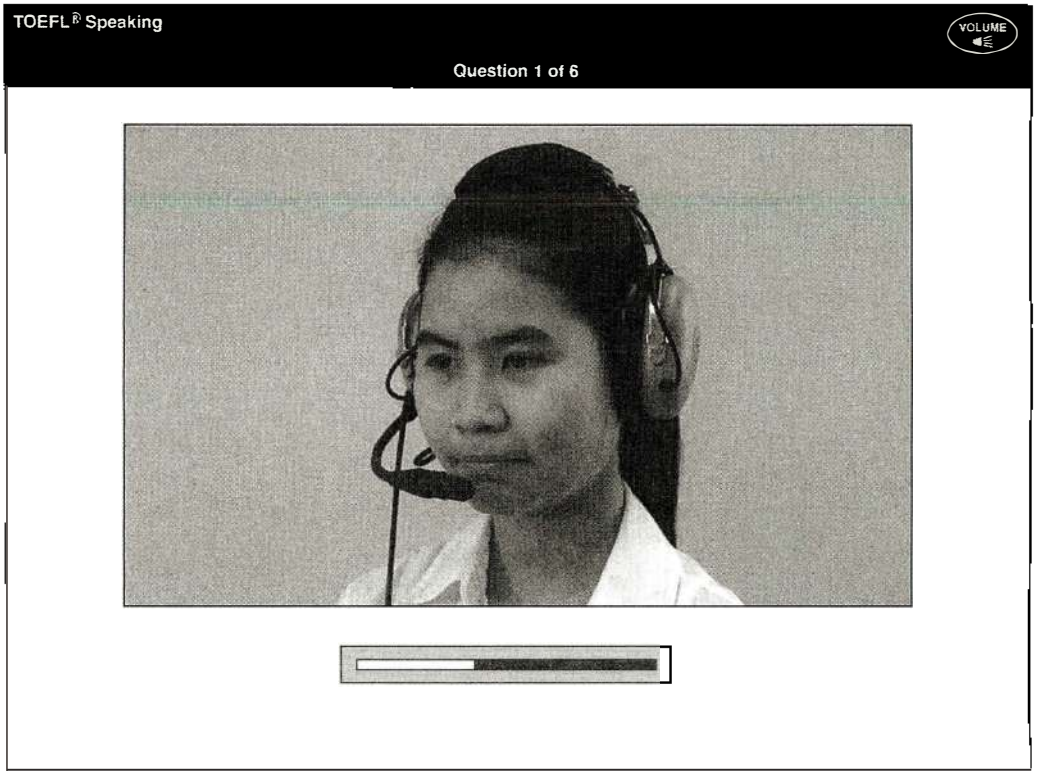
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Regret"

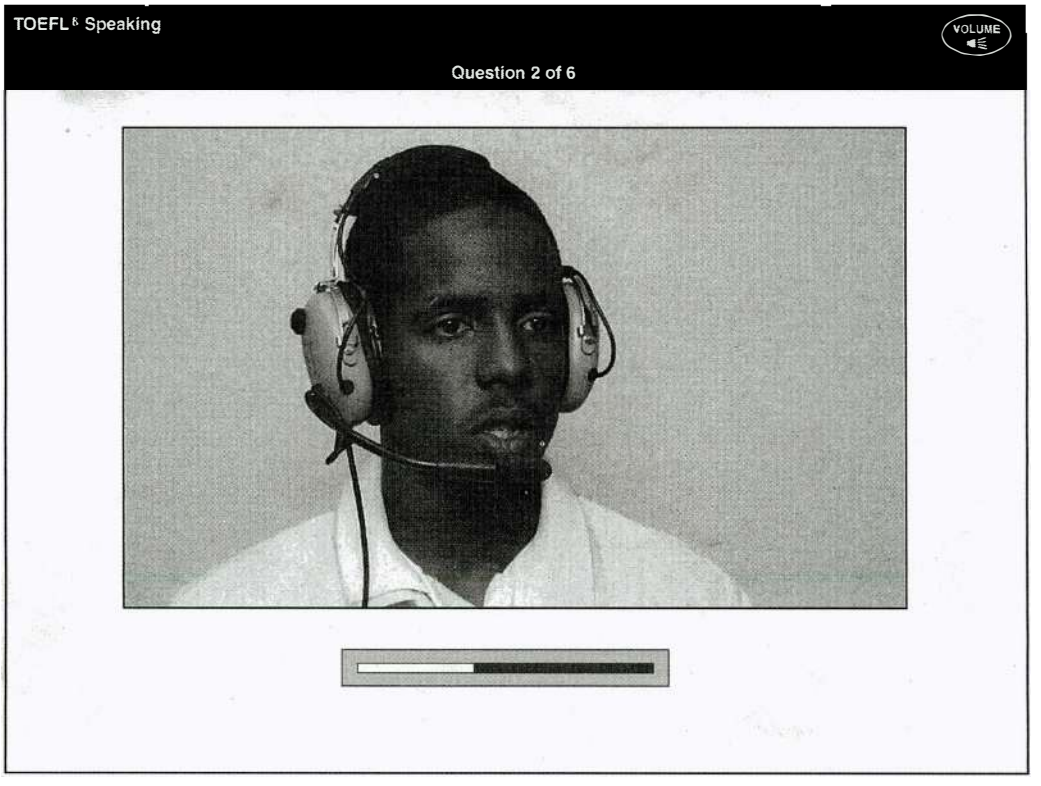


Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
Explain a situation in the past when you have regretted your decision. What would you do differently?

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Course Requirements"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question

Some students would rather write a paper than take a test. Other students would rather take a test instead of writing a paper. Which option do you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

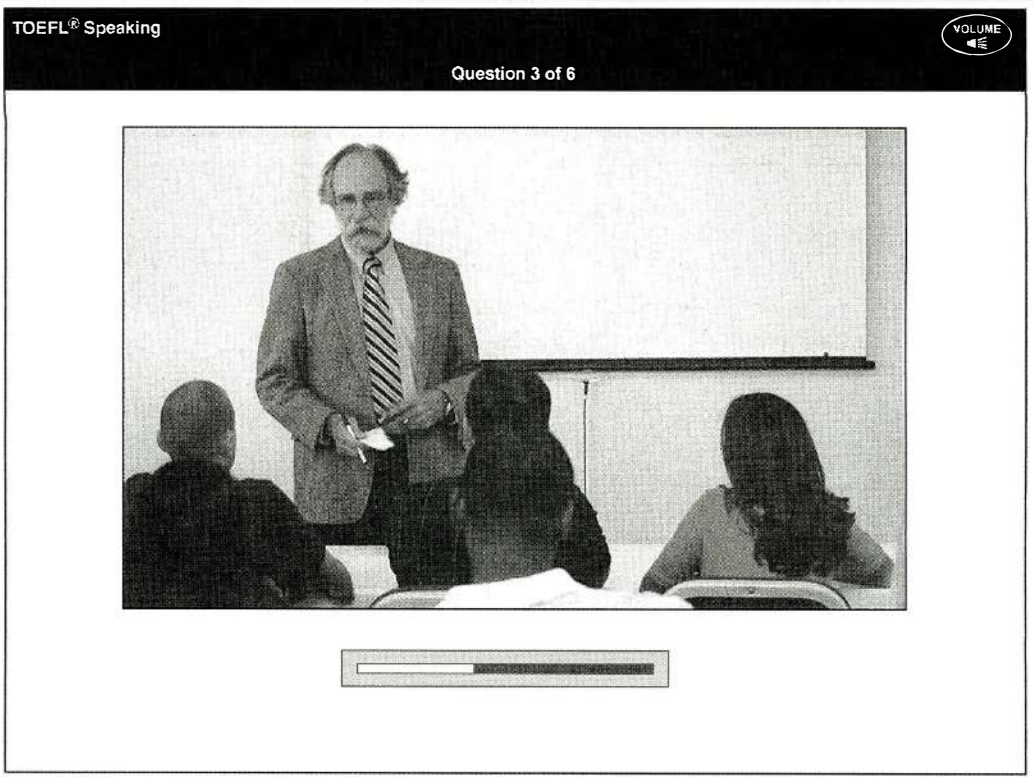
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Health Insurance"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Health Insurance

All students may purchase health insurance at the time of registration by marking the insurance box on the course request form. Those students who choose not to use the health insurance option may still use the services of the Student Health Center, but their accounts must be settled at the time of each visit, and the alternative health insurance carrier must be billed directly by the students for reimbursement. International students are required to purchase student health insurance from the university and will be charged automatically at registration. Alternative health insurance carriers may not be substituted. No exceptions will be made.



Now listen to the foreign student advisor. He is explaining the policy and expressing his opinion about it.

Question

The foreign student advisor expresses his opinion of the policy for health insurance. Report his opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

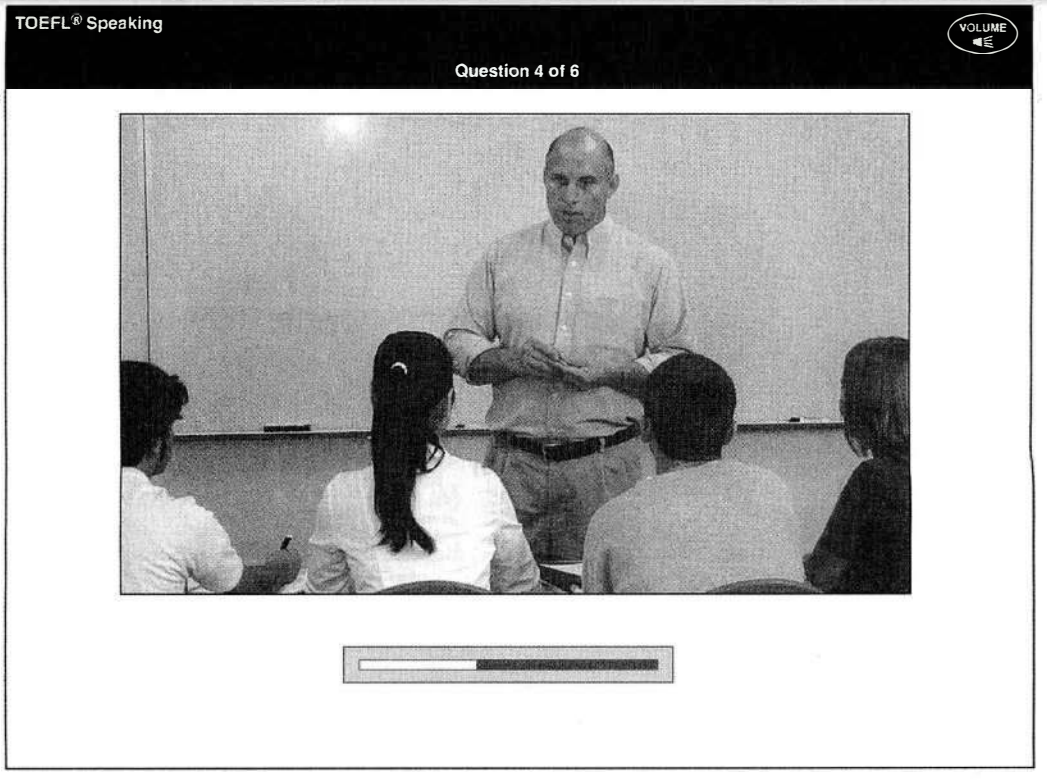
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Antarctica"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Antarctica

Antarctica and the ocean that surrounds it constitute 40 percent of the planet, but in spite of its vast area, it has remained a frontier with no permanent towns or transportation networks. Between 1895 and 1914, explorers planted their flags, claiming various sectors and the raw materials in them for their countries. Nevertheless, the remote location and the harsh environment have encouraged a spirit of cooperation among nations who maintain claims. Furthermore, because Antarctica plays a crucial role in the global environmental system, the exploitation of resources could have unpredictable consequences for the entire world. The Antarctic Treaty, signed in 1961 and expanded in 1991, ensures scientific collaboration, protects the environment, and prohibits military activities.



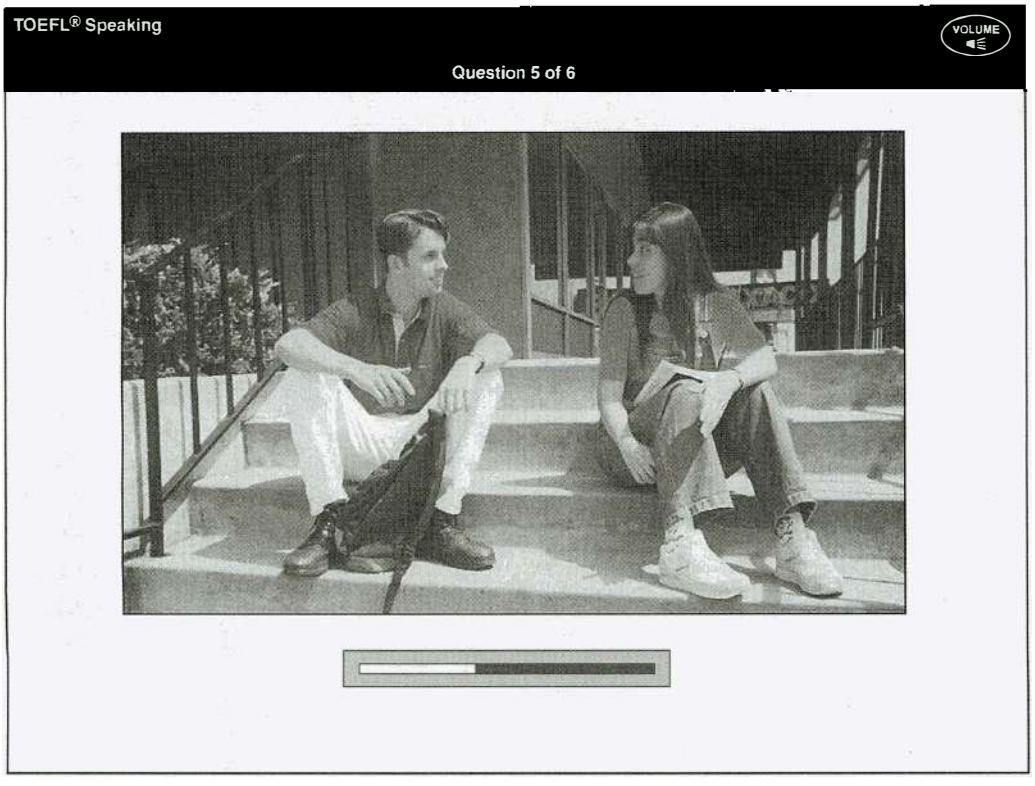
Now listen to part of a lecture in a geography class. The professor is talking about Antarctica.

Question

Explain why many countries have staked claims in Antarctica, and why national interests have not been pursued.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Extra Money"

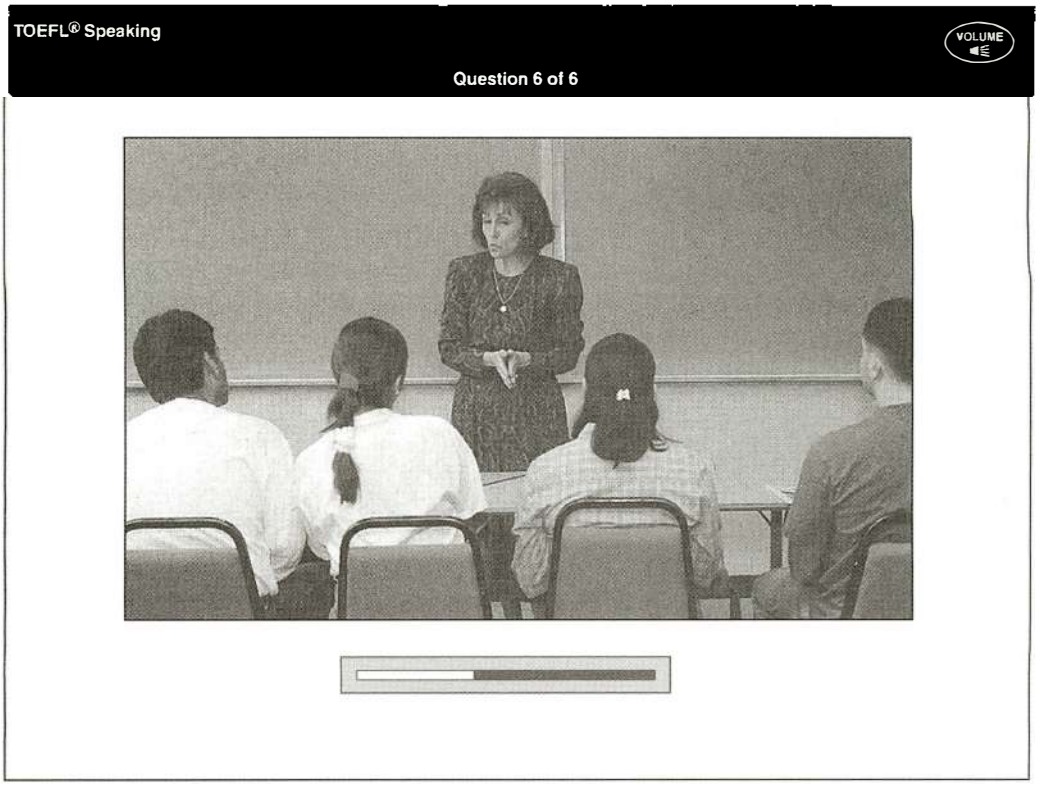


Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Question
Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Research References"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a sociology class. The professor is discussing the criteria for using older research references.

Question

Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two criteria for using an older research reference presented by the professor.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Collapse of Easter Island"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

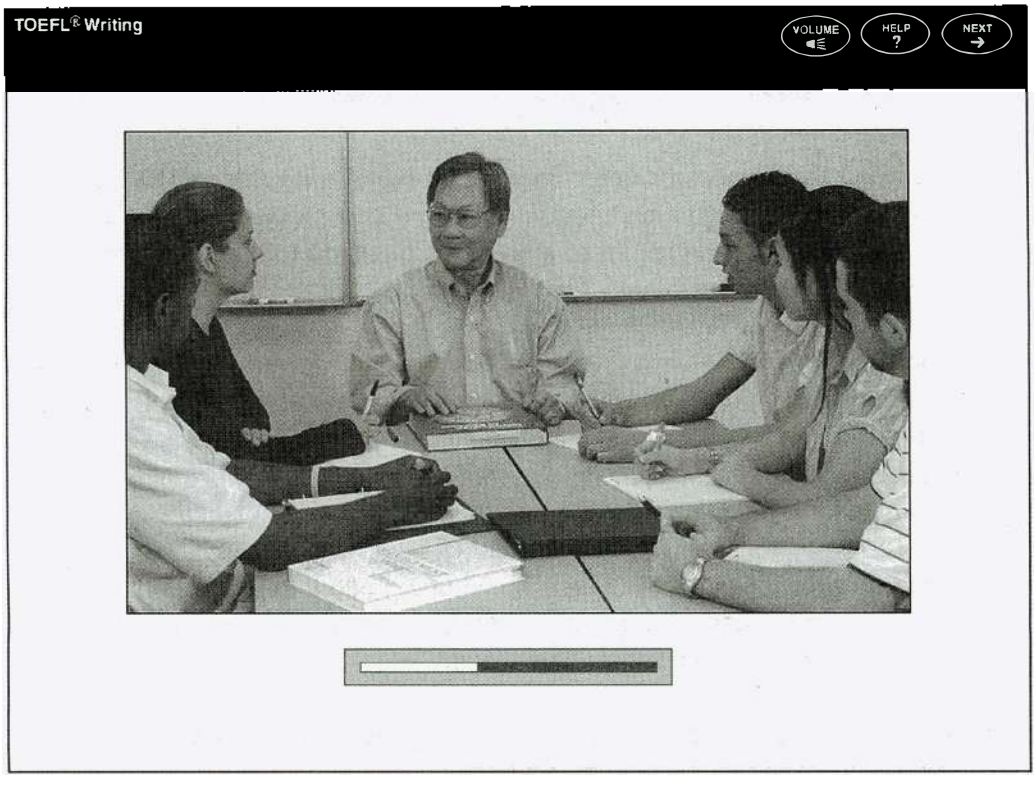
Because of its remote location, only a few species of plants and animals thrived on Easter Island, and the water surrounding it contained very few fish. Nevertheless, beginning with extremely limited resources on an isolated island, the native people achieved a very advanced culture, as evidenced by the gigantic monolithic human figures that line the coasts, as well as by other artifacts. The complete collapse of this civilization is still a mystery, but several theories have been put forward.

One theory suggests that the natives of Easter Island cut down large palm forests to clear land for agricultural purposes, fuel for heating and cooking, construction material for pole and thatch houses, and canoes for transportation. In addition, hundreds of *ahu*, or large stone monuments, were constructed and moved to the coast on rollers made of tree trunks. Assuming that the trees could regenerate quickly enough to sustain the environment, they continued the deforestation, which, in turn, caused serious erosion.

Another theory presents a very different explanation for the decline in the population. Since there were few predators on the island, and an abundance of food, it is thought that rats may have hidden in the canoes of the earliest settlers. When the native people cut and burned trees, the rats prevented regrowth by eating the fresh shoots before they could grow into large plants. With little food and no wood to build canoes to escape, the people perished.

A third theory contends that the population was decimated by a war between short-eared and long-eared people on the island. According to oral history, a plot by the long-eared people to kill the short-eared people was discovered and the short-eared people struck first, driving the long-eared people to a ditch where they were killed and burned.

Model Test 2, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 7



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "Family Pets"

Question
Read and think about the following statement:

Pets should be treated like family members.

Do you agree or disagree with this statement? Give reasons to support your opinion.

This is the end of Model Test 2.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 2," Chapter 5, pages 614–642.

MODEL TEST 3: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the short format for the Reading section. On the short format, you will read three passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 60 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Symbiotic Relationships"

P1 **Symbiosis** is a close, long-lasting physical relationship between two different species. In other words, the two species are usually in physical contact and at least one of them derives some sort of benefit from this contact. There are three different categories of symbiotic relationships: parasitism, commensalism, and mutualism.

P2 **Parasitism** is a relationship in which one organism, known as the parasite, lives in or on another organism, known as the host, from which it derives nourishment. Generally, the parasite is much smaller than the host. Although the host is harmed by the interaction, it is generally not killed immediately by the parasite, and some host individuals may live a long time and be relatively little affected by their parasites. Some parasites are much more destructive than others, however. Newly established parasite-host relationships are likely to be more destructive than those that have a long evolutionary history. With a longstanding interaction between the parasite and the host, the two species generally evolve in such a way that they can accommodate one another. It is not in the parasite's best interest to kill its host. If it does, it must find another. Likewise, the host evolves defenses against the parasite, often reducing the harm done by the parasite to a level the host can tolerate.

P3 ➔ Parasites that live on the surface of their hosts are known as **ectoparasites**. Fleas, lice, and some molds and mildews are examples of ectoparasites. A Many other parasites, such as tapeworms, malaria parasites, many kinds of bacteria, and some fungi, are called **endoparasites** because they live inside the bodies of their hosts. B A tapeworm lives in the intestines of its host where it is able to resist being digested and makes use of the nutrients in the intestine. C

P4 Even plants can be parasites. Mistletoe is a flowering plant that is parasitic on trees. It establishes itself on the surface of a tree when a bird transfers the seed to the tree. It then grows down into the water-conducting tissues of the tree and uses the water and minerals it obtains from these tissues to support its own growth. D

P5 **Commensalism** is a relationship between organisms in which one organism benefits while the other is not affected. It is possible to visualize a parasitic relationship evolving into a commensal one. Since parasites generally evolve to do as little harm to their host as possible and the host is combating the negative effects of the parasite, they might eventually evolve to the point where the host is not harmed at all.

P6 Many examples of commensal relationships exist. Many orchids use trees as a surface upon which to grow. The tree is not harmed or helped, but the orchid needs a surface upon which to establish itself and also benefits by being close to the top of the tree, where it can get more sunlight and rain. Some mosses, ferns, and many vines also make use of the surfaces of trees in this way.

P7 In the ocean, many sharks have a smaller fish known as a remora attached to them. Remoras have a sucker on the top of their heads that they can use to attach to the shark. In this way, they can hitchhike a ride as the shark swims along. When the shark feeds, the remora frees itself and obtains small bits of food that the shark misses. Then, the remora reattaches. The shark does not appear to be positively or negatively affected by remoras.

P8 ➔ **Mutualism** is another kind of symbiotic relationship and is actually beneficial to both species involved. In many mutualistic relationships, the relationship is obligatory; the species cannot live without each other. In others, the species can exist separately but are more successful when they are involved in a mutualistic relationship. Some species of Acacia, a thorny tree, provide food in the form of sugar solutions in little structures on their stems. Certain species of ants feed on the solutions and live in the tree, which they will protect from other animals by attacking any animal that begins to feed on the tree. Both organisms benefit; the ants receive food and a place to live, and the tree is protected from animals that would use it as food.

P9 ➔ One soil nutrient that is usually a limiting factor for plant growth is nitrogen. Many kinds of plants, such as legumes, beans, clover, Acacia trees, and Alder trees, have bacteria that live in their roots in little nodules. The roots form these nodules when they are infected with certain kinds of bacteria. The bacteria do not cause disease but provide the plants with nitrogen-containing molecules that the plants can use for growth. The nitrogen-fixing bacteria benefit from the living site and nutrients that the plants provide, and the plants benefit from the nitrogen they receive.

Glossary
sucker: an adaptation for sucking nourishment or sticking to a surface
nodules: growths in the form of knots

1. The word derives in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ requests
   Ⓑ pursues
   Ⓒ obtains
   Ⓓ rejects

2. The word categories in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ sources
   Ⓑ ideas
   Ⓒ classifications
   Ⓓ problems

3. The word relatively in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ comparatively
   Ⓑ routinely
   Ⓒ adversely
   Ⓓ frequently

4. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

   Ⓐ A parasite is less likely to destroy the host when it attaches itself at first.
   Ⓑ Parasites that have lived on a host for a long time have probably done a lot of damage.
   Ⓒ The most destructive phase for a host is when the parasite first invades it.
   Ⓓ The relationship between a parasite and a host will evolve over time.

5. The word tolerate in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ permit
   Ⓑ oppose
   Ⓒ profit
   Ⓓ avoid

6. According to paragraph 3, how do ectoparasites survive?

   Ⓐ They live in mold and mildew on their hosts.
   Ⓑ They digest food in the intestines of their hosts.
   Ⓒ They live on the nutrients in their bacterial hosts.
   Ⓓ They inhabit the outside parts of their hosts.

   Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7. Which of the following is mentioned as an example of a commensal relationship?

   Ⓐ Orchids
   Ⓑ Mistletoe
   Ⓒ Ants
   Ⓓ Fungus

8. The word actually in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ frequently
   Ⓑ initially
   Ⓒ really
   Ⓓ usually

9. In paragraph 8, why does the author use the example of the *Acacia* tree?

   Ⓐ To demonstrate how ants survive by living in trees
   Ⓑ To explain how two species can benefit from contact
   Ⓒ To show the relationship between plants and animals
   Ⓓ To present a problem that occurs often in nature

   Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

10. According to paragraph 9, how does bacteria affect beans and clover?

    Ⓐ It causes many of the plants to die.
    Ⓑ It limits the growth of young plants.
    Ⓒ It supplies nitrogen to the crops.
    Ⓓ It infects the roots with harmful nodules.

    Paragraph 9 is marked with an arrow [➔].

11. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    They live on the feathers of birds or the fur of animals.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

12. In which of the following chapters would this passage most probably appear?

    Ⓐ Environment and Organisms
    Ⓑ Pollution and Policies
    Ⓒ Human Influences on Ecosystems
    Ⓓ Energy Resources

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Symbiosis is a close, continuing physical relationship between two species.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Parasitic species will feed on the host species, causing varying degrees of damage to the host as a result of the relationship.

B Orchids benefit from being near the top of a tree where they can be exposed to more sunlight and rain.

C Nodules in the roots of plants supply nitrogen from bacteria, thereby enriching the soil.

D In commensalism, one species will benefit from the relationship, but the other species is not affected by it.

E Certain species form mutualistic relationships in which both species benefit from the physical contact.

F Evolutionary changes in species may allow them to live in close physical contact with little damage to each other.

Reading 2 "Civilization"

P1 Between 4000 and 3000 B.C., significant technological developments began to transform the Neolithic towns. The invention of writing enabled records to be kept, and the use of metals marked a new level of human control over the environment and its resources. Already before 4000 B.C., craftspeople had discovered that metal-bearing rocks could be heated to liquefy metals, which could then be cast in molds to produce tools and weapons that were more useful than stone instruments. Although copper was the first metal to be utilized in producing tools, after 4000 B.C. craftspeople in western Asia discovered that a combination of copper and tin produced bronze, a much harder and more durable metal than copper. Its widespread use has led historians to call the period the Bronze Age; thereafter, from around 3000 to 1200 B.C., bronze was increasingly replaced by iron.

P2 ➔ At first, Neolithic settlements were hardly more than villages. But as their inhabitants mastered the art of farming, more complex human societies emerged. As wealth increased, these societies began to develop armies and to build walled cities. By the beginning of the Bronze Age, the concentration of larger numbers of people in the river valleys of Southwest Asia and Egypt was leading to a whole new pattern for human life.

P3 ➔ As we have seen, early human beings formed small groups that developed a simple culture that enabled them to survive. As human societies grew and developed greater complexity, a new form of human existence—called civilization—came into being. A civilization is a complex culture in which large numbers of human beings share a number of common elements. Historians have identified a number of basic characteristics of civilization, most of which are evident in the Southwest Asian and Egyptian civilizations. These include (1) an urban focus: cities became the centers of political, economic, social, cultural, and religious development; (2) a distinct religious structure: the gods were deemed crucial to the community's success, and professional priestly classes, as stewards of the gods' property, regulated relations with the gods; (3) new political and military structures: an organized government bureaucracy arose to meet the administrative demands of the growing population while armies were organized to gain land and power and for defense; (4) a new social structure based on economic power: while kings and an upper class of priests, political leaders, and warriors dominated, there also existed large groups of free people (farmers, artisans, craftspeople) and at the very bottom, socially, a class of slaves; (5) the development of writing: kings, priests, merchants, and artisans used writing to keep records; and (6) new forms of significant artistic and intellectual activity: monumental architectural structures, usually religious, occupied a prominent place in urban environments.

P4 ➔ Why early civilizations developed remains difficult to explain. A Since civilizations developed independently in India, China, Mesopotamia, and Egypt, can general causes be identified that would explain why all of these civilizations emerged? B A number of possible explanations of the beginning of civilization have been suggested. A theory of challenge and response maintains that challenges forced human beings to make efforts that resulted in the rise of civilization. Some scholars have adhered to a material explanation. C Material forces, such as the growth of food surpluses, made possible the specialization of labor and development of large communities with bureaucratic organization. D But the area of the Fertile Crescent, in which civilization emerged in Southwest Asia, was not naturally conducive to agriculture. Abundant food could be produced only with a massive human effort to carefully manage the water, an effort that created the need for organization and bureaucratic control and led to civilized cities. Some historians have argued that nonmaterial forces, primarily religious, provided the sense of unity and purpose that made such organized activities possible. Finally, some scholars doubt that we are capable of ever discovering the actual causes of early civilization.

14. Which of the following is the best definition of a "civilization"?

Ⓐ Neolithic towns and cities
Ⓑ Types of complex cultures
Ⓒ An agricultural community
Ⓓ Large population centers

15. The word utilized in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ located
Ⓑ used
Ⓒ described
Ⓓ improved

16. According to paragraph 2, what happens as societies become more prosperous?

Ⓐ More goods are produced.
Ⓑ Walled cities are built.
Ⓒ Laws are instituted.
Ⓓ The size of families increased.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

17. The word hardly in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ frequently
Ⓑ likely
Ⓒ barely
Ⓓ obviously

18. Why does the author mention "Neolithic settlements" in paragraph 2?

Ⓐ To give an example of a civilization
Ⓑ To explain the invention of writing systems
Ⓒ To argue that they should be classified as villages
Ⓓ To contrast them with the civilizations that evolved

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

19. According to paragraph 3, how was the class system structured?

Ⓐ An upper class and a lower class
Ⓑ Slaves, free people, and a ruling class
Ⓒ A king, an army, and slaves
Ⓓ Intellectuals and uneducated farmers and workers

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

20. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Southwest Asian and Egyptian civilizations exhibit the majority of the characteristics identified by historians.
Ⓑ The characteristics that historians have identified are not found in the Egyptian and Southwest Asian cultures.
Ⓒ Civilizations in Southwest Asia and Egypt were identified by historians who were studying the characteristics of early cultures.
Ⓓ The identification of most historical civilizations includes either Egypt or Southwest Asia on the list.

21. The word crucial in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ fundamental
Ⓑ arbitrary
Ⓒ disruptive
Ⓓ suitable

22. The word prominent in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ weak
Ⓑ important
Ⓒ small
Ⓓ new

23. According to paragraph 4, how can the independent development of civilization in different geographic regions be explained?

Ⓐ Scholars agree that food surpluses encouraged populations to be concentrated in certain areas.
Ⓑ There are several theories that explain the rise of civilization in the ancient world.
Ⓒ The model of civilization was probably carried from one region to another along trade routes.
Ⓓ Historians attribute the emergence of early cities at about the same time as a coincidence.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

24. All of the following are cited as reasons why civilizations developed EXCEPT

Ⓐ Religious practices unified the population.
Ⓑ The management of water required organization.
Ⓒ A major climate change made living in groups necessary.
Ⓓ Extra food resulted in the expansion of population centers.

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    Some historians believe they can be established.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or they are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

    Certain qualities appear to define a civilization.

    •

    •

    •

Answer Choices

A Free citizens who work in professions for pay

B Bureaucracies for the government and armies

C Libraries to house art and written records

D A strategic location near rivers or the sea

E Organized religion, writing, and art

F A densely populated group with a class structure

Reading 3 "Life in Our Solar System"

P1 Although we can imagine life based on something other than carbon chemistry, we know of no examples to tell us how such life might arise and survive. We must limit our discussion to life as we know it and the conditions it requires. The most important requirement is the presence of liquid water, not only as part of the chemical reactions of life, but also as a medium to transport *nutr*ients and wastes within the organism.

P2 The water requirement automatically eliminates many worlds in our solar system. The moon is airless, and although some data suggest ice frozen in the soil at its poles, it has never had liquid water on its surface. In the vacuum of the lunar surface, liquid water would boil away rapidly. Mercury too is airless and cannot have had liquid water on its surface for long periods of time. Venus

has some traces of water vapor in its atmosphere, but it is much too hot for liquid water to survive. If there were any lakes or oceans of water on its surface when it was young, they must have evaporated quickly. Even if life began there, no traces would be left now.

P3 The inner solar system seems too hot, and the outer solar system seems too cold. The Jovian planets have deep atmospheres, and at a certain level, they have moderate temperatures where water might condense into liquid droplets. But it seems unlikely that life could begin there. The Jovian planets have no surfaces where oceans could nurture the beginning of life, and currents in the atmosphere seem destined to circulate gas and water droplets from regions of moderate temperature to other levels that are much too hot or too cold for life to survive.

P4 A few of the satellites of the Jovian planets might have suitable conditions for life. Jupiter's moon Europa seems to have a liquid-water ocean below its icy crust, and minerals dissolved in that water would provide a rich broth of possibilities for chemical evolution. A Nevertheless, Europa is not a promising site to search for life because conditions may not have remained stable for the billions of years needed for life to evolve beyond the microscopic stage. B If Jupiter's moons interact gravitationally and modify their orbits, Europa may have been frozen solid at some points in history. C

P5 ➔ Saturn's moon Titan has an atmosphere of nitrogen, argon, and methane and may have oceans of liquid methane and ethane on its surface. D The chemistry of life that might crawl or swim on such a world is unknown, but life there may be unlikely because of the temperature. The surface of Titan is a deadly –179°C (–290°F). Chemical reactions occur slowly or not at all at such low temperatures, so the chemical evolution needed to begin life may never have occurred on Titan.

P6 ➔ Mars is the most likely place for life in our solar system. The evidence, however, is not encouraging. Meteorite ALH84001 was found on the Antarctic ice in 1984. It was probably part of debris ejected into space by a large impact on Mars. ALH84001 is important because a team of scientists studied it and announced in 1996 that it contained chemical and physical traces of ancient life on Mars.

P7 Scientists were excited too, but being professionally skeptical, they began testing the results immediately. In many cases, the results did not confirm the conclusion that life once existed on Mars. Some chemical contamination from water on Earth has occurred, and some chemicals in the meteorite may have originated without the presence of life. The physical features that look like fossil bacteria may be mineral formations in the rock.

P8 Spacecraft now visiting Mars may help us understand the past history of water there and paint a more detailed picture of present conditions. Nevertheless, conclusive evidence may have to wait until a geologist in a space suit can wander the dry streambeds of Mars cracking open rocks and searching for fossils.

P9 We are left to conclude that, so far as we know, our solar system is bare of life except for Earth. Consequently, our search for life in the universe takes us to other planetary systems.

27. The word automatically in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ partially
Ⓑ actually
Ⓒ occasionally
Ⓓ naturally

28. The word data in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ improvements
Ⓑ agreements
Ⓒ facts
Ⓓ methods

29. Which of the following statements about the water on Venus is true?

Ⓐ The water evaporated because of the high temperatures.
Ⓑ The water became frozen in the polar regions.
Ⓒ Only a little water is left in small lakes on the surface.
Ⓓ Rain does not fall because there is no atmosphere.

30. The word stable in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ visible
Ⓑ active
Ⓒ constant
Ⓓ strong

31. What can be inferred from the passage about the Jovian planets?

Ⓐ Some of the Jovian planets may have conditions that could support life.
Ⓑ Jupiter is classified as one of the Jovian planets.
Ⓒ Europa is the largest of the moons that revolve around Jupiter.
Ⓓ The orbits of the Jovian planets have changed over time.

32. According to paragraph 5, why would life on Titan be improbable?

Ⓐ It does not have an ocean.
Ⓑ It is not a planet.
Ⓒ It is too cold.
Ⓓ It has a low atmosphere.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

33. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Life on Mars was found as a result of research in many cases.
Ⓑ The evidence did not demonstrate that there was life on Mars in the past.
Ⓒ Many cases of life were concluded in the history of Mars.
Ⓓ The conclusion was that only one instance of life on Mars was verified.

34. The word originated in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ turned
Ⓑ changed
Ⓒ begun
Ⓓ disappeared

35. Why does the author mention the meteorite "ALH84001" in paragraph 6?

Ⓐ Because it was found in Antarctica about fifty years ago
Ⓑ Because it was evidence of a recent impact on Mars
Ⓒ Because scientists thought that it contained evidence of life on Mars
Ⓓ Because the meteorite probably came from Mars a long time ago

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

36. How will scientists confirm the existence of life on Mars?

Ⓐ By sending unmanned spacecraft to Mars
Ⓑ By looking at fossils on Mars
Ⓒ By viewing pictures taken of Mars
Ⓓ By studying the present conditions on Mars

37. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about life in our solar system?

Ⓐ Life is probably limited to planets in the inner solar system.
Ⓑ There is a large body of evidence supporting life on Mars.
Ⓒ There is little probability of life on other planets.
Ⓓ We should explore our solar system for conditions that support life.

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

Such periods of freezing would probably prevent life from developing.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Current evidence does not support the theory of life in our solar system.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The meteorite that was discovered in the Antarctic in the 1980s was thought to contain evidence of early life on Mars, but it was later disputed.

B The planet that has the greatest probability for life in the past or now is Mars, but more investigation is required to draw conclusions.

C Europa has an ocean under the ice on the surface of the moon, which may contain the chemical combinations required for life to evolve.

D Although some of the moons that revolve around Saturn and Jupiter have conditions that might support life, the evidence contradicts this possibility.

E Other planetary systems must have life that is similar to that which has evolved on Earth because of the principles of carbon chemistry.

F It is too hot for life on the planets near the Sun in the inner solar system and too cold on the planets most removed from the Sun in the outer solar system.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 3, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 9

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

This is the long format for the Listening section. On the long format, you will listen to three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it. Only two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions will be graded. The other passages are part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which conversations, lectures, and discussions will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 30 minutes to answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Students on Campus"



1. What are the students mainly discussing?

   Ⓐ Group sessions in the Office of Career Development
   Ⓑ The advantages of career counseling for the man
   Ⓒ The woman's internship in the Office of Career Development
   Ⓓ How to find employment in the field of career counseling

2. What is the man's problem?

   Ⓐ He does not have time to see an advisor.
   Ⓑ He does not have an internship yet.
   Ⓒ He does not know which career to choose.
   Ⓓ He does not have a job offer after graduation.

3. Why does the woman tell the man about her experience?

   Ⓐ To demonstrate the benefits of going to the Office of Career Development
   Ⓑ To encourage the man to talk with an advisor about an internship
   Ⓒ To suggest that he change his major from math to library science
   Ⓓ To give the man her opinion about his career decision

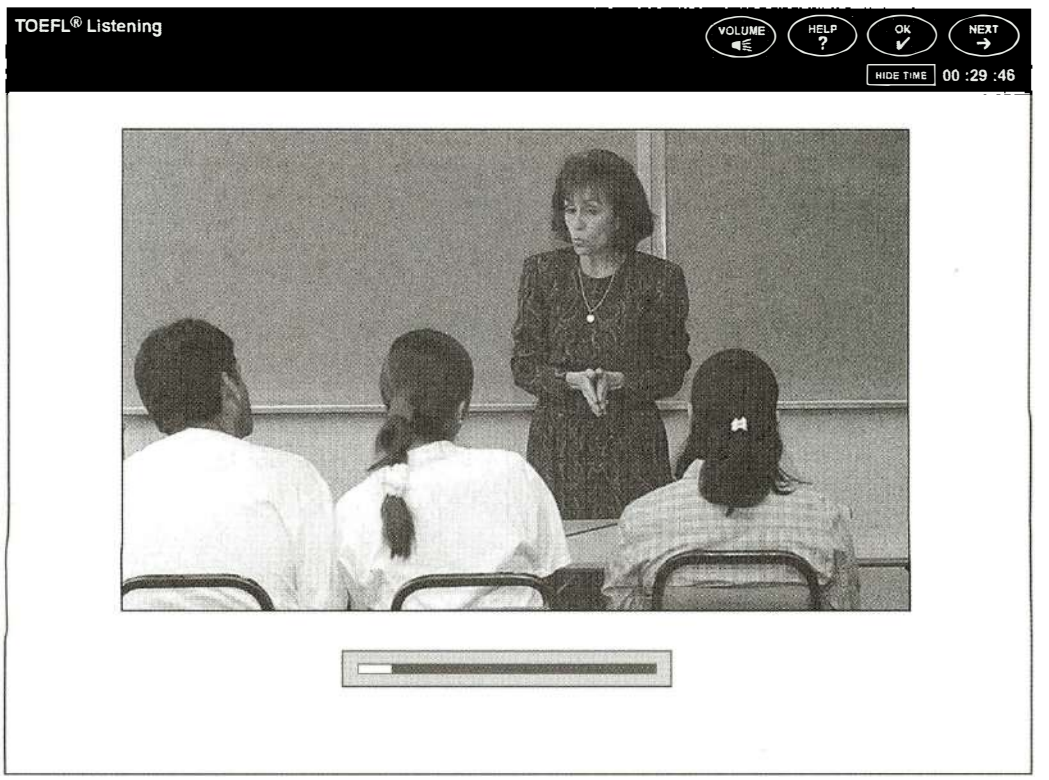
4. What is the woman's attitude toward her internship?

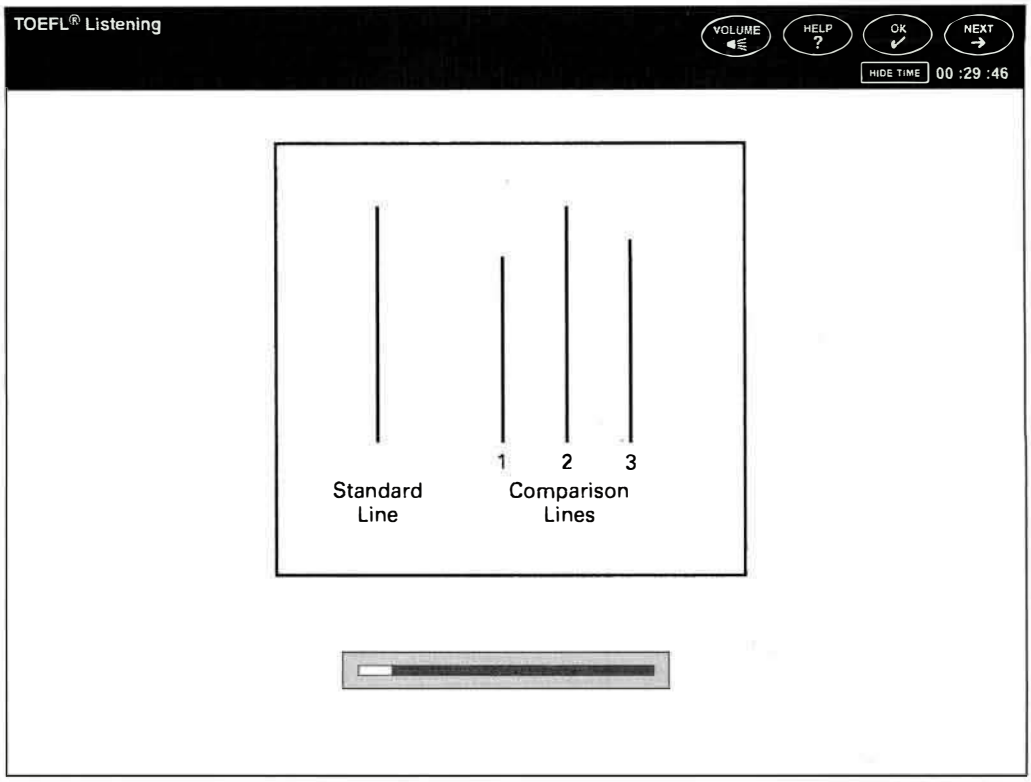
   Ⓐ She would rather go to graduate school.
   Ⓑ She is looking forward to interning.
   Ⓒ She thinks that it is a very positive experience.
   Ⓓ She will be happy when she completes it.

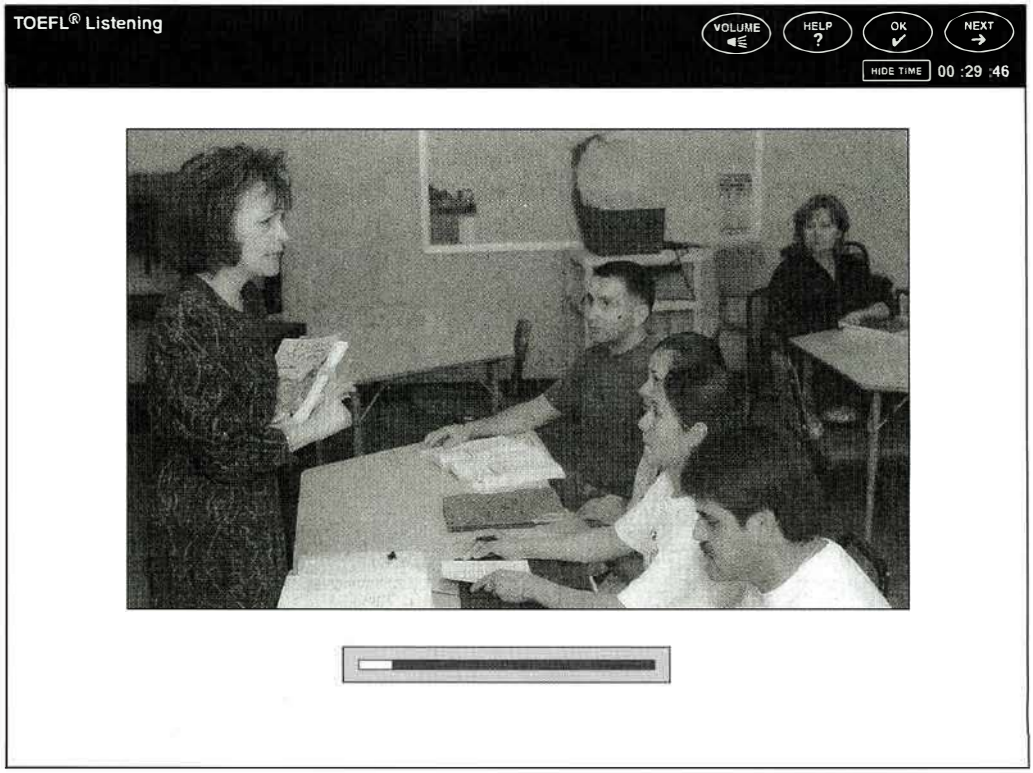
5. What will the man probably do?

   Ⓐ He will make an appointment with his academic advisor.
   Ⓑ He will go to the Office of Career Development.
   Ⓒ He will apply for a job at the library.
   Ⓓ He will ask the woman to help him with his tests.

Listening 2 "Sociology Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
1
2
3
Standard Line
Comparison Lines


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46

6. What is the main topic of the lecture?

Ⓐ The problems inherent in group decisions
Ⓑ Ways that individuals become popular in groups
Ⓒ The influence of groups on individual behavior
Ⓓ The differences in social influence across cultures

7. According to the professor, what two results were reported in the Asch and Abrams studies?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] A larger group exerts significantly more pressure than a smaller group.

[B] Subjects conformed to group opinion in more than one-third of the trials.

[C] When the subject knows the group socially, there is greater pressure to conform.

[D] A majority opinion has as much influence as a unanimous opinion.

8. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She regretted the result of the experiment.
Ⓑ She knew that the students would not like the information.
Ⓒ She needed to correct what she had said in a previous statement.
Ⓓ She neglected to mention important facts.

9. What generally happens after a group makes a decision?

Ⓐ Some group members regret their decision.
Ⓑ At least one group member presents a new idea.
Ⓒ As a whole, the group is even more united in its judgment.
Ⓓ The popular group members compete for leadership.

10. Based on information in the lecture, indicate whether the statements describe the Asch study.

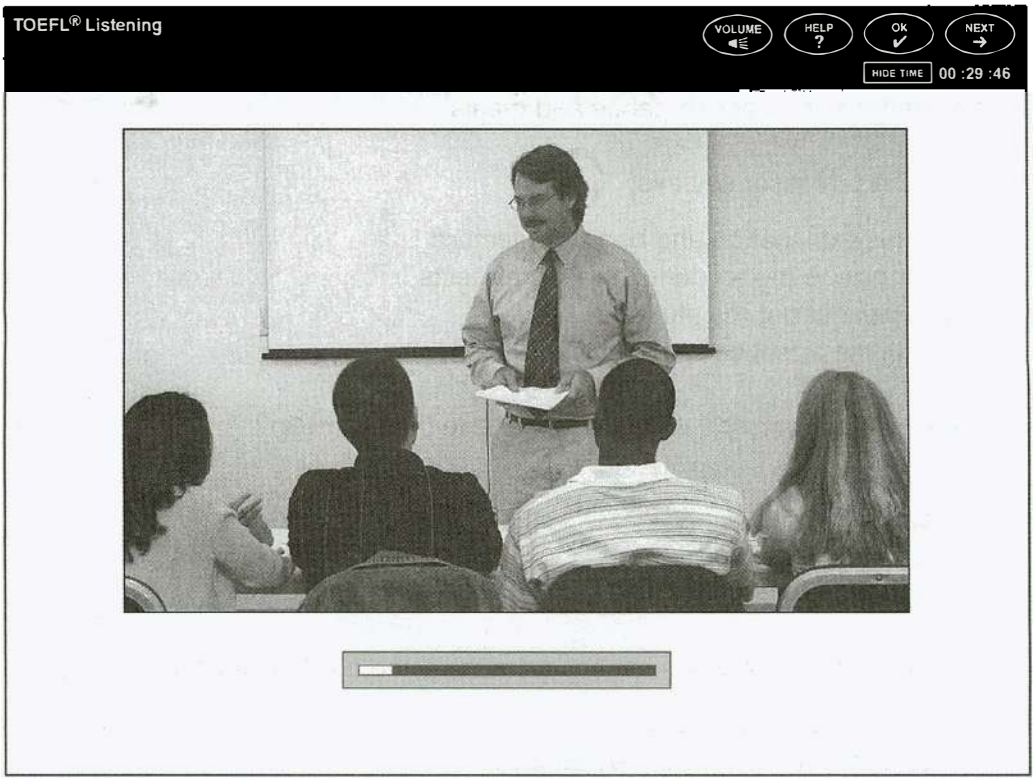
For each sentence, click in the Yes or No column.

	Yes	No
A Only one subject is being tested.		
B The cards can be interpreted several ways.		
C Some of the group collaborate with the experimenter.		

11. What is the professor's attitude about the studies on social influence?

Ⓐ She seems surprised by the results.
Ⓑ She appears to be very interested in them.
Ⓒ She needs more information about them.
Ⓓ She doubts that there is practical application.

Listening 3 "Art History Class"





12. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Catherine de Medici's entertainments
Ⓑ The figures for court dancing
Ⓒ The development of the ballet
Ⓓ The relationship between dance and meals

13. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To end his explanation and begin the lecture
Ⓑ To apologize to the students about their tests
Ⓒ To comment about the students' grades
Ⓓ To regain the attention of the class

14. According to the professor, what does the term *balletti* mean?

Ⓐ A dramatic story
Ⓑ A parade of horses
Ⓒ A dance done in figures
Ⓓ An outdoor entertainment

15. How did the early choreographers accommodate the abilities of amateur performers?

Ⓐ The steps were quite simple.
Ⓑ The same performance was repeated.
Ⓒ Practice sessions were lengthy.
Ⓓ The dance was seen from a distance.

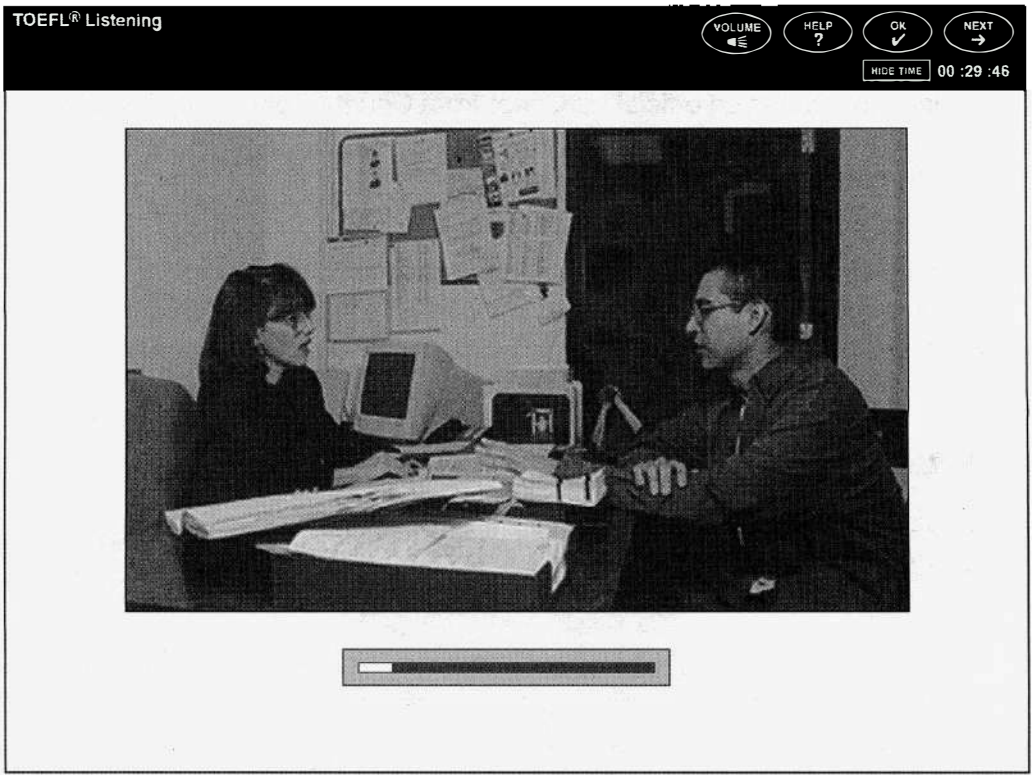
16. Why does the professor mention that he checked several references about the length of *Queen Louise's Ballet*?

Ⓐ He was very interested in the ballet.
Ⓑ He did not know much about it.
Ⓒ He wasn't sure that it was accurate.
Ⓓ He wanted to impress the class.

17. What can be inferred about the professor?

Ⓐ He is not very polite to his class.
Ⓑ He encourages the students to participate.
Ⓒ He is not very interested in the topic.
Ⓓ He is probably a good dancer.

Listening 4 "Admissions Office"



18. Why does the student go to the admissions office?

Ⓐ He is applying for financial aid.
Ⓑ He is requesting an official transcript.
Ⓒ He is transferring to another college.
Ⓓ He is trying to enroll in classes.

19. What is missing from the student's file?

Ⓐ A financial aid application
Ⓑ A transcript from County Community College
Ⓒ Grades from Regional College
Ⓓ An official copy of the application

20. Why does the woman say this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is asking the man to finish explaining the situation.
Ⓑ She is confirming that she understands the problem.
Ⓒ She is expressing impatience with the man's explanation.
Ⓓ She is trying to comprehend a difficult question.

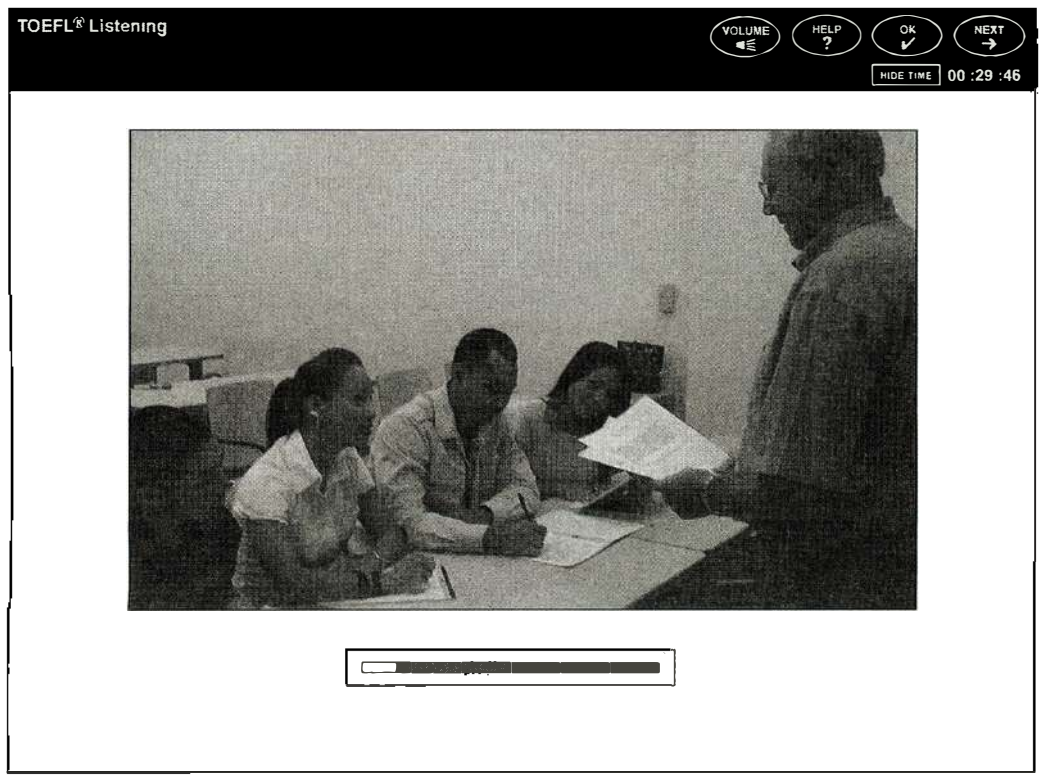
21. What does the woman suggest that the man do?

Ⓐ Make a copy of his transcripts for his personal file
Ⓑ Complete all of the admissions forms as soon as possible
Ⓒ Change his provisional status to regular status before registering
Ⓓ Continue to request an official transcript from County Community College

22. What will the student most probably do now?

Ⓐ Return later in the day to see the woman in the admissions office
Ⓑ Go to the office for transfer students to be assigned an advisor
Ⓒ Enter information in the computer to complete the application process
Ⓓ See the woman's superior to get a provisional admission to State University

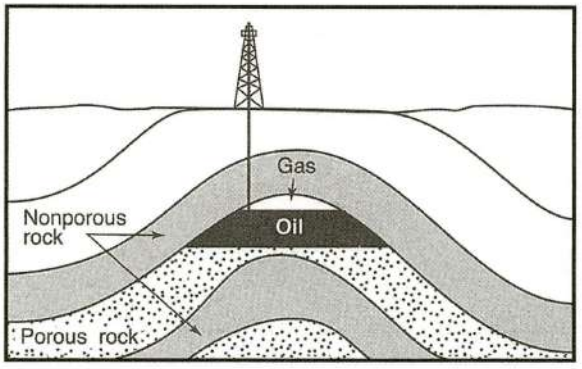
Listening 5 "Geology Class"



TOEFL® Listening

VOLUME HELP OK NEXT

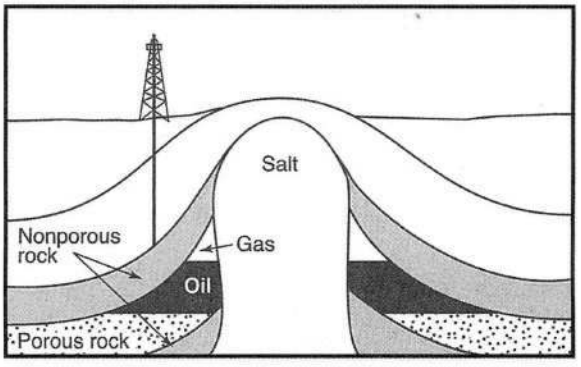
HIDE TIME 00 :29 :46

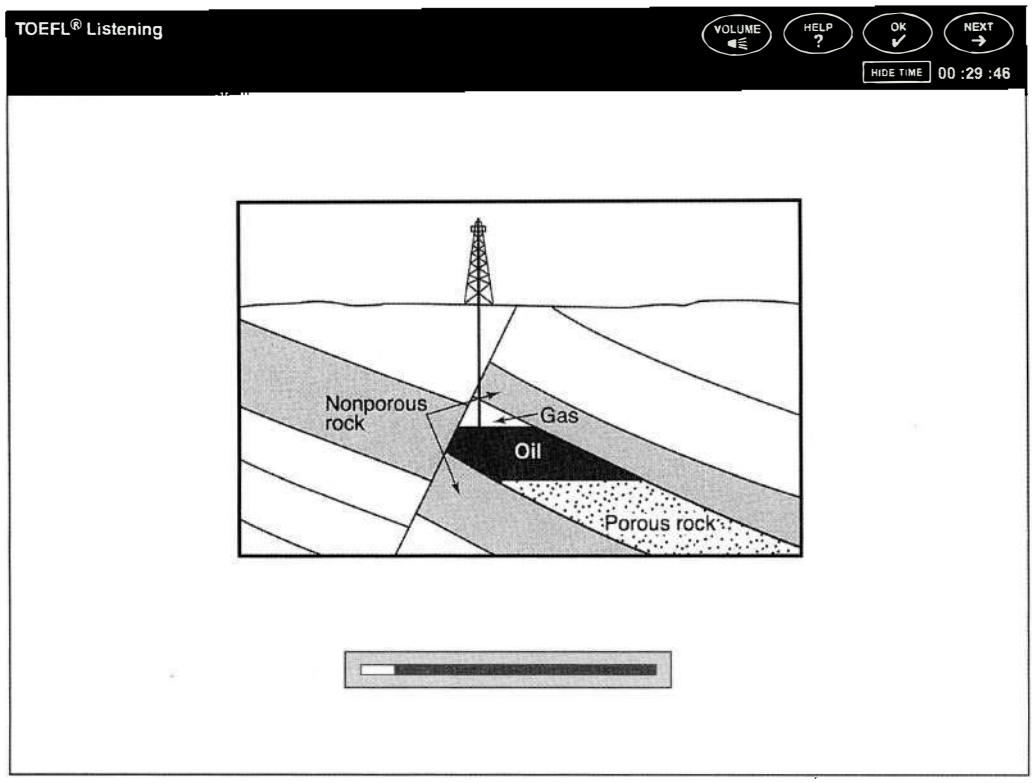


TOEFL® Listening

VOLUME HELP OK NEXT

HIDE TIME 00 :29 :46





23. What is the lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ The process of photosynthesis
Ⓑ The major types of oil traps
Ⓒ A method for collecting gas
Ⓓ A comparison of gas and oil

24. Why does the professor begin by talking about the process that transforms organic material into oil and gas?

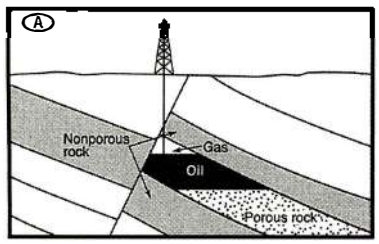
Ⓐ He is introducing the main topic by providing background information.
Ⓑ He is not very organized and he digresses a lot in the lecture.
Ⓒ He wants the class to understand why hydrocarbons remain on the surface.
Ⓓ He has to define a large number of terms before proceeding.

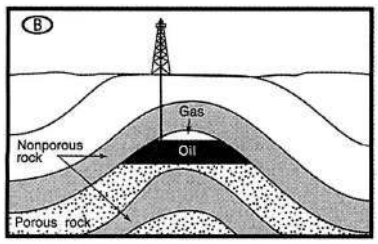
25. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

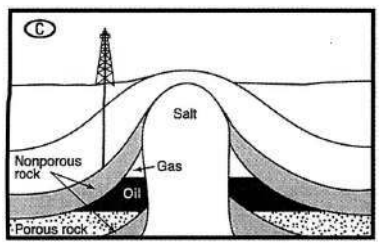
Ⓐ He wants the class to participate more.
Ⓑ He thinks that the reason is not logical.
Ⓒ He wants *all* of the students to reply.
Ⓓ He plans to answer the question.

26. Select the diagram of the anticline trap that was described in the lecture.

Click on the correct diagram.

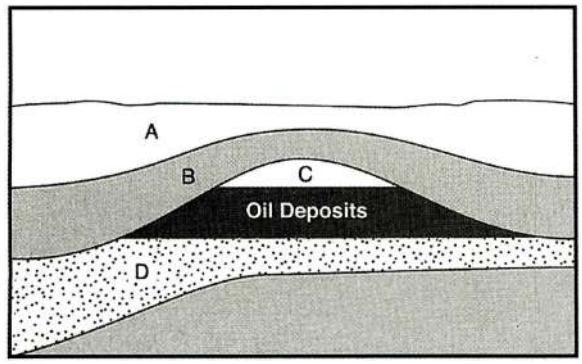






27. Identify the nonporous rock in the diagram.

    Click on the correct letter.

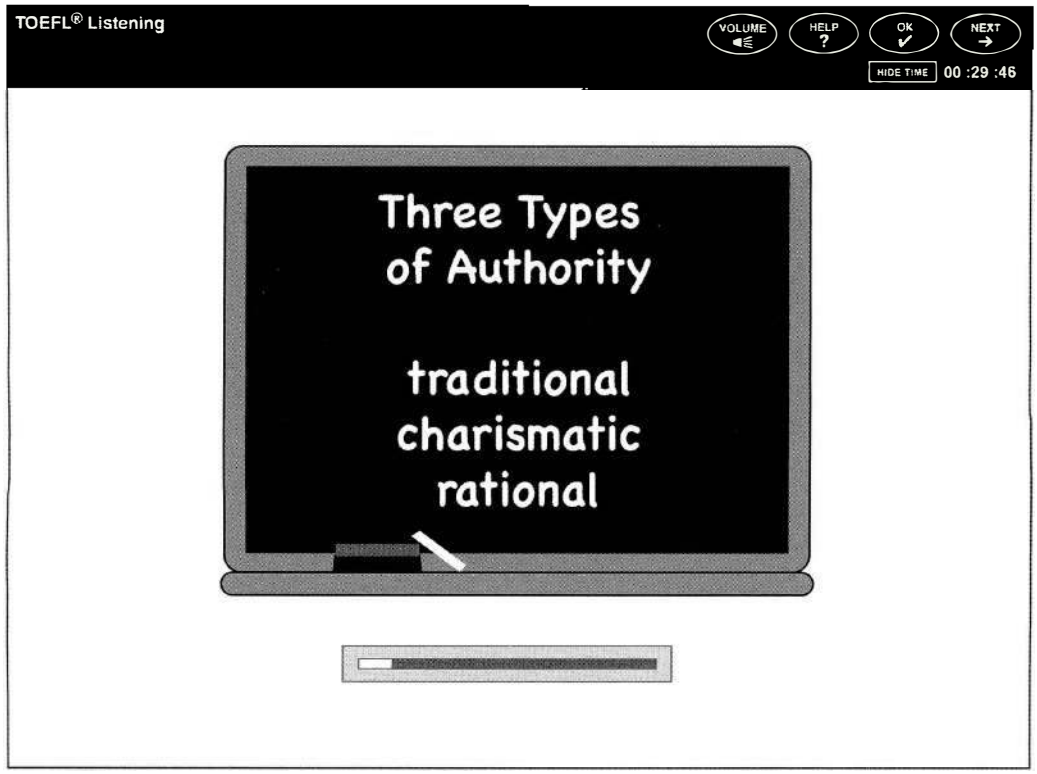


28. According to the professor, what do geologists look for when they are trying to locate a salt dome?

    Ⓐ A bulge in an otherwise flat area
    Ⓑ Underground rocks shaped like an arch
    Ⓒ Salt on the surface of a large area
    Ⓓ A deep crack in the Earth

Listening 6 "Anthropology Class"





29. What is the main purpose of this discussion?

Ⓐ To discuss three types of authority
Ⓑ To distinguish between power and authority
Ⓒ To examine alternatives to Weber's model
Ⓓ To argue in favor of a legal rational system

30. Why do the students mention Kennedy and Reagan?

Ⓐ They were founders of political movements.
Ⓑ They were examples of charismatic leaders.
Ⓒ They were attorneys who led by the law.
Ⓓ They had contrasting types of authority.

31. According to the professor, what two factors are associated with charismatic authority?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Sacred customs

[B] An attractive leader

[C] A social cause

[D] Legal elections

32. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She is asking the students to answer a question.
Ⓑ She is introducing the topic of the lecture.
Ⓒ She is expressing an opinion about the subject.
Ⓓ She is reminding students of a previous point.

33. In an evolutionary model, how is rational legal authority viewed?

Ⓐ The most modern form of authority
Ⓑ A common type of authority in the industrial age
Ⓒ Authority used by traditional leaders
Ⓓ A replacement for the three ideal types of authority

34. What does the professor imply about the three types of authority?

Ⓐ There is only one legitimate type of authority in modern societies.
Ⓑ Sociologists do not agree about the development of the types of authority.
Ⓒ Societies tend to select and retain one type of authority indefinitely.
Ⓓ Weber's model explains why the social structure rejects power over time.

Listening 7 "Library"



35. What does the man need from the librarian?

Ⓐ A DVD player
Ⓑ Material for a class
Ⓒ Research by Dr. Parsons
Ⓓ His student ID

36. What is the man's problem?

Ⓐ He has to study for an important exam.
Ⓑ He needs to prepare for a class discussion.
Ⓒ He owes a fine at the library.
Ⓓ He does not own a DVD player.

37. What does the man feel when he says this: 

Ⓐ Amused
Ⓑ Worried
Ⓒ Confused
Ⓓ Interested

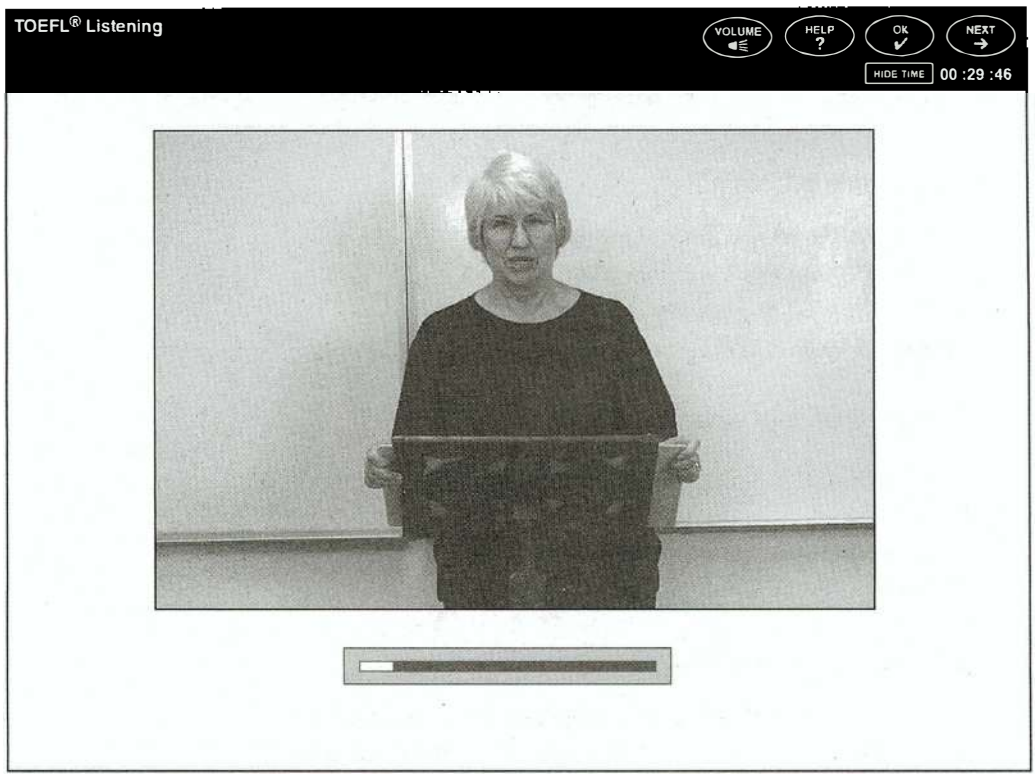
38. What is the policy for materials on reserve?

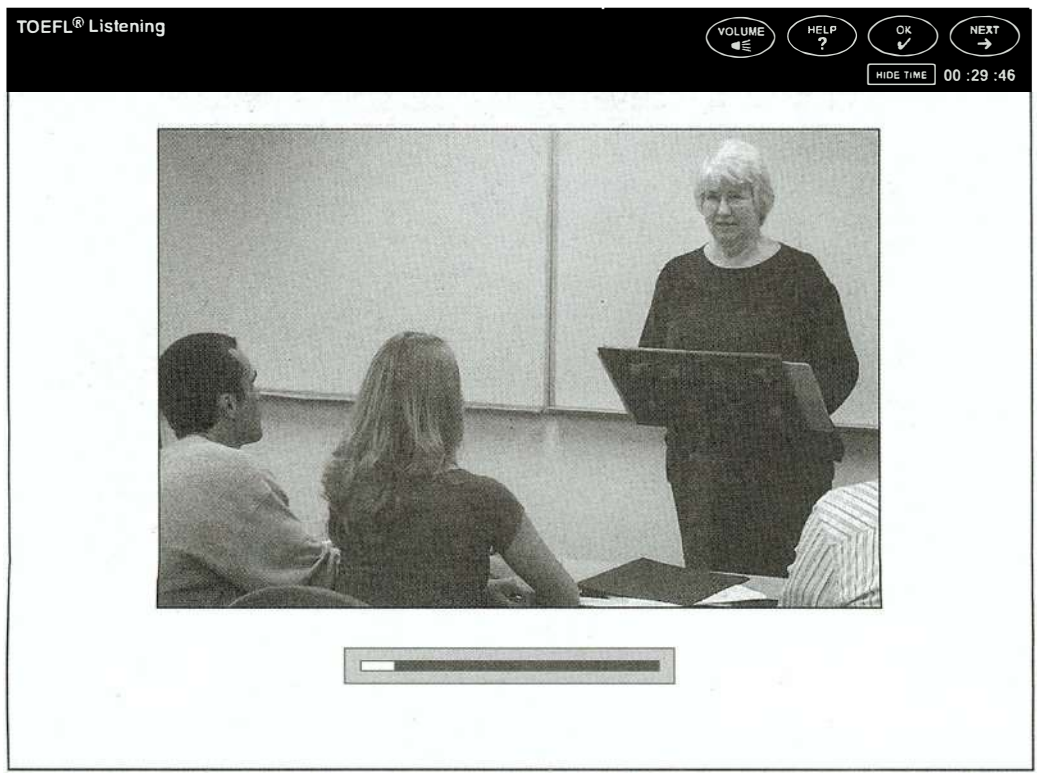
Ⓐ The materials cannot leave the library without exception.
Ⓑ There is a ten-dollar fine for each hour the materials are late.
Ⓒ Students must show the professor's signature to use the materials.
Ⓓ Materials may be checked out overnight two hours before closing.

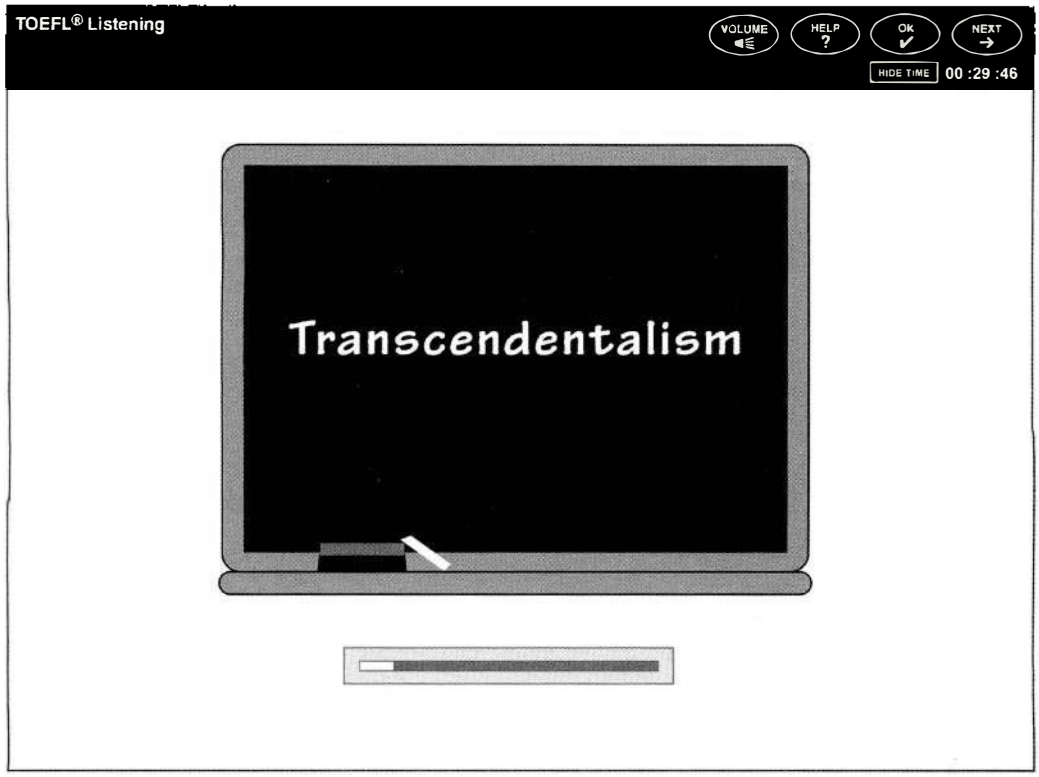
39. What does the librarian imply when she tells the man to return at nine o'clock?

Ⓐ She will see the man after work.
Ⓑ The library probably closes at eleven.
Ⓒ She is too busy to help the man now.
Ⓓ Her supervisor will be there at that time.

Listening 8 "Literature Class"







40. What does this lecturer mainly discuss?

Ⓐ Transcendentalism
Ⓑ Puritanism
Ⓒ Ralph Waldo Emerson
Ⓓ Nature

41. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is joking with the students.
Ⓑ She is drawing a conclusion.
Ⓒ She is correcting the students' behavior.
Ⓓ She is reasoning aloud.

42. According to the professor, what was true about the Puritans?

Ⓐ They stressed the essential importance of the individual.
Ⓑ They supported the ideals of the Transcendental Club.
Ⓒ They believed that society should be respected above persons.
Ⓓ They thought that people should live in communes like Brook Farm.

43. Why did the church oppose the Transcendental movement?

Ⓐ The authority of the church would be challenged by a code of personal ethics.
Ⓑ The leaders of the Transcendentalists were not as well educated as the clergy.
Ⓒ Church members were competing with Transcendentalists for teaching positions.
Ⓓ Professors at Harvard College convinced the church to support their position.

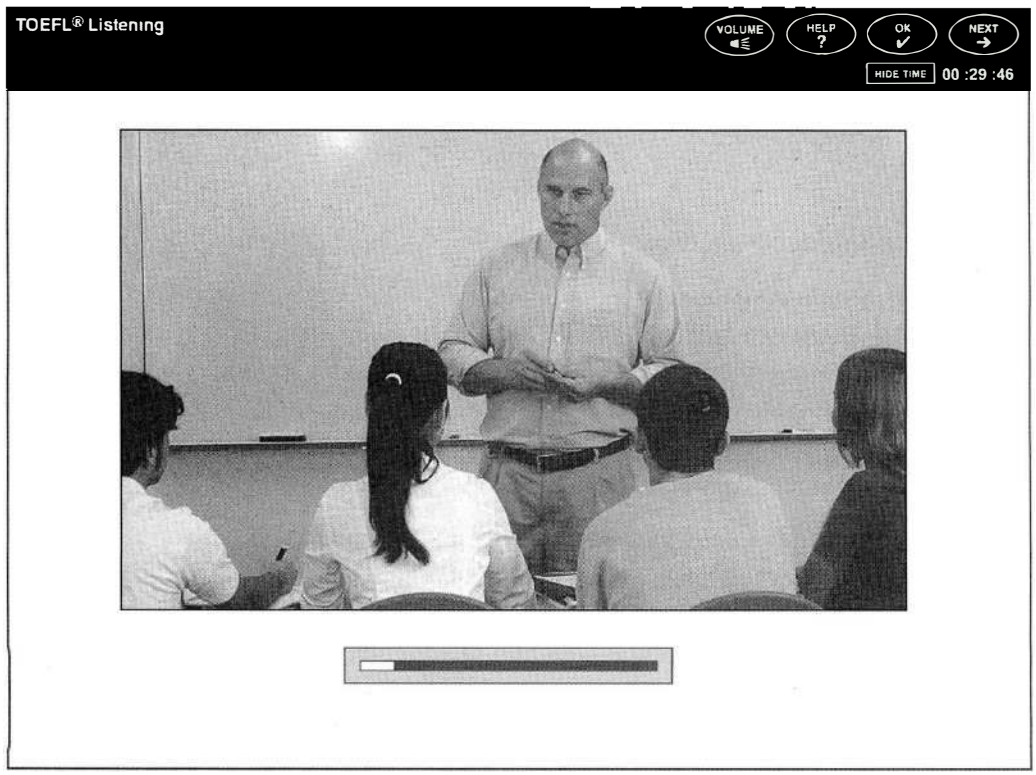
44. Why did the professor mention *Walden*?

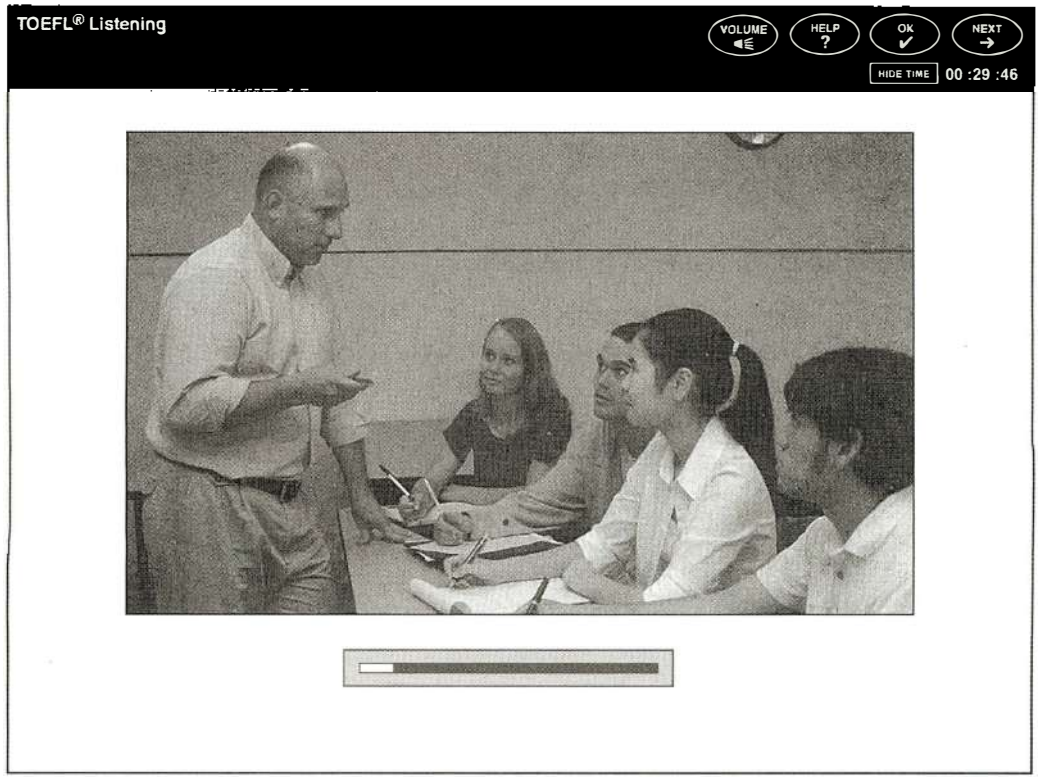
Ⓐ It is probably well-known to many of the students in the class.
Ⓑ It is considered an excellent example of Transcendental literature.
Ⓒ It is required reading for the course that she is teaching.
Ⓓ It is her personal favorite of nineteenth-century essays.

45. According to the professor, what was the most lasting contribution of Transcendentalism?

Ⓐ Educational reorganization
Ⓑ Religious reformation
Ⓒ Experimental communities
Ⓓ Political changes

Listening 9 "General Science Class"





46. What is this discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ A model of the universe
Ⓑ Interpretations of facts
Ⓒ A definition of a hypothesis
Ⓓ The scientific method

47. Why did the professor give the example of the ancient Egyptians?

Ⓐ To explain the rotation of the Earth and the Sun
Ⓑ To prove that facts may be interpreted differently
Ⓒ To present a fact that can be verified by the students
Ⓓ To discard a model that was widely accepted

48. Why did the professor say this: 🎧

Ⓐ He is asking whether students need repetition.
Ⓑ He is beginning a review of the process.
Ⓒ He is complaining because students don't understand.
Ⓓ He is making a suggestion before he proceeds.

49. According to the professor, what did Kepler do to verify his theory of planetary motion?

Ⓐ He made predictions based on the model.
Ⓑ He asked other scientists to make predictions.
Ⓒ He used prior observations to test the model.
Ⓓ He relied on insight to verify the theory.

50. What can be concluded from information in this discussion?

Ⓐ A model does not always reflect observations.
Ⓑ A model is not subject to change like a theory is.
Ⓒ A model is considered true without doubt.
Ⓓ A model does not require further experimentation.

51. What technique does the professor use to explain the practical application of the scientific method?

Ⓐ A summary
Ⓑ An example
Ⓒ A prediction
Ⓓ A formula



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 3, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 10

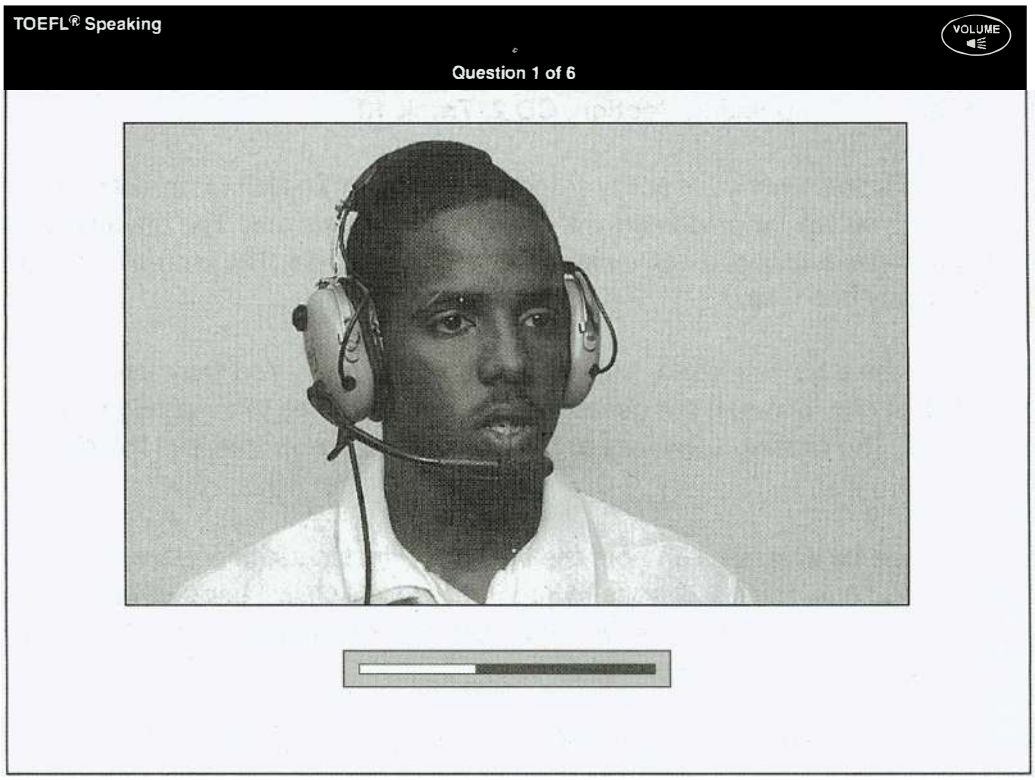
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Advice"



Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
The older generation often gives advice to younger family members. Describe a valuable piece of advice that an older person gave you. Why did it help you?

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Climate"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Some people enjoy living in a location that has a warm climate all year. Other people like to live in a place where the seasons change. Which type of climate do you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Withdrawal from Classes"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Withdrawal from Classes

In order to qualify for a refund of 100 percent at any time during the semester, you must first establish eligibility. Serious illness or injury must be verified by a written statement signed by a doctor or a psychologist. The death of a family member must be verified by a death certificate. Military duty must be verified by a copy of the orders. Students who wish to withdraw without submitting official documentation may do so before the end of the drop-add period without penalty. After the end of the second week of classes, students may petition for a 90 percent reimbursement. After the end of the fourth week, students are eligible for a 50 percent refund.



Now listen to the students discuss the policy with each other.

Question

The student expresses her opinion of the policy for reimbursement. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

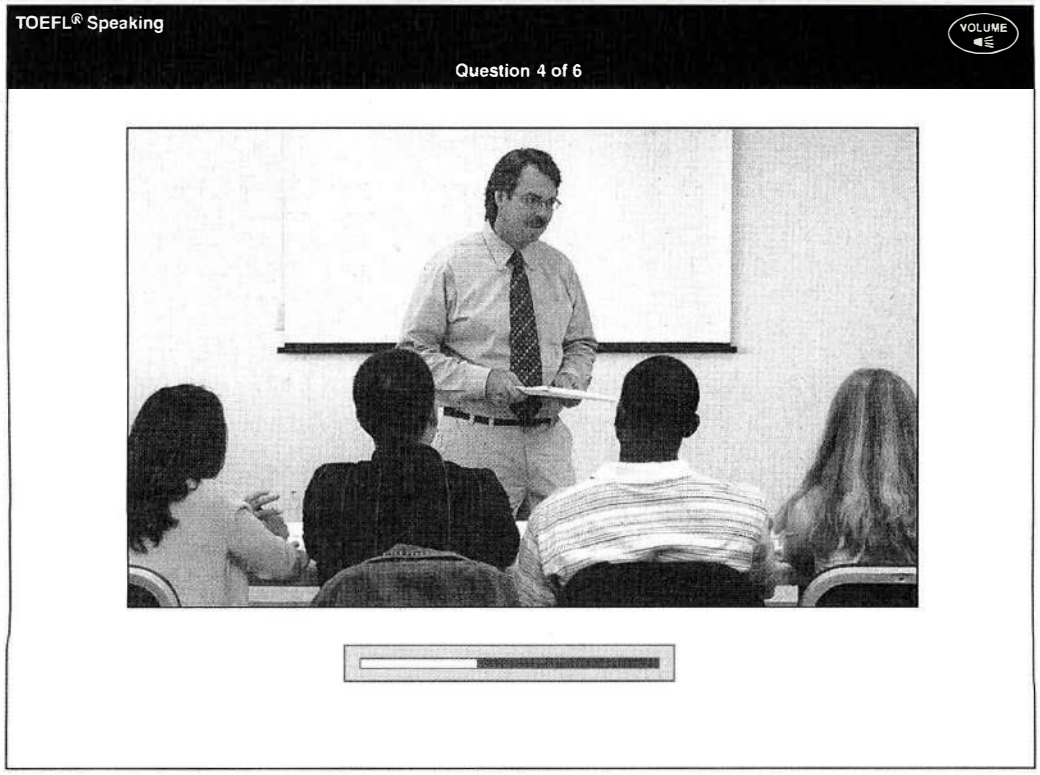
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Ballads"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Ballads

A ballad is a poem that tells a story and is sung to music. Usually the story is of unknown origin, and a number of versions may be found for one song, a characteristic that stems from the oral tradition. As the song is passed on from one singer to another, a word is added or changed, or a slight alteration is made in the tune. In short, ballads represent a living tradition that evolves as the song is performed and passed to the next musician. A collection of ballads has been preserved in written form in the volume *English and Scottish Popular Ballads* by Francis James Child, and many ballads are still referred to by their "Child number."

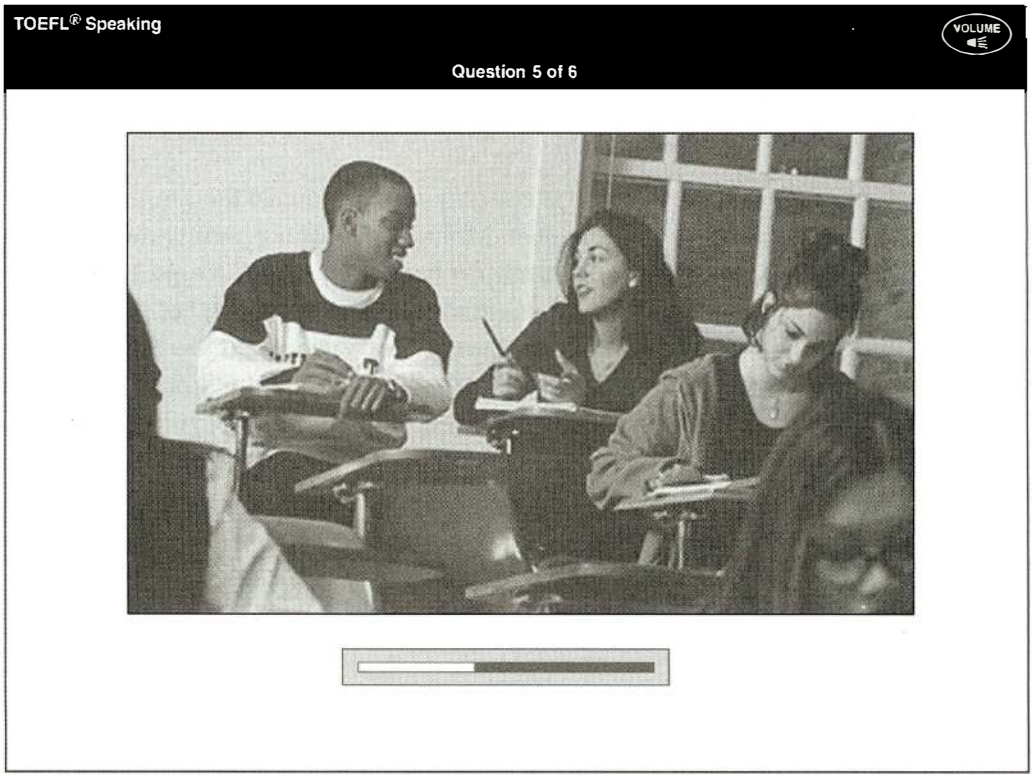


Now listen to part of a lecture in a music appreciation class. The professor is talking about the ballad of "Barbara Allen."

Question
Define a ballad, and then explain why "Barbara Allen" can be classified as a ballad.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "The Assignment"

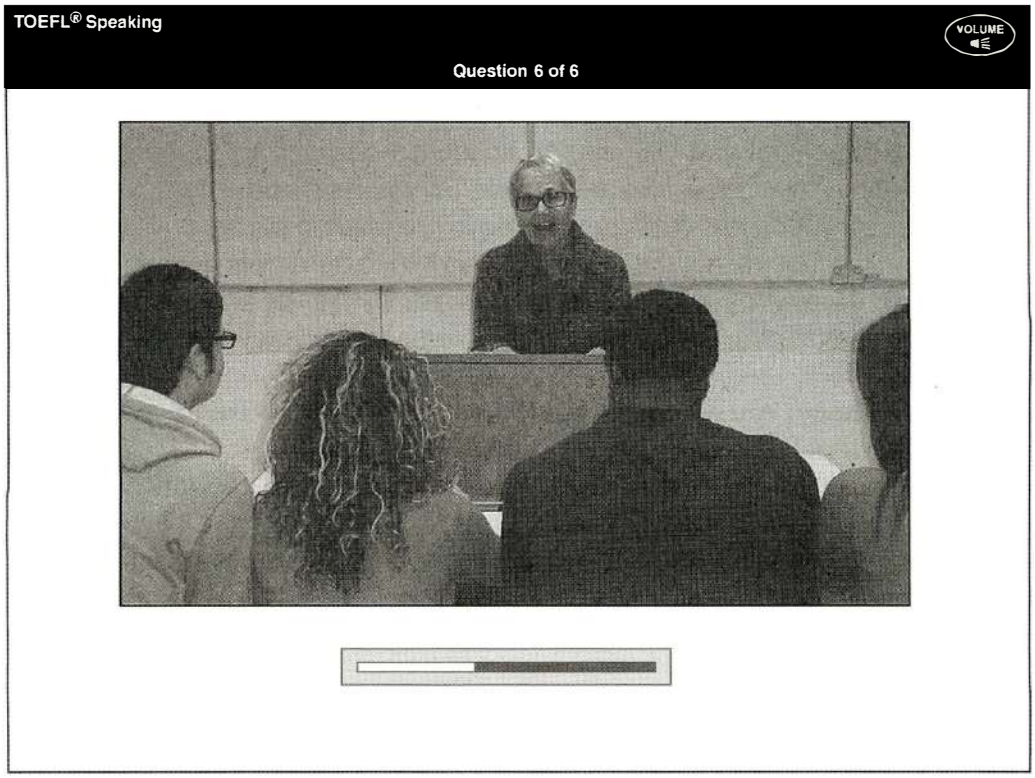


Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Question
Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Ultrasound"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a general science class. The professor is discussing the way that ultrasound works.

Question
Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the kind of information that ultrasound can provide, and then explain the way that ultrasound is used in medical diagnosis.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Emperor Penguins"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

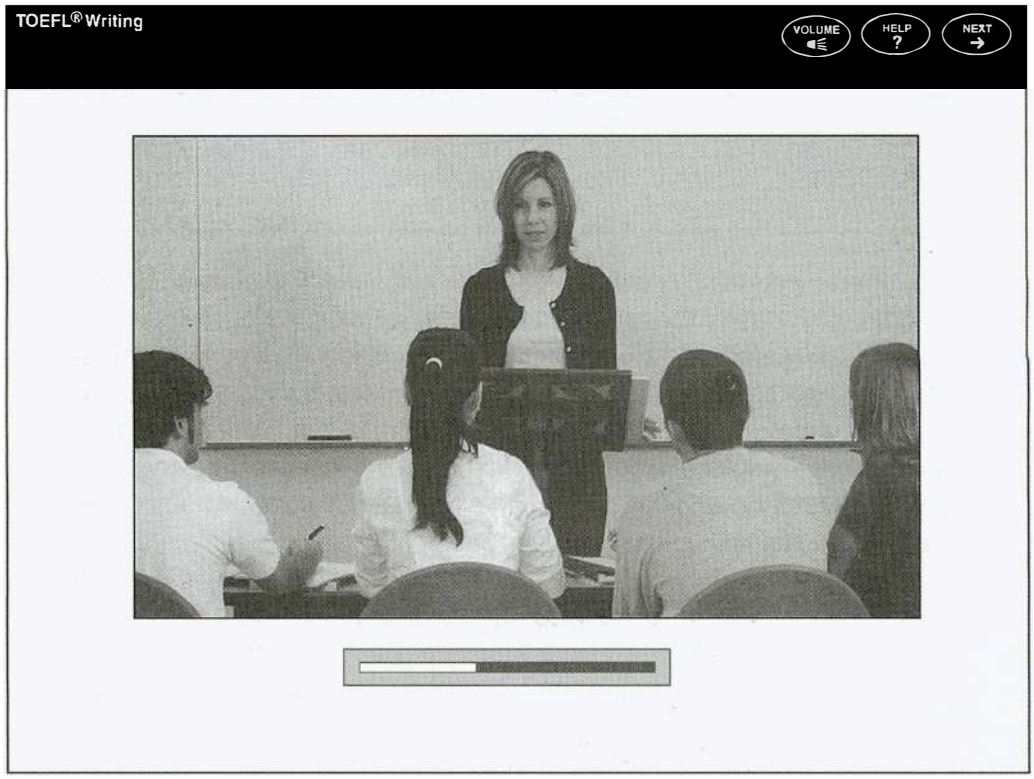
Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

Emperor penguins are not only the largest species of penguin in the world but also one of the most unique. They are very social, living in colonies that can include hundreds of thousands of individuals. Nevertheless, emperor penguins are monogamous. Having selected a mate, emperor penguins remain faithful to each other for life, using vocal calls to find one another when they return to their breeding site on the compacted ice of the Antarctic continent. It is believed that different frequencies alert mates to the sound of their partner's call.

Another interesting aspect of emperor penguins is that they return to the same site, called a rookery, to nest each year. Although their path to the rookery is different every year due to the shifting sea ice, in general, the penguins continue to use the rookery where they were hatched. Their loyalty to a particular breeding ground results in increasingly larger penguin colonies, some with more than a million birds. Males tend to arrive first to reestablish and defend their preferred nesting sites and females return a day or so later.

Emperor penguins are not considered endangered and are not currently protected under international law. In fact, in areas where reliable population counts have been conducted, the evidence suggests that populations are stable. However, due to harsh environmental conditions, some colonies have not been monitored on a consistent basis. Estimates of population sizes are at about 240,000 breeding pairs. Taking into consideration the non-breeding birds as well, the total translates into about 600,000 adult birds. Emperor chicks that reach adulthood can survive for 20 years.

Model Test 3, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 11



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "The College Years"

Question
Read and think about the following statement:

The college years are the best time in a person's life.

Do you agree or disagree with this statement?
Give reasons to support your opinion.

This is the end of Model Test 3.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 3," Chapter 5, pages 643–677.

MODEL TEST 4: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the long format for the Reading section. On the long format, you will read four passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation. Only three passages will be graded. The other passage is part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which passages will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 80 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Layers of Social Class"

P1 Taken together, income, occupation, and education are good measures of people's social standing. Using a layered model of stratification, most sociologists describe the class system in the United States as divided into several classes: upper, upper middle, middle, lower middle, and lower class. The different classes are arrayed along a continuum with those with the most money, education, and prestige at the top and those with the least at the bottom.

P2 In the United States, the *upper class* owns the major share of corporate and personal wealth; it includes those who have held wealth for generations as well as those who have recently become rich. Only a very small proportion of people actually constitute the upper class, but they control vast amounts of wealth and power in the United States. Those in this class exercise enormous control throughout society. Some wealthy individuals can wield as much power as entire nations.

P3 ➔ Despite social myths to the contrary, the best predictor of future wealth is the family into which you are born. Each year, the business magazine *Forbes* publishes a list of the 400 wealthiest families and individuals in the country. Of all the wealth represented on the *Forbes 400* list, most is inherited, although since the 1990s, there has been some increase in the number of people on the list with self-created wealth. Those in the upper class with newly acquired wealth are known as the *nouveau riche*. Luxury vehicles, high-priced real estate, and exclusive vacations may mark the lifestyle of the newly rich. However, although they may have vast amounts of money, they are often not accepted into "old rich" circles.

P4 ➔ The *upper middle class* includes those with high incomes and high social prestige. They tend to be well-educated professionals or business executives. Their earnings can be quite high indeed—successful business executives can earn millions of dollars a year. It is difficult to estimate exactly how many people fall into this group because of the difficulty of drawing lines between the upper, upper middle, and middle classes. Indeed, the upper middle class is often thought of as "middle class" because their lifestyle sets the standard to which many aspire, but this lifestyle is actually unattainable by most.

P5 ➔ The *middle class* is hard to define, in part because being "middle class" is more than just economic position. A very large portion of Americans identify themselves as middle class even though they vary widely in lifestyle and in resources at their disposal. But the idea that the United States is an open-class system leads many to think that the majority have a middle-class lifestyle; thus, the middle class becomes the ubiquitous norm even though many who call themselves middle class have a tenuous hold on this class position.

P6 The *lower middle class* includes workers in the skilled trades and low-income bureaucratic workers, many of whom may actually define themselves as middle class. Also known as the working class, this class includes blue-collar workers (those in skilled trades who do manual labor) and many service workers, such as secretaries, hair stylists, food servers, police, and firefighters. Medium to low income, education, and occupational prestige define the lower middle class relative to the class groups above it. The term *lower* in this class designation refers to the relative position of the group in the stratification system, but it has a pejorative sound to many people, especially to people who are members of this class, many of whom think of themselves as middle class.

P7 ➔ The *lower class* is composed primarily of the displaced and poor. People in this class have little formal education and are often unemployed or working in minimum-wage jobs. A People of color and women make up a disproportionate part of this class. The poor include the working poor—those who work at least 27 hours a week but whose wages fall below the federal poverty level. Six percent of all working people now live below the poverty line. The concept of the *underclass* has been added to the lower class. B The underclass includes those who are likely to be permanently unemployed and without means of economic support. C Rejected from the economic system, those in the underclass may become dependent on public assistance or illegal activities. D

1. The word constitute in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ explain
   Ⓑ reject
   Ⓒ form
   Ⓓ modify

2. The word enormous in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ very large
   Ⓑ very new
   Ⓒ very early
   Ⓓ very good

3. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

   Ⓐ Although it is not generally accepted, your family provides the best prediction of your future wealth.
   Ⓑ You can achieve great future wealth in spite of the family in which you may have been born.
   Ⓒ It is not true that your family will restrict the acquisition of your future wealth and level of social status.
   Ⓓ Social myths are contrary to the facts about the future wealth and social status of your family.

4. Why does the author mention the *Forbes 400* in paragraph 3?

   Ⓐ To explain the meaning of the listing that appears every year
   Ⓑ To support the statement that most wealthy people inherit their money
   Ⓒ To cast doubt on the claim that family income predicts individual wealth
   Ⓓ To give examples of successful people who have modest family connections

   Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

5. The word exclusive in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ long
   Ⓑ expensive
   Ⓒ frequent
   Ⓓ relaxing

6. In paragraph 4, the author states that business and professional people with educational advantages are most often members of which class?

   Ⓐ lower middle class
   Ⓑ upper middle class
   Ⓒ *nouveau riche*
   Ⓓ upper class

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7. According to paragraph 5, why do most people identify themselves as middle class in the United States?

   Ⓐ They have about the same lifestyle as everyone else in the country.
   Ⓑ They prefer not to admit that there are class distinctions in the United States.
   Ⓒ They don't really know how to define their status because it is unclear.
   Ⓓ They identify themselves with the majority who have normal lifestyles.

   Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

8. The word primarily in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ mostly
   Ⓑ somewhat
   Ⓒ finally
   Ⓓ always

9. What can be inferred about the working class in the United States?

   Ⓐ They are often not able to find entry-level jobs.
   Ⓑ They work in jobs that pay minimum wage.
   Ⓒ They are service workers and manual laborers.
   Ⓓ They are considered lower class.

10. According to paragraph 7, why has the underclass emerged?

    Ⓐ The new term was necessary because the lower class enjoyed a higher lifestyle than it had previously.
    Ⓑ The increase in crime has supported a new class of people who live by engaging in illegal activities.
    Ⓒ Changes in the economy have caused an entire class of people to survive by welfare or crime.
    Ⓓ Minimum-wage jobs no longer support a class of people at a standard level in the economic system.

    Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

11. All of the following are indicators of prestige in the United States EXCEPT

    Ⓐ the level of education that a person has achieved
    Ⓑ the amount of money that an individual has acquired
    Ⓒ the type of employment that someone pursues
    Ⓓ the hard work that a person does on a consistent basis

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    The working poor constitute a large portion of those who are poor.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

The levels of education, the acquisition of wealth, and occupational prestige determine social status in the United States.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A People who have made their money more recently tend not to be accepted by those who have inherited their wealth from family holdings.

B The lower class includes working people with low incomes and a new underclass of people who are dependent on welfare or engage in crime.

C The upper class tends to acquire wealth through inheritance, whereas the upper middle class has a high income that they earn in their professions.

D Although the lifestyle of the upper middle class is the goal for the majority, it is difficult for many people to maintain this standard of living.

E Most people identify themselves as middle class, including blue-collar workers and service workers as well as bureaucratic employees.

F It is still possible to move from one social class to another in the United States by working your way up the ladder in a corporate environment.

Reading 2 "Weather and Chaotic Systems"

P1 Weather and climate are closely related, but they are not quite the same thing. In any particular location, some days may be hotter or cooler, clearer or cloudier, calmer or stormier than others. The ever-varying combination of winds, clouds, temperature, and pressure is what we call *weather*. *Climate* is the long-term average of weather, which means it can change only on much longer time scales. The complexity of weather makes it difficult to predict, and at best, the local weather can be predicted only a week or so in advance.

P2 Scientists today have a very good understanding of the physical laws and mathematical equations that govern the behavior and motion of atoms in the air, oceans, and land. Why, then, do we have so much trouble predicting the weather? To understand why the weather is so unpredictable we must look at the nature of scientific prediction.

P3 ➔ Suppose you want to predict the location of a car on a road 1 minute from now. You need two basic pieces of information: where the car is now, and how fast it is moving. If the car is now passing Smith Road and heading north at 1 mile per minute, it will be 1 mile north of Smith Road in 1 minute.

P4 Now, suppose you want to predict the weather. Again, you need two basic types of information: (1) the current weather and (2) how weather changes from one moment to the next. You could attempt to predict the weather by creating a "model world." For example, you could overlay a globe of the Earth with graph paper and then specify the current temperature, pressure, cloud cover, and wind within each square. These are your starting points, or initial conditions. Next, you could input all the initial conditions into a computer, along with a set of equations (physical laws) that describe the processes that can change weather from one moment to the next.

P5 ➔ Suppose the initial conditions represent the weather around the Earth at this very moment and you run your computer model to predict the weather for the next month in New York City. The model might tell you that tomorrow will be warm and sunny, with cooling during the next week and a major storm passing through a month from now. But suppose you run the model again, making one minor change in the initial conditions—say, a small change in the wind speed somewhere over Brazil. A This slightly different initial condition will not change the weather prediction for tomorrow in New York City. B But for next month's weather, the two predictions may not agree at all! C

P6 The disagreement between the two predictions arises because the laws governing weather can cause very tiny changes in initial conditions to be greatly magnified over time. D This extreme sensitivity to initial conditions is sometimes called the *butterfly effect:* If initial conditions change by as much as the flap of a butterfly's wings, the resulting prediction may be very different.

P7 ➔ The butterfly effect is a hallmark of *chaotic systems*. Simple systems are described by linear equations in which, for example, increasing a cause produces a proportional increase in an effect. In contrast, chaotic systems are described by nonlinear equations, which allow for subtler and more intricate interactions. For example, the economy is nonlinear because a rise in interest rates does not automatically produce a corresponding change in consumer spending. Weather is nonlinear because a change in the wind speed in one location does not automatically produce a corresponding change in another location.

P8 → Despite their name, chaotic systems are not necessarily random. In fact, many chaotic systems have a kind of underlying order that explains the general features of their behavior even while details at any particular moment remain unpredictable. In a sense, many chaotic systems—like the weather—are "predictably unpredictable." Our understanding of chaotic systems is increasing at a tremendous rate, but much remains to be learned about them.

14. According to the passage, why will it be difficult to predict weather?

Ⓐ We have to learn more about chaotic systems.
Ⓑ We don't communicate globally.
Ⓒ We need more powerful computers.
Ⓓ We must understand the physical laws of atoms.

15. The word particular in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ basic
Ⓑ specific
Ⓒ unusual
Ⓓ new

16. The word govern in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ change
Ⓑ control
Ⓒ show
Ⓓ explain

17. Why does the author mention "a car" in paragraph 3?

Ⓐ The car is an example of how conditions are used to make predictions.
Ⓑ The author digresses in order to tell a story about a car.
Ⓒ The car introduces the concept of computer models.
Ⓓ The mathematical equations for the car are very simple to understand.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [→].

18. Why do the predictions disagree for the computer model described in paragraph 5?

Ⓐ The conditions at the beginning were very different.
Ⓑ The model was not accurately programmed.
Ⓒ Computer models cannot predict weather.
Ⓓ Over time models are less reliable.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [→].

19. Why is weather considered a chaotic system?

Ⓐ Because it is made up of random features
Ⓑ Because it is not yet very well understood
Ⓒ Because it is described by nonlinear equations
Ⓓ Because it does not have an orderly structure

20. Based on information in paragraph 6, which of the following best explains the term "butterfly effect"?

Ⓐ Slight variations in initial conditions can cause very different results.
Ⓑ A butterfly's wings can be used to predict different conditions in various locations.
Ⓒ The weather is as difficult to predict as the rate of a butterfly's wings when it flaps them.
Ⓓ A butterfly flaps its wings in one location, which automatically produces a result in another place.

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

21. Why does the author mention "the economy" in paragraph 7?

Ⓐ To contrast a simple system with a chaotic system
Ⓑ To provide an example of another chaotic system
Ⓒ To compare nonlinear equations with linear equations
Ⓓ To prove that all nonlinear systems are not chaotic

Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

22. The word random in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ practical
Ⓑ objective
Ⓒ controlled
Ⓓ unorganized

23. The word features in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ problems
Ⓑ exceptions
Ⓒ characteristics
Ⓓ benefits

24. In paragraph 8, what does the author suggest about our knowledge of chaotic systems?

Ⓐ It will never allow us to make accurate predictions.
Ⓑ It has not improved very much over the years.
Ⓒ It reveals details that can be predicted quite accurately.
Ⓓ It requires more research by the scientific community.

Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

For next week's weather, the new model may yield a slightly different prediction.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Because weather is a chaotic system, it is very difficult to predict.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The accuracy of weather prediction will improve as we make progress in the application of computers to equations.

B It is very easy to make predictions about the location of a car when you know where it is and how fast it is going.

C A slight variation in initial conditions will cause a very different prediction for weather over the long term.

D Because weather is chaotic but not random, it may be described by nonlinear equations that provide for sensitive interactions.

E The economic system demonstrates chaotic behavior, and it must be represented by a nonlinear equation.

F Weather is predictable only within a time frame of a few weeks because of the nature of scientific prediction.

Reading 3 "Building with Arches"

Round Arch and Vault

P1 ➔ Although the round arch was used by the ancient peoples of Mesopotamia several centuries before our common era, it was most fully developed by the Romans, who perfected the form in the 2nd century B.C.E. The arch has many virtues. In addition to being an attractive form, it enables the architect to open up fairly large spaces in a wall without risking the building's structural soundness. These spaces admit light, reduce the weight of the walls, and decrease the amount of material needed. As utilized by the Romans, the arch is a perfect semicircle, although it may seem elongated if it rests on columns. It is constructed from wedge-shaped pieces of stone that meet at an angle always perpendicular to the curve of the arch. Because of tensions and compressions inherent in the form, the arch is stable only when it is complete, when the topmost stone, the **keystone**, has been set in place. For this reason an arch under construction must be supported from below, usually by a wooden framework.

P2 ➔ Among the most elegant and enduring of Roman structures based on the arch is the Pont du Gard at Nimes, France, built about 15 C.E. when the empire was nearing its farthest expansion. At this time, Roman industry, commerce, and agriculture were at their peak. Engineering was applied to an ambitious system of public-works projects, not just in Italy but in the outlying areas as well. The Pont du Gard functioned as an aqueduct, a structure meant to transport water, and its lower level served as a footbridge across the river. That it stands today virtually intact after nearly two thousand years (and is crossed by cyclists on the route of the famous Tour de France bicycle race) testifies to the Romans' brilliant engineering skills. Visually, the Pont du Gard exemplifies the best qualities of arch construction. Solid and heavy, obviously durable, it is shot through with open spaces that make it seem light and its weight-bearing capabilities effortless.

P3 ➔ When the arch is extended in depth—when it is, in reality, many arches placed flush one behind the other—the result is called a **barrel vault**. This vault construction makes it possible to create large interior spaces. The Romans made great use of the barrel vault, but for its finest expression we look many hundreds of years later, to the churches of the Middle Ages.

P4 ➔ The church of Sainte-Foy, in the French city of Conques, is an example of the style prevalent throughout Western Europe from about 1050 to 1200—a style known as **Romanesque**. Earlier churches had used the Roman round arch and barrel vault so as to add height to their churches. Until this period most churches had beamed wooden roofs, which not only posed a threat of fire but also limited the height to which architects could aspire. With the stone barrel vault, they could achieve the soaring, majestic space we see in the nave of Sainte-Foy to span the spaces between the interior columns that ultimately held up the roof. With the Romanesque style, builders set a stone barrel vault as a ceiling over the nave, hiding the roof structure from view. The barrel vault unified the interior visually, providing a soaring, majestic climax to the rhythms announced by the arches below.

Pointed Arch and Vault

P5 ➔ While the round arch and vault of the Romanesque era solved many problems and made many things possible, they nevertheless had certain drawbacks. For one thing, a round arch, to be stable, must be a semicircle; therefore, the height of the arch is limited by its width. Two other difficulties were weight and darkness. Barrel vaults are both literally and visually heavy, calling for huge masses of stone to maintain their structural stability. They exert an outward thrust all along their base, which builders countered by setting them in massive walls that they dared not weaken with light-admitting openings. The **Gothic** period in Europe, which followed the Romanesque, solved these problems with the pointed arch. A

P6 The pointed arch, while seemingly not very different from the round one, offers many advantages. B Because the sides arc up to a point, weight is channeled down to the ground at a steeper angle, and therefore the arch can

be taller. The vault constructed from such an arch also can be much taller than a barrel vault. [C] Architects of the Gothic period found they did not need heavy masses of material throughout the curve of the vault, as long as the major points of intersection were reinforced. [D]

Glossary
nave: the long central area in a church with aisles on each side

27. Why does the author mention the "keystone" in paragraph 1?

Ⓐ To explain the engineering of an arch
Ⓑ To provide historical background on arches
Ⓒ To point out one of the virtues of arches
Ⓓ To suggest an alternative to the arch

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

28. The word inherent in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ uncertain
Ⓑ unsatisfactory
Ⓒ expansive
Ⓓ essential

29. The Pont du Gard mentioned in paragraph 2 has all of the following characteristics EXCEPT

Ⓐ It was an aqueduct.
Ⓑ It is still being used.
Ⓒ It was built 2,000 years ago.
Ⓓ It was repaired recently.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

30. The word virtually in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ obviously
Ⓑ accurately
Ⓒ routinely
Ⓓ practically

31. According to paragraph 3, what is the advantage of a barrel vault?

Ⓐ It was used in the Middle Ages.
Ⓑ Many arches were joined.
Ⓒ The space inside was larger.
Ⓓ It was a typical Roman look.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

32. What can be inferred from paragraph 4 about Romanesque architecture?

Ⓐ Arches and barrel vaults were used in the designs.
Ⓑ Wood beams characterized the buildings.
Ⓒ The structures were smaller than those of Roman style.
Ⓓ The architecture was popular during the Roman occupation.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

33. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Architects wanted to build higher ceilings in churches, but they were limited because of the fire hazard caused by wooden beams in the roofs.
Ⓑ The majority of the churches prior to this time were constructed with wooden roofs that caused a considerable fire hazard because of their height.
Ⓒ The wood beams in the roofs of most churches before this period were a concern because of fire and the constraints they imposed on the height of the ceiling.
Ⓓ The limitations on the architecture of the churches were a result of the construction materials and the limited vision of the architects.

34. The word achieve in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ retain
Ⓑ accomplish
Ⓒ decorate
Ⓓ finance

35. The word ultimately in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ partially
Ⓑ frequently
Ⓒ carefully
Ⓓ finally

36. According to paragraph 5, why are Romanesque churches so dark?

Ⓐ It was a characteristic of construction with pointed arches.
Ⓑ It was too difficult to make windows in the heavy materials.
Ⓒ Openings for light could have compromised the structure.
Ⓓ Reinforcements covered the areas where light could shine in.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

37. How did Gothic architects extend the height of their arches?

Ⓐ By using barrel vaults
Ⓑ By designing pointed arches
Ⓒ By including a nave
Ⓓ By adding windows

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

These reinforcements, called ribs, are visible in the nave ceiling of Reims Cathedral.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions:** Complete the table by matching the phrases on the left with the headings on the right. Select the appropriate answer choices and drag them to the type of architecture to which they relate. TWO of the answer choices will NOT be used. ***This question is worth 4 points.***

To delete an answer choice, click on it. To see the passage, click on **View Text**.

Answer Choices	**Round Arch**
A Allowed architects to create a taller arch	●
B Used in fortresses so that the soldiers could see out	●
C Represented the Romanesque style of architecture	●
D Similar to arches constructed in the ancient world	●
E Popular in many structures of the Gothic period	**Pointed Arch**
F Required special building materials for construction	●
G Prevalent in churches during the Middle Ages	●
H Associated with structures that include barrel vaults	●
I Permitted openings in or around them for light	

Reading 4 "The Evolution of Birds"

The Origin of Birds

P1 Analysis of birds and of reptilian fossils indicate that birds belong to the group called *therapods*. Several species of dinosaurs closely related to birds had feathers with vanes, and a wider range of species had filamentous feathers. Such findings imply that feathers evolved long before powered flight. Among the possible functions of these early feathers were insulation, camouflage, and courtship display.

Derived Characteristics of Birds

P2 ➔ Many of the characteristics of birds are adaptations that facilitate flight, including weight-saving modifications that make flying more efficient. For example, birds lack a urinary bladder, and the females of most species have only one ovary. Living birds are also toothless, an adaptation that trims the weight of the head.

P3 A bird's most obvious adaptations for flight are its wings and feathers. Feathers are made of the protein B-keratin, which is also found in the scales of other reptiles. The shape and arrangement of the feathers form the wings into airfoils, and they illustrate some of the same principles of aerodynamics as the wings of an airplane. Power for flapping the wings comes from contractions of large pectoral (breast) muscles anchored to a keel on the sternum (breastbone). Some birds, such as eagles and hawks, have wings adapted for soaring on air currents and flap their wings only occasionally; other birds, including hummingbirds, must flap their wings continuously to stay aloft. Among the fastest birds are the appropriately named swifts, which can fly up to 170 km/hr.

P4 A Flight provides numerous benefits. B It enhances hunting and scavenging; many birds consume flying insects, an abundant, highly nutritious food resource. C Flight also provides ready escape from earthbound predators and enables some birds to migrate great distances to exploit different food resources and seasonal breeding areas. D

P5 Flying requires a great expenditure of energy from an active metabolism. Birds are endothermic; they use their own metabolic heat to maintain a high, constant body temperature. Feathers, and in some species layers of fat, provide insulation that enables birds to retain their body heat. The lungs have tiny tubes leading to and from elastic air sacs that improve airflow and oxygen uptake. This efficient respiratory system with a four-chambered heart keep tissues well supplied with oxygen and nutrients, supporting a high rate of metabolism.

P6 Flight also requires both acute vision and fine muscle control. Birds have excellent eyesight. The visual and motor areas of the brain are well developed, and the brain is proportionately larger than those of amphibians and nonbird reptiles. Birds generally display very complex behaviors, particularly during breeding season, when they engage in elaborate courtship rituals.

P7 How did flight evolve in the therapods? In one scenario, feathers may have enabled the small, running dinosaurs chasing prey or escaping predators to gain extra lift as they jumped up into the air. Or, small dinosaurs could have gained traction as they ran up hills by flapping their feathered forelimbs—a behavior seen in birds today. In a third scenario, some dinosaurs could have climbed trees and glided, aided by feathers. Whether birds took to the air from the ground up or from the trees down, an essential question being studied by scientists ranging from paleontologists to engineers is how their efficient flight stroke evolved.

P8 ➔ By 150 million years ago, feathered therapods had evolved into birds. *Archaeopteryx*, which was discovered in a German limestone quarry in 1861, remains the earliest known bird. It had feathered wings but retained ancestral characteristics such as teeth, clawed digits in its wings, and a long tail. *Archaeopteryx* flew well at high speeds, but unlike a present-day bird, it could not take off from a standing position. Fossils of later birds from the Cretaceous show a gradual loss of certain ancestral dinosaur features, such as teeth and clawed forelimbs, as well as the acquisition of innovations found in extant birds, including a short tail covered by a fan of feathers.

Glossary
Cretaceous: a time period, 144–65 million years ago

40. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Results of investigations indicate that birds probably flew before they had feathers.
Ⓑ Analysis suggests that birds did not fly immediately after they had developed feathers.
Ⓒ The time frame for the evolution of feathers is not clear from the studies cited.
Ⓓ According to researchers, birds developed feathers in order to achieve flight.

41. The word modifications in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ made different
Ⓑ made better
Ⓒ made smaller
Ⓓ made modern

42. According to paragraph 2, how did birds adapt to achieve efficient flight?

Ⓐ They developed new, lighter organs.
Ⓑ Their muscles became smaller over time.
Ⓒ Most of their weight was distributed in their heads.
Ⓓ Heavy teeth disappeared during evolution.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

43. In paragraph 3, how does the author explain the term "keratin"?

Ⓐ By identifying it in feathers and scales
Ⓑ By comparing it to airfoils
Ⓒ By providing a definition in the text
Ⓓ By describing the way that it looks

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

44. According to paragraph 3, which of the following is true about the wings of birds?

Ⓐ All birds flap their wings constantly by using breast muscles.
Ⓑ Eagles and hawks have wings that propel them at 170 km/hr.
Ⓒ The airfoils of birds function like the wings on airplanes.
Ⓓ Wings are attached to airfoils in the bird's skeletal structure.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

45. The word principles in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ criticism
Ⓑ examples
Ⓒ topics
Ⓓ rules

46. The word elaborate in the passage is *opposite* in meaning to

Ⓐ simple
Ⓑ quiet
Ⓒ sad
Ⓓ short

47. The word essential in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ very clear
Ⓑ very important
Ⓒ very difficult
Ⓓ very new

48. According to the passage, how did therapods develop flight?

Ⓐ Engineers believe that they flapped their wings to gain lift.
Ⓑ Scientists have proposed several different possibilities for flight.
Ⓒ Paleontologists think that they glided down from high trees.
Ⓓ Researchers confirm that flight began with running and jumping.

49. According to paragraph 8, what can be inferred about *Archaeopteryx*?

Ⓐ A feathered fantail was prominent.
Ⓑ Lift off was achieved by running or gliding.
Ⓒ Teeth had been replaced by a beak.
Ⓓ The habitat extended throughout Europe.

Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

50. All of the following are mentioned as adaptations to the bird's anatomy to accommodate flight EXCEPT

Ⓐ the arrangement of feathers
Ⓑ a high metabolic rate
Ⓒ very sharp eyes
Ⓓ small legs and feet

51. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

Furthermore, migration allows birds to avoid climates that are too hot or too cold during certain seasons.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

52. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Birds evolved 150 million years ago.

●

●

●

Answer Choices

A Birds and reptiles are most probably related.

B Feathers are among the most unusual evolutionary changes.

C Many structural adaptations were required for birds to fly.

D Therapods are relatively small, meat-eating dinosaurs.

E There are a number of advantages for creatures that fly.

F Migration patterns are typical of many species of birds.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 4, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 13

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

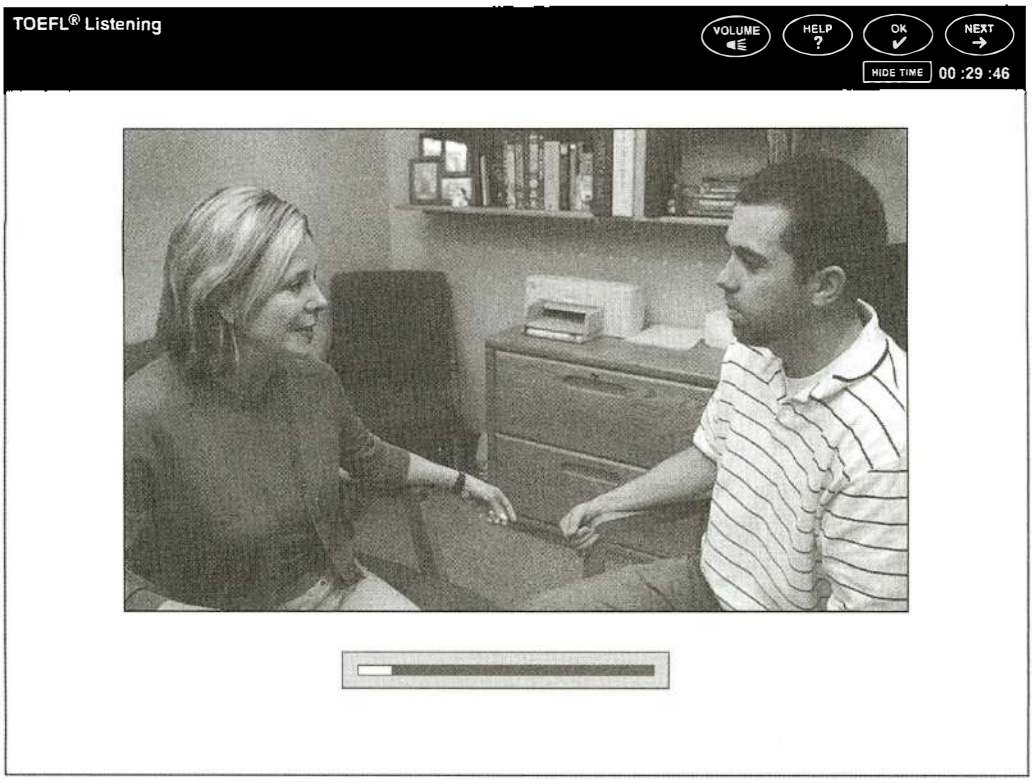
This is the short format for the Listening section. On the short format, you will listen to two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You will have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 20 minutes to answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"



1. Why does the man go to see his professor?

   Ⓐ To take a makeup test for a class that he missed
   Ⓑ To explain why he has been absent from class
   Ⓒ To turn in an extra credit project to the professor
   Ⓓ To ask the professor how to bring up his grade

2. Why did Ernie get a low grade on the last test?

   Ⓐ He does not understand the material.
   Ⓑ He is not a very good student.
   Ⓒ He did not have time to finish it.
   Ⓓ He was in a hurry to leave the class.

3. What do we know about the test?

   Ⓐ There were 100 questions on it.
   Ⓑ It was worth 25 percent of the final grade.
   Ⓒ The test was an extra credit assignment.
   Ⓓ The questions were very difficult.

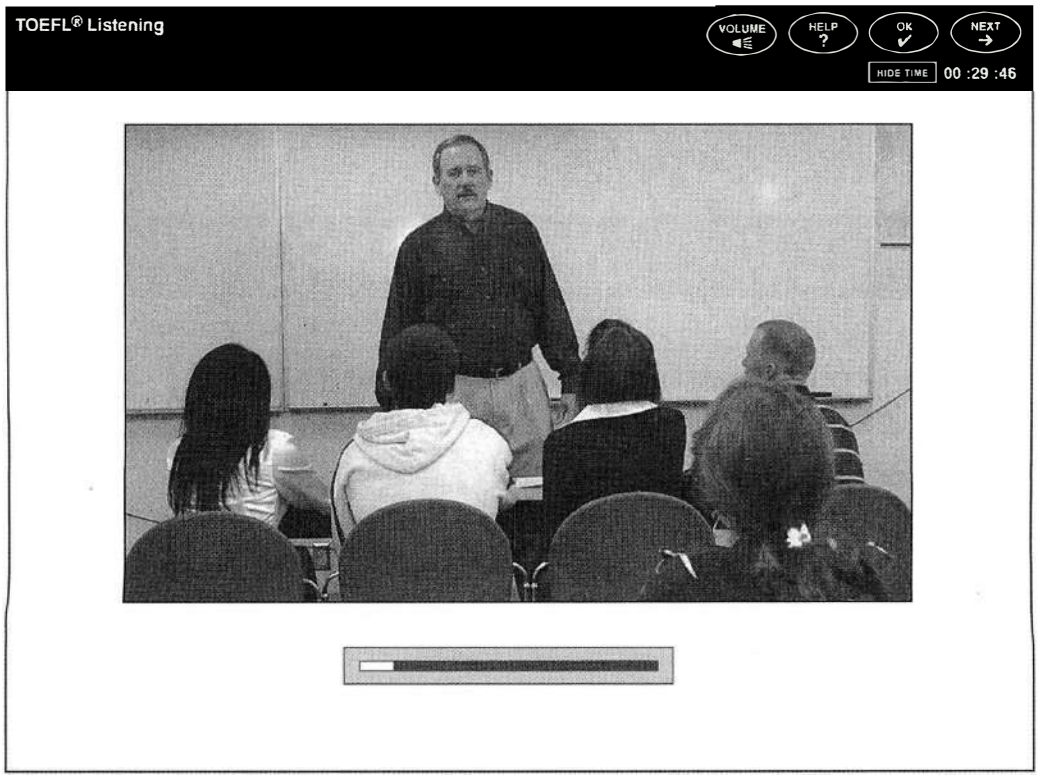
4. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

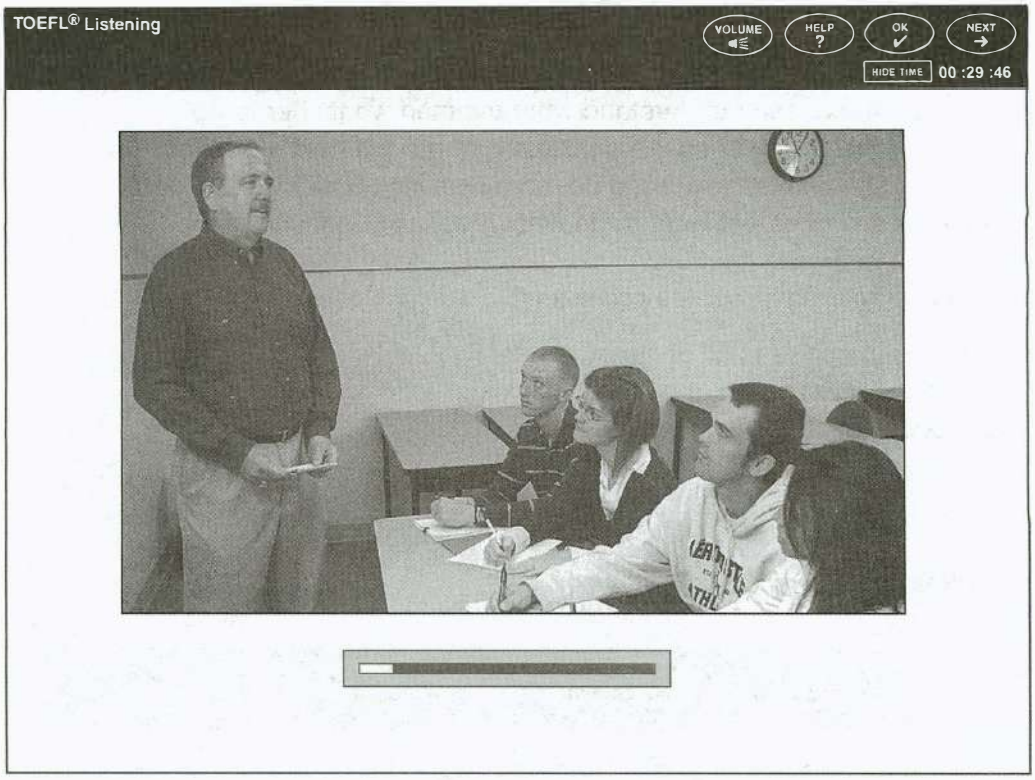
   Ⓐ Because she doesn't understand what the man wants her to do
   Ⓑ Because she has finished the discussion about the man's problem
   Ⓒ Because she wants the man to be more specific about his plan
   Ⓓ Because she does not want to do what the man suggests

5. What can be inferred about the professor?

   Ⓐ She tries to be fair to all of her students.
   Ⓑ She is not very flexible about her policies.
   Ⓒ She does not have very many students.
   Ⓓ She is not sure what she wants to do.

Listening 2 "Anthropology Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
revisionist

6. Which of the following is the main topic of the lecture?

Ⓐ A progressive view of agriculture
Ⓑ The conditions for the development of agriculture
Ⓒ A comparison of hunter-gatherers and farmers
Ⓓ The negative effects of agriculture on early farmers

7. What are two key characteristics of hunter-gatherers mentioned in the lecture?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] They were taller than farmers.

[B] They ate less well than farmers.

[C] They lived longer than farmers.

[D] They were less physically fit than farmers.

8. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To emphasize the point that he has just made
Ⓑ To indicate that another point will be made
Ⓒ To demonstrate that the point is his opinion
Ⓓ To regain the students' attention for the next point

9. How does the professor organize his lecture?

Ⓐ He contrasts older theories of agriculture with newer ones.
Ⓑ He makes an argument for the revisionist view of agriculture.
Ⓒ He defines revisionism by giving examples of early farmers.
Ⓓ He provides a chronological account of early farmers.

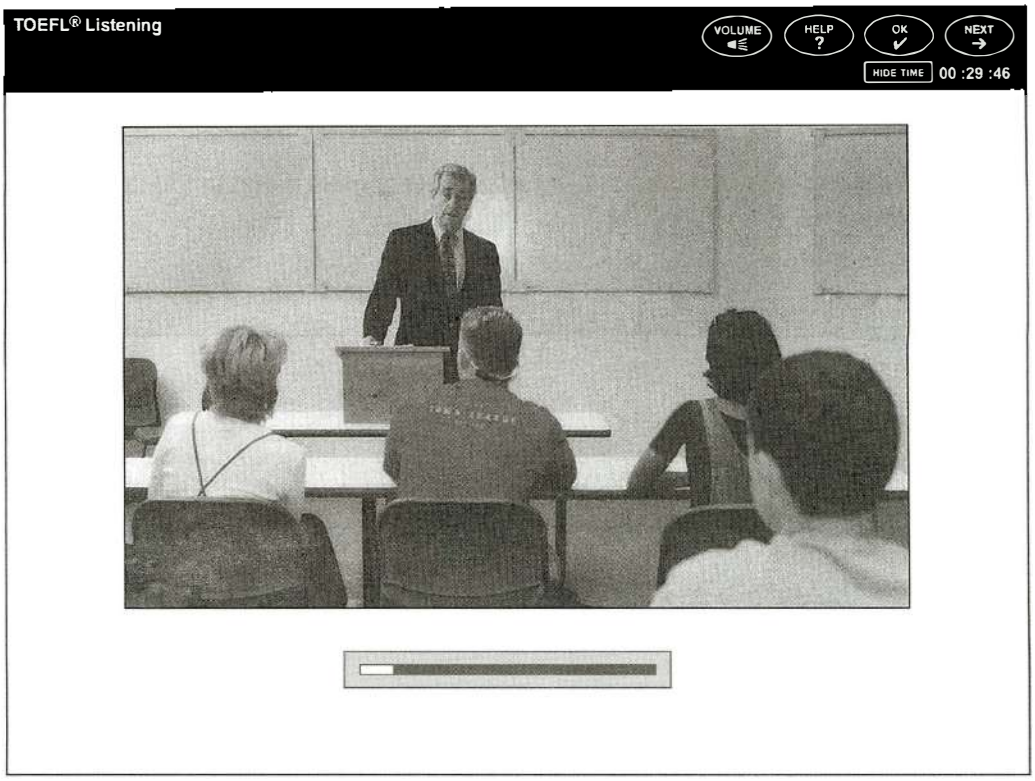
10. *Which of the* following statements best summarizes the position of the revisionists?

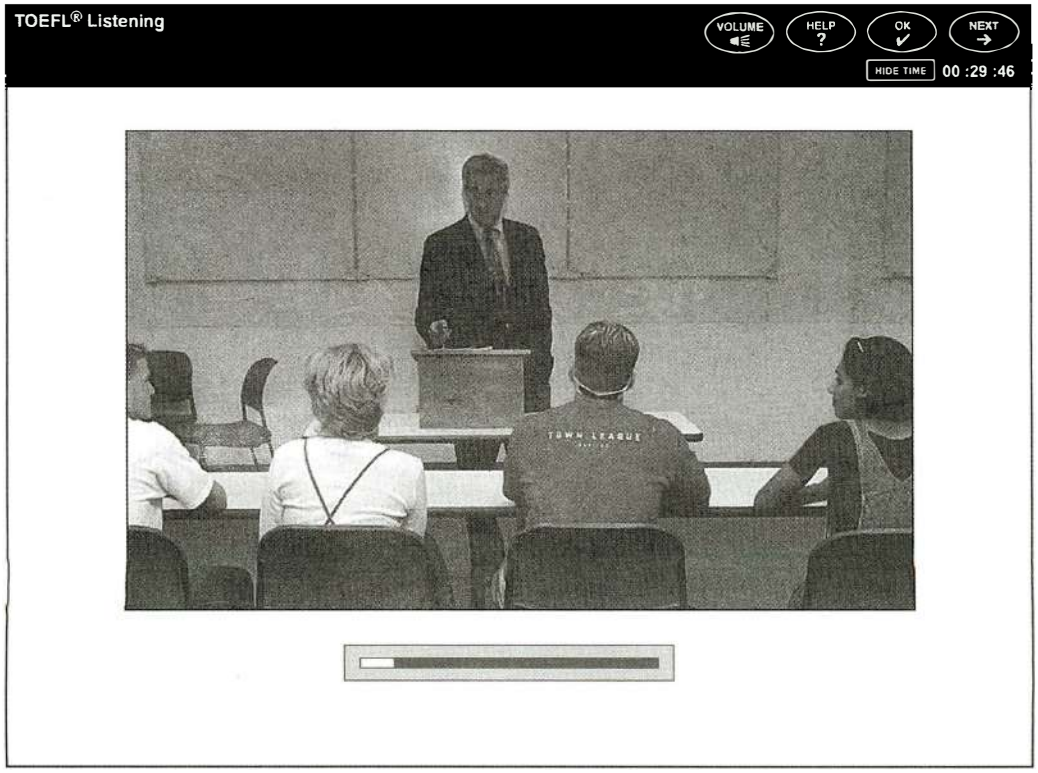
Ⓐ The agricultural revolution affected all human activity.
Ⓑ The development of agriculture had a positive influence on nutrition.
Ⓒ Agriculture contributed to the health risks for early farmers.
Ⓓ Agricultural people had to move from place to place to plant crops.

11. In the lecture, the professor describes the relationship between health and agriculture. Indicate whether each of the following is true or false. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

	Yes	No
A Epidemics were spread by crowded towns and trade.		
B Crop failures threatened the entire population.		
C Wars with invading hunter-gatherers devastated them.		
D Unbalanced diets contributed to malnutrition.		
E Hard labor damaged their bones.		

Listening 3 "Business Class"





12. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Commercials on television
Ⓑ Marketing brand-name products
Ⓒ A book by Rob Frankel
Ⓓ Selling Aunt Ruby's chicken

13. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To emphasize the importance of commercials
Ⓑ To correct something that he said earlier
Ⓒ To identify the time limits for most commercials
Ⓓ To relate new information to a previous example

14. According to the professor, why do consumers develop brand loyalty?

Ⓐ They have a relationship with the personality that the product projects.
Ⓑ They are able to recognize the brand easily when they see it.
Ⓒ They tend to make decisions based on recommendations by friends.
Ⓓ They find a product that they like and continue to buy it.

15. How does the professor emphasize his point about branding?

Ⓐ He uses Aunt Ruby's chicken as an example.
Ⓑ He defines it by contrasting it with related concepts.
Ⓒ He refers to a book that he has written.
Ⓓ He shows a familiar commercial in class.

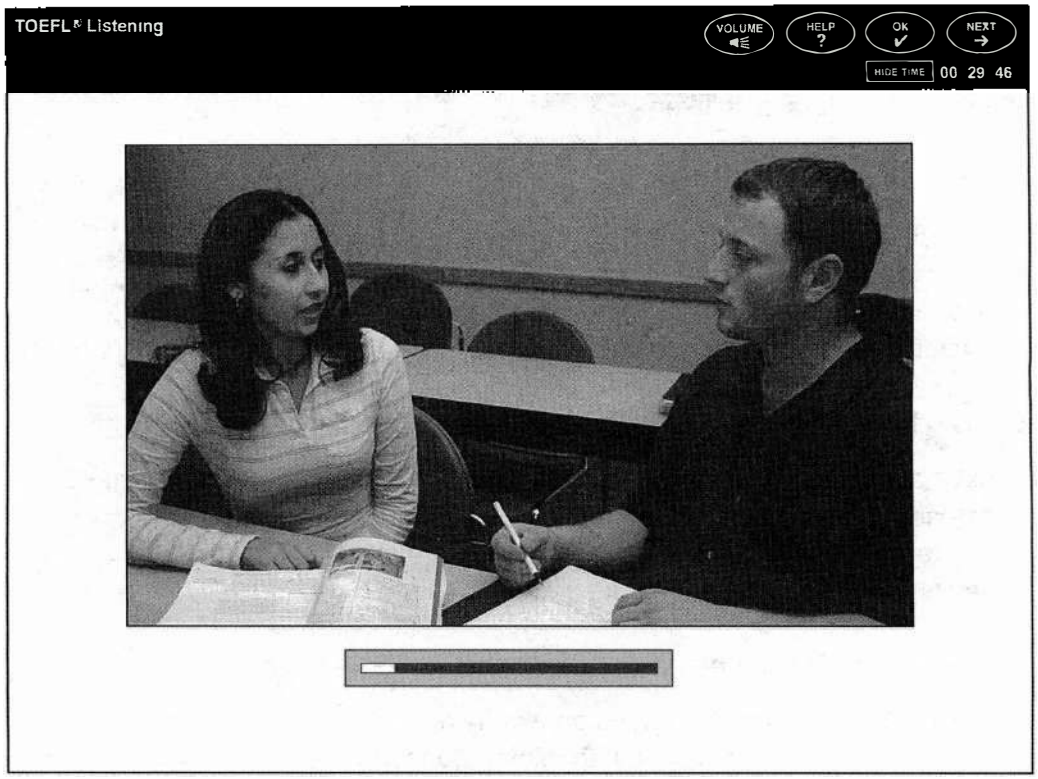
16. Why does Susan mention laundry detergent?

Ⓐ To give an example of price wars
Ⓑ To show that consumers buy different brands
Ⓒ To name an industry that introduces new brands
Ⓓ To clarify the concept of brand loyalty

17. According to the discussion, what would be a good way to sell a product?

Ⓐ Design a good logo to present the product to the public
Ⓑ Hire a celebrity that customers like and relate to
Ⓒ Make it easy for consumers to recognize the packaging
Ⓓ Increase the customer service for the product

Listening 4 "Students on Campus"



18. What is the purpose of this conversation?

Ⓐ The man wants to borrow the woman's lab notes.
Ⓑ The woman is helping the man to write a report.
Ⓒ The man asks the woman to study for their test with him.
Ⓓ The woman and the man are performing an experiment.

19. What is the study about?

Ⓐ Reaction times for drivers drinking alcohol in comparison with those of nondrinkers
Ⓑ The effects of drinking beer as compared with those of drinking gin and tonic
Ⓒ The time that it takes to stop a car going 35 miles per hour when the brakes are applied
Ⓓ The problems of riding bicycles on college campuses that have 35 mile-per-hour speed limits

20. According to the man, why is it important to mention that the subjects were randomly selected?

Ⓐ The random selection explains why the results were so general.
Ⓑ This information allows another researcher to repeat the experiment.
Ⓒ The lab assistant included it in the example that the students received.
Ⓓ Randomly selected subjects assure researchers of an accurate outcome.

21. Why does the woman say this: 🎧

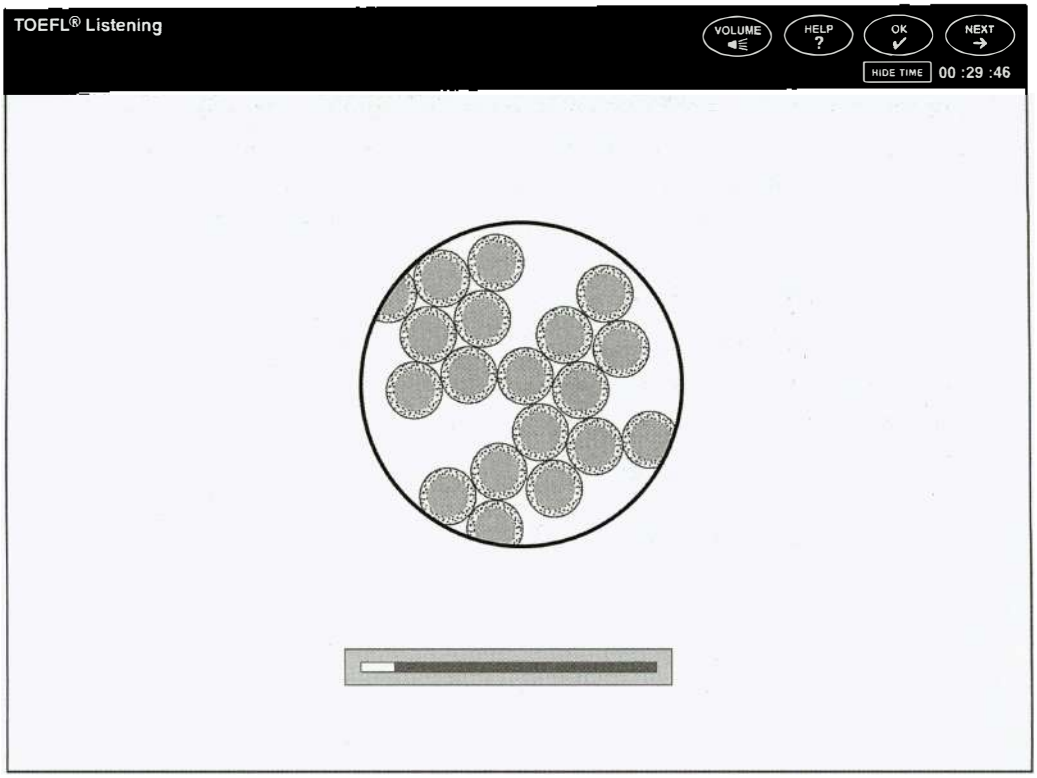
Ⓐ She is not sure about her observation.
Ⓑ She is insulting the man with this comment.
Ⓒ She is certain the man agrees with her.
Ⓓ She is asking for the man's opinion.

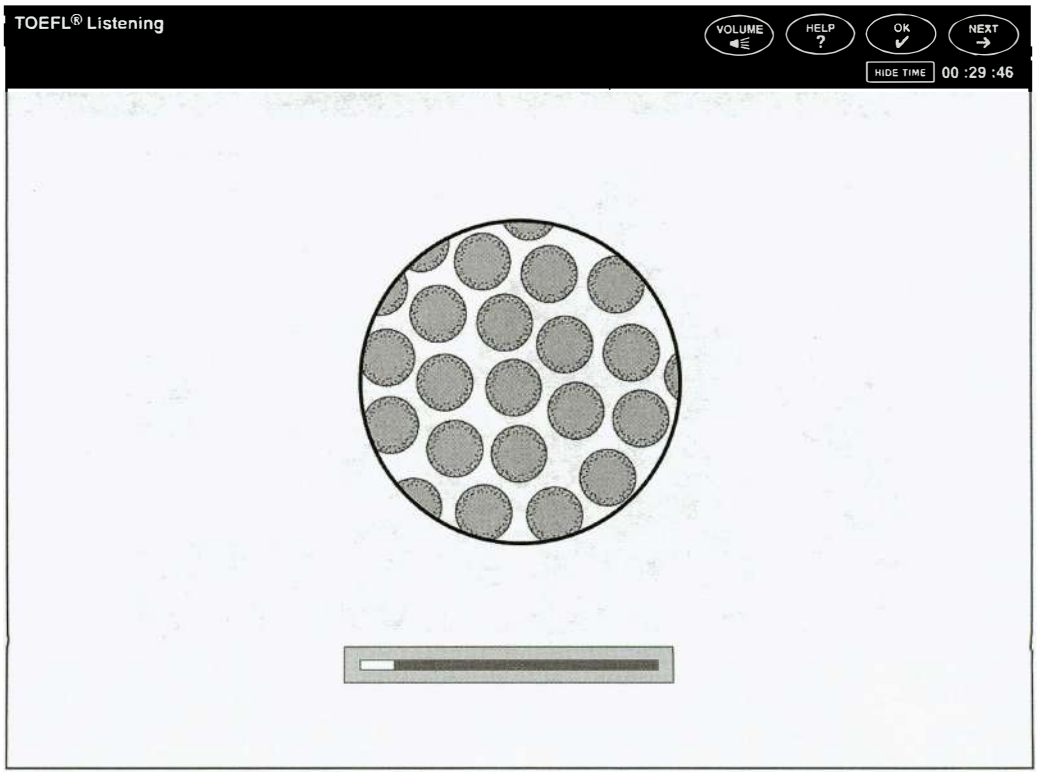
22. Which section includes the conclusions?

Ⓐ Discussion
Ⓑ Results
Ⓒ Chart
Ⓓ Introduction

Listening 5 "Biology Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46

23. What aspect of blood does the professor mainly discuss?

Ⓐ An explanation of stem cells
Ⓑ A process for blood transfusion
Ⓒ A method for producing artificial blood
Ⓓ A discussion of blood typing

24. Why does the student say this: 

Ⓐ She is apologizing for disagreeing with the professor.
Ⓑ She is interrupting politely to ask a question.
Ⓒ She is talking to herself during the lecture.
Ⓓ She is changing the subject of the professor's talk.

25. Why does the professor mention fingerprints?

Ⓐ To demonstrate that blood types are different for individuals
Ⓑ To explain how most of the blood tests are performed
Ⓒ To explain why O blood is considered universal
Ⓓ To help students remember the different antigens

26. In cross matching, how does a compatible match appear under the microscope?

Ⓐ All of the cells are at an equal distance from each other.
Ⓑ The arrangement of the cells looks like two parallel lines.
Ⓒ The cells tend to group together in a large clump.
Ⓓ The red cells and the plasma separate in an irregular pattern.

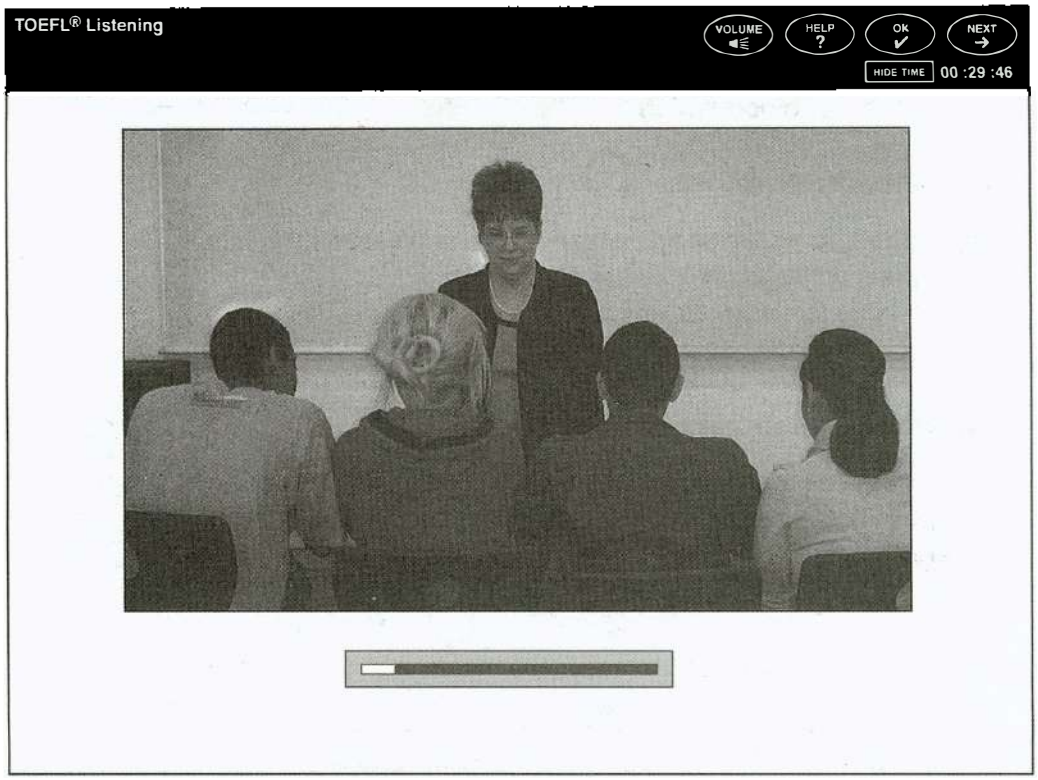
27. Why does the professor mention artificial blood?

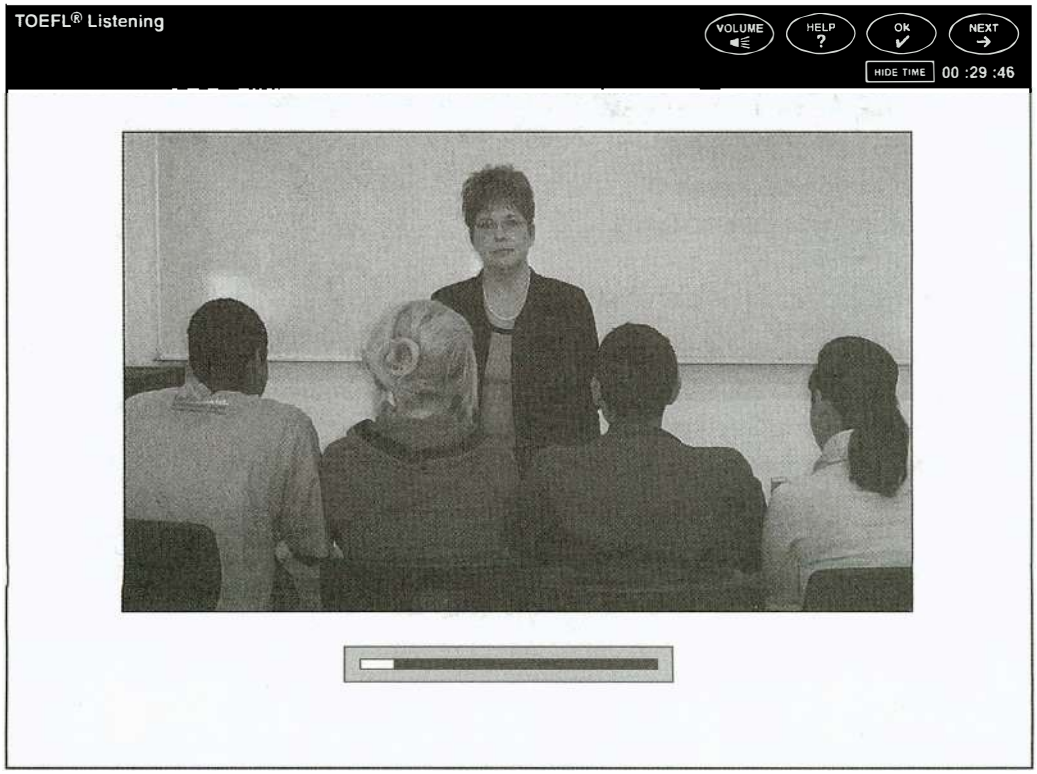
Ⓐ She is referring to the textbook.
Ⓑ She is answering a question.
Ⓒ She is reporting her research.
Ⓓ She is joking with the students.

28. What does the professor imply when she says this: 

Ⓐ She is very uncertain about the risks of the research.
Ⓑ She is somewhat interested in doing research in this area.
Ⓒ She is withdrawing her support for future research.
Ⓓ She agrees that research should continue in spite of problems.

Listening 6 "Orientation Session"





29. What is this discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Success in college
Ⓑ How to read faster
Ⓒ Academic study skills
Ⓓ Research on college students

30. How does the professor organize the discussion?

Ⓐ She cites research to support her arguments.
Ⓑ She gives a demonstration of her theory.
Ⓒ She debates the issues with her students.
Ⓓ She shares strategies that she developed.

31. Why does the professor mention running?

Ⓐ To digress from the topic with a personal story
Ⓑ To make a comparison between reading and running
Ⓒ To show that reading requires physical effort
Ⓓ To clarify the times two rule

32. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She doesn't think the point is very important.
Ⓑ She is trying to finish the lecture on time.
Ⓒ She thinks the idea will fit in better later on.
Ⓓ She doesn't want the student to interrupt her.

33. The professor mentions several negative habits. Match these habits to the explanations. Click on the habit and drag it to the correct explanation.

Habit	Explanation
	Pauses that the eye makes
	Reading the same words more than once
	Moving your lips while reading

Ⓐ Fixating
Ⓑ Auditory reading
Ⓒ Regressing

34. What would the professor probably like the students to do?

Ⓐ Spend more time studying outside of class
Ⓑ Use their dictionaries when they are reading
Ⓒ Take one of her classes at the college
Ⓓ Get help at the Learning Center



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 4, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 14

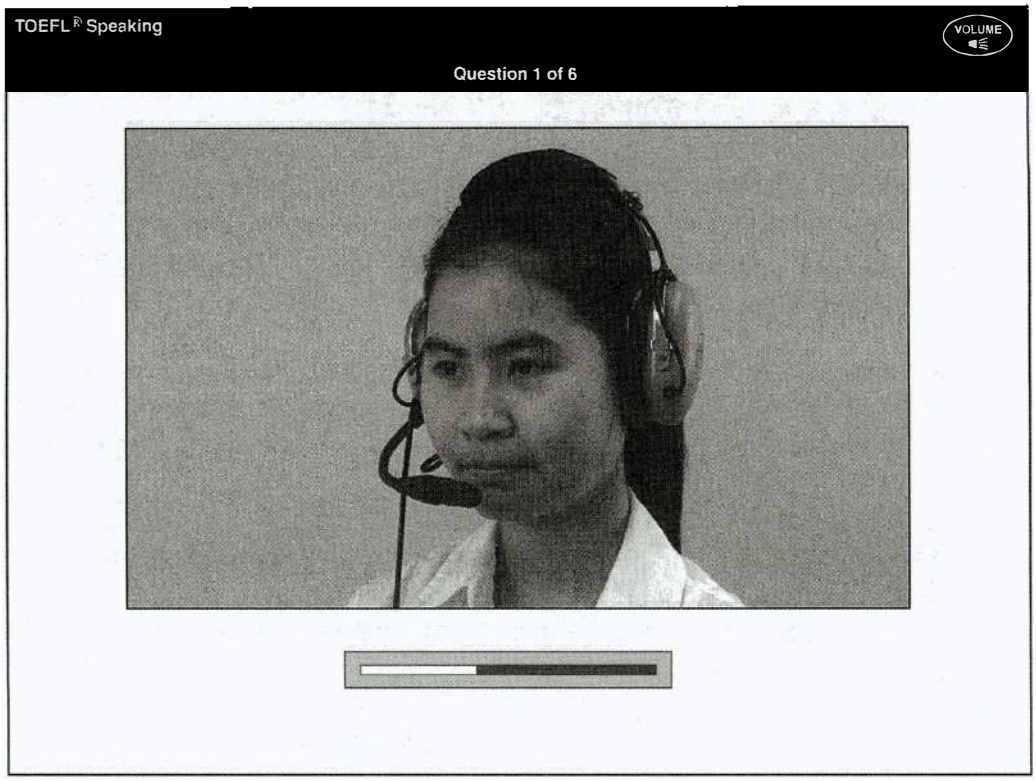
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A City"

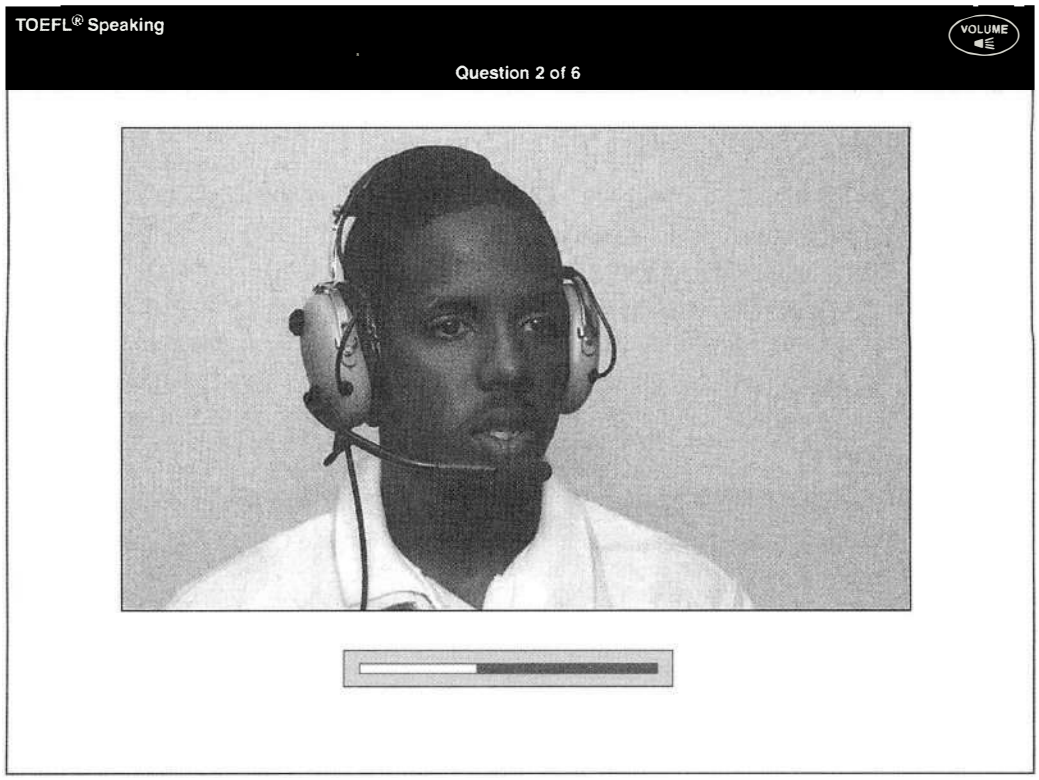


Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
Which city in the world would you like to visit? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Schools"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Agree or disagree with the following statement:

A coeducational school is a better environment than a school that provides education for men only or women only. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

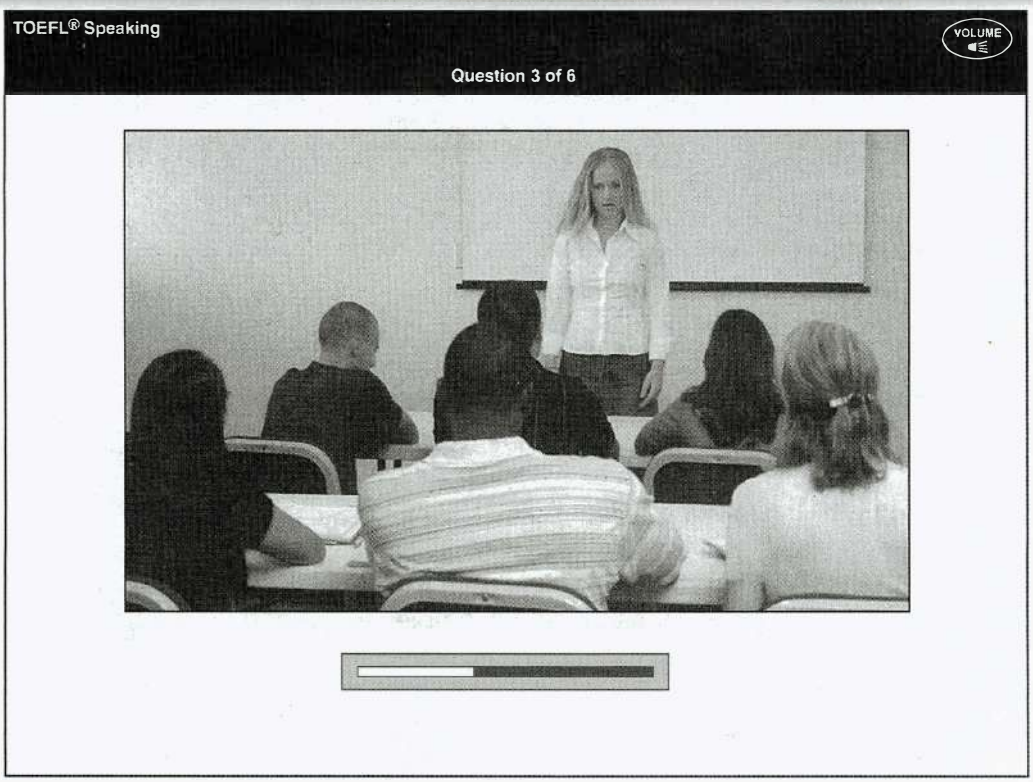
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "English Requirements"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Notice concerning proposed changes in language requirements

All international students at Community College are currently required to submit a TOEFL score of 80 in order to be admitted to credit classes. Students who score lower than 80 are referred to the English Language Institute for additional language instruction. The college is considering a proposal that would allow students with a score of 75 to take at least one credit class while they continue to study part time in the English Language Institute. The students would be assigned to an academic advisor who would help them select an appropriate course. This proposal will be discussed at a public meeting in the student union at 7 P.M. on December 1.



Now listen to a student who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the policy for international students.

Question

The student expresses her opinion of the policy for international students. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

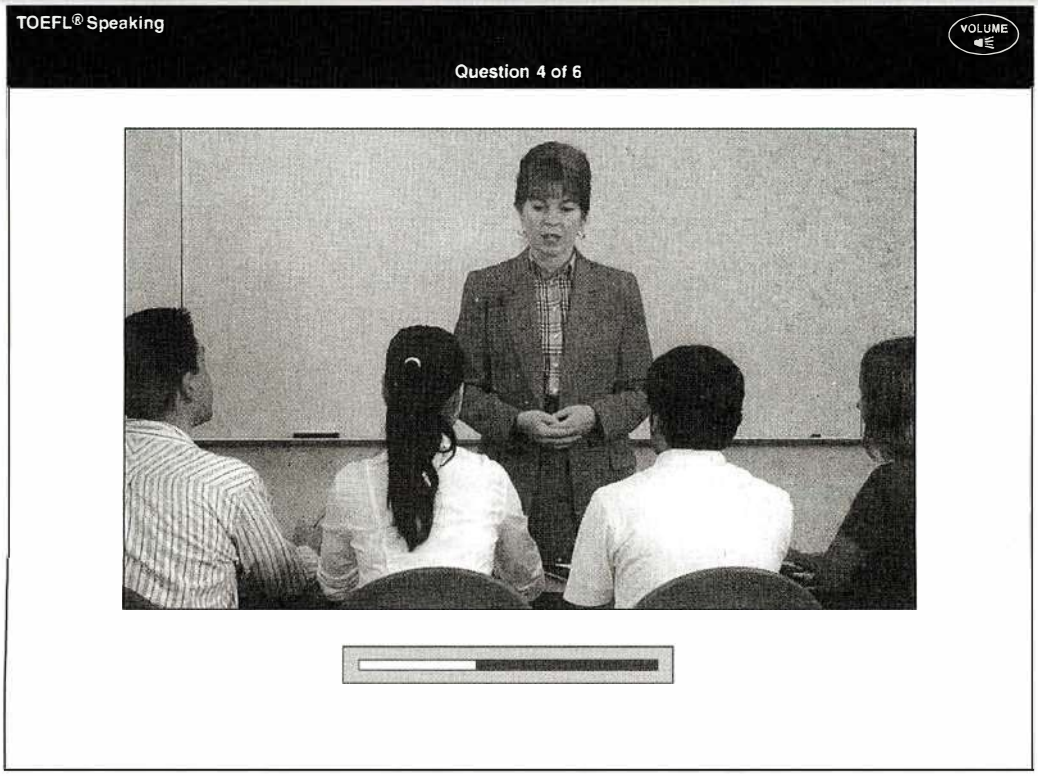
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Myths and Legends"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Myths and Legends

Myths are stories that explain the origin of events from the distant past, as, for example, how the universe was created, how human beings and animals populated the Earth, the reason that death exists, and the nature of the afterlife. Myths are usually tied to religious beliefs and involve beings with supernatural powers. In contrast, legends usually refer to stories about a more recent period of time, and the characters are often real people with heroic qualities that reflect the values of their society and culture. Because the heroes in legends often become larger than life as the legend is retold and embellished, they may actually be attributed with supernatural powers like their mythological counterparts. This blurs the distinction between mythology and legends.



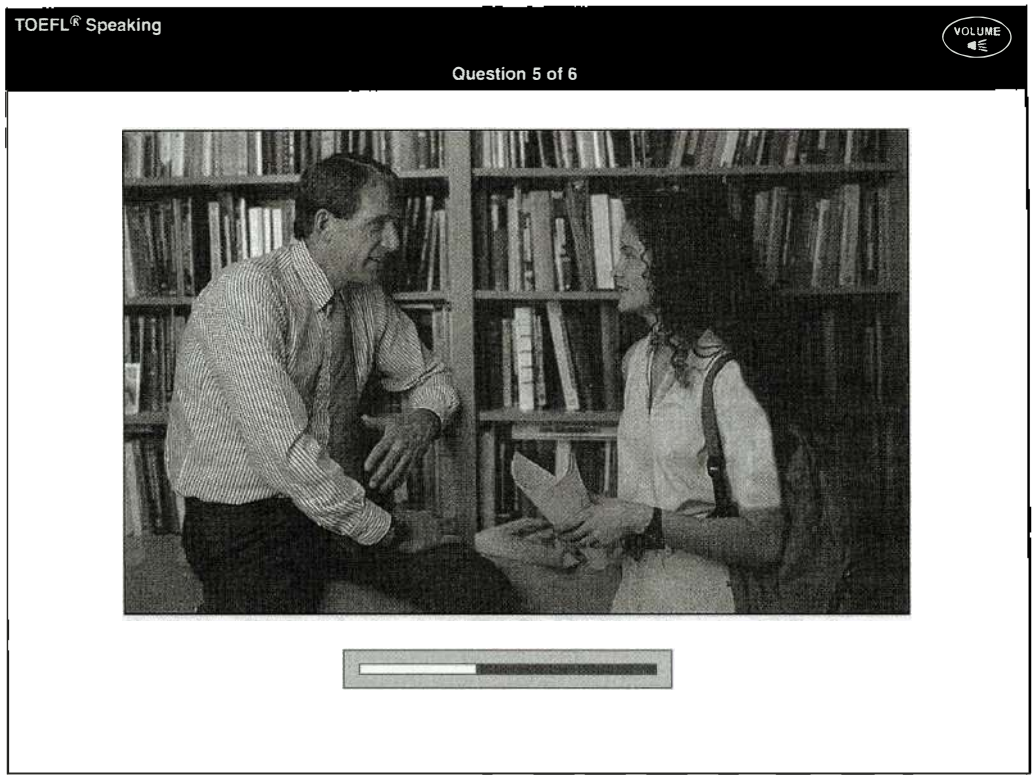
Now listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. The professor is talking about the legend of Paul Bunyan.

Question

Using the main points and examples from the reading, explain the differences between myths and legends. Then refer to the lecture to explain why Paul Bunyan would be considered a legend.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Roommate"

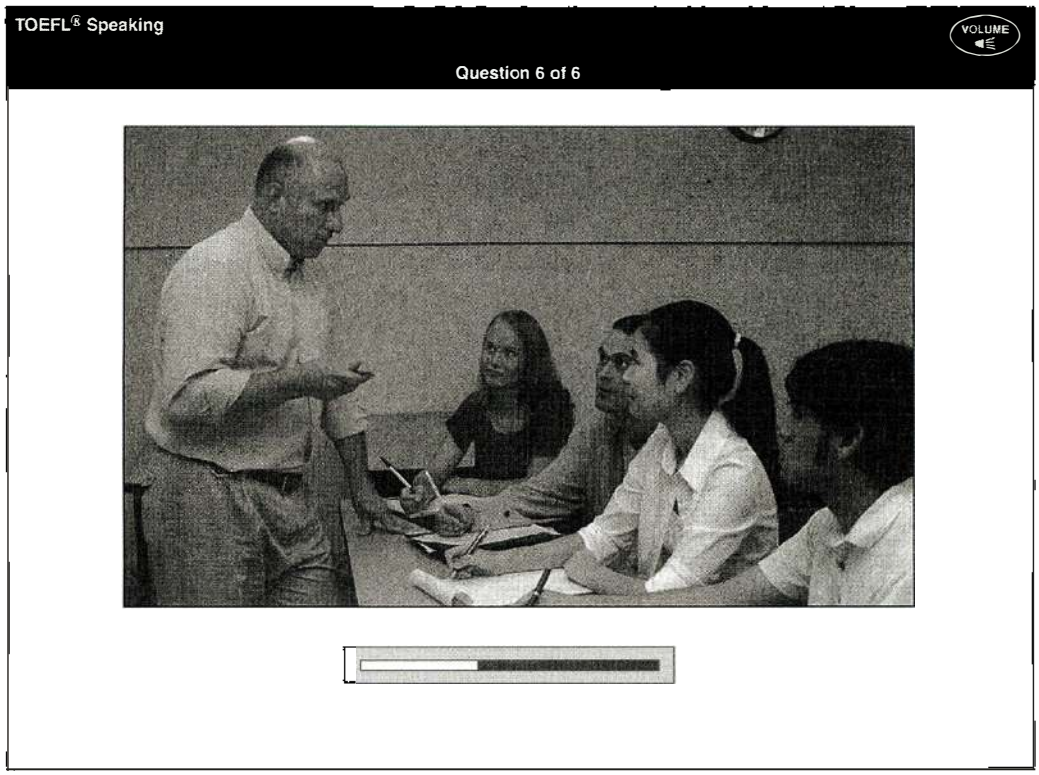


Now listen to a conversation between a student and her advisor.

Question
Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her advisor makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Urban Wildlife"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is discussing the types of habitats for wildlife found in cities.

Question
Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two general types of habitats for wildlife found in urban areas.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Sales Principles"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

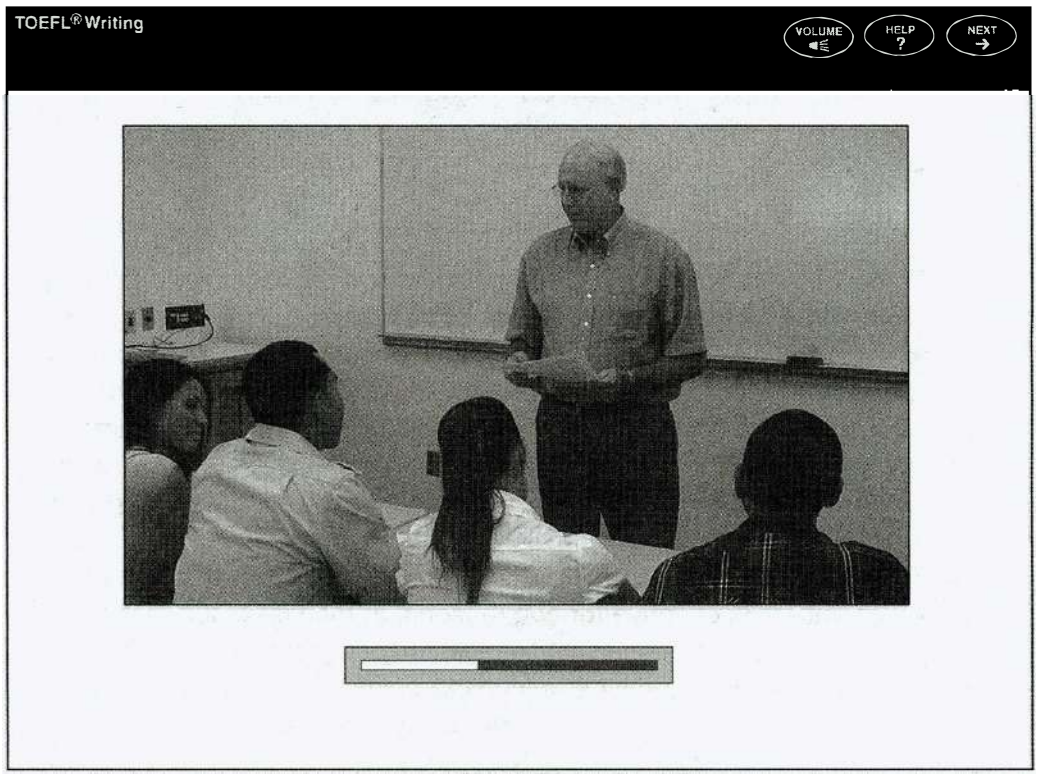
Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

Three basic principles have been shown to increase sales. The first principle is to make more calls. To get more orders, it only makes sense to make more calls. In addition to contacting more potential customers, the salesperson will also get better at making calls because of the practice. Although the exact number of calls to increase the volume of sales will vary with the product, encouraging the sales force to add even a few more calls to their goals has produced good results for all types of businesses.

The second principle, contacting people who hold higher positions in the organization, is effective for two reasons. In the first place, it is more efficient to contact someone with the authority to approve the sale. If the call is made to a lower-level employee, a salesperson may be referred higher and a second call may be necessary. In the second place, if the call is made to a person who holds a lower position, that employee will probably have to take the idea up the line to a higher-level supervisor and will probably not be able to make as strong a case for the sale as the salesperson who made the original contact.

Clearly, closing is the most important part of a sale. If a salesperson continues the conversation without closing, the sale may be lost. Rushing the customer is not a good idea, but when potential objections have been addressed, creating a sense of urgency with some kind of deadline or incentive, and doing it earlier rather than later, will improve the chances of making the sale.

Model Test 4, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 15



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "Lifestyle"

Question
Many people believe that it is very important to make large amounts of money, while others are satisfied to earn a comfortable living. Analyze each viewpoint and take a stand. Give specific reasons for your position.

This is the end of Model Test 4.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 4," Chapter 5, pages 678–705.

MODEL TEST 5: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the short format for the Reading section. On the short format, you will read three passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 60 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Rising Sea Levels"

P1 Sea level must be expressed as a range of values that are under constant reassessment. During the last century, sea level rose 10–20 cm (4–8 inches), a rate 10 times higher than the average rate during the last 3000 years. The 2007 IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change) forecast scenarios for global mean sea level rise this century, given regional variations, are

- Low forecast: 0.18 m (7.1 in.)
- Middle forecast: 0.39 m (15.4 in.)
- High forecast: 0.59 m (23.2 in.)

P2 Observations since 1961 show the average global ocean temperature increased to depths of 3000 m and the ocean absorbed more than 80% of climate system heating. Such warming causes thermal expansion of seawater, contributing to sea level rise. Mountain glaciers and snow cover declined on average in both hemispheres, contributing to sea level rise. Mount Kilimanjaro in Africa, portions of the South American Andes, and the Himalayas will very likely lose most of their glacial ice within the next two decades, affecting local water resources. Glacial ice continues its retreat in Alaska.

P3 Surrounding the margins of Antarctica, and constituting about 11% of its surface area, are numerous ice shelves, especially where sheltering inlets or bays exist. Covering many thousands of square kilometers, these ice shelves extend over the sea while still attached to continental ice. The loss of these ice shelves does not significantly raise sea level, for they already displace seawater. The concern is for the possible surge of grounded continental ice that the ice shelves hold back from the sea.

P4 → Although ice shelves constantly break up to produce icebergs, some large sections have recently broken free. In 1998 an iceberg the size of Delaware broke off the Ronne Ice Shelf, southeast of the Antarctic Peninsula. In March 2000 an iceberg tagged B-15 broke off the Ross Ice Shelf (some 90° longitude west of the Antarctic Peninsula), measuring *twice* the size of Delaware, 300 km by 40 km or 190 mi by 25 mi. Since 1993, six ice shelves have disintegrated in Antarctica. About 8000 km (3090 mi) of ice shelf are gone, changing maps, freeing up islands to circumnavigation, and creating thousands of icebergs. A Larsen-A suddenly disintegrated in 1995. B In only 35 days in early 2002, Larsen-B collapsed into icebergs. C Larsen C, the next segment to the south, is losing mass on its underside. This ice loss is likely a result of the 2.5°C (4.5°F) temperature increase in the peninsula region in the last 50 years. D In response to the increasing warmth, the Antarctic Peninsula is sporting new vegetation growth, reduced sea ice, and disruption of penguin feeding, nesting, and fledging activities.

P5 ➔ A loss of polar ice mass, augmented by melting of alpine and mountain glaciers (which experienced more than a 30% decrease in overall ice mass during the last century) will affect sea-level rise. The IPCC assessment states that "between one-third to one-half of the existing mountain glacier mass could disappear over the next hundred years." Also, "there is conclusive evidence for a worldwide recession of mountain glaciers . . . This is among the clearest and best evidence for a change in energy balance at the Earth's surface since the end of the 19th century."

P6 Unfortunately, the new measurements of Greenland's ice loss acceleration did not reach the IPCC in time for its report. Scientists are considering at least a 1.2 m (3.94 ft) high case for estimates of sea-level rise this century as more realistic given Greenland's present losses coupled with mountain glacial ice losses worldwide. According to Rahmstorf and colleagues, the data now available raise concerns that the climate system, in particular sea level, may be responding more quickly than climate models indicate. . . . The rate of sea-level rise for the past 20 years is 25% faster than the rate of rise in any 20-year period in the preceding 115 years. . . . Since 1990, the observed sea level has been rising faster than the rise projected by models. These increases would continue beyond 2100 even if greenhouse gas concentrations were stabilized.

P7 ➔ A quick survey of world coastlines shows that even a moderate rise could bring changes of unparalleled proportions. At stake are the river deltas, lowland coastal farming valleys, and low-lying mainland areas, all contending with high water, high tides, and higher storm surges. Particularly tragic social and economic consequences will affect small island states—which are unable to adjust within their present country boundaries—disruption of biological systems, loss of biodiversity, reduction in water resources, and evacuation of residents among the impacts there. There could be both internal and international migrations of affected human populations, spread over decades, as people move away from coastal flooding from the sea-level rise.

1. The word range in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ function
   Ⓑ scale
   Ⓒ version
   Ⓓ lack

2. The word likely in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ suddenly
   Ⓑ probably
   Ⓒ hopefully
   Ⓓ actually

3. Why does the author mention "the state of Delaware" in paragraph 4?

   Ⓐ To include the North American continent in the discussion
   Ⓑ To impress the reader with the size of the icebergs
   Ⓒ To emphasize the problems of coastal regions
   Ⓓ To solicit support from residents in the United States

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

4. According to paragraph 4, why is there more new plant life in Antarctica recently?

   Ⓐ The mountain glaciers have melted.
   Ⓑ The land masses have split into islands.
   Ⓒ The icebergs have broken into smaller pieces.
   Ⓓ The temperature has risen by a few degrees.

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

5. It may be inferred from this passage that icebergs are formed for which reason?

   Ⓐ By a drop in ocean temperatures
   Ⓑ When an ice shelf breaks free
   Ⓒ From intensely cold islands
   Ⓓ If mountain glaciers melt

6. In paragraph 5, how does the author explain the loss of polar and glacial ice?

   Ⓐ Stating an educated opinion
   Ⓑ Referring to data in a study
   Ⓒ Comparing sea levels worldwide
   Ⓓ Presenting his research

   Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7. The word conclusive in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ definite
   Ⓑ independent
   Ⓒ unique
   Ⓓ valuable

8. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

   Ⓐ The IPCC *did* not have the data about ice loss in Greenland before the report was published.
   Ⓑ This year, the report from Greenland did not measure the new ice loss for the IPCC.
   Ⓒ The new measurements by the IPCC did not include Greenland's ice loss this time.
   Ⓓ Greenland's recent ice loss had not accelerated enough to be reported to the IPCC.

9. According to paragraph 7, why will people move away from the coastlines in the future?

   Ⓐ It will be too warm for them to live there.
   Ⓑ The coastlines will have too much vegetation.
   Ⓒ Flooding will destroy the coastal areas.
   Ⓓ No agricultural crops will be grown on the coasts.

   Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

10. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about rising sea levels?

    Ⓐ Sea levels would rise without global warming.
    Ⓑ Rising sea levels can be reversed.
    Ⓒ The results of rising sea levels will be serious.
    Ⓓ Sea levels are rising because of new glaciers.

11. The word impacts in the passage is closest in meaning to

    Ⓐ confusion
    Ⓑ disadvantages
    Ⓒ features
    Ⓓ influences

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    The Larsen Ice Shelf, along the east coast of the Antarctic Peninsula, has been retreating slowly for years.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Global warming is causing a rise in sea levels, with accompanying changes in coastal boundaries as well as social and economic ramifications.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The ice shelf called Larsen-A suddenly disintegrated in 1995.

B Even an average rise in sea levels will cause serious social and economic changes.

C Continental ice shelves and grounded ice sheets from Antarctica to the Polar cap are melting into the oceans.

D It is predicted that many human migrations inland will occur along flooded coastal regions.

E The melting of glacial ice on high mountain ranges will affect regional water resources worldwide.

F Scientists at NASA have concluded that the ice sheet in Greenland is melting at a rate of about 1 meter every year.

Reading 2 "Organic Architecture"

P1 ➔ One of the most striking personalities in the development of early-twentieth-century architecture was Frank Lloyd Wright (1867–1959). Wright moved to Chicago, where he eventually joined the firm headed by Louis Sullivan. Wright set out to create "architecture of democracy." Always a believer in architecture as "natural" and "organic," Wright saw it as serving free individuals who have the right to move within a "free" space, envisioned as a nonsymmetrical design interacting spatially with its natural surroundings. He sought to develop an organic unity of planning, structure, materials, and site. Wright identified the *principle of* continuity as fundamental to understanding his view of organic unity: "Classic architecture was all fixation. . . . Now why not let walls, ceilings, floors become seen as component parts of each other? . . . This ideal, profound in its architectural implications . . . I called . . . continuity."

P2 Wright manifested his vigorous originality early, and by 1900 he had arrived at a style entirely his own. In his work during the first decade of the twentieth century, his cross-axial plan and his fabric of continuous roof planes and screens defined a new domestic architecture.

P3 ➔ Wright fully expressed these elements and concepts in Robie House, built between 1907 and 1909. Like other buildings in the Chicago area he designed at about the same time, he called this home a "prairie house." Wright conceived the long, sweeping ground-hugging lines, unconfined by abrupt wall limits, as reaching out toward and capturing the expansiveness of the Midwest's great flatlands. Abandoning all symmetry, the architect eliminated a façade, extended the roofs far beyond the walls, and all but concealed the entrance. Wright filled the "wandering" plan of the Robie House with intricately joined spaces (some large and open, others closed), grouped freely around a great central fireplace. A (He believed strongly in the hearth's age-old domestic significance.) Wright designed enclosed patios, overhanging roofs, and strip windows to provide unexpected light sources and glimpses of the outdoors as people move through the interior space. B These elements, together with the open ground plan, create a sense of space-in-motion inside and out. C The flow of interior space determined the sharp, angular placement of exterior walls. D

P4 The Robie House is a good example of Wright's "naturalism," his adjusting of a building to its site. In this particular case, however, the confines of the city lot constrained the building-to-site relationship more than did the sites of some of Wright's more expansive suburban and country homes. The Kaufmann House, nicknamed "Fallingwater" and designed as a weekend retreat at Bear Run near Pittsburgh, is a prime example of the latter. Perched on a rocky hillside over a small waterfall, this structure extends the Robie House's blocky masses in all four directions. Since the completion of this residence, architects and the public alike have marveled at the fluid interplay between interior and exterior. In designing Fallingwater, Wright, in keeping with his commitment to an "architecture of democracy," sought to incorporate the structure more fully into the site, thereby ensuring a fluid, dynamic exchange between the interior of the house and the natural environment outside. Rather than build a house overlooking or next to the waterfall, Wright decided to build it over the waterfall, because he believed that the inhabitants would become desensitized to the waterfall's presence and power if they merely overlooked it. To take advantage of the location, Wright designed a series of terraces on three levels from a central core structure. The contrast in textures between concrete, painted metal, and natural stones in its walls enliven its shapes, as does Wright's use of full-length strip windows to create a stunning interweaving of interior and exterior space.

P5 ➔ The implied message of Wright's new architecture was space, not mass—a space designed to fit the patron's life and enclosed and divided as required. Wright took special pains to meet his client's requirements, often designing all the accessories of a house. In the late 1930s, he acted on a cherished

dream to provide good architectural design for less prosperous people by adapting the ideas of his prairie house to plans for smaller, less expensive dwellings. The publication of Wright's plans brought him a measure of fame in Europe, especially in Holland and Germany. The issuance in Berlin in 1910 of a portfolio of his work and an exhibition of his designs the following year stimulated younger architects to adopt some of his ideas about open plans. Some forty years before his career ended, his work was already of revolutionary significance.

14. Which of the following is the main idea of this passage?

Ⓐ The design of Robie House
Ⓑ Twentieth-century architecture
Ⓒ Frank Lloyd Wright's work
Ⓓ Residences of the Midwest

15. What did Wright mean by the term "organic" in paragraph 1?

Ⓐ Fixation
Ⓑ Ideal
Ⓒ Continuity
Ⓓ Classic

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

16. The phrase his own in the passage refers to

Ⓐ style
Ⓑ originality
Ⓒ work
Ⓓ plan

17. The word conceived in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ utilized
Ⓑ noticed
Ⓒ created
Ⓓ examined

18. The word Abandoning in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ Influencing
Ⓑ Modifying
Ⓒ Perfecting
Ⓓ Discontinuing

19. It can be inferred from paragraph 3 that the author gives details for the design of the Robie House for which reason?

Ⓐ The design included both indoor and outdoor plans.
Ⓑ Robie House included many of Wright's original ideas.
Ⓒ All of the accessories of the house were included in the design.
Ⓓ Wright lived in Robie House between 1907 and 1909.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

20. The word prime in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ most important
Ⓑ most numerous
Ⓒ most common
Ⓓ most accepted

21. How was "Fallingwater" different from the "Robie House"?

Ⓐ "Fallingwater" was an earlier example of naturalism than "Robie House."
Ⓑ "Fallingwater" was much smaller than "Robie House" because it was a retreat.
Ⓒ "Fallingwater" was better suited to the site with views through huge windows.
Ⓓ "Fallingwater" was built with an open floor plan, unlike "Robie House."

22. According to paragraph 5, why did Wright begin to build smaller versions of his prairie designs?

Ⓐ To publish his plans in Europe
Ⓑ To give the middle class a good design
Ⓒ To help younger architects with their work
Ⓓ To begin a revolution in architecture

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

23. According to paragraph 5, why did Wright's work become well known in Europe?

Ⓐ His plans were published and he held exhibitions.
Ⓑ He visited several universities and gave lectures.
Ⓒ His revolutionary ideas appealed to younger architects.
Ⓓ He was already very famous in the United States.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

24. According to the passage, a prairie house has all of the following features EXCEPT

Ⓐ a central fireplace
Ⓑ enclosed patios
Ⓒ an inviting entrance
Ⓓ strip windows

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

Wright matched his new and fundamental interior spatial arrangement in his exterior treatment.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

By 1900, Frank Lloyd Wright had developed a unique style of architecture.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Wright spent a few years extending his influence to Europe where he was well known.

B Frank Lloyd Wright had attended the University of Wisconsin prior to taking a position with a Chicago firm.

C Wright became famous for spaces that were true to their organic functions.

D "Fallingwater," like other suburban and country homes that Wright built, joined the structure to the natural setting.

E Wright was interested in the design of German building blocks for children created by Friedrich Froebel.

F Robie House and other buildings in Chicago were examples of an organic structure called a "prairie house."

Reading 3 "New Women of the Ice Age"

P1 The status of women in a society depends in large measure on their role in the economy. The reinterpretation of the Paleolithic past centers on new views of the role of women in the food-foraging economy. Amassing critical and previously overlooked evidence from Dolní Věstonice and the neighboring site of Pavlov, researchers Olga Soffer, James Adovasio, and David Hyland now propose that human survival there had little to do with men hurling spears at big-

game animals. Instead, observes Soffer, one of the world's leading authorities on Ice Age hunters and gatherers and an archeologist at the University of Illinois in Champaign-Urbana, it depended largely on women, plants, and a technique of hunting previously invisible in the archeological evidence—net hunting. "This is not the image we've always had of Upper Paleolithic macho guys out killing animals up close and personal," Soffer explains. "Net hunting is communal, and it involves the labor of children and women. And this has lots of implications."

P2 ➔ Many of these implications make her conservative colleagues cringe because they raise serious questions about the focus of previous studies. European archeologists have long concentrated on analyzing broken stone tools and butchered big-game bones, the most plentiful and best preserved relics of the Upper Paleolithic era (which stretched from 40,000 to 12,000 years ago). From these analyses, researchers have developed theories about how these societies once hunted and gathered food. Most researchers ruled out the possibility of women hunters for biological reasons. Adult females, they reasoned, had to devote themselves to breast-feeding and tending infants. "Human babies have always been immature and dependent," says Soffer. "If women are the people who are always involved with biological reproduction and the rearing of the young, then that is going to constrain their behavior. They have to provision that child. For fathers, provisioning is optional."

P3 ➔ To test theories about Upper Paleolithic life, researchers looked to ethnography, the scientific description of modern and historical cultural groups. While the lives of modern hunters do not exactly duplicate those of ancient hunters, they supply valuable clues to universal human behavior. In many historical societies, Soffer observes, women played a key part in net hunting, since the technique did not call for brute strength nor did it place young mothers in physical peril. Among Australian Aborigines, for example, women as well as men knotted the mesh, laboring for as much as two or three years on a fine net. Among Native American groups, they helped lay out their handiwork on poles across a valley floor. Then the entire camp joined forces as beaters. Fanning out across the valley, men, women, and children alike shouted and screamed, flushing out game and driving it in the direction of the net. "Everybody and their mother could participate," says Soffer. "Some people were beating, others were screaming or holding the net. And once you got the net on these animals, they were immobilized. You didn't need brute force. You could club them, hit them any old way."

P4 ➔ People seldom returned home empty-handed. Researchers living among the net hunting Mbuti in the forests of the Congo report that they capture game every time they lay out their woven traps, scooping up 50 percent of the animals encountered. "Nets are a far more valued item in their panoply of food-producing things than bows and arrows are," says Adovasio. So lethal are these traps that the Mbuti generally rack up more meat than they can consume, trading the surplus with neighbors. Other net hunters traditionally smoked or dried their catch and stored it for leaner times.

P5 ➔ [A] Soffer doubts that the inhabitants of Dolní V stonice and Pavlov were the only net makers in Ice Age Europe. [B] Camps stretching from Germany to Russia are littered with a notable abundance of small-game bones, from hares to birds like ptarmigan. And at least some of their inhabitants whittled bone tools that look much like the awls and net spacers favored by historical net makers. [C]

P6 Although the full range of their activities is unlikely ever to be known for certain, there is good reason to believe that Ice Age women played a host of powerful roles. [D] And the research that suggests those roles is rapidly changing our mental images of the past. For Soffer and others, these are exciting times.

27. The word authorities in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ policies
Ⓑ experts
Ⓒ interpretations
Ⓓ tradition

28. How do Soffer's theories compare with those of more conservative researchers?

Ⓐ They are in agreement for the most part regarding the activities that women performed.
Ⓑ Soffer has based her theories on archeological evidence that her colleagues had not considered.
Ⓒ Conservative researchers are doubtful about the studies of stone tools and big-game bones.
Ⓓ Her theories are much more difficult to prove because she relies on modern cultural evidence.

29. The word implications in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ defects
Ⓑ advantages
Ⓒ suggestions
Ⓓ controversies

30. What can be inferred about Dr. Soffer from paragraph 2?

Ⓐ She does not agree that women should be the primary caretakers for children.
Ⓑ She is probably not as conservative in her views as many of her colleagues.
Ⓒ She is most likely a biologist who is doing research on European women.
Ⓓ She has recently begun studying hunting and gathering in the Upper Paleolithic era.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

31. The word constrain in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ limit
Ⓑ plan
Ⓒ notice
Ⓓ improve

32. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Historically, net hunting was considered too dangerous for women because it required physical strength that they did not possess.
Ⓑ Women throughout history have participated in societies by teaching their children how to use net hunting.
Ⓒ In many societies, the women did not participate in net hunting because hunting was an exception to historical traditions.
Ⓓ Because, historically, net hunting was not perilous and did not require great strength, women have been important participants in it.

33. Based on the information in paragraph 3, which of the following best explains the term "net hunting"?

Ⓐ An approach to hunting developed by Australian fishermen
Ⓑ A very dangerous method of hunting large animals
Ⓒ A way for the camp to protect women and children from wild animals
Ⓓ A hunting technique that includes the entire community

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

34. Why does the author mention "Native American and Aborigine" groups in paragraph 3?

Ⓐ To give examples of modern groups in which women participate in net hunting
Ⓑ To demonstrate how net hunting should be carried out in modern societies
Ⓒ To describe net hunting techniques that protect the women in the group
Ⓓ To contrast their net hunting techniques with those of the people in the Congo

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

35. According to paragraph 4, which of the following is true about hunting in the Congo?

Ⓐ The Mbuti value their nets almost as much as their bows and arrows.
Ⓑ Trade with other tribes is limited because all food must be stored.
Ⓒ Net hunters are successful in capturing half of their prey.
Ⓓ Vegetables are the staple part of the diet for the Mbuti people.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

36. According to paragraph 5, why does Soffer conclude that net hunting was widespread in Europe during the Ice Age?

Ⓐ Because there are a lot of small game still living in Europe
Ⓑ Because tools to make nets have been found in camps throughout Europe
Ⓒ Because the bones of small animals were found in Dolní Věstonice and Pavlov
Ⓓ Because German and Russian researchers have verified her data

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

37. The word roles in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ problems
Ⓑ developments
Ⓒ locations
Ⓓ functions

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

Such findings, agree Soffer and Adovasio, reveal just how shaky the most widely accepted reconstructions of Upper Paleolithic life are.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Although previous studies denied the participation of women in hunting parties during the Paleolithic era, more recent research provides evidence that they were involved in important hunts.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The Upper Paleolithic era extended from 40,000 to 12,000 years ago, a time also referred to as the Ice Age.

B Net hunting involves the entire community, including women and children as well as men in the hunt for animals.

C Australian Aborigines work for as many as three years weaving and knotting a net for hunting small game.

D Modern net hunting in the Congo and Australia supports new theories that identify woman as participants in Paleolithic hunting.

E The introduction of farming methods during the agricultural revolution changed the status of women.

F Paleolithic sites such as Dolní Věstonice and Pavlov provide evidence of net hunting that was previously overlooked.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 5, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 17

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

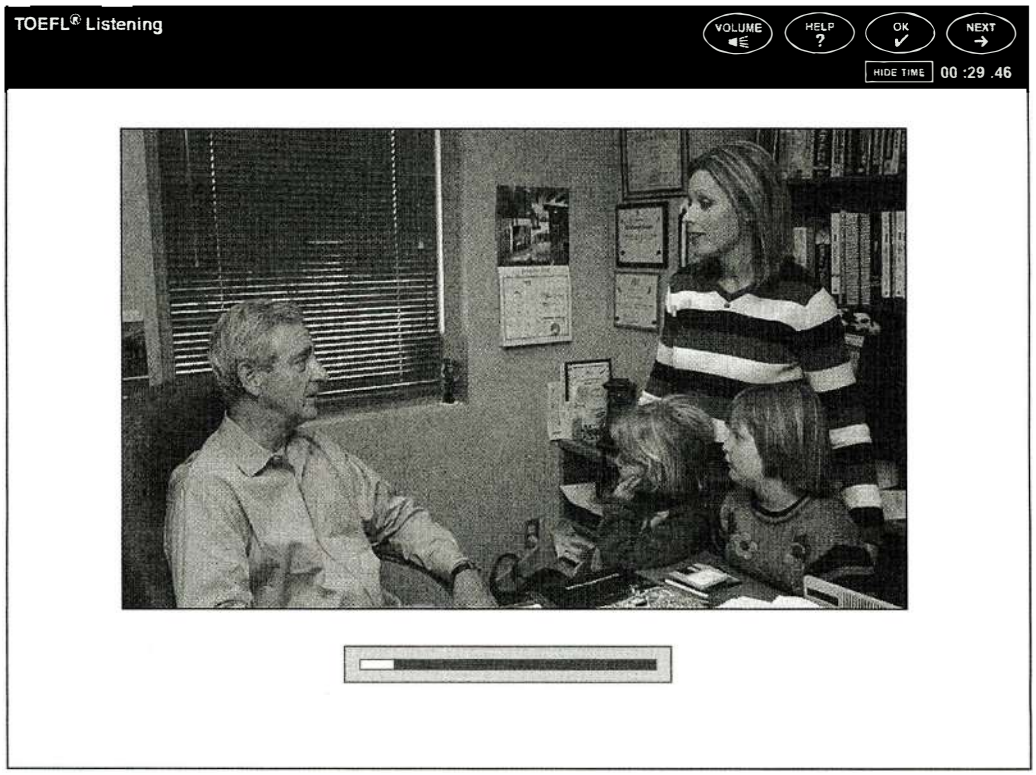
This is the long format for the Listening section. On the long format, you will listen to three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it. Only two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions will be graded. The other passages are part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which conversations, lectures, and discussions will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, *and one* discussion. You have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 30 minutes to answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"



1. Why does the woman go to see her professor?

   Ⓐ To get advice about memorizing information
   Ⓑ To clarify several terms that she doesn't understand
   Ⓒ To get permission to bring her children to class
   Ⓓ To ask a question about classroom procedures

2. What do semantic memory and episodic memory have in common?

   Ⓐ They are both included in short-term memory.
   Ⓑ They do not concentrate on each step in the process.
   Ⓒ They are subcategories of declarative memory.
   Ⓓ They are the two major types of long-term memory.

3. When the professor gives the example of riding a bicycle, what kind of memory is he referring to?

   Ⓐ Declarative memory
   Ⓑ Episodic memory
   Ⓒ Procedural memory
   Ⓓ Semantic memory

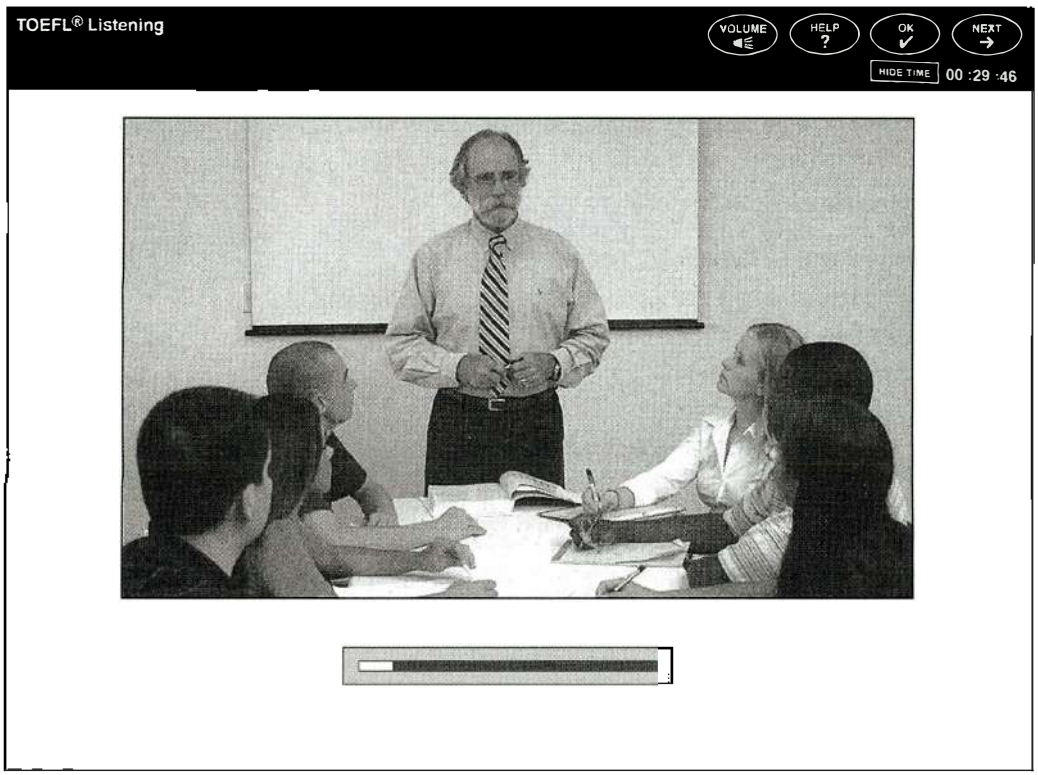
4. What does the student mean when she says this: 

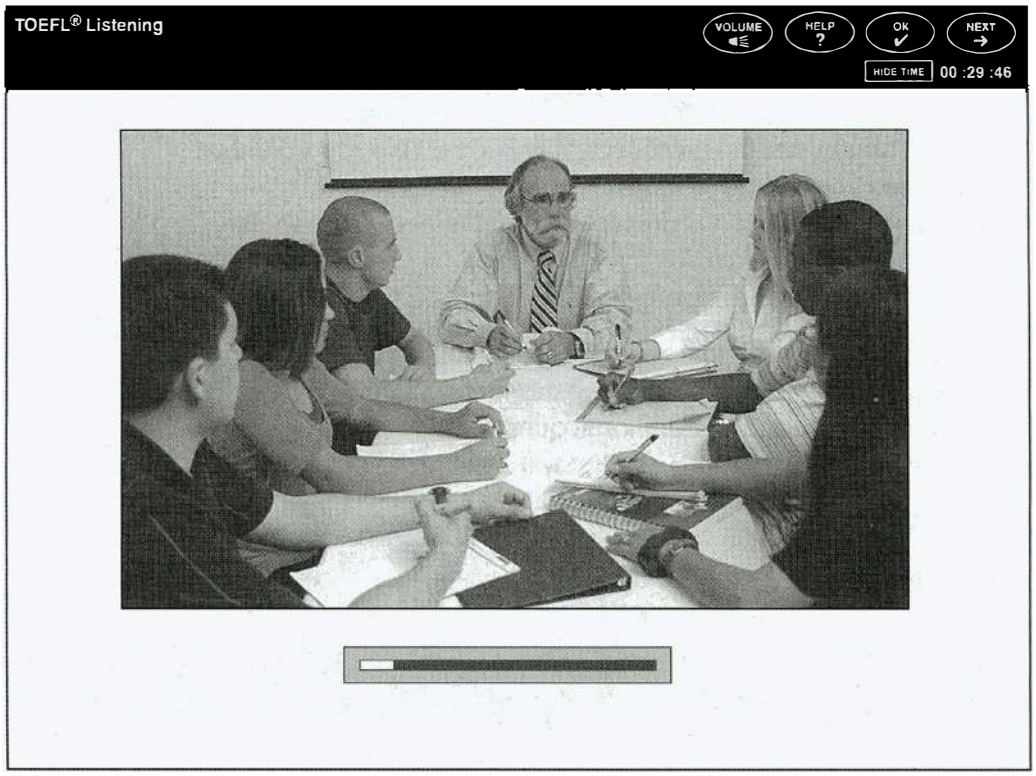
   Ⓐ She wants confirmation that the professor understands.
   Ⓑ She is worried that the professor may not be able to remember.
   Ⓒ She remembers something else that she needs to say.
   Ⓓ She disagrees with the professor's example about vocabulary.

5. What does the professor suggest?

   Ⓐ He wants the woman to come back to his office again.
   Ⓑ He expects the woman to ask questions in writing.
   Ⓒ He offers to respond to additional questions by email.
   Ⓓ He does not think that the woman will have more questions.

Listening 2 "History Class"





6. What is the lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ Provisions of the Homestead Act
Ⓑ How to construct a log cabin
Ⓒ Frontier homes in the West
Ⓓ Early construction materials

7. How does the professor organize his lecture?

Ⓐ He makes a persuasive argument in favor of sod homes.
Ⓑ He narrates stories about life on the Western frontier.
Ⓒ He explains the process for becoming a homesteader.
Ⓓ He contrasts several types of homes in the West.

8. What does the professor imply about construction materials for early homes?

Ⓐ Settlers used the materials from the natural environment.
Ⓑ Not many of the materials from that era have survived.
Ⓒ Most of the supplies had to be shipped in by railroad.
Ⓓ Wagons and tents were used in constructing homes.

9. What is the evidence for the inexpensive price of a sod home?

Ⓐ Short stories and novels
Ⓑ Letters written to relatives
Ⓒ Newspaper advertisements
Ⓓ Personal records and accounts

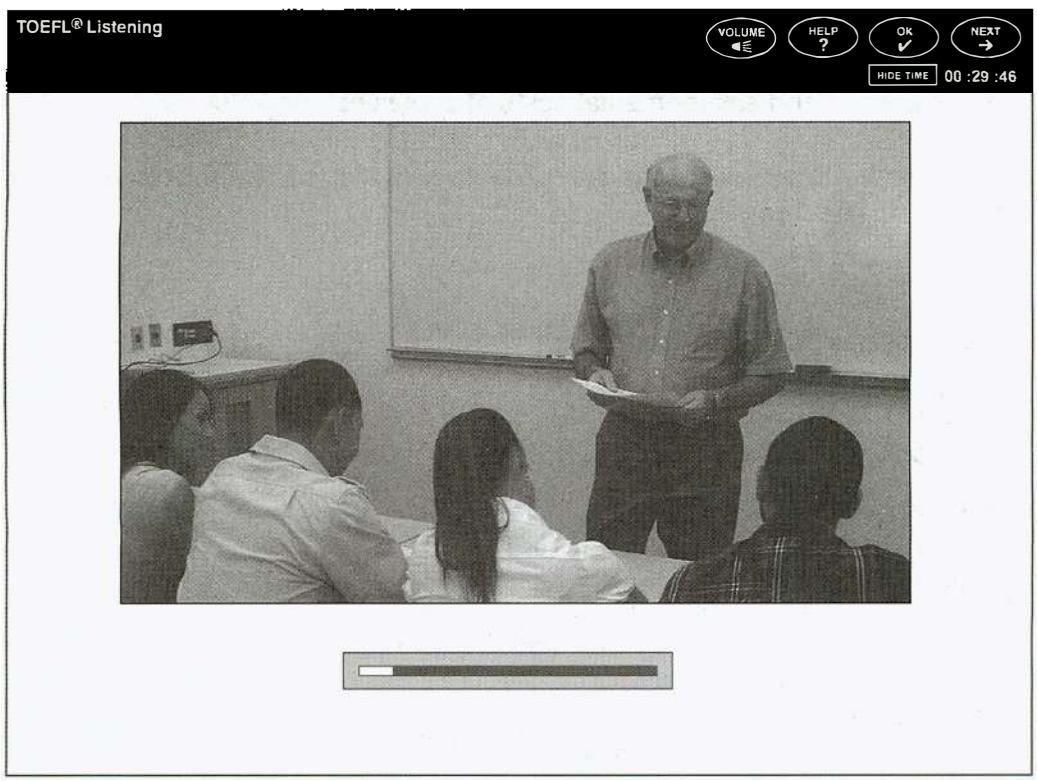
10. Why does the professor say this: 

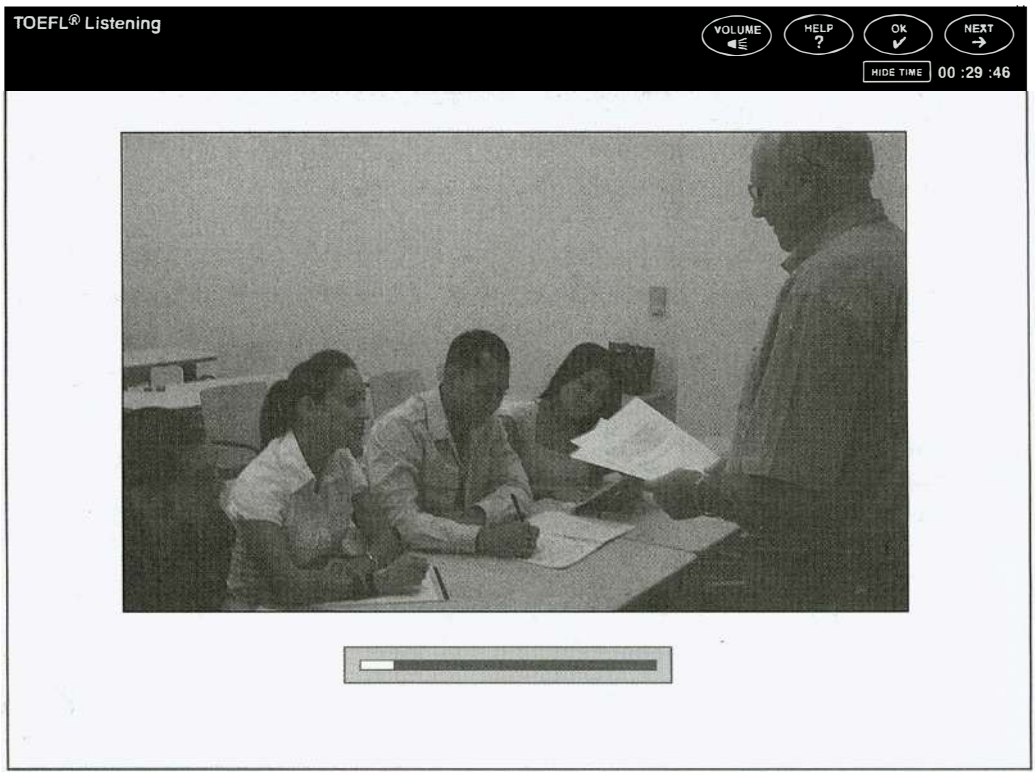
Ⓐ To criticize the sod house
Ⓑ To demonstrate uncertainty
Ⓒ To draw a conclusion
Ⓓ To uphold an opinion

11. In the lecture, the professor identifies attributes for different frontier homes. Indicate whether each attribute refers to a sod house or a log cabin. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

	Sod House	Log Cabin
A A mud roof		
B A rock foundation		
C Chinked walls		
D Notching techniques		
E Thick brick insulation		

Listening 3 "Geology Class"





12. What is this discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ How to exploit nonrenewable mineral resources
Ⓑ The exploitation of minerals in protected environments
Ⓒ Pollution as a by-product of mineral exploitation
Ⓓ The economic and environmental costs of exploiting minerals

13. According to the professor, what are two problems that can be anticipated when roads are cut into an area for mining?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] The labor is difficult to retain.

[B] The natural landscape is damaged.

[C] The roadbeds create waste piles.

[D] The ecosystem is disturbed.

14. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

Ⓐ As encouragement for a more complete answer
Ⓑ Because he doesn't understand the student's answer
Ⓒ To give another student an opportunity to speak
Ⓓ For positive reinforcement of a correct answer

15. What option is proposed as an alternative when all of the mineral resources in easily accessible locations have been depleted?

Ⓐ Converting to nonrenewable resources
Ⓑ Concentrating on conservation of the resources
Ⓒ Developing synthetic resources to replace minerals
Ⓓ Using new technology to search the area again

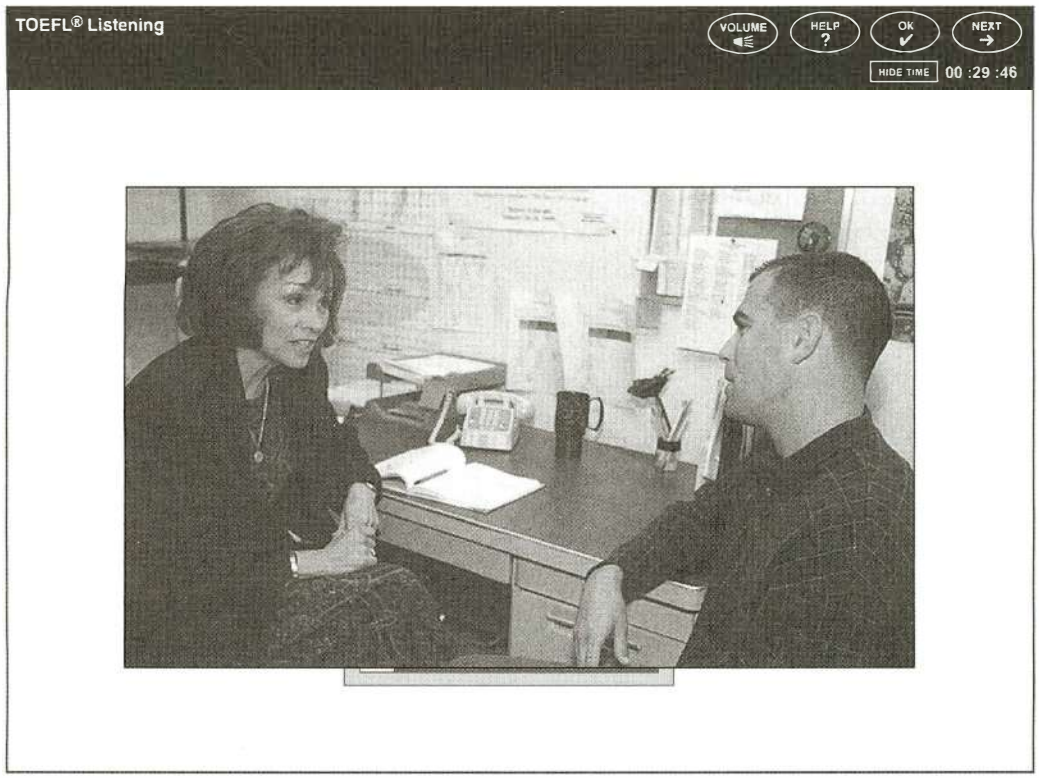
16. What does the professor imply about the environmental costs of mineral exploitation?

Ⓐ He thinks that the environmental costs are less than the economic costs.
Ⓑ He regrets that the environment is damaged during mineral exploitation.
Ⓒ He opposes mineral exploitation when it is done close to urban areas.
Ⓓ He believes in exploiting the resources in national parks and historic reserves.

17. What does the professor want the students to do in this class session?

Ⓐ Listen carefully and take notes
Ⓑ Bring in alternative ideas to present
Ⓒ Ask questions and draw conclusions
Ⓓ Prepare for a quiz at the end

Listening 4 "Professor's Office"



18. Why does the student go to the professor's office?

Ⓐ To change his schedule
Ⓑ To apply for a job
Ⓒ To introduce himself
Ⓓ To help the professor

19. What does the professor mean when she says this: 

Ⓐ She does not want the man to be uncomfortable.
Ⓑ She thinks that the responsibilities are too difficult.
Ⓒ She is concerned that the man will be bored.
Ⓓ She is worried that the man will not try to help her.

20. What experience does the man have that may be helpful?

Ⓐ He knows how to operate the grading machine.
Ⓑ He has answered the telephone in a law office.
Ⓒ He has used computer programs for office work.
Ⓓ He has been a work-study student in another office.

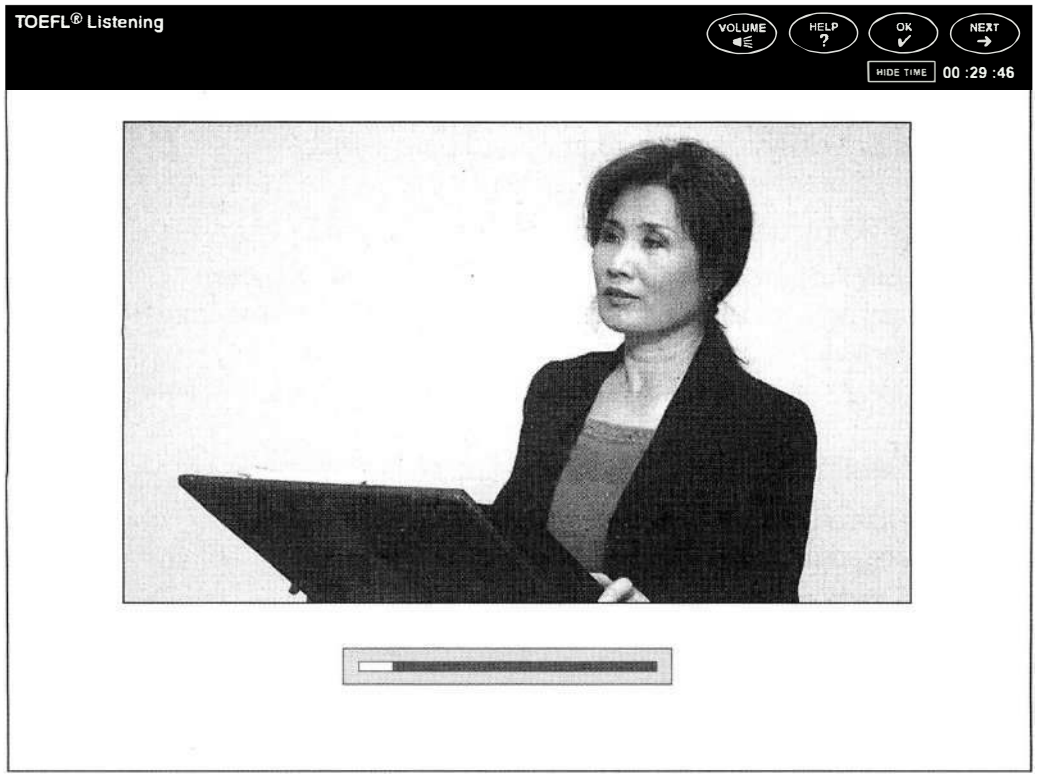
21. What is the pay for the work-study position?

Ⓐ An hourly rate for sixteen hours per week regardless of the activity.
Ⓑ An hourly rate for the time spent working but not for studying.
Ⓒ A higher rate for working and a lower rate for studying.
Ⓓ A weekly rate depending on the number of hours worked.

22. What can we assume about the meeting?

Ⓐ The professor was impressed with the student.
Ⓑ The student is not interested in the opportunity.
Ⓒ The secretary will not need to interview the student.
Ⓓ The work is very difficult to accomplish.

Listening 5 "Music Appreciation Class"



23. What is the main purpose of the lecture?

Ⓐ To explain chamber music
Ⓑ To give examples of composers
Ⓒ To congratulate the University Quartet
Ⓓ To introduce madrigal singing

24. What is the origin of the term *chamber music*?

Ⓐ A medieval musical instrument
Ⓑ An old word that means "small group"
Ⓒ A place where the music was played
Ⓓ A name of one of the original musicians

25. Which of the following are the key characteristics of chamber music in the Classical Period?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Orderly structures

[B] Complex melodies

[C] Longer pieces

[D] Amateur musicians

26. What does the professor mean when she says this about Beethoven: 

Ⓐ She doubts that Beethoven could have written the quartets.
Ⓑ She is in admiration of Beethoven's exceptional talent.
Ⓒ She thinks that the later quartets could have been improved.
Ⓓ She is inviting the students to question her information.

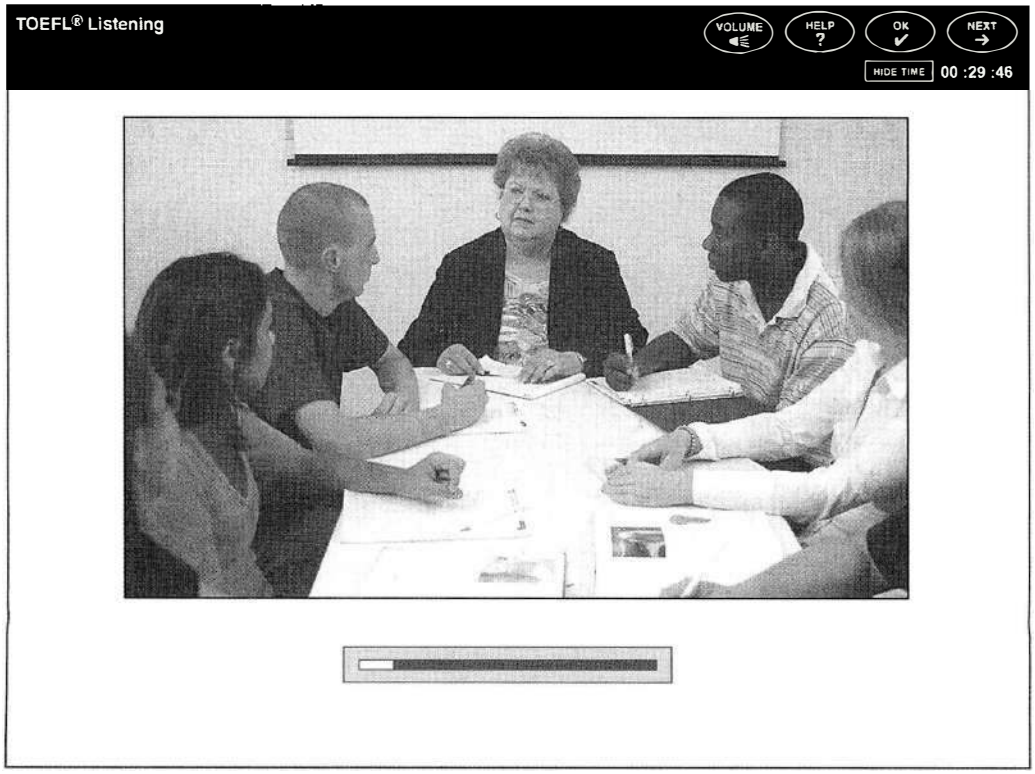
27. Why does the professor mention Impressionism?

Ⓐ She is comparing the experimentation in art with that in music.
Ⓑ She is making a transition into a discussion of art in the Modern Period.
Ⓒ She is giving an example of the work of the Romantics.
Ⓓ She is telling a story that includes some of the Impressionist painters.

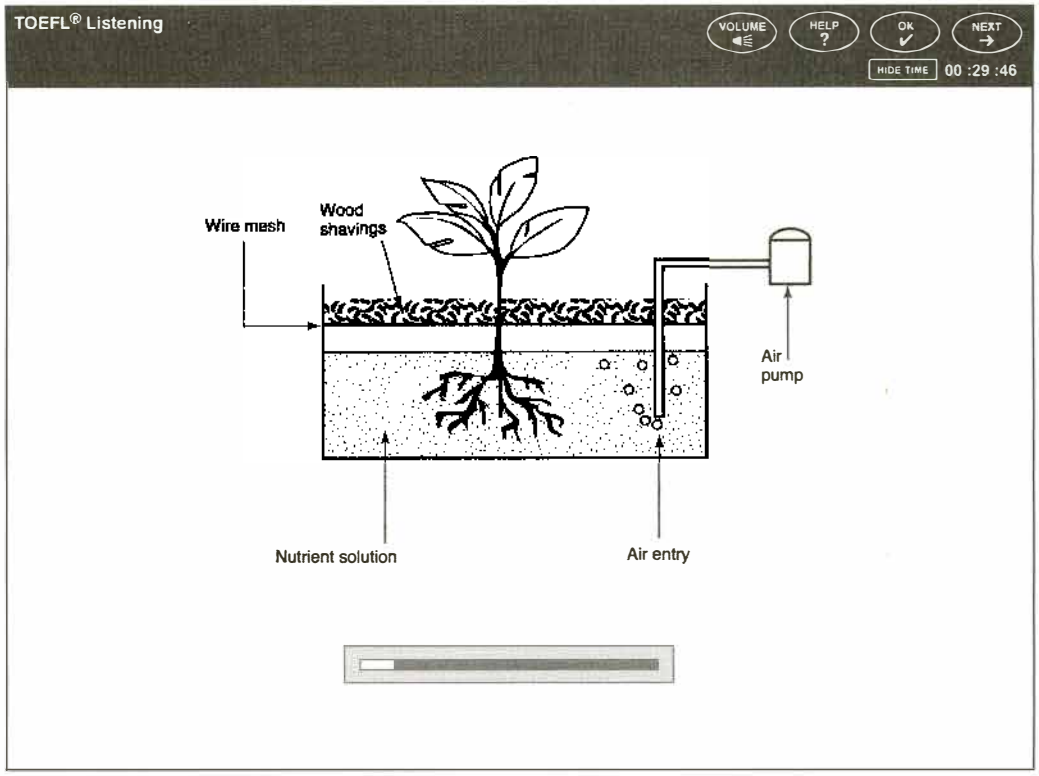
28. How did the professor organize the lecture?

Ⓐ She compared different types of musical compositions.
Ⓑ She arranged the information in chronological order.
Ⓒ She argued the advantages and disadvantages.
Ⓓ She responded to questions that the students asked.

Listening 6 "Botany Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
hydroponics


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
Wire mesh
Wood shavings
Air pump
Nutrient solution
Air entry

29. What is this discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Growing plants without soil
Ⓑ Mixing nutrients in water
Ⓒ Identifying chemicals in soil
Ⓓ Solving problems in the water

30. Why does the professor talk about the history of hydroponics?

Ⓐ She wants to put the modern method in historical context.
Ⓑ She is trying to prove that hydroponics is a new idea.
Ⓒ She is following the information in the textbook very closely.
Ⓓ She digressed from the subject for a long time.

31. According to the professor, what is the greatest advantage of hydroponics?

Ⓐ The plants are less likely to develop soil-borne diseases.
Ⓑ The cultivation requires much less labor than traditional methods.
Ⓒ The water can be recycled in a hydroponic environment.
Ⓓ Less space is needed to produce a large number of plants.

32. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She is making a statement to generate further discussion.
Ⓑ She is drawing a conclusion to end the point about soil.
Ⓒ She is answering the question that was posed about regions.
Ⓓ She is trying to understand what the student just said.

33. Why does the professor suggest that the students refer to their lab workbook?

Ⓐ To see the diagram of the experiment
Ⓑ To read more about plant growth
Ⓒ To find a list of important plant nutrients
Ⓓ To locate the instructions for building a tank

34. According to the professor, why are roots important to plants?

Click on 2 answer choices.

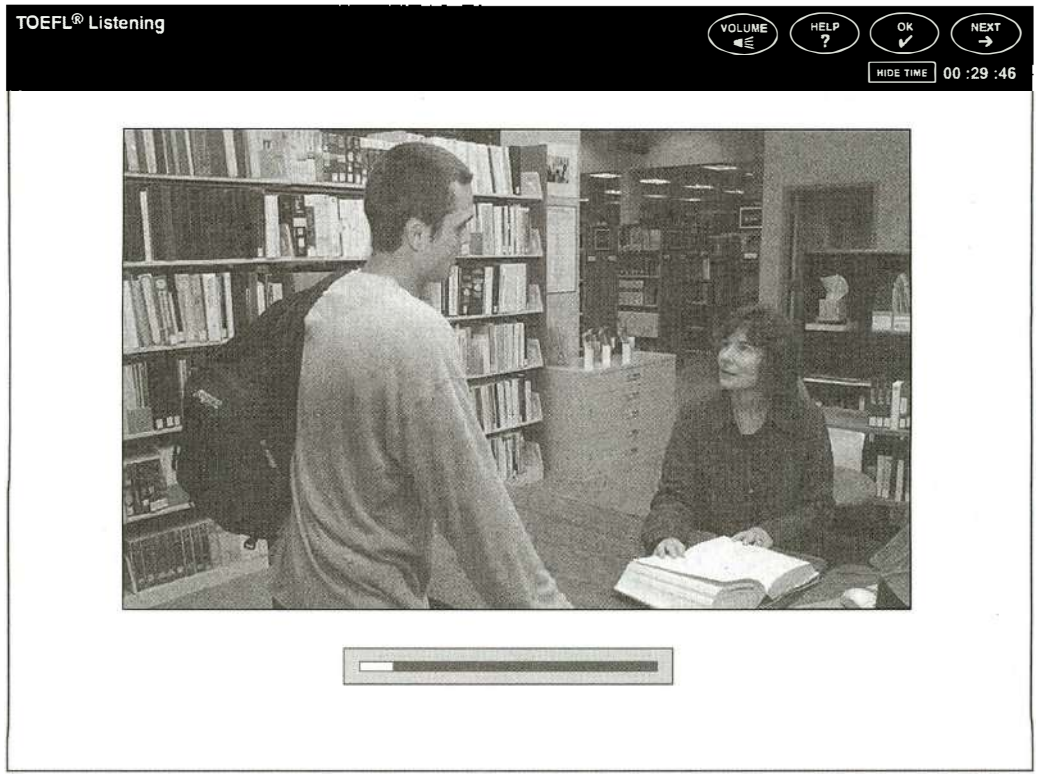
[A] To absorb water and nutrients

[B] To take in enough oxygen

[C] To suspend the plants in the solution

[D] To filter out toxic substances

Listening 7 "Library"



35. Why does the man approach the librarian?

Ⓐ He needs an explanation of his assignment.
Ⓑ He is looking for an encyclopedia.
Ⓒ He needs help finding some data.
Ⓓ He is trying to find the reference section.

36. What does the woman mean when she says this: 

Ⓐ She is showing comprehension.
Ⓑ She is expressing surprise.
Ⓒ She is talking to herself.
Ⓓ She is dismissing the man.

37. What does the librarian imply?

Ⓐ The man can find a chart in an encyclopedia.
Ⓑ The professor has explained the assignment clearly.
Ⓒ The library has a very good reference section.
Ⓓ The man should not change the assignment.

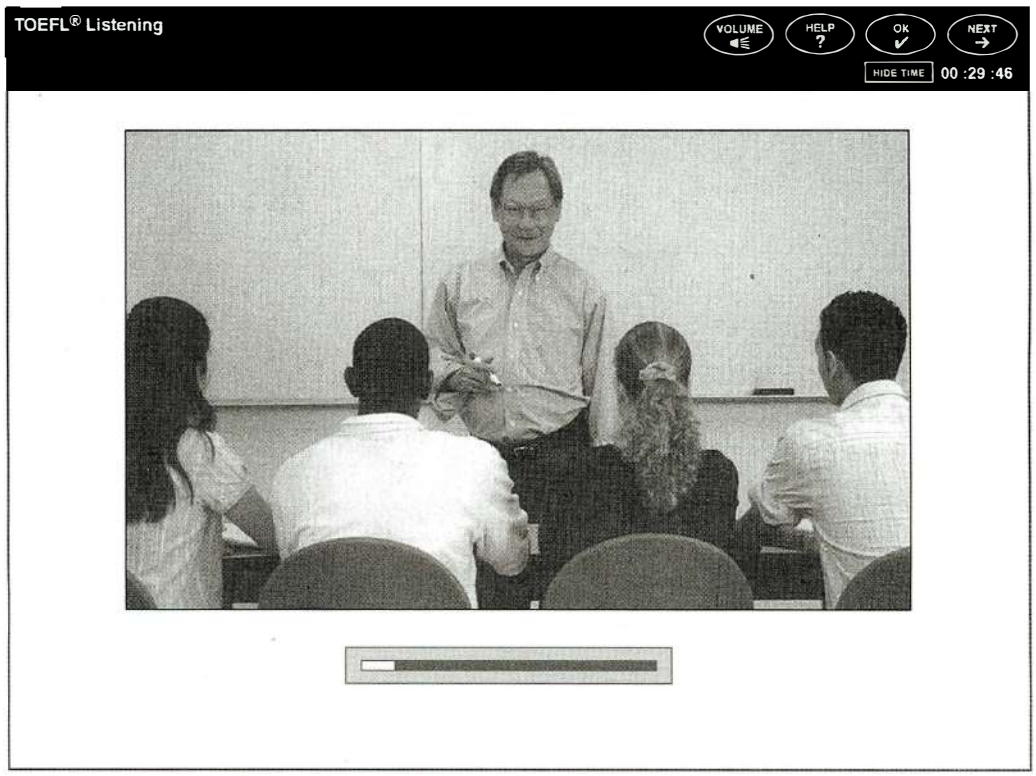
38. What example does the librarian give for the assignment?

Ⓐ A relative comparison of home prices
Ⓑ Average family income in several countries
Ⓒ International business around the world
Ⓓ Global economic patterns in this decade

39. What will the man do with the information?

Ⓐ Show it to the librarian
Ⓑ Write a report for class
Ⓒ Draw a chart or a graph
Ⓓ Decide where to live

Listening 8 "Engineering Class"





40. What is this lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ Reinforced concrete in buildings
Ⓑ The stresses caused by earthquakes
Ⓒ Earthquake-resistant structures
Ⓓ Understanding construction sites

41. Which technique is used to reinforce walls?

Ⓐ Cross-bracing
Ⓑ Shear cores
Ⓒ Bolting
Ⓓ Base isolators

42. Which two materials are used in base isolators?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Rubber

[B] Steel

[C] Concrete

[D] Soil

43. What happens to fill dirt during an earthquake?

Ⓐ It allows the building to sway.
Ⓑ It reduces earthquake damage.
Ⓒ It becomes unstable and collapses.
Ⓓ It creates mild shock waves.

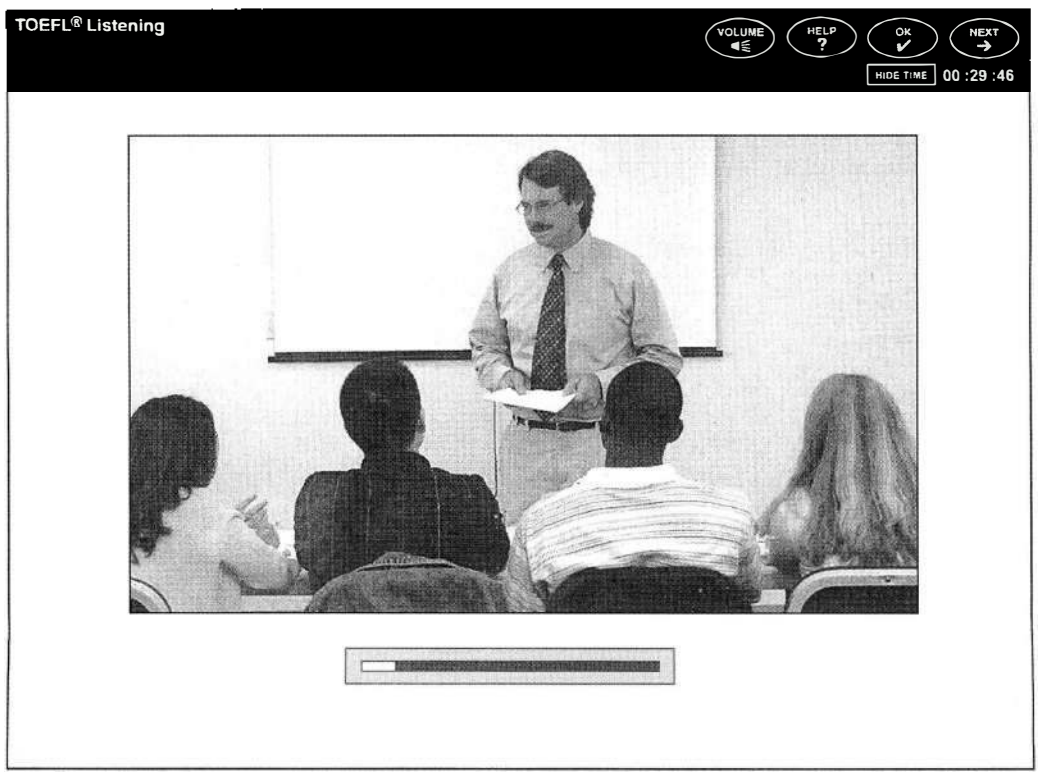
44. Why does the professor say this: 

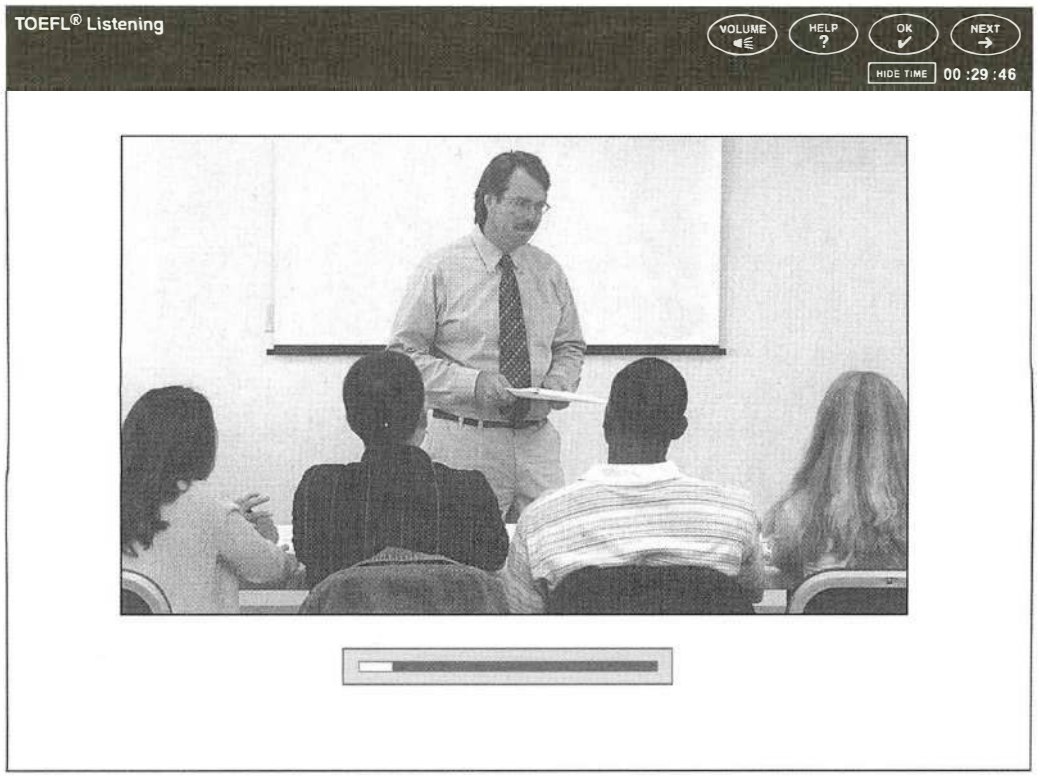
Ⓐ He is introducing a new major point.
Ⓑ He is trying to get the students to participate.
Ⓒ He is drawing a conclusion about engineering.
Ⓓ He is disagreeing with his previous comment.

45. What does the professor think about computer sensors for buildings?

Ⓐ He thinks this is a superior method for preserving buildings.
Ⓑ He finds the research on sensors for pistons very encouraging.
Ⓒ He is more concerned about the potential for people to be injured.
Ⓓ He doubts that the concept will result in design improvements.

Listening 9 "Art History Class"





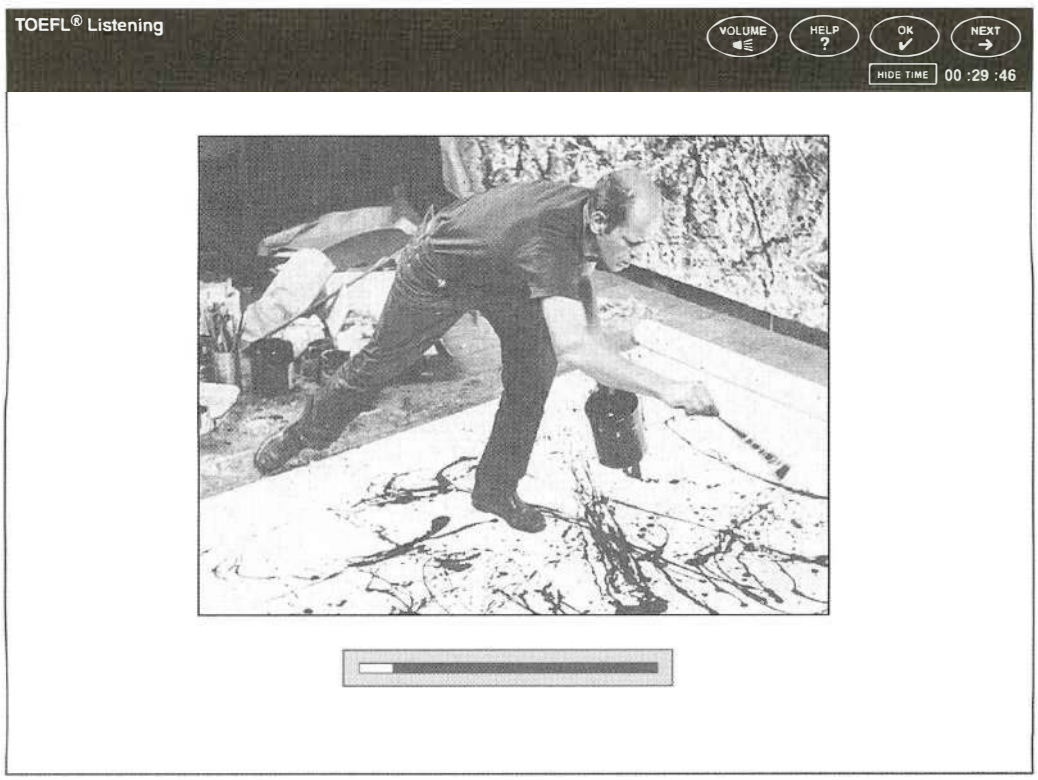


Photo of Jackson Pollock painting
Photograph by Hans Namuth
Courtesy Center for Creative Photography, University of Arizona
© 1991 Hans Namuth Estate



© Lauren Jade Goudie/Shutterstock.com

46. What is this discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ Artists in New York
Ⓑ Post Impressionists
Ⓒ Abstract Expressionism
Ⓓ The Guggenheim collection

47. To what did some critics compare Pollock's work?

Ⓐ Nature
Ⓑ Dancing
Ⓒ Chaos
Ⓓ Houses

48. According to the professor, what defines action art?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Control

[B] Design

[C] Coincidence

[D] Imbalance

49. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He is helping the student to find the exact word.
Ⓑ He is correcting something that the student said.
Ⓒ He is changing the topic of the discussion.
Ⓓ He is trying to regain the floor to continue.

50. What is interesting about the painting, "Lavender Mist?"

Ⓐ The unusual color
Ⓑ The texture of the paint
Ⓒ The artist's handprints
Ⓓ The number of copies

51. What is the professor's opinion of Pollock?

Ⓐ He thinks that Pollock was an excellent illustrator.
Ⓑ He argues that Pollock's work was influential.
Ⓒ He expresses reservations about Pollock's work.
Ⓓ He agrees with Pollock's critics.



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 5, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 18

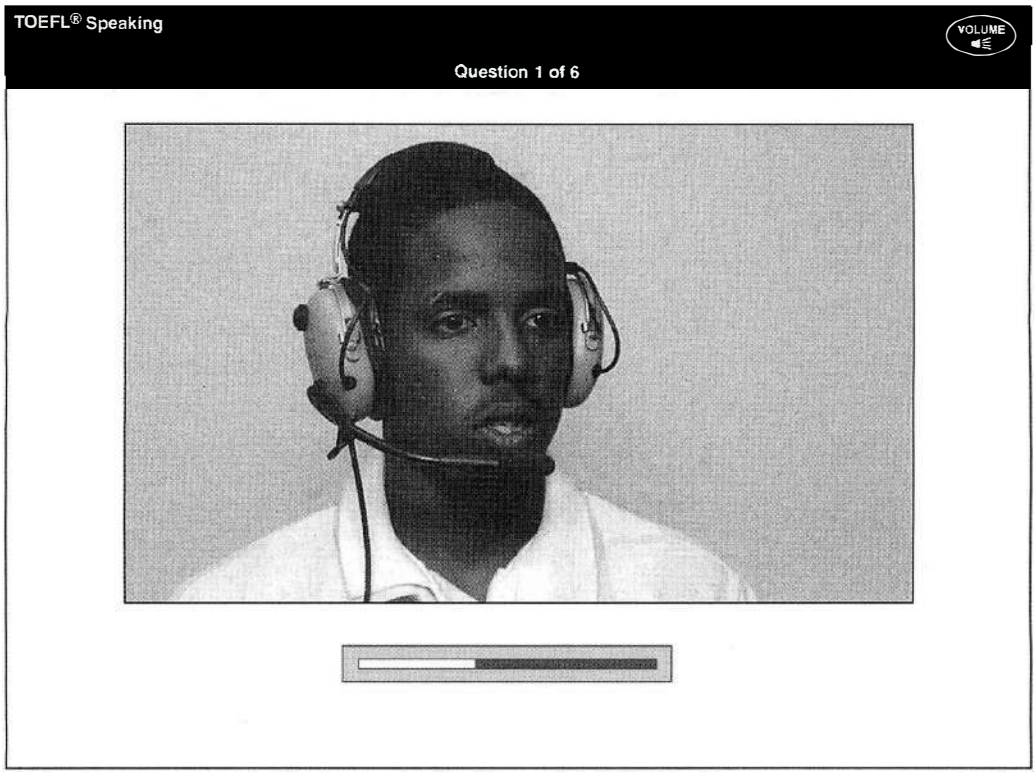
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Tourist Attraction"



Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question

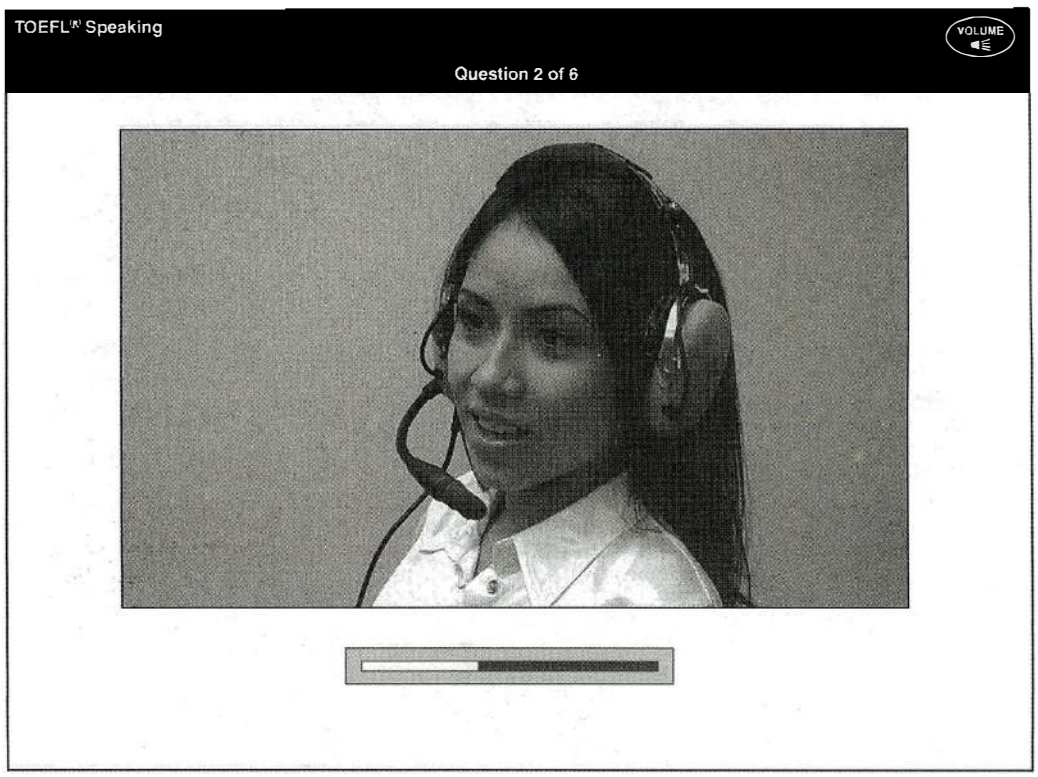
Your friend's cousin is going to visit your country and you promised to show her some interesting places. Which one would be more interesting?

1. A beautiful landscape
2. A historical city
3. Your home

Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Success"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Some people believe that the best way to succeed is to set goals and work hard to achieve them. Other people think that hard work is not as important as good luck. Which point of view do you think is true and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

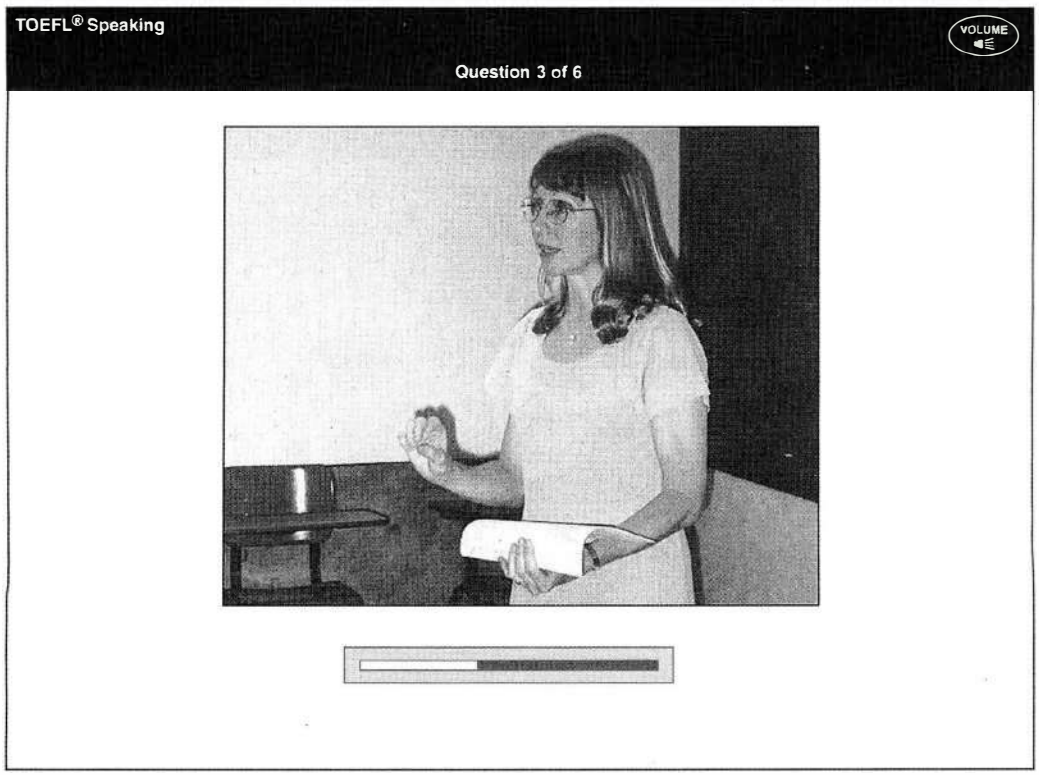
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Auto Registration"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Policy for Vehicles on Campus

Vehicles parked on campus by students, faculty, or staff must be registered with the Campus Police Department. Parking permits are required for both part-time and full-time students. Permits may be purchased at the Campus Police Department, which is located at the south entrance to the campus or at the Business Office in the Administration Building. The fee per vehicle is $20. Please be advised that you must have a permit for every vehicle that you park in campus lots. Parking enforcement will begin one week after the first day of each semester.



Now listen to a student who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the policy.

Question

The student expresses her opinion of the policy for vehicle registration. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

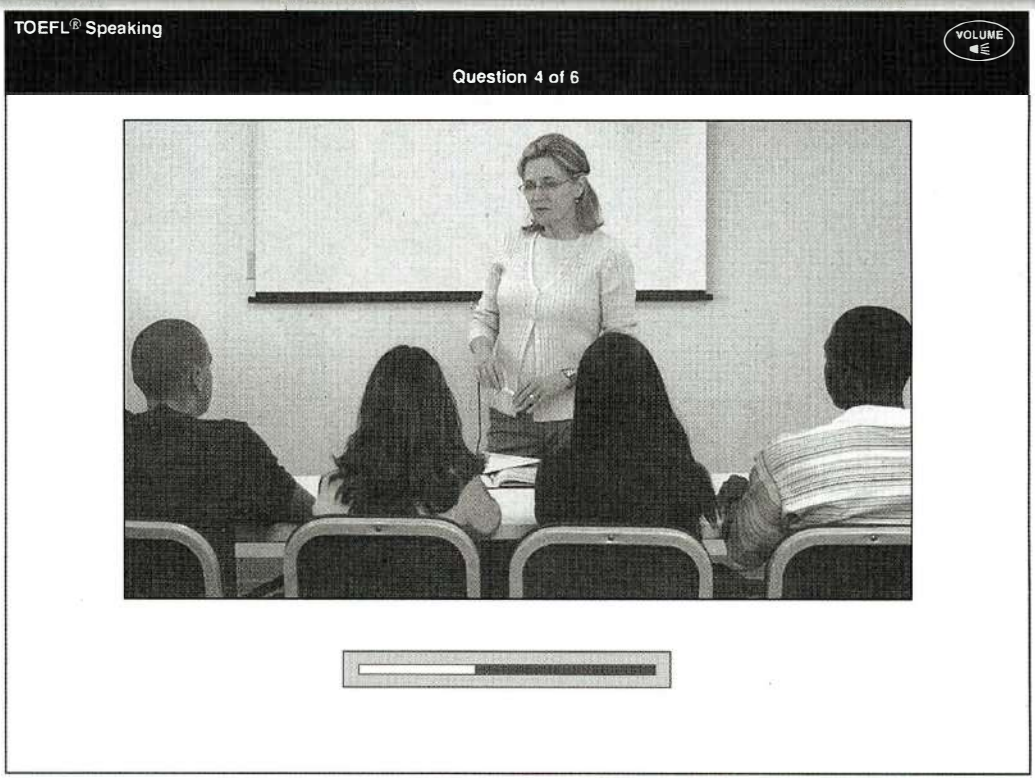
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Stress"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Stress

Stress is defined as a mental and physical condition that occurs when an adjustment or adaptation must be made to the environment. Unpleasant conditions or events cause stress, as, for example, financial problems, a divorce, health issues, or pressure at work. However, a certain amount of stress occurs even when the adjustment is to a condition that is perceived as desirable. Exercise, dating, moving to a new home, or taking a trip are all stressful situations. Although short-term stress is usually harmless, the consequences of long-term stress can be dangerous to health. Factors that decrease the consequences of stress are the ability to predict stressful situations and the level of control over them that can be achieved.



Now listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class. The professor is talking about an experiment.

Question

Explain the causes of stress and relate them to the experiment with rats.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Art Project"

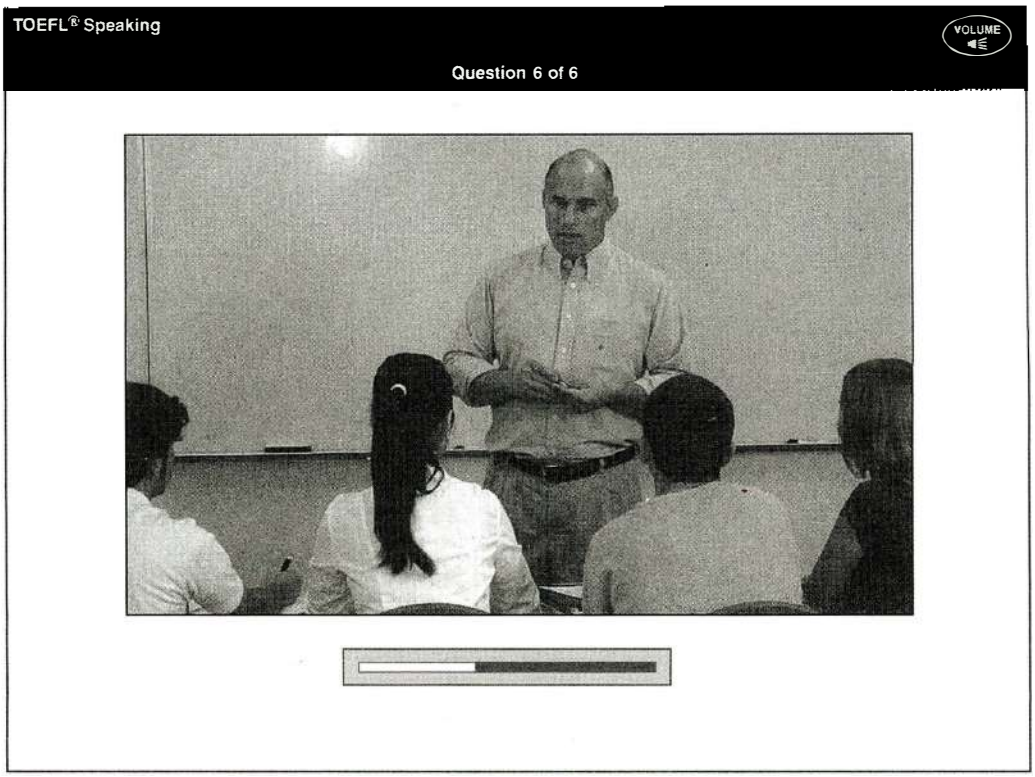


Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Question
Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Caverns"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a geology class. The professor is discussing caverns.

Question
Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two kinds of rock formations in a cavern, and explain how the professor helps his students remember the difference between the two.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. *Typically*, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Competition in the Classroom"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

Although cooperation is currently the most popular paradigm in classrooms, competition has a number of advantages. Research on classrooms in which competition is encouraged has demonstrated that competition can increase motivation and productivity while students are having fun.

Competition has long been used in classrooms to motivate students, encouraging them to do their best work. Like athletes who improve when they train with others who are equal or superior performers, students tend to improve in a competitive learning setting. Considerable evidence suggests that motivation is especially enhanced among high achieving students in a competitive classroom.

One of the main advantages of competition is that it creates an environment in which students push each other to excel and thereby increase productivity. For example, in classrooms where students compete to read the most books, the total number of books that each student reads increases as compared with classrooms without similar competitive goals.

Perhaps because competition has long been associated with sports and games, it is fun for students. Teachers often use team-based competitions to make academic material more interesting and entertaining. Some common examples are spelling bees, science project competitions, and group quizzes in which teams answer questions and receive points for correct answers. Competition is useful when an otherwise uninteresting lesson is presented as a game. Most would agree that playing is more enjoyable than memorizing by rote for the big test. In fact, students who participate in the Science Olympiad, a national competitive event, report that the main reason for joining the team is to have fun.

Model Test 5, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 19



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "Technological Innovations"

Question
Advances in transportation and communication like the airplane and the telephone have changed the way that nations interact with each other in a global society. Choose another technological innovation that you think is important. Give specific reasons for your choice.

This is the end of Model Test 5.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 5," Chapter 5, pages 706–738.

MODEL TEST 6: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the long format for the Reading section. On the long format, you will read four passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation. Only three passages will be graded. The other passage is part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which passages will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 80 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "Exotic and Endangered Species"

P1 ➔ When you hear someone bubbling enthusiastically about an **exotic species**, you can safely bet the speaker isn't an ecologist. This is a name for a resident of an established community that was deliberately or accidentally moved from its home range and became established elsewhere. Unlike most imports, which can't take hold outside their home range, an exotic species permanently insinuates itself into a new community.

P2 Sometimes the additions are harmless and even have beneficial effects. More often, they make native species **endangered species**, which by definition are extremely vulnerable to extinction. Of all species on the rare or endangered lists or that recently became extinct, *close to 70 percent owe their precarious existence or demise to displacement by exotic species.* Two examples are included here to illustrate the problem.

P3 During the 1800s, British settlers in Australia just couldn't bond with the koalas and kangaroos, so they started to import familiar animals from their homeland. In 1859, in what would be the start of a wholesale disaster, a northern Australian landowner imported and then released two dozen wild European rabbits *(Oryctolagus cuniculus).* Good food and good sport hunting—that was the idea. An ideal rabbit habitat with no natural predators was the reality.

P4 Six years later, the landowner had killed 20,000 rabbits and was besieged by 20,000 more. The rabbits displaced livestock, even kangaroos. Now Australia has 200 to 300 million hippityhopping through the southern half of the country. They overgraze perennial grasses in good times and strip bark from shrubs and trees during droughts. You know where they've been; they transform grasslands and shrublands into eroded deserts. They have been shot and poisoned. Their warrens have been plowed under, fumigated, and dynamited. Even when all-out assaults reduced their population size by 70 percent, the rapidly reproducing imports made a comeback in less than a year. Did the construction of a 2,000-mile-long fence protect western Australia? No. Rabbits made it to the other side before workers finished the fence.

P5 ➔ In 1951, government workers introduced a myxoma virus by way of mildly infected South American rabbits, its normal hosts. This virus causes *myxomatosis*. The disease has mild effects on South American rabbits that coevolved with the virus but nearly always had lethal effects on *O. cuniculus.* Biting insects, mainly mosquitoes and fleas, quickly transmit the virus from host to host. Having no coevolved defenses against the novel virus, the European rabbits died in droves. But, as you might expect, natural selection has since favored rapid growth of populations of *O. cuniculus* resistant to the virus.

P6 ➔ In 1991, on an uninhabited island in Spencer Gulf, Australian researchers released a population of rabbits that they had injected with a calcivirus. The rabbits died quickly and relatively painlessly from blood clots in their lungs, hearts, and kidneys. In 1995, the test virus escaped from the island, possibly on insect vectors. It has been killing 80 to 95 percent of the adult rabbits in Australian regions. At this writing, researchers are now questioning whether the calcivirus should be used on a widespread scale, whether it can jump boundaries and infect animals other than rabbits (such as humans), and what the long-term consequences will be.

P7 A vine called kudzu *(Pueraria lobata)* was deliberately imported from Japan to the United States, where it faces no serious threats from herbivores, pathogens, or competitor plants. In temperate parts of Asia, it is a well-behaved legume with a well-developed root system. It *seemed* like a good idea to use it to control erosion on hills and highway embankments in the southeastern United States. [A] With nothing to stop it, though, kudzu's shoots grew a third of a meter per day. Vines now blanket streambanks, trees, telephone poles, houses, and almost everything else in their path. Attempts to dig up or burn kudzu are futile. Grazing goats and herbicides help, but goats eat other plants, too, and herbicides contaminate water supplies. [B] Kudzu could reach the Great Lakes by the year 2040.

P8 ➔ On the bright side, a Japanese firm is constructing a kudzu farm and processing plant in Alabama. The idea is to export the starch to Asia, where the demand currently exceeds the supply. [C] Also, kudzu may eventually help reduce logging operations. [D] At the Georgia Institute of Technology, researchers report that kudzu might become an alternative source for paper.

1. Based on the information in paragraph 1, which of the following best explains the term "exotic species"?

   Ⓐ Animals or plants on the rare species list
   Ⓑ A permanent resident in an established community
   Ⓒ A species that has been moved to a different community
   Ⓓ An import that fails to thrive outside of its home range

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

2. The word bond in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ move
   Ⓑ connect
   Ⓒ live
   Ⓓ fight

3. According to the author, why did the plan to introduce rabbits in Australia fail?

   Ⓐ The rabbits were infected with a contagious virus.
   Ⓑ Most Australians did not like the rabbits.
   Ⓒ No natural predators controlled the rabbit population.
   Ⓓ Hunters killed the rabbits for sport and for food.

4. The word normal in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ obvious
   Ⓑ prior
   Ⓒ significant
   Ⓓ usual

5. All of the following methods were used to control the rabbit population in Australia EXCEPT

   Ⓐ They were poisoned.
   Ⓑ Their habitats were buried.
   Ⓒ They were moved to deserts.
   Ⓓ They were surrounded by fences.

6. Why does the author mention "mosquitoes and fleas" in paragraph 5?

   Ⓐ Because they are the origin of the myxoma virus
   Ⓑ Because they carry the myxoma virus to other animals
   Ⓒ Because they die when they are infected by myxoma
   Ⓓ Because they have an immunity to the myxoma virus

   Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

7. According to paragraph 6, why was the Spencer Gulf experiment dangerous?

   Ⓐ Insect populations were exposed to a virus.
   Ⓑ Rabbits on the island died from a virus.
   Ⓒ The virus may be a threat to humans.
   Ⓓ Some animals are immune to the virus.

   Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

8. The word consequences in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ stages
   Ⓑ advantages
   Ⓒ results
   Ⓓ increases

9. Why does the author give details about the "kudzu farm" and "processing plant" in paragraph 8?

   Ⓐ To explain why kudzu was imported from abroad
   Ⓑ To argue that the decision to plant kudzu was a good one
   Ⓒ To give a reason for kudzu to be planted in Asia
   Ⓓ To offer partial solutions to the kudzu problem

   Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

10. The word exceeds in the passage is closest in meaning to

    Ⓐ surpasses
    Ⓑ destroys
    Ⓒ estimates
    Ⓓ causes

11. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about exotic species?

    Ⓐ Exotic species should be protected by ecologists.
    Ⓑ Importing an exotic species can solve many problems.
    Ⓒ Ecologists should make the decision to import an exotic species.
    Ⓓ Exotic species are often disruptive to the ecology.

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    Asians use a starch extract from kudzu in drinks, herbal medicines, and candy.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Exotic species often require containment because they displace other species when they become established in a new environment.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Rabbits were able to cross a fence 2,000 miles long that was constructed to keep them out of western Australia.

B Methods to control exotic species include fences, viruses, burning, herbicides, natural predators, and harvesting.

C Rabbits that were introduced in Australia and kudzu which was introduced in the United States, are examples of species that caused problems.

D Researchers may be able to develop material from the kudzu vine that will be an alternative to wood pulp paper.

E The problem is that exotic species make native species vulnerable to extinction.

F A virus that is deadly to rabbits may have serious effects for other animals.

Reading 2 "Paleolithic Art"

P1 From the moment in 1879 that cave paintings were discovered at Altamira, scholars have wondered why the hunter-artists of the Old Stone Age decided to cover the walls of dark caverns with animal images. Various answers have been given, including that they were mere decoration, but this theory cannot explain the narrow range of subjects or the inaccessibility of many of the paintings. In fact, the remoteness and difficulty of access of many of the cave paintings and the fact they appear to have been used for centuries are precisely what have led many scholars to suggest that the prehistoric hunters attributed magical properties to the images they painted. According to this argument, by confining animals to the surfaces of their cave walls, the artists believed they

were bringing the beasts under their control. Some have even hypothesized that rituals or dances were performed in front of the images and that these rites served to improve the hunters' luck. Still others have stated that the painted animals may have served as teaching tools to instruct new hunters about the character of the various species they would encounter or even to serve as targets for spears.

P2 In contrast, some scholars have argued that the magical purpose of the paintings and reliefs was not to facilitate the *destruction* of bison and other species. Instead, they believe prehistoric painters created animal images to assure the *survival* of the herds Paleolithic peoples depended on for their food supply and for their clothing. [A] A central problem for both the hunting-magic and food-creation theories is that the animals that seem to have been diet staples of Old Stone Age peoples are not those most frequently portrayed. [B]

P3 Other scholars have sought to reconstruct an elaborate mythology based on the cave paintings, suggesting that Paleolithic humans believed they had animal ancestors. Still others have equated certain species with men and others with women and also found sexual symbolism in the abstract signs that sometimes accompany the images. [C] Almost all of these theories have been discredited over time, and art historians must admit that no one knows the intent of these paintings. [D] In fact, a single explanation for all Paleolithic murals, even paintings similar in subject, style, and *composition* (how the motifs are arranged on the surface), is unlikely to apply universally. The works remain an enigma—and always will—because before the invention of writing, no contemporaneous explanations could be recorded.

P4 ➔ That the paintings did have meaning to the Paleolithic peoples who made and observed them cannot, however, be doubted. In fact, signs consisting of checks, dots, squares, or other arrangements of lines often accompany the pictures of animals.

P5 ➔ Representations of human hands are also common. At Pech-Merle in France, painted hands accompany representations of spotted horses. These and the majority of painted hands at other sites are "negative," that is, the painter placed one hand against the wall and then brushed or blew or spat pigment around it. Occasionally, the painter dipped a hand in the pigment and then pressed it against the wall, leaving a "positive" imprint. These handprints, too, must have had a purpose. Some researchers have considered them "signatures" of cult or community members or, less likely, an individual artist. But *like everything else in Paleolithic art*, their meaning is unknown.

P6 ➔ The mural (wall) paintings at Pech-Merle also allow some insight into the reason certain subjects may have been chosen for a specific location. One of the horses may have been inspired by the rock formation in the wall surface resembling a horse's head and neck. Old Stone Age painters and sculptors frequently and skillfully used the caves' naturally irregular surfaces to help

give the illusion of real presence to their forms. Altamira bison, for example, were painted over bulging rock surfaces. In fact, prehistorians have observed that bison and cattle appear almost exclusively on convex surfaces, whereas nearly all horses and hands are painted on concave surfaces. What this signifies has yet to be determined.

14. According to paragraph 1, why was the cave art difficult to find?

Ⓐ The artists were probably trying to keep their work a secret from their tribe.
Ⓑ The artists could have begun their painting while they were confined in the caves.
Ⓒ The artists may have chosen a location deep in the caves to hold ceremonies.
Ⓓ The artists had to practice before they made images that more people could see.

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

15. According to paragraph 1, Paleolithic people may have used cave art for all of the following purposes EXCEPT

Ⓐ People may have danced in front of the images.
Ⓑ Hunters could have used the figures for target practice.
Ⓒ Leaders might have performed magical rituals in the caves.
Ⓓ Animals may have been kept in the caves near the drawings.

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

16. The word access in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ admission
Ⓑ meaning
Ⓒ site
Ⓓ research

17. The word facilitate in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ specify
Ⓑ permit
Ⓒ assist
Ⓓ discover

18. The word discredited in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ not attentive
Ⓑ not believed
Ⓒ not hopeful
Ⓓ not organized

19. By which means does the author explain the term "composition"?

Ⓐ Giving an example
Ⓑ Providing a definition
Ⓒ Contrasting it with motifs
Ⓓ Referring to art historians

20. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ It is true that the paintings were meaningful to the Paleolithic peoples.
Ⓑ Doubtless, the Paleolithic peoples were the ones who made the paintings.
Ⓒ There is no doubt about the meaning of the Paleolithic paintings.
Ⓓ Paintings that had meaning for the Paleolithic peoples are doubtful.

21. The phrase an individual in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ a popular
Ⓑ an exceptional
Ⓒ a single
Ⓓ an unknown

22. According to paragraph 5, why did artists leave a positive imprint of their hands on cave paintings?

Ⓐ It represents human beings in the cave paintings.
Ⓑ It could have been a way for them to sign their work.
Ⓒ It was a hunter's handprint among the herd of animals.
Ⓓ It might have been a pleasing image without much meaning.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

23. According to paragraph 6, why do scholars believe that the artists selected certain surfaces for their work?

Ⓐ The stone was easy to carve because it was very soft.
Ⓑ The animals in hunting grounds nearby provided inspiration.
Ⓒ The artists used the natural formations to create realistic shapes.
Ⓓ The location of the caves had a magical significance to them.

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

24. Which of the following statements most accurately reflects the author's opinion about the purpose of cave paintings?

Ⓐ The cave paintings were part of a hunting ritual.
Ⓑ Artists were honoring their animal ancestors in cave paintings.
Ⓒ The exact purpose of cave paintings is not known.
Ⓓ Decoration was probably the main reason for painting in caves.

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

At Altamira, for example, faunal remains show that red deer, not bison, were eaten.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

The purpose of the art discovered on cave walls is a topic of discussion among scholars.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The surface of the walls in the caves may have inspired some of the subjects, and handprints may have been signatures.

B It is possible that the paintings were created as part of a magical ritual either to guarantee a good hunt or an abundance of animals.

C At Altamira, excavations indicate that the protein diet of the inhabitants was probably deer rather than bison.

D Perhaps the artists were paying homage to their animal ancestors by recreating their mythology in the pictures.

E The art may be more recent than first assumed when the caves were originally discovered in the late 1800s.

F It has been documented that almost all of the horses and hands were painted on concave surfaces at Pech-Merle.

Reading 3 "Group Decision Making"

Advantages of Group Decision Making

P1 ➔ Committees, task forces, and ad hoc groups are frequently assigned to identify and recommend decision alternatives or, in some cases, to actually make important decisions. In essence, a group is a tool that can focus the experience and expertise of several people on a particular problem or situation. Thus, a group offers the advantage of greater total knowledge. Groups accumulate more information, knowledge, and facts than individuals and often consider more alternatives. Each person in the group is able to draw on his or her unique education, experience, insights, and other resources and contribute those to the group. The varied backgrounds, training levels, and expertise of group members also help overcome tunnel vision by enabling the group to view the problem in more than one way.

P2 ➔ Participation in group decision making usually leads to higher member satisfaction. People tend to accept a decision more readily and to be better satisfied with it when they have participated in making that decision. In addition, people will better understand and be more committed to a decision in which they have had a say than to a decision made for them. As a result, such a decision is more likely to be implemented successfully.

Disadvantages of Group Decision Making

P3 ➔ While groups have many potential benefits, we all know that they can also be frustrating. A One obvious disadvantage of group decision making is the time required to make a decision. B The time needed for group discussion and the associated compromising and selecting of a decision alternative can be considerable. C Time costs money, so a waste of time becomes a disadvantage if a decision made by a group could have been made just as effectively by an individual working alone. D Consequently, group decisions should be avoided when speed and efficiency are the primary considerations.

P4 A second disadvantage is that the group discussion may be dominated by an individual or subgroup. Effectiveness can be reduced if one individual, such as the group leader, dominates the discussion by talking too much or being closed to other points of view. Some group leaders try to control the group and provide the major input. Such dominance can stifle other group members' willingness to participate and could cause decision alternatives to be ignored or overlooked. All group members need to be encouraged and permitted to contribute.

P5 ➔ Another disadvantage of group decision making is that members may be less concerned with the group's goals than with their own personal goals. They may become so sidetracked in trying to win an argument that they forget about group performance. On the other hand, a group may try too hard to compromise and consequently may not make optimal decisions. Sometimes this stems from the desire to maintain friendships and avoid disagreements. Often groups exert tremendous social pressure on individuals to conform to

established or expected patterns of behavior. Especially when they are dealing with important and controversial issues, interacting groups may be prone to a phenomenon called *groupthink*.

P6 ➔ Groupthink is an agreement-at-any-cost mentality that results in ineffective group decision making. It occurs when groups are highly cohesive, have highly directive leaders, are insulated so they have no clear ways to get objective information, and—because they lack outside information—have little hope that a better solution might be found than the one proposed by the leader or other influential group members. These conditions foster the illusion that the group is invulnerable, right, and more moral than outsiders. They also encourage the development of self-appointed "mind guards" who bring pressure on dissenters. In such situations, decisions—often important decisions—are made without consideration of alternative frames or alternative options. It is difficult to imagine conditions more conducive to poor decision making and wrong decisions.

P7 Recent research indicates that groupthink may also result when group members have preconceived ideas about how a problem should be solved. Under these conditions, the team may not examine a full range of decision alternatives, or it may discount or avoid information that threatens its preconceived choice.

27. In paragraph 1, the author states that groups frequently do which of the following?

Ⓐ Generate more options than individuals
Ⓑ Agree on the way that the problem should be approached
Ⓒ Make recommendations instead of decisions
Ⓓ Are chosen to participate because of their experience

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

28. According to paragraph 2, why do group decisions tend to be more successful?

Ⓐ When more people are involved, there are more ideas from which to choose.
Ⓑ People are more accepting of decisions when they have been involved in them.
Ⓒ Implementing ideas is easier with a large number of people to help.
Ⓓ People like to be participants in decisions that are successful.

Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

29. The word considerable in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ valuable
Ⓑ significant
Ⓒ predictable
Ⓓ unusual

30. The word Consequently in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ About now
Ⓑ Without doubt
Ⓒ Before long
Ⓓ As a result

31. According to paragraph 3, why can group discussion be problematic?

Ⓐ Individual decisions are always more effective.
Ⓑ It takes more time for a group to arrive at a decision.
Ⓒ It costs more to pay all of the group members.
Ⓓ Interaction among group members can be a problem.

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

32. What can be inferred about a group leader?

Ⓐ A good leader will provide goals for the group to consider and vote on.
Ⓑ The purpose of the leader is to facilitate the participation of all of the members.
Ⓒ A group leader should be the dominant member of the group.
Ⓓ Expectations for group behavior must be presented by the group leader.

33. The word controversial in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ accepted
Ⓑ debatable
Ⓒ recent
Ⓓ complicated

34. According to paragraph 5, how does the author explain compromise in a group?

Ⓐ The group may try to make a better decision by compromising.
Ⓑ A compromise may be the best way to encourage groupthink.
Ⓒ Compromising may allow the group members to remain friends.
Ⓓ To compromise can help one member to reach a personal goal.

Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

35. The phrase the one in the passage refers to

Ⓐ solution
Ⓑ information
Ⓒ hope
Ⓓ leader

36. What does the term "mind guards" refer to?

Ⓐ People who conform to the group opinion without thinking
Ⓑ Group members who try to force others to agree with the group
Ⓒ Members of the group who are the most ethical and influential
Ⓓ Those people who disagree without offering an alternative view

37. According to paragraph 6, why are alternative solutions often rejected in groupthink?

Ⓐ Dissenters exert pressure on the group.
Ⓑ Group leaders are not very creative.
Ⓒ Information is not made available.
Ⓓ The group is usually right.

Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

In fact, the traditional group is prone to a variety of difficulties.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions**: An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Group decision making has both advantages and disadvantages.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Groupthink is a very ineffective type of group decision in which either influential members propose decisions and pressure the group to agree without considering alternatives or the group has already predetermined their decision.

B Group decisions are beneficial because more people contribute their ideas, more information is available, and the members are more committed to a successful outcome because they have participated.

C Many different kinds of groups are assigned the task of making decisions or recommending alternatives for important choices that will affect them and other people.

D Problems associated with group decisions are that compromise requires time for discussion, some members control participation, and social relationships can negatively affect decisions.

E Group decisions should be avoided when one member of the group is likely to dominate the other members and impose a group decision without listening to everyone's point of view.

F So called "mind guards" often appear in groups with a view to putting pressure on members of the group who do not agree with the ideas or would like to consider alternatives to the decision proposed.

Reading 4 "Four Stages of Planetary Development"

Planetary Development

P1 ➔ The planet Earth has passed through four-stages of planetary development. All terrestrial planets pass through these same stages to some degree, but some planets evolved further or were affected in different ways.

The Four Stages

P2 The first stage of planetary evolution is *differentiation*, the separation of material according to density. Earth now has a dense core and a lower-density crust, and that structure must have originated very early in its history. Differentiation would have occurred easily if Earth were molten when it was young. Two sources of energy could have heated Earth. First, heat of formation was released by in-falling material. A meteorite hitting Earth at high velocity converts most of its energy of motion into heat, and the impacts of a large number of meteorites would have released tremendous heat. If Earth formed rapidly, this heat would have accumulated much more rapidly than it could leak away, and Earth was probably molten when it formed. A second source of heat requires more time to develop. The decay of radioactive elements trapped in the Earth releases heat gradually; but, as soon as Earth formed, that heat began to accumulate and helped melt Earth. That would have helped the planet differentiate.

P3 While Earth was still in a molten state, meteorites could leave no trace, but in the second stage in planetary evolution, *cratering*, the young Earth was battered by meteorites that pulverized the newly forming crust. The largest meteorites blasted out crater basins hundreds of kilometers in diameter. As the solar nebula cleared, the amount of debris decreased, and after the late heavy bombardment, the level of cratering fell to its present low level. Although meteorites still occasionally strike Earth and dig craters, cratering is no longer the dominant influence on Earth's geology. As you compare other worlds with Earth, you will discover traces of this intense period of cratering, on every old surface in the solar system.

P4 ➔ The third stage, *flooding*, no doubt began while cratering was still intense. The fracturing of the crust and the heating produced by radioactive decay allowed molten rock just below the crust to well up through fissures and flood the deeper basins. You will find such flooded basins with solidified lava flows on other worlds, such as the moon, but all traces of this early lava flooding have been destroyed by later geological activity in Earth's crust. On Earth, flooding continued as the atmosphere cooled and water fell as rain, filling the deepest basins to produce the first oceans. A Notice that on Earth flooding involves both lava and water, a circumstance that we will not find on most worlds. B

P5 The fourth stage, *slow surface evolution*, has continued for the last 3.5 billion years or more. C Earth's surface is constantly changing as sections of crust slide over each other, push up mountains, and shift continents. D Almost all traces of the first billion years of Earth's geology have been destroyed by the active crust and erosion.

Earth as a Planet

P6 All terrestrial planets pass through these four stages, but some have emphasized one stage over another, and some planets have failed to progress fully through the four stages. Earth is a good standard for comparative planetology because every major process on any rocky world in our solar system is represented in some form on Earth.

P7 Nevertheless, Earth is peculiar in two ways. First, it has large amounts of liquid water on its surface. Fully 75 percent of its surface is covered by this liquid; no other planet in our solar system is known to have such extensive liquid water on its surface. Water not only fills the oceans but also evaporates into the atmosphere, forms clouds, and then falls as rain. Water falling on the continents flows downhill to form rivers that flow back to the sea, and in so doing, the water produces intense erosion. You will not see such intense erosion on most worlds. Liquid water is, in fact, a rare material on most planets. Your home planet is special in a second way. Some of the matter on the surface of this world is alive, and a small part of that living matter is aware. No one is sure how the presence of living matter has affected the evolution of Earth, but this process seems to be totally missing from other worlds in our solar system. Furthermore, the thinking part of life on Earth, humankind, is actively altering our planet.

Glossary

meteorite: a mass that falls to the surface of a planet from space
planetology: the study of planets

40. Why does the author mention the "Earth" in paragraph 1?

Ⓐ To explain the stages in planetary development for the Earth in detail
Ⓑ To contrast the evolution of the Earth with that of other planets
Ⓒ To demonstrate that the Earth passed through similar stages to those of most planets
Ⓓ To give an example of exploration of the terrestrial planets

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

41. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ The Earth may have been liquid because the heat collected faster than it dissipated if the formation took place quickly.
Ⓑ Because of the rapid formation of the Earth, the crust took a long time to cool before it became a solid.
Ⓒ The liquid core of the Earth was created when the planet first formed because the heat was so high and there was little cooling.
Ⓓ The cooling caused the Earth to form much more quickly as it met with the intense heat of the new planet.

42. *The word* pulverized in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ melted into liquid
Ⓑ broken into small parts
Ⓒ frozen very hard
Ⓓ washed very clean

43. The word dominant in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ most limited
Ⓑ most likely
Ⓒ most rapid
Ⓓ most important

44. What can be inferred about radioactive matter?

Ⓐ It is revealed by later activity.
Ⓑ It generates intense heat.
Ⓒ It is an important stage.
Ⓓ It floods the planet's crust.

45. According to paragraph 4, how were the oceans formed?

Ⓐ Ice gouged out depressions in the Earth.
Ⓑ Rain filled the craters made by meteorites.
Ⓒ Earthquakes shifted the continents.
Ⓓ Molten rock and lava flooded the basins.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

46. According to the passage, which stage occurs after cratering?

Ⓐ Flooding
Ⓑ Slow surface evolution
Ⓒ Differentiation
Ⓓ Erosion

47. What is the author's opinion of life on other planets?

Ⓐ She does not know whether life is present on other planets.
Ⓑ She is certain that no life exists on any planet except Earth.
Ⓒ She does not express an opinion about life on other planets.
Ⓓ She thinks that there is probably life on other planets.

48. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

At the same time, moving air and water erode the surface and wear away geological features.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

49. All of the following are reasons why the Earth is a good model of planetary development for purposes of comparison with other planets EXCEPT

Ⓐ The Earth has gone through all four stages of planetary evolution.
Ⓑ Life on Earth has affected the evolution in a number of important ways.
Ⓒ All of the fundamental processes on terrestrial planets have occurred on Earth.
Ⓓ There is evidence of extensive cratering both on Earth and on all other planets.

50. The word peculiar in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ different
Ⓑ better
Ⓒ interesting
Ⓓ new

51. The word process in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ procedure
Ⓑ improvement
Ⓒ regulation
Ⓓ definition

52. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

There are four stages of development for the terrestrial planets.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A All rocky planets go through different stages in their evolution because of variations in composition.

B In spite of several unique features, the Earth is a good example of how a planet proceeds through the stages.

C Fewer meteorites fall to Earth now than in the earlier stages of the planet's evolutionary history.

D About three quarters of the surface of the Earth is submerged by the water in its oceans.

E Differentiation and cratering are early stages that are influenced by in-falling meteorites.

F Flooding includes both lava and water, while slow surface evolution causes shifting in the crust.

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 6, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 21

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

This is the short format for the Listening section. On the short format, you will listen to two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You will have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 20 minutes to answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"



1. Why does the man go to see his professor?

   Ⓐ To borrow some books for his project
   Ⓑ To hand in the first book report
   Ⓒ To ask about the professor's requirements
   Ⓓ To talk about literary movements

2. How is the second part of the reading list different from the first part?

   Ⓐ More minority authors are represented.
   Ⓑ All of the writers are from North America.
   Ⓒ It includes books from the Post Modern Period.
   Ⓓ In addition to novels, some plays are on the list.

3. What does the man mean when he says this: 🎧

   Ⓐ He does not understand the term.
   Ⓑ He is interested in the idea.
   Ⓒ He is not sure how to pronounce it.
   Ⓓ He thinks that the word is humorous.

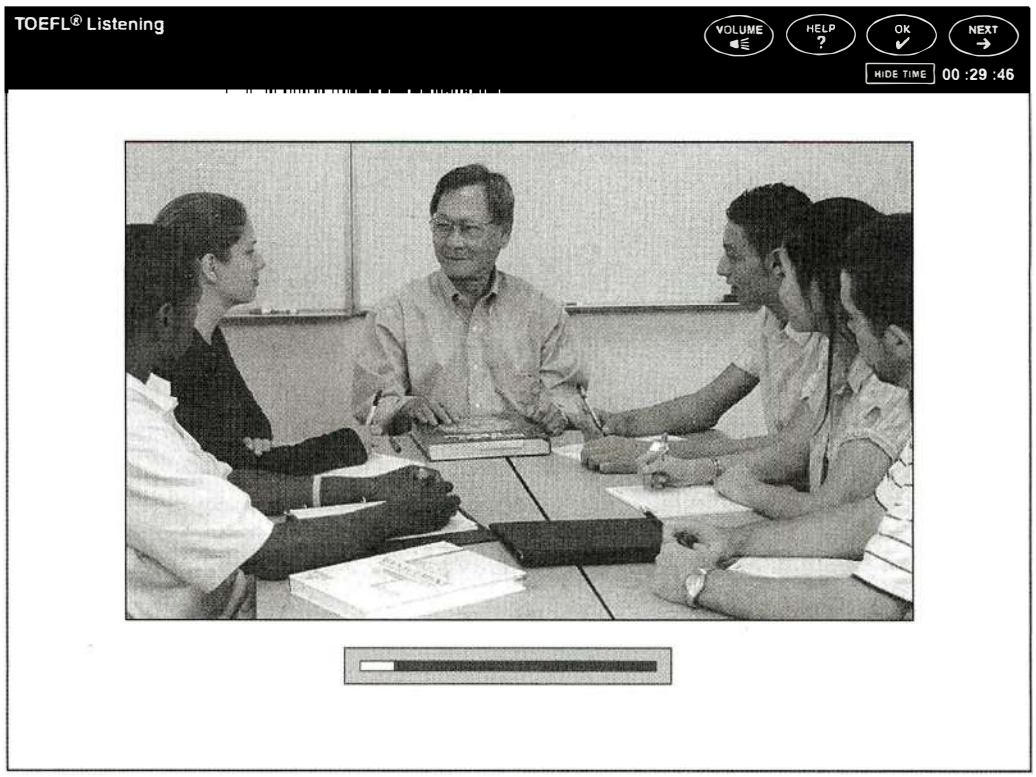
4. What will the man probably do before the next meeting?

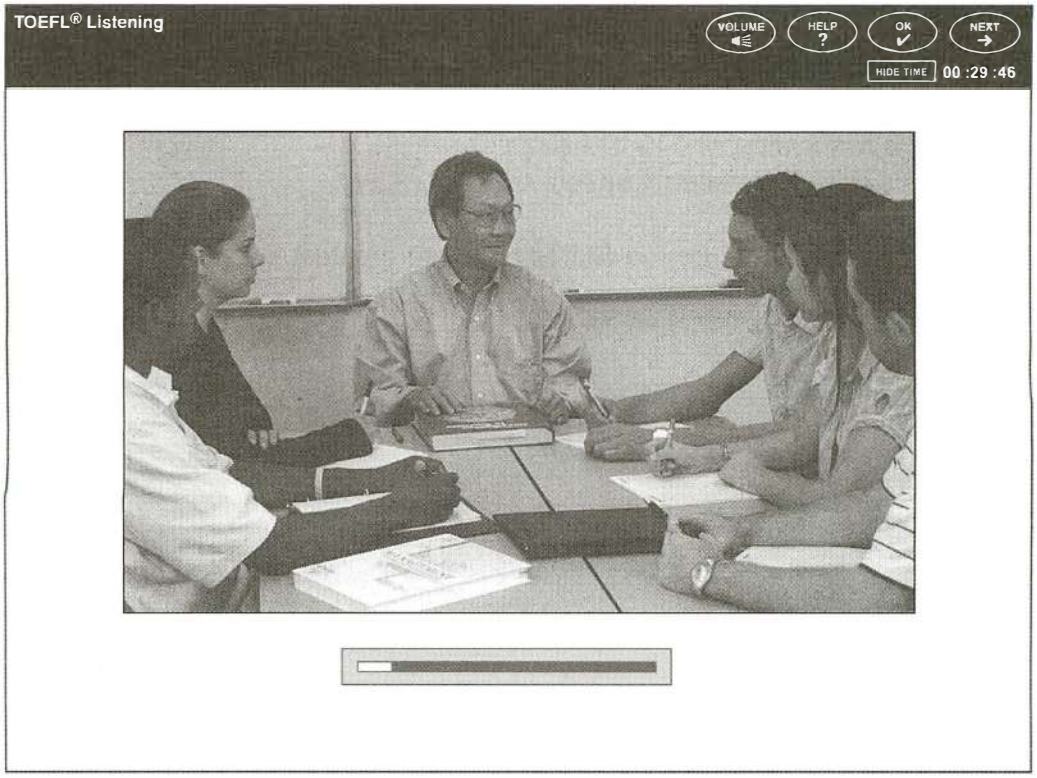
   Ⓐ Write a synopsis of each book on the list
   Ⓑ Make a list of books that he wants to read
   Ⓒ Finish the art project on his computer
   Ⓓ Prepare to talk with the professor

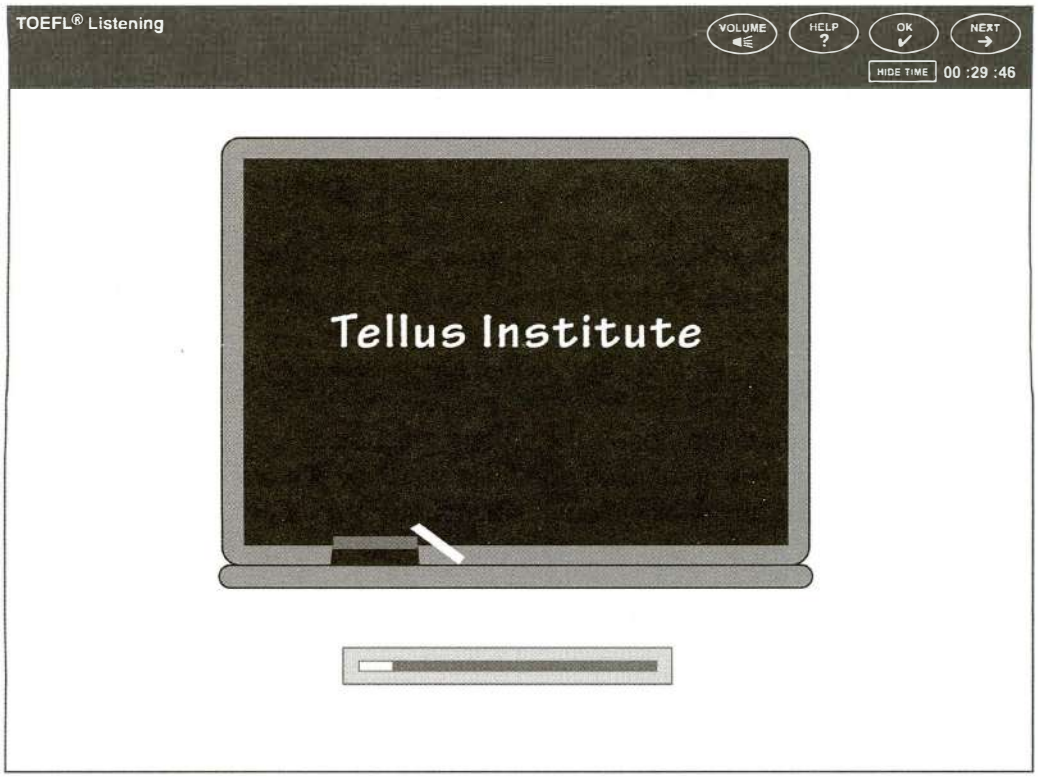
5. What can be inferred about the professor?

   Ⓐ She does not have regular office hours.
   Ⓑ She is willing to help her students.
   Ⓒ She is not very flexible with assignments.
   Ⓓ She teaches British literature.

Listening 2 "Environmental Science Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
Tellus Institute

6. What aspect of wind power is the lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ Electrical power in California
Ⓑ Alternative energy sources
Ⓒ Problems associated with turbines
Ⓓ Wind as a renewable energy option

7. Which two regions of the United States have the greatest potential for supplying wind power?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] The Eastern Seaboard
[B] The Midwestern Plains
[C] The Desert Southwest
[D] The Pacific Northwest

8. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He is disagreeing with the figures.
Ⓑ He is expressing surprise at the statistics.
Ⓒ He is correcting a previous statement.
Ⓓ He is trying to maintain the students' interest.

9. In the lecture, the professor identifies several problems associated with wind power. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the problems mentioned. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

	Yes	No
A Poor television reception		
B Noisy turbines		
C Expensive operating costs		
D Remote areas		
E Dangerous blades for birds		

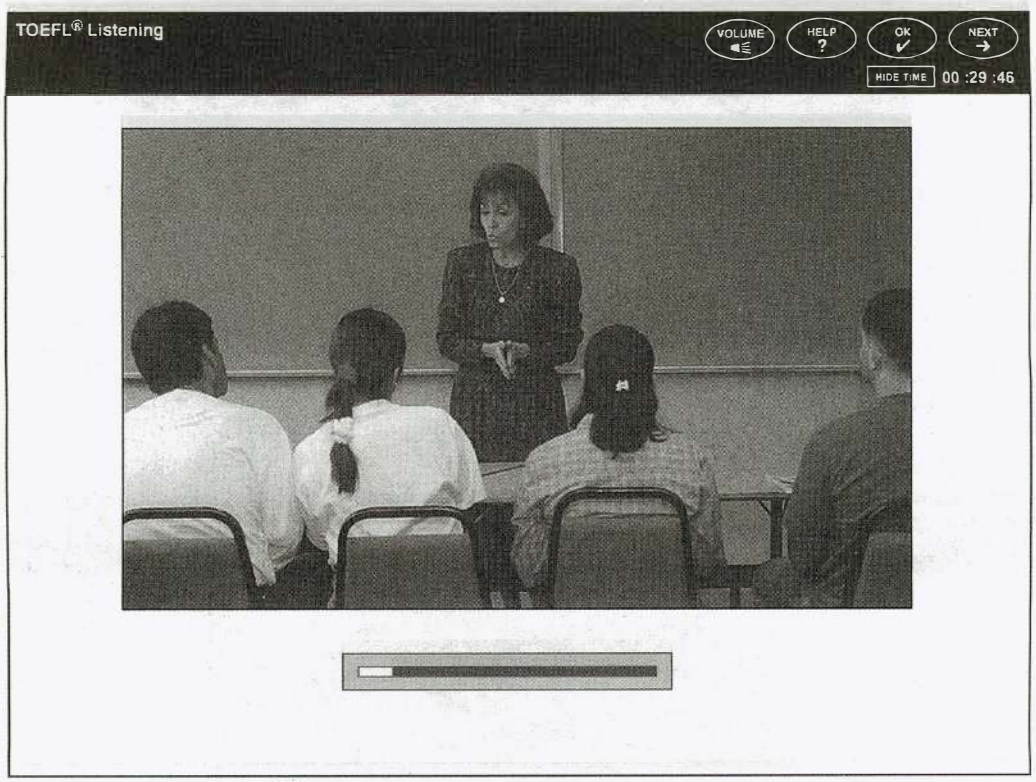
10. How did the Tellus Institute solve the problem of intermittent wind?

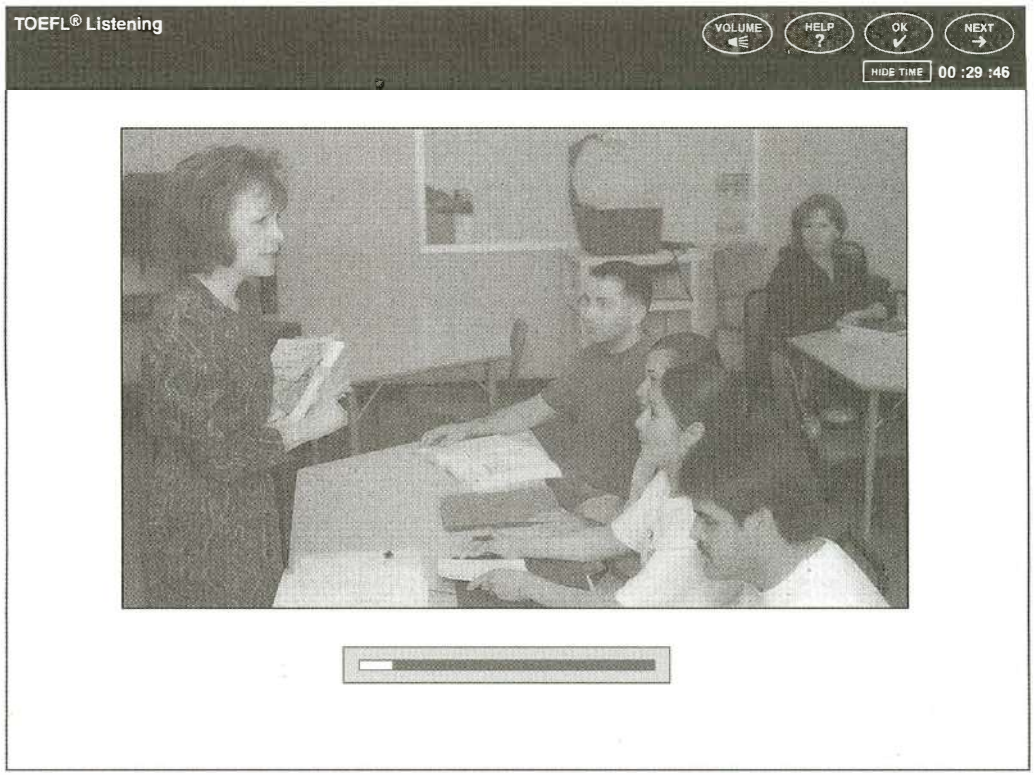
Ⓐ By building twice as many wind farms in problem areas
Ⓑ By moving wind farms into areas of steady winds
Ⓒ By using more wind turbines on each wind farm
Ⓓ By separating one wind farm into two locations

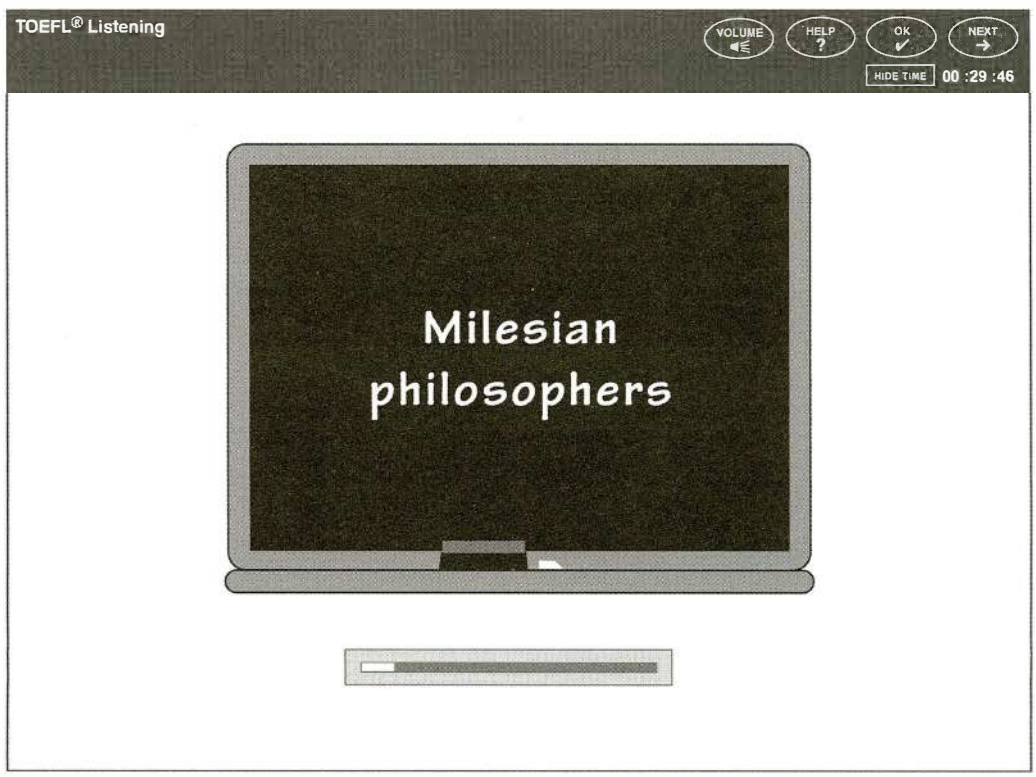
11. What is the professor's opinion about the future of wind power?

Ⓐ He thinks that wind power will require more research before it becomes practical.
Ⓑ He supports the use of wind power only as a secondary source of energy.
Ⓒ He feels that most of the world's energy problems will be solved by wind power.
Ⓓ He believes that there are too many problems associated with wind power.

Listening 3 "Philosophy Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
Milesian philosophers

12. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The laws of motion
Ⓑ The origin of water
Ⓒ The nature of the universe
Ⓓ The spirit of the world

13. Why does the student mention evolutionary theory?

Ⓐ He is digressing from the main topic.
Ⓑ He is trying to embarrass the professor.
Ⓒ He is expressing doubt about Greek philosophy.
Ⓓ He is comparing evolution to Anaximander's theory.

14. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She is not happy with the student's response.
Ⓑ She is introducing an alternative view.
Ⓒ She is going to expand on the comment.
Ⓓ She is ending the discussion.

15. What view did the three Milesian philosophers share?

Ⓐ They all believed that the mythology had a basis in fact.
Ⓑ They introduced a scientific approach to explaining nature.
Ⓒ They thought that water was the original element.
Ⓓ They all agreed with the teachings of Socrates.

16. What can be inferred about the early Greek philosophers?

Ⓐ They were exploring the physical sciences.
Ⓑ They recorded many of the Greek myths.
Ⓒ They were primarily interested in religion.
Ⓓ They had contact with other European scholars.

17. What does the professor mean when she says this: 

Ⓐ She is expressing strong agreement.
Ⓑ She is introducing doubt.
Ⓒ She is maintaining a neutral position.
Ⓓ She is asking the students to agree.

Listening 4 "Professor's Office"



18. Why does the woman want to talk with her professor?

Ⓐ She wants to make an appointment outside of office hours.
Ⓑ She needs to get him to approve the topic for her research.
Ⓒ She has some questions about the report she is writing.
Ⓓ She would like a recommendation for a job in the lab.

19. What advice does the professor give the woman?

Ⓐ Have some friends read the research
Ⓑ Refer to the explanation in the textbook
Ⓒ Ask a chemistry major to help her
Ⓓ Include more references in the report

20. What does the professor offer to do?

Ⓐ Read a draft of the report before she submits it
Ⓑ Help her find some better references
Ⓒ Show her how to complete the experiment
Ⓓ Give her a job in the laboratory

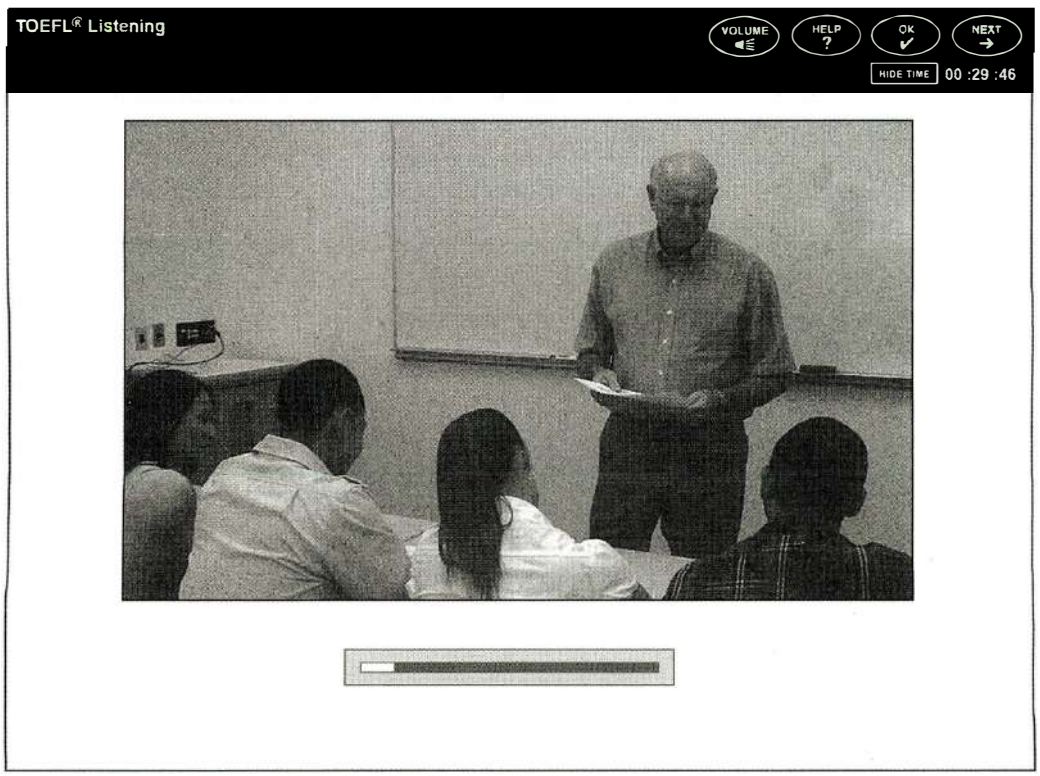
21. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He realizes that she won't have time to revise the report.
Ⓑ He is concerned that she will not complete the research.
Ⓒ He recalls that he will not be available to help her.
Ⓓ He wants her to get an extension to finish the project.

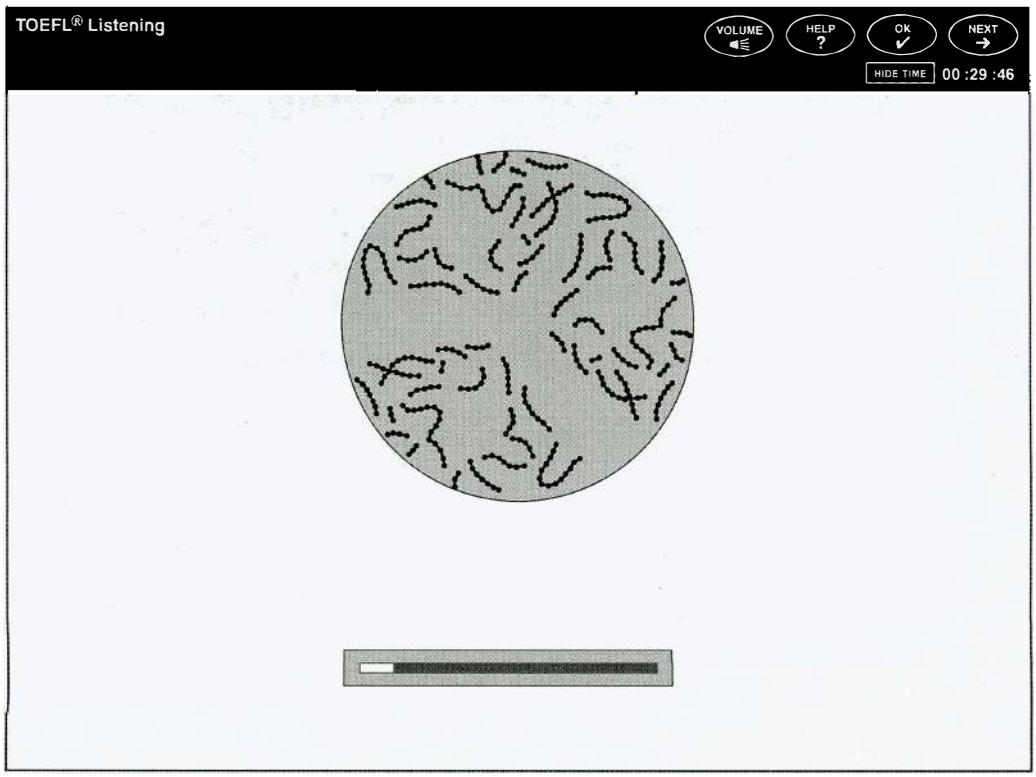
22. What is the professor's opinion of the woman?

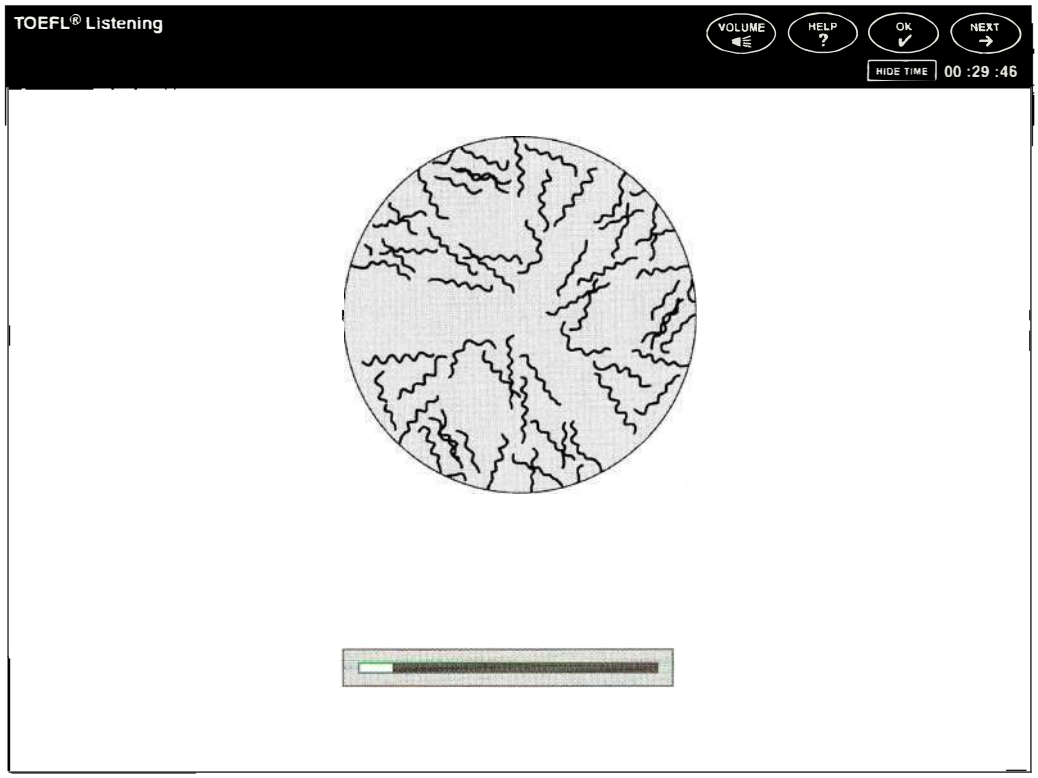
Ⓐ He assumes that she is too busy to work.
Ⓑ He is very impressed with her attitude.
Ⓒ He thinks that she is not a serious student.
Ⓓ He wants her to change her major to chemistry.

Listening 5 "Biology Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46

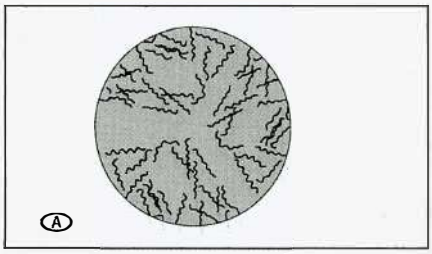


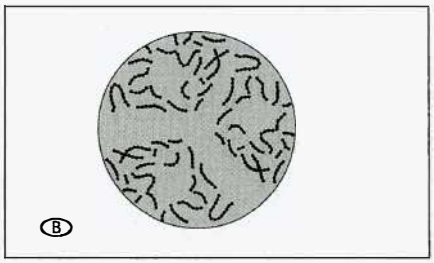
23. What aspect of bacteria is this lecture mainly about?

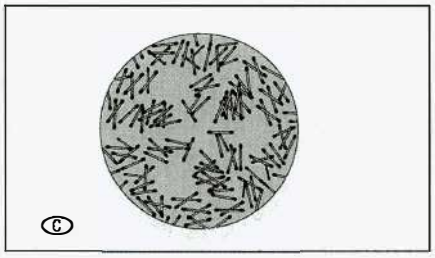
Ⓐ How microscopic organisms are measured
Ⓑ The use of bacteria for research in genetics
Ⓒ Diseases caused by bacterial infections
Ⓓ The three major types of bacteria

24. Which of the following slides contain cocci bacteria?

Click on the correct diagram.







25. Which two characteristics are common in bacteria?

Click on 2 answer choices.

A They have one cell.

B They are harmful to humans.

C They reproduce quickly.

D They die when exposed to air.

26. Why are bacteria being used in the research study at the university?

Ⓐ Bacteria have unusual cell formations.
Ⓑ Bacteria live harmlessly on the skin.
Ⓒ Bacteria are similar to other life forms.
Ⓓ Bacteria cause many diseases in humans.

27. How does the professor help the students to remember the types of bacteria?

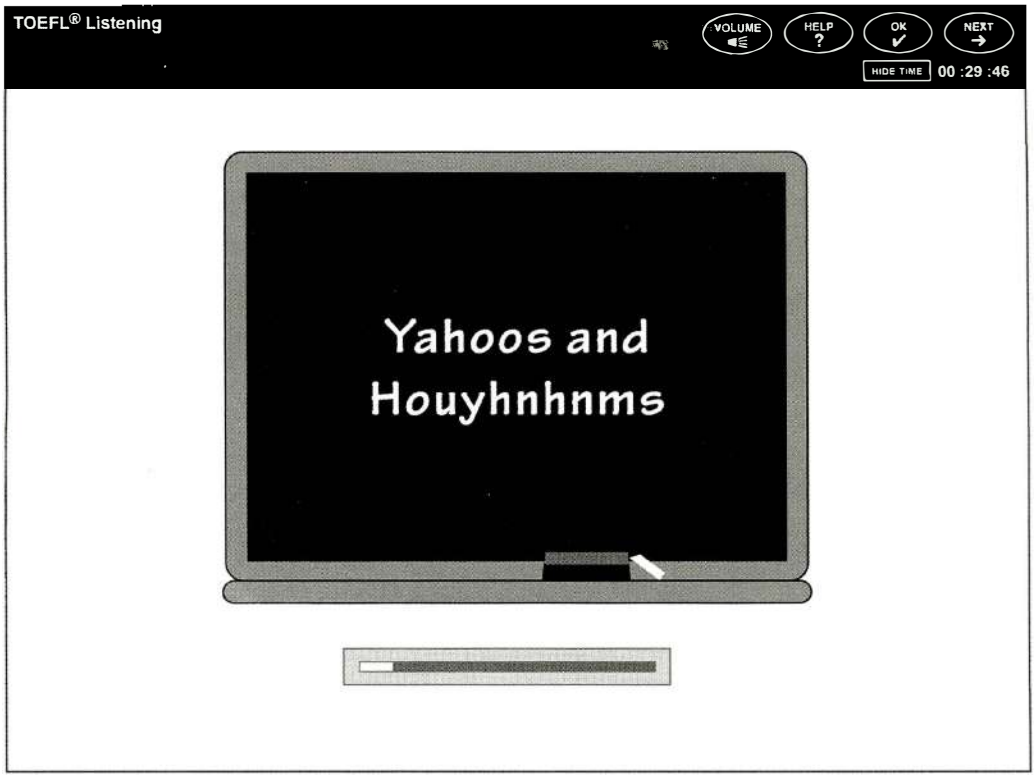
Ⓐ He shows them many examples of slides.
Ⓑ He tells them to look at specimens in the lab.
Ⓒ He uses the first letter to represent the shape.
Ⓓ He explains the various DNA structures.

28. Why does the professor say this: 🎧

Ⓐ He is showing the students some slides.
Ⓑ He does not want the students to ask questions.
Ⓒ He wants the students to pay attention.
Ⓓ He thinks that the information is very clear.

Listening 6 "Literature Class"





29. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The life of author Jonathan Swift
Ⓑ A narrative of the fourth voyage of Gulliver
Ⓒ A description of the Houyhnhnms
Ⓓ The literature of the 1700s

30. What does Gulliver learn about himself?

Ⓐ He is like the Yahoos in many ways.
Ⓑ He does not want to return to England.
Ⓒ He wants to write about his experience.
Ⓓ He is afraid of the Houyhnhnm.

31. In the discussion, the professor describes the characteristics of the Yahoos. Indicate whether each of the following is one of their characteristics. Click in the correct box for each sentence.

	Yes	No
A They eat flowers.		
B They have a foul odor.		
C They engage in an immoral lifestyle.		
D They are satirical caricatures of humans.		
E They live in trees.		

32. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ She is criticizing the author.
Ⓑ She is asking the students a question.
Ⓒ She is preparing to draw a conclusion.
Ⓓ She is changing the subject.

33. According to the professor, what kind of book is *Gulliver's Travels*?

Ⓐ A biography of Jonathan Swift
Ⓑ A satire about mankind
Ⓒ A history of politics in England
Ⓓ A children's story about animals

34. What can we infer about the literature of the period?

Ⓐ Satire was very popular.
Ⓑ Most books were nonfiction.
Ⓒ It copied the style of Swift.
Ⓓ The tone was not very serious.



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 6, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 22

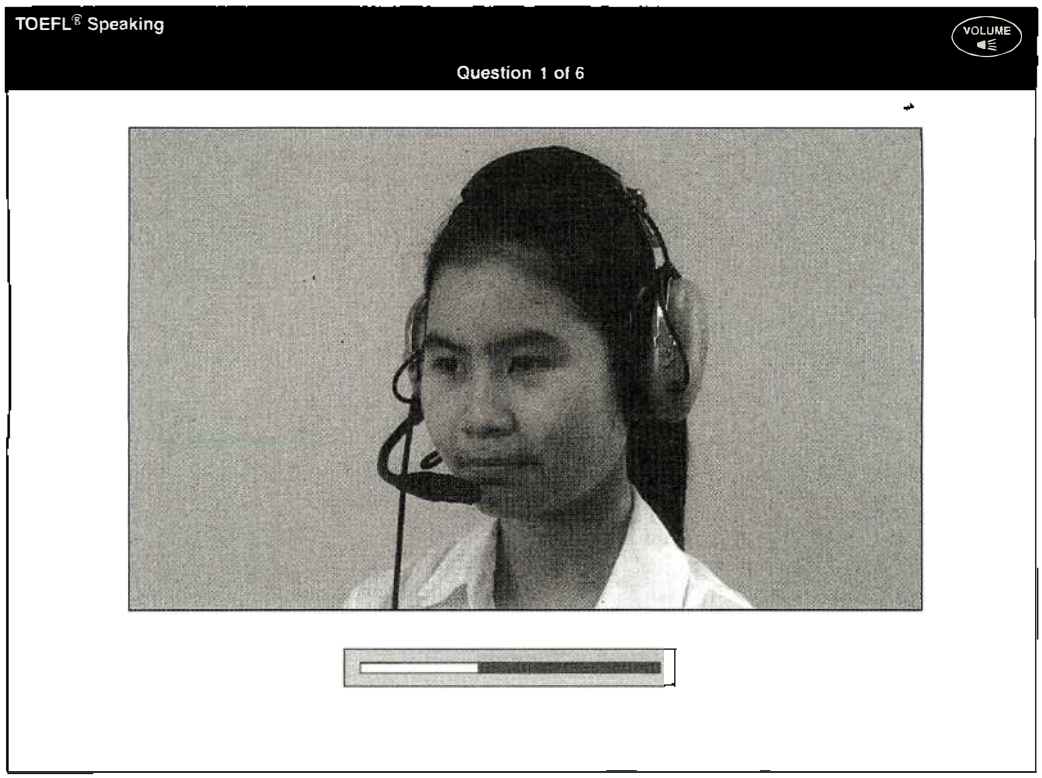
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and the questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Good Son or Daughter"

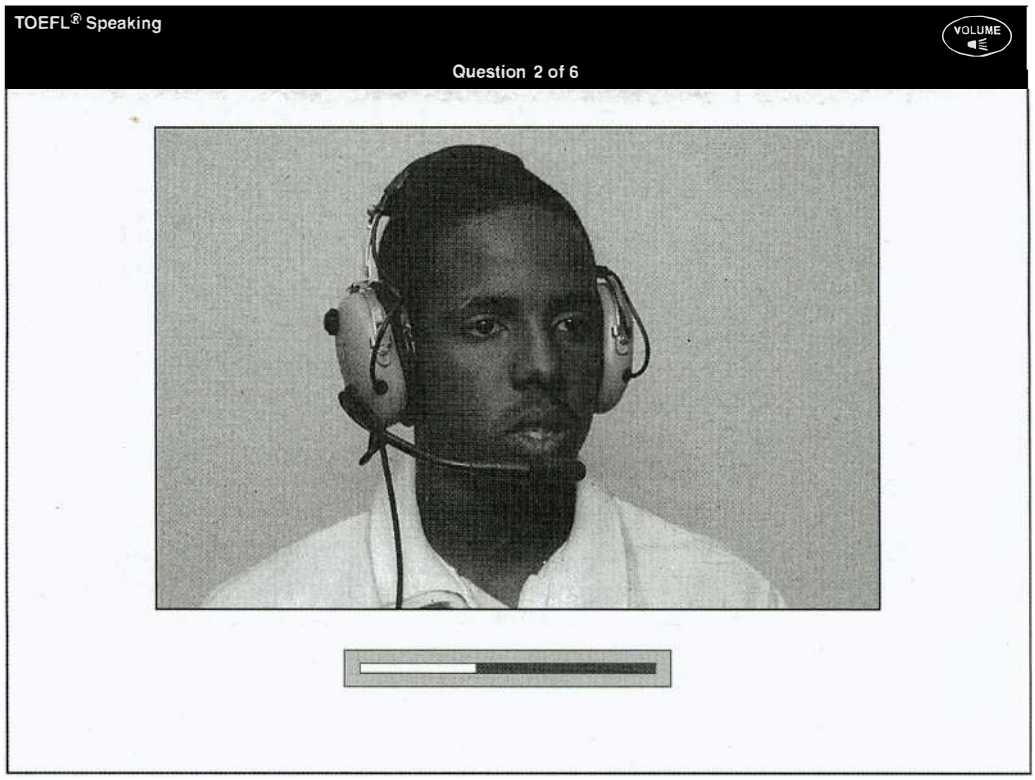


Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
In your opinion, what are the characteristics of a good son or daughter in a family? Use specific examples and details to explain your answer.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Job Opportunities"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Some people are attracted to jobs that include a great deal of travel. Other people prefer jobs that allow them to return to their homes every evening. Which type of job opportunity would you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

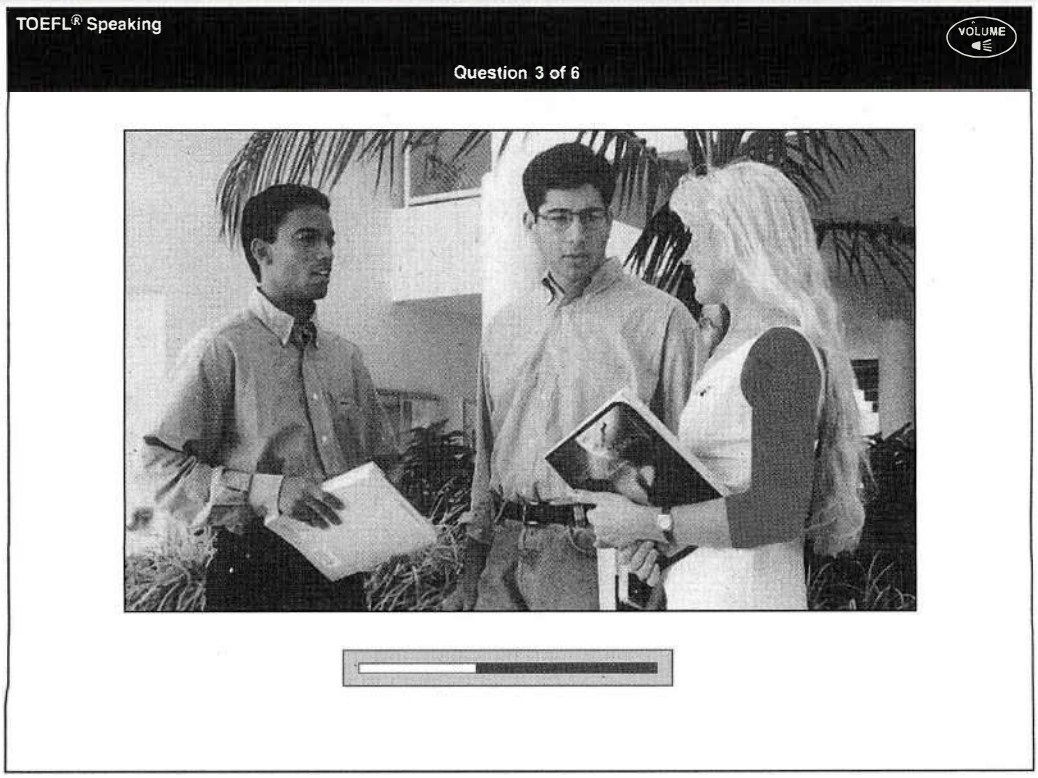
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Excused Absence"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Policy for Excused Absence

You may request an excused absence once per semester without explanation. Just email me and specify the date that you will be absent from class. If you plan to be absent on the day of a test or an exam, however, you must provide an explanation and make arrangements for a makeup test or exam. Please see me in my office for an excused absence from a test or exam. If you must be absent for more than one session, your grade may be affected. Your grade may be lowered one letter for each additional absence after the excused absence.



Now listen to a student who is talking with friends about the policy.

Question

The student expresses his opinion of the professor's policy for excused absences. Report his opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

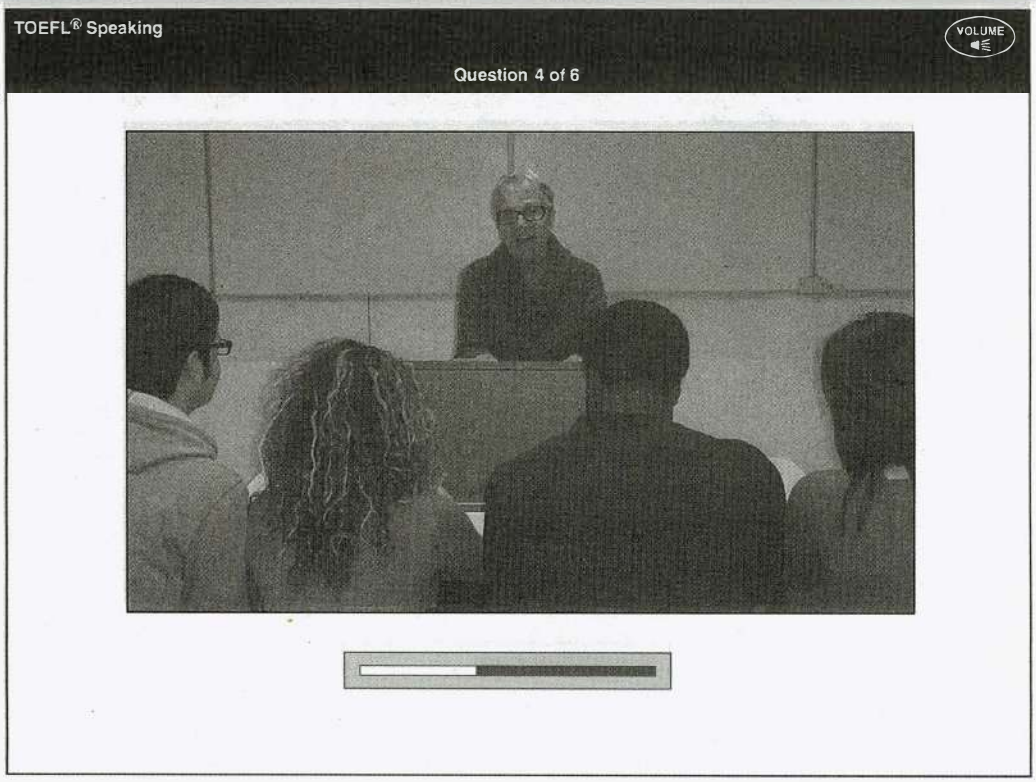
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Insects"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Insects

An insect belongs to the class of invertebrates called arthropods. Regardless of size, all adult insects have a similar body structure, which includes a head, a thorax, and an abdomen. The head contains not only the brain and mouth but also the sensory organs, usually a pair of eyes and a pair of antennae. The thorax is the central part of the insect's body where the wings and legs are attached, allowing the insect to move in the air and on feeding surfaces. Typically, insects have three pairs of legs and two pairs of wings. The third part of the insect's body structure consists of an abdomen where food is processed and also where the reproductive organs are found.



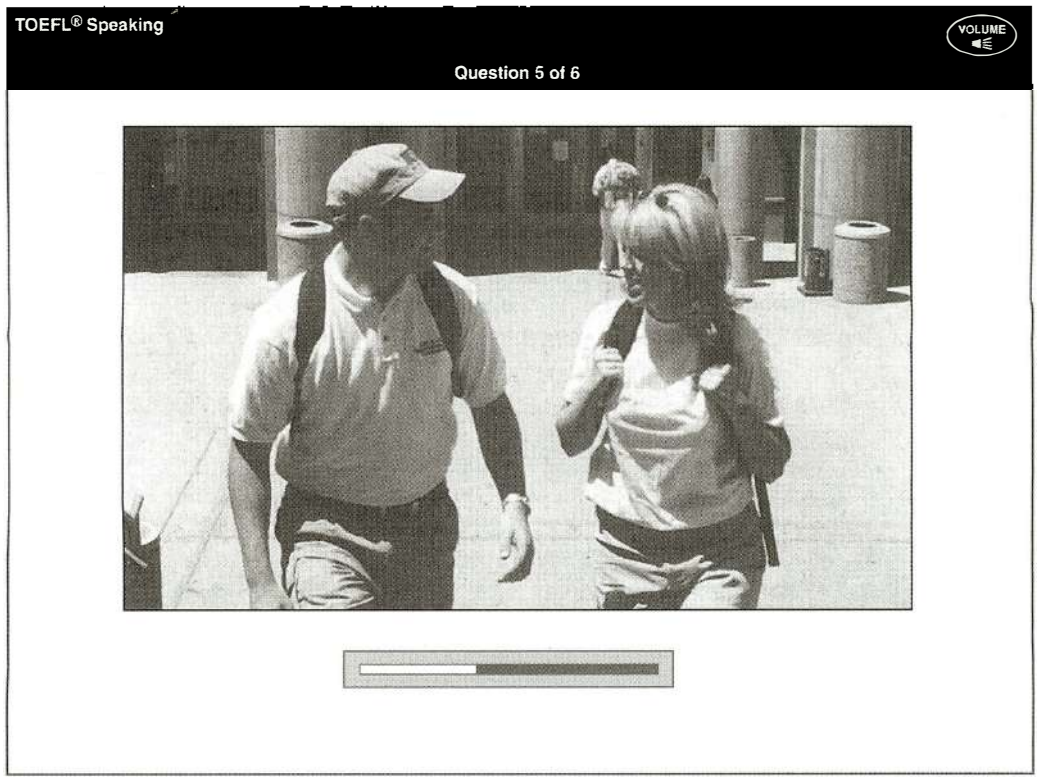
Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is talking about insects.

Question

Describe the structure of an insect and explain why a spider is not strictly considered an insect.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Meeting People"

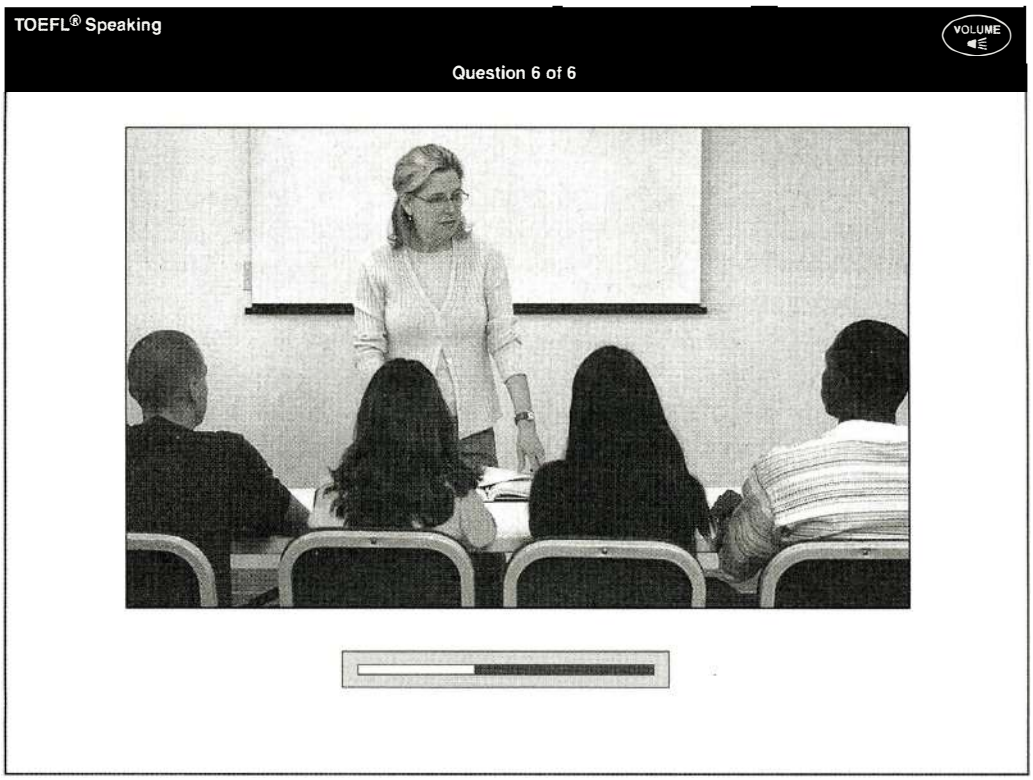


Now listen to a conversation between a student and his friend.

Question
Describe the man's problem, and the two suggestions that his friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the man should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Skinner Box"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class. The professor is discussing the Skinner Box.

Question
Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the Skinner Box, and then explain how the device is used in psychology experiments.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Formation of the Moon"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

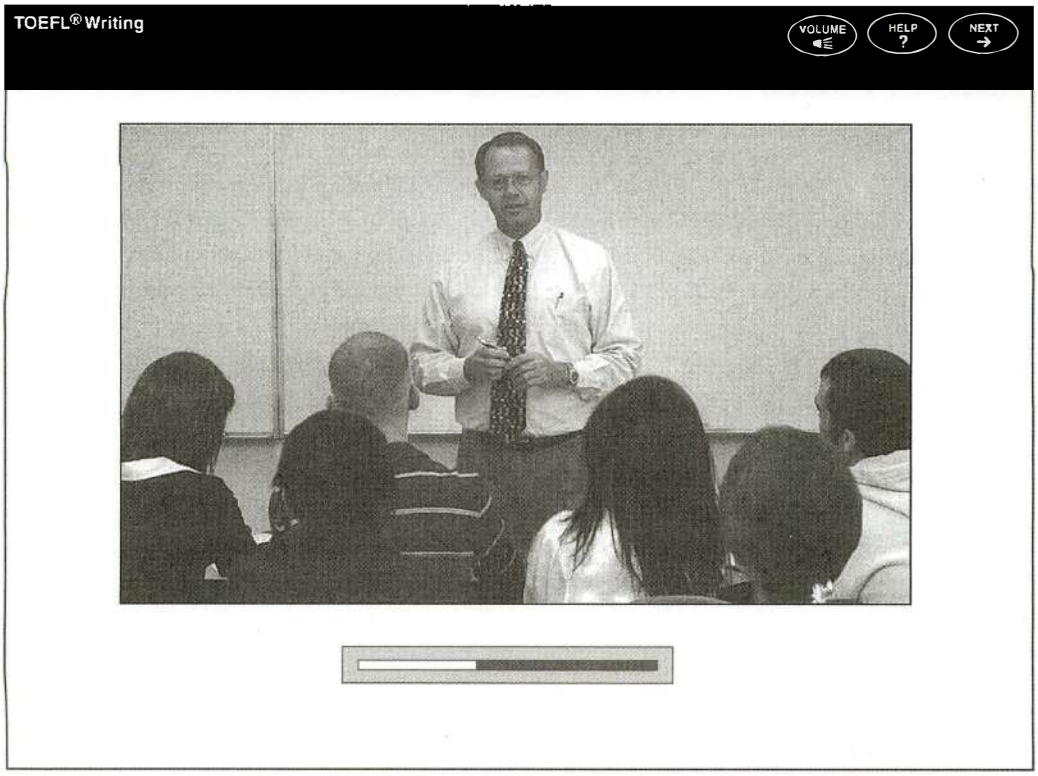
Although most scientists would agree that the Moon is critical for the formation of life on Earth, there is no consensus about the way that the Moon formed. Although there are several additional theories to explain the way that the Moon came into being, three hypotheses are commonly debated among lunar scientists.

The fission theory maintains that the Moon was once part of the Earth and became separated early in the formation of the solar system, probably while the Earth was spinning rapidly. The large piece of the Earth's surface that formed the Moon is believed to have broken off from the Pacific Ocean basin.

The co-accretion theory, also called the condensation theory, contends that the Moon was formed at the same time as the Earth from the original nebula of interstellar dust and gas that comprised the young solar system. In other words, the Moon was a sister planet that formed, like the Earth, by the aggregation of small particles into a single, much larger body. This event probably took place shortly after the Big Bang, about 13 billion years ago.

The giant impact theory states that the Moon was formed from the debris of an indirect collision between the Earth and a planetary body about the size of Mars. It is estimated that the collision occurred about 4.5 billion years ago. Initially, there would have been a number of pieces from both Earth and the collision planet that would have orbited Earth, but eventually, they would have coalesced to form a ball of molten rock about the size of today's Moon.

Model Test 6, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 23



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "Learning a Foreign Language"

Question
Many people have learned a foreign language in their own country; others have learned a foreign language in the country in which it is spoken. Which is better? Give the advantages of each and support your viewpoint.

STOP

This is the end of Model Test 6.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 6," Chapter 5, pages 739–768.

MODEL TEST 7: PROGRESS TEST

READING SECTION

The Reading section tests your ability to understand reading passages like those in college textbooks. The reading passages are presented in one complete section, which allows you to move to the next passage and return to a previous passage to change answers or answer questions that you may have left blank. The passages are about 700 words in length.

This is the short format for the Reading section. On the short format, you will read three passages. After each passage, you will answer 12–14 questions about it. You may take notes while you read, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some passages may include a word or phrase that is underlined in blue. Click on the word or phrase to see a glossary definition or explanation.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Most questions are worth 1 point, but the last question in each passage is worth more than 1 point.

Click on **Next** to go to the next question. Click on **Back** to return to previous questions. You may return to previous questions for all of the passages.

You can click on **Review** to see a chart of the questions you have answered and the questions you have not answered. From this screen, you can return to the question you want to answer.

Although you can spend more time on one passage and less time on another passage, you should try to pace yourself so that you are spending about 20 minutes to read each passage and answer the questions for that passage. You will have 60 minutes to complete all of the passages and answer all of the questions on the short format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete the Reading section.

Reading 1 "The Hydrologic Cycle"

P1 ➔ The hydrologic cycle is the transfer of water from the oceans to the atmosphere to the land and back to the oceans. The processes involved include evaporation of water from the oceans; precipitation on land; evaporation from land; and runoff from streams, rivers, and subsurface groundwater. The hydrologic cycle is driven by solar energy, which evaporates water from oceans, freshwater bodies, soils, and vegetation. Of the total 1.3 billion cubic km water on Earth, about 97% is in oceans, and about 2% is in glaciers and ice caps. The rest is in freshwater on land and in the atmosphere. Although it represents only a small fraction of the water on Earth, the water on land is important in moving chemicals, sculpturing landscape, weathering rocks, transporting sediments, and providing our water resources. The water in the atmosphere—only 0.001% of the total on Earth—cycles quickly to produce rain and runoff for our water resources.

P2 ➔ Especially important from an environmental perspective is that rates of transfer on land are small relative to what's happening in the ocean. For example, most of the water that evaporates from the ocean falls again as precipitation into the ocean. On land, most of the water that falls as precipitation comes from evaporation of water from land. This means that regional land-use changes, such as the building of large dams and reservoirs, can change the amount of water evaporated into the atmosphere and change the location and amount of precipitation on land—water we depend on to raise our crops *and* supply water for our urban environments. Furthermore, as we pave over large areas of land in cities, storm water runs off quicker and in greater volume, thereby increasing flood hazards. Bringing water into semi-arid cities by pumping groundwater or transporting water from distant mountains through aqueducts may increase evaporation, thereby increasing humidity and precipitation in a region.

P3 Approximately 60% of water that falls by precipitation on land each year evaporates to the atmosphere. A smaller component (about 40%) returns to the ocean surface and subsurface runoff. [A] This small annual transfer of water supplies resources for rivers and urban and agricultural lands. [B] Unfortunately, distribution of water on land is far from uniform. [C] As human population increases, water shortages will become more frequent in arid and semi-arid regions, where water is naturally nonabundant. [D]

P4 ➔ At the regional and local level, the fundamental hydrological unit of the landscape is the drainage basin (also called a watershed or catchment). A drainage basin is the area that contributes surface runoff to a particular stream or river. The term *drainage basin* is usually used in evaluating the hydrology of an area, such as the stream flow or runoff from hill slopes. Drainage basins vary greatly in size, from less than a hectare (2.5 acres) to millions of square kilometers. A drainage basin is usually named for its main stream or river, such as the Mississippi River drainage basin.

P5 ➔ The main process in the cycle is the global transfer of water from the atmosphere to the land and oceans and back to the atmosphere. Notice that more than 97% of Earth's water is in the oceans; the next largest storage compartment, the ice caps and glaciers, accounts for another 2%. Together, these account for more than 99% of the total water, and both are generally unsuitable for human use because of salinity (seawater) and location (ice caps and glaciers). Only about 0.001% of the total water on Earth is in the atmosphere at any one time. However, this relatively small amount of water in the global water cycle, with an average atmospheric residence time of only about 9 days, produces all our freshwater resources through the process of precipitation.

P6 ➔ Water can be found in either liquid, solid, or gaseous form at a number of locations at or near Earth's surface. Depending on the specific location, the residence time may vary from a few days to many thousands of years. However, as mentioned, more than 99% of Earth's water in its natural state is unavailable or unsuitable for beneficial human use. Thus, the amount of water for which all the people, plants, and animals on Earth compete is much less than 1% of the total.

P7 As the world's population and industrial production of goods increase, the use of water will also accelerate. The world per capita use of water in 1975 was about 185,000 gal/year. And the total human use of water was about 700 m^3/year or 2000 gal/day. Today, world use of water is about 6,000 km^3/year or about 1.58×10^{15} gal/year, which is a significant fraction of the naturally available freshwater.

P8 Compared with other resources, water is used in very large quantities. In recent years, the total mass (or weight) of water used on Earth per year has been approximately 1000 times the world's total production of minerals, including petroleum, coal, metal ores, and nonmetals.

1. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

   Ⓐ It is the hydrologic cycle that causes water to evaporate from plants, soil, and bodies of water inland as well as from the oceans.
   Ⓑ Solar energy is the source of power for the hydrologic cycle, which begins by evaporating water from plants, soil, oceans, and freshwater sources.
   Ⓒ The evaporation of water from the oceans, freshwater sources, plants, and soils is the natural process, which we call the hydrologic cycle.
   Ⓓ Energy from the sun and the hydrologic cycle are power sources for plants that require water from the oceans and freshwater sources.

2. Based on information in paragraph 1, which of the following best explains the term "hydrologic cycle"?

   Ⓐ The movement of water from freshwater bodies into the oceans
   Ⓑ Solar energy in the atmosphere that produces rain over land and oceans
   Ⓒ Water resources from oceans and freshwater sources inland
   Ⓓ Transportation of water from oceans into the atmosphere and onto the land

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

3. The phrase The rest in the passage refers to

   Ⓐ oceans
   Ⓑ ice caps
   Ⓒ glaciers
   Ⓓ water

4. According to paragraph 1, why is freshwater considered important?

   Ⓐ It evaporates more quickly than water in the ocean.
   Ⓑ It is the largest source of water on Earth.
   Ⓒ It determines the landscape of rocks and sediment.
   Ⓓ It is the runoff that empties into the oceans.

   Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

5. Based on information in paragraph 2, how do man-made water resources such as reservoirs and lakes affect the water cycle?

   Ⓐ They increase the danger of flooding in the areas surrounding them.
   Ⓑ They cause changes in the patterns of rainfall in the immediate area.
   Ⓒ They provide water sources for agricultural purposes in dry areas.
   Ⓓ They improve the natural flow of water into the oceans.

   Paragraph 2 is marked with an arrow [➔].

6. The word component in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ error
   Ⓑ part
   Ⓒ estimate
   Ⓓ source

7. The word fundamental in the passage is closest in meaning to

   Ⓐ diverse
   Ⓑ common
   Ⓒ basic
   Ⓓ attractive

8. Why does the author mention the "Mississippi River" in paragraph 4?

   Ⓐ The Mississippi River is an example of a drainage basin.
   Ⓑ The Mississippi River is one of the largest rivers in the region.
   Ⓒ The Mississippi River is used in evaluating the runoff from hills.
   Ⓓ The Mississippi River is named for the area surrounding it.

   Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

9. According to paragraph 5, which of the following is true about the global transfer of water?

   Ⓐ Most rainwater stays in the atmosphere for less than a week.
   Ⓑ Glaciers are a better source of water than the oceans.
   Ⓒ Most of the water in the world is currently in the water cycle.
   Ⓓ Less than 1 percent of the water can be used for human consumption.

   Paragraph 5 is marked with an arrow [➔].

10. According to paragraph 6, why is water a problem?

    Ⓐ There is not enough water available in liquid form in the world.
    Ⓑ Bringing water to the surface of the Earth can be difficult.
    Ⓒ A comparatively small amount of Earth's water is suitable for human use.
    Ⓓ Most of the naturally accessible water is too old to be used safely.

    Paragraph 6 is marked with an arrow [➔].

11. The word significant in the passage is closest in meaning to

    Ⓐ rare
    Ⓑ small
    Ⓒ important
    Ⓓ regular

12. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

    As a result, water shortages occur in some areas.

    Where could the sentence best be added?

    Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

13. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

The hydrologic cycle transfers water from the oceans to the atmosphere, from the atmosphere to the land, and back to the oceans.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A The global problem is the availability of water that is suitable for human use where and when it is needed.

B Only about 0.001% of the total water on Earth is in the atmosphere at a particular point in time.

C Solar energy causes the evaporation of oceans and freshwater lakes and rivers into the atmosphere.

D Water shortages will probably become more common as more people begin to live in desert regions.

E Precipitation in the form of rainfall replenishes the water in the ocean and in drainage basins on land.

F Desalination is a key solution to the problem of adequate water supplies for human use.

Reading 2 "Piaget's Cognitive Development Theory"

P1 Jean Piaget, the famous Swiss developmental psychologist, changed the way we think about the development of children's minds. **Piaget's theory** *states that children go through four stages as they actively construct their understanding of the world.* Two processes underlie this cognitive construction of the world: organization and adaptation. To make sense of our world, we organize our experiences. For example, we separate important ideas from less important ideas and we connect one idea to another. In addition to organizing our observations and experiences, we adapt, adjusting to new environmental demands.

P2 As the infant or child seeks to construct an understanding of the world, said Piaget, the developing brain creates **schemes**. These are actions or mental representations that organize knowledge.

P3 ➔ **Assimilation and Accommodation.** To explain how children use and adapt their schemes, Piaget offered two concepts: assimilation and accommodation. Assimilation occurs when children use their existing schemes to deal with new information or experiences. Accommodation occurs when children adjust their schemes to take new information and experiences into account. Think about a toddler who has learned the word *car* to identify the family's car. The toddler may call all moving vehicles on roads "cars," including motorcycles and trucks; the child has assimilated these objects to his or her existing scheme. But the child soon learns that motorcycles and trucks are not cars and fine-tunes the category to exclude motorcycles and trucks, accommodating the scheme.

P4 Assimilation and accommodation operate even in the very young infant's life. Newborns reflexively suck everything that touches their lips; they assimilate all sorts of objects into their sucking scheme. By sucking different objects, they learn about their taste, texture, shape, and so on. After several months of experience though, they construct their understanding of the world differently. Some objects, such as fingers and the mother's breast, can be sucked, but others, such as fuzzy blankets, should not be sucked. In other words, they accommodate their sucking scheme.

P5 Piaget also held that we go through four stages in understanding the world. Each of the stages is age-related and consists of distinct ways of thinking. Remember, it is the *different* way of understanding the world that makes one stage more advanced than another; knowing *more* information does not make the child's thinking more advanced, in the Piagetian view. This is what Piaget meant when he said the child's cognition is *qualitatively* different in one stage compared to another. A What are Piaget's four stages of cognitive development?

P6 B The *sensorimotor stage,* which lasts from birth to about 2 years of age, is the first Piagetian stage. In this stage, infants construct an understanding of the world by coordinating sensory experiences (such as seeing and hearing) with physical, motoric actions—hence the term *sensorimotor*. C At the end of the stage, 2-year-olds have sophisticated sensorimotor patterns and are beginning to operate with primitive symbols. D

P7 ➔ *The preoperational stage*, which lasts from approximately 2 to 7 years of age, is Piaget's second stage. In this stage, children begin to go beyond simply connecting sensory information with physical action. However, according to Piaget, preschool children still lack the ability to perform what he calls *operations*, which are internalized mental actions that allow children to do mentally what they previously did physically. For example, if you imagine putting two sticks together to see whether they would be as long as another stick without actually moving the sticks, you are performing a concrete action.

P8 ➔ The *concrete operational stage,* which lasts from approximately 7 to 11 years of age, is the third Piagetian stage. In this stage, children can perform operations, and logical reasoning replaces intuitive thought as long as reasoning can be applied to specific or concrete examples. For instance, concrete operational thinkers cannot imagine the steps necessary to complete an algebraic equation, which is too abstract for thinking at this stage of development.

P9 ➔ The *formal operational stage,* which appears between the ages of 11 and 15, is the fourth and final Piagetian stage. In this stage, individuals move beyond concrete experiences and think in abstract and more logical terms. As part of thinking more abstractly, adolescents develop images of ideal circumstances. They might think about what an ideal parent is like and compare their parents to this ideal standard. They begin to entertain possibilities for the future and are fascinated with what they can be. In solving problems, formal operational thinkers are more systematic, developing hypotheses about why something is happening the way it is, then testing these hypotheses in a deductive manner.

14. The word underlie in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ establish
Ⓑ support
Ⓒ combine
Ⓓ complicate

15. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Our new experiences require that we adjust in order to understand information that we have never seen.
Ⓑ Understanding new ideas is easier if we include observations and personal experiences.
Ⓒ We engage in both organization of what we see and experience and adaptation of novel ideas.
Ⓓ Thinking must include direct observation and experiences in order to organize the information.

16. Why does the author mention a "car" in paragraph 3?

Ⓐ To explain the concepts of assimilation and accommodation
Ⓑ To demonstrate how a toddler responds to a new experience
Ⓒ To prove that a young child cannot engage in problem solving
Ⓓ To provide an example of the first stage of cognitive development

Paragraph 3 is marked with an arrow [➔].

17. The word adjust in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ change
Ⓑ improve
Ⓒ hide
Ⓓ find

18. The word distinct in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ new
Ⓑ simple
Ⓒ different
Ⓓ exact

19. The word sophisticated in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ limited
Ⓑ complex
Ⓒ useful
Ⓓ necessary

20. Based on the information in paragraph 7, which of the following best explains the term "operations"?

Ⓐ Symbolic thought
Ⓑ Mental actions
Ⓒ Physical activity
Ⓓ Abstract reasoning

Paragraph 7 is marked with an arrow [➔].

21. According to paragraph 8, why would a 10-year-old be unable to solve algebra problems?

Ⓐ Algebra requires concrete operational thinking.
Ⓑ A 10-year-old has not reached the formal operational stage.
Ⓒ A child of 10 does not have logical reasoning abilities.
Ⓓ *An algebra* problem has too many steps in order to solve it.

Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

22. In paragraph 9, why does the author mention "parents"?

Ⓐ Teenagers are already thinking about their roles in the future.
Ⓑ Parents are very important teachers during the final stage of development.
Ⓒ The comparison of real and ideal parents is an example of abstract thinking.
Ⓓ Adolescents tend to be critical of their parents as part of their development.

Paragraph 9 is marked with an arrow [➔].

23. What can be inferred from the passage about people who are older than 15 years of age?

Ⓐ They must have completed all of Piaget's stages of cognitive development.
Ⓑ They are probably in the formal operational stage of development.
Ⓒ They have mastered deductive reasoning and are beginning to learn intuitively.
Ⓓ They may still not be able to solve problems systematically.

24. All of the following refer to Piaget's theory EXCEPT

Ⓐ Even very young infants may engage in constructing the way that they understand the world.
Ⓑ Both assimilation and accommodation are processes that we can use to help us adapt to new information.
Ⓒ When children learn more information, then their thinking is at a higher stage of development.
Ⓓ Operations require a more advanced stage of development than symbolic representation.

25. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

At the beginning of this stage, newborns have little more than reflexive patterns with which to work.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

26. **Directions:** An introduction for a short summary of the passage appears below. Complete the summary by selecting the THREE answer choices that mention the most important points in the passage. Some sentences do not belong in the summary because they express ideas that are not included in the passage or are minor points from the passage. ***This question is worth 2 points.***

Jean Piaget proposed a theory of cognitive development in children.

-
-
-

Answer Choices

A Assimilation and accommodation are two processes that allow children to organize schemes.

B Four age-related stages build upon each other to encourage different ways of thinking and developing.

C Logical reasoning is applied to specific or concrete examples, replacing intuition as a mental process.

D A toddler learns that there are different categories for vehicles, including cars, motorcycles, and trucks.

E Children are active participants in cognitively constructing their understanding of the world around them.

F Imagination plays a central role in children during the early stages of their development.

Reading 3 "Speech and Writing"

P1 ➔ One of the basic assumptions of modern linguistics is that speech is primary and writing is secondary. The most immediate manifestation of language is speech and not writing. Writing is simply the representation of speech in another physical medium. Spoken language encodes thought into a physically transmittable form, while writing, in turn, encodes spoken language into a physically preservable form. Writing is a three-stage process: thinking of an idea, expressing it in mental grammar, and then transferring it to written form. All units of writing, whether letters or characters, are based on units of speech, i.e., words, sounds, or syllables. When linguists study language, therefore, they take the spoken language as their best source of data and their *object of description* except in instances of languages like Latin for which there are no longer any speakers.

P2 You may think that with the advent of so many "instant messaging" programs, writing can now be as immediate as speech. But it is important to remember that even though the written form can be nearly immediate these days, there is still an extra step between conceptualizing the message you want to communicate and the reception of that idea, if you have to write it—regardless of whether you do so longhand or type it into a computer.

P3 There are several reasons for maintaining that speech is primary and writing is secondary. A Writing is a later historical development than spoken language. B **Archeological evidence** indicates that writing was first utilized in Sumer, that is, modern-day Iraq, about 6,000 years ago. C As far as physical and cultural anthropologists can tell, spoken language has probably been used by humans for hundreds of thousands of years. D

P4 ➔ **Writing does not exist everywhere** that spoken language does. This seems hard to imagine in our highly literate society, but the fact is that there are still many communities in the world where a written form of language is not used. Even in those cultures using a writing system, there are individuals who fail to learn the written form of their language. In fact, the majority of the Earth's inhabitants are illiterate, though quite capable of spoken communication. However, no society uses only a written language with no spoken form.

P5 **Writing must be taught**, whereas spoken language is acquired automatically. All children, except children with serious learning disabilities, naturally learn to speak the language of the community in which they are brought up. They acquire the basics of their native language before they enter school, and even if they never attend school, they become fully competent speakers. Writing systems vary in complexity, but regardless of their level of sophistication, they must all be taught.

P6 **Neurolinguistic evidence** (studies of the brain in action during language use) demonstrates that the processing and production of written language is overlaid on the spoken language centers in the brain. Spoken language involves several distinct areas of the brain; writing uses these areas and others as well.

P7 Despite all this evidence, it is a widely held misconception that writing is more perfect than speech. To many people, writing somehow seems more correct and more stable, whereas speech can be careless, corrupted, and susceptible to change. Some people even go so far as to identify "language" with writing and to regard speech as a secondary form of language used imperfectly to approximate the ideals of the written language.

P8 ➔ What gives rise to the misconception that writing is more perfect than speech? There are several reasons. Writing can be edited, and so the product of writing is usually more aptly worded and better organized, containing fewer errors, hesitations, and incomplete sentences than are found in speech. This

"perfection of writing" can be explained by the fact that writing is the result of deliberation, correction, and revision, while speech is the spontaneous and simultaneous formulation of ideas; writing is therefore less subject to the constraint of time than speech is. Writing must be taught and is therefore ultimately associated with education and educated speech. Since the speech of the educated is more often than not set up as the "standard language," writing is associated indirectly with the varieties of language that people tend to view as "correct." However, the association of writing with the standard variety is not a necessary one, as evidenced by the attempts of writers to transcribe faithfully the speech of their characters. Mark Twain's *Huckleberry Finn* and John Steinbeck's *Of Mice and Men* contain examples of this. Writing is more physically stable than spoken language, which consists of nothing more than sound waves traveling through the air, and is therefore ephemeral and transient. Writing tends to last, because of its physical medium (characters on some surface), and can be preserved for a very long time. Spelling does not seem to vary from individual to individual or from place to place as easily as pronunciation does. Thus, writing has the appearance of being more stable especially in the modern era. Of course, spelling does vary, as exemplified by the differences between the American ways of spelling *gray* and words with the suffixes *-ize* and *-ization* as compared with the British spelling of *grey* and *-ise* and *-isation*. Writing could also change if it were made to follow the changes of speech. The fact that people at various times try to carry out spelling reforms amply illustrates this possibility.

27. According to paragraph 1, what can be inferred about linguistic research?

Ⓐ Linguists do not usually study Latin.
Ⓑ Research on writing is much easier.
Ⓒ Studies always require several sources.
Ⓓ Researchers prefer speech samples.

Paragraph 1 is marked with an arrow [➔].

28. According to paragraph 4, what is true about literacy?

Ⓐ Only a minority of the world's population can read and write.
Ⓑ Literate populations are more capable than other groups.
Ⓒ The modern world has a very highly literate population.
Ⓓ Many people fail to become literate because it is difficult.

Paragraph 4 is marked with an arrow [➔].

29. Which of the sentences below best expresses the information in the highlighted statement in the passage? The other choices change the meaning or leave out important information.

Ⓐ Writing that has a very complex system must be learned.
Ⓑ All writing has to be taught because the systems are variable.
Ⓒ In spite of complex features in writing systems, people can learn them.
Ⓓ Both simple and complex writing systems require direct instruction.

30. The word approximate in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ make better than
Ⓑ come close to
Ⓒ take out of
Ⓓ get on with

31. The word deliberation in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ work
Ⓑ thought
Ⓒ time
Ⓓ intelligence

32. Why does the author mention "Mark Twain" and "John Steinbeck" in paragraph 8?

Ⓐ To demonstrate that speech cannot be transcribed
Ⓑ To provide examples of two good writing styles
Ⓒ To prove that a nonstandard variety can be written
Ⓓ To contrast varieties of speech for their characters

Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

33. The word transient in the passage is closest in meaning to

Ⓐ unimportant
Ⓑ temporary
Ⓒ interesting
Ⓓ clear

34. According to paragraph 8, what is true about spelling?

Ⓐ Spelling does not change from one geographical region to another.
Ⓑ British and American spellings are more similar than pronunciation.
Ⓒ Pronunciation in English is not related to spelling changes.
Ⓓ Changes in spelling are occasionally initiated because of speech.

Paragraph 8 is marked with an arrow [➔].

35. The phrase this possibility in the passage refers to

Ⓐ writing could also change
Ⓑ the changes of speech
Ⓒ people try to carry out
Ⓓ spelling reforms illustrate

36. Which of the following statements most closely represents the author's opinion?

Ⓐ Speech and writing have historical similarities.
Ⓑ Standard speech is the best model for writing.
Ⓒ Writing is not more perfect than speech.
Ⓓ Writing should not change like speech does.

37. How does the author organize the passage?

Ⓐ Cause and effect
Ⓑ Chronological narrative
Ⓒ Persuasive argument
Ⓓ Contrastive analysis

38. Look at the four squares [■] that show where the following sentence could be inserted in the passage.

The Sumerians probably devised written characters for the purpose of maintaining inventories of livestock and merchandise.

Where could the sentence best be added?

Click on a square [■] to insert the sentence in the passage.

39. **Directions**: Complete the table by matching the phrases on the left with the headings on the right. Select the appropriate answer choices and drag them to the type of language to which they relate. TWO of the answer choices will NOT be used. ***This question is worth 4 points.***

To delete an answer choice, click on it. To see the passage, click on **View Text**.

Answer Choices	**Speech**
A Not observable in brain activity	●
B A primary form of language	●
C Direct representation of thought	●
D A three-stage process	●
E An earlier development	**Writing**
F Associated with education	●
G Contains fewer errors	●
H No regional variations	●
I Acquired naturally	

LISTENING SECTION



Model Test 7, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 25

The Listening section tests your ability to understand spoken English that is typical of interactions and academic speech on college campuses. During the test, you will listen to conversations, lectures, and discussions, and you will answer questions about them.

This is the long format for the Listening section. On the long format, you will listen to three conversations, three lectures, and three discussions. After each listening passage, you will answer 5–6 questions about it. Only two conversations, two lectures, and two discussions will be graded. The other passages are part of an experimental section for future tests. Because you will not know which conversations, lectures, and discussions will be graded, you must try to do your best on all of them.

You will hear each passage one time. You may take notes while you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions.

Choose the best answer for multiple-choice questions. Follow the directions on the page or on the screen for computer-assisted questions. Click on **Next** and then on **OK** to go on to the next question. You cannot return to previous questions.

The Listening section is divided into sets. Each set includes one conversation, one lecture, and one discussion. You have 10 minutes to answer all of the questions for each set. You will have 30 minutes to answer all of the questions on the long format. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to complete your answers for the section. The clock does NOT count the time you are listening to the conversations, lectures, and discussions.

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"



1. Why does the man go to see his professor?

   Ⓐ He wants to withdraw from the class.
   Ⓑ He needs to ask the professor a question.
   Ⓒ His professor promised to give him a tape.
   Ⓓ His professor asked him to come to the office.

2. Why does the student say this: 🎧

   Ⓐ He is disrespectful.
   Ⓑ He is surprised.
   Ⓒ He is sorry.
   Ⓓ He is happy.

3. What does the professor mean when she says this: 🎧

   Ⓐ She is warning the student that she could take more serious action.
   Ⓑ She is indicating that she is not sure what she wants to do.
   Ⓒ She is asking the man to come up with a solution for the situation.
   Ⓓ She is forgiving the man for causing a problem in her class.

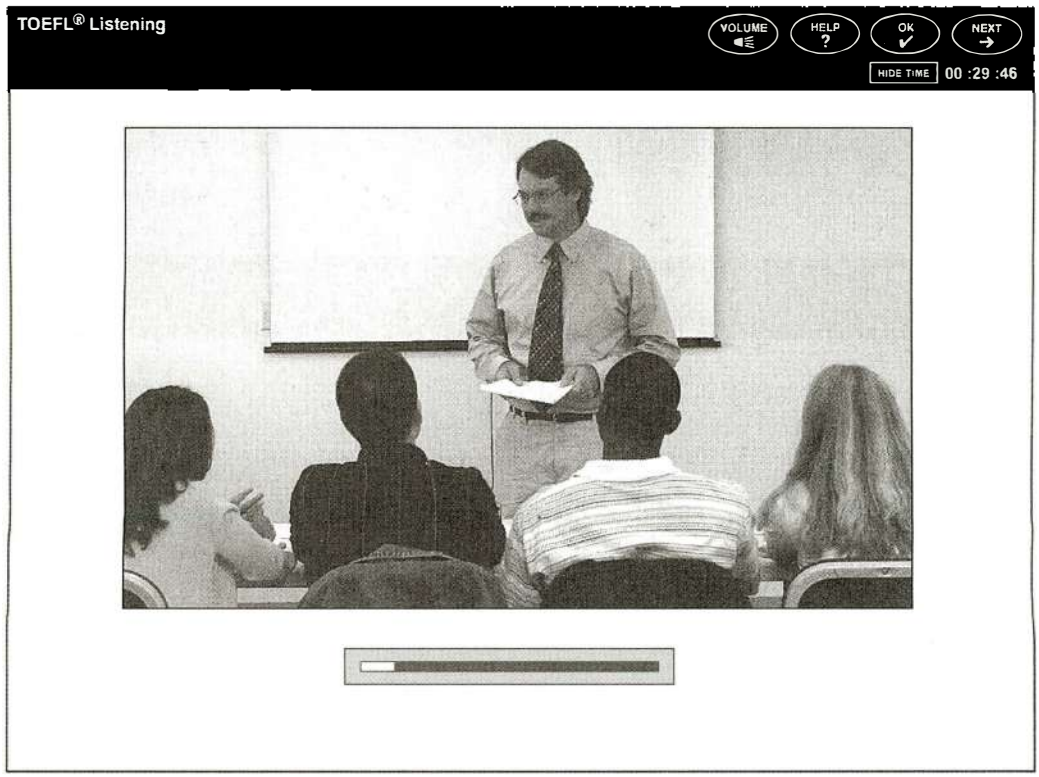
4. How does the professor feel about questions in class?

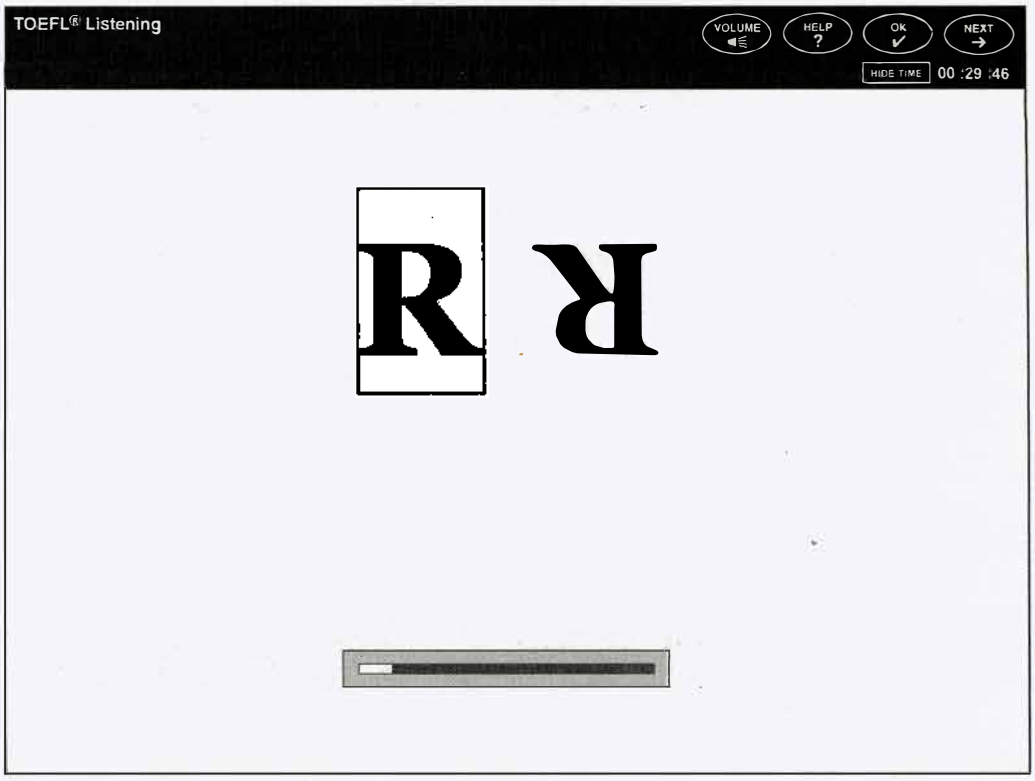
   Ⓐ She would rather answer questions during her office hours.
   Ⓑ She thinks that students who ask questions are showing interest.
   Ⓒ She does not like students to be disrespectful by asking questions.
   Ⓓ She wants her students to help each other instead of asking questions.

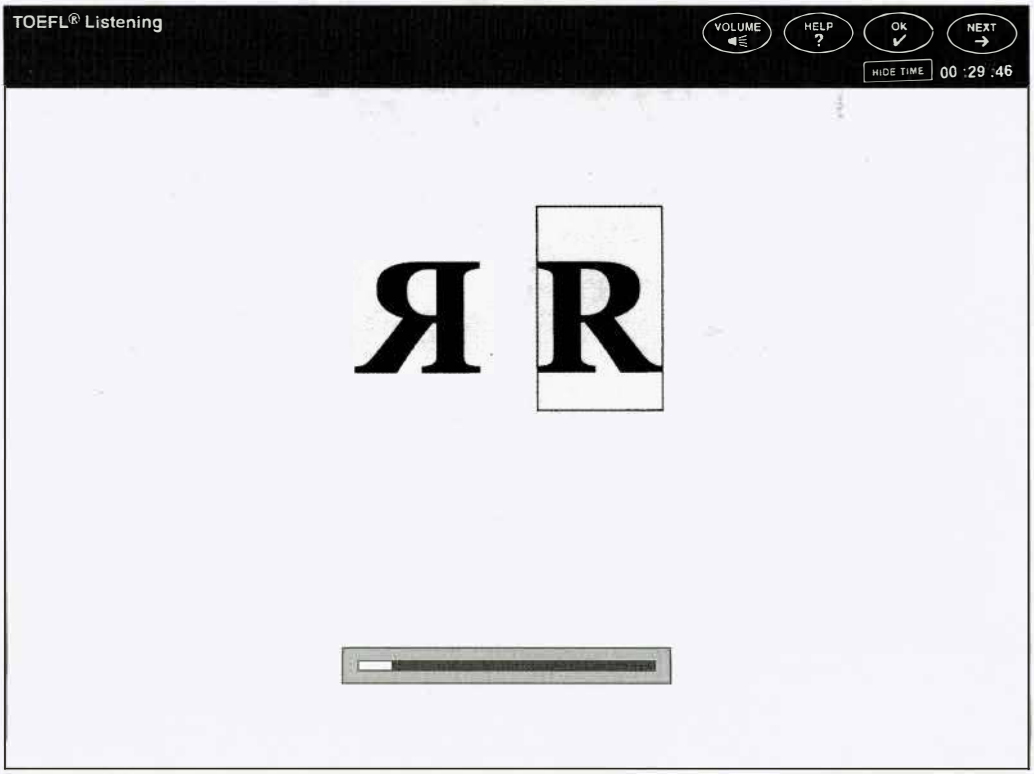
5. What will the man probably do during the next class?

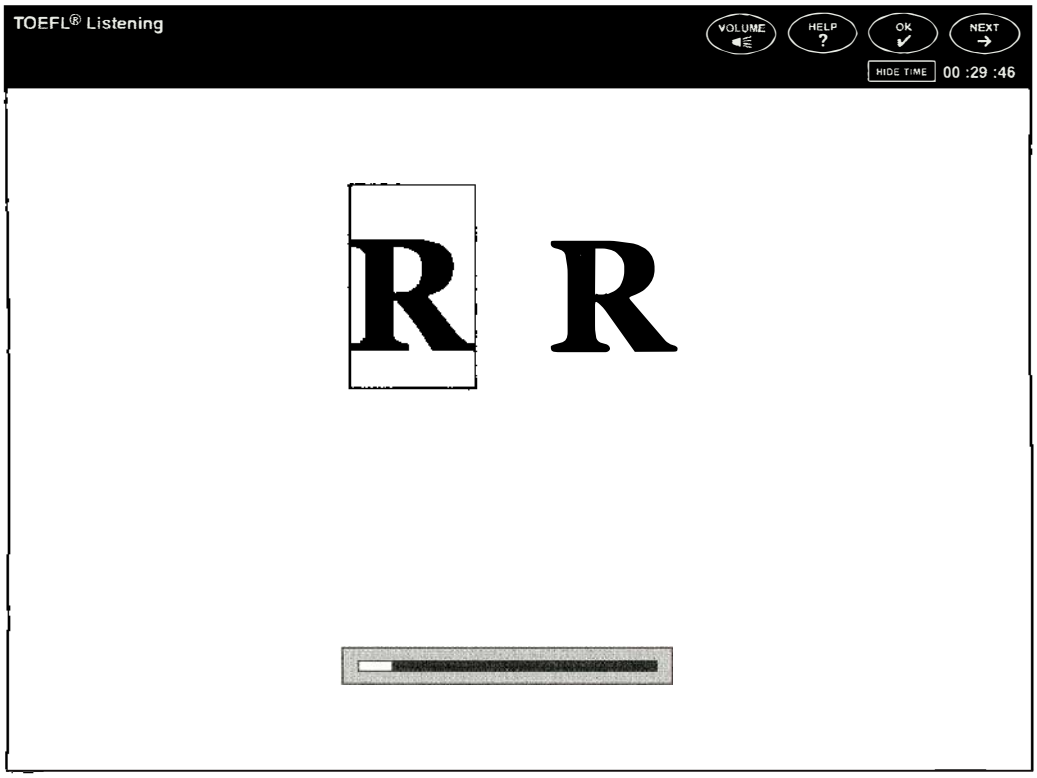
   Ⓐ He will ask fewer questions.
   Ⓑ He will tape record the lecture.
   Ⓒ He will refer to the outline in the book.
   Ⓓ He will participate more in the discussion.

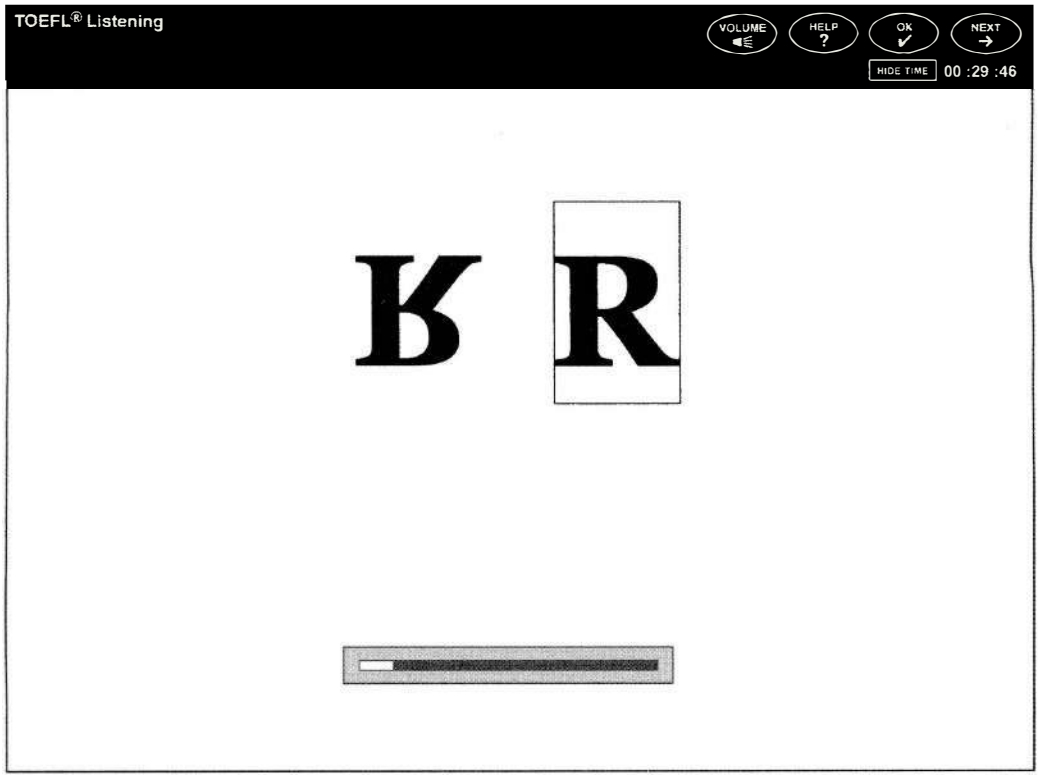
Listening 2 "Art Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
?
Ok
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
R
R


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
?
Ok
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
R
R


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
R R


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46

6. What is this lecture mainly about?

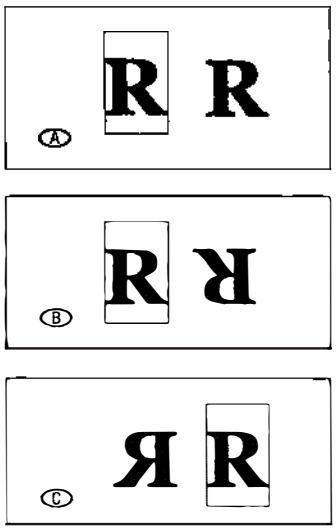
   Ⓐ Symmetry in the visual arts
   Ⓑ The characteristics of patterns
   Ⓒ How the brain organizes information
   Ⓓ A definition of beauty

7. What does the professor mean when he says this: 🎧

   Ⓐ He plans to give others an opportunity to speak.
   Ⓑ He is talking too fast and intends to slow down.
   Ⓒ He needs to correct something that he has said.
   Ⓓ He wants to talk about that subject later.

8. Which of the following slides represents reflection symmetry?

   Click on the correct diagram.



9. How is it possible to recognize an object when only part of it is visible?

   Ⓐ The brain recognizes symmetry and visualizes the whole.
   Ⓑ The object is often familiar enough to be recognized.
   Ⓒ The pieces are large even though some are missing.
   Ⓓ The principles for identification can be learned.

10. In addition to a system for organization, what characteristics define a pattern?

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] A basic unit

[B] An image

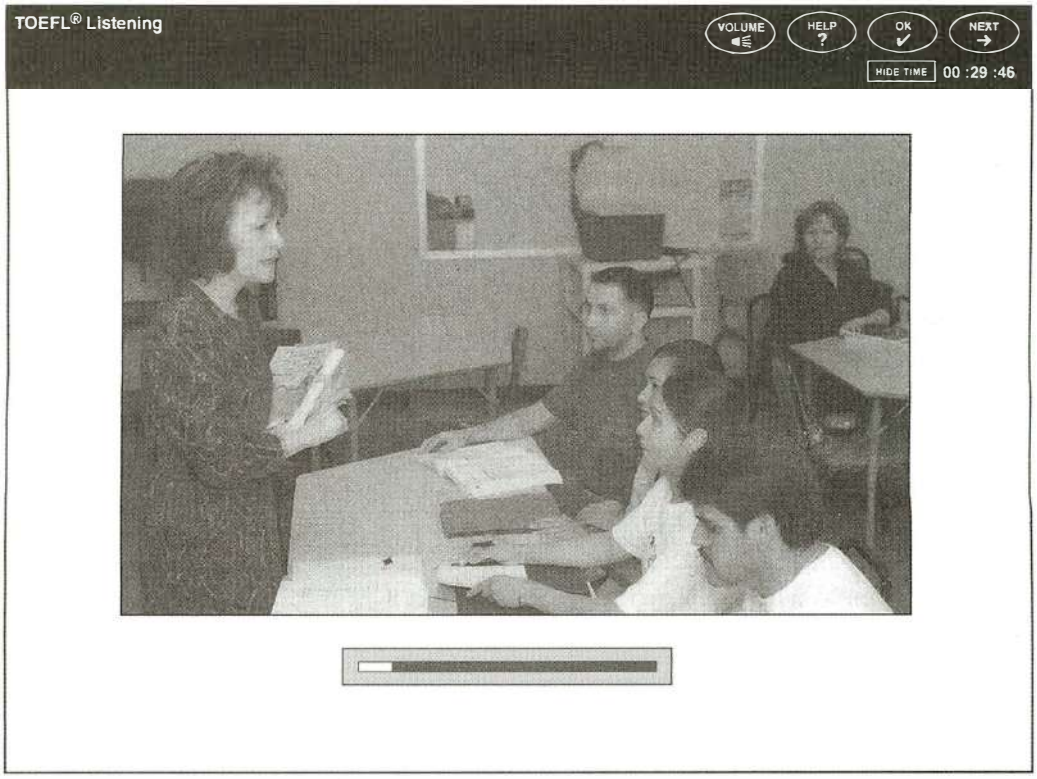
[C] Repetition

[D] Rotation

11. What assignment does the professor give his students?

Ⓐ They are supposed to identify patterns in the classroom.
Ⓑ They should be prepared for a quiz on this lecture.
Ⓒ They need to go to the lab to complete an experiment.
Ⓓ They have to design a pattern that includes symmetry.

Listening 3 "Sociology Class"



12. How does the professor organize the discussion?

Ⓐ By defining gang activity, using information from articles
Ⓑ By contrasting gang activity with noncriminal organizations
Ⓒ By reading part of an article on gang activity to the class
Ⓓ By reporting her research on gang activity in the local area

13. What was surprising about Thrasher's study?

Ⓐ The size of the study, which included 1300 gangs
Ⓑ The excellent summary by the student who located the research
Ⓒ The changes that were reported in the history of gangs
Ⓓ The fact that gang activity has been prevalent for so long

14. According to the study by Moore, what causes gang activity?

Ⓐ Cliques that form in high school
Ⓑ Normal feelings of insecurity in teens
Ⓒ Abusive family members in the home
Ⓓ Loyalty to family already in the gang

15. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To show that she does not agree with the response
Ⓑ To encourage the student to give an example
Ⓒ To indicate that she does not understand
Ⓓ To praise the student for his answer

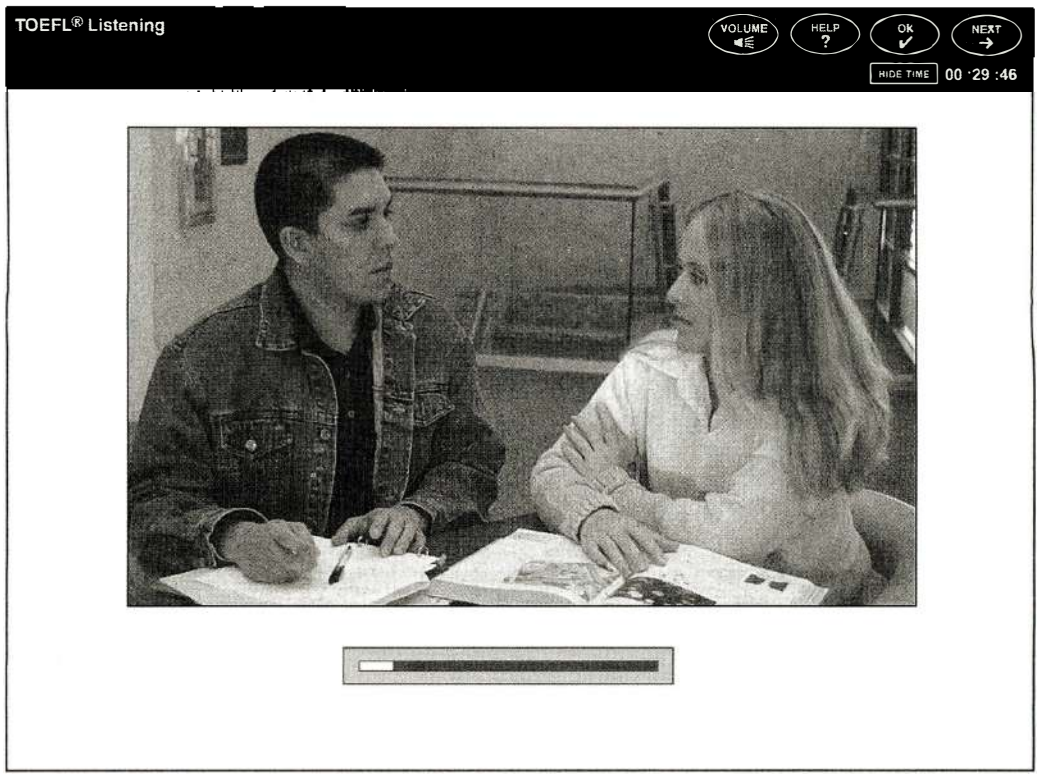
16. What is the role of women in gangs?

Ⓐ They are full members of the gangs.
Ⓑ They are protected by the gangs.
Ⓒ They are a support system for the gangs.
Ⓓ They have little contact with gangs.

17. In the discussion, the students identify aspects of gang activity. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the aspects. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

	Yes	No
A A replacement for high school cliques		
B A group socialized on the streets		
C A peer group that is 14–20 years old		
D Young people who have dropped out of school		
E A group that makes careful plans		

Listening 4 "Students on Campus"



18. What are the students discussing?

Ⓐ The T.A. in their class
Ⓑ The woman's presentation
Ⓒ PowerPoint handouts
Ⓓ The woman's class

19. Which strategy does the woman use for her presentation?

Ⓐ Read the information on the handouts
Ⓑ Ask volunteers to participate
Ⓒ Show visuals to explain the points
Ⓓ Respond to questions from the group

20. Why did the woman make overhead copies of the slides?

Ⓐ She was very nervous about going first.
Ⓑ She was afraid that the computer program would fail.
Ⓒ She took the man's advice about making them.
Ⓓ She wanted to show them to the man.

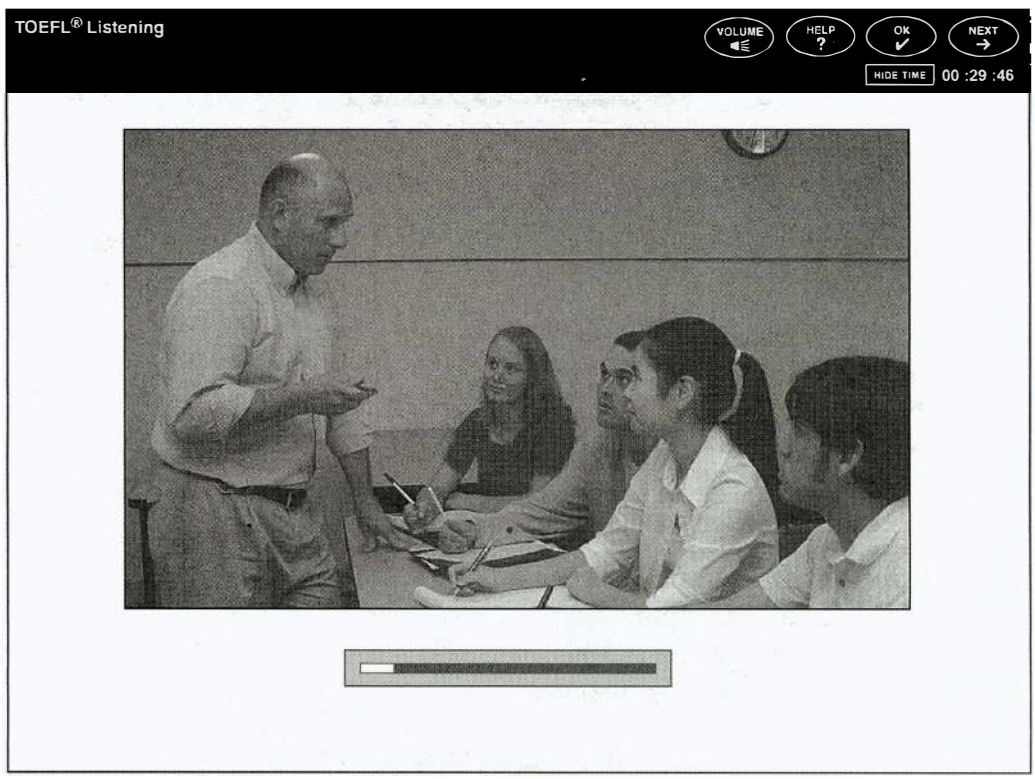
21. What does the man mean when he says this: 🎧

Ⓐ He does not appreciate the woman's comment.
Ⓑ He has difficulty hearing the woman.
Ⓒ He wants the woman to continue.
Ⓓ He understands the woman's point of view.

22. Why didn't the class ask questions after the presentation?

Ⓐ The material was presented very clearly.
Ⓑ The presentation was not interesting to them.
Ⓒ There wasn't enough time for questions.
Ⓓ They were anxious to make their presentations.

Listening 5 "Biology Class"




TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
Permian


TOEFL® Listening
VOLUME
HELP
OK
NEXT
HIDE TIME
00 :29 :46
Cretaceous

23. What aspect of the fossil record is this lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ The impact hypothesis
Ⓑ Mass extinctions
Ⓒ Climate change
Ⓓ Diversity in species

24. Identify the main periods of mass extinction.

Click on 2 answer choices.

[A] Permian

[B] Cenozoic

[C] Cretaceous

[D] Mesozoic

25. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ To express uncertainty
Ⓑ To disagree with the evidence
Ⓒ To acknowledge the disappearance
Ⓓ To ask for some ideas

26. What is the impact hypothesis?

Ⓐ The theory that the continents drifted and collided with each other
Ⓑ The idea that volcanic eruptions disrupted the climate worldwide
Ⓒ The view that a lightning storm caused a global fire
Ⓓ The premise that an asteroid crashed, blocking the sunlight on Earth

27. What is the evidence for the impact hypothesis?

Ⓐ The clay from the Cretaceous period contains an element that is rare on Earth.
Ⓑ Both hemispheres suffered the same amount of damage and extinction.
Ⓒ Acidic precipitation is still not evenly distributed across the Earth.
Ⓓ Rocks that may have been part of an asteroid have been identified.

28. What can be inferred about the professor's opinion?

Ⓐ He is strongly in favor of the impact hypothesis.
Ⓑ He does not believe that mass extinctions happened.
Ⓒ He thinks that mass extinctions were important to evolution.
Ⓓ He views mass extinction as a preventable occurrence.

Listening 6 "Anthropology Class"







29. Which of the following is an important reason the Haida people carve totem poles?

Ⓐ To frighten away spirits
Ⓑ To decorate the village
Ⓒ To recall traditional stories
Ⓓ To worship the animals

30. What does the professor mean when he says this: 

Ⓐ This fact does not directly relate to the topic.
Ⓑ He expects the students to write down the definition.
Ⓒ He is expressing uncertainty about the information.
Ⓓ The professor should not be talking about this tradition.

31. Why does the professor mention the coat of arms of Canada?

Ⓐ To compare the symbolism to that of a totem pole
Ⓑ To prove that the Haida live in Canada
Ⓒ To argue that the Haida symbols are superior
Ⓓ To place the events in chronological order

32. What does the saying *low man on the totem pole* mean?

Ⓐ A very good representative member of the group
Ⓑ A person who begins to tell an important story
Ⓒ A person who has the least status among the members
Ⓓ A member of the community who is not accepted

33. Why do the master carvers work on the bottom figures?

Ⓐ Master carvers are usually too old to work at the top of the pole.
Ⓑ The figures near the bottom are more visible to the public.
Ⓒ The totem pole is too large for just one carver to complete.
Ⓓ The last carving is an honor reserved for the masters.

34. What does the professor mean when he says this: 

Ⓐ He is indicating that the information to follow is very reliable.
Ⓑ He is showing the class that he knows a great deal about the information.
Ⓒ He is signaling that the students should learn this information.
Ⓓ He is informing the students that there may be more information.

Listening 7 "Professor's Office"



35. Why does the man go to see his professor?

Ⓐ He is worried about the professor's class.
Ⓑ He wants to bring up the grade in her class.
Ⓒ He would like some advice about his classes.
Ⓓ He needs to get the woman's signature.

36. Why does the man say this: 

Ⓐ He is apologizing for the problem.
Ⓑ He is asking the woman to explain.
Ⓒ He is thinking of what to say next.
Ⓓ He is correcting the professor politely.

37. What is the man's problem?

Ⓐ He is taking too many classes this semester.
Ⓑ He is failing one of his required courses.
Ⓒ He has a problem with his academic advisor.
Ⓓ He took classes with heavy reading assignments.

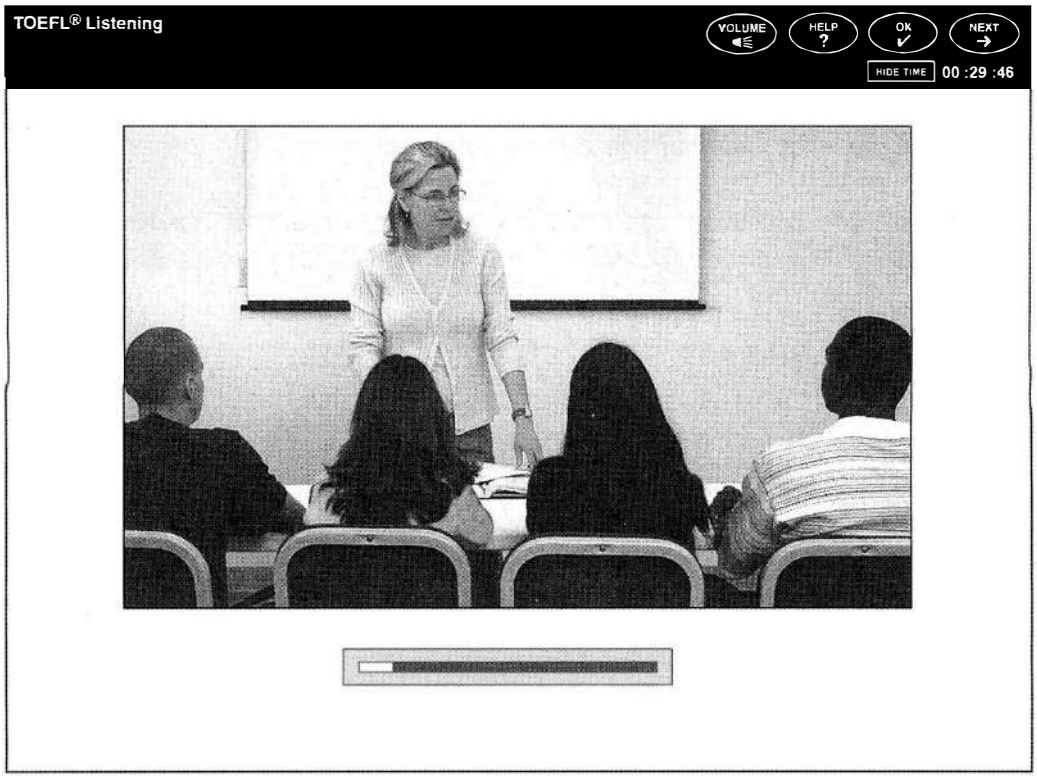
38. What does the professor suggest?

Ⓐ Registration for a course in how to read faster
Ⓑ Extra help sessions to bring up the grade in her class
Ⓒ Immediate withdrawal from one of the courses
Ⓓ Intensive study until the end of the semester

39. What can we infer about the situation?

Ⓐ The student will probably talk with his advisor before registration next term.
Ⓑ The professor believes that the student will probably not take her advice.
Ⓒ The date for changing the student's schedule has probably passed already.
Ⓓ The professor is probably the student's academic program advisor.

Listening 8 "Psychology Class"



40. What is the lecture mainly about?

Ⓐ Neurotransmitters
Ⓑ Seasonal affective disorder
Ⓒ Genetic research
Ⓓ The National Institute of Mental Health

41. *What are* neurotransmitters?

Ⓐ Chemical imbalances
Ⓑ Chemicals in the brain
Ⓒ Images of the brain
Ⓓ Genetic triggers

42. What happens when there is a reduction of light during the winter months?

Ⓐ An increase in melatonin may cause a chemical imbalance.
Ⓑ The pineal gland begins functioning to compensate.
Ⓒ The retina of the eye opens to receive more light.
Ⓓ The mental processes in the brain are slower.

43. Why does the professor think that the acronym S.A.D. is unsuitable?

Ⓐ She did not participate in creating the acronym.
Ⓑ It does not reflect the seriousness of the problem.
Ⓒ Some of her patients object to the acronym.
Ⓓ The acronym is not an abbreviation for the words.

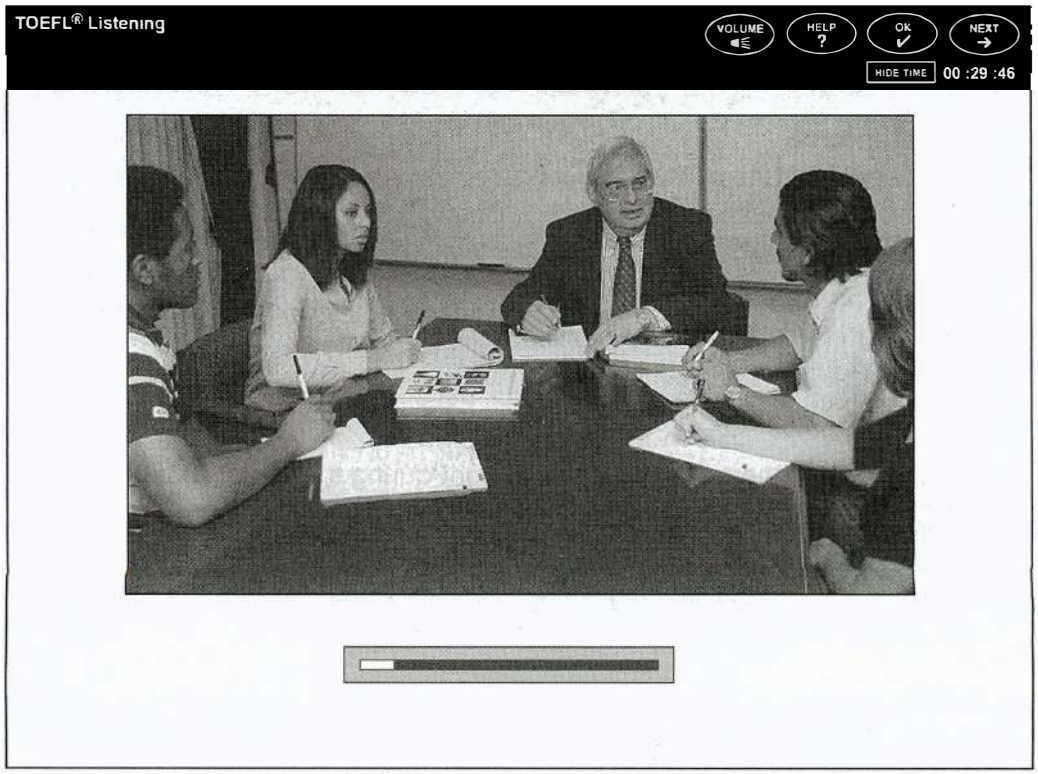
44. What does the professor mean when she says this: 🎧

Ⓐ She is reminding the students of previous facts.
Ⓑ She is disagreeing with the statistics.
Ⓒ She is indicating that the example is unimportant.
Ⓓ She is expressing uncertainty about the information.

45. In the lecture, the professor reports the preliminary results of her research. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the findings. Click in the correct box for each sentence.

	Yes	No
A Morning exposure for the treatment is superior.		
B A regular sleep schedule supports therapy.		
C Eye damage occurs in only a few subjects.		
D Sessions of less than two hours are preferable.		
E Fluorescent lighting cannot be used for therapy.		

Listening 9 "Physics Class"





46. What is the discussion mainly about?

Ⓐ The theory of everything
Ⓑ Einstein's unified field theory
Ⓒ Advances in brain theory
Ⓓ Theoretical mathematics

47. How does the professor explain the closed string?

Ⓐ He refers the students to a website.
Ⓑ He rewords the definition in the book.
Ⓒ He compares it with a thin rubber band.
Ⓓ He contrasts it with an open string.

48. Why does the professor say this: 

Ⓐ He does not expect the student to answer the question.
Ⓑ He does not know the answer to the question.
Ⓒ He does not want to continue the debate in class.
Ⓓ He does not want to influence the woman's thinking.

49. According to the discussion, what reason does the man give for rejecting string theory?

Ⓐ There may have been errors in the mathematical calculations.
Ⓑ Strings have not been observed in a laboratory.
Ⓒ String theory does not prove the theory of everything.
Ⓓ The experiments were not performed correctly.

50. What can be inferred about the students?

Ⓐ They have not formed opinions about the theory.
Ⓑ They do not agree with the professor's point of view.
Ⓒ They have reached different conclusions about the theory.
Ⓓ They have changed their minds during the discussion.

51. Why does the professor suggest that the students visit a website?

Ⓐ The textbook does not have the latest information about the topic that they will debate.
Ⓑ The website should provide objective data, which they can use for the next discussion.
Ⓒ The professor wants the students to understand the history of the theory they are studying.
Ⓓ The site will prepare the students to complete mathematical calculations before the next class.



Please turn off the audio. There is a 10-minute break between the Listening section and the Speaking section.

SPEAKING SECTION



Model Test 7, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 26

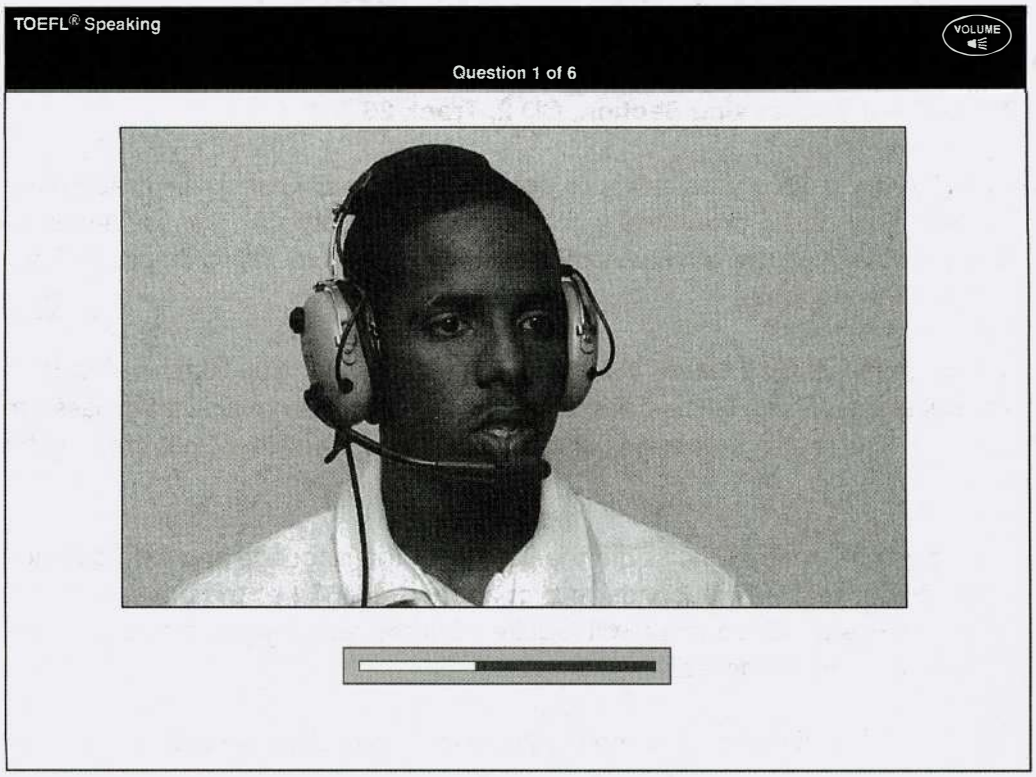
The Speaking section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic setting. During the test, you will be presented with six speaking questions. The questions ask for a response to a single question, a conversation, a talk, or a lecture. The prompts and questions are presented only one time.

You may take notes as you listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Some of the questions ask for a response to a reading passage and a talk or a lecture. The reading passages and the questions are written, but the directions will be spoken.

Your speaking will be evaluated on both the fluency of the language and the accuracy of the content. You will have 15–20 seconds to prepare and 45–60 seconds to respond to each question. Typically, a good response will require all of the response time and the answer will be complete by the end of the response time.

You will have about 20 minutes to complete the Speaking section. A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have to prepare each of your answers and how much time you have to record each response.

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Book"

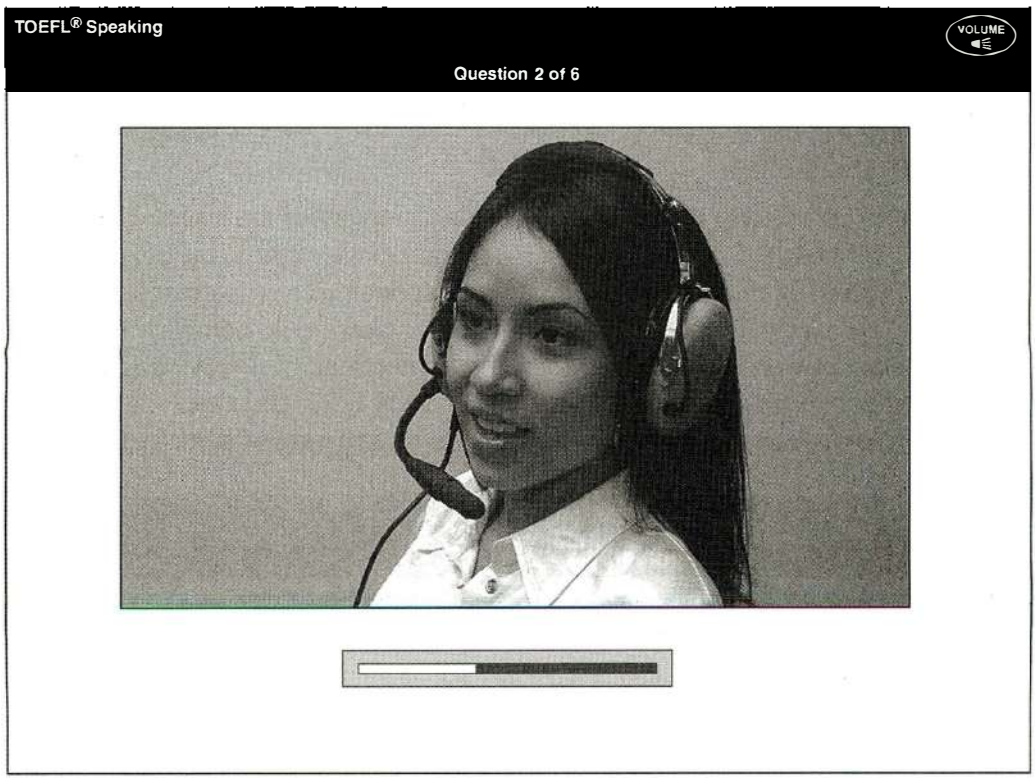


Listen for a question about a familiar topic.

Question
Think about a book that you have enjoyed reading. Why did you like it? What was especially interesting about the book? Use specific details and examples to support your response.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Foreign Travel"



Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic.

Question
Agree or disagree with the following statement:

Traveling independently is better than traveling as part of a tour group.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Preparation Time: 15 seconds
Recording Time: 45 seconds

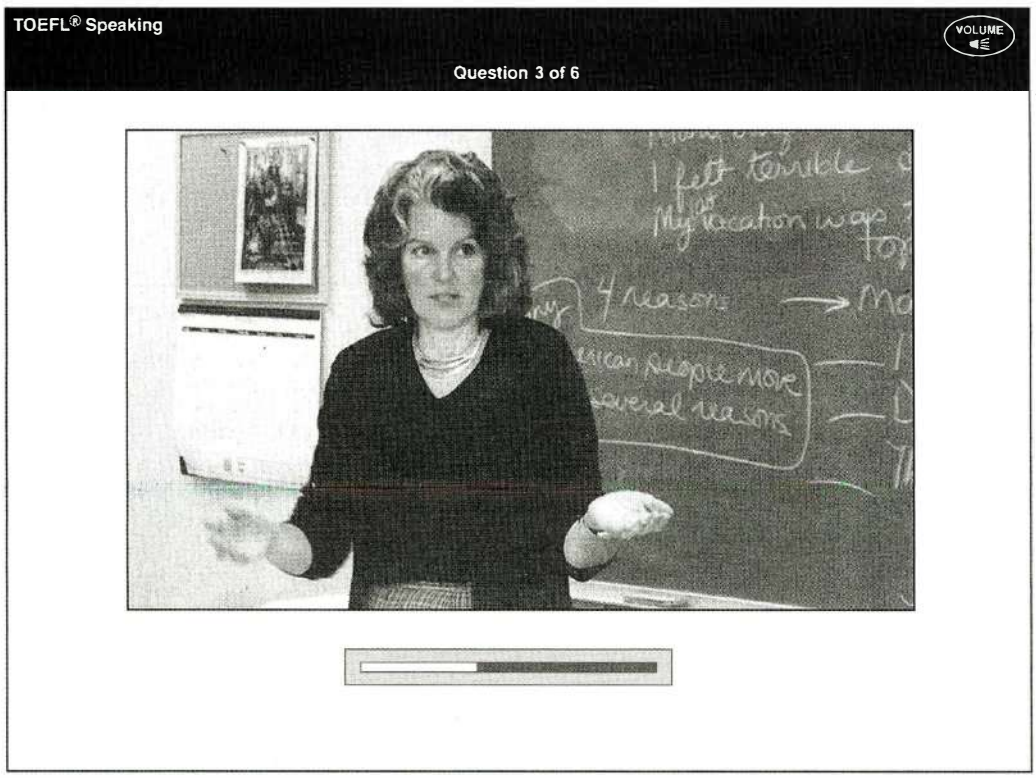
Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Old Main"

Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Notice Concerning Old Main

The college will be celebrating the one-hundredth anniversary of the founding of the school by renovating Old Main, the original building. Two alternative plans are being considered. One plan would leave the outer structure intact and concentrate on electrical and plumbing upgrades as well as minor structural support. The other plan would demolish all of the building except the clock tower, which would form the centerpiece of a new structure. An open meeting is scheduled for Friday afternoon at three o'clock in the Old Main auditorium.



Now listen to a professor who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the proposals.

Question

The professor expresses her opinion of the plan for the renovation of Old Main. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

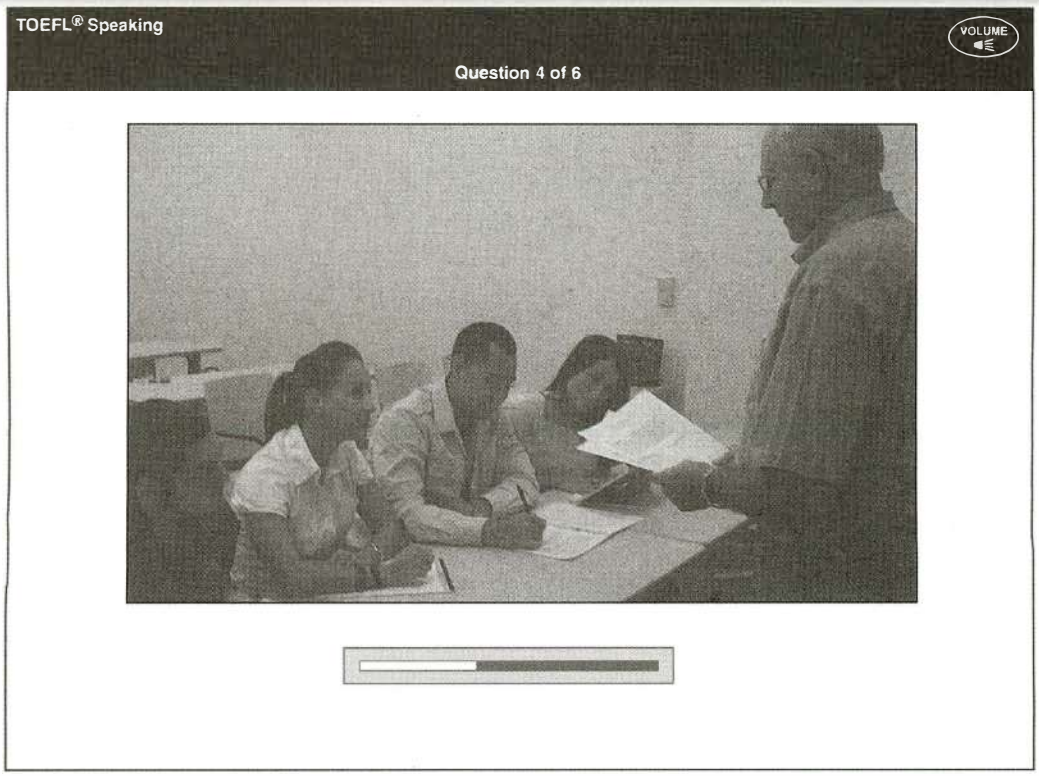
Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Pangea"

Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

Reading Time: 45 seconds

Pangea

Plate tectonics assumes that the Earth's rigid outer layer is comprised of a number of slabs called plates, which are constantly in motion, changing the position of land masses and seascapes relative to each other throughout history. The plates move slowly but continuously at about the rate of 2 inches every year. The movement of the plates themselves may be caused by the unequal distribution of heat and pressure below them. Very hot material deep within the mantle, that is, the layer of rock inside the Earth, moves upward while the cooler layer descends into the mantle, putting the outer crust of the continents in motion. Several large plates include an entire continent with its surrounding seafloor; however, the boundaries of the plates do not correspond precisely with the seven continents that we recognize today.

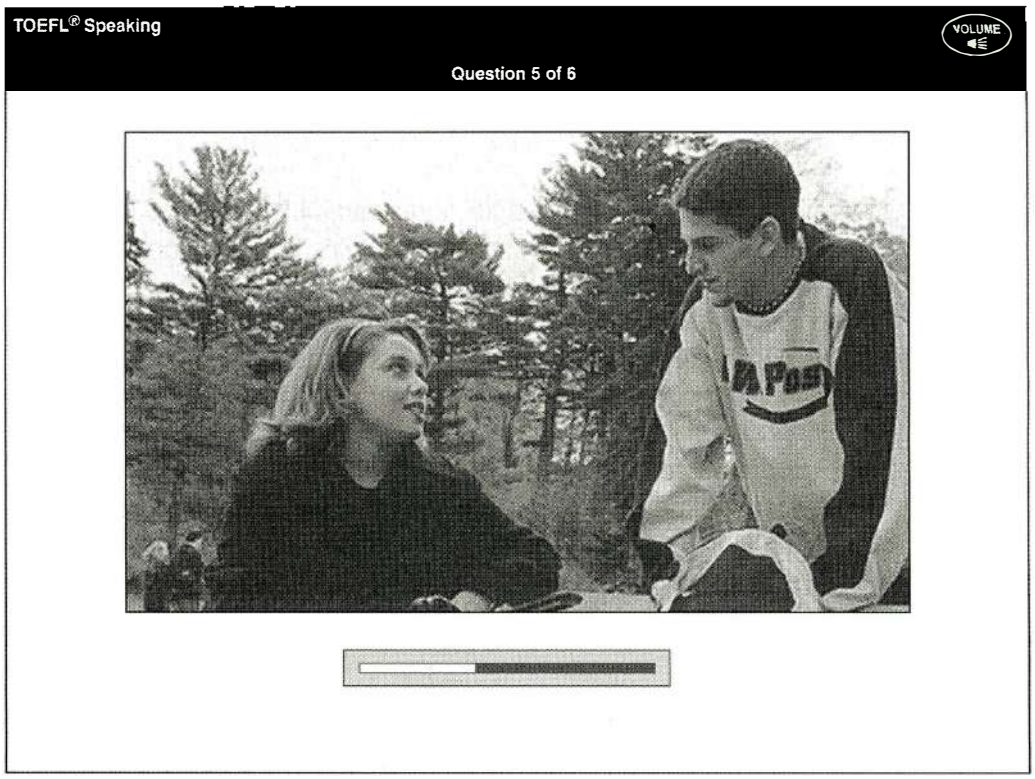


Now listen to part of a lecture in a geography class. The professor is talking about Pangea.

Question
Explain how plate tectonics relates to the theory of *continental drift.*

Preparation Time: 30 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Headaches"

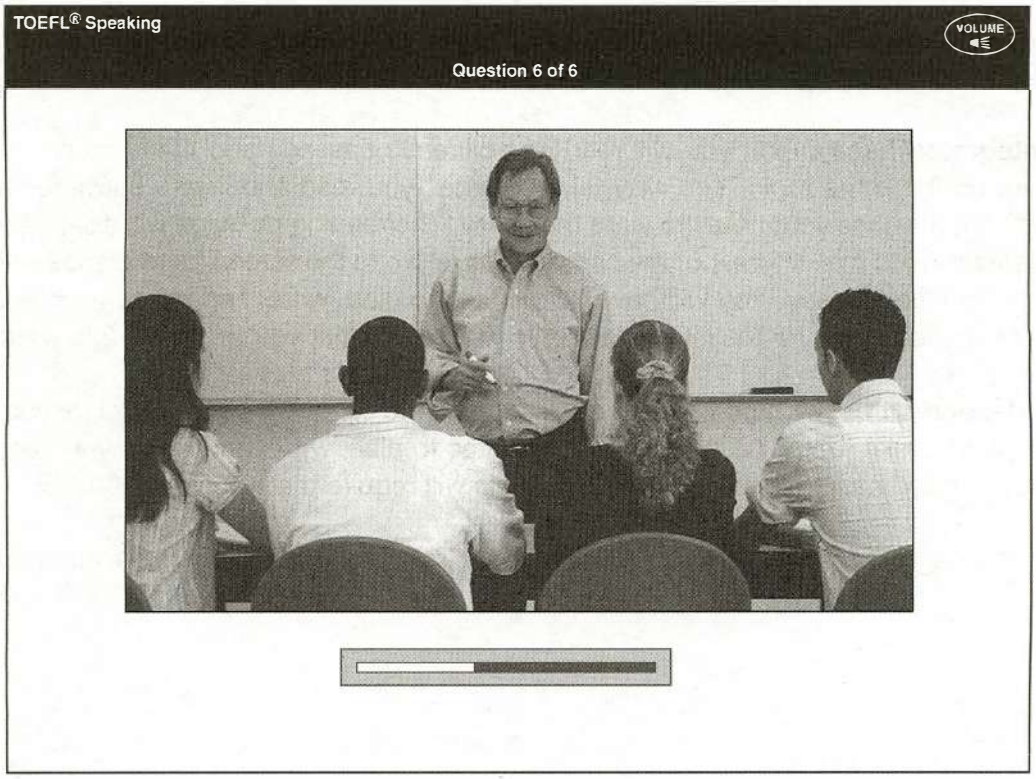


Now listen to a short conversation between a student and her friend.

Question
Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Fax Machines"



Now listen to part of a lecture in a business class. The professor is discussing the way that a fax machine transmits and receives data.

Question

Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the three parts of a fax machine and then explain how the fax process works.

Preparation Time: 20 seconds
Recording Time: 60 seconds

WRITING SECTION

The Writing section tests your ability to write essays in English similar to those that you would write in college courses. During the test, you will write two essays.

The Integrated Essay. First you will read an academic passage and then you will listen to a lecture on the same topic. You may take notes as you read and listen, but notes are not graded. You may use your notes to write the essay. The reading passage will disappear while you are listening to the lecture, but the passage will return to the screen for reference when you begin to write your essay. You will have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the integrated topic will require that you write 150–225 words.

The Independent Essay. You will read a question on the screen. It usually asks for your opinion about a familiar topic. You will have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response. Typically, a good essay for the independent topic will require that you write 300–350 words.

A clock on the screen will show you how much time you have left to complete each essay.

Integrated Essay "Urban Forest Plan"

You have 20 minutes to plan, write, and revise your response to a reading passage and a lecture on the same topic. First, read the passage and take notes. Then, listen to the lecture and take notes. Finally, write your response to the writing question. Typically, a good response will require that you write 150–225 words.

Reading Passage
Time: 3 minutes

The city enjoys urban forests not only in the city square, the municipal parks, and golf courses, but also along many streets in the city. The forest, boasting almost 700,000 trees, was planted during the late 17th century, but since the 1920s, planting has not kept pace with the losses from age, disease, storms, and development. An urban forest plan is needed that incorporates the following points: legislation to protect the existing forest, support to maintain and conserve the trees, and a public information campaign.

Legislation would have to include a temporary moratorium on development in areas where mature trees would be harmed and ordinances that would protect and nurture mature trees currently growing on industrial, institutional, and residential land.

Support to maintain and conserve the trees should be twofold. First, public funds should be allocated for this purpose. An adequate budget for maintenance of trees in parks and along city streets must be included in several city departments and funded by a small increase in city taxes. Equally important, however, private funds should be solicited through initiatives such as memorial tree plantings, adopt-a-tree programs, and a tree endowment fund.

As the final portion of the plan, a public information campaign would be essential to educate local residents and businesses. Otherwise, the advantages of the urban forests would not be understood and, therefore, not encouraged. Besides enhancing the landscape and improving the lifestyle of residents and visitors, trees mitigate air pollution, provide natural shade, cool the surrounding area, and reduce ultraviolet radiation. They also provide habitats for wildlife in the city.

Model Test 7, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 27



Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Question
Summarize the main points in the lecture, and then explain how they cast doubt on the ideas in the reading passage.

Independent Essay "Study Abroad"

Question
You are planning to study abroad. What do you think you will like and dislike about this experience? Why? Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.

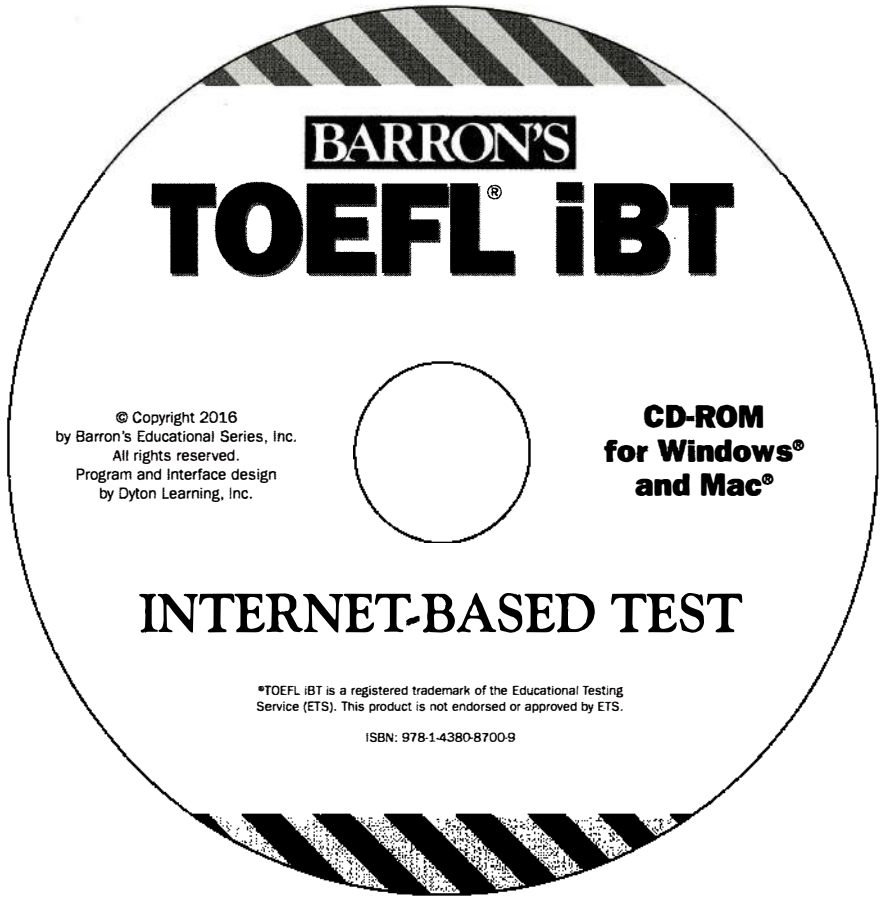
STOP

This is the end of Model Test 7.
To check your answers, refer to "Explanatory or Example Answers and Audio Scripts for Model Tests: Model Test 7," Chapter 5, pages 769–802.

MODEL TEST 8: CD-ROM TEST

IMPORTANT NOTE

Model Tests 1–7 are found in this book and also on the CD-ROM that supplements the book. Model Test 8 is a bonus test that is found only on the CD-ROM. To access Model Test 8, launch the CD-ROM and click on Model Test 8.



If you wish to purchase the CD-ROM separately, please call 1-800-645-3476 for details or email us at info@barronseduc.com.

5

ANSWERS AND AUDIO SCRIPTS FOR ACTIVITIES, QUIZZES, AND MODEL TESTS

ANSWERS AND AUDIO SCRIPTS FOR QUIZZES IN CHAPTER 2

READING

➤ Progress Chart for the Reading Quiz

The chart below will help you evaluate your progress and determine what you need to read again. First, use the Correct Answer column to grade the quiz. Next, check the Problem Types to locate which ones you answered incorrectly. Review the Referral Pages that correspond to the Reading Problem for each question that you missed. Finally, review the Academic Skills in Chapter 3.

Quiz Question	*Problem Types*	*Correct Answer*	*Academic Skill*	*Question Type Referral Pages*
1	True-False	B	Paraphrasing	Question 1, page 30
2	Paraphrase	A	Paraphrasing	Question 7, page 32
3	Vocabulary	D	Paraphrasing	Question 2, page 30
4	Purpose	B	Paraphrasing	Question 6, page 32
5	Inference	A		Question 4, page 31
6	Cause	B	Paraphrasing	Question 9, page 33
7	Reference	B		Question 5, page 31
8	Terms	A	Paraphrasing	Question 3, page 31
9	Detail	D	Paraphrasing	Question 8, page 32
10	Exception	D	Taking Notes	Question 12, page 34
11	Opinion	C		Question 10, page 33

Quiz Question	*Problem Types*	*Correct Answer*	*Academic Skill*	*Question Type Referral Pages*
12	Insert	B		Question 11, page 33
13	Classification: Hereditarian Environmentalist	 D E I B F G H	Summarizing	Question 13, page 34
14	Summary	D B F	Summarizing	Question 14, page 35

LISTENING

➤ Script for the Listening Quiz

This is a quiz for the Listening section of the TOEFL iBT. This section tests your ability to understand campus conversations and academic lectures. During the quiz, you will listen to one conversation and one lecture. You will hear each conversation or lecture one time and respond to questions about them. You may take notes while you listen. You may use your notes to answer the questions. Once you begin, do not pause the audio. [To check your answers, refer to the question number in the margin beside the shaded area in the script to which that question refers.]

CONVERSATION

Questions 1–4, Conversation, CD 1, Track 4
Listen to a conversation on campus between a professor and a student.

Student: Hi Professor Taylor.
Professor: Hi Jack.
Student: I was hoping that I could talk with you for a few minutes. It's about the test. Q1
Professor: Oh, okay.
Student: Well, I've never taken an open-book test, and I just don't know what to expect. Does that mean I can use my book during the test . . . as a reference?
Professor: Exactly. And you can use your notes and the handouts, too.
Student: Really?
Professor: Yes, but Jack, since you've never taken an open-book test, I should warn you. It isn't as easy as it seems. Q2
Student: Because?
Professor: Because you don't have enough time to look up every answer and still finish the test.
Student: Oh.
Professor: That's the mistake that most students make. You see, the purpose of an open-book test is to allow you to look up a detail or make a citation. But the students who are looking up every answer spend too much time on the first few questions, and then they have to leave some of the questions at the end blank.
Student: So it's important to pace yourself.
Professor: It is. The test is one hour long and there are twenty questions so you have to be working on question ten in half an hour.
Student: Right. That's clear enough. So, how do I prepare for an open-book test?

Q3 Professor: Well, the first thing to do is to organize your notes into subject categories, so you can refer easily to topics that might appear in the test questions. And then study your book, just like you would for any other test. Well, some people mark passages in the book with flags to make it easier to locate certain facts, but other than that, just prepare for a test like you usually do.

Student: Right . . . Uh, Professor Taylor, could I ask you . . . um . . . why are you making this test open-book? I mean, we have to study for it like always, so . . . I hope you don't mind that I asked. I'm . . . I'm just curious.

Q4 Professor: I don't mind at all. Jack, I think an open-book test provides an opportunity for real learning. Too many of my students used to memorize small facts for a test and then forget all about the broad concepts. I want you to study the concepts so you will leave my class with a general perspective that you won't forget.

Student: Wow. I can relate to that.

Professor: Most people can. But, the way I see it, this is a psychology class, not a memory class.

Student: Well, thanks for taking the time to explain everything, Dr. Taylor.

Professor: You're welcome, Jack. See you next week then.

Student: Okay. Have a nice weekend.

Professor: You, too.

Audio 1. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer **C** To get advice about studying for the test

Audio 2. Listen again to part of the conversation. Then answer the following question.
Replay Yes, but Jack, since you've never taken an open-book test, I should warn you. It isn't as easy as it seems.
Because?
Because you don't have enough time to look up every answer and still finish the test.

Audio Why does the student say this:
Replay Because?
Answer **B** To encourage the professor to explain. When it is asked in a neutral tone, this one-word question invites further explanation.

Audio 3. How should Jack prepare for the test?
Answer **C** He should organize his notes by topic.

Audio 4. Why does the professor give open-book tests?
Answer **D** Because she thinks it provides a better learning experience.

LECTURE



Questions 5–14, Lecture, CD 1, Track 4 continued

Listen to part of a lecture in an economics class. The professor is talking about supply-side economics.

Q5 The fundamental concept in supply-side economics is that tax cuts will spur economic growth because these tax cuts will allow entrepreneurs to invest their tax savings, thereby creating more jobs and profits, *which* ultimately allow the entrepreneur and the additional employees to pay more taxes, even though the rates are lower. Let's go through that again, step by step. First, taxes are lowered. Then business owners use their tax savings to hire more workers. This increases profits so the business owner pays more taxes at a lower rate, and in addition, the newly hired workers all pay taxes as well. So there's more income flowing into the government through taxes.

Q13

Historically in the United States, several presidents have championed tax cuts to get the economy moving. Although this top-down economic theory is more popular among Republicans who have traditionally been aligned with business interests, in 1960, John Fitzgerald Kennedy, a Democratic president, also used tax cuts to improve economic conditions. He probably wouldn't qualify as a true supply-sider, but he *did* understand and capitalize on the basic concept. But it's perhaps Ronald Reagan who is most closely associated with supply-side economics. So much so that his policies in the 1980s were referred to as Reaganomics. During his term of office, Reagan cut taxes, but actually, the huge increases in spending, especially for the military budget, caused supply-siders to debate with their conservative cousins.

Q6

Q7

You see, *conservative* and *supply-side* are not the same thing. Traditional conservative economists insist that tax cuts should be accompanied by fiscal responsibility, that is, spending cuts by government. But supply-side economists aren't concerned with spending. They rely on tax cuts to do the job. Period. Back to the supply-side policies under Reagan, well, the supply-siders believed that the economic growth resulting from tax cuts would be so great and the total increase in taxes so high that the United States economy would grow beyond its deficit spending. When this didn't happen, some economists distanced themselves from the label *supply-side* while advocating tax cuts with greater attention to spending.

Even Milton Friedman, Nobel laureate and an influential member of the Chicago School of Economics—even Friedman is now pointing out that the problem is how to hold down government spending, which accounts for about half of the national income. But he still looks to tax cuts as a solution.

So, a more recent problem for supply-siders, in addition to the fiscal responsibility issue, is that corporate business tends to move their investment and jobs overseas, which critics say eventually will lead to high unemployment in the United States. But Friedman insists that by moving jobs abroad, incomes and dollars are created that sooner or later will be used to purchase goods that are made in the United States and produce jobs in the United States. It's supply-side economics with a global perspective.

Q8

In fact, conservatives and supply-siders alike argue that progress in the American economy has been made from technological changes and increased productivity—producing different goods or more goods with fewer workers. Dr. Barry Asmus cites the example of the millions of tons of copper wire that had to be produced for us to communicate by telephone across country. Now, a few satellites will do the job. Clearly, the people who were employed in the copper wire industry suffered unemployment when the change in technology occurred. Or, another example, in the case of manufacturing, thirty years ago, a General Electric plant required 3000 workers to produce one dishwasher every minute. Now, the same plant needs 300 people to produce one dishwasher every six seconds. So, you might focus on the fact that many workers will be without jobs making dishwashers, but what do you suppose supply-siders would say? Think this through. They would counter with the argument that the dishwasher will be cheaper as a result of the increased productivity, so more people can buy dishwashers and still have some money left. Again Asmus reasons that if the consumers spend money on more goods, they create jobs because workers are needed to produce the goods they buy. If they invest their money, they also create more jobs by supporting the economy.

Q11

Q12

Q9

So some people do lose jobs because of technology, productivity, and the shift of manufacturing overseas, and only 70 percent find better-paying jobs when they transition to another job. Yes, that's true, and it's a personally painful transition for those involved. But the argument by supply-siders and many conservatives as well is that this is temporary unemployment and the important word here is *temporary*. So the temporary unemployment occurs in the process of shifting people not just from one job to another but from one segment of the economy to another. To use an analogy, it would be like the shift from farming to manufacturing that's occurred worldwide as better methods allowed fewer farmers to produce food and resulted in the movement of farmers from the country to the cities where they became employed in manufacturing. And now there's a shift from manufacturing to technology, which, if supply-siders and conservative economists are to be believed, will result in an even higher standard of living in the United States and globally. But, of course, the success of the United States within the global economy will largely depend on a favorable balance of trade—how much we can produce in this country in the new segments of the economy and how much we can sell abroad.

Q10

Audio 5. What is the lecture mainly about?
Answer **C** Supply-side economics

Audio 6. How does the professor organize the lecture?
Answer **B** By taking an historical perspective

Audio 7. According to the lecturer, what did Kennedy and Reagan have in common?
Answer **B** They cut taxes to spur the economy during their administrations.

Audio 8. What would Milton Friedman most likely say about moving a manufacturing plant from the United States to a site abroad?
Answer **C** He would view it as a natural process in the shift to technology.

Audio 9. According to Barry Asmus, what are two key ways that consumers contribute to the creation of new jobs?
Answer **A** By investing their tax savings
D By spending more money

Audio 10. How does the professor explain the shift from manufacturing to technology?
Answer **C** He compares it with the change from agriculture to manufacturing.

Audio 11. Why does the professor mention the General Electric plant?
Answer **A** Because the plant is a good example of increased productivity

Audio 12. Listen again to part of the lecture. Then answer the following question.
Replay Now, the same plant needs 300 people to produce one dishwasher every six seconds. So, you might focus on the fact that many workers will be without jobs making dishwashers, but what do you suppose supply-siders would say? Think this through.
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay Think this through.
Answer **C** He wants the students to follow his logical answer.

Audio 13. In the lecture, the professor explains supply-side economics. Indicate whether each of the following strategies supports the theory.

Answer

	Yes	No
A Reduce tax rates	✔	
B Cut government spending		✔
C Increase productivity	✔	
D Tolerate temporary unemployment	✔	
E Discourage consumer spending		✔

Audio 14. Put the following events in the correct order.
Answer **B** The government works to affect a reduction in taxes.
A Businesses hire more employees with the tax savings.
D Profits increase because of the growth in businesses.
C The businesses and their employees pay more taxes.

➤ Progress Chart for the Listening Quiz

The chart below will help you evaluate your progress and determine what you need to read again. First use the Correct Answer column to grade the quiz. Next, check the Problem Types to locate which ones you answered incorrectly and review the Referral Pages that correspond to the Listening Problem for each question that you missed. Finally, review the Academic Skills in Chapter 3.

Quiz Question	*Problem Types*	*Correct Answer*	*Academic Skill*	*Question Type Referral Pages*
1	Purpose	C	Taking Notes Summarizing	Question 1, page 47
2	Pragmatics	B		Question 4, page 48
3	Inference	C		Question 3, page 48
4	Detail	D	Taking Notes Paraphrasing	Question 2, page 47
5	Main Idea	C	Summarizing	Question 5, page 51
6	Organization	B	Taking Notes	Question 6, page 51
7	Detail	B	Taking Notes Paraphrasing	Question 2, page 47
8	Inference	C		Question 3, page 48
9	Details	A D	Taking Notes Paraphrasing	Question 7, page 51
10	Technique	C		Question 8, page 52
11	Inference	A		Question 3, page 48
12	Pragmatics	C		Question 4, page 48
13	Yes-No	A C D Yes B E No	Taking Notes Paraphrasing	Question 9, page 52
14	Connections	B A D C	Summarizing	Question 10, page 53

SPEAKING

➤ Script for the Speaking Quiz

This is a quiz for the Speaking section of the TOEFL® iBT. This section tests your ability to communicate in English in an academic context. During the quiz, you will respond to six speaking questions. You may take notes as you listen. You may use your notes to answer the questions. The reading passages and the questions are written [printed in the book], but the directions will be spoken. Once you begin, do not pause the audio.

 **Speaking Quiz, CD 1, Track 11**

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: If you were asked to choose one movie that has influenced your thinking, which one would you choose? Why? What was especially impressive about the movie? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Some people think that teachers should be evaluated by the performance of their students on standardized tests at the end of the term. Other people maintain that teachers should be judged by their own performance in the classroom, and not by the scores that their students achieve on tests. Which approach do you think is better and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A meeting is planned to explain the residence requirements for instate tuition. Read the policy in the college catalogue [printed on page 77]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to a student who is speaking at the meeting. He is expressing his opinion about the policy.

Student:
Well, I agree with most of the policy, but what I don't understand is why I have to use my parents' address as my permanent address. This is my third year in a dorm on campus, and I've gone to school every summer, so I've lived in this state for three consecutive years. I don't pay state taxes because I don't earn enough as a full-time student to, uh, to pay taxes, but I don't receive support from my parents either. I have a small grant and a student loan that I'm responsible for, and . . . and I plan to live and work in this state after I graduate, so, um, I think students like me should be eligible for a waiver.

Narrator 1: The student expresses his opinion of the policy for instate tuition. Report his opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and listen to a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about communication with primates [printed on page 78]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a zoology class. The professor is talking about a primate experiment.

Professor:
Probably one of the most publicized linguistic research studies with primates is the Kanzi experiment. Dr. Sue Savage-Rumbaugh had been trying to train a bonobo chimpanzee to communicate, using a keyboard adapted with symbols. What is interesting about the experiment is that the chimpanzee's adopted son Kanzi, also a bonobo chimpanzee, well, Kanzi had been observing and had acquired a rather impressive vocabulary. Savage-Rumbaugh and her colleagues kept adding symbols to Kanzi's keyboard and then started a file of laminated flash cards. In addition to the more than 350 symbols that Kanzi learned to use, he also understood the meaning of about 3000 spoken English words and could respond appropriately to spoken commands. In addition, Kanzi picked up some American sign language by watching videos of Koko, a gorilla who used sign language to communicate with his keeper, Penny Patterson. But what about speaking? What about actually vocalizing? Well, yes and no. Kanzi made attempts to vocalize in order to communicate by using speech to identify the symbols that he had learned, but because of the very different vocal tract, the sounds were very high-pitched and distorted. So, for now, communicating with primates appears to be limited to symbolic language. Nevertheless, Kanzi has more than proven that communication is possible.

Narrator 1: Explain how the example of the Kanzi experiment demonstrates progress in research on primate communication.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Friend: Did you decide to take Johnson's class?
Student: Yeah. I'm going to work it out somehow. Yesterday I walked from the chemistry lab to Hamilton Hall—that's where Johnson's class is.
Friend: And?
Student: And it took me twenty minutes.
Friend: Uh-oh. You only have fifteen minutes between classes, so that means you'll be five minutes late. Listen, why don't you buy a bike? I'm sure you could cut at least five minutes off your time if you took the bike trail.
Student: I thought about that. But then I'd have to get a license, and I'd have to find somewhere to store it at night. I thought it might be a hassle.
Friend: Oh, it's not so bad. I have a bike. The license is only ten dollars, and I just park my bike on the deck outside my apartment when the weather's good. And the weather should be okay for most of spring semester.
Student: That's true.
Friend: Well, your other option is to talk with Dr. Johnson. Maybe he'll give you permission to be five minutes late to his class because of the distance from your lab. Actually, I've had several classes with him, and he seems very approachable. Anyway, it's an alternative to the bike, if you don't want to do that.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem, and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare, and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in an astronomy class. The professor is discussing the habitable zone.

Professor:
Of *course*, *stars are too hot* to support life, but the light from a star warms orbiting planets or moons, supplying the energy needed for life to develop. Besides energy, a liquid, let's say, a chemical solvent of some kind, is also necessary. On Earth, the solvent in which life developed was water, but others such as ammonia, hydrogen fluoride, or methane might also be appropriate. So, in order for the solvent to remain in liquid form, the planet or moon must lie within a certain range of distances from the star. Why is this so? Well, think about it. If the planet is too close to the star, the solvent will change into a gas, boiling and evaporating. If it is too far from the star, the solvent will freeze, transforming into a

solid. For our Sun and life as we know it, the habitable zone appears to lie between the orbits of Venus and Mars. Within this range, water remains liquid. And until recently, this area was indeed the accepted scientific definition of the habitable zone for our solar system. But now scientists have postulated that the habitable zone may be larger than originally supposed. They speculate that the strong gravitational pull caused by larger planets may produce enough energy to heat the cores of orbiting moons. So that means that these moons may support life. There may be habitable zones far beyond Venus!

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the habitable zone, and then explain how the definition has been expanded by modern scientists.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Progress Chart for the Speaking Quiz

The chart below will help you evaluate your progress and determine what you need to practice again. First, compare your answers on the quiz with the Example Answers. Use the Checklists in the Review to evaluate specific features of your speech. Next, check the Problem Types to locate which ones were most difficult for you. Review the Referral Pages that correspond to the Speaking Problem for each question that you missed. Finally, review the Academic Skills in Chapter 3.

Quiz Question	*Problem Types*	*Correct Answer*	*Academic Skill*	*Question Type Referral Pages*
1	Experiences	1	Summarizing Taking Notes	Question 1, pages 61–62
2	Preferences	2	Summarizing Taking Notes	Question 2, pages 62–63
3	Reports	3	Synthesizing Taking Notes	Question 3, pages 63–65
4	Examples	4	Synthesizing Taking Notes	Question 4, pages 65–67
5	Questions	5	Summarizing Taking Notes	Question 5, pages 67–69
6	Summaries	6	Summarizing Taking Notes	Question 6, pages 69–71



Example Answers, CD 1, Track 12

QUESTION 1: EXAMPLE ANSWER

The movie that has influenced my thinking the most is *Fantasia* because it's my first memory of classical music and ballet. One reason the movie was so impressive is, um, I was at a very impressionable age when I saw it—five years old. Besides that, it was made using the latest technology. In the 1950s, it was amazing to see detailed animation and . . . and hear high quality sound. But what really influenced me was the music and the dance scenes. I especially remember Mickey Mouse dancing with the brooms and I'm sure I took ballet lessons because of it. The coordination of the storm scene with the music from *The Hall of the Mountain King* still impresses me when I see it today and, thanks to Walt Disney, classical music is still my favorite music.

QUESTION 2: EXAMPLE ANSWER

I think it's good to evaluate teachers by their student's performace on standardized tests because when teachers and students are judged by the same criteria, they'll work efficiently toward the same goals. Now some teachers argue that tests aren't important but still, students need good scores for admission to universities so the tests are important to them. If teachers were evaluated on the same basis, then they would pay more attention to the criteria on tests to design their lessons so both students and teachers would benefit. Another reason to use this evaluation is to compare teachers from different schools on a standardized scale. And this system would be more fair, too, because the possibility of a teacher getting a high evaluation because of friendship with the supervisor is also eliminated.

QUESTION 3: EXAMPLE ANSWER

The student said that he mostly agreed with the policy for instate tuition but he disagreed with a couple of requirements. For one thing, you can't use a campus address as a permanent address, but he's a dorm student, and he explained that he's lived in the dorm for three years because he's gone to school every summer without returning to his parents' home to live so the dorm really is his permanent address right now. He doesn't think he should have to use his parent's out-of-state address. Besides that, he hasn't been subsidized by his parents. In the policy, the most recent taxes must be filed in the state of residence but, uh, he didn't make enough money to pay taxes. He didn't mention in which state he had his voter's registration or car registration and driver's licenses, but he said that he plans to continue living and working in the state after graduation, and he thought that he should be eligible for a waiver of the out-of-state fees.

QUESTION 4: EXAMPLE ANSWER

The studies by Savage-Rumbaugh and colleagues with Kanzi, a bonobo chimpanzee, demonstrate progress in research on primate communication. Although the experiments confirm that auditory speech communication can't happen because of the different vocal tracts between species, they also prove that primates can communicate using sign language and symbols. In fact, Kanzi learned more than 350 symbols on a keyboard and on flash cards, understood 3000 spoken English words, and . . . and he was able to respond to spoken commands. So . . . the research substantiates the information in the reading passage that um, vocal organs and not intelligence . . . they inhibit communication between primates and humans.

Question 5: Example Answer

The problem is that the woman has only fifteen minutes between classes but it takes twenty minutes to walk from the chemistry lab to Hamilton Hall where Professor Johnson's class is held. So she would like to take the class with Johnson but she would be late. Um, her friend suggests that she buy a bike but her concern is that she would need a license and would have to store the bike somewhere at night. The other recommendation is . . . is to ask Dr. Johnson for permission to enter the class five minutes late. So . . . I think the woman should talk with the professor first. Her friend says he's approachable and he might give her permission to be late for class. The first five minutes in a class is usually just business anyway—taking attendance and handing back papers—so she wouldn't miss much. And, if he refuses, then she can always resort to the other alternative. She can buy a bike and a license, and she can find a place to store it.

Question 6: Example Answer

The habitable zone is an area in which life can develop. There are several requirements, including an energy source and a chemical solvent that retains its liquid form. Okay, that means that the moon or the planet where life may develop has to be close enough to the energy source—probably a star—close enough that the solvent will remain a liquid. Outside the habitable zone, it would freeze or boil, depending on whether it was far way or too close to the star. In the case of Earth, the Sun supplied the energy and water was the chemical solvent. So, for life to evolve in ways similar to our own, the habitable zone would have to fall between Venus and Mars. But, modern scientists are questioning whether the forces of gravity on larger planets might not generate enough energy to heat up the cores of the moons that orbit them. Now, if that's the case, then there could be habitable zones at a great distance from Venus, which was the previously determined limit for a habitable zone in our solar system.

WRITING

➤ Script for the Writing Quiz

This is a quiz for the Writing section of the TOEFL (iBT). This section tests your ability to write essays in English. During the quiz, you will respond to two writing questions. You may take notes as you read and listen to academic information. You may use your notes to write the essays. Once you begin, you have 20 minutes to write the first essay and 30 minutes to write the second essay.



Question 1, CD 1, Track 14

Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage you have just read.

Professor:
Although there's a great deal of excitement about the Stonehenge Riverside Project, I'm less enthusiastic about it than many of my colleagues. Here's why. The theory that the monument was constructed as a burial site rests on three assumptions. First, the researchers report that they've found human remains, suggesting that ritual cremations and burials were performed at the site. But this discovery isn't new. We've known about the remains since the first excavations at the site more than 200 years ago. Because people were buried in Stonehenge, it doesn't necessarily follow that the site was constructed for that purpose. Previous research studies have noted the evidence of burials but have come to the same conclusion.

Second, let's consider the bluestones that stand in front of the larger sarsen stones. Clearly, since these stones aren't native to the area and had to be carried long distances from quarry sites as far

as 250 miles away, well, that's convincing evidence that they served an important purpose, but what that purpose is, well that remains unclear. Yes, they've been associated with burials. Still, some studies believe that the stones were important for their acoustical properties, and when bluestones along the Carn Menyn ridge were tested, a high proportion of them would actually ring when struck, so any number of rituals, including but not limited to burials, could have been enhanced by ancient music. Other studies maintain that the bluestones held a magical purpose and were thought to aid in the healing of people recovering from illness or injury. So, instead of a burial site, Stonehenge could have been a healing site. The discovery of small pieces of bluestones chipped from the originals and scattered throughout the site might indicate that prehistoric people who made the pilgrimage to Stonehenge carried small pieces of the magical stones with them. And the burials there may have been secondary to their attempt to find a cure. In other words, some died in the effort to be healed.

Finally, we have to consider the artifacts, specifically the stone mace, which was certainly an object that belonged to a person of high rank. But here's the problem: the mace is one object, and not enough artifacts have been located in addition to this one exciting find for us to draw conclusions. Furthermore, Stonehenge has been subjected to so many excavations and so much theft that it would be difficult to determine who was buried within the stone circles.

➤ Progress Chart for the Writing Quiz

The chart below will help you to evaluate your progress and determine what you need to practice again. First, compare your answers on the quiz with the Example Essays. Use the Checklists in the Review to evaluate specific features of your writing. Next, check the Problem Types to locate which was most difficult for you. Read the Referral Pages that correspond to the Writing Problem for the question that you found most difficult. Finally, review the Academic Skills in Chapter 3.

Quiz Question	*Problem Types*	*Checklists*	*Academic Skill*	*Question Type Referral Pages*
1	Integrated	Content	Paraphrasing Summarizing Synthesizing	Question 1, pages 80–84
2	Independent	Opinion		Question 2, pages 84–86

Question 1: Example Essay

The lecturer refutes the three arguments presented in the reading passage, calling into question the new hypothesis to explain the purpose of Stonehenge. According to the hypothesis, the site was constructed as a burial ground for elite members of society in approximately 3000 B.C.E. The researchers in the Riverside Project cited the discovery of human remains, the presence of bluestones, and several important artifacts as evidence for their claim. However, the lecturer presents a counterargument for each assertion.

First, he maintains that the discovery of human remains is not unique to this project. Excavations as early as 200 years ago provided evidence of burials in Stonehenge. Although the remains prove that ritual burials were performed at Stonehenge, it does not necessarily follow that the monument was built for the purpose of burials. Previous researchers evaluating the same evidence have not come to the same conclusion.

Moreover, the bluestones could have been brought to the area for purposes other than burial rites. Since they have acoustical properties, ancient music could have been played on the stones. Some studies suggest that the stones may have had a magical purpose or could have been used for healing, in which case the burials could have been performed when healing was not successful.

In spite of the discovery of two significant artifacts that probably belonged to highly important people, the lecturer points out that the number of objects is insufficient to draw conclusions and, furthermore, that the current excavation may have been corrupted by previous digs and theft.

Question 2: Example Essay

Although it can be argued that voice mail and email are more efficient, and in many ways, more convenient, I still prefer to communicate in person, or if that is not possible, by telephone. In my experience, face-to-face interactions are best for a number of reasons. In the first place, when you hear the speaker's tone of voice, you are better able to judge the attitude and emotions that can be easily hidden in a written reply. In addition, the exchange is more immediate. Even instant messaging isn't as fast as a verbal interaction in person or by phone. Email seems efficient; however, sometimes multiple messages over several days are required to clarify the information that a short phone call would have taken care of in one communication. We have all tried to return a voice mail only to hear a recording on the original caller's voice mail. Clearly, no real communication is possible in a situation that allows only one person to talk. Moreover, the body language and the expression on the speaker's face often communicate more than the words themselves. Research indicates that more than 80 percent of a message is nonverbal. The way that a speaker stands or sits can indicate interest or disagreement. The eye contact and the movement of the eyebrows and the mouth can actually communicate the opposite of the words that the speaker is saying. Finally, no technology has succeeded in duplicating a firm handshake to close a deal, a hug to encourage a friend, or a kiss goodbye. Until email and voice mail can provide the subtle communication, the immediate interaction, and the emotional satisfaction of a face-to-face conversation, complete with facial expressions and gestures, I will prefer to talk instead of to type.

ANSWERS AND AUDIO SCRIPTS FOR PRACTICE ACTIVITIES IN CHAPTER 3

Practice Activity 8



Activity 8, CD 1, Track 21

Listening Task 1

Man: Hi Jane. How's it going?
Woman: Good. You?
Man: Same old problem. My roommate is driving me crazy.
Woman: But I thought you lived in a dorm. [*Surprise*]
Man: I do.
Woman: Oh. Then why don't you see your resident advisor?
Man: Been there, done that. I even went to the head resident.
Woman: Really? And it didn't help?
Man: Nope. He says that we should work it out between the two of us.
Woman: Wow. How do you do that when he's always partying in the room?
Man: I know. I keep waiting for him to flunk out.
Woman: He's on probation, right? [*Confirmation*]
Man: Again. He cuts class, I never see him doing any homework, but he crams for his finals and always seems to just get by.

Woman: I'm so sorry. I suppose you could go to the study lounge or the library to study, but you're probably already doing that.
Man: I *am*, but it's not very convenient. I mean, I have all of my stuff in my room but now I have to pack it up every time I want to study . . .
Woman: . . . and then you have to pack it all up again when you want to go back to your room.
Man: That's about the size of it.
Woman: Are you getting behind?
Man: Not really. But I have a scholarship so I have to keep my G.P.A. up. And I'm a senior.
Woman: You're a senior? [*Surprise*] Well then, you need to start thinking about graduate school.
Man: I've already applied. But I need to submit this quarter's grades before they make a decision.
Woman: So you really must be hitting the books. What can I do to help?
Man: Not much. But thanks for listening.

Practice Activity 9



Activity 9, CD 1, Track 22

Speaking Task 3

Man: Are you going on the community service trip over spring break?
Woman: I never go anywhere on break. I just visit my family for a few days and then come back and get ready for the next semester.
Man: I know, but this is different. It seems made to order for you.
Woman: Are you serious? I don't drink, I don't like the beach, and I don't have the money to waste on airfare and hotels.
Man: That's what I mean. This spring break trip isn't about any of that. It's a community service trip. Look, you work with a team on a project in a low-income area. You're minoring in social work, aren't you? [*Confirmation*]
Woman: Yeah.
Man: So you can see why I thought you might be interested.
Woman: Actually, that does sound interesting. And I think it's a great idea. Spring break is so wild and crazy for a lot of my friends. Maybe this kind of alternative will attract some of the people who just want to get away from campus and do something different before they start another term.
Man: I was thinking about going or at least checking it out over at student services.
Woman: Yeah, but it would be expensive . . . unless the community is close by.
Man: No. Here's the thing: a grant pays for your transportation and your living expenses so there aren't any fees. You just have to be willing to work.
Woman: What kind of work is it? Do you know?
Man: Not exactly. Some of the projects that were funded in the past have served senior citizens, and I'm pretty sure that there was tutoring for kids.
Woman: Now you've really got me interested.
Man: I thought you would be. We should go over to student services to get a few more details, like where they're planning to go and what projects are funded. [*Suggestion*] I think Professor Keller has his office hours now, and he's the one who's organizing the trip.
Woman: Well, sure. I'm free right now until my next class at two. That ought to give us plenty of time.
Man: Okay then.
Woman: And even if it doesn't work out for me to go, I think it's a great idea to give people an alternative to . . . to . . . going crazy on some beach with a bunch of strangers from other colleges. That's never been my thing.

Practice Activity 10



Activity 10, CD 1, Track 23

Speaking Task 5

Man: Hi Linda. I was hoping I might run into you today.
Woman: Really?
Man: Yeah. I wanted to ask you for . . . I wanted some advice.
Woman: Oh, okay.
Man: So you have Dr. Jackson for your academic advisor, don't you? [*Confirmation*]
Woman: Unhuh. He's the advisor for most of the biology majors.
Man: I know. And he's *my* advisor, too. But I'm just having problems communicating with him. I mean, he's nice and everything, but I feel like he just doesn't listen to me, and I leave the meetings thinking that I didn't get done what I needed to do. Do you ever feel like that?
Woman: I can't say that I do, but it's a problem for sure if that's what's happening to *you*. Have you ever just had a serious talk about this with him? That's what I'd do. [*Suggestion*]
Man: I've tried, but I'm just not getting through. I'm so frustrated.
Woman: Well, you could request another advisor. I think Dr. Chee advises biology majors. [*Suggestion*]
Man: I thought about that, but if I change advisors, then I'll still have to sign up for a couple of my upper-division courses with Dr. Jackson, and he might resent it that I wanted a different advisor. Besides, he's on the committee for my thesis.
Woman: I don't think he'd mind all that much. He has a lot of graduate students to advise. Listen, you could make an appointment to talk with him before he finds out about the change, and you could give him some reason that isn't personal, like your schedule makes it hard to see him during his office hours or something. [*Suggestion*]
Man: I *could* say that, but what if he offers to see me at a different time?
Woman: Right. Well, that could happen, but I don't think so.

Practice Activity 11

1. Settlement Patterns	classification *or* comparison and contrast
2. *The Functions of Art*	classification
3. Language Development	sequence
4. How Important Is Relativity?	persuasion *or* evaluation
5. Causes of Schizophrenia	cause and effect
6. Evaluating Kohlberg's Theory	persuasion *or* evaluation
7. Types of Financial Services	classification
8. A History of Plate Tectonics	sequence
9. Estimating Population	cause and effect *or* problem and solution
10. Black Holes	definition *or* description

Practice Activity 12



Activity 12, CD 1, Track 24

Example

Listen to part of a lecture in an astronomy class.

1. Listen to part of a lecture in a business class.
2. Listen to part of a lecture in a music appreciation class.
3. Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class.

4. Listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class.
5. Listen to part of a lecture in an engineering class.
6. Listen to part of a lecture in a linguistics class.
7. Listen to part of a lecture in an art history class.
8. Listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class.
9. Listen to part of a lecture in a geology class.
10. Listen to part of a lecture in a history class.

Practice Activity 13



Activity 13, CD 1, Track 25

1. I have several slides of *mosaic art*, mostly from the fifth century.
2. Right. So last time we were discussing uh, multinational companies. Today we're going to look at *global companies*.
3. Well, today's lecture is about *light years*.
4. So, if you read the chapter in your textbook, the one about *insurance*, then you have some background for today's lecture.
5. Although Malthus's theory of population is still important, I'm going to share a different approach with you today called *demographic transition*.
6. Okay then, let's begin our discussion of *marshland habitats*.
7. Sorry about the mixup with our classroom on the schedule. I'm glad you found us. So this will be the room we'll be using for the rest of the semester. Okay, then, let's get on with our discussion of *igneous rocks*.
8. From your syllabus, you know that today we're talking about *adobe construction*, specifically, how it can be adapted to modern architecture.
9. Let's ask ourselves this simple question: how does an *antibiotic* make you well?
10. All right. We've been talking about *reptiles*. Now let's turn our attention to *amphibians*.

Practice Activity 14

There are three arguments in support of protecting endangered species.

Aesthetic justification Various forms of nature influence the life experience of human beings in a positive way.	uniquely beautiful appreciated universally in art and literature important to the religious community
Ecological self-interest assumes that a balance of nature benefits all species.	perform essential functions ex. unique carrier of a cure for a human disease to protect ourselves, we must protect other species
Moral justification asserts that the creatures themselves have rights.	United Nations World Charter for Nature— all species have the right to exist human beings have the responsibility to preserve all species

The professor does not directly promote any argument, but advocacy for the protection of endangered species is implied in the lecture.

Practice Activity 15

1. According to Mead, the self has two sides: the "I" and the "me."

The "I" represents the individuality of a person.	For instance, a spontaneous reaction might reveal the "I." This part of the self is less predictable because it is unique.
The "me" represents the expectations and attitudes of others.	This part of the self is formed through socialization by others. It is predictable because social conformity is expected.

2. The mystery of pulsars was resolved in the 1960s.

We know that pulsars are neutron stars, like lighthouses left by supernova explosions.	Like a lighthouse, the neutron star revolves. We see pulses of light each time the beam sweeps past the Earth.
We also know that pulsars are not perfectly timed because each revolution of a pulsar takes a little longer.	The pulsar in the Crab Nebula, for example, currently spins about thirty times per second. It will probably spin about half as fast two thousand years from now.

3. Britain transported convicts to Australia in an effort to solve the problems of overcrowding in prisons.

In 1787, the first fleet left for Botany Bay in New South Wales.	There were 11 ships with 750 prisoners aboard. Four companies of marines sailed with them as guards. They took enough supplies for two years.
Shortly after arriving in 1788, the colony was moved to Sydney Cove.	In Sydney, the water supply and soil were better. Although Sydney was the new site, for many years it was called Botany Bay.

4. Frederick Carl Frieseke was an American impressionist.

Born in Michigan, he went to Paris in 1897.	He studied with Whistler in the late 1800s. From Whistler, he learned the academic style of the salons.
In 1905, Frieseke moved to Giverney where he lived until 1920.	At Giverney, Frieseke was influenced by Monet. Monet was experimenting with the effects of sunlight. The style of Monet and his school is known as impressionism.
By 1920, Frieseke had left Giverney for Normandy.	In Normandy, he began to paint indoor settings. In his later work, he began to use a darker palette.

5. Two types of weathering will break down rock masses into smaller particles.

Interaction between surface or ground water and chemicals causes chemical weathering.	With increased precipitation or temperature, chemicals tend to break down faster. The weathering of feldspar in granite can be caused by a reaction to acids in rain. A common example is the wearing away of granite facades on buildings.
Mechanical weathering occurs when force and pressure grind rocks down.	Pressure from freezing and thawing causes rocks to expand and contract. When a rock is broken in two by physical forces, it is more vulnerable to weathering.

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 16

1. There are two types of mixtures—heterogeneous and homogeneous. *Classification*
2. As a result, the litmus paper turns blue when the solution is a base. *Cause and Effect*
3. In contrast, a counterculture exhibits behavior that is contrary to the dominant culture. *Contrast*
4. The first stage of sleep produces alpha waves. *Sequence*
5. The main properties of soil include color, texture, and structure. *Description and Example*
6. Community service should be a requirement for graduation from the College of Education. *Persuasion and Evaluation*
7. For example, the Navajo create sacred images in colored sand in order to restore the spiritual and physical health of the sick. *Description and Example*
8. The maximum amount of water that air can hold at a given temperature and pressure is known as saturation. *Definition*
9. Whereas an objective is specific and measurable, a goal is broader and is usually not time specific. *Comparison and Contrast*
10. Dutch explorers in the early seventeenth century called the west coast of Australia "New Holland," a name that was used to describe the continent until the beginning of the nineteenth century. *Sequence*

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 17



Activity 17, CD 1, Track 26

Listen to the beginning of a lecture in a linguistics class.

Good morning. Well, we have a lot to do today, so let's get going. If you're caught up with your . . . your reading assignments, you've already read the article on the three types of language, but before we go on with the discussion, I want to take a few minutes to compare them. Okay, standard language first. That's language that's comprehended, used, and considered acceptable by most speakers, I mean, native speakers. So definitions of words and phrases in standard language . . . they're found in the dictionary. They can be used in both formal and informal, . . . situations . . . settings. And this is important—standard language is appropriate in both speech and writing. I'd say that all of these characteristics combine to make standard language, well, let's just say that it's the permanent core of a language.

That brings us to colloquial language, which is included in dictionaries but colloquial language is marked, and usually it's a colloquial idiom. So these patterns of colloquial language are understood and used and accepted in informal exchanges and in, well . . . people use them in informal situations, but they're not really considered appropriate in formal settings. Did I say that colloquial language is

more prevalent in speech than in writing? That's important and the key point in the article was that colloquial language becomes so much a part of the culture that at some point, it often . . . evolves . . . into standard language. So you can compare an earlier dictionary with a recent dictionary and that will . . . you can see how some phrases that are marked as colloquial language lose that designation in later editions of the same dictionary.

Okay, so you can see that colloquial idioms last a long time, either remaining popular in colloquial speech or, as I said, it can evolve into standard language and become a permanent part of the language. But that's very different from slang expressions because . . . and this is the key point . . . slang is usually a *temporary* phenomenon. It's used by some speakers or groups in informal situations and they're much more common in speech than they are in writing. Sometimes they're included in a dictionary but, uh, they're always clearly marked as slang, and when you check later editions of the dictionary, quite often the slang expression is no longer included because it's out of style.

Now, let's consider the three types of language together and uh . . . I want you to think of them on a continuum from most to least formal. So, if we do that, colloquial language would have to go between standard and slang. So the slang is often relegated to a temporary fad, and standard language contains the stable elements of the language and colloquial language has the potential to become a permanent part of a language, but . . . it might not.

I think it's interesting that most native speakers will use all three types of language and they'll use them all appropriately without thinking about it. In fact, only a few speakers will be able to analyze their speech and writing using the labels that the author identified in the article.

That said, let's get out the article for today's discussion and . . .

Notes

Definition + comparison = three types of language

Standard usage	definitions words + phrases found in dictionary
*Permanent core	*used formal + informal situations appropriate speech + writing
Colloquial language	included in dictionary marked as colloquial idioms
*Often evolves into standard	understood + used in informal situations, not formal
	more common in speech
Slang expressions	sometimes in dictionary marked as slang
*Temporary phenomenon	used by some speakers in informal situations more common in speech
Continuum	most formal—least formal standard—colloquial—slang

Practice Activity 18



Activity 18, CD 1, Track 27

Listen to the beginning of a lecture in a sociology class as you read the transcript. The professor is discussing status and roles.

Status refers to, uh, a position in society or . . . or in a group. But there are really two types of status—ascribed status and achieved status. Okay, in ascribed status, the status is automatic so you don't have a choice. In other words, it's an involuntary status. And some examples that come to mind are

status because of race or sex. Not much you can do about that. On the other hand, achieved status requires some effort, and there's a choice involved. For instance, a marriage partner, or the type of education, or, for that matter, . . . the length of time in school. Well, these are choices, uh, achievements, and so they fall under the category of achieved status. So, that brings us to the status set. A status set is the combination of all statuses that an individual has. Me, for example. I'm a professor, but I'm also a husband and a father, and, . . . a son, since my mother is still living.

So, in each of these statuses I have certain behaviors that are expected because of the status. Okay, all of the behaviors are roles, I mean, a role is the behavior expected because of status. Okay, back to status set. All of the statuses—husband, father, son, professor—combine to form the status set, and each of the statuses have certain expectations. Let me use that professor status again. So, as a professor, I have a teaching role, and I have to prepare classes. That's expected. I also advise students, grade assignments, and evaluate my students. But this role has very different expectations. As a researcher, I, I have to design studies, raise funds for grants, and uh, then perform the research, and, and, finally, I write articles and reports. So, I think you see what I mean.

But, one more thing, and this is important, sometimes role conflict can occur. Let me say that again, role conflict. And that means that meeting the expectations for one role will cause problems for an individual who is trying to meet other expectations in a different role. Okay, let's say that one of my students is dating my daughter. I don't recommend this. But anyway, I may have role strain that could even develop into role conflict because it will be difficult for me to meet the expectations for my role as teacher and, uh, when the student comes to my house, I'll have to remember my status as father and my role that requires me to welcome a guest into my home, and well, form an opinion about someone who wants to take my daughter out on a date. The textbook actually . . .

Notes

Status [redacted] position [redacted] society [redacted] group. [redacted] two types [redacted] ascribed status [redacted] achieved status. [redacted] ascribed status, [redacted] automatic [redacted] involuntary [redacted] examples [redacted] race [redacted] sex. [redacted] achieved status [redacted] some effort [redacted] choice [redacted] instance, [redacted] marriage [redacted] education, [redacted] status set. [redacted] combination [redacted] all statuses [redacted] example. [redacted] professor, [redacted] husband and a father, [redacted] son, [redacted] role [redacted] behavior expected because [redacted] status. [redacted] All [redacted] statuses—husband, father, son, professor—combine [redacted] status set, [redacted] professor, [redacted] teaching role, [redacted] prepare classes. [redacted] advise students, grade assignments [redacted] evaluate [redacted] students. [redacted] researcher, [redacted] design studies, raise funds [redacted] grants, [redacted] perform [redacted] research, [redacted] write articles [redacted] reports. [redacted] students is dating [redacted] daughter. [redacted] role strain [redacted] role conflict [redacted] difficult [redacted] expectations [redacted] teacher [redacted] father [redacted] opinion [redacted] date. [redacted]

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 19

Activity 19, CD 1, Track 28

Listen to some sentences from college lectures. Take notes as quickly as you can.

1. The Nineteenth Amendment to the U.S. Constitution gave women the right to vote, beginning with the elections of 1920.
   19 → women vote/1920
2. In a suspension bridge, there are two towers with one or more flexible cables firmly attached at each end.
   suspension = 2 towers w/flex cables @ ends
3. A perennial is any plant that continues to grow for more than two years, as for example, trees and shrubs.
   perennial = plant 2+ yrs ex. trees, shrubs
4. Famous for innovations in punctuation, typography, and language, Edward Estlin Cummings, known to us as e.e. cummings, published his collected poems in 1954.
   ee. cummings → innovations punct, typo, lang 1954 poems
5. Absolute zero, the temperature at which all substances have zero thermal energy, and thus the lowest possible temperatures, is unattainable in practice.
   absolute zero = temp. all subs 0 therm en → lowest temps
6. Because Columbus, Ohio, is considered a typical metropolitan area, it is often used for market research to test new products.
   Columbus, O = typical metro → market res new prod
7. The cacao bean was cultivated by the Aztecs not only to drink but also as currency in their society.
   cocao bean ← Aztecs = curr
8. The blue whale is the largest known animal, reaching a length of more than one hundred feet, which is five times its size at birth.
   blue whale = largest an 100′ = 5× birth size
9. Ontario is the heartland of Canada, both geographically, and, I would say, historically as well.
   Ontario = heartland Can geo + hist
10. Nuclear particles called hadrons, which include the proton and neutron, are made from quarks—very odd particles that have a slight electrical charge but that cannot exist alone in nature.
    nuclear particles = hadrons = proton + neutron ← quarks = part slight elec charge ∅ nature

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 20

Activity 20, CD 1, Track 29

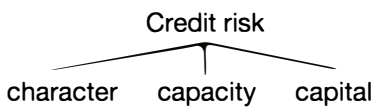
Listen to some sentences from college lectures. Take notes by drawing diagrams.

Notes

1. A *filament* is the stalk of a stamen.

   filament = stalk /stamen

2. There are three factors that determine whether a credit applicant is a good risk—character, capacity, and capital.



3. In photosynthesis, the chloroplasts in the leaf absorb energy from the Sun and then convert carbon dioxide from the atmosphere and water into carbohydrates.

   photosynthesis = chloroplasts ← energy/ Sun → CO_2 → carbohydrates

4. It was in the Cenozoic Era that *Homo sapiens* first appeared, which was only about 1.8 million years ago, long after the Mesozoic Era, perhaps 200 million years ago, when the dinosaurs were roaming the Earth, and even earlier, approximately 540 million years ago, well, that was the Paleozoic Era when there was an explosive evolution of marine life.

   - Cenozoic 1.8 m/yrs *Homo sapiens*
   - Mesozoic 200 dinosaurs
   - Paleozoic 540 marine life

5. In the sense that it is used among sociologists, the overwhelming feeling or need to escape a situation immediately is known as *panic*.

   Feeling/need to escape = panic

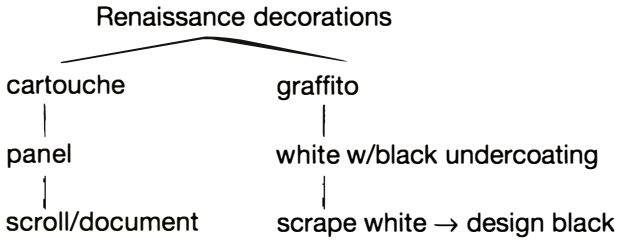
6. The difference between slate and phyllite is the coarseness of the grain and the color—slate being much more fine, often gray and easily split along the cleavage, whereas phyllite tends to be more coarsely grained, rather lustrous in appearance and feel, and, oh yes, it can be gray, green, or even red.

Slate	Phyllite
fine	coarse
split/cleavage	lustrous
gray	gray, green, red

7. Regulatory genes called homeotic genes cause the body parts of animals to develop appropriately.

   homeotic genes → body parts/animals develop

8. There were two types of decorations on Renaissance structures—the *cartouche*, which was an ornamental panel in the form of a scroll or some type of document, and the *graffito*, which was a white surface with a black undercoating, and uh, the . . . the design was made by scraping the white to reveal the black.



9. Ptolemy, a Greek living in Alexandria in the second century A.D. . . . Ptolemy assumed that the Earth was at the center of the universe, a theory that was accepted until 1543 when Copernicus, a Polish cleric, proposed that the Sun was at the center and the planets, including the Earth, revolved around it.

Ptolemy/Greek in Alexandria	Copernicus/Polish cleric
2 Cent A.D.	1543
Earth center	Sun center

10. The brain consistently sends out electrical waves during sleep, and there are two basic types—slow waves, which are larger and more often occur at the beginning of the sleep cycle and . . . and may be more important for physical recuperation . . . as compared with REM or "rapid eye movement" waves that are faster and probably occur three to five times in an eight-hour period, usually later in the sleep cycle, and we think that REM may be more effective in resting the brain than slow waves.

Slow waves	REM
larger	rapid eye movement
beginning sleep	later 3–5/8 hrs
physical recuperation	rests brain

Practice Activity 21

1. The copperhead, a snake that attacks without warning, is regarded as much more treacherous than the rattlesnake.
2. Because J. P. Morgan was known as a trustworthy and careful businessman, he was able to convince others to stay in the market even after the crash had started.
3. Phosphorus is employed in paint on highway signs and markers because it is luminous in the dark.
4. Rain forests are frequently situated close to the equator.
5. By the mid-1800s, land was so costly in big cities that architects started to save space by constructing skyscrapers.
6. Investigations of vertebrates demonstrate evolution from a very basic heart in fish to a complicated four-chamber heart in humans.
7. When two products are essentially identical, advertising can affect the decision that the public makes.
8. In general, in birds, the male of the species is more vividly colored.
9. The value of gold on the world market depends on several factors, including but not restricted to supply and demand.
10. The concept of a submarine is not new, dating from the fifteenth century when Drebbel and da Vinci made preliminary drawings.

Practice Activity 22



Activity 22, CD 1, Track 30

1. Because light travels faster than sound, lightning appears to go before thunder.
2. Congress looked up to Jefferson because of his intelligence and creativity.
3. The lower teeth in crocodiles stick out when their mouths are closed.
4. Some sponges look like plants.
5. The first census was carried out in Great Britain in 1801.
6. People who have gone through a traumatic event may have recurring images of it.

7. In algebra, letters and other symbols stand for numbers.
8. During periods of stress or excitement, the heart rate goes up and airways to the lungs become dilated.
9. Theories of prehistory and early humans are constantly changing as we take into account the new evidence from archeological finds.
10. Dreams may have been the inspiration for the Surrealists to come up with their works of art.

Practice Activity 23



Activity 23, CD 1, Track 31

ADJECTIVES

1. The temperature in many desert regions is not hot at night.
2. Facial expressions may not be unique across cultures.
3. Obsidian is not dull because it cools too quickly for crystals to form.
4. Not many musical instruments play louder than 100 decibels or softer than 20 decibels.
5. The people who have adapted to life at very high altitudes are usually not tall.

NOUNS

1. In many cities, people who are trying to sell their goods must have a license to set up their booths in public areas.
2. Studies show that small animals that live indoors are a positive influence in elderly people's lives.
3. Staircases were an important feature of the palaces where the aristocracy lived constructed during the Baroque period.
4. Global wind patterns are affected by the way that the Earth turns.
5. Education that includes two languages is more common in regions where language minorities live.

VERBS

1. Unlike cast iron, pure wrought iron has no carbon.
2. Hypnosis causes a heightened state of suggestibility in a willing participant.
3. Productivity increases when fewer employees are required to do the work.
4. Normally, the plasma in human blood is 50–60 percent of the total blood volume.
5. Three fourths of the goods made in Canada for export are sold to the United States.

Practice Activity 24

CHRONOLOGY

1. The first primitive mammals appeared in the Triassic Period.
2. Before the late Middle Ages, glass was not a major construction material.
3. Hydrogen was used as a power source for dirigibles before helium, which was safer.
4. The Europeans arrived in 1791, long after the Moriori people settled the Chatham Islands off the coast of New Zealand.
5. Store your test tubes and pipettes in the lab cabinets after you rinse them with a small amount of distilled water.

COORDINATION

1. Not only genes but also viruses are made of essential chemicals called nucleoproteins.
2. Successful managers don't proceed without a plan, but they don't ignore opportunities that arise either.

3. Technically, both glass and water are considered minerals.
4. Corn and winter wheat are not native to the Americas.
5. Ethnicity is usually based on race, religion, and national origin.

CAUSE

1. According to psychologists, workers increase productivity because of incentives.
2. Anthropologists conclude that flakes were used as tools for cutting and scraping since many of them have been found in excavations of Stone Age settlements.
3. Plants can turn brown on the edges because of too much water.
4. Increasing the consumption of salt can cause higher blood pressure.
5. Most of the roads in the interstate highway system linking roads across the country need to be repaired because they were built in the 1930s.

COMPARISON

1. Viruses have a structure that is like that of the first life forms that appeared on Earth thousands of years ago.
2. The oxygen concentration in the blood is lower than that in the lungs.
3. The Atlantic Ocean is larger but it is not deeper than the Indian Ocean.
4. Picasso's works during various artistic periods differ quite a lot from each other.
5. The weight of one object cannot be the same as that of another because the gravitational attraction differs from place to place on the surface of the Earth.

CONCESSION

1. Even though insulin levels are close to or above normal in type 2 diabetes, target cells cannot respond adequately.
2. The idea of an English language academy is regularly proposed, but the response has never been very positive.
3. The Jovian planets are grouped together; however, each one has had a very different evolutionary history.
4. Even though young people enjoy an advantage for recall in vocabulary studies, older people appear to be better at word recognition.
5. Although interviews are the most common strategy for assessing job applicants, they tend to have low validity.

NEGATIVE

1. The geyser known as Old Faithful has never failed to erupt on time.
2. Only standard dialects are used as educational models in schools.
3. There has never been such wide access to news from so many media.
4. The construction of a city on the ruins of a previous settlement is common.
5. The first primitive mammals did not develop until the Triassic Period.

PASSIVE

1. It is interesting that fewer mental health disorders are experienced by people over the age of 65.
2. In the stringed instruments, the tones are produced by a bow when it is played across a set of strings made of wire or gut.
3. Gases in the ionosphere are partly ionized by high-frequency radiation from the Sun and other sources.
4. A domed roof can be used by architects to conserve floor space.
5. Papyrus was used by the Egyptians to make paper, sails, baskets, and clothing.

Practice Activity 25

1. **D** An animal learns how to get food by hitting a bar.
2. **A** Poe is remembered more for a poem than for his short stories.
3. **C** Everything in the universe was reduced to pure energy in one atom.
4. **C** During the winter, the bear's temperature is normal and its respiration is regular, but it does not require food.
5. **B** The board will assume control only if they lose confidence in the CEO.
6. **A** Fluctuations in the air pressure are a result of changes in temperature.
7. **C** Metabolism and exercise are ways to stabilize consumption and production of energy for a healthy weight.
8. **D** The child's interest in playing with language is encouraged by the nursery rhyme.
9. **B** It does not matter where employees work at their computers.
10. **A** The Firbolgs arrived in Ireland from the Mediterranean after the Scottish people had already settled there.

Practice Activity 26

1. Problem: The paraphrase is too much like the original. Only the subject and complement have been reversed in this alternative grammatical structure.
   Edited Paraphrase: Molecules that function as regulators in the transmission of substances across cell walls are known as proteins.

   Why is this better? Because synonyms have been substituted for all the nontechnical vocabulary and the subject and complement are reversed in an alternative grammatical structure.

2. Problem: The paraphrase is not complete. Information about the factory system and the cotton industry are not included.
   Edited Paraphrase: The factory system spread across a large number of enterprises in addition to cotton manufacturing as a result of the introduction of steam engines.

   Why is this better? Because the relationship between cause and effect has been retained using different vocabulary and grammar, and both the factory system and the cotton industry are included.

3. Problem: The paraphrase is not correct. The meaning has been changed.
   Edited Paraphrase: Small enterprises are frequently using bloggers to compete effectively with large businesses that are still employing more conventional marketing strategies as well as some of the more recent options.

   Why is this better? Because the meaning of the original sentence has been retained.

4. Problem: The paraphrase is too much like the original. Too many words and phrases are the same, and the grammatical structure is too similar.
   Edited Paraphrase: Although fossilized bones may look like stone, minerals from sedimentary material fill the spaces.

   Why is this better? Because synonyms have been substituted for all the nontechnical vocabulary, and the subject and complement are reversed in an alternative grammatical structure.

5. Problem: The paraphrase is incomplete. The dates are important here.
   Edited Paraphrase: About 3500 B.C., two thousand years before written symbols were introduced in 1500 B.C., the first pictographic writing system appeared simultaneously in various regions of the known world.

   Why is this better? Because the chronology is not clear without a time frame. The date solves this problem.

6. Problem: This is not a paraphrase. It is copied directly from the original.
   Edited Paraphrase: In all likelihood, the Earth's current atmosphere was preceded by three earlier atmospheres.

   Why is this better? Because copying directly from a source is the worst kind of plagiarism. Even when you are in a hurry, be sure that you are not copying.

7. Problem: This is not a paraphrase. It is too general.
   Edited Paraphrase: Alcohol depresses the central nervous system, but coffee increases neural transmission.

   Why is this better? Because details are necessary for a paraphrase to be specific. A general statement does not include enough information.

8. Problem: This paraphrase changes the meaning of the original statement.
   Edited Paraphrase: Australia and the islands of Oceania comprise the Pacific Basin, an area that encompasses about 33 percent of the Earth's surface.

   Why is this better? Because this paraphrase retains the original meaning. The area is one third of the surface of the Earth, not one third of the Pacific Ocean.

9. Problem: The paraphrase is incomplete. It does not identify the process as fresco painting.
   Edited Paraphrase: The lime in wet plaster bonds with the colors on the surface when the paints are mixed for frescos.

   Why is this better? Because the process described in the paraphrase is identified as fresco painting.

10. Problem: The paraphrase is too much like the original. Too many words and phrases are repeated.
    Edited Paraphrase: The Linnaean chart used to classify all biological species was initially created to categorize each specimen in conformity with its resemblance to other organisms.

    Why is this better? Because the edited paraphrase retains the meaning of the original, but the words and phrases are different, and the grammatical structure is changed.

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 27

1. According to the professor, "A stock is equity in a company, and, therefore, it represents ownership."
2. According to the professor, "The desalination of the ocean is going to be a crucial aspect of water management."
3. According to the professor, "The theme of a world-wide flood is found in the mythology of many cultures."
4. According to the professor, "Psychology focuses on the individual, whereas sociology focuses on social groups."
5. According to the professor, "The ethics of science will become more important in this decade."
6. According to the professor, her idea is called "the simplification principle."
7. According to the professor, "The three-domain system is superior to the five-domain system of classification in biology."
8. According to the professor, "The term *relief* describes any printing method with a raised image."
9. According to the professor, "Training programs must address the issue of technology in the workplace."
10. According to the professor, "Quasars are difficult to study because they are so far away."

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 28



Activity 28, CD 1, Track 32

1. Written: According to a study by Professor Carter, "patients can lower their blood pressure by losing weight and decreasing their intake of salt."
   Spoken: According to a study by Professor Carter, and I quote, "patients can lower their blood pressure by losing weight and decreasing their intake of salt." End quote.
2. Written: According to Professor Jones, "over fourteen billion euros were introduced into the world economy in January, 2002."
   Spoken: According to Professor Jones, and I'm quoting here, "over fourteen billion euros were introduced into the world economy in January, 2002." End quote.
3. Written: To quote a study in the *Journal of Psychology*, "many people who have achieved their career ambitions by midlife are afflicted by depression."
   Spoken: To quote a study in the *Journal of Psychology*, "many people who have achieved their career ambitions by midlife are afflicted by depression." End quote.
4. Written: According to the textbook, "an organ is a group of tissues capable of performing some special function."
   Spoken: According to the textbook, and I am quoting here, "an organ is a group of tissues capable of performing some special function." End quote.
5. Written: According to Professor Stephens, "John Philip Sousa was the greatest composer of marches for bands."
   Spoken: According to Professor Stephens, and I quote, "John Philip Sousa was the greatest composer of marches for bands." End Quote.
6. Written: In Professor Davison's opinion, "Ben Johnson may be the author of several plays attributed to William Shakespeare."
   Spoken: In Professor Davison's opinion, and I quote, "Ben Johnson may be the author of several plays attributed to William Shakespeare." End quote.
7. Written: Professor Davis said that, "statistical data can be very difficult to interpret because correlations are not causes."
   Spoken: Professor Davis said that, and I am quoting here, "statistical data can be very difficult to interpret because correlations are not causes." End quote.
8. Written: As Professor Gray puts it, "the prime minister serves at the pleasure of the parliament."
   Spoken: As Professor Gray puts it, and I quote, "the prime minister serves at the pleasure of the parliament." End quote.

9. Written: According to the reading passage, "moving water is the single most important factor in determining the surface features of the Earth."
   Spoken: According to the reading passage, and I quote, "moving water is the single most important factor in determining the surface features of the Earth." End quote.
10. Written: In Professor Russell's opinion, "the most important quality for a scientist is the ability to make careful observations."
    Spoken: In Professor Russell's opinion, and I am quoting here, "the most important quality for a scientist is the ability to make careful observations." End quote.

Practice Activity 29

1. Neutral report: Sociologist Lee Clark observed that when danger arose, the rule was for people to help those next to them before they helped themselves.
2. Doubtful report: Biological Anthropologist Barry Bogin claimed that we could use the average height of any group of people as a barometer of the health of their society.
3. Certain report: Physician Stanley Joel Reiser maintained that machines directed the attention of both doctor and patient to the measurable aspect of illness, but away from the human factors that are at least equally important.
4. Certain report: Educator Harry Wong concluded that there was but one correlation with success, and that was attitude.
5. Doubtful report: Choreographer Martha Graham suggested that technique and training had never been a substitutes for that condition of awareness which was talent.
6. Doubtful report: Psychologist Carl Jung believed that the collective unconscious seemed to be something like an unceasing stream or perhaps an ocean of images and figures which drifted into consciousness in our dreams.
7. Neutral report: Computer entrepreneur Bill Gates indicated that the key for Microsoft™ had always been hiring very smart people.
8. Doubtful report: Geneticists James Watson and Francis Crick proposed that DNA structure had two helical chains each coiled around the same axis.
9. Neutral report: Environmentalist John Sinclair pointed out that many politicians were hostile to the environmental movement because they saw it in conflict with the economic model they supported.
10. Certain report: Astrophysicist Carl Sagan argued that even a relatively small nuclear war might be capable of producing a global climatic catastrophe.

Practice Activity 30

Activity 30, CD 1, Track 33

1. In his book, *The Making of the President,* Theodore White noted that the 1960 presidential debate was more like a press conference. According to White, Nixon proceeded as though he were engaged in a personal debate. In contrast, Kennedy spoke directly to the TV viewers. He estimated that Kennedy gained two million votes as a result.
2. Paul Cezanne believed that all forms in nature were based on geometric shapes. Cezanne identified the cone, sphere, and cylinder as the primary forms. He used outlining to emphasize these shapes.
3. Along with her husband, Marie Curie won the Nobel prize for physics in 1903 for the discovery of radium. Curie then received the Nobel prize for chemistry in 1911 for the isolation of pure radium. She was the first person to be awarded two Nobel prizes.
4. Psychologist Erik Erikson proposed eight stages of personal development. Erikson claimed that psychological crises at each stage shaped the sense of self. He believed that development was a lifelong process.

5. Margaret Mead did her first fieldwork in Samoa in 1925. Mead's book, *Coming of Age in Samoa*, was a best seller that was translated into many languages. She is still one of the most well-known anthropologists in the world. Mead believed that people in simple societies could provide valuable lessons for the industrialized world.
6. Leonardo da Vinci was the quintessential Renaissance man. A brilliant painter, da Vinci was perhaps best remembered for his art. But he was also interested in mechanics, and his understanding of mathematics is clear in his use of perspective.
7. Author Peter Drucker wrote *Management Challenges for the 21st Century.* In this book, Drucker proposed five transforming forces. He predicted that these trends will have major implications for the long-term strategies of companies.
8. Freidrich Mohs devised a scale of hardness for ten minerals. By assigning 10 to diamond, the hardest known mineral, Mohs was able to attribute relative values to all the other minerals. His scale is still useful in the study of minerals today.
9. Maria Montessori proposed an educational model that has become known as the Montessori method. Montessori insisted that education should not be merely the transmission of knowledge but the freedom to develop as a person. She felt her greatest success was achieved when a child began working independently.
10. In collaboration with Louis Leaky, Jane Goodall spent years living with chimpanzees on the Gombe Reserve. Goodall imitated their behaviors and discovered that chimpanzees lived within a complex social organization. She was the first to document chimpanzees making and using tools, and she also identified twenty different sounds that were part of a communication system.

Practice Activity 31

1. Reading

Step 1: Examples Deleted

Although speech is the most advanced form of communication, there are many ways of communicating without using speech. Signals, signs, and symbols may be found in every known culture. The basic function of a signal is to impinge upon the environment in such a way that it attracts attention. Unlike signals, which are coded to refer to speech, signs contain meaning in and of themselves. Finally, gestures are actions, which are more difficult to describe because of their relationship with cultural perceptions.

Step 2: Paraphrased Summary

Found in every culture, signals, signs, and symbols are examples of alternatives to speech communication. A signal, which is referenced to speech, intrudes upon the environment so that it is noticed. In contrast, a sign does not refer to speech because it displays a general message. Last, gestures, which are culturally defined, consist of actions.

2. Lecture



Activity 31, CD 1, Track 34

Listen to part of a lecture in a botany class.

The *Acacia* is a genus of trees and shrubs of the Mimosa family that originated in Australia and has long been used in building simple mud and stick structures there. The acacia is called a *wattle* in Australia, and the structures are made of wattle stuck together with daub, which is a kind of mud adobe. Now this is interesting—the acacia is related to the family of plants known as legumes, and I'm sure you remember that legumes include peas, beans, lentils, peanuts, and pods with beanlike seeds.

Some acacias actually produce edible crops. But other acacia varieties are valued *for* the sticky resin, called *gum Arabic* or *gum acacia*, and that is used widely in medicines, foods, and perfumes. A few varieties are grown for the dark, dense wood, which is just excellent for making pianos, or for the bark that is very rich in tannin, a dark, acidic substance used to cure the hides of animals to make leather.

Let's see. Nearly five hundred species of *Acacia* have been identified and categorized and proven capable of survival in hot and generally arid parts of the world, but only a dozen of the three hundred Australian varieties seem to thrive in the southern United States. Most acacia imports are low, spreading trees, but of these, only three flower. The Bailey Acacia has fernlike silver leaves and small, fragrant flowers arranged in, uh, in sort of rounded clusters. The Silver Wattle is similar to the Bailey Acacia, but it grows about twice as high, and the Sydney Golden Wattle is bushy with broad, flat leaves, and it's the Golden Wattle with the showy bright yellow blossoms. Okay. The Black Acacia is also called the Blackwood. It has dark green foliage and the blossoms are rather ordinary, but besides being a popular ornamental tree, the Black Acacia is considered valuable for its dark wood, which is used in making furniture and musical instruments. I think I mentioned that acacias are used to make pianos. Well, a piano made of Black Acacia is highly prized in the musical world.

Now, some of you may have heard that the acacia's unique custom of blossoming in February in the United States has something to do with its Australian origins, but that just isn't so. It isn't the date. It's the quality of light that makes the difference for the flowering cycle of a tree. As you know, in the Southern Hemisphere, the seasons are reversed, and February, which is wintertime in the United States, is summertime in Australia. Actually, however, the pale, yellow blossoms appear in August in Australia. So, whether it grows in the Northern or the Southern Hemisphere, the acacia blossoms in winter.

Step 1: Examples Deleted

The *Acacia*, a genus of trees and shrubs of the Mimosa family that originated in Australia, is called a *wattle* in Australia. The acacia is related to the family of plants known as legumes. Some acacias actually produce edible crops. Other acacia varieties are valued for the sticky resin, dense wood, or bark. Nearly five hundred species of *Acacia* are capable of survival in hot and generally arid parts of the world. A dozen of the three hundred Australian varieties survive in the southern United States. Whether it grows in the Northern or Southern Hemisphere, the acacia blossoms in winter.

Step 2: Paraphrased Summary

The *Acacia*, called a *wattle* in its native Australia, is a member of the Mimosa family and a relative of the family of plants that includes legumes. Acacias are valuable for wood, resin, and even food crops. Of the five hundred species of *Acacia* that grow in hot, dry climates, three hundred are found in Australia, but only twelve flourish in the southern United States. One of its unusual characteristics is that it typically flowers in the winter, whether it is planted in the Northern or Southern Hemisphere.

Practice Activity 32

1. Charlie Chaplin was a comedian who was best known for his work in silent movies.
2. Water becomes steam when it is heated to 212 degrees F.
3. Quasars, which are relatively small objects, emit an enormous amount of energy.
4. The Earth moves into the shadow of the Moon during a total eclipse. *or*
   During a total eclipse, the Earth moves into the shadow of the Moon.
5. Founded by John Smith, Jamestown became the first successful English colony in America.
6. Many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language since early missionaries and settlers from Spain had extended their influence in the area. *or*
   Since early missionaries and settlers from Spain had extended their influence in the area, many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language. *or*
   Many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language because early missionaries and settlers from Spain had extended their influence in the area. *or*

Because early missionaries and settlers from Spain had extended their influence in the area, many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language. *or*
Many of the names of cities in California are adapted from the Spanish language because of the influence in the area of early missionaries and settlers from Spain.

7. The oceans, which cover two thirds of the Earth's surface, are the object of study for oceanographers. *or*
The oceans, which are the object of study for oceanographers, cover two thirds of the Earth's surface.
8. A chameleon is a tree lizard that can change colors to conceal itself in vegetation.
9. Cultural nationalism arose among people with similar languages and traditions before political nationalism threatened the existing order. *or*
Before political nationalism threatened the existing order, cultural nationalism arose among people with similar languages and traditions. *or*
Political nationalism threatened the existing order after cultural nationalism arose among people with similar languages and traditions. *or*
After cultural nationalism arose among people with similar languages and tradition, political nationalism threatened the existing order.
10. Empowerment increases the autonomy of employees in organizations and improves communication between workers and management. *or*
Empowerment increases the autonomy of employees in organizations; moreover, it improves communication between workers and management.
11. Monogamy means being married to one spouse, whereas serial monogamy involves marriage to one spouse, divorce, and remarriage to another spouse. *or*
Whereas serial monogamy involves marriage to one spouse, divorce, and remarriage to another spouse, monogamy means being married to one spouse.
12. Humor is associated with fun, but it is also used as a coping strategy to relieve stress. *or*
Humor is associated with fun; however, it is also used as a coping strategy to relieve stress.
13. Although solar panels can convert sunlight into electricity, they are still not being exploited fully. *or*
Solar panels are still not being exploited fully, although they can convert sunlight into electricity.
Even though solar panels can convert sunlight into electricity, they are still not being exploited fully. *or*
Solar panels are still not being exploited fully, even though they can convert sunlight into electricity.
14. The root system of the alfalfa plant allows it to survive despite drought conditions. *or*
The root system of the alfalfa plant allows it to survive in spite of drought conditions.
15. Pain warns the victim before further damage is done; therefore, pain has a positive function. *or*
Pain warns the victim before further damage is done; thus, pain has a positive function.

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 33

1. Reading

Summary

Whereas one third of the population consists of the traditional nuclear family of two parents and their children, most Americans are either married couples with no children at home, single people, or single-parent households, many of whom have developed close friendships to replace extended family living at a distance.

2. Lecture

Activity 33, CD 1, Track 35
Listen to part of a lecture in a chemistry class.

Although the purpose and techniques were often magical, alchemy was, in many ways, the predecessor of the modern science of chemistry. The fundamental premise of alchemy derived from the best philosophical dogma and scientific practice of the time, and the majority of educated persons between 1400 and 1600 believed that alchemy had great merit.

The earliest authentic works on European alchemy are those of the English monk Roger Bacon and the German philosopher St. Albertus Magnus. In their treatises, they maintained that gold was the perfect metal and that inferior metals such as lead and mercury were removed by various degrees of imperfection from gold. They further asserted that these base metals could be transmuted to gold by blending them with a substance more perfect than gold. This elusive substance was referred to as the "Philosopher's Stone." The process was called transmutation.

Most of the early alchemists were artisans who were accustomed to keeping trade secrets and often resorted to cryptic terminology to record the progress of their work. The term *Sun* was used for gold, *Moon* for silver, and the five known planets for the base metals. This convention of substituting symbolic language attracted some mystical philosophers who compared the search for the perfect metal with the struggle of humankind for the perfection of the soul. The philosophers began to use the artisan's terms in the mystical literature that they produced. Thus, by the fourteenth century, alchemy had developed two distinct groups of practitioners—the laboratory alchemist and the literary alchemist. Both groups of alchemists continued to work throughout the history of alchemy, but, of course, it was the literary alchemist who was more likely to produce a written record; therefore, much of what is known about the science of alchemy is derived from philosophers rather than from the alchemists who labored in laboratories.

Despite centuries of experimentation, laboratory alchemists failed to produce gold from other materials. However, they gained wide knowledge of chemical substances, discovered chemical properties, and invented many of the tools and techniques that are used by chemists today. Many laboratory chemists earnestly devoted themselves to the scientific discovery of new compounds and reactions and, therefore, must be considered the legitimate forefathers of modern chemistry. They continued to call themselves alchemists, but they were becoming true chemists.

Summary

Laboratory alchemists failed to refine base metals to produce gold, but they discovered chemical substances, properties, compounds, reactions, tools, and techniques that helped to establish the field of modern chemistry.

Practice Activity 34

1. Reading

Choice A is a major point because the paragraph that follows includes details about each section.

Choice B is a detail that describes one of the types of mouth parts. It refers to the major point about how insects are classified.

Choice C is a detail that describes one of the adaptations of mouth parts. It refers to the major point about how insects are classified.

Choice D is a major point because several types of mouth parts are explained in reference to this point.

Choice E is true but it is not mentioned in the passage.

Choice F is a detail that defines the term *proboscis*. It refers to the major point about how insects are classified.

Choice G is a detail that refers to one of the body parts in the major point about the three-section body.

Choice H is a detail that explains the purpose of one of the adaptations of mouth parts. It refers to the major point about how insects are classified.

2. Lecture



Activity 34, CD 1, Track 36

Listen to part of a lecture in an English class.

Few have influenced the development of American English to the extent that Noah Webster did. After a short career in law, he turned to teaching, but he discovered how inadequate the available schoolbooks were for the children of a new and independent nation.

In response to the need for truly American textbooks, Webster published *A Grammatical Institute of the English Language*, a three-volume work that consisted of a speller, a grammar, and a reader. The first volume, which was generally known as *The American Spelling Book*, was so popular that eventually it sold more than eighty million copies and provided him with a considerable income for the rest of his life. Can you imagine that?

Anyway, in 1807, Noah Webster began his greatest work, *An American Dictionary of the English Language*. In preparing the manuscript, he devoted ten years to the study of English and its relationship to other languages, and seven more years to the writing itself. Published in two volumes in 1828, *An American Dictionary of the English Language* has become the recognized authority for usage in the United States. Webster's purpose in writing it was to demonstrate that the American language was developing distinct meanings, pronunciations, and spellings from those of British English. He is responsible for advancing many of the simplified spelling forms that distinguish American English from British.

Webster was the first author to gain copyright protection in the United States by being awarded a copyright for *The American Spelling Book* and he continued to lobby over the next fifty years for the protection of intellectual properties, that is, for author's rights. By the time that Webster brought out the second edition of his dictionary, which included 70,000 entries instead of the original 38,000, the name Webster had become synonymous with American dictionaries. It was this second edition that served as the basis for the many revisions that have been produced by others, ironically, under the uncopyrighted Webster name.

Summary

The American Spelling Book, Webster's first successful textbook, afforded him an income while he was writing his dictionary. *An American Dictionary of the English Language* was written to demonstrate the unique usage of English in the United States. Although he had a copyright for *The American Spelling Book,* ironically, Webster did not have a copyright for the original dictionary and subsequent editions that bear his name.

Choice A is a detail that refers to Webster's life before he began to write.

Choice B is a major point because the spelling book allowed Webster to continue his writing career.

Choice C is a major point because several examples refer to the unique usage.

Choice D is a detail because the revisions refer to the major point about copyrights.

Choice E is probably true but it is not mentioned in the lecture.

Choice F is a major point because about one third of the lecture is on the topic of copyright protection.

Choice G is a detail that relates to Webster's early life.

Practice Activity 35

1. Reading

Both oil paints and canvas were artistic improvements introduced in the fifteenth century. Canvas was superior to the wood panels that predated it because it could be stretched to accommodate the huge works that were then popular, and then rolled up to ship. When it arrived, it was light enough to be easily framed and hung and, unlike wood, it didn't crack. Oil paints were preferable because they dried slowly, allowing the artist to rework on top of a previously painted section. Furthermore, it was possible to mix the oils to either a thin or thick consistency from a glaze to a paste.

2. Lecture



Activity 35, CD 1, Track 37

Listen to part of a lecture in an engineering class.

The question has often been posed: Why were the Wright brothers able to succeed in an effort at which so many others had failed? Well, many explanations have been mentioned, but, uh, three reasons are most often cited, and I tend to agree with them. First, the Wright brothers were a team. Both men worked congenially and cooperatively, read the same books, located and shared information, talked incessantly about the possibility of manned flight, and, . . . and served as consistent sources of inspiration and encouragement to each other. So, to put it quite simply, two geniuses are better than one *genius*.

Second, both the brothers were glider pilots. So, unlike some other engineers who experimented with the theories of flight, Orville and Wilbur Wright experienced the practical aspects of aerodynamics by building and flying gliders, and this may surprise you, they even flew in kites. Now, each craft they built was slightly superior to the last because they incorporated the knowledge that they had gained from previous failures to adjust the next design. They had realized fairly early on from their experiments that the most serious challenge in manned flight would be stabilizing and maneuvering the aircraft once it was airborne. So, um, while others concentrated their efforts on the problem of achieving lift for take-off, the Wright brothers were focusing on developing a three-axis control for guiding their aircraft. By the time that the brothers started to build an airplane, they were already among the world's best glider pilots and they knew about the problems of riding the air firsthand.

In addition, the Wright brothers had designed more effective wings for their airplane than anyone else had been able to engineer. Using a wind tunnel, they tested more than two hundred different wing designs, recording the effects of slight variations in shape on the pressure of air on the wings. The data from these experiments allowed the Wright brothers to construct a superior wing for their aircraft.

But, you know, in spite of these advantages, the Wright brothers still might not have succeeded if they hadn't been born at precisely the right time in history. Attempts to achieve manned flight in the early nineteenth century were doomed because the steam engines that powered the aircrafts were just too heavy in proportion to the power that they produced. But by the end of the nineteenth century, when the brothers were experimenting with engineering options, a relatively light internal combustion

engine had already been invented, and they were able to bring the ratio of weight to power within acceptable limits for flight.

Summary

The Wright brothers were successful in achieving the first manned flight because they worked collaboratively; they were both glider pilots who recognized the importance of stabilization and control in an aircraft; they were able to design, test, and engineer the best wings for the plane; and they were able to take advantage of the relatively light internal combustion engine.

Practice Activity 36

1. Reading

1. **B** The first opera in Italy
2. **C** The growth of opera throughout Europe
3. **A** Three types of musical pieces in opera

2. Lecture



Activity 36, CD 1, Track 38
Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class.

The protozoans, minute aquatic creatures, each of which consists of a single cell of protoplasm, constitute a classification of the most primitive forms of animal life. The very name protozoan indicates the scientific understanding of the animals. *Proto* means "first" or "primitive" and *zoa* refers to the animal.

They are fantastically diverse, but three major groups may be identified on the basis of their motility. The Mastigophora have one or more long tails that they use to propel themselves forward. The Ciliata, which use the same basic means for locomotion as the Mastigophora, have a larger number of short tails. The Sarcodina, which include amoebae, float or row themselves about on their crusted bodies.

In addition to their form of movement, several other features discriminate among the three groups of protozoans. For example, at least two nuclei per cell have been identified in the Ciliata, usually a large nucleus that regulates growth but decomposes during reproduction, and a smaller one that contains the genetic code necessary to generate the large nucleus.

So all of this seems very straightforward to this point, but now we are going to complicate the picture. Chlorophyll, which is the green substance in plants, is also found in the bodies of some protozoans, enabling them to make at least some of their own food from water and carbon dioxide. Sounds like photosynthesis, doesn't it? But protozoans are animals, right? And plants are the life forms that use photosynthesis. Okay. Well protozoans are not considered plants because, unlike pigmented plants to which some protozoans are otherwise almost identical, they don't live on simple organic compounds. Their cells demonstrate all of the major characteristics of the cells of higher animals, such as eating, breathing, and reproducing.

Now many species of protozoans collect into colonies, physically connected to one another and responding uniformly to outside stimuli. Current research into this phenomenon along with investigations carried out with advanced microscopes may necessitate a redefinition of what constitutes protozoans, even calling into question the basic premise that they have only one cell. Nevertheless, with the current data available, almost 40,000 species of protozoans have been identified. No doubt, as technology improves methods of observation, better models of classification of these simple single cells will be proposed.

1. **D** A definition of protozoans—single cell
2. **A** A method of classification for protozoans—the three types motility
3. **C** Similarity to plants—make food from water + CO_2
4. **E** Considered animals—eating, breathing, reproducing
5. **B** Current research—questions, redefinitions

Practice Activity 37

1. Reading

1. **A**
2. **B**
3. **B**
4. **A**
5. **C**
6. **B**
7. **B**
8. **C**

Summary

The author's main purpose in the passage is to describe the nature of sunspots. Sunspots are solar particles that are hurled into space by disturbances of wind on the Sun. Matter from the Sun that enters the Earth's atmosphere affects changes in the weather patterns on Earth. Most sunspots appear as a shadow encircled by bright and dark lines extending out like spokes in a wheel. Sunspots usually occur in a configuration of two spots. The color of sunspots could be affected by their temperature. Sunspots may be related to magnetic fields that follow longitudinal lines on the Sun. The sunspot theory is subject to debate, however.

2. Lecture



Activity 37, CD 1, Track 39
Listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class.

The development of the horse has been recorded from the beginning, through all of its evolutionary stages, to the modern form. It is, perhaps, one of the most complete and well-documented chapters of paleontological history. Fossil finds provide us not only with detailed information about the horse itself but also with valuable insights into the migration of herds and even evidence for the speculation about the climatic conditions that could have instigated their migratory behavior.

Now geologists believe that the first horses appeared on Earth about sixty million years ago as compared with only two million years ago for the appearance of human beings. There is evidence of early horses on both the American and European continents, but it has been documented that, almost twelve million years ago at the beginning of the Pliocene Age, a horse about midway through its evolutionary development crossed a land bridge where the Bering Strait is now located. It traveled from Alaska into the grasslands of Asia and all the way to Europe. So, this early horse was a hipparion, about the size of a modern-day pony with three toes and specialized cheek teeth for grazing. In Europe, the hipparion encountered another less advanced horse called the anchitheres, which had previously invaded Europe by the same route, probably during the Miocene Period. Less developed and smaller than the hipparion, the anchitheres was eventually completely replaced by it.

By the end of the Pleistocene Age, both the anchitheres and the hipparion had become extinct in North America where they originated, as fossil evidence clearly demonstrates. In Europe, they evolved into the larger and stronger animal that is very similar to the horse as we know it today. For many years, this horse was probably hunted for food by early tribes of human beings. Then the qualities of the horse that would have made it a good servant were recognized—mainly its strength and speed. It was time for the horse to be tamed, used as a draft animal at the dawning of agriculture, and then ridden as need for transportation increased. It was the descendant of this domesticated horse that was brought back across the ocean to the Americas by European colonists.

1. **D**
2. **A**
3. **B**
4. **A**
5. **C**
6. **B**
7. **A**
8. **C**

Summary

According to the lecturer, fossils document the evolution of the horse, providing information about the climate and migration patterns. Geologists claim that horses appeared on Earth millions of years before human beings. A horse known as the anchitheres had migrated to Europe in the Miocene from North America. Following the same route, the hipparion migrated to Europe later in the Pliocene. When the hipparion invaded Europe, the anchitheres did not survive. In contrast, the hipparion developed into a sturdy animal, like modern breeds of horses. Ironically, horses were already extinct in North America by the Pleistocene, and Europeans returned the horse to the American colonies on ships.

Practice Activity 38

1. Reading

50% The function and responsibilities of the Fed
40% The composition of the Fed
10% A comparison of the Fed to a fourth branch of government

Although the summary below is actually closer to 50%, 30%, 20%, it still maintains a reasonably accurate emphasis.

Summary

The function of the Federal Reserve System is to regulate money and credit by buying and selling government securities, thereby influencing periods of recession and inflation. Moreover, the Fed cooperates with the Department of the Treasury to issue new coins and paper notes to banks and participates in international financial policies through member banks overseas.

The Fed includes twelve district reserve banks and branches, all national commercial banks and credit unions, as well as several committees and councils, including the powerful board of governors appointed by the president.

Because of its powerful membership, the Fed has been compared to a fourth branch of government, but the president's policies are usually implemented.

2. Lecture



Activity 38, CD 1, Track 40
Listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class.

Okay then, let's talk about human memory, which was formerly believed to be rather inefficient as compared with, for example, computers. But we are finding that we probably have a much more sophisticated mechanism than we had originally assumed. Researchers approaching the problem from a variety of points of view have all concluded that there is a great deal more stored in our minds than has been generally supposed. Here's what I mean—Dr. Wilder Penfield, a Canadian neurosurgeon, proved that by stimulating their brains electrically, he could elicit the total recall of complex events in his subjects' lives. Even dreams and other minor events supposedly forgotten for many years suddenly emerged in detail.

The *memory trace* is the term for whatever forms the internal representation of the specific information about an event stored in the memory. So, the trace is probably made by structural changes in the brain, but the problem is that the memory trace isn't really subject to direct observation because it's . . . it's . . . more a theoretical construct that we use to speculate about how information presented at a particular time can cause performance at a later time. So most theories include the strength of the memory trace as a variable in the degree of learning, retention, and retrieval possible for a memory. One theory is that the fantastic capacity for storage in the brain is the result of an almost unlimited combination of interconnections between brain cells, stimulated by patterns of activity. And repeated references to the same information supports recall. Or, to say that another way, improved performance is the result of strengthening the chemical bonds in the memory.

Now here's the interesting part. Psychologists generally divide memory into at least two types—short-term memory and long-term memory, which combine to form what we call *working memory*. Short-term memory contains what we are actively focusing on at any particular time but items aren't retained longer than twenty or thirty seconds without verbal rehearsal. We use short-term memory when we look up a telephone number and repeat it to ourselves until we can place the call. In contrast, long-term memory can store facts, concepts, and experiences after we stop thinking about them. All conscious processing of information, as in problem solving, for example, involves both short-term and long-term memory. As we repeat, rehearse, and recycle information, the memory trace is strengthened, allowing that information to move from short-term memory to long-term memory.

25% The level of sophistication for human memory
40% The memory trace
35% Working memory

Although the summary below is actually closer to 25%, 35%, 40%, it still maintains a reasonably accurate emphasis.

Summary

Human memory is more highly developed than previously thought. Penfield's experiments prove that detailed memories can be recalled when the brain is stimulated electrically. Using the memory trace, a theoretical model, we can conjecture how facts are retrieved and used at a later time. Current thinking assumes that chemical bonds can be improved by repeated exposure to the same information. The concept of working memory includes both short-term memory, which includes recall for twenty or thirty seconds, and long-term memory, which stores facts and experiences more permanently. Information is transferred from short-term to long-term memory when the memory trace is reinforced.

PRACTICE ACTIVITY 39

1. Reading

Summary

Charles Ives started his musical career as a member of his father's band and received a degree from Yale University in music, but he became a businessman instead because he was afraid that his music would not be well accepted. His music was very different from the popular songs of his era because he used small phrases from well-known music with unusual rhythms and tones. Fifty years after he wrote his *Second Symphony*, it was performed by the New York Philharmonic, and he was awarded the Pulitzer Prize. I think that Charles Ives was wrong not to pursue his musical career from the beginning. If he had continued writing music instead of selling insurance, we would have more pieces now.

2. Lecture

Activity 39, CD 1, Track 41
Listen to part of a lecture in a geology class.

A geyser is the result of underground water under the combined conditions of high temperatures and increased pressure beneath the surface of the Earth. Now, temperature rises about maybe 1 degree Fahrenheit for every 60 feet under the Earth's surface, and we know that pressure also increases with depth, water that seeps down in cracks and fissures, so when the water, . . . when the water reaches very hot rocks in the Earth's interior, it becomes heated to the temperature of, let's say, 290 degrees.

Okay, then, water under pressure can remain liquid at temperatures above the normal boiling point, but in a geyser, the weight of the water nearer the surface exerts so much pressure on the deeper water that the water at the bottom of the geyser reaches much higher temperatures than the water at the top. And as the deep water becomes hotter, and consequently lighter, it suddenly rises to the surface and shoots out of the ground in the form of steam and hot water. In turn, the explosion agitates all of the water in the geyser reservoir, and what do you think happens then? More explosions. So immediately afterward, the water goes back into the underground reservoir, it starts to heat up again, and the whole process repeats itself.

So, in order to function, then, a geyser must have a source of heat, a reservoir where water can be stored until the temperature rises to an unstable point, an opening through which the hot water and steam can escape, and underground channels for resupplying water after an eruption.

Now, favorable conditions for geysers exist in regions of geologically recent volcanic activity, especially in areas of more than average precipitation. For the most part, geysers are located in three regions of the world—New Zealand, Iceland, and the Yellowstone park area of the United States. I'd say that the most famous geyser in the world is Old Faithful in Yellowstone. It erupts every hour, rising to a height of 125 to 170 feet and expelling more than ten thousand gallons of hot water during each eruption. Old Faithful earned its name, because unlike most geysers, it has never failed to erupt on schedule even once in eighty years of observation.

Summary

In my opinion, geysers are interesting. They happen when underground water gets hot and pressure from above causes the water to get hotter and lighter so it goes up to the surface and explodes out. Then, the water runs back into the ground and starts all over again. Geysers have to have heat, a place to store water, an opening where the water can shoot up, and cracks in the ground for the water to go back down into a pool. Geysers are in New Zealand, Iceland, and the United States. Old Faithful in Yellowstone is the most famous geyser, but the best place to see geysers is in New Zealand. I saw the Pohutu Geyser there on my vacation two years ago, and it was awesome.

Practice Activity 40

Summary 1

This is a good summary. The content is accurate, and all the major points are included. The problem here is that the writer did not follow the order in the original so the points are not in the same sequence and they are difficult to follow.

Summary 2

This is a good summary because it is brief, uses the same organization as the original, includes the major points, reports the content accurately, paraphrases using the summarizer's own words, and maintains an objective point of view that does not include the opinions of the person summarizing the original.

Summary 3

This is not really a summary of the original passage. Instead of a factual report, this paragraph includes opinions and judgments that the original author did not express.

Summary 4

This summary is not paraphrased. Sentences are copied from the original. The summary would not be scored, and no credit would be assigned. This is the most serious problem in summarizing.

Summary 5

The problem in this summary is the emphasis. Too much attention is given to information in the first paragraph of the original reading, whereas points from the second paragraph are not included. Facts from the third and fourth paragraphs are only briefly mentioned.

Practice Activity 41

1. Referring to the main points in the reading passage, show how the example in the professor's lecture demonstrates the principle of Occam's razor.

   Show how the example in the lecture shows proof of the principle of Occam's razor presented in the reading passage.

2. Explain how the lecturer's view substantiates the opinions expressed in the reading passage.

   Show how the lecture offers proof of the views in the reading passage.

3. The professor describes the behavior of dolphins. Explain why this behavior provides an example of higher-level intelligence, as defined in the reading passage.

   Show how the professor's example of dolphin behavior illustrates the concept of higher-level intelligence.

4. Explain how the example of learning to drive clarifies the automaticity of learning.

   Show how the professor's example of learning to drive makes the notion of the automaticity of learning easier to understand.

5. Using the case study discussed by the professor, explain how the results reinforce the argument in favor of direct mail marketing presented in the reading passage.

   Show how the professor's case study makes the argument for direct mail marketing in the reading stronger.

Practice Activity 42

1. Summarize the main points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they challenge the specific claims made in the reading passage.

   Show how the lecture makes each of the points presented in the reading passage doubtful.

2. Summarize the main points in the lecture, showing how they discredit the specific arguments in the reading passage.

   Show how the lecture demonstrates that each argument in the reading passage is not true.

3. Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they oppose specific points made in the reading passage.

   Show how the lecture argues the opposite of each point in the reading passage.

4. Summarize the major points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they contrast with the specific problems presented in the reading passage.

   Show how the lecture presents a different point of view for each problem in the reading passage.

5. Summarize the main points in the lecture, showing how they cast doubt on the point of view in the reading passage. Be sure to address each point in the passage.

   Show how each point in the lecture makes the point of view in the reading less certain.

Practice Activity 43

1. Basic sentence: The woman thinks that moving the cafeteria is going to be a problem.
   Better sentence: The woman thinks that moving the cafeteria is going to be a problem because it will be farther from the dorm and the space is smaller than that of the current location.

2. Basic sentence: The man believes that the change in the final exam schedule is a good idea.
   Better sentence: The man believes that the change in the final exam schedule is a good idea because students will have more time to study and experience fewer conflicts with other exams.

3. Basic sentence: The woman thinks that installing more lighting around the square is a good plan.
   Better sentence: The woman thinks that installing more lighting around the square is a good plan because it will make the pathways safer for bikers, provide better security for walkers, and make the central campus look nicer.

4. Basic sentence: The woman says that closing the post office on campus is a mistake.
   Better sentence: The woman says that closing the post office on campus is a mistake because the campus post office is always busy and the closest post office off campus is not within walking distance.

5. Basic sentence: The man believes that eliminating all single rooms in the graduate dorms is a bad policy decision.
   Better sentence: The man believes that eliminating all single rooms in the graduate dorms is a bad policy decision because there is no inexpensive alternative on campus for a private room, no adjustment in fees for moving from a single to a double room, and no opportunity to provide input before a final decision is made.

Practice Activity 44

1. The research study in the lecture agrees with the advantages of cooperative learning in the reading passage.

   The research study in the lecture corroborates the advantages of cooperative learning in the reading passage.

   The results of the research study in the Chicago schools reported in the lecture corroborate the advantages of cooperative learning in education described in the reading passage.

2. The summary in the lecture agrees with the methods to solve the problem of noise pollution.

   The summary in the lecture substantiates the methods to solve the problem of noise pollution in the reading passage.

   The summary of European noise ordinances in the lecture substantiates the methods to solve the problem of noise pollution in technological societies outlined in the reading passage.

3. The lecturer disagrees with the argument in the reading passage.

   The lecturer challenges the argument in the reading passage.

   The lecturer challenges the argument in the reading passage that nuclear power is too dangerous.

4. The example in the lecture agrees with the three ideas for successful international advertising campaigns.

   The example in the lecture supports the three ideas for successful international advertising campaigns in the reading passage.

   The example of Toyota's marketing plan in the United States in the lecture supports the three ideas for successful international advertising campaigns listed in the reading passage.

5. The lecturer disagrees with the viewpoint in the reading passage.

   The lecturer refutes the viewpoint in the reading passage.

   The lecturer refutes the viewpoint in the reading passage that a meteor impact caused the disappearance of dinosaurs.

6. The lecturer disagrees with the claim in the reading passage.

   The lecturer disputes the claim in the reading passage.

   The lecturer disputes the claim in the reading passage that more than 40 Van Gogh paintings are fakes.

7. The study in the lecture agrees with the theory of flow in the reading passage.

   The study in the lecture validates the theory of flow in the reading passage.

   The Harvard University study in the lecture validates the theory of flow explained in the reading passage.

8. The lecturer disagrees with the premise in the reading passage.

   The lecturer discredits the premise in the reading passage.

   The lecturer discredits the premise in the reading passage that successful marriages require similarities.

9. The illustration in the lecture agrees with the definition in the reading passage.

   The illustration in the lecture provides an example of the definition for a biogeographic realm in the reading passage.

   The illustration of a biome in the lecture provides an example of a biogeographic realm as defined in the reading passage.

10. The lecturer disagrees with the assumption in the reading passage.

    The lecturer contradicts the assumption in the reading passage.

    The lecturer contradicts the assumption in the reading passage that censorship is necessary in the media.

Practice Activity 45



Activity 45, CD 1, Track 42
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Man: Hi Jan. Have you heard about the new summer schedule?
Woman: No. Is there a change?
Man: Just saw it in the *Campus News* this morning. No Friday or weekend classes.
Woman: Really? Why's that?
Man: Energy. The lights and air conditioning will be turned off for three days to cut down on energy consumption during the hottest months.
Woman: Well, I'm the first one in line to support conservation of resources, but what about the people who are working during the summer and depend on weekend courses to keep on track with their part-time degree programs? I know my sister always takes those intensive weekend classes. She starts Friday after work and gets out about ten at night. Then she's in class all day Saturday and Sunday from eight till eight, with breaks of course. It works out to be about 24 hours on campus, and then she has 12 hours of online activities for each three-hour course. I think she actually took three courses like that last summer.
Man: Not this year. I wonder what they'll do about that?
Woman: Probably move those classes into the online curriculum. But that's really too bad for the people who are already taking a lot of online courses, because it's good to interact one-on-one with the professor and the other students.
Man: Sure. I can see that. Then when you take the online courses, you kind of know people, and . . . and . . . it's more like being in a regular class.
Woman: Exactly.
Man: Oh, and did I mention the motion-sensitive lighting, and that thermostats will be set at 78 during the day and air conditioning will be turned off completely at eight o'clock at night?
Woman: I get the motion-sensitive lighting, but wonder if the shut off is really efficient.
Man: My thought exactly. It takes a lot of power to crank up the air conditioner after the building has heated up. I mean, I know it'll be cooler during the night, but still, it'll require a power surge to get going in the morning.
Woman: Well, you know more about this than I do since you're an engineering student, but won't that put a lot of pressure on the system campus wide if everything starts up at eight? Not just for one building, but for the whole campus power system?
Man: I'm not sure. You'd think that they would've considered that problem, but you never know till you actually try it out.

Woman: So our energy conservation plan could cause power outages when everything starts up again after the weekend.
Man: Monday morning is going to be interesting around here this summer.

Relationship sentence: The woman does not agree with the changes in the summer schedule that will offer classes Monday through Thursday.

Reading	Conversation
Point 1 Conserve energy lights/air 3 days	Point 1 Weekend courses–part time students Fri to 10 Sat/Sun 8–8 12 hrs online
Point 2 Therm 78 8–8 off	Point 2 Not efficient Power surge am Outages Mon 8
Point 3 Motion detect 1 min = off	Point 3 OK

Practice Activity 46

Activity 46, CD 1, Track 43
Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class.

People call it a bear, but the koala is really a marsupial. So, it's much more like a kangaroo than it is like a bear. Here's what I mean. First, the koala has a gestation period of only about 35 days before it's born. Then, a tiny pink, furless creature about 19 millimeters long makes its way from the birth canal into the mother's pouch, where it attaches itself to one of two nipples. So it stays in the pouch to complete its development, and six to seven months later, it pokes its head out and explores a short distance from the mother, jumping back into the pouch until it reaches eight months when it's too big to fit, and for another four months it rides on the mother's back or hangs from her stomach until it finally becomes independent at about one year old. By then, it's about the same size as a Teddy Bear and looks remarkably like one, with a furry coat, rounded ears, and a large nose to support its keen senses of smell and hearing. Native to Australia, the koala lives in trees and is a skillful climber. It sleeps in the branches during the day, and at night, it combs the trees for its favorite meal—eucalyptus leaves.

Relationship sentence: The koala discussed in the lecture provides an example of marsupials.

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 short gestation	Point 1 embryo in pouch
Point 2 hair	Point 2 furry coat
Point 3 auditory/olfactory	Point 3 ears/nose keen senses

Practice Activity 47



Activity 47, CD 1, Track 44
Now listen to part of a lecture in a general science class. The professor is talking about bottled water.

Let's go through each of the points that were presented to promote the drinking of bottled water. Bottled water is healthier. Not always. In fact, as much as 40 percent of bottled water comes from city water supplies. Granted, the bottling companies filter the water and occasionally add some minerals, but just because the water is in a bottle or because it has an exotic name that evokes mountain streams and icebergs, that doesn't mean that the water is necessarily from a healthier source. It could be, but it's not guaranteed. And another thing, bottled water usually doesn't contain a high enough level of fluoride to improve dental health. In contrast, people who get their water from public water systems receive fluoridated water, which has been proven to reduce tooth decay.

Bottled water tastes better. Really? Well, the purest water is distilled water because all of the minerals and salts are removed. But without them, the water tastes flat. It's the sodium, calcium, magnesium, and chlorides that give water its good taste. The reason that tap water may taste funny is the higher level of chlorine, but if you put it in the refrigerator for a few hours without a lid, the chlorine taste will dissipate. And here's the real surprise: A recent study administered by the Swiss-based World Wildlife Fund asked the studio audience at the popular TV show, *Good Morning America* to participate in a blind tasting that included two of the best-selling bottled waters, oxygenated water, and tap water from the New York City water system. And tap water received 45 percent of the vote.

Yes, it's true that the plastic bottles—all 70 million per day in the United States alone—all of those bottles *could* be recycled because they're made of recyclable plastic, but unfortunately, only about 15 percent of them actually make it into the recycle bins, which leaves a whopping 85 percent or 59.5 million bottles per day that end up in landfills.

Relationship sentence: The lecturer discredits the claim in the reading passage that bottled water is better than tap water.

Reading	Lecture
Point 1 healthier	Point 1 40% city water/low fluoride
Point 2 tastes better	Point 2 flat w/o minerals sodium, calcium, magnesium, chlorides tap 45% vote GMA
Point 3 recyclable	Point 3 70 m US 15% recycled 59.5/day landfills

Practice Activity 48

SPEAKING TASK 3



Activity 48, CD 1, Track 46
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Man: Have you heard about the fee hike?
Woman: Sure. Everybody's talking about it.
Man: But it won't affect you, right? Because you're from Florida.
Woman: Right. My fees will be the same as last year. But you're an out-of-state student so that will mean . . .
Man: $360. That's 3 percent.
Woman: Oh.
Man: Per semester. So really it's $720 for the year.
Woman: Just be glad you aren't an international student.
Man: Isn't their fee increase the same as out-of-state students?
Woman: It *is*, if they're already enrolled, but if they're applying, as new students I mean, then they have to pay 5 percent more than last year.
Man: Well, I think this whole idea is *not* well thought out because part of your education is supposed to be exposure to new people as well as to new ideas, and if you punish out-of-state students and international students, then, naturally, fewer of us will apply and attend. And that means that in-state students like you will have a very different experience. You'll just have a lot of people with the same background on campus.
Woman: That's a really good point. My roommate is from India, and it's been great learning about her customs and her point of view on issues and events.
Man: Well her fees will go up, but at the same rate as mine because she's already a student here. But I'll bet her family will give it some thought before they send her younger brothers and sisters. Five percent is a lot.

Question
The man expresses his opinion of the announcement. State his opinion and give the reasons he has for holding that opinion.

Example Response

The man disagrees with the increases in tuition and fees for out-of-state students and international students. As an out-of-state student, he'll have to pay 3 percent more, that is, the same increase as continuing international students, but he emphasizes the fact that *new* international students will have to pay 5 percent more . . . so there will probably be a serious decline in that population on campus. And he says that it won't be good for the campus environment because so many students will have the same background.

The response is incomplete because it does not include the fee structure for in-state students. It will be frozen at the same amount as last year.

SPEAKING TASK 4

Activity 48, CD 1, Track 47
Now that you have read the explanation of strategic business alliances in the reading, listen to part of a lecture on a similar topic.

Okay, now I want you to think about two companies that have historically been in competition for the package delivery service in the United States. Well, the first to come to mind has to be the U.S. Postal Service, right? But now think *fast* delivery. For that, Federal Express is at the top of the list. But, instead of viewing their relationship as totally competitive, these two companies struck an unprecedented strategic alliance several years ago. The U.S. Postal Service agreed to let Federal Express place package collection boxes at thousands of post offices throughout the United States, which was great for Fed Ex because they achieved an immediate national presence. But in exchange, Fed Ex allowed the Postal Service to buy unused space on the Federal Express airplanes in order to carry first-class, priority, and, most importantly, express mail envelopes and packages, increasing the speed with which they could deliver the mail without purchasing aircraft. Moreover, by sharing websites to track their deliveries, both companies have been able to create a larger Internet presence.

So why would these companies be willing to help each other? Probably the most commonly espoused explanation is that they're both battling fax, email, and other emerging messaging technologies and their combined resources may result in survival and success for both of them against a common threat. And that fits in nicely with the whole concept of strategic alliances. But, besides that, many countries—New Zealand, Sweden, Germany, and the Netherlands, to name only a few—these countries have ended the special government status that postal services have traditionally enjoyed, with all the benefits, including tax advantages and subsidies. So, it may be that the U.S. Postal Service is trying to find alternatives to show progress before privatization ends its chance of survival. And Federal Express might be positioning itself to be the really big winner if the Postal Service goes up on the auction block at some time in the future. In other words, the real purpose of strategic alliances like this one may be to serve competing interests in the long run in an agreement that allows each company to retain its identity and dissolve the association when it's no longer advantageous.

Question
Explain how the example that the professor provides demonstrates the concept of strategic alliances defined in the reading passage.

Example Response
An example of a strategic alliance is the agreement between the U.S. Postal Service and Federal Express in which the Postal Service allowed Fed Ex to place its depositories in a large number of post offices in exchange for the opportunity to buy space on Fed Ex airplanes. The Postal Service obtained transportation for their first-class, priority, and express mail without purchasing aircraft. Fed Ex secured a national presence for their brand. All three key features of a strategic alliance were present in the agreement. First, both entities retained their individual identities. Second, the alliance provided for the companies to share resources for their mutual benefit and cooperate in the competitive arena against newer technologies. Third, the alliance, easily organized and easily terminated, could place each company in a more favorable position when business conditions change.

The response is complete because it includes the definition of a strategic alliance, the concept presented in the reading passage, and it demonstrates how the example of the agreement between the U.S. Postal Service and Federal Express includes all three key features of a strategic alliance: individual identity, shared resources, and a simple procedure to form and dissolve the association.

INTEGRATED ESSAY



Activity 48, CD 1, Track 48
Now listen to part of a lecture in a business class. The professor is talking about vacation time.

Many advantages have been cited for companies that offer paid vacation time to their employees, but when we look more closely at each of these arguments, they start to fall apart. In the first place, companies who give generous vacation time to employees are supposed to receive more control over absenteeism, especially the unexpected absence of an employee at a critical time. In reality, unexpected absences occur at about the same rate in companies with paid vacation time and in those without that benefit. Unfortunately, it's simply not possible to plan for the unexpected or to schedule emergencies around a planned vacation period.

Next, let's look at the issues of health and productivity. Although there's some evidence that people who take vacations tend to be healthier, both mentally and physically, there's no assurance that the paid time away from work will be used for a refreshing holiday. More often than not, employees with paid vacation will use that time to accomplish a project at home, schedule an elective surgery, take care of an ailing relative, or some other activity that doesn't lend itself to returning rested and restored from the so-called vacation. In fact, in some studies, employees returning from paid vacations reported feeling more tired and stressed than before leaving.

Okay then, what about vacation time as a recruitment strategy? That seems to be rather straightforward, but again, it really isn't. Because like most other contractual issues, one size doesn't fit all when it comes to offering benefits. Some highly talented employees are less interested in time off than they are in better health care for themselves and their families. Others want more money and fewer perks. And still others are just looking for a clear path for advancement and promotion, and being gone from the workplace isn't a good way to make *that* happen.

So, yes, workers in the United States are at the bottom of the chart for paid vacation days, but it's hard to make the argument that giving employees time off is better for American companies.

Example Essay
The essay on page 195 is complete because it includes all three arguments that the lecturer makes, contradicting the points in the reading passage, including control over absenteeism, the relationship between health and vacation time, and the advantage of a good vacation plan as part of a recruitment package.

Practice Activity 49

1. Draw a chart with a relationship sentence at the top and three points underneath
2. Read a short passage and take notes on the chart
3. Listen to a conversation or a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart
4. Respond, using information from both the reading and the conversation or lecture
5. Use the chart to check for a complete response

EXAMPLE SPEAKING TASK 3



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 49
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Woman: I know you think it's a hassle, but I'm really happy about the new security measures. You wouldn't believe the people who parade through our dorm in the middle of the night.
Man: And the scans will help that?
Woman: Maybe. At least we'll know who's there. And people who just walk in from who-knows-where will have to get guest passes.
Man: Don't they have to do that now?
Woman: Well, yes, but it isn't really enforced. And this looks like a serious plan.
Man: I'll give you that.
Woman: And for students—well, how long does it take to scan a fingerprint at the door?
Man: True.
Woman: It won't be any different from opening up your phone or tablet with your fingerprint.
Man: I hadn't thought about that. I guess it's just the time to go get your fingerprint scanned at the security office.
Woman: Look, back to the issue of phones and tablets. You want to keep those secure. Why wouldn't you want to keep students secure?
Man: That's a point.
Woman: It stands to reason that someone who wants to steal something or even hurt someone, well, maybe they'll think about it if they have to scan their prints or leave their ID at the desk. I know I'm going to feel better about living in the dorm.
Man: Okay. I'm convinced. It isn't such a big deal to go to the security office. I can just stop by there when I'm in the student union the next time. But . . . I hope there isn't a line a mile long.

Question
The woman expresses her opinion of the announcement. State her opinion and the reasons that she has for having that opinion.

Example Response
The woman approves of the new security policy because it's a serious plan, it will be easy to use, and it should be a deterrent to crime. She explains that the previous system that required a pass to enter the dorm wasn't enforced, but now, without a scan, it won't be possible to go in the door. She also points out that it's really easy, like scanning to access a secure mobile device. She argues that scanning a fingerprint will be a deterrent to theft and the dorms will be safer because it'll be better than a guest pass to keep track of everyone who's in the buildings.

EXAMPLE SPEAKING TASK 4



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 50
Now listen to part of a lecture in a linguistics class. The professor is talking about endangered languages.

Today I want to give you an example of a language that, unfortunately, meets all the criteria to be considered an endangered language. Like many other Native American languages, Ojibwa, also known as Chippewa, is struggling to survive. A North American indigenous language of the Algonquian language family, Ojibwa has traditionally been spoken in Canada and along the Northern border of the United States. It was very important during the fur-trading era in the Great Lakes region—to such an

extent, in fact, that French traders often used Ojibwa to speak with other tribes. But although the total ethnic population still includes more than 200 thousand people, and that number comes from self-identification—the people who claim Ojibwa tribal membership—well, of those 200 thousand, only about 30 thousand still speak Ojibwa on any level of proficiency. And the number of children in the youngest generation who are fluent in Ojibwa is almost non-existent.

In a study in 1995 of Ojibwa language usage in a three-state area consisting of Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota, Rosemary Christensen was able to locate only 500 fluent Ojibwa speakers. Of those speakers, most were elders, over the age of 80, and none were under the age of 45. She found no children who were fluent in Ojibwa.

Partly in response to this study, and with funding from the Department of Health and Human Services, four preschools were opened in Minneapolis in 2006. In cooperation with the 100 remaining Ojibwa speakers in the area, immersion classrooms in Ojibwa began teaching young children in their ancestral language. Will it be too little too late? Only time will tell. As for now, Ojibwa remains on the endangered list, a language with an uncertain future.

Question

The professor reports a study of the Ojibwa language. Explain why the study confirms that Ojibwa is an endangered language.

Example Response

Ojibwa is considered an endangered language because it meets all three criteria for that classification. First, few speakers are fluent in the language. In Christensen's study in 1995, only about 500 of the tribal members in the tri-state area studied were fluent speakers. Second, the average age of native speakers is older. Among the 500 fluent speakers, most were elders 80 years of age or older. Finally, the percentage of speakers in the youngest generation is small. Among Ojibwa speakers, almost *no* children were fluent. Unfortunately, this study confirmed that Ojibwa is endangered, and despite efforts to teach the language in federally funded preschools, its future is very uncertain.

EXAMPLE WRITING TASK 1: INTEGRATED ESSAY



Activity 49, CD 1, Track 51

Now listen to part of a lecture in an economics class. The professor is talking about home ownership.

The reading passage lists three reasons to own a home, but recent changes in the economy persuade us to reassess the assumptions.

First, we have to question whether owning a home is a sound investment in today's economy. Although it was once considered a strategy in the creation of wealth, it is now being reexamined. During recessions like the one recently experienced, the value of homes has dramatically fallen. So much so that many homeowners were paying a high mortgage for a home that was worth only half of its value at the time of the purchase. Whether owning a home that has depreciated in value so rapidly will be a sound investment long term—well, the verdict will have to wait for a decade to give us that kind of data. But short term, for many homeowners, the plan to create wealth is a disappointment.

The sharp increase in foreclosures and forced sales has also decreased the sense of security that homeowners once experienced. Struggling to pay a mortgage and a looming possibility that the property will be foreclosed leads to a loss of control and a sense of insecurity—the exact opposite of the anticipated stability that homeowners used to enjoy. A significant number of first-time owners report that they would prefer to rent but don't know how to reverse their situation without losing their initial investment.

As for the social benefits, the pressures associated with owning and maintaining a home are taking a toll on the psychological and physical health of homeowners. Many homeowners report that they're only one paycheck away from being unable to pay the costs of owning a home. The stress affects *all* of the family members, even the children, who seem to respond to the pressures by bringing home lower grades and by being less involved in school activities than was previously reported. So, as you see, times have changed.

Practice Activity 50

SPEAKING TASK 3

1 Draw a chart with a relationship sentence at the top and three points underneath.

Relationship sentence: The man is not happy about the relocation of the honors program to Harkins Hall because the other location in Andersen Hall was larger and had a better view.

Point 1	Harkins to Anderson	Point 1	inferior space—smaller, no view, dark
Point 2	Faculty Club	Point 2	uses lounge more
Point 3	Honors smaller suite	Point 3	honors program not important

2 Read a short passage about a campus-related topic and take notes on the chart.

3 Listen to a conversation on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 52
Now listen to a conversation on the same topic.

Man: You're an honors student, aren't you?
Woman: Yes.
Man: So I guess you've been over to Harkins Hall.
Woman: Umhum. It's pretty grim. But they aren't done yet, so maybe it will be okay.
Man: Always the optimist. How can a basement be better than the top floor of Anderson Hall? That was really a nice place to hang out. The view was phenomenal.
Woman: It still is. It's just not our view anymore. That's why the faculty wanted it.
Man: Right.
Woman: But you spend more time there than I do so it doesn't matter so much to me. I just go over there when I need my advisor's signature for something. I haven't used the lounge that much.
Man: Well, since I live off campus, I'm there between classes and I even eat my lunch there sometimes. There's always a chess game going, and I'm friends with a lot of the regulars.
Woman: Then it's a big change for you.
Man: It *is*. And it bugs me that the new space is so inferior to what we had. I think they should have tried harder to find something better than a basement. It just communicates that the Honors Program isn't important.

Woman: Oh, I don't know about that. I feel lucky to be in smaller classes and to be able to take graduate courses while I'm still an undergrad, don't you?
Man: Sure. Of course I do. But the lounge is supposed to be our place to meet up with other honors students, and, besides, how do you think the advisors feel? Their offices are cramped and dark compared with the program offices that they had in Anderson.
Woman: Of course, they can always use the Faculty Club when they want to.
Man: Unlike us. Listen, are you always so upbeat? It seems like you just take everything in stride.
Woman: Pretty much. Especially when it's something I can't change anyway.

[4] Respond, using information from both the reading and the conversation.

Example Response
The man isn't happy about the relocation of the Honors Program to Harkins Hall because the other location in Anderson Hall was larger and had a better view. He uses the lounge to hang out with friends and eat lunch because he lives off campus, and the new space isn't as nice. It's dark, small, and it doesn't have a view because it's in a basement. He feels that moving the Honors Program to an inferior space indicates that the program isn't very important to the college.

[5] Use the chart to check for a complete response.

All three points in the chart are included in the response.

SPEAKING TASK 4

[1] Draw a chart with a relationship sentence at the top and three points underneath.

Relationship sentence: Peacocks are a good example of animals that use courtship displays to compete with other males and attract a mate.

Point 1 ritualized dances	Point 1 strut and dance around female
Point 2 postures tail-feathers	Point 2 large fan w/ many eyespots
Point 3 vocalization	Point 3 mating calls–vibrations train 20 hertz

[2] Read a short passage about an academic topic and take notes on the chart.

[3] Listen to a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 53
Now listen to a lecture in a biology class about the same topic.

Peacocks are large, colorful birds, known for their beautiful blue-green tail feathers, which they spread out in a distinctive fan. When extended, the fantail represents more than 60 percent of the peacock's total body weight. Arched into a magnificent train, it surrounds the bird's back and spreads out onto the ground on either side. Female birds choose their mates according to the size, color, and quality of the feathered trains. In addition to the blue-green feathers, colorful eye markings of red and gold and many other colors enhance the beauty of individual birds and form very different patterns from one bird to another.

Although the term *peacock* is commonly used to refer to both males and females, technically only the male is a peacock. The *peahens* watch the display in order to make a selection. In general, the more eyespots and the more evenly spaced their pattern, the more attractive a male peacock appears to the female. A large fan is also appealing; however, tails that are too big are considered too burdensome for mating. And as though the beautiful feathers and the graceful movements of the males were not enough, as they strut and perform an elaborate dance in front of their potential mates, well, these beautiful birds also communicate in very low-pitched mating calls that are produced by the vibrations of the feather train at a level of 20 hertz, far too low to be heard by the human ear, but just right for a peahen to notice.

4 Respond, using information from both the reading and the lecture.

Example Response
Peacocks are a good example of animals that use courtship displays to compete with other males and attract a mate. Like other birds, peacocks engage in ritualized dances, strutting gracefully around the female. In addition, they display their magnificent fan of blue-green tail feathers, posturing to show the eyespots and beautiful colors to advantage. They also use vocalizations, in this case, mating calls that are generated by vibrations when they shake their feathers.

5 Use the chart to check for a complete response.

All three points in the chart are included in the response.

WRITING TASK 1

1 Draw a chart with a relationship sentence at the top and three points underneath.

Relationship sentence: The lecturer refutes the idea that government censorship of the Internet should be instituted to protect children, curtail crime, and assure personal privacy.

Point 1	Protects children	Point 1	Parents, guardians monitor
Point 2	Curtails crime	Point 2	Personal responsibility better–passwords, firewalls, anti-virus, no attach, good judgment
Point 3	Assures personal privacy	Point 3	Laws not enforced–take care ourselves–separate email, don't disclose personal info social media

2 Read a short passage about an academic topic and take notes on the chart.

Reading Time: 3 minutes

Government censorship of the Internet benefits society in three ways. First, like other forms of mass media, including television and movies, censorship protects children. Restricting adult content and providing punitive measures for pornographic websites discourages the exposure of young children to inappropriate images and explicit language. Since children are growing up in an environment in which they can easily access the Internet, some restrictions should be in place to protect them.

Second, censorship curtails criminal activities. Censorship discovers and discourages financial frauds, theft, and harassment, or even potentially violent encounters. Because the Internet affords criminals a high degree of anonymity, unless their activities are monitored, they can sell illegal substances, threaten or bully individuals, or intrude into the lives of large numbers of people with spam advertising. Censorship reduces the instances of these disturbing contacts.

Finally, censorship assures personal privacy. Censorship laws establish standards for websites and security measures to protect identity, financial records, and personal information. Censorship restricts access to credit cards and bank accounts, as well as medical and employment records, and it reduces the incidents of identity theft.

3 Listen to a lecture on the same topic and take notes on the chart.



Activity 50, CD 1, Track 54
Now listen to a lecture about the same topic.

Although it may be true that government censorship has the potential to benefit society, realistically, it's just not possible to enforce. That aside, let's look at each of the advantages that are mentioned in the reading passage. Hardly anyone would disagree that children should be protected from pornography and other inappropriate websites. The issue is, *who* should protect them—the government or their

parents? Software that installs parental controls is readily available and relatively cheap. My position is that responsible adults should monitor their children's Internet access. Even if censorship *does* restrict some viewing, it's still up to the parents or guardians to take care of their children.

Now, as for criminal activities, no one wants to deal with this, especially since the Internet intrudes into our workspaces and our homes. And censorship helps somewhat. But again, personal responsibility is a better deterrent. Everyone needs to choose and use strong passwords, install firewalls and antivirus software, avoid opening attachments from unidentified sources, and use good judgment when interacting with unfamiliar people or businesses—but, of course, that's true for face-to-face encounters and purchases as well. And we don't want the government to censor those, that's for sure.

So last, of course, we want to guard our identities and our personal and financial information. And censorship laws may establish standards. But, as I said in the beginning, the laws are very difficult, even impossible to enforce. So in the long run, it comes down to taking care of ourselves. How can we do that? Well, first we should establish a separate email account for Internet transactions—one that we can close down easily if we need to. In other words, we have a disposable identity in cyberspace. Second, never give out personal information like a social security number, credit card or bank account numbers unless *you* initiate the interaction. And this is important—don't divulge too much personal information on social media. If we want to protect ourselves even more, we have the option to subscribe to an identity theft plan.

The bottom line is this: To keep our children safe and to avoid being victims of crime or identity theft, we have to take personal responsibility. Censorship on the Internet isn't necessary, and it doesn't work.

4 Respond, using information from both the reading and the lecture.

Example Essay

The lecturer refutes the idea that government censorship of the Internet should be instituted to protect children, curtail crime, and assure personal privacy. He contends that censorship cannot be enforced, and that, in any case, personal responsibility is better than censorship.

According to the lecturer, parents and guardians, not the government, should monitor their children's Internet use to protect them from inappropriate sites and images.

Moreover, users should assume individual responsibility to avoid becoming victims of crime. We can do this by using strong passwords and by installing firewalls and antivirus software, as well as by using good judgment about opening attachments and interacting with unfamiliar people and businesses online.

Furthermore, he claims that we should take care of our own identities by using email accounts that can be closed if they are breached by intrusive sources. Finally, he recommends that we not disclose too much personal information on social media.

In short, the lecturer is an advocate for personal responsibility instead of for government censorship.

5 Use the chart to check for a complete response.

All three points in the chart are included in the response.

EXPLANATORY OR EXAMPLE ANSWERS AND AUDIO SCRIPTS FOR MODEL TESTS

MODEL TEST 1: PRETEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "BEOWULF"

1. **C** "...*Beowulf* was written by an anonymous [author unknown] Englishman in Old English." Choice A is not correct because it is one of four surviving manuscripts. Choice B is not correct because it was written in old English about Germanic characters. Choice D is not correct because scholars do not know if it is the sole surviving epic from about A.D. 1000.
2. **B** In this passage, *principal* is a synonym for "major." Context comes from the contrast with "minor" in the same sentence.
3. **A** "Iron was accessible everywhere in Scandinavia, usually in the form of 'bog iron' found in the layers of peat in peat bogs." Choice B is not correct because the author had already stated that the best swords had iron or iron-edged blades. Choice C is not correct because the Celts taught the Northmen how to use the materials, but they did not provide the bog iron. Choice D is not correct because the bog iron does not relate to the date, although 500 B.C. is mentioned as the time when the Northmen learned how to forge iron.
4. **A** *Society in Anglo-Saxon England* paraphrases "Anglo-Saxon society." . . . *both advanced* paraphrases "neither primitive," and *cultured* paraphrases "nor uncultured." Two negatives [*nor* and *–un*] produce an affirmative meaning.
5. **B** In this passage, *rare* is a synonym for "unique." Context comes from the reference to the "sole surviving epic" in the beginning of the same sentence.
6. **B** ". . . the original manuscript was probably lost during the ninth century . . ., in which the Danes destroyed the Anglo-Saxon monasteries and their great libraries." Choice A is true but it is not the reason that scholars believe the original manuscript was lost. Choice C is not correct because the Danes were invaders, not poets. Choice D is not correct because the location of the discovery is not mentioned, although the author may have been a monk.
7. **D** "Although the *Beowulf* manuscript was written in about A.D. 1000, it was not discovered until the seventeenth century." Choice A is not correct because the first century was the date the manuscript was written, not discovered. Choice B is not correct because the ninth century was the date when the original manuscript may have been lost. Choice C is not correct because some scholars think that the manuscript was written in the eleventh century.
8. **A** Because the word "apparently" means "appearing to be so," the author is expressing doubt about the information that follows, ". . . [the *Beowulf* poet] was a Christian." Choice B is not correct because the word "obviously" would be used. Choice C is not correct *b*ecause the phrases "for example" or "for instance" would signal an example. Choice D is not correct because evidence would not be presented as "appearing to be so."
9. **A** ". . . Beowulf is a very appealing hero . . . Like Hercules." Choice B is not correct because a fight with a dragon is mentioned in reference to Beowulf but not to Hercules. Choice C is not correct because the Danish hero's welcome is the only reference to a speech, and it was jealous, not inspiring. Choice D is not correct because the time period for the life of Hercules is not mentioned.
10. **B** In this passage, *demonstrates* is a synonym for "exhibits."

11. **C** In this passage, *refuse* is a synonym for "reject." Context comes from the contrast with "accept" in the previous sentence.
12. **C** Addition is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. *Moreover* signals that additional, related information will follow. ". . . they [scholars] disagree" refers to "Scholars do not know" in the previous sentence.
13. **E, D, F** summarize the passage. Choice A is true, but it is a minor point that establishes the time period for the poem and refers to major point D. Choice B is true, but it is a detail that refers to major point E and explains why there may be only one manuscript. Choice C is not clear from the information in the passage.

READING 2 "THERMOREGULATION"

14. **A** "The most basic mechanism [for maintenance of warm body temperature] is the high metabolic rate." Choices B, C, and D are all ways to maintain body temperature, but they are not the most fundamental adaptation.
15. **D** "In some mammals, certain hormones can cause mitochondria to increase their metabolic activity and produce heat instead of ATP. This **nonshivering thermogenesis (NST). . . .**" Choice A is not correct because thermogenesis is the activity that generates heat, not the heat loss. Choice B is not correct because brown fat is one example of a more generalized process. Choice C is not correct because thermogenesis is a response to the environment to maintain the health of the animal, not a process that maintains the environment.
16. **B** A passive grammatical structure in the passage is paraphrased by an active grammatical structure in the answer choice.
17. **D** In this passage, *smallest* is a synonym for "minimal."
18. **B** "For example, heat loss from a human is reduced when arms and legs cool." Choice A is not correct because goose bumps, not heat loss in the extremities, is a vestige of our evolution. Choice C is not correct because no direct comparisons of these processes are made in the paragraph. Choice D is not correct because the types of insulation are mentioned before the concept of vasodilatation and vasoconstriction are introduced.
19. **D** In this passage, *control* is a synonym for "regulate." Context comes from the reference to "temperature differences" at the end of the same sentence.
20. **B** "The loss of heat to water occurs 50 to 100 times more rapidly than heat loss to air." Choice A is not correct because hair loses insulating power when wet, but the evolution of marine animals is not mentioned. Choice C is not correct because dry hair insulates better than wet hair. Choice D is not correct because there are land animals that are of similar size.
21. **A** ". . . capable of astonishing feats of thermoregulation. For example, small birds called chickadees . . . hold body temperature nearly constant." Choice B is not correct because the food supply supports thermoregulation, which is the main point of the example. Choice C is not correct because chickadees are capable of astonishing feats of thermoregulation. Choice D is not correct because the reason for heat production in animals is explained before the example of the chickadee.
22. **D** In this passage, *adequate* is a synonym for "sufficient."
23. **D** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentence 7. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentence 8. Choice C is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentences 3 and 4.
24. **B** In this passage, *improve* is a synonym for "enhance." Context comes from the reference to "promote" in the previous sentence.
25. **A** Reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. ". . . a layer of fur or feathers" and "how much still air the layer [of fur or feathers] traps" in the insert sentence refers to ". . . fur or feathers" and "a thicker layer of air" in the previous sentence.

26. **E, C, F** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that supports major point C. Choice B is true but it is not mentioned in the passage. Choice D is a minor point that supports major point F.

READING 3 "SOCIAL READJUSTMENT SCALES"

27. **D** "Overall, these studies have shown that people with higher scores on the SRRS tend to be more vulnerable to many kinds of physical illness." Choice A is not correct because a person with a higher score will experience more, not less, stress. Choice B is not correct because the numerical values for major problems are not identified, and a score of 30 does not have meaning unless it is compared with a higher or lower score. Choice C is not correct because the effects of positive or negative change are not mentioned in the first two paragraphs.
28. **C** In this passage, *results* is a synonym for "outcomes."
29. **D** In this passage, *different* is a synonym for "diverse."
30. **C** ". . . divorce may deserve a stress value of 73 for *most* people, a particular person's divorce might generate much less stress and merit a value of only 25." Choice A is not correct because a particular person is compared with most people. Choice B is not correct because the serious nature of divorce is not mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the numerical value of 73 for most people is questioned.
31. **A** ". . . what qualifies as 'trouble with the boss'? Should you check that because you're sick and tired of your supervisor? What constitutes a 'change in living conditions'? Does your purchase of a great new sound system qualify?" Choice B is not correct because the author does not offer examples of responses to the questions posed. Choice C is not correct because options for scores are not provided in paragraph 5. Choice D is not correct because the author suggests that people do not respond consistently but whether they respond carefully is not mentioned.
32. **B** ". . . subjects' neuroticism affects both their responses to stress scales and their self-reports of health problems." Choice A is not correct because they recall more symptoms, but they are not ill more often. Choice C is not correct because they recall more stress, but they do not necessarily suffer more actual stress. Choice D is not correct because the effects of neuroticism obscures the meaning of the scores that are recorded.
33. **C** In this passage, *arranged* is a synonym for "assembled."
34. **C** In this passage, *related* is a synonym for "relevant."
35. **B** ". . . dropping the normative weights and replacing them with personally assigned weightings." Choice A is not correct because long-term consequences are not included in positive, negative, and total change scores. Choice C is not correct because the differences in people reflect their appraisal of stress, not how they handle stress. Choice D is not correct because normative weighting is replaced by personally assigned weightings.
36. **C** In paragraph 1, the authors state that the SRRS ". . . assigns numerical values." Choices A and B are not correct because they are mentioned in paragraph 10 in reference to the LES, not the SRRS. Choice D is not correct because recalling events from one year ago is a problem on the SRRS.
37. **A** "The LES deals with the failure of the SRRS to sample the full domain of stressful events." Choice *B is not correct* because the author explains several ways that the LES deals with the failure of the SRRS. Choice C is not correct because it has been used in thousands of studies by researchers all over the world. Choice D is not correct because the LES, not the SRRS, has a special section for students.
38. **B** Reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. "This sum" in the insert sentence refers to the phrase "adds up the numbers" in the previous sentence.
39. **A, B, C** summarize the passage. Choice D is true but it is not mentioned in the passage. Choice E is a minor point that supports major point B. Choice F is a minor point that supports major point A.

➤ Listening



Model Test 1, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 1

Listening 1 "Learning Center"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to a conversation on campus between two students.

Man: Hi. Are you Paula?
Woman: Jim?
Man: Hi. Nice to meet you.
Woman: Glad to meet you.
Q1 Man: So, you need some tutoring in English?
Woman: Yeah. I'm taking English composition, and I'm not doing very well on my essays.
Man: Right. Um, well, first let's see if we can figure out a time to meet . . . that we're both free.
Woman: Okay.
Man: How about Mondays? Maybe in the morning? I don't have any classes until eleven on Mondays.
Woman: That would work, but I was hoping we could, you know, meet more than once a week.
Man: Oh. Well, Tuesdays are out. I've got classes and I work at the library part time on Tuesdays and Thursdays. But I could get together on Wednesdays.
Woman: In the morning?
Man: Probably nine-thirty would be best. That way we'd have an hour to work before I'd have to get ready for my eleven o'clock.
Woman: So that would be two hours a week then?
Man: I could do that.
Q2 Woman: Oh, but, would that be extra? You know, would I need to pay you for the extra session?
Man: No. Just so you meet me here at the Learning Center, and we both sign in, then I'll get
Q3 paid. Tutoring is free, to you, I mean. The school pays me. But we both have to show up. If you don't show up and sign in for a session, then I don't get paid. So . . .
Woman: Oh, don't worry about that. I really need the help. I won't miss any sessions unless I'm sick or something.
Man: Okay then. So you want me to help you with your essays?
Woman: Right. I could bring you some that have, you know, comments on them. I'm getting C's and . . .
Man: Well, that's not too bad. Once I see some of your writing, we should be able to pull that up to a B.
Woman: You think so?
Q4 Man: Sure. But I need to explain something. Some of my students in the past . . . they expected me to write their essays for them. But that's not what a tutor is supposed to do. My job is to help you be a better writer.
Woman: Oh, I understand that. But you'll read my essays, right?
Man: Oh yeah. No problem. We'll read them together, and I'll make suggestions.
Woman: Great. I think part of the problem is I just don't understand the teacher's comments. Maybe you can help me figure them out.
Man: Sure. Who's the teacher?
Woman: Simpson.

Man: No problem. I've tutored a couple of her students, so I know more or less where she's coming from. Okay, then. I guess we'll meet here on Monday. Q5
Woman: I'll be here. Nine-thirty you said.
Man: Just sign in when you get here.

Audio 1. What does the woman need?
Answer **C** An appointment for tutoring

Audio 2. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Oh, but, would that be extra? You know, would I need to pay you for the extra session?"
Audio Why does the woman say this:
Replay "Oh, but would that be extra?"
Answer **A** Her tone indicates that she is worried.

Audio 3. Why is the man concerned about the woman's attendance?
Answer **B** He will not get a paycheck if she is absent.

Audio 4. What does the man agree to do?
Answer **D** He will show the woman how to improve her writing.

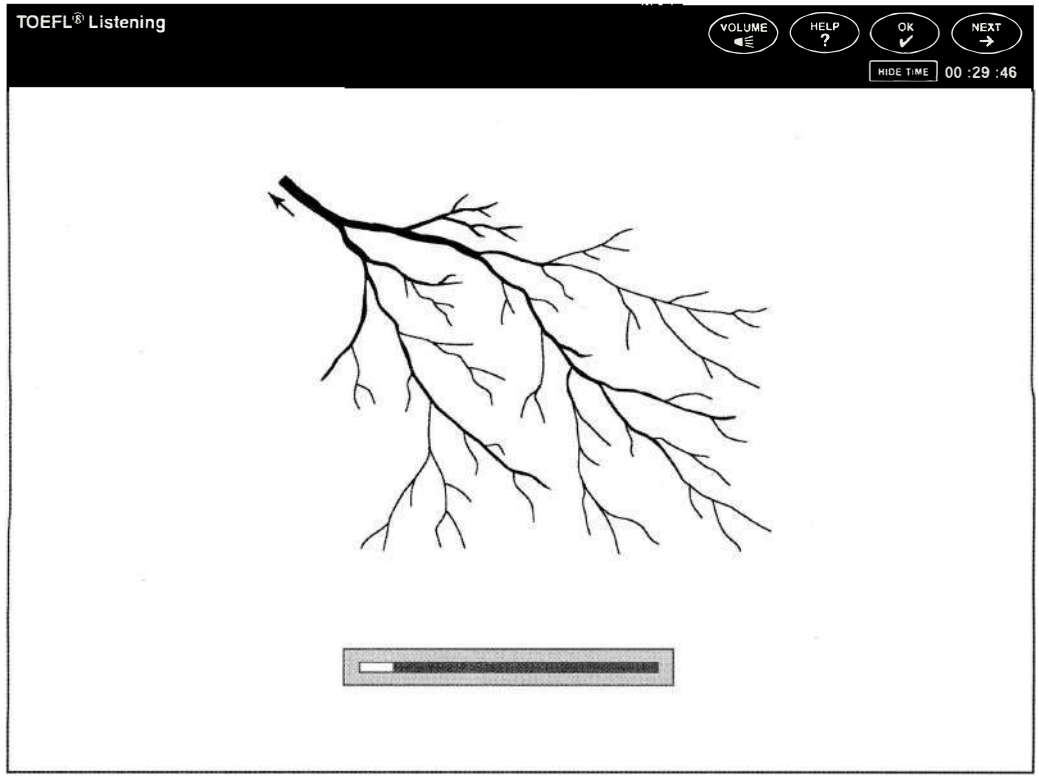
Audio 5. What does the man imply about the woman's teacher?
Answer **D** ". . . know . . . where she's coming from" means "to understand her."

Listening 2 "Geology Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a geology class.

Professor:
Okay, today we're going to discuss the four major types of drainage patterns. I trust you've already read the chapter so you'll recall that a drainage pattern is the arrangement of channels that carry water in an area. Q6 Q7 And these patterns can be very distinctive since they're determined by the climate, the topography, and the composition of the rock that underlies the formations. So, consequently, we can see that a drainage pattern is really a good visual summary of the characteristics of a particular region, both geologically and climatically. In other words, when we look at drainage patterns, we can draw conclusions about the structural formation and relief of the land as well as the climate.

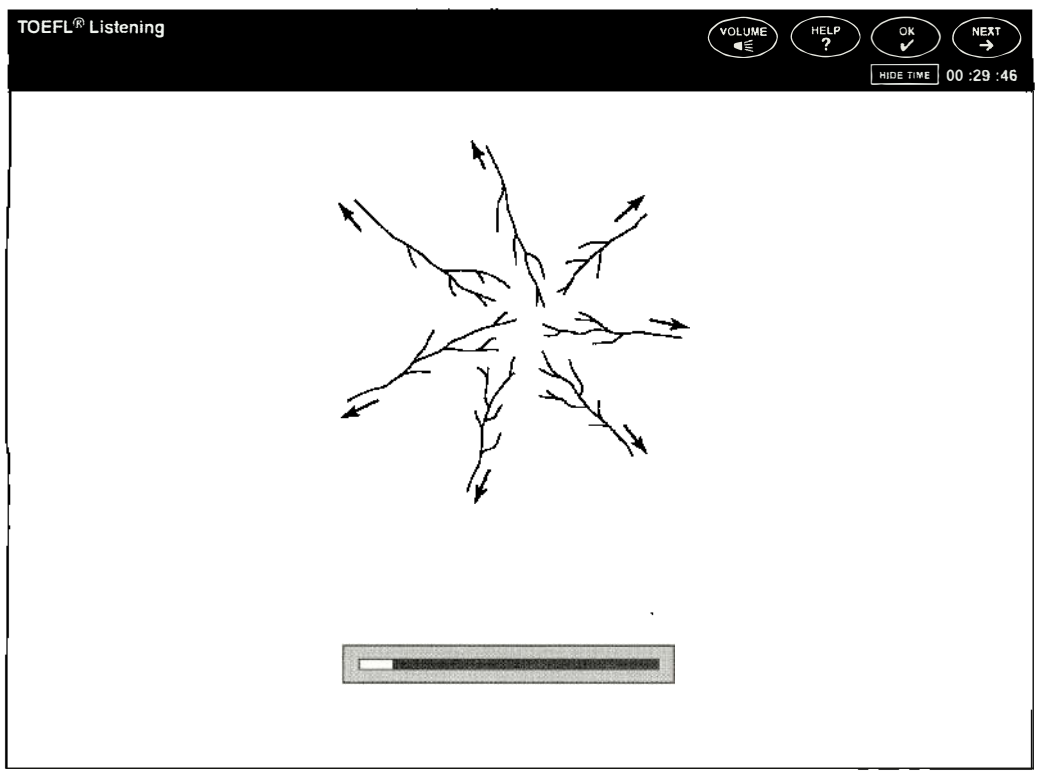
Now all drainage systems are composed of an interconnected network of streams, and, when we view them together, they form distinctive patterns. Although there are at least seven identifiable kinds of drainage patterns, for our purposes, we're going to limit our study to the four major types. Probably the most familiar pattern is the dendritic drainage pattern.



Q8

This is a stream that looks like the branches of a tree. Here's an example of a dendritic pattern. As you can see, it's similar to many systems in nature. In addition to the structure of a tree, it also resembles the human circulation system. This is a very efficient drainage system because the overall length of any one branch is fairly short, and there are many branches, so that allows the water to flow quickly and efficiently from the source or sources.

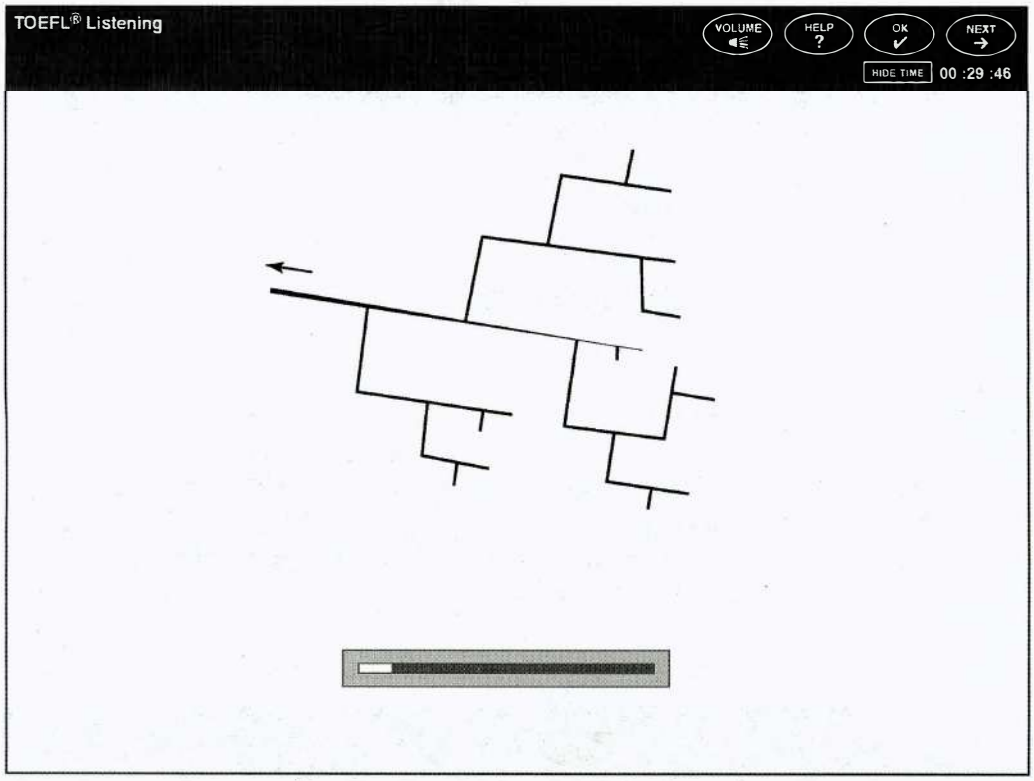
Okay, let's look at the next example.



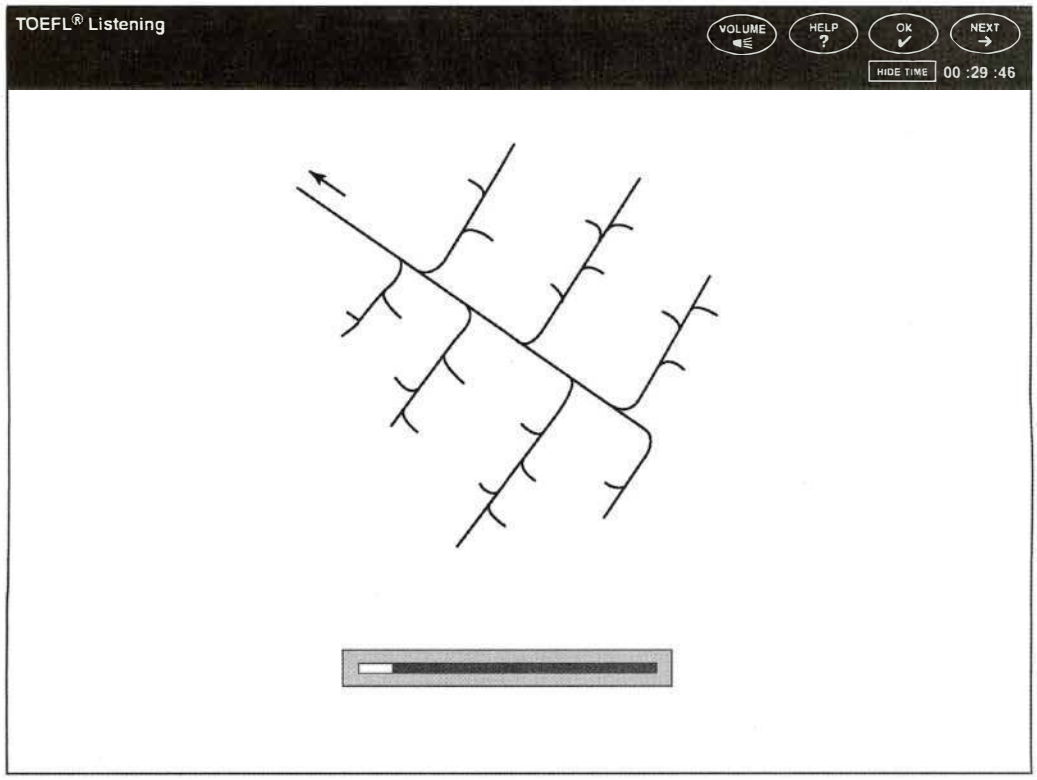
This drainage pattern is referred to as a radial pattern. Notice how the streams flow from a central point. This is usually a high mountain, or a volcano. It kind of looks like the spokes that radiate out from the hub of a wheel. When we see a radial pattern, we know that the area has experienced uplift and that the direction of the drainage is down the slopes of a relatively isolated central point. Q9

Going back to the dendritic for a moment. The pattern is determined by the direction of the slope of the land, but it, uh, . . . the streams flow in more or less the same direction and so it's unlike the radial that had multiple directions of flow from the highest point.

Now this pattern is very different from either the dendritic or the radial.



This is called a rectangular pattern, and I think you can see why. Just look at all of those right-angle turns. The rectangle pattern is typical of a landscape that's been formed by fractured joints and faults. And because this broken rock is eroded more easily than unbroken rock, stream beds are carved along the jointed bedrock.



Finally we have the trellis pattern. And here in this example, you can see quite clearly how the tributaries of an almost parallel structure drain into valleys and form the appearance of a garden
Q10 trellis. This pattern forms in areas where there are alternating bands of variable resistance, and by that I mean that the bands of rock that are very strong and resistant to erosion alternate with bands of rock that are weak and easily eroded. This often happens when a horizontal plain folds and outcroppings appear.

So, as I said, as a whole, these patterns are dictated by the structure and relief of the land. The kinds of rocks on which the streams are developed, the structural pattern of the folds, uh, faults, and . . . uplift will usually determine a drainage system. However, I should also mention that drainage patterns can occasionally appear to be, well, out of sync with the landscape. And this can happen when a stream flows over older structures that have been uncovered by erosion or when a stream keeps its original drainage system when rocks are uplifted. So when that happens, the pattern appears
Q11 to be contrary to the expected course of the stream. But I'm interested in your understanding the basic drainage systems. So I don't plan to trick you with test questions about exceptional patterns, but I expect you to know that exceptions to the patterns can occur when geological events influence them.

Audio 6. What is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **B** A comparison of different types of drainage systems

Audio 7. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Okay, today we're going to discuss the four major types of drainage patterns. I trust you've already read the chapter so you'll recall that a drainage pattern is the arrangement of channels that carry water in an area."

Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "I trust you've already read the chapter so you'll recall that a drainage pattern is the arrangement of channels that carry water in an area."
Answer B "I trust you" means "I expect you to."

Audio 8. How does the professor introduce the dendritic drainage system?
Answer B By comparing it to both a tree and the human circulatory system

Audio 9. Why does the professor mention the spokes of a wheel?
Answer C To explain the structure of a radial drainage system

Audio 10. In the lecture, the professor discusses the trellis drainage pattern. Indicate whether each of the following is typical of this pattern. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

Answer A, D, E: YES **B** refers to the rectangular pattern, and **C** refers to the dendritic.

Audio 11. What does the professor imply when he says this:
Replay "So I don't plan to trick you with test questions about exceptional patterns."
Answer C The basic patterns from the notes will be on the test. Professors who "trick" students ask questions that have not been discussed in class.

LISTENING 3 "PSYCHOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a psychology class. The professor is discussing defense mechanisms.

Professor:
Okay, we know from our earlier study of Freud that defense mechanisms protect us from bringing painful thoughts or feelings to the surface of our consciousness. Q12 We do this because our minds simply can't tolerate these thoughts. So, defense mechanisms help us to express these painful thoughts or feelings in another way, while we repress the real problem. The function of defense mechanisms is to keep from being overwhelmed. Of course, the avoidance of problems can result in additional emotional issues. And there's a huge distinction between repression and suppression. Anybody want to explain the difference?

Student 1:
I'll try it. I think repression is an unconscious response to serious events or images but suppression is more conscious and deals with something unpleasant but not usually, well, terrible experiences. Q13

Professor:
I couldn't have said it better. Now remember that the thoughts or feelings that we're trying to *repress* may include, just to mention a few, anger, depression, competition, fear, envy, hate, and so on. For instance, let's suppose that you're very angry with your professor. Not me, of course. I'm referring to another professor. Q14 So, you're very angry because he's treated you unfairly in some way that . . . that could cause you to lose your scholarship. Q17 Maybe he failed you on an examination that didn't really cover the material that he'd gone over in class, and an F grade in the course is going to be unacceptable to your sponsors. So, this would be very painful, as I'm sure you'd agree. And I'd say it would qualify as a serious event.

Q12 So let's take a look at several different types of defense mechanisms that you might employ to repress the feelings of disappointment, rage perhaps, and . . . and even violence that you'd feel toward the professor. Most of them are named so the mechanism is fairly obvious and one of the most common mechanisms is *denial*, which is . . .

Student 2: If I want to deny something, I'll just say I'm not angry with the professor.

Professor:
Exactly. You may even extend the denial to include the sponsors, and you could tell your friends that they'd never revoke your scholarship. And this mechanism would allow you to deny the problem, even in the face of direct evidence to the contrary. Let's say, a letter from the sponsor indicating that you won't receive a scholarship for the next term. . . . Okay on that one? Okay. How about *rationalization*?

Student 2: Well, in rationalization, you come up with some reasons *why* the professor might have given an unfair test.

Professor: And how would you do that?

Student 2: Well, you might defend him. You could say that he gave the test to encourage students to learn information on their own. Is that what you mean?

Professor:
Sure. Because you'd be rationalizing . . . providing a reason that justifies an otherwise mentally intolerable situation. Okay, another example of rationalizing is to excuse the sponsor for refusing to hear your side of the situation. You might say that sponsors are too busy to investigate why students are having problems in their classes. And you might do that while you deny your true feelings that sponsors really should be more open to hearing you out.

Student 3: So when you deny something, I mean when you use denial, you're refusing to acknowledge a situation, but . . . when you use rationalization, you're excusing the behavior?

Professor:
Excellent summary. So, now let me give you another option. If you use a *reaction formation* as a defense mechanism, you'll proclaim the *opposite* of your feelings. In this case, what would you say about *the* professor?

Student 4: I'd say that I like the professor when, in fact, I hate him for depriving me of my opportunity.

Professor:
And you might insist that you have no hard feelings and even go so far as to tell your friends that he's an excellent teacher. You see, a reaction formation turns the expression of your feelings into the opposite reaction, that is, on the surface.

And that brings us to *projection*, which is a defense mechanism that tricks your mind into believing that someone else is guilty of the negative thought or feeling that *you* have.

Student 1: Can you give us an example of that one?

Professor:
Okay. Feelings of hate for the professor might be expressed by telling classmates about *another* student who hates the professor, or, uh, . . . or even suggesting that the professor has strong feelings of hate for *you* but you really like the professor yourself. So you would project, um, . . . attribute your feelings . . . to someone else. Get it?

Student 1: So if I hate someone, I'd believe that another person hates him or that he hates me.

Professor: But you wouldn't admit that *you* hate him yourself.

Student 1: Okay. That's projection.

Professor:
Now *displacement* serves as a defense mechanism when a less threatening person or object is substituted for the person or object that's really the cause of your anxiety. So, instead of confronting the professor about the unfair test, well, you might direct your anger toward the friend who studied for the test with you, and you could blame him for wasting your time on the material that was in the book and notes. Q15

Of course, there are several other defense mechanisms like *fantasy*, which includes daydreaming or watching television maybe to escape the problems at school. Or *regression,* which includes immature behaviors that are no longer appropriate, like maybe expressing temper in the same way that a preschooler might respond to having a toy snatched away. And your textbook contains a few more that we haven't touched on in class.

Just one more thing, it's good to understand that the notion of unconscious thoughts and the mechanisms that allow us to manage them, that this is a concept that goes in and out of fashion. Many psychologists rejected defense mechanisms altogether during the 70s and 80s, and then in the 90s, cognitive psychologists showed a renewed interest in research in this area. But I must warn you, that although they found similar responses, they tended to give them different names. Q16 For instance, *denial* might appear in a more recent study as *positive illusion*, or *scapegoating* might be referred to instead of *displacement*. But when you get right down to it, the same categories of behavior for defense mechanisms still exist in the research even if they're labeled differently. And, uh, in my view, if you compare Freud's traditional defense mechanisms with those that are being presented by more modern researchers, you'll find that Freud is easier to understand and gives us a broader perspective. And, if you understand Freud's categories, well, you'll certainly be able to get a handle on the newer terms. What is exciting about the modern studies is the focus on coping skills and what's being referred to as healthy defenses. So next time, we'll take a look at some of these processes.

Audio 12. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **C** Some of the more common types of defense mechanisms

Audio 13. How does the student explain the term *repression*?
Answer **A** He contrasts it with suppression.

Audio 14. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "For *instance*, *let's* suppose that you're very angry with your professor. Not me, of course. I'm referring to another professor. So, you're very angry because he's treated you unfairly in some way that . . . that could cause you to lose your scholarship."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Not me, of course. I'm referring to another professor."
Answer **B** The professor's tone is not serious. She is joking.

Audio 15. Which of the following is an example of *displacement* that was used in the discussion?
Answer **C** Blaming someone in your study group instead of blaming the professor

Audio 16. According to the professor, what happened in the 1990s?
Answer **B** New terms were introduced for the same mechanisms.

Audio 17. How does the professor organize the discussion?
Answer **B** She uses a scenario that students can relate to. She talks about the way that a student might respond to a professor by using defense mechanisms.

LISTENING 4 "PROFESSOR'S OFFICE"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to a conversation on campus between a student and a professor.

Student: Thanks for seeing me, Professor Williams.
Professor: Glad to, Alice. What do you have on your mind?
Q18 Student: Well, I got a little mixed up when I started to go over my notes from the last class, so I had a few questions.
Professor: Shoot.
Student: Okay. I understand the three basic sources of personnel for multinational companies. That's fairly self-explanatory.
Professor: Host country, home country, and third country.
Student: Right. But then you started talking about staffing patterns that . . . let me see . . . okay
Q19 . . . you said, "staffing patterns may vary depending on the length of time that the multinational company has been operating," and you gave some examples, but I got confused and now I can't read my notes.
Professor: Okay. Well, one pattern is to rely on home country managers to staff the key positions when the company opens, but gradually moving more host country nationals into upper management as the company grows.
Student: So, for example, if a French company opened a factory in Canada, then French management would gradually replace themselves with Canadian managers. Is that what you mean?
Professor: Right. I think I used that very example in class. So do you want to try to explain the second pattern to me?
Student: Sure. I think it's the one where home country nationals are put in charge of the company if it's located in a developed country, but in a developing country, then home country nationals manage the company sort of indefinitely.
Q20 Professor: Right again. And an example of that would be . . .
Student: . . . maybe using German management for a Swiss company in Germany, but, uh, they might send Swiss management to provide leadership for a Swiss company in . . . in . . .
Professor: How about Zimbabwe?
Student: This is one of the confusing parts. Zimbabwe has a very old and highly developed culture, so...
Professor: . . . but it's still defined as a developing country because of the economic base—which is being developed now.
Q21 Student: Oh, okay. I guess that makes sense. Then the example of the American company with British management . . . when the company is in India . . . that would be a third-country pattern?
Professor: Yes. In fact, this pattern is fairly prevalent among multinational companies in the United States. Many Scottish or English managers have been hired for top management positions at United States subsidiaries in the former British colonies—India, Jamaica, the West Indies, some parts of Africa . . .
Student: Okay. So I've got all the examples right now.

Professor: Anything else?
Student: Just one thing. There were some typical patterns for certain countries.
Professor: Like the last example.
Student: No. This came later in the lecture. Something about Japan and Europe?
Professor: Oh. Right. I probably said that both Japanese multinational companies and European companies tend to assign senior-level home country managers to overseas locations for their entire careers, whereas multinational companies in the United States view overseas assignments as temporary, so they may actually find themselves reporting to a senior-level manager from the host country who has more experience. Q22
Student: So, for example, a Japanese company in the United States would most probably have senior-level Japanese managers with mid-level managers maybe from the United States. But in Japan, the senior-level Japanese managers at an American company would probably have mid-level American managers reporting to them.
Professor: Well, generalities are always a little tricky, but for the most part, that would be a typical scenario. Because living as a permanent expatriate is a career move in Japan, but a temporary strategy in the United States.
Student: Okay. That's interesting.
Professor: And important for you to know as a business major with an interest in international business. You're still on that track, aren't you?
Student: I sure am. But, you know, I wasn't thinking in terms of living abroad for my entire career. That really is a huge commitment, and something to ask about going in. Anyway, like you say, most American companies view overseas assignments as temporary. That's more what I have in mind, for myself, I mean.

Audio 18. Why does the woman go to see her professor?
Answer **B** To clarify some of the information from a lecture

Audio 19. According to the professor, which factor causes staffing patterns to vary?
Answer **D** The number of years that a company has been in business

Audio 20. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I think it's the one where home country nationals are put in charge of the company if it's located in a developed country, but in a developing country, then home country nationals manage the company sort of indefinitely."
"Right again. And an example of that would be . . . "
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "And an example of that would be . . . "
Answer **B** Sometimes professors begin a statement and pause to allow the student to continue.

Audio 21. Which of the following would be an example of a third-country pattern?
Answer **A** A Scottish manager in an American company in Africa
C A British manager in an American company in India

Audio 22. *According to the* professor, how do senior-level Japanese managers view their assignments abroad?
Answer **A** They consider them to be permanent career opportunities.

LISTENING 5 "ART CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an art class. The professor is discussing drawing.

Professor:

Drawing is a very basic art form. It's appealing because it can be used to make a very quick record of the ideas that an artist may be envisioning, so, a drawing can serve as a visual aid for the artist to remember a certain moment of inspiration and maybe use it for a more detailed work later on. Okay, usually such sketches allow the artist to visualize the proportions and the shapes without much attention to details so these images can be used by painters, architects, sculptors—any artist really. And large renderings, sketches of parts of the whole . . . these can be helpful in the creative process when a *huge image* might be more difficult to conceive of in its entirety. Or, a sketch of just one face in a crowd can allow the artist to focus on creating just that part of the image. So, in many artists' studios, countless drawings are strewn about as the final painting or sculpture takes form. And this gives us insight into the creative process, as well as the opportunity to see changes from the images at the beginning in the images of the finished work. It's rare, in fact, for an artist to use permanent materials to begin a piece of art. And some painters, for example, even sketch onto the surface of the canvas before applying the pigments. Now, architects are especially prone to sketches because, of course, their buildings are so large that an image in smaller scale is necessary to the imagination and implementation of such projects. So these studies become the basis for future works. And again, this is very interesting as a record of the creative process. Okay so far?

Q24 Q25

Okay, drawing has several other functions besides as a temporary reference. For centuries, artists have used drawing as a traditional method of education. By copying the great works, especially of the Old Masters, aspiring artists could learn a lot about proportion, how to capture light and shadow and . . . and so forth. In fact, some artists who later achieve recognition, still continue to use this practice to hone their skills or simply to pay homage to another artist, as is often the case when a work of art originally created in another medium like a sculpture . . . when it's recreated in the form of a drawing. Many examples of drawings of Michelangelo's sculptures were re-created by well-known artists. One that comes to mind is the *Study of Michelangelo's Bound Slave* by Edgar Degas. The original by Michelangelo was a marble sculpture that was, oh, about seven feet in height, but the small drawing was made in a sketchpad. In any case, the study is also considered a masterpiece, on a small scale, of course.

Q23

Q23

So . . . what additional purposes might be served by the medium of drawing? Well, let's remember that photography is a relatively new art form, so prior to the use of photographs to record historical events, a quick drawing by an artist was about the only way to preserve a real-time visual account of an important moment. Although a more permanent visual impression might be rendered later, it would be based on memory and not on the artist's actual observation. Probably the most often cited example of a sketch that preserved an historical record would be the small drawing of Marie Antoinette as she was taken to the guillotine in a cart through the streets of Paris. Jacques-Louis David sketched this famous drawing on a piece of paper about the size of the palm of his hand. And the artist, the artist as reporter, is still important even in modern times, when photography isn't possible, for example, when judges won't permit cameras in the courtroom.

Q26

Q28

Okay, to review, we've talked about three functions for drawing—as a visual aid for the artist to complete a future work, as a method of education for aspiring artists or even practiced artists, and a way to report an event. But the sketchbook has . . . other possibilities. Sometimes a drawing is the final execution of the art. Picasso produced hundreds of drawings in, well, every conceivable medium, but especially in pencil and crayon. I find it very interesting that Picasso did so much of this kind of work . . . drawing, I mean, in his last years. Some critics have argued that he was just laughing at the art world, which was willing to pay outrageous sums for anything with his name on it, and clearly, a drawing can be executed in a short period of time. But others, other critics, they feel as I do that Picasso was drawing because it was so basic, and because it was so spontaneous, and so much fun. And also, think about how difficult it really is to produce a quick drawing with a few lines and no opportunity to . . . to recreate the original, either by painting it out or remodeling the clay or changing the building

Q27

materials or any of the other methods for revision of a finished artistic work that artists have at their disposal. So, what I'm saying is that drawing when it's elevated to a finished piece, it must be done with confidence and it must show a high degree of creativity and mastery of the art form. In a way, it harkens back to the beginnings of art itself, when some unknown artist must have stuck a finger in the earth to draw an image or . . . maybe he picked up a stone and made a drawing on the wall of a cave.

Okay, so, as a first assignment, I want you to make a couple of sketches yourself. I'm not going to grade them. This isn't a studio art class. I just want you to use a few basic strokes to capture an image. You can do the first one in pencil, crayon, ink, chalk, or even charcoal . . . whatever you like. Then, I want you to sketch the same image in a different medium. So, if you do a face in pencil, I want you to do the same face but in chalk or crayon. Bring them to class next week and we'll continue our discussion of drawing, but we'll talk more about the materials artists use to produce drawings, and we'll refer to your sketches as examples.

Audio 23. What is the lecture mainly about?
Answer **C** The distinct purposes of drawing

Audio 24. According to the professor, why do architects use sketches?
Answer **B** To design large buildings, architects must work in a smaller scale.

Audio 25. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "So these studies become the basis for future works. And again, this is very interesting as a record of the creative process. Okay so far?"
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this:
Replay "Okay so far?"
Answer **A** Professors sometimes pause for a comprehension check by asking if everything is okay. This gives students an opportunity to answer questions.

Audio 26. Why does the professor mention the drawing of Marie Antoinette?
Answer **C** The sketch was an historical account of an important event.

Audio 27. What is the professor's opinion of Picasso?
Answer **C** Picasso's drawings required the confidence and skill of a master artist.

Audio 28. According to the lecture, what are the major functions of drawing?
Answer **A** A technique to remember parts of a large work
B A method to preserve an historical record
D An educational approach to train artists

LISTENING 6 "ASTRONOMY CLASS"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an astronomy class. The professor is talking about the solar system.

Professor:
Okay, let's get started. Um, as you know, today I promised to take you on a walk through the solar system, so let's start here with the central object of our solar system—the Sun. As you can see, the Sun is about five inches in diameter and that's about the size of a large grapefruit, which is exactly what I've used to represent it here in our model. So, I'm going to take two steps and that will bring me to the planet closest to the Sun. That would be Mercury. Two more steps to Venus. And one step from Venus to Earth. Let's continue walking three steps from Earth to Mars. And that's as far as I can go here in the classroom, but we can visualize the rest of the journey. Don't bother writing this down. Just stay with

me on this. So, to go from Mars to Jupiter, we'd have to walk a little over half the length of a football field, so that would put us about at the library here on campus, and then to get from Jupiter to Saturn, we'd have to walk another 75 yards, so by then we'd be at Harmon Hall. From Saturn to Uranus, we'd have to walk again as far as we'd gone in our journey from the Sun to Saturn, and so we'd probably be at the Student Union. From Uranus to Neptune we'd have to walk the same distance again, which would take us all the way to the graduate dormitory towers. From Neptune to Pluto, another 125 yards. So, we'd end up about one third of a mile from this classroom at the entrance to the campus.

Okay. That's interesting, but now I want you to think about the orbits of the planets in those locations. Clearly, the first four planets could orbit fairly comfortably in this room, but to include the others, we'd have to occupy an area of more than six-tenths of a mile, which is all the way from College Avenue to Campus Drive. Remember that for this scale, the Sun is five inches, and most of the planets are smaller than the lead on a sharpened pencil. Okay, with that in mind, I want you to think about space. Sure, there are some moons around a few planets, and a scattering of asteroids and comets, but really, there isn't a lot out there in such a vast area. It's, well, it's pretty empty. And that's what I really want *to demon*strate with this exercise.

Now, it would really be even more impressive if you could actually make that walk, and actually you can, if you visit Washington, D.C., where a scale model is set up on the National Mall, starting at the National Air and Space Museum and ending up at the Arts and Industries Museum. I did that a couple
Q34 of years ago, and it was, well amazing. Even though I knew the distances intellectually, there is nothing like the experience. Has anybody else done that walk?

Student 1:
I have. And you're right. It's an eye-opener. It took me about twenty minutes to go from the Sun to Pluto because I stopped to read the information at each planet, but when I made the return trip, it was about ten minutes.

Q34 Professor: Did you take pictures?

Student 1: I didn't. But, you know, I don't think it would have captured it anyway.

Professor:
Q31 I think you're right. What impressed me about doing it was to see what was not there. I mean, how much space was between the bodies in the solar system. And a photograph wouldn't have shown that.

So back to our model. Here's another thought for you. The scale for our model is 1 to 10 billion. Now, let's suppose that we want to go to the nearest star system, the neighbor to our solar system. That would be the Alpha Centauri system, which is a little less than four and a half light years away. Okay. Let's walk it on our model. Here we are on the East Coast of the United States. So if we want to make it all the way to Alpha Centauri, we have to hike all the way to the West Coast, roughly a distance of 2,700 miles. And that's just the closest one. To make a model of the Milky Way Galaxy would require a completely different scale because . . . because the surface of the Earth wouldn't be large enough to accommodate a model at the scale of 1 to 10 billion.

Now, let's stop here for a minute because I just want to be sure that we're all together on the terms *solar system* and *galaxy*. Remember that our solar system is a single star, the Sun, with various bodies
Q32 orbiting around it—nine planets and their moons, and asteroids, comets, meteors. But the galaxy has a lot of star systems—probably 100 billion of them. Okay? This is important because you can be off by almost 100 billion if you get confused by these terms. Not a good idea.

Okay, then, even if we could figure out a different scale that would let us make a model of the Milky Way Galaxy, even then, it would be challenging to make 100 billion stars, which is what you'd have to do to complete the model. How many would that be exactly? Well, just try to count all the grains of sand on all the beaches on Earth. That would be about 100 billion. But of course, you couldn't even count them in your lifetime, could you? If you'd started counting in 1000 B.C.E. you'd be finishing just about now, with the counting, I mean. But of course, that assumes that you wouldn't sleep or take any breaks.

Q33 So, what am I hoping for from this lecture? What do you think I want you to remember?

Student 2: Well, for one thing, the enormous distances . . . Q29

Student 3: . . . and the vast emptiness in space.

Professor:
That's good. I hope that you'll also begin to appreciate the fact that the Earth isn't the center of the universe. Our planet, although it's very beautiful and unique, it's still just one planet, orbiting around just one star in just one galaxy.

Audio 29. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer C The vast expanse of the universe around us.

Audio 30. Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Don't bother writing this down. Just stay with me on this."
Answer B Sometimes a professor will tell students to stop taking notes, which usually means that the information is not a main point or, in this case, the professor wants the students to concentrate on listening.

Audio 31. Why wouldn't a photograph capture a true picture of the solar system walk?
Answer A It would not show the distances between the bodies in space.

Audio 32. How does the professor explain the term *solar system*?
Answer D He contrasts a solar system with a galaxy.

Audio 33. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "So, what am I hoping for from this lecture? What do you think I want you to remember?"
"Well, for one thing, the enormous distances . . . "
". . . and the vast emptiness in space."
"That's good. I hope that you'll also begin to appreciate the fact that the Earth isn't the center of the universe."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "So, what am I hoping for from this lecture? What do you think I want you to remember?"
Answer C When professors ask their students to think about what they might want them to remember, this usually signals the beginning of a summary of the important points.

Audio 34. What can be inferred about the professor?
Answer B The professor likes his students to participate in the discussion. He asks questions.

LISTENING 7 "BOOKSTORE"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation in the bookstore.

Student: Excuse me. I'm looking for someone who can help me with the textbook reservation program.
Manager: Oh, well, I can do that. What do you need?
Student: Okay. Um, my friend told me that I could get used books if I order, I mean, preorder them now.

Manager: That's right. Do you want to do that?
Q35 Student: I think so, but I'm not sure how it works.
Manager: Actually, it's fairly straightforward. We have a short form for you to fill out. Do you know what you're going to take next semester?
Student: Yeah, I do.
Manager: And you have the course names and the schedule numbers for all your classes?
Student: Unhuh.
Manager: Okay, then, just put that information down on the form and, uh, make a checkmark in the box if you want recommended books as well as required books. And you said you were interested in used books, right?
Student: Right.
Manager: So mark the box for used books, sign the form and bring it back to me.
Student: Do I have to pay now? Or, do you want a deposit?
Manager: No, you can pay when you pick up the books.
Student: And when can I do that?
Manager: The week before classes begin.
Student: That's good, but, um, what if I change my schedule? I mean, I don't plan to but . . .
Q36 Manager: . . . it happens. Don't worry. If you change classes, you can just bring the books back any time two weeks from the first day of class to get a full refund. Of course, you'll need the original cash register receipt and a photo ID and, if it's a new book, you can't have any marks in it. But you said you wanted used books, so it won't matter.
Student: Yeah, that's the main reason why I want to do this—because I'll have a better chance to get used books.
Manager: If there are used books available and you marked the form, that's what we'll pull for you.
Student: Okay, thanks a lot. I'll just fill this out and bring it back to you later today. I don't have all the numbers with me, the section numbers for the classes.
Manager: Fine. We need those numbers because when different professors are teaching the same class, they don't always order the same books.
Student: Right. So, will you be here this afternoon?
Q37 Manager: I probably will, but if I'm not, just give the form to the person in this office. Don't give it to one of the student employees, though. They're usually very good about getting the forms back to the office, but sometimes it gets really busy and . . . you know how it is.
Student: Sure. Well, I'll bring it back to the office myself.
Q38 Manager: That's probably a good idea. And, oh, uh, one more thing. I should tell you that the used books tend to go first, so, if you want to be sure that you get used books . . .
Q39 Student: You know what? I'm going to go right back to the dorm to get those numbers now, while you're still here.
Manager: Okay. That's good.

Audio 35. What does the man need from the bookstore?
Answer **B** A form to order books

Audio 36. What does the man need if he wants a full refund?
Answer **A** Identification
C A receipt for the purchase

Audio 37. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Don't give it to one of the student employees, though. They're usually very good about getting the forms back to the office, but sometimes it gets really busy and . . . you know how it is."

Audio What does the woman mean when she says this:
Replay ". . . sometimes it gets really busy and . . . you know how it is."
Answer A She is not sure that the student employee will give her the form. The phrase "you know how it is" implies that the man will be able to make a logical conclusion. If the student employees are very busy, they might forget to take the forms to the office.

Audio 38. What does the woman imply about the used books she sells?
Answer A They are purchased before new books.

Audio 39. What does the man need to do now?
Answer D Locate the section numbers for his classes. They are in his room at the dorm.

Listening 8 "Environmental Science Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an environmental science class.

Professor:
Hydrogen is the most recent and, I'd say, one of the most promising, in a long list of alternatives to petroleum. Some of the possibilities include batteries, methanol, natural gas, and, well, you name it. Q40 Q41
But hydrogen fuel cells have a couple of advantages over some of the other options. First of all, they're really quiet, and they don't pollute the atmosphere. Besides that, hydrogen is the most abundant element in the universe, and it can be produced from a number of sources, including ammonia, or . . . or even water. So, it's renewable, and there's an almost unlimited supply.

Okay. Now fuel cells represent a radical departure from the conventional internal combustion engine and even a fairly fundamental change from electric battery power. Like batteries, fuel cells run on electric motors; however, batteries use electricity from an external source and store it for use in the battery while the fuel cells create their own electricity through a chemical process that uses hydrogen and oxygen from the air. Are you with me? Look, by producing energy in a chemical reaction rather than through combustion, a fuel cell can convert, say 40–60 percent of the energy from the hydrogen into electricity. And when this ratio is compared with that of a combustion engine that runs at about half the efficiency of a fuel cell, well, it's obvious that fuel cell technology has the potential to revolutionize the energy industry.

So, fuel cells have the potential to generate power for almost any kind of machinery or equipment that fossil fuels run, but, the most important, let's say goal, the goal of fuel cell technology is the introduction of fuel cell powered vehicles. Internationally, the competition is fierce to commercialize fuel cell cars. I guess all of the leading automobile manufacturers worldwide have concept cars that use fuel cells, and some of them can reach speeds of as high as 90 miles per hour. Even more impressive is the per tank storage capacity. Can you believe this? Some of those cars can run for 220 miles between refills. But many of those cars were designed decades ago, so . . . what's the holdup?

Well, the problem in introducing fuel cell technology is really twofold. In the first place, industries will have to invest millions, maybe even billions of dollars to refine the technology—and here's the real cost—the infrastructure to support the fueling of the cars. And by infrastructure, I mean basic facilities and services like hydrogen stations to refuel cars and mechanics who know how to repair them. I think you get the picture. And then, consumers will have to accept and use the new products powered by fuel cells. So, we're going to need educational programs to inform the public about the safety and convenience of fuel cells, if we're going to achieve a successful transition to fuel cell products. But, unfortunately, major funding efforts get interrupted. Here's what I mean. When oil prices are high, then there seems to be more funding and greater interest in basic research and development, and more public awareness of fuel cells, and then the price of oil goes down a little and the funding dries up and people just go back to using their fossil fueled products. And this has been going on for more than thirty years. Q44

Q42 Some government sponsored initiatives have created incentives for fuel cell powered vehicles but probably one of the most successful programs, at least in my opinion, is the STEP program, which is an acronym for the Sustainable Transportation Energy Program. STEP is a demonstration project sponsored by the government of Western Australia. Now, in this project, gasoline-driven buses have been replaced with fuel cell buses on regular transportation routes. I think that British Petroleum is the supplier of the hydrogen fuel, which is produced at an oil refinery in Kwinana, south of Perth. So we need to watch this carefully. Another collaborative research effort is being undertaken by the European Union and the United States. Scientists and engineers are trying to develop a fuel cell that's effectively Q43 engineered and attractive to the commercial market. Now, under an agreement signed in about 2000, if memory serves, it was 2003, but anyway, the joint projects include the writing of codes and standards, the design of fueling infrastructures, the refinement of fuel cell models, and the demonstration of fuel cell vehicles. In Europe, the private sector will combine efforts with government agencies in the public sector to create a long-term plan for the introduction of fuel cells throughout the E.U. And the World Bank is providing funding to promote the development and manufacture of fuel cell buses for public transportation in China, Egypt, Mexico, and India, and we're starting to see some really interesting projects in these areas. So, uh, clearly, fuel cell technology is an international effort.

Okay, at the present time, Japan leads the way in addressing the issues of modifying the infrastructure. Several fueling stations that dispense hydrogen by the cubic meter are already in place, with plans for more. But even when a nationwide system is completed, decisions about how and where to produce the hydrogen and how to transport it will still have to be figured out. Most countries share the view that fleets of vehicles have significant advantages for the introduction of fuel cell powered transportation because, well obviously they can be fueled at a limited number of central locations. And, uh, and other benefits of a fleet are the opportunity to provide training for a maintenance crew and for the drivers. As for consumer education, no one country seems to have made the advances there that . . . that would serve as a model for the rest of us. But perhaps, when the demonstration projects have Q45 concluded and a few model cars are available to the public, well, more attention will be directed to public information programs.

Audio 40. What is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **A** An overview of fuel cell technology. The professor discusses the process for producing energy, the efficiency of the cells, the problems, and some model programs.

Audio 41. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Hydrogen is the most recent and, I'd say, one of the most promising, in a long list of alternatives to petroleum. Some of the possibilities include batteries, methanol, natural gas, and, well, you name it."
Audio What does the professor mean when he says this:
Replay "Some of the possibilities include batteries, methanol, natural gas, and, well, you name it."
Answer **D** He does not plan to talk about the alternatives. The comment "you name it" implies that there are a large number of alternatives and that he is not interested in them.

Audio 42. Why does the professor mention the STEP program in Australia?
Answer **D** He thinks it is a very good example of a project.

Audio 43. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Now, under an agreement signed in about 2000, if memory serves, it was 2003, but anyway, the joint projects include the writing of codes and standards, the design of fueling infrastructures, the refinement of fuel cell models, and the demonstration of fuel cell vehicles."

Audio Replay Why does the professor say this:
" . . . if memory serves, it was 2003 . . . "
Answer D To show that he is uncertain about the date

Audio 44. What are some of the problems associated with fuel cell technology?
Answer B Public acceptance
D Investment in infrastructures

Audio 45. What is the professor's attitude toward fuel cells?
Answer B He is hopeful about their development in the future. He would like more attention to be directed to public information programs, which would solve one of the major problems for fuel cell technology.

LISTENING 9 "PHILOSOPHY CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a philosophy class.

Professor:
Humanism is a philosophical position that places the dignity of the individual at the center of its movement. A primary principle of humanism—I don't need to spell that for you, do I? Okay, a primary principle of humanism is that human beings are rational and have an innate predisposition for good. Although humanism is associated with the beginning of the Reformation, the humanist philosophy was not new when it became popular in Italy during the Middle Ages. In fact, according to the ancient Greek philosopher, Protagoras, mankind was "the measure of all things." And this idea was echoed by Sophocles when he said, "Many are the wonders of the world, and none so wonderful as mankind." This is classical humanism. Man as the ideal at the center of all creation. Even the ancient Greek gods were viewed as resembling man both physically and psychologically. And, in a sense, isn't this personification of the deity just another way to exalt human beings? But that aside, it was precisely the rediscovery and translation of classical manuscripts that coincided with the invention of printing presses around the mid-15th century, which provided a catalyst for the humanistic movement throughout Europe. As the clergy and upper classes participated in the rediscovery and dissemination of classical literature, humanism became popular among theologians and scholars, and soon set the stage for the Renaissance. This one, I'll spell. Does anybody remember the meaning of the word *renaissance*?

Q46
Q47

Student 1: Rebirth, renewal.

Professor:
Right you are. *Renaissance* literally means "rebirth," and it refers to the return to ancient Greek and Roman art and literature, which, like all things in the humanistic tradition, they were measured by human standards. Art returned to the classical principles of harmony and balance. In the field of architecture, we see both religious and secular buildings styled after ancient Roman designs, with mathematical proportions and . . . a human scale, a scale that contrasted with the Medieval Gothic buildings of the previous era. Public works such as bridges and aqueducts from the Roman occupation were repaired, restored, or rebuilt. In the sculptures of the period, nude figures were modeled in life-sized images, with true proportions, and it was also at this point that realism became the standard for painting, with a preference for naturalistic settings and the placement of figures in . . . realistic proportion to those settings. It was also evident that the portraits tended to be more personal and authentic. And artists even produced self-portraits at this time. Remember, the figures in the paintings of the previous era tended to be of another world, but Renaissance painters placed recognizable human beings in this world. In music, uh, there was an effort to create harmonies that were pleasing to the human ear and melodies that were compatible with the human voice. In addition, music lessons became more wide-

spread as a source of education and enjoyment. Dancing increased in popularity with a concurrent trend toward music that had rhythm and invited movement as a pleasurable activity.

Student 2: Wasn't that why Latin became so important?

Professor:
Yes. Both Greek and Latin became important as tools for scholarship, and classical Latin became the basis for an international language of the intellectuals throughout Europe. To be true to humanism, and all it represented, it was necessary to be knowledgeable about and faithful to the ancient philosophies as expressed in their writing, and how best to express them than in the original languages? By the way, Latin as a universal language for clerics and the aristocracy, this encouraged the exchange of ideas on a wider scale than ever before, and legitimized in a sense the presumption that mankind was at the center of all things. It also made it possible for individual scholars to make a name for themselves and establish their place in the history of mankind.

Q49

Q48 Well, it was at this time that a close association, almost a partnership was forged between art and science. In their efforts to be precise, sculptors and painters studied the human form. In effect, they became anatomists. You may recall the drawing in your textbook, the one by Leonardo da Vinci which demonstrates the geometrical proportions of the human body. And, of course, Alberti, in his many books on architecture, sculpture, and painting . . . he emphasized the study of mathematics as the underlying principle of all the arts. Whereas artists had considered themselves craftsmen in the Middle Ages, the great Renaissance artists viewed themselves as intellectuals, philosophers, if you will, of humanism. They were designing a world for human beings to live in and enjoy. One that was in proportion and in harmony with mankind. So, perhaps you can see why the so-called Renaissance man emerged.

Student 1: Okay. But exactly what is the definition of a Renaissance man? I know it means a very talented person, but . . .

Professor:

Q50 Good question. Sometimes we use these terms without really defining them. So I would say that a Renaissance man would be talented, as you said, but would also have to demonstrate broad interests . . . in both the arts and the sciences. The quality that was most admired in the Renaissance was the extraordinary, maybe even . . . universality of talents in diverse fields of endeavor. After all, this quality proved that mankind was capable of reason and creation, that humanism was justified in placing man in the center of the world, as the measure of all things in it. With the humanistic philosophy as a justification, scholars would interpret the ancient classics and some of them would argue to a reasonable conclusion a very new and more secular society built on individual, human effort. It was not difficult for the Renaissance man to make the leap of logic from classical humanism to political humanism, which encouraged freedom of thought, and indeed even democracy, within both the church and the state. But that is a topic for another day.

Audio 46. What is the main focus of this discussion?
Answer **C** The other topics are mentioned in the discussion as they relate to the main focus: Humanism.

Audio 47. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "A primary principle of humanism—I don't need to spell that for you, do I? Okay, a primary principle of humanism is that human beings are rational and have an innate predisposition for good."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "I don't need to spell that for you, do I?"
Answer **B** Her tone indicates that she assumes that the students know how to spell the term. Later, she spells a more difficult term.

Audio 48. Why does the professor mention the drawing by Leonardo da Vinci?
Answer B She uses it as an example of the union of art and science.

Audio 49. According to the professor, what was the effect of using Latin as a universal language of scholarship?
Answer A It facilitated communication among intellectuals in many countries.

Audio 50. According to the professor, what can be inferred about a Renaissance man?
Answer B He would have an aptitude for both art and science.

Audio 51. All of the following characteristics are true of humanism EXCEPT
Answer B Scholars must serve society.

➤ Speaking



Model Test 1, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 2

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Marriage Partner"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Describe an ideal marriage partner. What qualities do you think are most important for a husband or wife? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choices.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "News"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Agree or disagree with the following statement:

Getting news on TV or on a computer is better than reading it in a print newspaper.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Meal Plan"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A new meal plan is being offered by the college. Read the plan in the college newspaper [printed on page 246]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to two students who are talking about the plan.

Man:	I don't like to cook, but I don't like to eat in the cafeteria every day either.
Woman:	True. The food does get kind of . . . same old same old.
Man:	My point exactly. And besides, I go home about every other weekend, so paying for my meals when I'm not there doesn't make a lot of sense.
Woman:	Right. So you'll probably sign up for the five-day plan next semester.
Man:	I already did. If I want to eat in the cafeteria some weekend, I can just buy a meal, but I'd probably go out somewhere with my friends if I'm here over the weekend.
Woman:	Well, I don't go home on the weekends as much as you do, but I still eat out a lot on the weekends.
Man:	So the five-day plan might work out better for you, too. I'm really glad to have the option.

Narrator 1: The man expresses his opinion of the new meal plan. Report his opinion, and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Aboriginal People"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and listen to a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about Aboriginal People [printed on page 247]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. The professor is talking about Aboriginal People.

Professor:
According to your textbook, the Aboriginal People are very diverse, and, I would agree with that; however, there are certain beliefs that unite the groups, and in fact, allow them to identify themselves and others as members of the diverse Aboriginal societies. For one thing, unlike the anthropologists who believe that tribes arrived in eastern Australia from Tasmania about 40,000 years ago, the Aboriginal People believe that they have always been in Australia, and that they have sprung from the land. Evidence for this resides in the oral history that has been recorded in stories and passed down for at least fifty generations. This history is referred to as the "Dreaming." The stories teach moral and spiritual values and provide each member of the group with an identity that reflects the landscape where the person's mother first becomes aware of the unborn baby, or to put it in terms of the "Dreaming," where the spirit enters the mother's body. So, I am saying that the way that the Aboriginal People identify themselves and each other, even across groups, is by their membership in the oral history that they share.

Narrator 1: Explain how the Aboriginal People are identified. Draw upon information in both the reading and the lecture.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Scheduling Conflict"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and his friend.

Friend: So what time should we pick you up on Friday? Can you be ready by noon or do you need another hour or so?

Student: I really wanted to spend the weekend with my family, and the ride with you would have made it even more fun, but . . .

Friend: You mean you aren't going?

Student: I can't. I'm not doing too well in my economics class, and I have a lecture Friday afternoon. I don't think I should miss it.

Friend: Well, why don't you borrow the notes from someone? Isn't your roommate in that class?

Student: Yeah, he is. But I've already asked to borrow his notes once this semester. He didn't seem to mind though.

Friend: Well, there you are. Unless you want to go to class on Thursday. I'm fairly sure that Dr. Collins teaches the same class Thursday night.

Student: Really? She probably wouldn't mind if I sat in on the Thursday class, but I wonder if she'll give the same lecture. You know, maybe they're one week behind or one week ahead of us.

Friend: I suppose that's possible, but it would be easy enough to find out. You could just tell her that you'd like to attend the Thursday session this week because you need to go out of town. Then you can ride home with us. If there's a problem, you can still borrow your roommate's notes on Sunday when we get back.

Narrator 1: Describe the man's problem and the two suggestions that his friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the man should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Laboratory Microscope"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a talk. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a talk in a biology laboratory. The teaching assistant is explaining how to use the microscope.

Teaching Assistant:
All right, now that you all have microscopes at your tables, I want to explain how they work and how to use them. First of all, you should know that they are compound microscopes so they can magnify objects up to 1,000 times their size. These microscopes have two systems—an illuminating system and an imaging system. You'll see that the illuminating system has a light source built in, and you can control it by adjusting the lever on the side. Why is this important? Well, the specimen must be pretty thin, or let's say, transparent enough to let light pass through it. So the light source controls the amount of light that passes through the specimen. Okay. The other system provides magnification. Use this lever to switch powers. So, when you switch to a higher power, you see a larger image, and when you switch to a lower power, you see a smaller image. But, I should remind you that the field of view is smaller at a higher power. In other words, at a higher magnification, you see a larger image of a smaller area. Okay. So what about the focus? Well, these microscopes are parfocal, and that means you usually don't have to refocus when you switch to a higher or lower power of magnification. But there are two adjustment knobs—the larger one for coarse adjustment and the smaller one for fine adjustment, just in case.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the talk, describe the two major systems of the laboratory microscope, and then explain how to use it.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 1, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 3

Integrated Essay "Online Graduate Programs"

First, read the passage [printed on page 251] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
Today we're going to question some of the claims made in the reading about online graduate degree programs. First of all, the one-on-one time with professors that a student has, as in a traditional course, is really up to the student. Those who want to talk with their professors, do so. The main difference is the way that professors communicate in online courses. Whereas student interaction with faculty in traditional on-campus programs is often face to face, faculty interaction online is more likely to be by email and chat, or occasionally by telephone conference.

Second, the claim that the difficulty level and the quality of the courses are inferior in online degree programs just doesn't hold up under scrutiny. In order to be accredited, the online program must meet the same standards as those of the on-campus program at the same institution. And this is also interesting—of the 20 programs in my study, students reported that they *thought* the online courses would be easier, but, in fact, they were more difficult because they required more self-discipline and personal time management than the courses that were offered on campus on a regular schedule. In many cases, online students complained that they had to learn how to manage the technology in an online course in addition to learning the content of the course.

Last then. Although I'll concede that some online degree programs aren't accredited and not worth the time, it's simply not true that top schools don't offer online degree programs. Just as an example, every Ivy League school except Princeton provides online degrees and even Princeton offers a large number of courses online. A few of the Ivy League programs require a one-term residency requirement on campus, but many allow students to complete the entire degree online. And most of the other top schools also provide online degree options.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 1, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 4

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "Marriage Partner"

In my view, three characteristics are essential for a marriage partner. Compatibility is very important because spending the rest of your life with someone is a huge commitment, and without compatibility in values and interests, and goals, it could be a struggle rather than a partnership. Um, I also think that a good marriage partner should fit into your family. Without acceptance and affection for you as a couple, you could risk the relationships you have with family members. And attraction is another factor. Since fidelity is part of the marriage contract, the expression of love will be limited to your partner, so it should be a person you're attracted to.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "News"

Although newspapers contain some information that's limited to local interests and I like to turn to those pages, for the most part, I agree that getting news on TV and on my computer is better than reading it in a print newspaper. The problem with printed news is it takes so long to produce it that the stories could have changed or more important news could have happened minutes after the newspaper is delivered. So, I scan the local stories in the paper when I get home from work, then I watch the international

news on TV at night for the most current information, and the following morning, I click on one of the websites that offer the most recent updates of the lead stories. That way, I'm taking advantage of the best aspects of all the news media, and I stay current locally and internationally.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Meal Plan"

The man is glad that an alternative to the seven-day meal plan is now available for students who live in the dorms. He'll purchase the five-day meal plan, which provides three meals on weekdays and the option to buy meals on the weekends for $3 each. The new five-day meal plan is better for him because he likes to go home every other weekend, and when he's on campus, he likes to go out with his friends. So he wasn't taking advantage of the cafeteria on the weekends even though he was paying for it. The Student Union has fast-food as well as booths in the food court for Chinese or Mexican food or even a salad bar. Besides, if he wants to eat in the cafeteria on a weekend, he can buy a meal. He should save about $48 a month by using the new plan, and he can use that money to eat out.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Aboriginal People"

The Aboriginal People are culturally and linguistically diverse, in part because the geography dictated both limitations and opportunities for their communities. So the establishment of identity as a member of the Aboriginal People because of appearance, language, culture, or geographical location isn't considered accurate. The Department of Education suggests that the best means of identification is to be recognized and accepted by other members of the Aboriginal society. Um, according to the lecturer, even diverse groups have certain unifying beliefs that are passed down as oral tradition, called the "Dreaming." The stories associated with this tradition are used to teach ethical principles and spiritual

lessons. It would probably be through knowledge of this shared oral history that Aborigines would identify each other.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Scheduling Conflict"

The man would like to visit his family over the weekend, but his friends are leaving before his economics class on Friday. He doesn't want to miss the class because he needs to bring his grade up. His friend suggests that he borrow the notes from the class. His roommate didn't have a problem lending him notes from that class earlier in the semester, but he's reluctant to do that. The other possibility that his friend mentions is for him to attend another section of the same class on Thursday night, but he isn't sure that the professor will give him the same lecture. To find out, he would have to ask the professor. In my opinion, the man should stay for his economics class and take notes. It's hard to read someone else's notes, and besides, if he's in the class, he can ask questions. If he wants to visit his family, he should try to find a ride on Saturday or on Friday after the class.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Laboratory Microscope"

The two major systems of the laboratory microscope are the illuminating system and the imaging system. The illuminating system has a light source that can be controlled to let more or less light pass through the specimen you're viewing when you move a lever on the side of the microscope. The imaging system is actually a magnification feature, which can be calibrated by using the other lever to change powers. When you look through a higher power, the image appears to be larger, and conversely, when you look through a lower power, it appears to be smaller. What that really means is when

you use a higher magnification, the image actually shows you a smaller part of the specimen because it's enlarged. Now when you switch powers, the lenses will focus automatically, but the big knob will allow you to make a rough adjustment, and the small knob will let you make a more detailed adjustment, if you want.

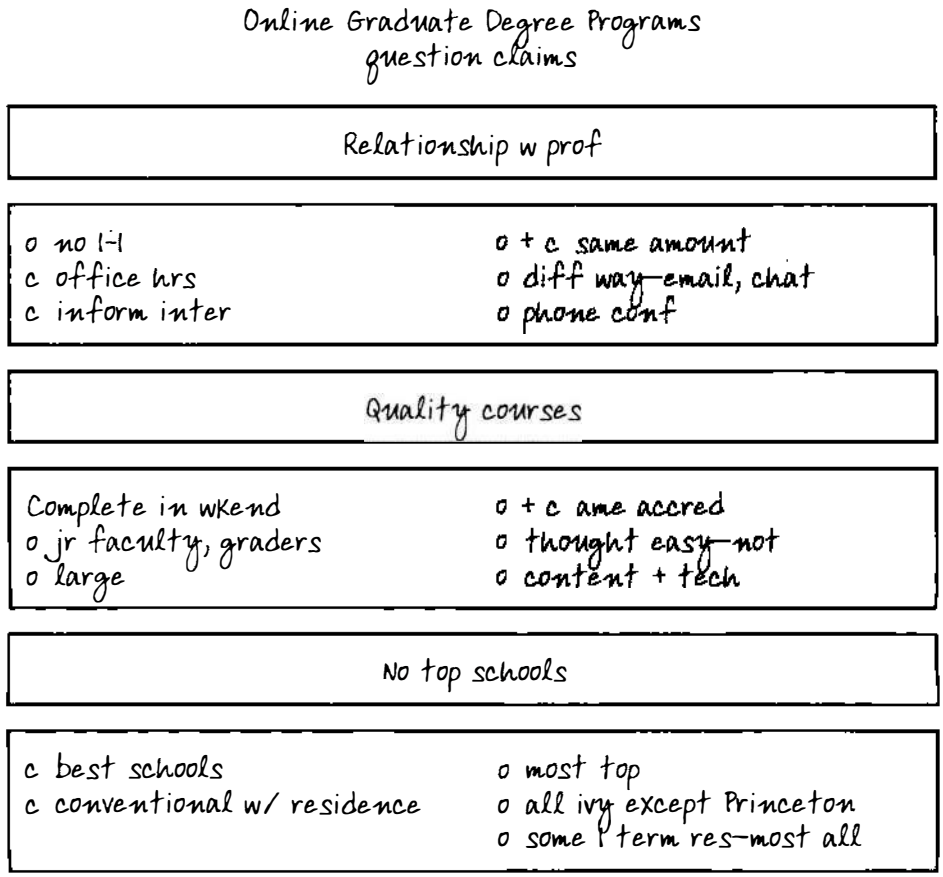
Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Online Gradudate Programs"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Online Graduate Programs"

The lecture questions the claims in the reading that the relationship with professors, the quality of courses, and the access to top schools are inferior in online graduate degree programs.

According to the lecturer, the relationship with online and on-campus professors is the same in terms of the amount of interaction. The way that the interaction occurs is different because online professors use email, chat, and telephone conference calls to communicate with their students.

The reading passage asserts that the professors who teach online are not as qualified and the courses themselves do not compare with the more challenging on-campus courses; however, the lecturer makes a strong case against this claim. The lecturer explains that both online and on-campus graduate courses must demonstrate the same standards for accreditation. Furthermore, students who take online courses in the mistaken belief that they will be easier often report that they were more difficult because of the added technology that had to be learned in order to navigate the course and complete the requirements.

The lecturer also refutes the idea that the best schools do not offer online graduate degree programs. Using the example of Ivy League schools, known for their prestige, the lecturer indicates that all Ivy League schools with the exception of Princeton offer online graduate degrees. Although some top schools may require one term residence, they offer the degree program online.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

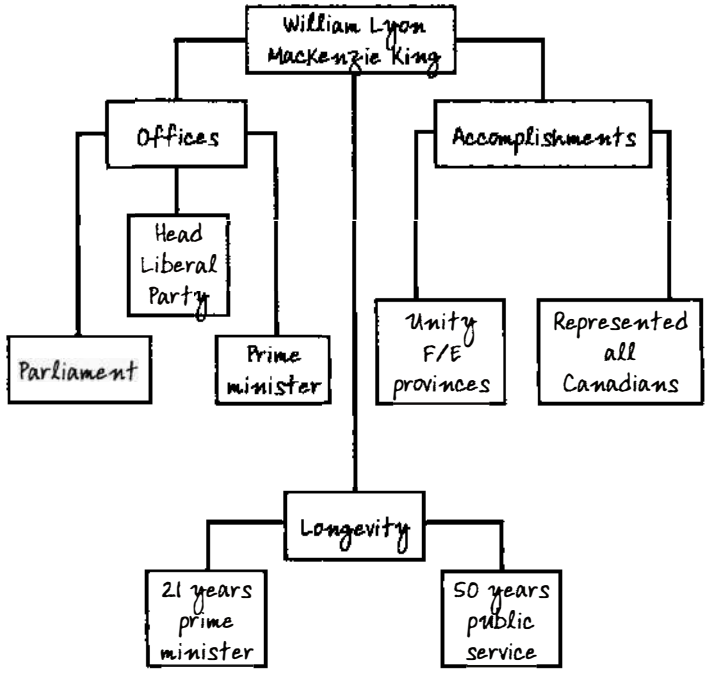
Example Response for Independent Essay "An Important Leader"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

Outline

William Lyon Mackenzie King
- Offices
  - Parliament
  - Head Liberal Party
  - Prime minister
- Longevity
  - 21 years P.M.
  - 50 years public service
- Accomplishments
  - Unity French + English provinces
  - Represented all Canadians

Map



Example Essay

William Lyon Mackenzie King was a member of the Canadian parliament and head of the Liberal Party in the first half of the twentieth century. He held the office of prime minister for a total of twenty-one years, which is a longer period of time than that of any public servant in the history of Canada. Because his terms of office as prime minister were not consecutive, he held other positions of public service in many appointed and elected offices as well over a period of fifty years. Although it could be argued that he was an important world leader on the basis of longevity alone, I admire him because of his qualities of leadership. He was active in government during two world wars and the Great Depression and played a key role in guiding Canada during those very difficult years. He understood the importance of a unified nation and worked to bring various partisan groups together for the higher good of the country. Under his tenure in office, Canada became a participant in world affairs.

His three terms of office as prime minister were marked by compromise and often criticism, but he earned the respect of most Canadians for his political astuteness and his determination to unify Canada. In part because of his friendship with Wilfrid Laurier, he was able to preserve the unity between the French-speaking and English-speaking provinces, a negotiation that must be considered his greatest achievement. One biographer, John Moir of the University of Toronto, has identified a quality in King called "essential Canadianness." I understand this to mean that he was able to understand and represent all of the people of Canada.

King's methods were frustrating to some, but he was able to extend Canadian autonomy and maintain unity while acting within a difficult federal system. He did so for a very long time, even representing Canada in the international arena in his elder years. In my view, William Lyon Mackenzie King is worthy of being named in the company of John F. Kennedy and Martin Luther King as a world leader who made an important contribution to humanity.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 2: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIALISM IN CANADA"

1. **B** "The building of the Temiskaming and Northern Ontario Railway led to the discovery of rich silver deposits." Choices A, C, and D are true, but they do not relate to the main point in paragraph 1, the resources in the western frontier.
2. **C** ". . . Sudbury became the world's largest nickel producer." Choice A is not correct because it is not mentioned directly in the paragraph. Choice B is not correct because Sudbury was a supplier, not a market for metals. Choice D is not correct because Sudbury is in Ontario, not in the Klondike.
3. **D** In this passage, *lasting* is a synonym for "enduring."
4. **B** ". . . the federal government created the Yukon Territory . . . in an effort to ward off the prospect of annexation to Alaska." Choice A is not correct because fortune-seekers were flocking there already. Choice C is not correct because the tales of lawlessness were told in popular fiction, but no effort to establish law and order was mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the legality of the mining claims was not mentioned.
5. **D** In this passage, *formerly* is a synonym for "previously." Context comes from the reference to "unsettled" for an area that was increasing in population.
6. **A** ". . . the tales [of the Klondike strike] . . . were immortalized through . . . the poetic verses of Robert W. Service." Choices B and C may have been true, but they were not mentioned in connection with the poetry of Robert Service. Choice D is not correct because the creation of the Yukon Territory, not the poetry, prevented the Klondike's annexation to Alaska.
7. **B** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 2. Choice C is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 5. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 4.
8. **D** In this passage, *Moreover* is a synonym for "Furthermore." Context comes from the addition of another way that the forest and water resources were exploited.
9. **C** In this passage, *supply* is a synonym for "distribute."
10. **C** *Federal taxes* paraphrases "the high tariff policies" and *cheaper imported goods* paraphrases "lower-priced foreign manufactured goods." . . . *protecting domestic industries* paraphrases "protecting existing industries" and *supporting new businesses* paraphrases "encouraging the creation of new enterprises."
11. **A** ". . . the governments of Ontario and Quebec . . . [offered] bonuses, subsidies, and guarantees to locate new plants within their borders." Choice B is true, but it is not the reason why British and American businesses opened affiliates. Choice C is not correct because the consumers in western Canada were eager to buy goods from eastern and central Canada, not from abroad. Choice D is not correct because British investors contributed to the construction of urban infrastructure.
12. **C** Vocabulary reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The connection is "Railway construction" and "discoveries of gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc" to "The building of the . . . Railway" and "rich silver deposits."
13. **C, E, F** summarize the passage. Choices A and B are minor points that support major point C. Choice D is a minor point that supports major point E.

READING 2 "LOOKING AT THEATRE HISTORY"

14. **C** ". . . the buildings in later periods became sources of stone for other projects and what remains is usually broken and scattered." Choice A is not correct because other theatres have been identified and many of them have been excavated. Choice B is not correct because the archeologists were not the ones who broke the stones. Choice D is not correct because concrete was not mentioned as construction material during early periods. The word "concrete" in the passage means "true" or "verifiable" in reference to "evidence."
15. **B** ". . . many pieces are irrevocably lost." Choice A is not correct because drawings are conjectural. Choice C is not correct because the number of skenes that archeologists have excavated is not specified. Choice D is not correct because excavations did not begin until the late *1800*s, not the early 1800s.
16. **B** In this passage, *important* is a synonym for "primary." Context comes from the phrase, "most concrete evidence."
17. **D** In this passage, *exact* is a synonym for "precise." Context comes from the contrast with the word "conjectural" in the same sentence.
18. **A** ". . . the myths on which dramatists drew were known to everyone, including vase painters, who might well depict the same subjects as dramatists." Choice B is not correct because reproductions were not mentioned. Choice C is not correct because the qualifications of scholars were not discussed. Choice D is not correct because thousands of vases have survived.
19. **B** In this passage, *debated* is a synonym for "controversial." Context comes from the phrases "easy to misinterpret" and "questionable assumption" in later sentences.
20. **D** Because the author refers to the archeological evidence in vase paintings as "controversial," it must be concluded that there is disagreement among scholars. Choice A is not correct because the oldest surviving manuscripts date from 1500 years after they were first performed. Choice B is not correct because they are easy to misinterpret. Choice C is not correct because the author does not mention the condition of the vases.
21. **B** ". . . each time a text was copied, there were new possibilities for errors." Choice A is not correct because the problem of sources was identified for archeological findings, not written evidence. Choices C and D are not mentioned as problems for written evidence.
22. **D** ". . . these characters [women] often seem victims of their own powerlessness." Choice A is not correct because many plays featured strong female characters. Choice B is not correct because some critics have seen these plays [with women as victims] as rationalizations by the male-dominated culture and other critics have seen them as an attempt to examine this aspect of the culture. Choice C is not correct because plays featured numerous choruses of women.
23. **B** In this passage, *Generally* is a synonym for "Overall."
24. **A** ". . . historical treatment of Greek theatre is something like assembling a jigsaw puzzle of which many pieces are missing." The reference to "missing pieces" is an analogy to the partial evidence for Greek theatre. Choice B is not correct because no comparison is made between written references and the paintings in paragraph 4. Choice C is not correct because the author does not use words and phrases that suggest justification. Choice D is not correct because the last sentence is a summary of the reading passage, not an opening sentence for a new topic.
25. **C** Vocabulary reference and contrast are two transitional devices that connect the previous and following sentences to the insert sentence. The connection is "theatres . . . have been excavated" in the previous sentence and "These excavations" in the insert sentence as well as the contrast with "Nevertheless, they" [the theatres or excavations of theatres] in the following sentence.
26. **B, D, C** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that supports major point D. Choice E is a minor point that supports major point C. Choice F is reasonable, but it is not mentioned in the passage.

READING 3 "GEOTHERMAL ENERGY"

27. **A** The author mentions geothermal power in 1904 in Italy, and then lists a number of countries worldwide that are using geothermal energy. Choice B is not correct because only successful production is mentioned. Choices C and D are discussed later in the passage.
28. **D** ". . . at the global level, geothermal energy supplies less than 0.15% of the total energy supply." Choice A is not correct because geothermal energy was used as early as 1904. Choice B is not correct because Russia, Iceland, Mexico, and the United States are in the Northern Hemisphere. Choice C is not correct because several advantages of using geothermal power are noted, but the comparative cost was not mentioned.
29. **C** In this passage *nearly* is a synonym for "approaching." Context comes from the number after the word.
30. **B** In this passage, *optional* is a synonym for "alternative." Context comes from the contrast of "geothermal energy" and "other" energy sources.
31. **D** ". . . considered a nonrenewable energy source when rates of extraction are greater than rates of natural replenishment." Choices A, B, and C are true, but they do not explain the term "nonrenewable."
32. **A** *High heat is the source of most of the geothermal energy* paraphrases ". . . most geothermal energy production involves the tapping of high heat sources," and *low heat groundwater is also used sometimes* paraphrases "people are also using the low-temperature geothermal energy of groundwater in some applications."
33. **B** ". . . areas of high heat flow are associated with plate tectonic boundaries." Choice A is not correct because geothermal heat flow is very low compared with solar heat. Choice C is not correct because, in some areas, heat flow is sufficiently high. Choice D is not correct because geothermal energy is very practical along plate boundaries.
34. **A** In this passage, *large* is a synonym for "considerable" in reference to "thermal pollution." Context comes from the contrast with the phrase "atmospheric pollutants" in the previous sentence.
35. **B** ". . . geothermal energy does not produce the atmospheric pollutants associated with burning fossil fuels." Choice A is not correct because the pollution caused by geothermal energy was introduced before the discussion on atmospheric pollution. Choice C is not correct because environmental problems caused by geothermal energy are mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the author points out the problem of pollution, but does not suggest that the use of raw materials and chemicals be discontinued.
36. **A** Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentence 4. Choices C and D are mentioned in paragraph 6, sentences 5 and 6.
37. **C** ". . . known geothermal resources . . . could produce . . . 10% of the electricity . . . for the western states. . . . Geohydrothermal resources not yet discovered could . . . provide . . . [the] equivalent [of] the electricity produced from water power today." Choice A is not correct because the author points out the disadvantages but argues in favor of using geothermal energy. Choice B is not correct because the author does not mention exploration as a prerequisite to further production. Choice D is not correct because the author cites the potential for geothermal energy to equal the production of water power, not to replace water power.
38. **C** Vocabulary reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. "One such region" is a phrase in the insert sentence that refers to "Oceanic ridge systems" in the previous sentence.
39. **B, D, E** summarize the passage. Choice A is true, but it is a minor point that provides an example for major point B. Choice C is true, but it refers to one example of cultural values developed in major point E. Choice F is true, but it is a detail that provides support for the environmental problems mentioned in major point E.

READING 4 "MIGRATION FROM ASIA"

40. **D** In this passage, *particular* is a synonym for "distinctive."
41. **C** ". . . Stone Age hunter-gatherers were attracted by these animal populations [large animals]." Choice A is not mentioned. Choice B is not correct because the tools were made from the animals, not traded with other tribes. Choice D is not correct because the dogs accompanied them.
42. **B** In this passage, the phrase *Joined by* is a synonym for "Accompanied by." Context comes from the word part, "company."
43. **B** In this passage, *judged* is a synonym for "estimated." Context comes from the phrase "about 27,000 years old" in the same sentence.
44. **D** ". . . the migrations must have begun before the evolution of type B." Choice A is not correct because the time frame was the same as the settlement of Scandinavia, but the origin of the migration was not Scandinavian. Choice B is not correct because almost no Native Americans have type B. Choice C is not correct because the blood typing was done with Native Americans and Asians, not Scandinavians.
45. **D** ". . . glacial melting created an ice-free corridor along the eastern front range of the Rocky Mountains. Soon hunters . . . had reached the Great Plains." Choices A and C are not correct because the corridor was ice-free. Choice B is not correct because the hunters were looking for big game, but the game did not leave a migration path.
46. **B** "The most spectacular find, at Monte Verde in southern Chile, produced striking evidence of tool making, house building . . . before the highway had been cleared of ice." Choice A is not correct because archeologists believe that migration in boats may have occurred, but no boats were found. Choice C is not correct because the footprints found there were human, not those of large animals. Choice D is not correct because no conclusions were made about the intelligence of the early humans.
47. **A** In this passage, *In the end* is a synonym for "Eventually." Context comes from the phrase "The final migration" in the following sentence.
48. **A** *Beringia was under water* paraphrases "Beringia had been submerged" and *the last people* paraphrases "The final migration."
49. **D** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentence 3. Choices B and C are mentioned in paragraph 6, sentence 5. Choice D is not true because the Yuptiks settled the coast of Alaska, not the Great Plains.
50. **D** ". . . the most compelling support [for migration] . . . comes from genetic research." Choice A is not correct because oral traditions include a long journey from a distant place to a new homeland. Choice B is not correct because the author presents the evidence without commenting on the authenticity. Choice C is not correct because the author states that the Asian migration hypothesis is supported by most of the scientific evidence.
51. **C** Chronological order and place reference are transitional devices that connect the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The date, 13,000 B.C.E. in the previous paragraph is a date that precedes 11,000 to 12,000 years old in the insert sentence. In addition, Washington State, California, and Peru in the insert sentence refer to the Pacific coast of North and South America in the previous sentence.
52. **E, D, C** summarize the passage. Choice A is a concluding point that is not developed with examples and details. Choice B is a minor point that supports major point E. Choice F is a minor point that supports major point D.

➤ Listening



Model Test 2, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 5

LISTENING 1 "PROFESSOR'S OFFICE"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between a student and a professor.

Student: Professor James. Do you have a minute?

Professor: Sure. Come on in. What can I do for you?

Student: Well, I did pretty well on the midterm . . .

Professor: You sure did. One of the best grades, as I recall.

Student: But I missed a question, and I'd appreciate it if you could help me understand what I did wrong. I have the test right here, and I just can't figure it out. Q1

Professor: Okay. Fire away.

Student: It's question 7 . . . the one on biotic provinces and biomes.

Professor: Oh, that one. Um, quite a few people missed it. I was thinking that we should go over it again in class. But anyway, let's look at your answer.

Student: Thanks. Here's the thing. I said that a biotic province was a region with similar life, but with boundaries that prevent plants and animals from spreading to other regions. So an animal, for example, a mammal . . . it may have a genetic ancestor in common with another mammal. But a biome is a similar environment, an ecosystem really, like a desert or a tropical rainforest. So, in the case of a biome, well, the similar climate causes the plants and animals to evolve . . . to adapt to the climate, and that's why they look alike. Q2

Professor: That's good, very good . . . as far as you went. But there's a second part to the question. Look, right here. "Include an explanation of convergent and divergent evolution." So . . . I was looking for a more complete answer. Next time, be sure to include both parts of a question . . . when there are two parts like this one. . . . Do you know how to explain convergent and divergent evolution? Q3

Student: I think so. Isn't it . . . like when a group of plants or animals . . . when they're separated by mountains or a large body of water . . . then subpopulations evolve from a common ancestor and they have similar characteristics but their development diverges because of the separation, so that's why we call it divergent evolution. Q4

Professor: Right. Even when the habitat is similar, if they're separated, then they diverge. How about convergent evolution then?

Student: Well, that would be a situation where a similar environment . . . a habitat . . . it may cause plants and animals to evolve in order to adapt to the conditions. So a species that isn't really related can evolve with similar characteristics because . . . it can look like a species in another geographic region because of adaptation . . . and that would be convergent evolution?

Professor: Right again. So temperature and rainfall, proximity to water, latitude and longitude all combine to determine the climate, and if we know the climate of an area, then we can actually predict what kind of life will inhabit it.

Student: Okay. And I really did know that. I just didn't put it down. To tell the truth, I didn't see the second part. Not until you pointed it out to me.

Professor: That's what I thought. Well, Jerry, it's a good idea to double-check all the questions on a test . . . not just my test . . . any test . . . to make sure you've answered each part of the question completely. Otherwise, you won't get full credit.

Student: I see that. Well, live and learn.
Professor: Jerry, you're one of my best students.
Student: Thanks. I really like biology. In fact, I'm thinking of majoring in it.
Professor: Good. That means you'll be in some of my upper-level classes.
Student: And I'll be watching out for those two-part questions on your exams.
Professor: And all the rest of your exams. I'll be honest with you. My questions usually have two parts so the students will have an insight into the grading system . . . and a lot of professors do that. In an essay question, it's difficult to know what to include and how much to write. Just read the question carefully, and be sure to include all the parts. There may be three or four in some essay questions. This is the way that the professor helps you organize your answer. I'm giving my students a hint about what I'm looking for by including several parts to the question. But if you miss one of the parts, then it lowers your score.
Student: That makes sense. I think I was just trying to finish within the time limit, and I didn't read as carefully as I should have. On the final, I'll spend more time reading the questions before I start to answer them.
Q5
Professor: Good plan.

Audio 1. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer B To clarify a question from the midterm

Audio 2. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Thanks. Here's the thing. I said that a biotic province was a region with similar life, but with boundaries that prevent plants and animals from spreading to other regions."
Audio Why does the man say this:
Replay "Thanks. Here's the thing."
Answer D He is signaling that he will explain his problem.

Audio 3. What did the man do wrong?
Answer C He did not answer one question completely. He did not see the second part.

Audio 4. According to the student, what is *divergent evolution*?
Answer **C** A similar group that is separated may develop different characteristics.

Audio 5. What will Jerry probably do on the next test?
Answer A To avoid the same problem that he had on the midterm, he will look for questions with several parts.

Listening 2 "Art History Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an art history class.

Professor:
Q6
We know that the Chinese had been aware of basic photographic principles as early as the fifth century B.C.E., and Leonardo da Vinci had experimented with a dark room in the 1500s, but it was a number of discoveries in chemistry during the eighteenth century that, uh, uh, accelerated the development of modern photography. The discovery that silver salts were light sensitive led to . . . experimentation with images of light on a surface that had been coated with silver. Often glass was used in the early images. But the problem was that these images were ephemeral—fading after only a short time. Some of the chemists who worked with them called them fairy pictures, and considered them . . . that they were only momentary creations . . . that they would disappear.

Okay. How to fix the image permanently was one of the most important challenges . . . of the early photographer chemists. In France, in about 1820, Nicephore Niepce discovered a method for fixing the image after a long exposure time, oh, probably eight hours. So, although his work was considered interesting, it was . . . largely dismissed as impractical. Nevertheless, one of his associates, Louis Daguerre, managed to find a way to reduce . . . the exposure time to less than twenty minutes. So the story goes, in 1835, Daguerre was experimenting with some exposed plates, and he put a couple of them into his chemical cupboard, so a few days later, he opened the cupboard, and to his surprise, the latent images on the plates had developed. At first, he couldn't figure out why, but eventually, he concluded that this must have occurred as a result of mercury vapor . . . from a broken thermometer that was also in the . . . enclosed in the cupboard. Supposedly, from this fortunate accident, he was able to invent a process for developing latent images on . . . on exposed plates. Q8

The process itself was somewhat complicated. First, he exposed copper plates to iodine which released fumes of light-sensitive silver iodide. These copper plates were used to capture the image, and by the way, they had to be used almost immediately after their exposure to the iodine. So, the image on the plate was then exposed to light for ten to twenty minutes. The plate was developed over mercury heated to about 75 degrees centigrade, which caused the mercury to amalgamate with the silver. Now here's the ingenious part—he then fixed the image in a warm solution of common salt, but later he began using sodium sulphite. Anyway, after he rinsed the plate in hot distilled water, a white image was left permanently on the plate. And the quality was really quite amazing. Q9

But, um . . . the process had its limitations. First, the images couldn't be reproduced, so each one was a unique piece, and that greatly increased the cost of photography. Second, the image was reversed, so the subjects would actually see themselves as though they were looking in a mirror, although in the case of portraits, the fact that people were accustomed to seeing themselves in a mirror made this less . . . this problem less urgent than some of the others. Nevertheless, some photographers did point their cameras at a mirrored reflection of the image that they wanted to capture so that the reflection would be reversed, and a true image could be produced. Okay. Third, the chemicals and the fumes that they released were highly toxic, so photography was a very dangerous occupation. Fourth, the surface of the image was extremely fragile and . . . had to be protected, often under glass, so they didn't disintegrate from handling. The beautiful cases that were made to hold the early images became popular not only for aesthetic purposes but, uh, but also for very practical reasons. And finally, although the exposure time had been radically reduced, it was still . . . inconveniently long . . . at twenty minutes, especially for portraits, since people would have to sit still in the sun for that length of time. Elaborate headrests were constructed to keep the subjects from moving so that the image wouldn't be ruined, and many people simply didn't want to endure the discomfort. Q7 Q10 Q7

But, by the mid 1800s, improvements in chemistry and optics had resolved most of these issues. Bromide as well as iodine sensitized the plates, and some photographers were even using chlorine in an effort to decrease exposure time. The portrait lens was also improved by reducing the size of the opening, and limiting the amount of light that could enter, so the exposure time was about twenty seconds instead of twenty minutes. And negative film had been introduced in France, sorry, in England, and negatives permitted the production of multiple copies from a single image. So, photography was on its way to becoming a popular profession and pastime. Q11

Audio 6. What is the main topic of this lecture?
Answer **D** The other choices are all mentioned in order to develop the main topic: the history of early photography.

Audio 7. According to the professor, what two limitations were noted in Daguerre's process for developing and fixing latent images?
Answer **B** The images were very delicate and easily fell apart.
C Multiple images could not be made from the plate.

Audio Replay 8. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
" At first, he couldn't figure out why, but eventually, he concluded that this must have occurred as a result of mercury vapor . . . from a broken thermometer that was also in the . . . enclosed in the cupboard. Supposedly, from this fortunate accident, he was able to invent a process for developing latent images on . . . on exposed plates."

Audio Replay Why does the professor say this:
"Supposedly, from this fortunate accident, he was able to invent a process for developing latent images on . . . on exposed plates."

Answer C The word "supposedly" implies that the speaker is not sure whether the information is accurate.

Audio 9. What substance was first used to fix the images?
Answer B Table salt

Audio 10. What can we assume about photographers in the 1800s?
Answer D Some of them must have experienced health problems as a result of their laboratory work because the chemicals and the fumes that they released were highly toxic.

Audio 11. In what order does the professor explain photographic principles?
Answer B In a chronological sequence of events, beginning with the fifth century B.C.E. and ending with the mid-1800s

Listening 3 "Linguistics Class"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a linguistics class.

Professor: What comes to mind when I say the word *grammar*?

Student 1: That's easy. English class and lots of rules.

Student 2: Memorizing parts of speech . . . like nouns and verbs.

Student 3: Diagramming sentences.

Professor:

Q12 Well, yes, that's fairly typical. But today we're going to look at grammar from the point of view of the linguist, and to do that, we really have to consider three distinct grammars for every language.

The first grammar is referred to as a *mental grammar*. And that's what a speaker of a language knows, often implicitly, about the grammar of that language. This has also been called *linguistic competence* and from that term *competence grammar* has become popular. I like to think of it, of mental or competence grammar, I mean . . . I like to think of it as an incredibly complex system that allows a speaker to produce language that other speakers can understand. It includes the sounds, the vocabulary, the order of words in sentences and . . . even the appropriateness of a topic or a word in a particular social situation. And what's so amazing is that most of us carry this knowledge around in our heads and use it without much reflection.

One way to clarify mental or competence grammar is to ask a friend a question about a sentence. Your friend probably won't know why it's oorrect, but that friend will know if it's correct. So one of the features of mental or competence grammar is this incredible sense of correctness and the ability to hear something that "sounds odd" in a language. Haven't you had the experience of hearing a sentence, and it stood out to you? It just wasn't quite right? For native speakers we can call this ability native intuition, but even language learners who've achieved a high level of competence in a second language will be able to give similar intuitive responses even if they can't explain the rules. So that's mental grammar or competence grammar. Q13

Okay then, that brings us to the second type of grammar, and this is what linguists are most concerned about. This is *descriptive grammar*, which is a description of what the speakers know intuitively about a language. Linguists try to discover the underlying rules of mental or competence grammar and describe them objectively. So descriptive grammar is a *model* of competence grammar, and as such, it has to be based on the best effort of a linguist, and consequently, subject to criticism and even disagreement from *other* linguists. Because no matter how skilled a linguist is, describing grammar is an enormous task. In the first place, the knowledge is incredibly vast and complex; in the second place, the language itself is changing even while it's being described; and finally, the same data can be organized in different but equally correct ways in order to arrive at generalizations. And the ultimate goal of a descriptive grammar is to formulate generalizations about a language that accurately reflect the mental rules that speakers have in their heads. Q14

But, getting back to what most people think of as grammar—the grammar that we may have learned in school. That's very different from either competence grammar or descriptive grammar because the rules aren't meant to describe language at all. They're meant to prescribe and judge language as good or bad. And this kind of grammar is called, not surprisingly, *prescriptive grammar* because of its judgmental perspective. Again, to contrast prescriptive grammar with descriptive grammar, just think of descriptive generalizations as accepting the language that a speaker uses in an effort to describe it and recognizing that there may be several dialects that are used by various groups of speakers and that any one speaker will probably choose to use different language depending on the formality, for example, of the situation. On the other hand, prescriptive rules are rigid and subject to enforcement. Prescriptivists want to make all speakers conform to one standard in all situations, and that tends to be a very formal level of language all the time.

Now which of these types of grammar do you think you were learning in school when you had to memorize parts of speech and rules and diagram sentences?

Student 2: Sounds like prescriptive grammar to me.

Professor:
Precisely. But how did prescriptive rules get to be accepted, at least in the schools? And probably even more important, why are so many of these rules disregarded even by well-educated speakers in normal situations?

Student 1: Did you say disregarded? Q15

Professor:
I did. Some of you may recall that during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries in Europe, Latin was considered the perfect language and was used by the educated classes. The argument for the perfection of Latin was reinforced by the fact that Latin had become a written language and, consequently . . . Latin had stopped changing in the normal ways that spoken languages do, so the rules were also fixed, and for many writers of English during that period, the rules of Latin were held as a standard for all languages, including English. But the problem was that English had a different origin Q16

Q17 and very different constructions. For example, how many times have you heard the prescriptive rule, "never end a sentence with a preposition?" This is a Latin rule, but it doesn't apply to English, so it sounds very formal and even strange when this Latin rule is enforced. Now, how many of you would say, "What are we waiting for?" I think most of us would prefer it to "For what are we waiting?" But as you see, this breaks the rule—the Latin rule, that is.

Student 2:
So we're really learning Latin rules in English classes. No wonder I was confused. But wouldn't you think that . . . well, that things would change? I mean, Latin hasn't been recognized as a world language for a long time.

Professor:
You're right. But the reason that prescriptive rules survive is the school system. Teachers promote the prescriptive grammar as the standard for the school, and consequently for the educated class. And "good" language is a requisite for social mobility, even when it's very dissimilar to the mental grammar or the descriptive grammar of a language.

Audio 12. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **B** Different types of grammar

Audio 13. How does the professor make his point about *native intuition*?
Answer **A** He explains how to perform an easy experiment. By asking a friend about a sentence, the students will understand the concept.

Audio 14. What are two key problems for descriptive grammar?
Answer **A** The information is very complicated and subject to change.
C The language can be organized correctly in more than one way.

Audio 15. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "But how did prescriptive rules get to be accepted, at least in the schools? And probably even more important, why are so many of these rules disregarded even by well-educated speakers in normal situations?"
"Did you say *disregarded*?"
Audio Why does the student say this:
Replay "Did you say *disregarded*?"
Answer **B** She is confirming that she has understood. Her tone is confused, not challenging.

Audio 16. According to the professor, why were Latin rules used for English grammar?
Answer **A** Latin was a written language with rules that did not change.

Audio 17. Why does the professor discuss the rule to avoid ending a sentence with a preposition?
Answer **D** It demonstrates the problem in using Latin rules for English.

Listening 4 "College Campus"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation on campus between two students.

Man: I didn't see you at the International Talent Show.
Woman: No time for that kind of thing.
Man: You mean you don't belong to the ISA?

Woman: The ISA?
Man: International Student Association.
Woman: Oh, no. I don't belong to any clubs.
Man: But this isn't like a regular club.
Woman: How so?
Man: Well, we have a house. You know, the brick house on fraternity row and . . .
Woman: You live there, right?
Man: Yeah. I moved in last year. It's really inexpensive because we take care of the house ourselves and we cook our own meals.
Woman: That sounds like it would take a lot of time.
Man: Not really. There's a list of chores posted every week, and you can choose something you like to do, so I usually put my name down for yard work. I like being outside so it's fun for me.
Woman: But you have to cook too, right?
Man: Okay, it's like this: twenty of us live there so every night two of the guys cook and two of the guys clean up, so you only have to cook about once a week and clean up once.
Woman: What about breakfast and lunch?
Man: Oh, well, you're on your own for that, but the dinners are just fantastic. It's like eating in a different ethnic restaurant every night. You know, because the guys are from different countries.
Woman: That sounds good.
Man: And it costs about half what it did to live in the dorm. But really, I'm doing it because it's a great experience living with people from so many different countries. Q19 My best friend in the house is from Korea. My roommate's from Brazil. And I've got friends from . . . well, just about everywhere. Q20
Woman: But you don't have to live in the house to belong to the club.
Man: No, no. There are about a hundred members in the International Student Association. Only guys live in the house, but there are a lot of women in the association.
Woman: I wish I had time to do it. It really sounds interesting.
Man: You've got to relax sometimes. Anyway, we meet at the house the first Friday of the month from seven to ten. We have a buffet dinner and after that, we have a short meeting. That's when we plan our activities, like the talent show and picnics and dances. Then a lot of the people stay for music and a party, but some people leave after the meeting. Q21
Woman: So it's only a couple hours a month?
Man: Right. Listen, why don't you come over next Friday for the meeting, as my guest, I mean. You have to eat anyway. And if you have a good time, you can think about joining. Q18
Woman: Next Friday? Well, I don't know . . . I usually study on Friday night, but . . . I could take a break . . . Sure I'll come over . . . but I might have to leave early. Q22
Man: Great.

Audio 18. What is the purpose of this conversation?
Answer C The man is convincing the woman to join the International Student Association. He *invites the* woman to attend a meeting as his guest.

Audio 19. What does the man imply about the house where he is living?
Answer A He is saving money by living at the house, but he prefers the house to the dorm because it is a great experience.

Audio 20. How does the man feel about the International Student Association?
Answer B He enjoys meeting people with different backgrounds.

Audio 21. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Then a lot of the people stay for music and a party, but some people leave after the meeting."
"So it's only a couple hours a month?"
Audio What does the woman mean when she says this:
Replay "So it's only a couple hours a month?"
Answer **D** Her tone indicates indecision. She is changing her mind about going.

Audio 22. What does the woman agree to do?
Answer **C** Go to a meeting

Listening 5 "Zoology Class"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a zoology class. The professor is discussing coral reefs.

Professor:

Every ecosystem on Earth is unique, but the coral reef is perhaps the most unusual of all because it's the only ecosystem made *by* and made *of*—animals. All coral reefs are constructed by coral polyps, Q28 which are generally small, about the size of this pencil eraser. But, the structures themselves are, well, enormous. Astronauts have been able to identify the Great Barrier Reef in Australia from space. Can you believe that? And the diversity of species in large coral reefs is second only to the rainforest habitats. In fact, we estimate that for every species we've identified on a coral reef, there are probably a hundred times that number that remain to be classified and studied.

But how do these little polyps build such impressive reefs? Well, hard coral secrete a shell of calcium carbonate around their bodies. The polyp *isn't* hard, you see, but the shell *is*. And these shells are the material that forms a coral reef. So a coral reef is just a colony—millions and millions of coral Q23 animals whose shells are connected. And reproduction is really the basis for the construction of a large reef. You see, as each polyp matures, it converts the calcium and other minerals in ocean water to a hard limestone exoskeleton called a corallite. And this is fascinating. Although the polyps themselves don't appreciably increase in size, they continue to build new shells periodically, um, connecting them with . . . with partitions.

Now coral can reproduce sexually through an activity called mass spawning. During one night in the spring when the moon is full, coral polyps release egg bundles that contain both eggs and sperm. Most polyps have both male and female reproductive cells. The egg bundles are round, about half the size of marbles, I would say. They're brightly colored in orange or red or pink, and they float up to the Q24 surface to form a thick layer of, uh . . . well think of them as rather fragrant beads. So with the water so saturated with them, predators will only be able to devour a small number compared with the huge number that will survive and break open. The sperm cells swim away to fertilize the eggs from another bundle. So . . . once fertilized, the little egg begins to mature from a coral larva to a planulae, which can swim for a few hours, days, or even a few weeks. Ultimately it locates a hard surface on which to attach itself and from which it will *not* move for the rest of its life, except for the movement involved in the process of building a new, neighboring shell as . . . as it continues to mature.

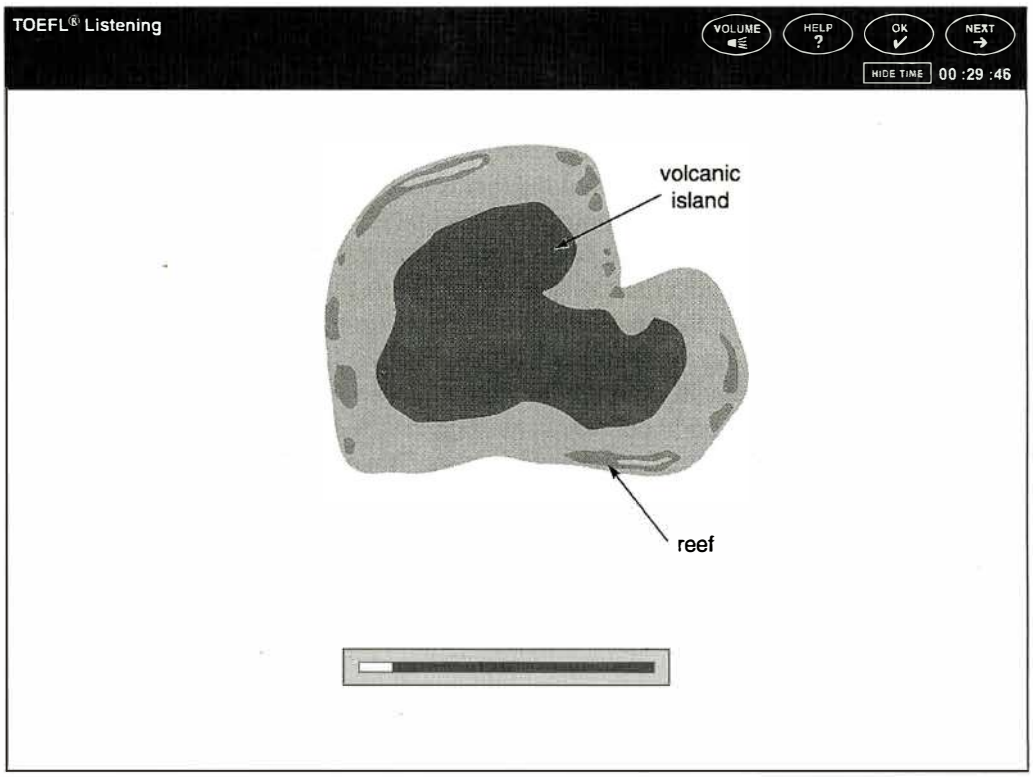
But actually sexual reproduction isn't the way that coral reefs are really constructed. When a polyp Q25 matures on the site it's selected, the habitat is identified as being conducive to reef building. So the mature polyp doesn't just grow bigger, it actually replicates itself in a process called budding. After the genetic material is duplicated, then the polyp divides itself in half, and each half becomes a completely mature polyp. This budding process repeats itself, eventually producing thousands of asexually budded coral polyps connected by a tissue that grows over the limestone shells between the polyps. So, as you can imagine, budding will produce a large number of individual polyps, but they'll all have exactly the same genetic code as the first polyp. And this creates the beginning of a coral reef, but without the

diversity that eventually populates the habitat. Wherever a coral reef is constructed, abundant sea life congregates. In fact, it's been estimated that about 25 percent of all ocean species can be found within the coral reefs.

Now most coral polyps eat plankton—single-celled microscopic organisms that float or swim very slowly in the ocean water in their habitat. But a coral reef has such a high concentration of polyps, they can't rely solely on plankton to survive. So coral polyps have developed a symbiotic relationship with a single-celled algae called zooxanthella. Remember that to qualify as symbiotic, a relationship must be mutually beneficial. So the zooxanthella produces food for the coral through the by-products of photosynthesis, and the coral provides a safe home for the zooxanthella, because it's hidden from predators that inhabit the coral reef. Q26

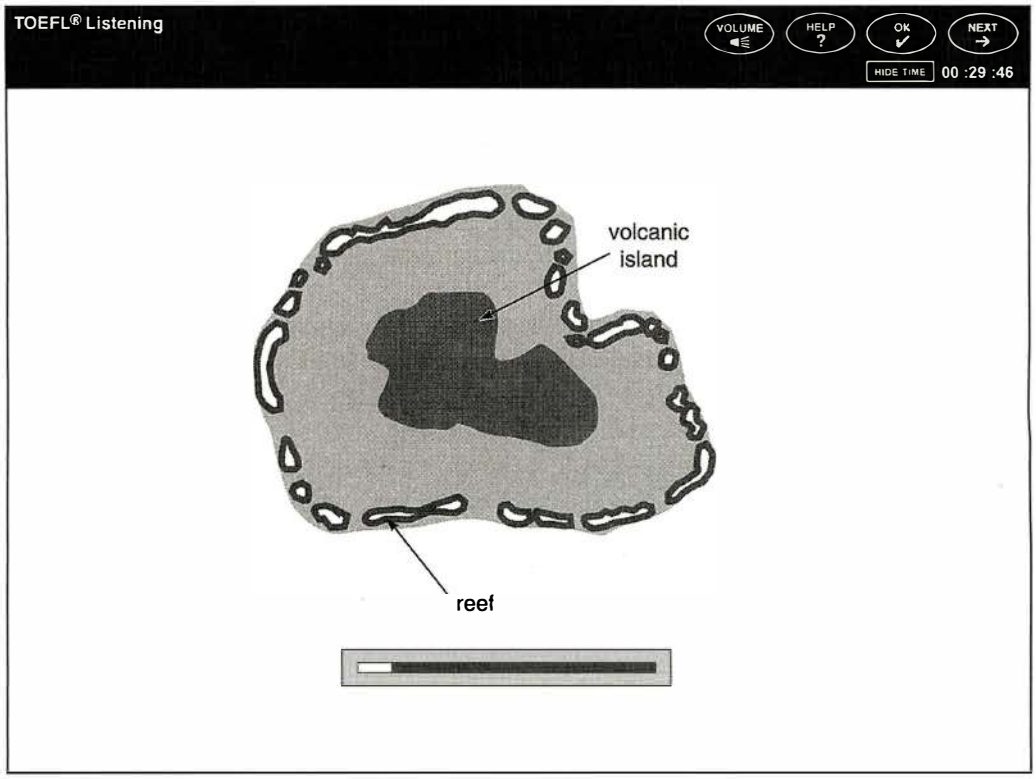
Every species of coral grows at a different rate, some as much as six inches a year. But faster growing colonies are more prone to breaking apart either from their own weight or from the continuous force of the ocean waves. Some species tend to grow more slowly, but they may live as long as a thousand years. Even so, only the top portion of any reef is actually alive and growing and the lower structure is comprised of the skeletal remains . . . that's limestone corallite from coralthat has died. Q28

And what I find incredibly interesting about coral reefs is that each is a unique structure. But, of course, scientists need to classify, and so there's a classification system for coral reefs. A *fringing reef* grows around islands and the shorelines of continents and extends out from the shore. In order to flourish, fringing reefs must have clean water, lots of sunshine, and a moderately high concentration of salt. Some good examples of fringing reefs can be found around the Hawaiian Islands. Oh, yes, these are the most common and also the most recently formed class of coral reefs. Here's a drawing of a fringing reef.



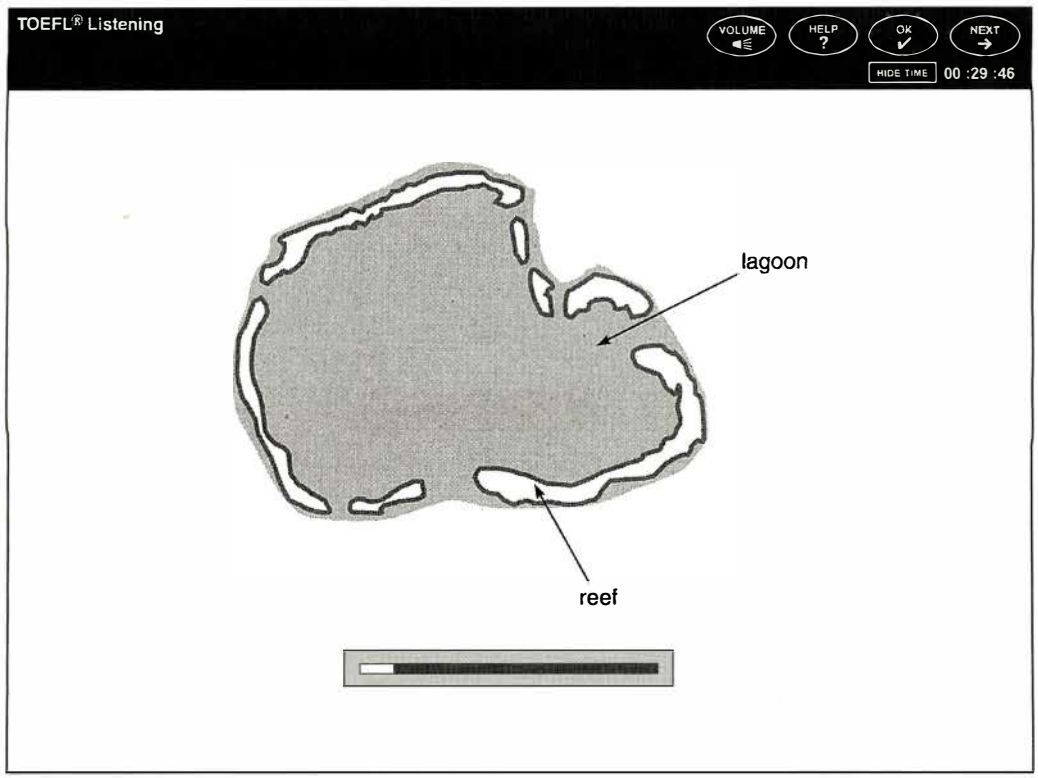
I think this is actually one of the Hawaiian reefs.

Now, *barrier reefs*—they're found further from shore, and they're usually separated from the shoreline by a shallow body of water, maybe a lagoon. As in the case of the Great Barrier Reef off the shore of Australia, the body of water can be miles wide, so the reef is miles away from the shoreline. And there may actually be a collection of coral reefs fused together. This is a drawing of a reef in the Great Barrier chain.



As I recall there are about twenty-five, or maybe even more individual coral reefs connected to form the Great Barrier Reef. As a general rule, barrier reefs are larger and older than fringing reefs.

Q27 But the oldest class of coral reef is the atoll, which is a ring-shaped reef with a lagoon in the middle and deep water surrounding the ring. These are scattered throughout the South Pacific, kind of like oasis settlements in the desert. And they abound with a diversity of sea life. This is one of the South Pacific atolls.



So, as we reflect on everything we've said about coral, we know that it's a relatively simple organism with a body ending in a mouth and tentacles. It reproduces both sexually and asexually by budding, and it survives by forming a symbiotic relationship with zooxanthella. But none of this is very extraordinary. What *is* unique about coral in the animal kingdom is its ability to construct a variety of reefs, creating habitats that are absolutely unlike any others on Earth. Q28

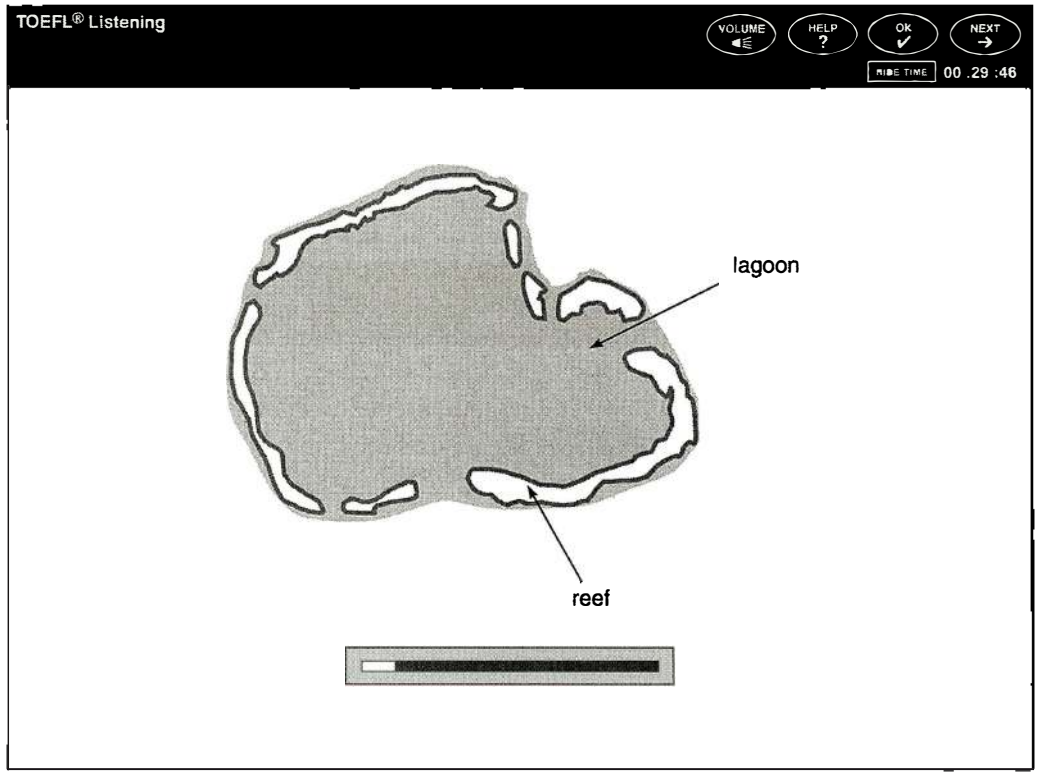
Audio 23. According to the professor, how do coral reefs grow?
Answer **B** They connect corallite shells to build structures.

Audio 24. Why are so many egg bundles released during mass spawning?
Answer **C** A number of the egg bundles will be eaten [by predators].

Audio 25. According to the professor, what is *budding*?
Answer **A** The division of a polyp in half to reproduce itself.

Audio 26. What is the relationship between zooxanthella and coral polyps?
Answer **B** The zooxanthella uses the coral for a shelter from enemies.
C The coral eats food produced by the zooxanthella.
The relationship is symbiotic.

Audio 27. Which of the following reefs is probably an atoll?
Answer **C** A ring-shaped reef with a lagoon in the middle and deep water surrounding the ring.



Audio 28. In the lecture, the professor explains coral reefs. Indicate whether each of the following is a true statement about coral reefs. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

		Yes	No
A	In general, the organism is quite simple.	✔	
B	The structure of a reef can be very large.	✔	
C	The living coral grows on top of dead shells.	✔	
D	Mass spawning is not very effective.		✔

Listening 6 "Business Class"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a business class.

Professor:

Q29 Industry analysts report that multinational food companies are trying to use the same types of strategies that automobile and electronics manufacturers have found to be successful in the global marketplace. The problem is that general rules for products that tend to be traditional for national or even regional tastes . . . these products are very difficult to identify and sales aren't easy to project. But, the companies that tend to do best are those that are the most responsive to local tastes. And they spend

Q30 development dollars on taste testing in the local markets before they formulate the final product. Can anyone recall any examples from the case studies in the text? Sandy?

Student 1:

McDonald's Big Mac has more mustard in the special sauce in Paris than it does in New York.

Professor: Because?

Student 1:

Because taste tests verified that people in the United States liked sweeter condiments than people did in France. In fact, I think the . . . the sugar content for export foods in general usually has to be modified when American products are taste tested overseas.

Professor:

Right you are. Probably the company that's adapted most to local tastes is Nestle. Can you believe that they produce more than 200 slightly different blends of Nescafe for export to different countries? Amazing but true. But sometimes taste is less a problem of ingredients and more a matter of the way a food product looks or feels. One case study that comes to mind is the one about the soft cookies that just don't sell as well in England as crisp cookies. So, you can see that taste extends way beyond just flavor. It's really a combination of flavor preferences and local expectations.

Look, here's another example of accommodation that had more to do with the expectation for a process than the flavor of the product. In this case study, it was cake. Remember when Betty Crocker cake mixes were introduced in England, they weren't accepted because the English homemaker felt more comfortable with convenience foods that required more than water to prepare them. Go figure. But that was the problem uncovered by extensive market research. So when the mix was reformulated

without an egg, and the preparation included adding an egg with the water before mixing it, well, Betty Crocker cake mixes became very popular in England.

Any other examples come to mind? They don't have to be from the case studies in the book. Q31

Student 2: How about serving sizes?

Professor: Go on.

Student 2:
Well soft drinks for one. Just compare the serving sizes in the United States and many foreign markets where soft drinks are sold. The cans in foreign markets are much smaller because consumers expect it. But, uh, in the United States, well, super sizing is probably a consideration when a foreign company is trying to crack the American market.

Professor:
That's a great example. So the taste can be acceptable, but the packaging has to compare favorably with the competing brands and the public's expectations. Q32

Student 3:
Yeah, but that makes products more expensive, doesn't it? I mean you can't standardize the product or the packaging so that would make it more . . . more costly to produce, wouldn't it?

Professor:
Right you are, Chris. In fact, you've really gone to the heart of the issue. A compromise has to occur between the requirement that products be adapted to please the taste and the expectations of local consumers and the pressure to standardize products for maximum cost effectiveness. Now, let's complicate that even further. Even the experts don't agree on the importance of how far to go in adapting products for local markets. A few years ago, Ted Levitt—he's the editor of the *Harvard Business Review*—Levitt predicted what he called a "pluralization of consumption." What he means is that at least in some areas, tastes are likely to converge, which makes sense when you think about the increased opportunities for travel and sampling of foods, as well as the continued global marketing efforts by multinational corporations. So logically, it's smarter to simply identify the areas in which tastes are most likely to be the same, and concentrate efforts on those food products. Q33

But there's also the issue of global marketing. How about the potential to create taste? I mean, selling the image that surrounds using a product. If consumers want to associate themselves with that image, won't they develop a taste for the product that does that for them? For example, there's some evidence that the popularity of products seen in movies and television spills into the foreign marketplace. This subtle brand association with the movie or the celebrities in it translates into high dollar deals for certain brands to be visibly displayed in widely distributed films. Q34

Student 3:
Oh, right. I was reading about that. It was in a couple of the case studies. The bottle, a can, or . . . or a package appears as part of the character's persona, and if it's a character that audiences choose to identify with, then the taste for the product may follow, or at least that's what the marketing experts are betting on.

Professor:
And that includes foreign audiences. Anyone drink Starbucks coffee? Well, Starbucks began as a regional coffee in Seattle, Washington, and made the global leap in 2000, opening shops in China, a huge market surely, but also a traditionally *tea-drinking* society. So what's the attraction? Starbucks is marketing to the cosmopolitan consumer, the young trendy set looking for a modern image as well as a different taste.

Still, there have been some real surprises in the multinational dinner party. No one has really figured out why the Italians, Germans, and British love Kraft's Philadelphia cream cheese, and the Greeks simply don't buy it. And why did Perrier, a mineral water from France . . . why did Perrier take America by storm while other imported mineral waters . . . didn't? In short, success in the food export industry is probably a combination of the real taste . . . the flavor of the product, with some adaptation for the local markets, the satisfaction of certain expectations for the preparation and packaging, and the taste for the product created by images in the global marketing plan. Add to this mix the potential for a short shelf life or even perishable products and, well, you have a very challenging problem for the multinational food industry.

Audio 29. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **A** The other choices relate to the main topic: the global marketing of food products.

Audio 30. How does the professor organize the discussion?
Answer **C** He refers to case studies from the textbook.

Audio 31. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Any other examples come to mind? They don't have to be from the case studies in the book."
"How about serving sizes?"
Audio Why does the student say this:
Replay "How about serving sizes?"
Answer **B** She is offering a possible answer to the professor's question. "How about" is a polite way to offer a possibility.

Audio 32. What technique does the professor use to encourage student discussion?
Answer **A** He gives students positive reinforcement by praising their efforts.

Audio 33. What did Ted Levitt mean by "the pluralization of consumption"?
Answer **D** More people will want the same products.

Audio 34. What does the professor say about television and movie companies?
Answer ***D*** He points out that they are paid to display brand-name products.

➤ Speaking



Model Test 2, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 6

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Regret"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Explain a situation in the past when you have regretted your decision. What would you do differently?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Course Requirements"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Some students would rather write a paper than take a test. Other students would rather take a test instead of writing a paper. Which option do you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Health Insurance"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A student is discussing the university's health insurance policy with the foreign student advisor. Read the policy in the college schedule [printed on page 291]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to the foreign student advisor. He is explaining the policy and expressing his opinion about it.

Advisor:
I think it's very important for you to know that this policy wasn't instituted in order to increase fees for international students. In fact, the university doesn't make a profit from the sale of health insurance. The problem is that health care costs in this country are so high that it could be financially disastrous for the family of an international student who needed more than just a simple visit to the doctor's office. A trip to the emergency room at the hospital could cost thousands of dollars without health insurance! Most families abroad just don't realize how costly it is. As for foreign health insurance providers—well, it was just too difficult to validate their coverage for medical services, and the local doctors and hospitals simply stopped accepting them. So . . . to be sure that our students are protected, we're offering low-cost health insurance through the school.

Narrator 1: The foreign student advisor expresses his opinion of the policy for health insurance. Report *his* opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Antarctica"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about Antarctica [printed on page 292]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a geography class. The professor is talking about Antarctica.

Professor:
With the increasing pressure to replace raw materials that are being consumed in other parts of *the* world, Antarctica and the waters offshore could become a stage for international conflict in the future. During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, hunters decimated huge populations of whales and seals, and the race to reach the South Pole resulted in national claims by explorers from a variety of countries, which finally resulted in the partitioning of pie-shaped sectors radiating away from the center at the pole. So today several claims overlap, and only one sector remains unclaimed. Virtually all of these claims are covered by an ice sheet about two miles thick, but the question is, what's beneath

the ice? Scientific experiments indicate that proteins, fuels, and minerals exist in abundance, and that means that in spite of the difficulties and challenges involved in the exploitation of these natural resources, the countries with claims haven't demonstrated an intention to relinquish their stake in the area. While resources are available in more convenient sites, the remote areas in Antarctica appear to be relatively safe from exploitation. In addition, as the reading passage suggests, global self-interest may engender international cooperation in this crucial environmental system.

Narrator 1: Explain why many countries have staked claims in Antarctica, and why national interests have not been pursued.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Extra Money"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Student:	I need to earn some extra money. My budget's just out of control.
Friend:	I hear you. I had the same problem last semester.
Student:	So what did you do?
Friend:	I got a job at the cafeteria. I don't really like the work, but the good thing is that you get free meals.
Student:	Really? Are they hiring?
Friend:	I don't know, but I could ask. The pay isn't great though. See, the meals are the thing.
Student:	Oh. Still, that would cut down on the grocery bill.
Friend:	Yeah . . . Or, you know what? You could rent that extra room in your apartment. I'll bet you could get $250 a month, at least.
Student:	I've been thinking about that. It would help with the rent and the utilities, and I wouldn't have to work so I could use my time for my classes, but, I keep thinking, what if my roommate doesn't pay on time, or what if there's a lot of noise.
Friend:	Well, you'd have to have a deposit and a contract . . . something in writing so you could keep the deposit if there were problems, and you could break the contract if it didn't work out.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem, and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Research References"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare, and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a sociology class. The professor is discussing the criteria for using older research references.

Professor:
Well, first of all you have to understand that there's no hard and fast rule for deciding when a research reference is too old. But that doesn't help you much. So, I'll try to give you a couple of guidelines, and *then you'll* just have to use good judgment. Okay, let's just say for our purposes, that the research is thirty years old. Then the next thing to think about is whether any changes have occurred in society to call the data into question. For example, in a study that looks at diet, we know logically that many changes have occurred in eating patterns over the past thirty years, so this study would probably be out of date. But a study of, uh, say language development may be okay because the way that babies learn their native language hasn't changed much in the same period of time. So, what I'm saying is . . . the date is less important than the potential for change. Okay, then the second criteria to consider is whether the citation is a *finding* or an *opinion*. If you have a study that indicates, uh, for example, that college students are drinking more, that's a *finding*, but if you have a statement by the researcher that *drinking* is the most serious problem on campus, then you have an *opinion*. And opinions are accurate over the years as long as they're attributed to the person and the date is cited. But the finding for an older study may be too old. In that case, it's probably better to use a more recent study.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two criteria for using an older research reference presented by the professor.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 2, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 7

Integrated Essay "Collapse of Easter Island"

First, read the passage [printed on page 296] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
Well, all of the theories explaining the collapse of the civilization on Easter Island have some serious flaws. Let's start with deforestation. A credible study by Hunt and Lipo provides evidence that even though the Easter Islanders cleared most of the forests, they replaced them with grasslands, which would have prevented the erosion that supposedly made the ground impossible to cultivate. So the absence of trees, although serious in terms of shelter, cooking, and transportation, wouldn't necessarily have precluded an agricultural base that could have supported the population.

As for the theory that rats ate the new tree shoots, preventing the regrowth of the forests, it's probably true that rats contributed to a disruption of the island's ecosystem, but it's also likely that the native people used rats as a food source while they tried to establish a long-term plan. Rat bones have been found along with chicken bones in the garbage dumps on the island, suggesting that the islanders were eating rats as well as chicken.

Okay then, what about the fighting between the long-eared and short-eared people? Historical records confirm that when the Spanish Viceroy of Peru sent an expedition to the island in 1770, the explorers estimated a native population of about 3000 people, but four years later when Sir James Cook arrived, the population had been decimated. Some records indicate that more than two-thirds of the population had perished. But island tradition dates the war between the long-eared and the short-eared people at about 1680—that's about one hundred years earlier. And it doesn't add up, does it?

So, you see, we still have a mystery because none of the three theories really provides a scenario that explains why the civilization on Easter Island collapsed.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 2, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 8

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "Regret"

I regret that I moved out of my apartment with my roommate without trying harder to make things better. In the first place, I should have talked with her about the problems and listened to what she had to say. Maybe if I'd understood *her* side, it would have made a difference. In the second place, I should have tried to include my roommate in some of my plans with my other friends. Maybe she felt left out. And when I think about it, I probably should have been a better roommate myself, to set a good example, I mean. If I'd been the kind of roommate I wanted to have, I could have shown her by example. Just leaving wasn't a good idea and I regret it.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Course Requirements"

I prefer to write a paper instead of taking a test because I know exactly what the topic is when I'm researching a paper, but there are a large number of possibilities for questions on a test and that makes it much more difficult to prepare for. Besides, in my experience, some teachers aren't very straightforward about their tests, and even though I've studied and understand the subject, well, sometimes the questions that you would expect to see aren't on the test and some obscure information is tested instead. But probably the most important reason for my preference is that I get very nervous when I'm taking a test, and that can affect my performance. Writing a paper doesn't cause me the same level of anxiety.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Health Insurance"

The foreign student advisor agrees with the policy that requires international students to purchase health insurance from the university at registration. He assures students that the university isn't trying to increase fees for international students by doing this. He explains that health care is very expensive. For example, a visit to the emergency room can be a financial burden to a family who doesn't have medical insurance. He says that most families of international students don't expect the costs to be so excessive. And the reason that the university doesn't allow students to substitute other health care providers is because the local medical community has had problems with validation for health insurance plans from abroad and now refuses to accept them. So, um, in order to protect the students, the school doesn't make any exceptions to the policy.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Antarctica"

Many countries have staked claims in Antarctica because the natural resources in other areas are being depleted and, uh, research indicates that minerals, fuels, and even some sources of protein are probably under the ice in large quantities. So, the implication is that as raw materials are exploited in areas that are relatively easy to reach, nations will think about taking advantage of their claims. For the time being, the location and climate have discouraged exploitation, and so have the treaties that protect the environment and encourage scientists to collaborate. It's also worth mentioning that Antarctica is vitally important to the balance that's maintained in the environment worldwide. So, in addition to all the difficulties that would have to be overcome to take advantage of the resources in their claims, individual nations also recognize the danger to the global environment and, at least for now, they're not pursuing their national interests.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Extra Money"

The woman needs additional income to meet her expenses so her friend suggests that she get a job at the cafeteria. Even though the salary isn't very high, the free meals are helpful. He isn't sure whether there's a job available but he agrees to find out. He also recommends that she rent the second bedroom in her apartment for a minimum of $250 a month, which would subsidize the rent and utilities. The problem she points out is that roommates can be disruptive, and sometimes they aren't financially responsible. But, she would have more time to study if she didn't have to work and her friend reminds her that she could require an agreement in writing, along with a deposit. Okay, in my opinion, she

should try to get a job either in the cafeteria or someplace else on campus because if she lives alone, she can maintain a quiet environment for study, and she won't have to worry about a contract that could be difficult to enforce.

Checklist 5

✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Research References"

According to the lecturer, there are two major criteria for using an older research reference. First, she mentions, and I'm quoting here, the "potential for change." For example, research on diet may be too old after thirty years because many changes have occurred in dietary practices during that time, but research on language development may be okay because fewer changes have taken place in language acquisition in the same number of years. The other criteria requires that you first identify the research as a conclusion or an opinion. Because, uh, in general, a conclusion may be outdated when a newer study is published, but an opinion credited to a person with the date of the opinion in the citation, um, that's correct over time. In other words, there's no exact number of years to decide whether a reference is acceptable so the date isn't as significant as the criteria. So, an older study can be used if changes in the research haven't taken place or if the results are worded as opinions with the dates cited.

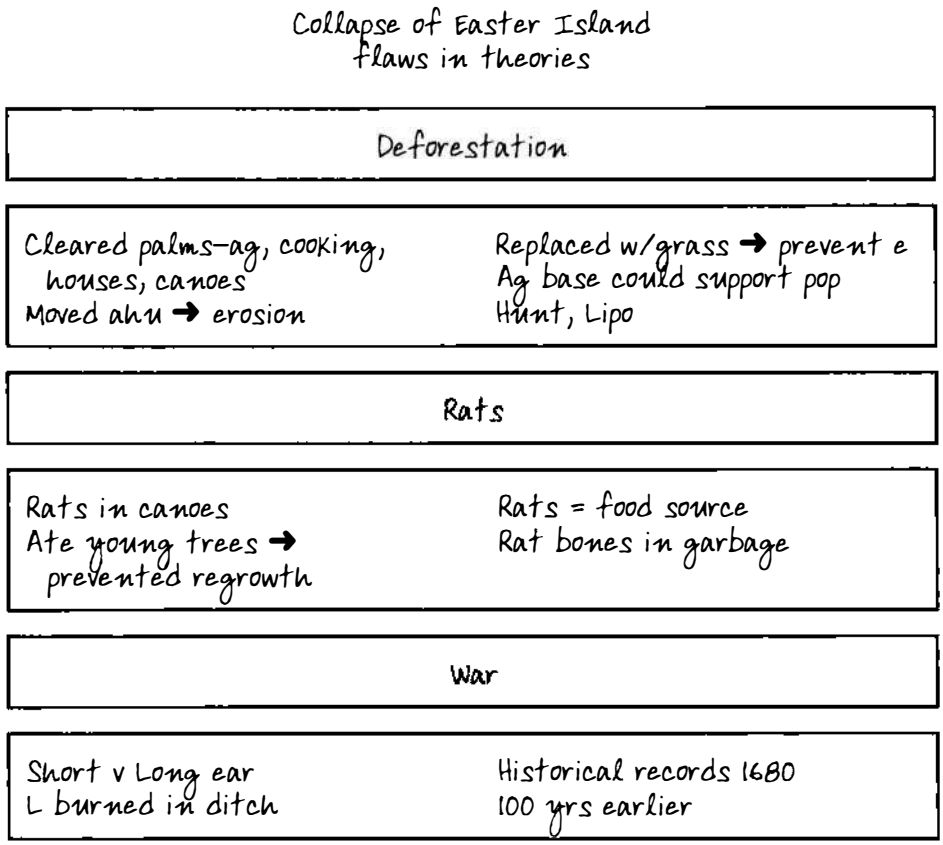
Checklist 6

✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Collapse of Easter Island"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Collapse of Easter Island"

The reading lists three theories to explain the collapse of the civilization on Easter Island, but the lecture points out flaws in all three theories presented in the reading. The lecturer concedes that palm trees were cleared for agricultural purposes, cooking, the construction of homes and canoes, as well as the transportation of *ahu*. Nevertheless, the lecturer explains that the islanders replaced the palm trees with grass, which would have prevented erosion and would have allowed for an agricultural base that could have supported the population.

Although rats may have eaten many of the young trees, preventing their regrowth, the lecturer maintains that the rats could have been used as a food source for the islanders. In fact, rat bones found in garbage dumps provide evidence that the islanders were eating rats. In other words, they replaced plants with protein in their diet.

It is documented that a war occurred between the short-eared and long-eared people on the island, killing many of the islanders on both sides; however, the lecturer presents historical records substantiating that the war was fought in about 1770, which would have been 100 years after the islanders' traditional stories of the war. The difference in the dates brings the entire theory into question.

Therefore, none of the three theories accounts for the collapse of the advanced culture that once thrived on Easter Island. What happened is still a mystery.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "Family Pets"

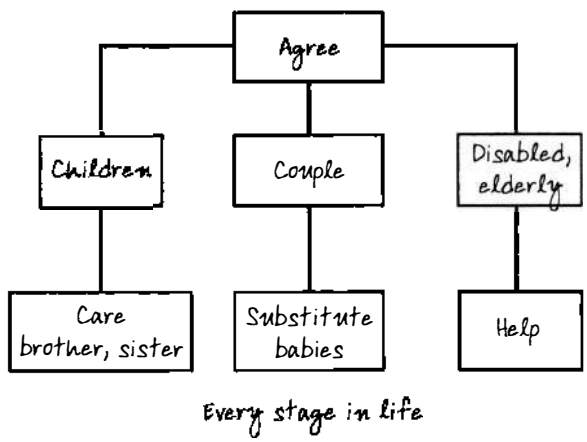
Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

Outline

Agree that pets should be treated like family members

- Children–learn how to care for brother, sister
- Couple–substitute for babies
- Disabled, elderly–help, caring like family members
- Every stage in life

Map



Example Essay

Although the argument has been made that money spent on pets could better be directed to programs that provide assistance for needy people, I agree that pets should be treated like family members because they live in our homes and interact with us like family members do. Often parents allow children to have pets in order to teach them to be responsible. By feeding, walking, and grooming a dog, children learn to be dependable and kind. Parents expect their children to take care of the pets as if they were members of the family in order to learn these valuable lessons. For many children, a dog or a kitten is also a best friend and a wonderful way to learn how to treat a new brother or sister when the family expands.

Besides the friendship that children enjoy with animals, pets can substitute for the absence of other family members. Sometimes a couple who is unable to have children will adopt pets and treat them like babies. They shower the love on their cats that they might have provided a child, and receive affection and companionship in return. Many people who are living alone enjoy the companionship of a pet instead of loved ones who are at a distance or have passed away. The pet becomes a family member for these people and deserves the same kind of treatment that a family member would receive.

Many articles have appeared in the popular press citing the benefits of pets to the disabled and the elderly. In addition to the usual services that pets may provide, such as bringing objects to their owners or helping a vision-impaired owner to walk in unfamiliar surroundings, there is evidence that pets actually extend the life expectancy of their owners. In a real sense, these pets are caring for their owners like family members would, and for this reason, they should be treated like family.

At every stage in life we interact with our pets in the same ways that we interact with family. Children, young married couples, and elderly people have reason to treat their pets like family members.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 3: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "SYMBIOTIC RELATIONSHIPS"

1. **C** In this passage, *obtains* is a synonym for "derives." Context comes from the close association with the word "benefit."
2. **C** In this passage, *classifications* is a synonym for "categories." Context comes from the phrase "three different" in the same sentence.
3. **A** In this passage, *comparatively* is a synonym for "relatively." Context comes from the phrase "not killed immediately" in the same sentence.
4. **C** . . . *when the parasite first invades* paraphrases "Newly established" and *the most destructive phase* paraphrases "more destructive."
5. **A** In this passage, *permit* is a synonym for "tolerate." Context comes from the phrase "reducing the harm" in the same sentence.
6. **D** "Parasites that live on the surface of their hosts are known as **ectoparasites**." . . . *surface* means "outside." Choice A is not correct because "mold and mildew" are ectoparasites, not ways that ectoparasites survive. Choices B and C refer to endoparasites, not to ectoparasites.
7. **A** "Many examples of commensal relationships exist. Orchids use trees as a surface upon which to grow." Choices B and D are mentioned as examples of parasites. Choice C is not correct because ants are mentioned with the Acacia as an example of mutualism, not a commensal relationship.
8. **C** In this passage, *really* is a synonym for "actually."
9. **B** The author uses the example of the Acacia to explain how two species can benefit from contact. "Some species of Acacia, a thorny tree, provide food in the form of sugar . . . Certain species of ants . . . receive food and a place to live, and the [Acacia] tree is protected from animals. . . " Both organisms benefit.
10. **C** "The bacteria do not cause disease but provide the plants with nitrogen-containing molecules." Choice A is not correct because the bacteria do not cause disease. Choice B is not correct because the bacteria is used for growth. Choice D is not correct because the nodules supply nitrogen, which is beneficial.
11. **A** Pronoun reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. "Fleas, lice and some molds and mildews are examples of ectoparasites. They [fleas, lice and some molds] live on the feathers of birds or the fur of animals." Choices B, C, and D are not correct because the pronoun does not refer to endoparasites, which live inside the host and are explained later in the passage.
12. **A** Because the text explains the types of relationships between species, it must be concluded that the passage would be found in a chapter about the environment and organisms. Choices B, C, and D are not correct because they are not as closely associated with the main idea.
13. **A, D, E** summarize the passage. Choice B is true, but it is an example of a commensal relationship described in major point D. Choice C refers to a mutualistic relationship developed in major point E. Choice F is mentioned as a minor point in the discussion of parasitic relationships described in major point A.

READING 2 "CIVILIZATION"

14. **B** ". . . Neolithic settlements were hardly more than villages. But as their inhabitants mastered the art of farming, more complex human societies [civilizations] emerged." Choice A is not correct because the Neolithic settlements preceded civilizations. Choice C is not correct because

agriculture is mentioned as a cause of the rise in complex cultures, not as a definition of civilization. Choice D is not correct because the population centers increased in size as civilizations grew, but other basic characteristics had to be present as well.

15. **B** In this passage, *used* is a synonym for "utilized."
16. **B** "As wealth increased, such societies began to develop armies and to build walled cities." Choices A, C, and D may be logical, but they are not mentioned and may not be concluded from information in the passage.
17. **C** In this passage, *hardly* is a synonym for "barely."
18. **D** Because the author states that from Neolithic towns "more complex human societies emerged," it may be concluded that they are mentioned to contrast them with the civilizations that evolved. Choice A is not correct because a Neolithic town does not qualify as a civilization. Choice B is not correct because writing systems were not part of Neolithic settlements. Choice C is not correct because Neolithic settlements were referred to as villages, and no argument was made for the classification.
19. **B** ". . . a new social structure . . . [included] kings and an upper class . . . free people . . . and a class of slaves." Choice A is not correct because it does not include free people. Choice C is not correct because it does not include free people. Choice D is not mentioned and may not be concluded from information in the passage. The new structure described is based on economics, not on education.
20. **A** . . . *the majority* paraphrases "most of which."
21. **A** In this passage, *fundamental* is a synonym for "crucial."
22. **B** In this passage, *important* is a synonym for "prominent." Context comes from the word "monumental" in the same sentence.
23. **B** "A number of possible explanations of the beginning of civilization have been suggested." Choice A is not correct because scholars do not agree on one explanation. Choice C is not correct because trade routes are not mentioned in paragraph 4. Choice D is not correct because coincidence is not mentioned as one of the possible explanations.
24. **C** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 9. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 8. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 6.
25. **B** A rhetorical question is a question that is asked and answered by the same speaker. Response is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous rhetorical question. Choices A, C, and D are not correct because the pronoun "they" in the insert sentence does not refer to plural nouns in the previous sentence.
26. **B, E, F** summarize the passage. Choice A is true, but it is a minor point that is mentioned as an example of the characteristics of a class structure. Choice C may be one of the architectural structures built, but it is not specified. Choice D is true of Mesopotamia and Egypt, but is not developed as a major point.

READING 3 "LIFE IN OUR SOLAR SYSTEM"

27. **D** In this passage, *naturally* is a synonym for "automatically." Context comes from the prefix *auto*, which means "self" and the root *matic*, which is found in many words that refer to "machines."
28. **C** In this passage, *facts* is a synonym for "data."
29. **A** "Venus has some traces of water vapor in its atmosphere, but it is much too hot for liquid water to survive." Choice B is not correct because the water transformed to vapor, not ice. Ice refers to our moon, not to Venus. Choice C is not correct because the lakes or oceans evaporated quickly. Choice D is not correct because the airless atmosphere refers to Mercury, not to Venus.
30. **C** In this passage, *constant* is a synonym for "stable." Context comes from the contrast with "evolve" later in the sentence.
31. **B** Because Jupiter's moon is used as an example of satellites of Jovian planets, it must be concluded that Jupiter is a Jovian planet. Choice A is not correct because the satellites, not the planets, have conditions that support life. Choice C is not correct because the size of Europa

is not mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the author draws no conclusion about the change of orbits. If orbits were modified, then a conclusion could be drawn about whether Europa was frozen.

32. **C** ". . . life there may be unlikely because of the temperature. The surface of Titan is a deadly –179°C." Choice A is not correct because there are oceans of liquid methane and ethane. Choice B is true, but it is not the reason why life would be improbable. Choice D is not correct because it is the temperature, not the atmosphere, that is low.
33. **B** . . . *the evidence did not demonstrate* paraphrases "the results did not confirm."
34. **C** In this passage, *begun* is a synonym for "originated." Context comes from the root *origin*, which means "beginning."
35. **C** "ALH84001 is important because a team of scientists studied it and announced in 1996 that it contained chemical and physical traces of ancient life on Mars." Choice A is not correct because the meteorite was found closer to twenty years ago. Choice B is not correct because the impact on Mars was not recent. Choice D is true, but it is not the reason why the author mentions the meteorite.
36. **B** ". . . conclusive evidence [of life] may have to wait until a geologist in a space suit can . . . open rocks . . . searching for fossils." Choice A is not correct because a geologist will travel in the spacecraft. Choice C is not correct because pictures are not mentioned as a way to confirm the existence of life on Mars. Choice D is not correct because the present conditions could be studied in a variety of ways, but conclusive evidence depends on a manned flight that will allow a geologist to study the physical evidence.
37. **C** "We are left to conclude that, so far as we know, our solar system is bare of life except for Earth." Choice A is not correct because the author states that our solar system is bare of life. Choice B is not correct because the evidence is not encouraging. Choice D is not correct because the search takes us to other planetary systems.
38. **C** Reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. *Such periods* refers to "some points in history." Choices A, B, and D are not correct because *such periods* does not refer to phrases in the sentences that precede the insert options.
39. **F, D, B** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that supports the major point in Choice B. Choice C is a minor point that supports the major point in Choice D. Choice E is not true because the author entertains the possibility of life based on something other than carbon chemistry.

➤ Listening



Model Test 3, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 9

Listening 1 "Students on Campus"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation on campus between two students.

Q2 Man: I wish I were as sure about my future as you seem to be. I . . . I really don't know what I want to do after I graduate.

Woman: Well, have you talked with a counselor over at the Office of Career Development?

Man: No. . . . I talked to my academic advisor, though.

Woman: That's good, but it's really better to see someone who specializes in helping people make career decisions. You see, an academic advisor is there to help you work out your academic program. You know, figure out what your major is going to be and which courses to take and all that. But a career counselor has a lot of experience and resources to help you decide what you want to do in the work world. Q1

Man: Did you see a career counselor?

Woman: I sure did. Last semester. I was . . . well, I didn't even know what I would be good at, for a career, I mean. So I made an appointment at the Office of Career Development, and I talked with a counselor.

Man: Do you remember who it was?

Woman: Sure. It was Ruth Jackson.

Man: Oh, but since I'm interested in careers for math majors, probably I should see someone else.

Woman: Not really. Any of the counselors can help you. Look, first I took some aptitude tests and something called a . . . uh . . . I think it was called a *career inventory*. Anyway, I took several tests, and then the counselor gave me some ideas about different careers. I even went to some group sessions with some other students for a few weeks. Mrs. Jackson was the group leader, so, um, that's how I met her, and then I just sort of naturally started making my appointments with her when I needed some advice.

Man: It sounds like it took a lot of time. I'm so busy already.

Woman: Well, it did take time. Probably three hours for the tests, and I think I went to maybe four group sessions, and then I saw Ruth a couple of times. I guess about nine or ten hours probably. But it was worth it. Q3

Man: So, is that why you decided to go into library science? Because of the tests and everything?

Woman: In part. But, mostly it was because of the internship. You see, I also got my internship through the Office of Career Development. And when I was working as an intern in the public library, it all sort of came together for me. I really liked what I was doing, and I realized that I didn't want the internship to end. Q4

Man: And you get paid for working there in the library too, don't you?

Woman: I get paid, and I get credit toward my degree. But even better, I have a job offer from the library where I'm doing my internship.

Man: Wow! Are you going to take it?

Woman: I think so. I have to let them know next week. If I do take the job, I'll have to go to graduate school to get a degree in library science, but I can do that part-time while I'm working, and I had thought about graduate school anyway. So, I'm leaning toward taking the job.

Man: That's great, Anne. I'm glad for you. So, uh, I guess I'd better make an appointment with Ruth Jackson. Maybe she can find me an internship. Q5

Woman: Maybe.

Audio 1. What are the students mainly discussing?
Answer **B** Choices A and C are mentioned in reference to the main topic: the advantages of career counseling for the man.

Audio 2. What is the man's problem?
Answer **C** He does not know which career to choose.

Audio 3. Why does the woman tell the man about her experience?
Answer **A** Because the woman's experience was positive, she probably told the man about it in order to demonstrate the benefits.

Audio 4. What is the woman's attitude toward her internship?
Answer **C** She thinks that it is a very positive experience.

Audio 5. What will the man probably do?
Answer **B** He will go to the Office of Career Development [to see Ruth Jackson].

Listening 2 "Sociology Class"

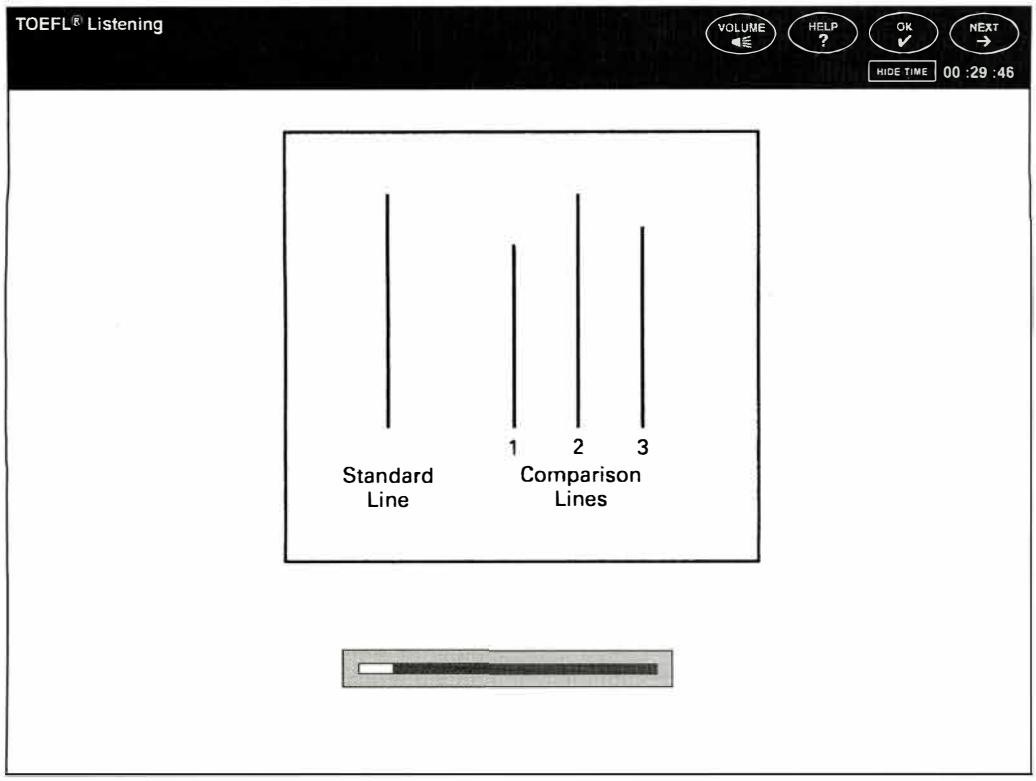
Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a sociology class.

Professor:

Q6 Social influence involves the changes in behavior influenced by the actions of other people. Social influence can come about for a variety of reasons, on a continuum from mere suggestion to, in the more severe form, well, to torture. How does social influence work? Well, first we must become aware of a difference between ourselves and the values or behaviors of other people. There are a great many studies of social influence that demonstrate how the presence of others can cause us to change our attitudes or actions. Studies show that people eat more when dining with others than, and I'm talking about dining out here, so they eat more in the company of others than they do when they're alone. They also run faster when others are running with them. There's even some interesting research on social influence among animals with similar results to those of human studies.

Probably one of the most interesting aspects of social influence is the pressure for conformity. Conformity is a process by which an individual's opinion or behavior moves toward the norms of the group. In a classic study by Solomon Asch, seven people were shown cards with three lines drawn on them. Here's an example:



So, they were shown the lines, and then they were asked to select the line among the three that matched the standard line. Here's the standard. So there's no question as to the comparison. This has to be easy, right? Wrong. You see, Asch enlisted the cooperation of six of the seven participants in the experiment. On the first card, the six respond correctly—they identify the lines of the same length—so the seventh person, who is the only real subject in the experiment, well, the seventh person answers correctly, in agreement with the others. But on the next card, four of the cooperating participants choose an incorrect answer, but they're in agreement, so the problem for the subject is whether to conform to the opinion of the peer group, even though the answer is in conflict with the answer that the subject knows to be correct. Q10

So what do you think happened? Well, subjects who were tested alone made errors in answers fewer than 1 percent of the time. This was the control group. But of those tested in groups of seven, let's see, uh, 75 percent yielded at least once to conform to a group answer that was clearly incorrect, and on average, subjects conformed to the group in about 37 percent of the critical trials. This means that they were bringing their behavior into agreement with group norms in spite of what they were seeing. Q7

Later Asch manipulated the size of the control group . . . I'm sorry, the experimental group . . . to see whether group size would affect pressure, and it did, but probably less than you might expect. Um . . . groups of four demonstrated about the same results as groups of eight. Interestingly enough, a unanimous agreement by the group was more important than the number. In other words, a unanimous opinion by three exerted more pressure to conform than a majority of seven with a dissenting opinion in a group of eight. Q8

Similar experiments have been performed in various countries, among diverse cultural groups, with, comparable results. Of course, people in cultures that emphasize group cooperation tended to be more willing to conform, but remember that many of the original studies were done in the United States where there's a high value placed on individualism. In an interesting variation on the study, Abrams found that conformity is especially strong when the group is selected from among those people that the subject clearly identifies with, either because they have characteristics in common or . . . or they know each other and interact in a peer group outside of the experimental situation. Q7

So what does all of this mean in the real world? Well, since group members can influence one another to conform to the opinion of the group, decisions of a group may be called into question. What about decisions by political committees or parliaments? What about juries who are charged with convicting or acquitting an accused defendant? Clearly, social influence will play a part in these critical group decisions.

Also interesting is the fact that after a decision is made by a group, there's a tendency to solidify, and by that I mean that the group becomes even more convinced of the validity of the group opinion. This may happen because individual group members who strongly support the group tend to be more popular with the group members. Q9 Q11

Audio 6. What is the main topic of the lecture?
Answer **C** The influence of groups on individual behavior

Audio 7. According to the professor, what two results were reported in the Asch and Abrams studies?
Answer **B** Subjects conformed to group opinion in more than one-third of the trials.
C When the subject knows the group socially, there is greater pressure to conform.

Audio 8. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Later Asch manipulated the size of the control group . . . I'm sorry, the experimental group . . . to see whether group size would affect pressure, and it did, but probably less than you might expect."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "I'm sorry, the experimental group . . . "

Answer **C** She needed to correct what she had said in a previous statement. Professors occasionally misspeak, apologize briefly, and provide the correct information.

Audio 9. What generally happens after a group makes a decision?
Answer **C** As a whole, the group is even more united in its judgment.

Audio 10. Based on information in the lecture, indicate whether the statements describe the Asch study. For each sentence, click in the YES or NO column.

Answer

		Yes	No
A	Only one subject is being tested.	✔	
B	The cards can be interpreted several ways.		✔
C	Some of the group collaborate with the experimenter.	✔	

Audio 11. What is the professor's attitude about the studies on social influence?
Answer **B** She appears to be very interested in them. Her tone indicates interest and she cites some of the facts as "interesting."

Listening 3 "Art History Class"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an art history class.

Professor:

Q12 Sorry about the tests. I don't have them finished. They just took longer to grade than I thought they would. So . . . I'll have them for you next time. Okay then. Let's begin our discussion of the ballet. Q13 If you read the chapter in your text, you already know that in 1489, a performance that was something like a dinner theater was organized to celebrate the marriage of the Duke of Milan, and . . . a dance representing Jason and the Argonauts was performed just before the roasted lamb was served. By the way, it's interesting that the dance was called an *entree* and that name has been retained for courses in meals. Anyway, about the same time, outdoor entertainment, you know . . . parades and equestrian events . . . they were becoming more popular, and we have evidence that they were referred to as "horse ballets."

Student 1:

So this . . . the horse ballet . . . was it the first time the term "ballet" was used?

Professor:

Q14 Right. The actual term in Italian was balletti, which meant "a dance done in figures." And it was characterized by the arrangement of the performers in various patterns. Actually, the balletti were staged versions of the social dances that were popular at court, and the steps . . . the basic movements . . . they were walking, swaying, and turning . . . so they combined in a variety of sequences, each of which was named so that they could be referred to in the directions for individual dances. In fact, specific instructions for the placement of the dancer's feet probably provided the first, . . . the first record of the five positions of classical ballet. Question?

Student 2:
Sorry. I'm trying to get clear on the dancers. Um . . . could you explain what the book means about court dancing and, uh . . . I'm not saying this very well.

Professor:
I think I know where you're going. You see, the directions that were written down were intended as a reference for social dancing, but they were important in the history of ballet because the theatrical dances or entertainments that preceded ballet were . . . not performed by professional dancers. Members of the court danced for the entertainment of society, and in general, the performances were in the central halls of castles and palaces with the audience seated in galleries above so that the floor figures could be seen when the people looked down. But back to your question . . . because of the limitations of the performers and the arrangement of the staging, well, the best way to impress the audience was to keep the steps simple enough for the amateur dancers but the geometrical patterns had to be, uh, . . . intricate and . . . and fresh . . . so the spectators would go away pleased because they'd seen something new. Q15

Student 2:
Oh, I get it now. That makes sense, too, because everyone would be looking down at the dancers.

Professor:
Exactly. Now to continue that thought for a moment . . . by the middle of the sixteenth century, variety shows were being presented on a grand scale in Northern Italy. They included both indoor and outdoor entertainment, and most people called them *spectaculi*. And, uh . . . France had begun to make a significant contribution to the dance form that evolved into modern ballet.

But, to be precise, it was Catherine de Medici who used dance as part of her court entertainments and is credited with the use of the term *ballet*. In 1573 . . . I think it was 1573 . . . anyway, she organized a huge celebration to welcome the ambassadors from Poland who had arrived to offer their country's throne to her son Henri. So she called it the *Polish Ballet*, and the production was staged on a landing at the top of a grand staircase. Sixteen ladies . . . and these would not have been dancers . . . just members of court . . . so they represented the sixteen provinces of France, and they performed a choreographed dance with a variety of floor figures. Afterward, the audience joined in court dances, similar to the ballroom dancing that evolved later. . . . So that's a long answer to your original question.

Student 1: Now I have a question. Q17

Professor: Okay.

Student 1:
You said that the *Polish Ballet* was the first ballet, but I thought the book said the first ballet was *Queen Louise's Ballet*.

Professor:
Good question. Well, I said the *Polish Ballet* was the first use of the term *ballet* for a dance performance, but *Queen Louise's Ballet* is generally considered the first modern ballet. As you'll remember, from the book, the ballet was performed before ten thousand guests, and it was five hours long. When I was doing the research for this lecture, I saw several references to the time, so . . . so I know that this is accurate, but I kept thinking, no one would watch a ballet for five hours. But it must be correct. I can only assume that other activities were going on simultaneously, like a banquet and conversation. Don't you think? Q16

Anyway, what makes *Queen Louise's Ballet* so unique, besides the length, and why it's the first *modern* ballet, is that it was connected by a story line or, in technical terms, it's called *dramatic cohesion*. Each scene was related to the tales of Circe, a Greek enchantress, who used her powers to battle

with man and the gods. The triumph of good, portrayed by Jupiter, over evil, portrayed by Circe, was told in a . . . let's call it a unified production.

Audio 12. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **C** All of the other choices are mentioned in relationship to the main topic: the development of the ballet.

Audio 13. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "So . . . I'll have them for you next time. Okay then. Let's begin our discussion of the ballet. . . . "
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Okay then."
Answer **A** To end his explanation and begin the discussion. Professors often use the word "Okay" as a transition from classroom management activities before the class to the beginning of their lectures.

Audio 14. According to the professor, what does the term *balletti* mean?
Answer **C** A dance done in figures

Audio 15. How did the early choreographers accommodate the abilities of amateur performers?
Answer **A** The steps were quite simple.

Audio 16. Why does the professor mention that he checked several references about the length of *Queen Louise's Ballet*?
Answer **C** He wasn't sure that it was accurate.

Audio 17. What can be inferred about the professor?
Answer **B** He encourages the students to participate.

Listening 4 "Admissions Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between a student and an admissions assistant.

Student: Excuse me, but the secretary referred me to your office.
Assistant: Yes?
Q18 Student: I'm a new student . . . well, actually, I'm not enrolled yet, but I'm trying to get all my admissions applications turned in today.
Assistant: What's your name?
Student: Robert Franklin.
Assistant: Middle initial?
Student: T.
Assistant: Oh, I see. Wait a minute and we'll find out what you have to do. . . . Well, according to the records here, you have your admissions form, a financial aid application, three
Q19 letters of recommendation, transcripts from Regional College . . . so that's everything you need except a transcript from County Community College.
Student: That's what I thought. You see, I took a couple of courses there during the summer because it's close to my parent's house. Anyway, almost all of my first two years is from Regional College, and, uh, that's where I'm transferring from. In fact, the credit for the community college courses appears on the transcript from Regional College as transfer credit, but, uh, it doesn't show my final grades in the courses.

Assistant: Oh, and you haven't been able to register for your courses here at State University because the computer shows that you are missing some of your application materials. Is that it? Q20

Student: Exactly. What I was wondering is whether you have, like a policy for this kind of situation so I could go ahead and register for this first semester while we wait for the transcript to get here. It should be here now. I requested it the same time that I requested a transcript from Regional College, but they're just slow at County Community.

Assistant: That happens sometimes. . . . Do you have a copy of your transcript from County Community College?

Student: Yes, I do. It's right here. Of course, it isn't an official copy. It's stamped "unofficial copy."

Assistant: But I can use this one until the official copy gets here. Here's the best way to handle this. We can give you a provisional admission. That means that you're admitted contingent upon the receipt of your official transcript. That will allow you to register for your courses this semester. When County Community College sends us your official transcript, then I can change your status from provisional admission to regular admission.

Student: Oh, that's great!

Assistant: Is this the only copy you have of your transcript?

Student: No. I have another one.

Assistant: Good. Then I'll just keep this in your file.

Student: Okay.

Assistant: Now the only problem is you can't register for next semester without regular admission status, and you need the official transcript for me to do that, so you still need to keep after them to get everything sent to us as soon as possible. Q21

Student: Right. Well, I'll do that. But at least I have some time to get it done. . . . Um . . . what do I need to do now . . . to get registered, I mean.

Assistant: Just wait here while I enter everything into the computer, and then you can take a copy of your provisional admission along with you to the office for transfer students. They'll assign you an advisor and help you get registered later today. Q22

Audio 18. Why does the student go to the admissions office?
Answer D He is trying to enroll in classes.

Audio 19. What is missing from the student's file?
Answer B A transcript from County Community College

Audio 20. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Oh, and you haven't been able to register for your courses here at State University because the computer shows that you are missing some of your application materials. Is that it?"
Audio Why does the woman say this:
Replay "Is that it?"
Answer B The admissions assistant paraphrases the problem and then asks for confirmation that she has understood it. "Is that it?" means "Is that correct?"

Audio 21. What does the woman suggest that the man do?
Answer D Continue to request an official transcript from County Community College

Audio 22. What will the student most probably do now?
Answer B Go to the office for transfer students to be assigned an advisor

LISTENING 5 "GEOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a geology class.

Professor:

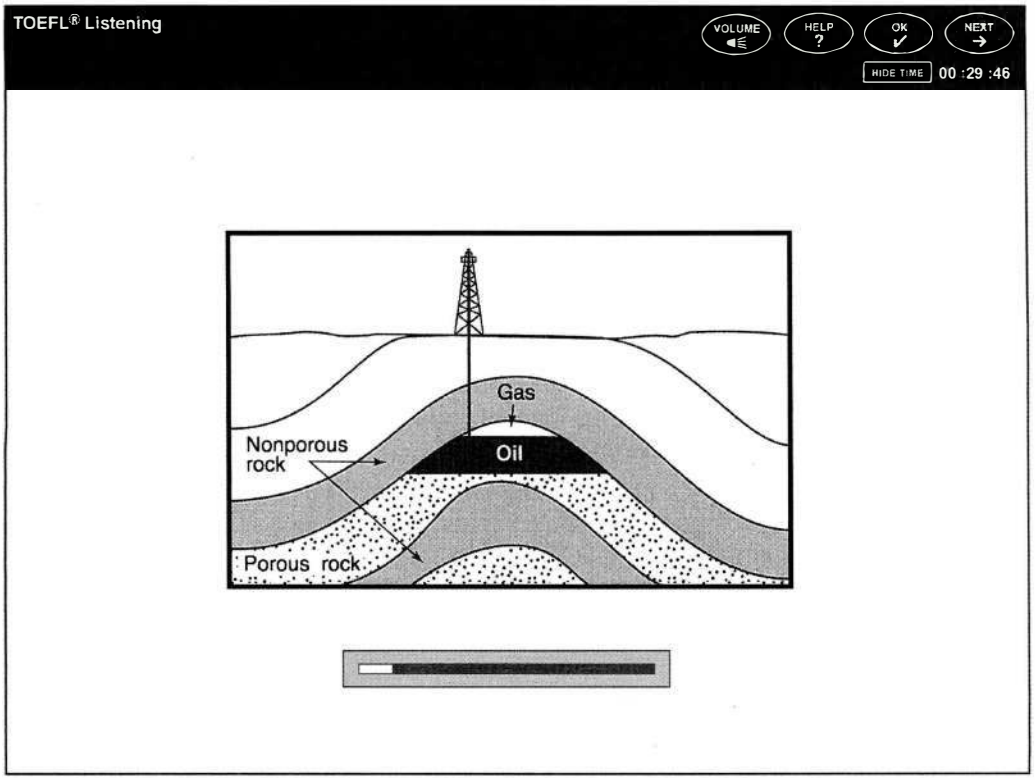
The original source of energy is what? The Sun. Then plants use the Sun's energy during photosynthesis to convert water and carbon dioxide into sugar and oxygen, and they store the energy in the chemicals that the plant produces. When animals eat plants, the energy is transferred to their bodies. So then, the plants and animals die and decay, and they sink to the bottom of the sea or . . . or disintegrate into the soil and then they're covered by more and more sediment as rivers deposit mud and sand into the *sea or the* seas advance and retreat. Of course, it's a very gradual process . . . one that takes place over, well, millions of years. But finally, the organic material begins to transform into the hydrocarbons, and the hydrocarbons eventually become oil and gas deposits. So how does this happen? Well, at first, the oil and gas are mixed with sand and sediment but . . . as the layers on top increase, then so does the pressure. And under pressure, mixtures of oil and sand and water . . . they seep down through the layers of porous rock . . . that's usually sandstone or limestone . . . so they sink down until they reach a layer of nonporous rock, and that's where they pool because they can't pass through the nonporous rock.

Okay. Sometimes there are breaks in the layers of rocks and the breaks allow oil and gas to bubble up and . . . and eventually they reach the surface of the Earth again. So, when this happens, the gas and some oil evaporate into the air . . . but they leave a sticky black tar that appears in pools or pits Q23 on the surface. But most crude oil is found in underground formations, which we call traps. So today, I want to talk about the major types of oil traps. In all the different types of traps, the oil collects in porous rocks, along with gas and water. And, over time, the oil moves up toward the surface of the Earth through cracks and holes in the porous rock until it reaches a nonporous rock deposit . . . and the nonporous rock, remember, it won't allow the oil to continue moving. So the oil becomes trapped under the nonporous rock deposit.

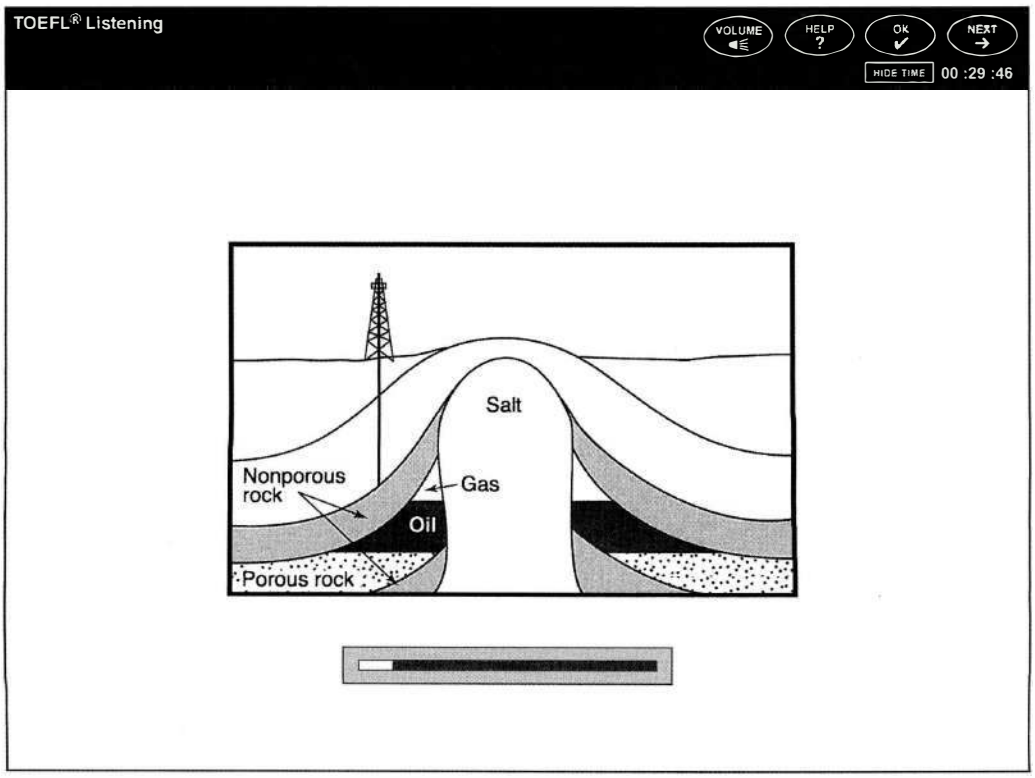
Now think for a moment. While oil was forming and moving, the Earth was also undergoing changes. In fact, there were enormous movements of the crust as the center began to cool. When *folding* happened, well, it was like the Earth fell back onto itself. And when *faulting* happened, it was . . . well, one layer was forced by rocks above down through the layers below. So, you can see that the . . . the repositioning of porous and nonporous rock . . . this repositioning would have affected the movement of oil. When the Earth shifted, cracks would have been opened, and nonporous layers would have been . . . dropped . . . dropped over channels that had previously been used as . . . as pathways for the transfer of oil and gas to the surface.

Q24 Okay, as geologists, we're interested in locating the traps. Now why would that be so? Because
Q25 that's where we'll find the oil and gas reserves. And that's what I really want to talk about today. So, there are several different types of traps, but today we're going to talk about the three most common ones—the anticline trap, the salt dome trap, and the fault trap.

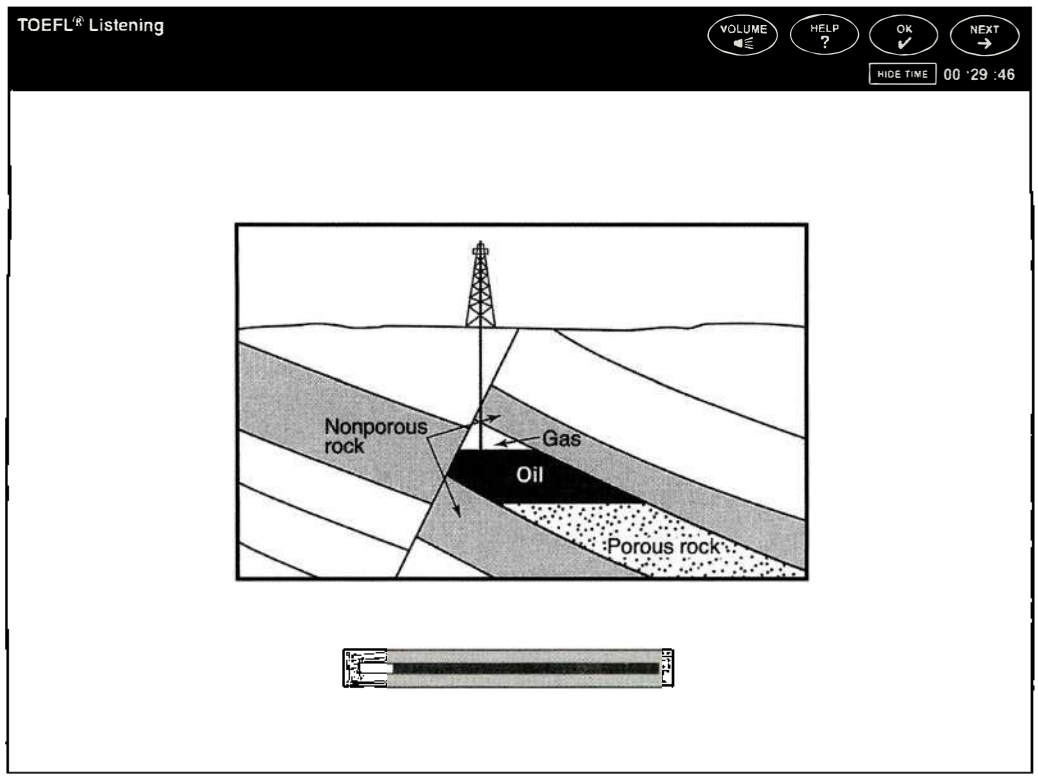
Q26 Look at this diagram. Here's an example of an anticline. As you can see, the oil is trapped under a formation of rock that resembles an arch. That's because the arch was bent from a previously flat formation by uplifting. In this anticline, the petroleum is trapped under a formation of nonporous rock with a gas deposit directly over it. This is fairly typical of an anticline. Because gas isn't as dense as oil, it Q27 rises above it. The dome over the top can be rock as in this example, or it could be a layer of clay. The important thing is that the cap of nonporous material won't let the oil or gas pass upwards or sideways around it.



Now let's look at a diagram of a salt dome. This salt dome shows how a cylinder-shaped salt deposit has pushed up through a layer of sedimentary rocks, causing them to arch and fracture. The oil deposits have collected along the sides of the salt dome. Salt is a unique substance. With enough heat and pressure on it, the salt will slowly flow, kind of like a glacier, but unlike glaciers, salt that's buried below the surface of the Earth can move upward until it reaches the Earth's surface, where it's then dissolved by groundwater or rain. Well, to get all the way to the Earth's surface, salt has to lift and break through many layers of rock. And that's what ultimately creates the salt dome. Q28



Finally, I want to show you a fault trap. Fault traps are formed by the movement of rock along a fault line. This diagram represents a fracture in the Earth that's shifted a nonporous rock formation on top of a porous formation. In this case, the reservoir rock, which is porous, has moved opposite a layer of nonporous rock. The nonporous rock prevents the oil from escaping. Remember, as in all traps, the oil is collected in the porous rock and trapped underground by the nonporous rock.



Geologists study the terrain for indications of possible oil traps. For example, a bulge in a flat surface may signal the presence of a salt dome. Your textbook has a good explanation of how technology assists us in this effort. So I want you to read Chapter 3 before class next time.

Audio 23. What is the lecture mainly about?
Answer **B** The other points relate to the main topic of the lecture: the major types of oil traps.

Audio 24. Why does the professor begin by talking about the process that transforms organic material into oil and gas?
Answer **A** He is introducing the main topic by providing background information. When he begins the main topic, he makes a direct transition: "that's what I really want to talk about."

Audio 25. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Okay, as geologists, we're interested in locating the traps. Now why would that be so? Because that's where we'll find the oil and gas reserves."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Now why would that be so?"
Answer **D** He plans to answer the question. Professors often use rhetorical questions in their lectures. By posing a question that they plan to answer, they help students follow the main points.

Audio 26. Select the diagram of the anticline trap that was described in the lecture. Click on the correct diagram.
Answer **B** An anticline trap is shown in diagram B.

Audio 27. Identify the nonporous rock in the diagram. Click on the correct letter.
Answer **B** In all traps, the oil is collected in the porous rock and trapped underground by the nonporous rock.

Audio 28. According to the professor, what do geologists look for when they are trying to locate a salt dome?
Answer **A** A bulge in an otherwise flat area

LISTENING 6 "ANTHROPOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an anthropology class.

Professor:
Before we start, does anyone have a question about the reading assignment? Yes, Jim?

Jim:
Just wondering whether I have a good handle on the concept of power. The book said it was the ability to exercise influence . . . and control over others.

Professor:
Right. And this can be observed on every level of society, from, well . . . the relationships within a family to the relationships among nations.

Jim:
Okay. But then the book, it goes on to say that power is usually structured by customs . . . and . . . and social institutions or laws, but then I read that power can be exerted by persuasive arguments . . . or coercion . . . or even brute force.

Professor:
Sounds like you've got it. But is there a question?

Jim:
Well, it sounds like, in general, groups with the greatest, uh, resources . . . it sounds like they always have an advantage in power struggles. So I was thinking that power is not really justified because it could involve resistance. I mean some people may oppose the individuals or groups in power but they could still . . . they could still . . .

Professor:
. . . impose *their will*?

Jim:
Yes.

Professor:
So you want to know whether power always involves force?

Jim:
Umhum. Exactly. Because there was a sentence or two in there about legitimate power.

Professor.
Okay. Well actually that is a perfect lead-in to today's lecture. You're right, Jim, that sometimes power is not viewed by society as justified, even though those in control are imposing their will. So sometimes power is not legitimate. But what about power that is accepted by members of society as right and just? That is *legitimate* power. Now we're talking about authority. And that's what I want to focus on today. Then we'll come back to your question again at the end of the class.

Q29
Q32

Okay. When individuals or institutions possess authority, they have a recognized and established right . . . to determine policies, with the acceptance of those over . . . over whom they exercise control. Max Weber, the German classical sociologist, proposed three types of authority in society: traditional, charismatic, and rational or legal authority. In all three types, he acknowledged the right of those in positions of power to lead . . . with the consent of the governed.

Margie:
So, if I get this right, power is the big category, but authority is a kind of power, when the power . . . when it's recognized as the right of the person or the institution.

Professor:
Yes. When those under the authority of a leader or group give their permission. Got it?

Margie:
I think so.

Professor:
But in all three types of authority in society, Weber acknowledged the right of those in positions of power to lead . . . with the consent of the governed. So how did Weber differentiate among the three types of authority? Well, he divided them according to how the right to lead and the duty to follow are interpreted . . . how the power is legitimatized. In traditional authority, for example, power resides in customs and conventions that provide certain people or groups with legitimate power in their societies. Often their origin is found in sacred traditions. The example that most often comes to mind is monarchy in which kings or queens rule by birthright, not because of any particular quality of leadership or political election, just because they have a claim to authority based on traditional acceptance of their position, and in some cases, their unique relationships with and responsibility in religious practices.

Q29

Margie:
You mean like the royal families in Europe or the emperors in Asia.

Professor:
Precisely.

Margie:
Because the queen of England, for example . . . she is the head of the Church of England as well as the monarch. I think that's right.

Professor:
And that claim to authority is traditional.

Jim:
But she really doesn't have much power though, anymore, does she?

Professor:
I see your point, but what is important is not how much power she has but that the power is given to her by the people because of the traditional authority that she claims as the heir to the throne. . . . Now, this contrasts sharply with charismatic authority, which is derived . . . because of personal attributes that inspire admiration, loyalty . . . and even devotion. Leaders who exercise this type of authority may be the founders of religious movements or political parties, but it's not their traditional right to lead. What's important here is that their followers are mobilized more by . . . the force of the leader's personality than by tradition or the law. So when we think of "charismatic" leaders in the United States, who comes to mind? Q31

Jim:
Well, I can't think of anyone who is alive today, but maybe John Kennedy would be an example because he was able to get people behind him. Q30

Professor:
Good example! Kennedy was able to project a youthful and energetic image that people were proud to identify with.

Margie:
Or Ronald Reagan—I prefer Republicans, Dr. Cooper. Reagan had a lot of charismatic appeal and he exercised authority when he was in office.

Professor:
Great. Now we have both parties represented. In any case, going back to Weber, to qualify for charismatic authority, a leader must be able to enlist others in the service of a . . . cause that transforms the social structure in some way, so politics, especially at the highest levels . . . it often attracts charismatic leaders because it offers the opportunity for social change.

Which leaves us with the third type of authority—legal rational authority, or power that is legitimized by rules, laws, and procedures. In such a system, leaders gain authority not by traditional birthrights or by charismatic appeal but . . . rather because they're elected or appointed in accordance with the law, and power is delegated to layers of officials who owe their allegiance to the principles that are agreed upon rationally, and because they accept the ideal that the law is supreme. In a legal rational society, people accept the legitimacy of authority as a government of laws, not leaders.

Margie:
So that would be a judge then . . . as an example of someone with legal rational authority.

Professor:
Well, it might be a judge, but it could be a bureaucrat in an office or even the president, let's say, like Richard Nixon, who was threatened with impeachment because he was perceived as not governing within the law. Do you see what I mean?

Margie:
I think so.

Professor:
Jim, is the difference between power and authority sorting itself out now?

Jim:
It is.

Professor:
Okay then. Some sociologists have postulated that the three types of authority—the traditional, charismatic, and legal rational—that these types represent stages of evolution in society. That preindustrial societies tend to respect traditional authority, but as societies move into an industrial age, the importance of tradition . . . wanes . . . in favor of charismatic authority, with a natural rise of charismatic leaders. Then . . . as the modern era evolves, the legal rational authority, embodied by rules and regulations . . . it replaces the loyalty to leaders in favor of a respect for the law. Of course, other sociologists argue that in practice, authority may be represented by a combination of several of these ideal types at any one time.

Q33
Q34

Audio 29. What is the main purpose of this discussion?
Answer **A** The distinction between power and authority is made in the introduction, but the main purpose of the lecture is to discuss three types of authority.

Audio 30. Why do the students mention Kennedy and Reagan?
Answer **B** They were examples of charismatic leaders.

Audio 31. According to the professor, what two factors are associated with charismatic authority?
Answer **B** An attractive leader
C A social cause

Audio 32. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "But what about power that is accepted by members of society as right and just, that is, legitimate power? Now we're talking about authority. And that's what I want to focus on today."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "But what about power that is accepted by members of society as right and just? That is, legitimate power."
Answer **B** Professors often ask questions to introduce a topic. After the question, she continues, "And that's what I want to focus on today" [authority].

Audio 33. In an evolutionary model, how is rational legal authority viewed?
Answer **A** The most modern form of authority

Audio 34. What does the professor imply about the three types of authority?
Answer **B** Because the professor presents both an evolutionary model and an argument for an inclusive model that combines several types of authority, it must be concluded that sociologists do not agree about the development of the types of authority.

Listening 7 "Library"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between a student and a librarian.

Librarian: Hi, how can I help you?
Q35 Student: Hi, I'm looking for some material on reserve for Business 210.
Librarian: Okay. Well, who's the professor? You see, we keep the files under the professor's name because there are a couple of sections and the requirements are a little different . . .
Student: Oh, okay. It's Dr. Parsons.
Librarian: Umhum. Parsons? I don't see any books . . .
Student: I think it's a DVD.

Librarian: Oh, yes. Here it is . . . Oh, wait, actually, there are two of them. But that's all right. Now all I need is your student ID.
Student: No problem.
Librarian: There you go. Now, these will be due back at the desk in two hours.
Student: Two hours? But that won't even give me time to go home and . . .
Librarian: Oh, you can't leave the library with reserve materials. You have to use them here. But we have some DVD players in the booths behind the reference section. I think there are several free now.
Student: But I have to take notes and, uh, I don't think I can get everything done in two hours.
Librarian: Well, you can't take materials out again until someone else has used them because the professor only left one copy of each. Sorry. Look, maybe two hours will be enough.
Student: I don't think so. These are case studies, and we're supposed to be able to discuss them. Q36
Librarian: Oh, I see. Well, when do you have class?
Student: Tomorrow morning. I know I should have come in earlier, but this isn't my only class. I had an exam earlier today, and I was just waiting to get that out of the way.
Librarian: I see. Well, look, why don't you . . .
Student: Isn't there any way to get an exception to the policy?
Librarian: I'm afraid not.
Student: Oh. Okay then, let me just check out one of the DVDs. That way, if I finish it, I can check out the other one for two hours, right?
Librarian: Sure. That's perfectly fine. And, here's a thought. I don't know if it will work for you since you have a morning class, but if you check out reserve material less than two hours before the library closes, then you can have it overnight . . . Q37 Q38
Student: Overnight?
Librarian: Yes, but you have to have it back when the library opens the next day and . . .
Student: But I could do that. Oh, I'm sorry, you were going to say . . .
Librarian: Well, if you don't return the material to the reserve desk when the library opens, then there's a ten-dollar fine for the first hour and a five-dollar fine for every hour after that . . . that it's late, I mean. The usual fee is one dollar for every hour but when it's an overnight . . .
Student: Ouch.
Librarian: It's a stiff fine because we need students to take the privilege seriously. Otherwise, other students who need to use the reserve materials wouldn't have access to them.
Student: Oh, I understand.
Librarian: And another thing. Sometimes more than one person is trying to use the overnight privilege so . . . so sometimes when you wait until the end of the day . . .
Student: Oh. And there isn't any way to put your name on a list or anything?
Librarian: No, not really. It's first come, first served.
Student: Okay. Okay. Then, I think I'll go ahead and take the one DVD out now because I can still try to get the second one tonight overnight, can't I?
Librarian: Sure. I tell you what. Come back a little before nine. Q39
Student: Okay. Will you be here? I mean, I'd rather come back to you.
Librarian: I'll be here until the library closes.
Student: Well, then.
Librarian: Do you still want to take out one of the DVDs?
Student: Yeah. I might as well get one of them out of the way so I'll only have one left to watch.
Librarian: Wait a minute. Your ID.
Student: Oh, I'm sorry, I thought I showed it to you.
Librarian: You did, but I need to keep it here at the desk until you return the materials.

Audio 35. What does the man need from the librarian?
Answer **B** Material for a class—Business 210, taught by Dr. Parsons.

Audio 36. What is the man's problem?
Answer **B** He needs to prepare for a class discussion.

Audio 37. Listen again to part of a conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I don't know if it will work for you since you have a morning class, but if you check out reserve material less than two hours before the library closes, then you can have it overnight . . . "
"Overnight?"
Audio What does the man feel when he says this:
Replay "Overnight?"
Answer **D** His tone expresses surprise and interest.

Audio 38. What is the policy for materials on reserve?
Answer **D** Materials may be checked out overnight two hours before closing.

Audio 39. What does the librarian imply when she tells the man to return at nine o'clock?
Answer **B** Because reserve materials can be checked out two hours before the library closes, and the librarian tells the man to come back at nine o'clock, she implies that the library will close two hours later, or eleven o'clock.

LISTENING 8 "LITERATURE CLASS"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a literature class.

Professor:
Q40 Today we'll discuss Transcendentalism . . .Transcendentalism . . .which is a philosophical and literary movement that developed in New England in the early nineteenth century. Transcendentalism began with the formation in 1836 of the Transcendental Club in Boston, Massachusetts, by a group of artists and writers. There's evidence that the group was involved in somewhat of a protest against the intellectual climate of Harvard. Interestingly enough, many of the Transcendentalists were actually Harvard educated, but they never met in Cambridge. Remember, at this time, Harvard had only eleven professors, and at least eleven members could be expected to attend a meeting of the Transcendental Club. So their intellectual community was large enough to rival the Harvard faculty.

Q41 All right then. Their criticism of Harvard was that the professors were too conservative and old fashioned. Which, come to think of it, isn't an unusual attitude for students when they talk about their professors. But, in fairness, the classroom method of recitation that was popular at Harvard required the repetition of a lesson without any operational understanding of it. In contrast, the Transcendentalists considered themselves modern and liberal because they preferred a more operational approach to education. Bronson Alcott translated Transcendentalism into pedagogy by encouraging the students to think, using dialogues and journals to develop and record their ideas. Language was viewed as the connection between the individual and society. In 1834, Alcott established the Temple School near Boston Commons and later founded a form of adult education, which he referred to as *Conversation*. This was really a process whereby the give and take in a conversation became more important than the doctrine that a teacher might have been inclined to pass on to students, an approach that stood in diametric opposition to the tradition at Harvard that encouraged students to memorize their lessons.

The Transcendental group also advanced a reaction against the rigid Puritanism of the period, especially insofar as it emphasized society at the expense of the individual—the Puritans, I mean. According to the Transcendentalists, the justification of all social organizations is the improvement of the individual. So, in the literature of the time, the Transcendentalists insisted that it was basic human nature to engage in self-expression, and many interpreted this as encouragement for them to write essays and other opinion pieces. One of the most distinguished members of the club was Ralph Waldo Emerson, who served as editor of the Transcendentalist's literary magazine, the *Dial*. His writing stressed the importance of the individual. In one of his best-known essays, "Self-Reliance," he appealed to intuition as a source of ethics, asserting that people should be the judge of their own actions, without the rigid restrictions of society. You can imagine the reaction of the church, in particular, the Unitarian Church, in which many of the intellectuals held membership. If individuals were responsible for their own code of ethics, then the clergy, and the entire church organization was threatened.

Q42

Q43

Perhaps because they were encouraged to think for themselves, the Transcendentalists came up with several options for living out their philosophies. Many were devoted to the idea of a Utopian society or at least to a pastoral retreat without class distinctions, where everyone would be responsible for tending the gardens and maintaining the buildings, preparing the food, and so forth. And quite a few were involved in some sort of communal living. Brook Farm was probably the most successful of these cooperatives, although it lasted only six years. Brook Farm and some of the other experimental communities brought to the surface the problem that the Transcendentalists faced when they tried to reconcile a cooperative society and individual freedom. Both Emerson and Thoreau declined to participate in Brook Farm because they maintained that improvement had to begin with an individual, not a group.

From 1841 to 1843, Emerson and Thoreau lived and worked together in Emerson's home, exchanging ideas, developing their philosophies, and writing. Upon leaving Emerson's home, Thoreau built a small cabin along the shores of Walden Pond near Concord, Massachusetts, where he lived alone for two years. Devoting himself to the study of nature and to writing, he published an account of his experiences in *Walden*, a book that's generally acknowledged as the most original and sincere contribution to literature by the Transcendentalists.

Q44

But I'm getting ahead of myself. Transcendentalism didn't change the educational system, and it certainly didn't reform the church in any significant way, but it did, in a sense, change the direction of American social and political culture because Transcendentalism evolved from its initial literary roots into a force that shaped the way a democratic society was interpreted on the North American continent.

Q45

Audio 40. What does this lecturer mainly discuss?
Answer **A** Transcendentalism

Audio 41. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "All right then. Their criticism of Harvard was that the professors were too conservative and old fashioned. Which, come to think of it, isn't an unusual attitude for students when they talk about their professors."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Which, come to think of it, isn't an unusual attitude for students when they talk about their professors."
Answer **A** Her tone implies that she is joking with the students.

Audio 42. According to the professor, what was true about the Puritans?
Answer **C** They believed that society should be respected above persons.

Audio 43. Why did the church oppose the Transcendental movement?
Answer **A** The authority of the church would be challenged by a code of personal ethics.

Audio 44. Why did the professor mention *Walden*?
Answer **B** It is considered an excellent example of Transcendental literature.

Audio 45. According to the professor, what was the most lasting contribution of Transcendentalism?
Answer **D** Political changes

LISTENING 9 "GENERAL SCIENCE CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a general science class.

Professor:
Q46 Okay. This is a general science course, and as such, the first thing I want you to understand is the scientific method. In your book, the definition of the scientific method is "an organized approach to explaining observed facts, with a model of nature that must be tested, and then modified or discarded if it fails to pass the tests." So let's take that apart and talk about it. What are observed facts? Anyone?

Student 1: I'll try.

Professor: Okay.

Student 1: Isn't a fact supposed to be a statement that everyone agrees on?

Professor: So you would say that a fact is objectively true.

Student 1: Yeah. That's what I mean.

Professor:
Okay. That sounds good, but what about this . . . we consider it a fact that the Sun rises each morning and the Earth rotates. But facts like that are not always agreed upon. Look, when we say that the Sun rises each morning, we assume that it is the same Sun day after day—an idea that might not have been accepted by ancient Egyptians, whose mythology taught them that the Sun died with every sunset and was reborn with every sunrise. Now, let's consider the case of the Earth's rotation. Well, for most of
Q47 human history, the Earth was assumed to be stationary at the center of the universe. So, as you can see, our interpretations of facts often are based on beliefs about the world that others might not share. Still, facts are the raw material that scientific models seek to explain, so it's important that scientists agree on the facts. How can we do that?

Student 2:
How about this . . . a fact has to be verified, I mean, that's where the testing comes in, so we have to be able to test a model, but we have to be able to test a fact, too, right?

Professor:
Now you're on the right track. In the context of science, a fact must therefore be something that anyone can verify for himself or herself, at least in principle. So, even though the interpretation may be different, some interpretation of the Sun is there every morning, and that can be verified. Then, a model is proposed to explain the facts. And a model is...

Student 3: . . . an explanation of the facts.

Professor:
Right. Once the facts have been observed, a model can be proposed to explain them and not only explain what is obvious but also make predictions that can be tested through further observations or experiments. Let's go back to Ptolemy's model of the universe, which assumed that the Earth was the center of everything. Okay, that was a useful model because it predicted future locations of the Sun, Moon, and planets in the sky. However, although the Ptolemaic model remained in use for nearly 1500 years, eventually it became clear that its predictions didn't quite match actual observations—a key reason why the Earth-centered model of the universe finally was discarded.

Student 2: So models are discarded when they don't match the observations. Q50

Professor:
Exactly. And new models are proposed to explain the facts in a better or more inclusive way. Okay, how does a model achieve the status of a theory?

Student 1:
Well, I guess sometimes the model doesn't fail, you know, it gets repeated by many experiments and the, uh, the uh, predictions are verified.

Professor:
So, when a prediction is verified . . . repeated, then we start to assume that the model is a valid representation of nature, and when that happens with many experiments and a number of different researchers, then the model achieves the status of a scientific theory.

Student 2: But . . .

Professor: Yes? Jerry?

Student 2: Well, the problem is that theories get discarded, too, don't they?

Professor:
Absolutely. Because it isn't really possible to prove that a theory is true beyond all shadow of a doubt. And that's good because doubt is a cornerstone of science. Even a well-researched and presented theory should undergo continuous challenges from the scientific community, with further observations and experiments.

Student 3:
I'm sorry. Did we mention the term *hypothesis*? Does that fit in with a model or a theory?

Professor:
Glad you brought that up. A proposed model is often called a hypothesis, and that just means that the scientist is making an educated guess that the model's predictions will bear up under testing.

Student 3: So a hypothesis is a proposed model. Q48

Professor:
Right. But let's put this all together, shall we? Step 1 is *observation*, the collection of data, that is, observations. Step 2 is *hypothesis* or a model to explain the facts and to make predictions. Step 3 is *additional observations* and *experiments*. And here's the important part, when the predictions fail, then we recognize that the model is flawed, and we have to revise or discard it, but when the predictions are verified on a consistent basis, then we consider the possibility that we have a true representation of nature and we elevate the model to the status of a theory.

Student: So step 4 is the *theory*?

Professor:
Right. But, even then, the theory must undergo step 5 . . . that's further observations, experiments, and challenges. Okay so far? . . . Okay. Now for a reality check. In the real world of science, discoveries are rarely made by a process as . . . as mechanical as the idealized scientific method outlined in your textbook . . . the one that we just summarized. For example, anyone recognize the name Johannes Kepler?

Student 2: Sure. Didn't he propose the laws of planetary motion?

Professor:
Q49 He did, in about 1600. But instead of verifying new predictions on the basis of his model, he tested
Q51 the model against observations that had been made previously. And . . . and . . . like most scientific discoveries, Kepler's work involved intuition, collaboration with others, moments of insight, and luck. And eventually, other scientists made a lot of observations to verify the planetary positions predicted by his model.

Student 1: So the . . .

Student 2: . . . Then

Student 2: Go ahead.

Student 1: So the scientific method in the book . . . that's not really the way it happens a lot of the time?

Professor:
Okay, let's put it this way . . . the scientific method is a process that we need to keep in mind as we do the work of scientists, but we should also understand that it's an idealized process for making objective judgments about whether a proposed model of nature is close to the truth. And we should also keep in mind that in the work of scientists, other factors are also brought to bear on those ideal steps in the process.

Audio 46. What is this discussion mainly about?
Answer **D** The scientific method

Audio 47. Why did the professor give the example of the ancient Egyptians?
Answer **B** To prove that facts may be interpreted differently

Audio 48. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "So a hypothesis is a proposed model."
"Right. But let's put this all together, shall we?"
Audio Why did the professor say this:
Replay "But let's put this all together, shall we?"
Answer **B** He is beginning a review of the process. Professors often use the phrase "put it together" when they are summarizing, restating, and clarifying several parts of a concept.

Audio 49. According to the professor, what did Kepler do to verify his theory of planetary motion?
Answer **C** He used prior observations to test the model.

Audio 50. What can be concluded from information in this discussion?
Answer **A** A model does not always reflect observations.

Audio 51. What technique does the professor use to explain the practical application of the scientific method?
Answer **B** An example of Kepler's work, which included intuition and luck.

➤ Speaking



Model Test 3, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 10

Independent Speaking Question 1 "Advice"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: The older generation often gives advice to younger family members. Describe a valuable piece of advice that an older person gave you. Why did it help you?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Climate"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Some people enjoy living in a location that has a warm climate all year. Other people like to live in a place where the seasons change. Which type of climate do you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Withdrawal from Classes"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A new policy for withdrawal from classes at the university has been established. Read the policy in the college catalogue [printed on page 336]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to the students discuss the policy with each other.

Woman:	The difference in this policy from the old policy is . . . now you only have three reasons to request a full refund after the first week . . . illness, death in the family, or military service.
Man:	Right, but that about covers it, don't you think?
Woman:	Not really. In the old policy, you could drop out to help your family. Look, let's say that your mother's sick. She's not dying but she needs care. Then what? If you drop out to help her, you just lose your tuition.
Man:	Oh, I see. So you think that there should be more flexibility.
Woman:	Yeah. I think every case should be decided on its own merits. This policy is too . . . too . . .
Man:	Too narrow?
Woman:	Too rigid. I think at least some students will have other good reasons to withdraw and they'll just have to take a partial reimbursement because they won't be able to document their eligibility. I'd like to see a procedure, you know, a way to petition for eligibility. . . . I'd like to see that added to the policy.

Narrator 1: The student expresses her opinion of the policy for reimbursement. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Ballads"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about ballads [printed on page 337]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a music appreciation class. The professor is talking about the ballad of "Barbara Allen."

Professor:
There are countless versions of the ballad of "Barbara Allen," and although it probably originated in the British Isles, versions are found not only in the British colonies but also in many other countries, including Italy and several countries in Scandanavia. In fact, there are almost 100 versions in the United States alone. But the version that I'm going to play for you today is the traditional Child Ballad number 84 from the reference *English and Scottish Popular Ballads*. In it, the narrative tells the story of Barbara Allen and the young man who fell in love with her. After Barbara Allen rejects him, he dies of unrequited love. And the day after his funeral, Barbara Allen dies of regret. They are buried beside each other in the churchyard, and a red rose grows from his grave. A briar grows from her grave . . . uh, that's a thorny bush . . . and as they twine around each other . . . the rose and the thorn . . . they form a lover's knot. So we see that the lovers who were not united in life are together in death. The music is repetitive, like most ballads, and also important to identifying it as a ballad, the second and the fourth lines of each four-line stanza rhyme.

Narrator 1: Define a ballad, and then explain why "Barbara Allen" can be classified as a ballad.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "The Assignment"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Friend: I thought you liked your history class.

Student: I do. I mean, it's a lot of reading and everything, but I enjoy that, even though it takes a lot of time.
Friend: So what's the deal?
Student: Okay, last week Dr. Norman assigned a paper.
Friend: Well, I think that's fairly standard for a history class.
Student: Sure. It's on the syllabus, but . . . but it isn't very clear what he wants us to do. And he didn't really clarify it when he talked about it in class. So, I don't know how to start.
Friend: Hmmn. When's the paper due?
Student: At midterm, so I have time, but still, I'd like to get going on it.
Friend: Yeah, but like you say, you have time. Just wait until next week and ask about it again in class.
Student: I could, but won't he be . . . insulted? After all, he already explained it once.
Friend: Oh, I don't think he'd mind. He'd probably be glad that you want to do it correctly.
Student: I don't know. Maybe he would.
Friend: But anyway, if you don't want to do that, you could just make an appointment to talk about your ideas for the paper, you know, to get some direction about the topic. That way the conversation will just naturally lead into an explanation of how he wants you to do it.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Ultrasound"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a general science class. The professor is discussing the way that ultrasound works.

Professor:
Okay, let's talk about how ultrasound works, and how it's used in medical diagnosis. To make a long story short, ultrasound is very similar to the sonar devices we discussed last week. Remember the system that emits ultrasonic pulses and listens for reflected pulses from objects in the ocean? Well, ultrasound is really just another type of sonar. The sound waves used in the ultrasound are created by a crystal that moves rapidly back and forth, creating a sound, but you can't hear it because the frequency is so high. The doctor places the device, the transmitter that sends out the sound waves . . .

the doctor puts that on the surface of the skin so the sound waves are transmitted inside the body. And when this high-frequency sound is directed to a particular area, then the tissue and organs reflect the sound. The patterns of sound that are reflected are processed by a computer, and an image appears on the screen. And that tells the doctor whether there is something unusual there or not. This is very important in the diagnosis of cancer . . . to know whether a tumor is present . . . and also as a noninvasive way to monitor the growth of a fetus during pregnancy.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the kind of information that ultrasound can provide, and then explain the way that ultrasound is used in medical diagnosis.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 3, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 11

Integrated Essay "Emperor Penguins"

First, read the passage [printed on page 341] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
Although the reading passage about emperor penguins in your textbook was correct for the time that it was written, new data have come to light since the book was printed. In fact, we now know that all three assumptions in the passage about this interesting species are probably not true.

First, let's consider whether emperor penguins are monogamous. That is, do they mate for life? With greater observation, we find that the answer is yes and no. Yes, they're monogamous for the mating season and the pair is committed and diligent in caring for their chick, but we also now know that if they don't locate their previous mate the following year in a timely way, they'll mate with another penguin. So this means that it would be more correct to consider them serially monogamous, mating with *one* partner per season. When the pair *can* find each other within a tight time frame, then, yes, they'll continue to mate with the same partner, but it looks like that happens about only 15 percent of the time.

Now let's look at nest loyalty. A new study by the University of Minnesota used satellite images to verify that emperor penguins were returning to the same location to nest every year. Researchers found six instances in which the penguins didn't return to the same rookery and, in addition, found

a *new* rookery that appears to confirm the relocation of an entire colony. This could also account for the disappearance of banded birds from previous studies. And, of course, this disproves the previous assumption about penguins returning to the same rookery every year.

Last, let's revisit the issue of whether emperor penguins are endangered. Just a few years ago, they were given endangered status under the Endangered Species Act because models of declining numbers estimated that their population could decline by as much as one-third by the end of the century. Disappearing sea ice and radical changes in the marine life in current feeding habitats have convinced the scientific community that emperor penguins *must* be protected if they're to survive.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 3, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 12

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "Advice"

My grandfather gave me valuable advice about my reputation. He taught me to value it above material things. When I was a child, I was attracted to my grandfather's watch, and he explained that if the watch failed to keep accurate time, he'd get a new watch. Later, I begged to drive my grandfather's car because it was a much better car than my parents had. He let me drive it occasionally, and he always asked me to be careful. He also made me understand that the *car* could be replaced but . . . but *I* could never be replaced. And he told me that his most prized possession was his good reputation and that was why he had good friends and a successful business . . . I'd like to be like my grandfather someday so that's why I need to guard my reputation as my most prized possession.

Checklist 1

✔ The talk answers the topic question.
✔ The point of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Climate"

I've lived in a place with a warm climate all year for most of my life, but one year my family moved to England where the seasons change. I thought it was a beautiful place, and I enjoyed the experience, but I was glad to be home again. In the fall, we don't have to rake leaves; in the winter, we don't have to shovel snow; and in the spring, we don't have to drive in the rain. So a warm climate is a lot less work. And I can wear the same clothes all year in a warm climate, but in a place where the seasons change, you can't. I remember putting my coats and heavy clothes away when the weather got warmer in England. Best of all, I'd like to see the sun shine every day. So, maybe I'm just used to a warm climate, but for now, that's my choice.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Withdrawal from Classes"

The woman thinks that the eligibility requirement for a 100 percent refund after the second week of classes should be changed. Right now, to qualify, you have to show documentation of serious illness, injury, death of a family member, or military duty. She points out that there could be a case when a student's family might need help but, uh, the . . . the circumstances wouldn't be covered by the policy. Um, she suggests that there should be a way to petition for full reimbursement by explaining the situation, and, uh, each case should be decided based on the circumstances, not on such a limited number of possibilities. So . . . her solution to the problem would be to add the option of petitioning for full refund . . . by explaining the reason for requesting an exception.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Ballads"

A ballad is, and I am quoting here, "a poem that tells a story and is sung to music." Characteristic of most ballads is the rhyming of the second and fourth lines. And usually ballads are part of an oral tradition, which, uh, it means that over the years, the song is revised as it's passed down from one musician to another. Some popular ballads have been written down and assigned a . . . assigned a number in a reference book by . . . Child. Now, "Barbara Allen" is classified as a ballad because it tells a story about lovers who *were* not *un*ited in *life* but are joined symbolically in *death* by the rose and the thorn on their graves. The second and fourth lines of the song rhyme, and many versions of it are found around the world. One version is listed in the Child reference as number 84. So you see, "Barbara Allen" is not only a ballad. It's a very popular one.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "The Assignment"

The woman's problem is that she doesn't understand the assignment in her history class. She knows that she's supposed to write a paper, but she isn't sure what the professor wants her to do. Um . . . her friend suggests that she ask about the requirements for the paper in her class next week, but she's concerned that the professor will be offended because he's already explained it once. His other recommendation is to make an appointment to talk about the topic for her paper because, during the consultation, she could ask questions. I think the woman should make an appointment to see the professor in his office as soon as possible so she'll have more time to work on the paper after she understands the assignment better. I also think it'd be best to be direct about asking how to complete the requirement because most professors are willing to help students who show an interest in the class.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Ultrasound"

Ultrasound is like sonar because it sends out ultrasonic, uh, ultrasonic pulses, and then it picks up the reflections of the pulses. In the case of ultrasound, a crystal creates sound waves at such a high frequency that you can't hear them, but when the device that transmits the waves is placed on some part of your body, it sends the waves inside to the part that's being tested, and the organs reflect the sound waves. So that informs the doctor if you have anything suspicious there. Um, ultrasound is very useful in locating cancer and other growths, but it's also used in prenatal care to examine the baby in the months before it's born. In fact, it's fairly standard to produce images of babies to check their patterns of growth, using ultrasound. So ultrasound is very useful for medical diagnosis because it can provide accurate information without surgery or surgical procedures.

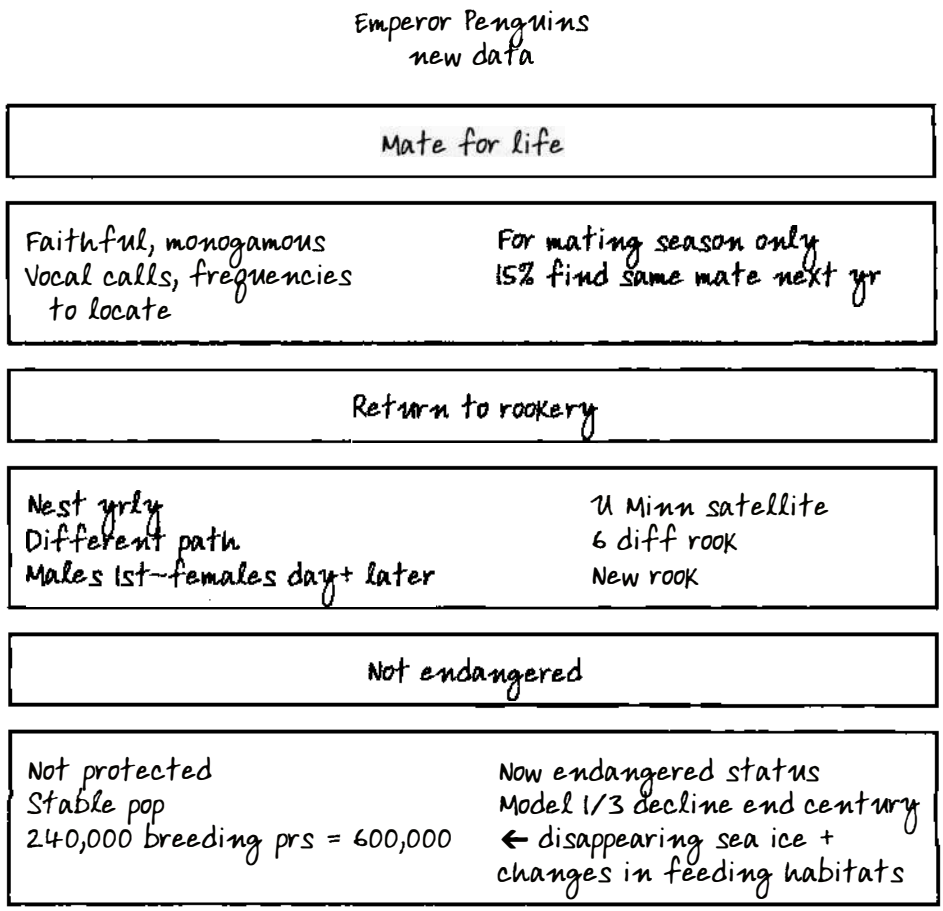
Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Emperor Penguins"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Emperor Penguins"

Although all of the information in the reading was true at the time that it was written, new data have emerged that changes our understanding of emperor penguins. The lecturer mentions three behaviors that need to be reconsidered.

First, emperor penguins do not mate for life, as previously believed. New studies have revealed that they mate for the season and remain committed to their mate and their chick, but, if they do not find the same mate the next year, they will mate with another penguin. Although they use vocal calls to try locating their previous mate, statistically, only about 15 percent find the same mate the following season.

Second, emperor penguins do not return to the same rookery every year to mate. Scientists at the *University* of Minnesota found six instances in which the penguins mated at a different rookery and one instance in which a new rookery was founded in order to relocate a colony.

Third, although emperor penguins were not on the endangered list and their population was considered stable when the passage was published, a current model shows a 33 1/3 percent decline by the end of the century. Taking into consideration the disappearing sea ice and changes in their habitat, emperor penguins have now been included on the endangered species list.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "College Years"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

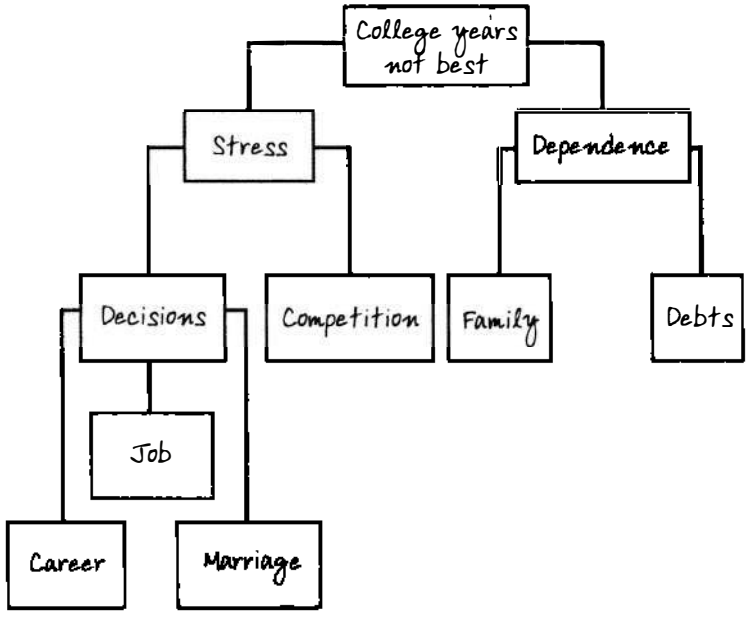
Outline

College years not best

- Stress
  Decisions–career, job, marriage
  Competition
- Dependence
  Family
  Debts

The best is yet to be

Map



The best is yet to be

Example Essay

I disagree that the college years are the best time in a person's life. Admittedly, college often corresponds with a time when people are young, healthy, and physically strong, and those attributes are highly regarded in Western cultures; however, the college years must also be viewed as a period of high stress and a certain uncomfortable dependence.

Stress converges on college students from many directions. First, there is the pressure to choose a major field of study and, ultimately, to select a career, choices that will affect the rest of their lives. These choices often coincide with another life choice—the selection of a marriage partner. In combination, the stress associated with such important decisions can be very high. Second, there is the daily stress from competition in the classroom, exacerbated by staying up too late studying for tests, preparing papers, and reading assignments. It is well documented that college students tend to gain weight and suffer from many stress-related illnesses.

In addition to the stressful environment, most college students are not financially independent. Many rely on their families for funding, a circumstance that is often uncomfortable for young adults. Asking for money usually requires an explanation of why it is needed. In other words, financial dependence for college results in dependence in other areas of life at a time when young people are beginning to think for themselves and are old enough to be independent. Besides the embarrassment involved in negotiating for necessities, there is often a strict budget. For some students, there is also a debt to repay.

As a college student myself, I view this time of life as an opportunity to prepare for the next, and more important, stage of life, when I am independent and productive. I am eager to begin working and earning my own way. I look forward to the years after college with the hope that the best is yet to be.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 4: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "LAYERS OF SOCIAL CLASS"

1. **C** In this passage, *form* is a synonym for "constitute."
2. **A** In this passage, *very large* describes "enormous." ". . . a very small proportion of people" contrasts with very large control. ". . . vast amounts of wealth" also provides context.
3. **A** *Although it is not generally accepted* paraphrases "Despite social myths to the contrary." . . . *your family provides the best prediction of your future wealth* paraphrases ". . . the best predictor of future wealth is the family into which you are born."
4. **B** The author uses the example of the *Forbes 400* to support the statement that most wealthy people inherit their money. ". . . most [wealth] is inherited."
5. **B** In this passage, *expensive* is a synonym for "exclusive." Context comes from the previous reference to "high-priced."
6. **B** "The upper middle class . . . tend to be well-educated professionals or business executives." Choice A is not correct because the lower middle class is composed of workers in skilled trades. Choice C is not correct because the term *nouveau riche* refers to the upper class that has recently acquired money. Choice D is not correct because the upper class is typically a group that has inherited wealth.
7. **B** ". . . an open-class system leads many to think that the majority have a middle-class lifestyle . . . ." Choice A is not correct because they vary widely in lifestyle and in resources. Choice C is not correct because, although the status may be unclear, people do not have a problem defining themselves as middle class. Choice D is not correct because "norm" refers to *average*, not *normal*.
8. **A** In this passage, *mostly* is a synonym for "primarily." Context comes from the root *prime*, which means "first."
9. **C** "Also known as the working class, this class inclues blue-collar workers . . . and many service workers . . . ." Choice A is not correct because they are working in blue-collar and service jobs. Choice B is not correct because service workers and manual laborers are part of the lower middle class, not the lower class that work in minimum-wage jobs. Choice D is not correct because the working class is in the lower middle class, not the lower class.
10. **C** "The underclass includes those who are likely to be permanently unemployed . . . the underclass may become dependent on public assistance or illegal activities." Choices A and D may be true, but they are not mentioned in the passage. Choice B is not correct because the illegal activities cause the increase in crime, not the opposite.
11. **D** Choices A, B, and C are mentioned for the first time in paragraph 1, sentence 1.
12. **A** Generalization and example is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the following sentence. "The working poor constitute a large portion of those who are poor" provides a general statement which is followed by examples, "People of color and women . . . the working poor . . . ." Choices B, C, and D are not correct because they are not examples of *the generalization*.
13. **C, E, B** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that supports the major point in Choice C. Choice D is a minor point that supports the major point in Choice E. Choice F is true, but it is not developed as a major point.

READING 2 "WEATHER AND CHAOTIC SYSTEMS"

14. **A** "Many chaotic systems [like weather] have a kind of underlying order that explains the general features of their behavior . . . ." Choice B is not correct because it was an incorrect assumption. Choice C is not correct because it was also an incorrect assumption. Choice D is not correct because today we have a very good understanding of the physical laws of atoms.
15. **B** In this passage, *specific* is a synonym for "particular."
16. **B** In this passage, *control* is a synonym for "govern."
17. **A** The author uses the example of the car to explain how conditions are used to make predictions. The prediction of the location of the car is compared with the prediction of the weather.
18. **D** "For tomorrow's weather, this slightly different initial condition will not change the weather prediction . . . But for next month's weather, the two predictions may not agree at all!" Choice A is not correct because the change in the initial conditions was minor. Choice B is not correct because it is not mentioned in the passage. Choice C is not correct because computer models are used to deal with all the data for weather prediction on time scales shorter than a few weeks.
19. **C** ". . . chaotic systems are described by nonlinear equations." Choice A is not correct because chaotic systems [like weather] "are not completely random." Choice B is true, but it is not the reason why weather is considered a chaotic system. Choice D is not correct because many chaotic systems are " 'predictably unpredictable.' "
20. **A** "This extreme sensitivity to initial conditions is sometimes called the *butterfly effect*." Choice B is not correct because the flap of a butterfly's wings is used to describe the sensitivity, not to predict conditions. Choice C is not correct because the rate of the wings is not mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the cause and result do not refer to different locations. They refer to changes over time.
21. **B** The author mentions the economy to provide an example of another chaotic system. "For example, the economy is nonlinear because a rise in interest rates does not automatically produce a corresponding change in consumer spending."
22. **D** In this passage, *unorganized* is a synonym for "random."
23. **C** In this passage, *characteristics* is a synonym for "features." Context comes from the contrast with "details" later in the sentence.
24. **D** "Our understanding of chaotic systems is increasing at a tremendous rate, but much remains to be learned about them." Choice A is not correct because "many chaotic systems have a kind of underlying order." Choice B is not correct because "Our understanding of chaotic systems is increasing at a tremendous rate." Choice C is not correct because "details . . . remain unpredictable."
25. **B** Chronological order is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence in sequence within the text. ". . . tomorrow" should precede "next week" and "next month" should follow "next week."
26. **D, F, C** summarize the passage. Choice A may be true, but it is not directly stated in the passage. Choice B is a minor point because it is an example. Choice E is a minor point because it is an example.

READING 3 "BUILDING WITH ARCHES"

27. **A** ". . . the arch is stable only when it is complete, when the topmost stone, the **keystone**, has been set in place." Choice B is not correct because the historical background was provided at the beginning of the passage. Choice C is not correct because the virtues are pointed out before the keystone is mentioned. Choice D is not correct because the passage is about arches, and no alternatives are suggested.

28. **D** In this passage, *essential* is a synonym for "inherent."
29. **D** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 2, sentence 4. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 2, sentence 5. Choice C is mentioned in paragraph 2, sentence 5.
30. **D** In this passage, *practically* is a synonym for "virtually."
31. **C** "This vault construction makes it possible to create large interior spaces." Choices A, B, and D are true, but they are not advantages of the arch.
32. **A** "Earlier churches had used the old Roman forms of round arch and barrel vault so as to add height to their churches." Choice B is not correct because wooden beams characterized buildings before the Romanesque style. Choice C is not correct because the Romanesque buildings added height. Choice D is not correct because the Romanesque style was many hundreds of years later.
33. **C** . . . *a concern because of fire* paraphrases "a threat of fire" and *constraints they imposed on the height of the ceiling* paraphrases "limited the height to which architects could aspire."
34. **B** In this passage, *accomplish* is a synonym for "achieve." Context comes from the contrast with "limited" in the previous sentence.
35. **D** In this passage, *finally* is a synonym for "ultimately."
36. **C** ". . . massive walls that they dared not weaken with light-admitting openings." Choice A is not correct because the Gothic period, which followed the Romanesque, solved the problem with pointed arches that allowed for windows. Choice B is not correct because the author does not mention that windows were difficult to make. Choice D is not correct because the reference to reinforcement at the major points of intersection was characteristic of Gothic, not Romanesque, architecture.
37. **B** "The pointed arch . . . offers many advantages . . . and . . . the arch can be taller." Choice A is not correct because such an arch [pointed] can be much taller than a barrel vault. Choice C is not correct because the nave added space but not height. Choice D is not correct because windows were an additional advantage of pointed arch construction, but they did not extend the height.
38. **D** Vocabulary reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The connection is the reference to "reinforced" in the first sentence and "These reinforcements" in the second sentence. Choices A, B, and C are not correct because there are no vocabulary references to connect them with the insert sentence.
39. Round Arch: **C, D, G, H** Pointed Arch: **A, E, I** Not used: **B, F**

READING 4 "THE EVOLUTION OF BIRDS"

40. **B** ". . . *birds did not fly immediately after they developed feathers* paraphrases "Feathers evolved before powered flight."
41. **A** In this passage, the phrase *made different* describes "modifications." Context comes from the examples in the sentences that follow and from the reference to "adaptations."
42. **D** ". . . birds are toothless, an adaptation that trims the weight of the head . . . Choice A is not correct because the organs are fewer, not lighter. Choice B is not correct because their muscles are large and powerful, not smaller. Choice C is not correct because the head is lighter, not heavier.
43. **A** "Feathers are made of the protein B-keratin, which is also found in the scales of reptiles." Choice B is not correct because feathers are made of keratin, not compared with airfoils. Choice C is not correct because the author does not refer to the text. Choice D is not correct because the only description is the comparison with scales.
44. **C** ". . . feathers form wings into airfoils that illustrate the same principles of aerodynamics as the wings of an airplane." Choice A is not correct because some birds flap their wings only occasionally. Choice B is not correct because swifts, not eagles and hawks, can fly 170 km/hr. Choice D is not correct because the wings are the airfoils, and they are attached to the sternum (breastbone).

45. **D** In this passage, *rules* is a synonym for "principles."
46. **A** In this passage, *simple* is an antonym for "elaborate." Context comes from the references to "complex" in the previous sentence.
47. **B** In this passage, *very important* describes "essential." Context comes from the examples of alterations in the previous two paragraphs.
48. **B** Because three scenarios are discussed to explain how therapods developed flight, it must be concluded that scientists have proposed several different possibilities. Choices A, C, and D are alternative scenarios.
49. **B** ". . . unlike a present-day bird, it [*Archaeopteryx*] could not take off from a standing position." It may be inferred that *Archaeopteryx* had to run or glide to lift off. Choice A is not correct because it had a "long tail." Choice C is not correct because it "retained ancestral characteristics such as teeth. . . ." Choice D is not correct because, although the *Archaeopteryx* was found in Germany, the habitat is not mentioned in the passage.
50. **D** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 1. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 5, sentence 1. Choice C is mentioned in paragraph 6, sentences 1 and 2.
51. **C** Addition is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with previous sentences. Several benefits of flight are explained before the insert sentence. The sentence after the insert expands on the benefit of migrating to avoid extreme climates.
52. **A, C, E** summarize the passage. Choice B is an example of major point C. Choice D is a minor point that refers to major point A. Choice F is an example of major point E.

➤ Listening



Model Test 4, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 13

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation on campus between a student and a professor.

Q1 Professor: So what did you want to see me about Ernie?
Student: My grade. I'm not doing very well in this class.
Professor: Well, that's not exactly true. You were doing very well until the last test.
Student: I got a D. Professor Adams, I've never gotten a D in my life . . . before this, I mean. So that's why I'm here. I hope you can give me some advice.
Professor: Well, from my class book, I see that your attendance is excellent. No absences, so that's not the problem.
Student: No, I never miss class. I'm a serious student. I just don't know what happened on that test.
Professor: Did you bring it? The test?
Student: Yes, I did. Here it is.
Professor: Okay. I think I remember this, but there were almost a hundred tests to grade, so let's have a look at it.
Student: Thanks.
Q2 Professor: Well, Ernie . . . let's see . . . Here it is. Yes, I *do* recall this test. You didn't finish it. You stopped after question 15. So you had 5 questions that were counted wrong because they . . . because you didn't complete the test.
Student: I know. I didn't watch the time, and I just couldn't believe it when you asked us to hand in the tests.

Professor: Yes, I see. But you did a good job on the questions that you *did* respond to.
Student: Professor Adams, maybe you won't believe me, but I know the answers to the questions that I . . . that . . . that . . .
Professor: The ones that you left blank at the end.
Student: Yeah. So now I need some advice about how to bring up my grade because a D is going to make a big difference.
Professor: This test counts 25 percent so . . . you're right. It will bring it down at least a letter. Q3
Student: I know.
Professor: Okay then. The first thing is to learn something from this. You have to find a way to pace yourself through tests or you're going to have this problem again.
Student: I know, and believe me, I learned that already.
Professor: Okay. That's good. Now, uh, what about the grade for this class?
Student: I was hoping you might give me a chance to . . . to maybe do an extra credit assignment. Q4
Professor: Hummm. I don't know about that.
Student: Oh.
Professor: But here's what we *can* do. If you want to finish the test right now, and your answers are satisfactory, then I'll add some points to your grade.
Student: You will? I know the answers. Really I . . .
Professor: . . . I can't give you full credit for your answers. That wouldn't be fair to the other students, but I can add some points, and that should help you somewhat. Q5
Student: Wow. This is great.
Professor: Okay. Just take your test over there and finish it. You had about an hour to complete 20 questions, so, . . . that would be 15 minutes to finish the 5 questions you left blank. And Ernie . . . pace yourself.
Student: I will! Thanks. Thanks a lot.

Audio 1. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer **D** To ask the professor how to bring up his grade

Audio 2. Why did Ernie get a low grade on the last test?
Answer **C** He did not have time to finish it.

Audio 3. What do we know about the test?
Answer **B** It was worth 25 percent of the final grade.

Audio 4. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay " I was hoping you might give me a chance to . . . to maybe do an extra credit assignment."
"Hummm. I don't know about that."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Hummm. I don't know about that."
Answer **D** Her tone indicates that she does not want to do what the man suggests. "I don't know about that" is an indirect way to say no.

Audio 5. What can be inferred about the professor?
Answer **A** She tries to be fair to all of her students.

LISTENING 2 "ANTHROPOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. The professor is discussing agriculture.

Professor:

Let's just pick up where we left off last week. Okay, as you'll recall, earlier theories about the development of agriculture tended to view it as a progressive event, or even as a catalyst for everything from art to industry, but I'm going to share a rather different view with you. From a revisionist perspective, the development of agriculture about 10,000 years ago *didn't* improve the lives of early farmers. On the contrary, when hunter-gatherers abandoned the age-old method of foraging for food and began to cultivate crops, they put their health at risk. Now I know it's just the opposite of . . . it's quite a different viewpoint let's say, so . . . why would this be . . . why would their health decline when agriculture provided people with an efficient way to get more food for less work?

Clearly, cultivated fields yield more food per acre than uncultivated land with undomesticated patches of berries and nuts. Well, first let's consider the conditions that are necessary for agriculture to flourish. In order to have enough labor to plant, tend, and harvest crops, a larger number of people must well, . . . they have to cooperate. That means that the density of the population must increase in the area surrounding the cultivated farms. And, as we know, crowding contributes to the transmission of infectious diseases. So when hunter-gatherers were wandering in small bands, the likelihood of an epidemic was slight, but after the agricultural revolution, tuberculosis . . . and diseases of the intestinal tract . . . these began to reach epidemic proportions in the crowded agricultural communities. And in addition, because the population was no longer mobile and . . . and relied on trade to inject variety into the lives and diets of the farmers, that meant that disease was also transmitted through the exchange of goods.

Now, the revisionists also argue that the content of the diet for early farmers was inferior to that of the hunter-gatherers. You'll recall that hunter-gatherers enjoyed a variety of foods selected from wild plants and game, and in studies of modern tribes that have continued the tradition of hunting and gathering food, it appears that those . . . the hunters and gatherers . . . they have a better balance of nutrients and even more protein than tribes that have adopted agricultural lifestyles. Today, three grain crops . . . wheat, corn, and rice . . . these account for the bulk of calories consumed by farming societies. So, consider the implications. Extrapolating from this and from evidence that early farmers raised only one or two crops, we can conclude that a disproportionate amount of carbohydrates formed the basis of their diets.

Now another interesting series of studies involve the skeletal remains of hunter-gatherers as compared with their agricultural relatives. And one such study from Greece and Turkey . . . it indicates that the average height of hunter-gatherers at the end of the Ice Age was . . . let me check my notes . . . yes, it was 5′9″ for men and 5′5″ for women. And their bones were strong, healthy, and athletic. But, after the agricultural revolution, skeletal remains revealed that height had diminished to a shocking 5′3″ for men and 5′ for women. And evidence from bone samples suggests that they suffered from diseases caused by malnutrition, like anemia. And this is interesting. Further studies from paleontologists at the University of Massachusetts project life expectancies for hunter-gatherers at about twenty-six years, but post agricultural life expectancies were less than twenty years. Let me just read you something from one of the studies by George Armelagos, and I quote, "episodes of nutritional stress and infectious disease were seriously affecting their ability to survive." And he's referring to early farmers here.

So, let's see where we are. Oh, yes. Consider that hunter-gatherers had the advantage of mobility. So if food wasn't plentiful, they broke camp and moved on in search of an area with a larger food supply. And, if one type of food were in short supply, for example . . . well, berries, then they wouldn't eat berries but there would probably be a good supply of another type of food, like nuts. Or hunting might compensate for a bad year for plant foods. But farmers were very vulnerable to crop failures. Remember, most early farmers cultivated only one or two crops. If there was a drought and the grain

harvest failed, they didn't have other resources and that's why they were subject to malnutrition or even starvation. So, as you see, revisionists have made a rather convincing case. To sum it up, according to the revisionists, the development of agriculture put the health of early farmers at risk. Q9

Audio 6. Which of the following is the main topic of the lecture?
Answer **D** The negative effects of agriculture on early farmers

Audio 7. What are two key characteristics of hunter-gatherers mentioned in the lecture?
Answer **A** They were taller than farmers.
C They lived longer than farmers.

Audio 8. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "So, let's see where we are. Oh, yes. Consider that hunter-gatherers had the advantage of mobility."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Oh yes."
Answer **B** To indicate that another point will be made. Professors may use the phrase "Oh yes" when it is something that they have just remembered to add.

Audio 9. How does the professor organize his lecture?
Answer **B** He makes an argument for the revisionist point of view.

Audio 10. Which of the following statements best summarizes the position of the revisionists?
Answer **C** Agriculture contributed to the health risks for early farmers.

Audio 11. In the lecture, the professor describes the relationship between health and agriculture. Indicate whether each of the following is true or false. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

Answer

	Yes	No
A Epidemics were spread by crowded towns and trade.	✔	
B Crop failures threatened the entire population.	✔	
C Wars with invading hunter-gatherers devastated them.		✔
D Unbalanced diets contributed to malnutrition.	✔	
E Hard labor damaged their bones.		✔

LISTENING 3 "BUSINESS CLASS"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a business class.

Professor:

Q12 In your textbook, the author states that "companies sell products but companies market brands." And several of you have asked me about that distinction . . . between selling products and marketing brands. . . . So I thought we ought to take some time to talk about it in class. Okay then, let me give you an example. Suppose that we have a company, and the product is chicken. Then it's easy to understand they we're selling chicken. Maybe we're even selling a special preparation of chicken—barbequed chicken—and maybe we include lemonade and a hot roll free with our barbequed chicken. We may even have the best service. But, we're still selling chicken, even though it's a special preparation and even though we've provided an attractive package with free additional products and good service. All of that is still selling.

But what's marketing then? Well, when we market a product, we have to create meaning that attaches itself to the product . . . something that makes the product more unique and more desirable than other similar products. Maybe this chicken was a family recipe that was handed down from Aunt Ruby. So this isn't just chicken. It's Aunt Ruby's recipe. And eating it is special because she doesn't give the recipe to anyone but family, and being in the restaurant is just like being in Aunt Ruby's kitchen. How you interpret the *experience* is just as important as how you view the product. See what I mean?

Susan:

Yeah. So marketing is why the commercials on television are so hard to understand sometimes. Honestly, sometimes I don't know what they're trying to sell because the commercials—they almost always represent the product as something else—success, sex, youth. So when a car is marketed, for example, it's shown in a situation with a lot of successful people in an upscale neighborhood, or the man who buys the car gets the woman, or the woman who buys the car is young and beautiful, and desirable while she's driving it. You know.

Professor:

Excellent point, Susan. I couldn't have said it better. Because marketing is what attaches that meaning to the product. Something that is important to the consumer. You may not be able to buy youth, but you can buy products, and the message is that these products will get you what you really want. . . . Okay, so marketing is selling an image or a benefit . . . something that's really attractive and larger than the product itself, and by attaching it to the product, we can give that larger meaning to what we want

Q13 to sell. Go back to the car commercial for a minute. We want to sell cars, but we market them by selling something bigger first, maybe success, and by association, we sell the cars.

John:

I get that part. It's pretty clear. But I'm still trying to figure out the difference between marketing and branding.

Professor:

Okay. Let's talk about that for a minute. Branding is similar to marketing because the customer *perceives* the product as being valuable. But branding is more about the customer than it is about the product. It's the personality of the product that people relate to. Think Allstate Insurance, and you'll probably come up with "You're in good hands," and their competitor, State Farm will remind you, "Like a good neighbor, State Farm is there." This is an emotional relationship that customers have with the personality of the product. Rob Frankel is probably one of the most widely respected business consultants in the area of

product branding. In his book, *The Revenge of Brand X*, he says, "business is about relationships, not about transactions." That's not an exact quote, but it's close. And he's so right on. Branding isn't about the product or even about the customer service. It's about the customer's perception of the product and the relationship with the personality of the product. And that's how branding works. Q14

John:
So it's not just a logo.

Professor:
No. It's not a logo, it's not a name, although name recognition or the familiarity of a logo is helpful. It's not a commercial or even a string of commercials in a marketing plan. It's more about loyalty and confidence and all of the things that make a relationship good. Customers have to do more than recognize the brand. They have to be motivated to buy it . . . and continue to buy it, over time. Q15

Susan:
But in the book—I think I remember this—in the book didn't it mention that a company has to have a marketing message to build a brand?

Professor:
Absolutely. It's a telegraphic message—it can't be very long, and it has to be easy to understand, and it has to be a consistent message. I mean that to effectively build a brand, and more importantly, brand loyalty, you have to repeat that message over and over. Say it loud enough and long enough and it starts to sound right, and it starts to echo in your customers' heads when they think about making a purchase.

So what's the result we're going for? It's when the customer will wait until the store gets more of it instead of buying a different brand, or if the price goes up, the customer will pay extra instead of buying a cheaper brand. And this is brand loyalty, which is especially important in an industry when there isn't very much difference in the competing products. Can you think of an example . . . of a product that is more or less the same across brands? Q16

Susan:
That's easy—laundry detergent. There really isn't very much difference from one brand to another.

Professor:
Right. But people tend to buy the same one every time.

Susan:
So that's brand loyalty, and that happens because of the marketing message.

Professor:
And the relationship with the personality of the brand. Okay then. How do we give our products a personality so we can develop a relationship with customers?

John:
Well, Aunt Ruby is someone who we can relate to when we think about chicken.

Professor:
Right . . .

John:
Or . . . I'm kind of thinking about celebrities. It seems like more and more commercials feature them. Especially sports celebrities.

Professor:

Q17 Thanks for mentioning that, John. Celebrity spokespersons are an easy option if a company wants to give a personality to a product. When kids think about Nike shoes, do they want a relationship with a shoe, with Nike, or with the basketball player? With Michael Jordan? It's pretty obvious that Air Jordan shoes are all about the basketball player. And that's taking branding to its logical conclusion—when customers have a relationship with a product and are loyal to the brand.

Audio 12. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **B** Marketing brand-name products

Audio 13. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Go back to the car commercial for a minute. We want to sell cars, but we market them by selling something bigger first, and by association, we sell the cars."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Go back to the car commercial for a minute."
Answer **D** To relate new information to a previous example. Professors often ask students to "go back to" something that was previously mentioned when it is relevant to the point they are currently discussing.

Audio 14. According to the professor, why do consumers develop brand loyalty?
Answer **A** They have a relationship with the personality that the product projects.

Audio 15. How does the professor emphasize his point about branding?
Answer **B** He defines it by contrasting it with related concepts. He explains what branding is *not* in order to clarify what branding *is*.

Audio 16. Why does Susan mention laundry detergent?
Answer **D** To clarify the concept of brand loyalty

Audio 17. According to the discussion, what would be a good way to sell a product?
Answer **B** Hire a celebrity that customers like and relate to

Listening 4 "Students on Campus"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation on campus between two students.

Woman: This is an interesting assignment.
Q18 Man: It *is*. I'm just having a problem figuring out how to write up the report.
Woman: Oh? How much have you done?
Q19 Man: Well, the introduction was easy. I just expanded on the information that the lab assistant provided, you know, about the effects of alcohol on reflexes, and I used the same references that he cited.
Woman: Me, too.
Man: Then I described the experiment in the second part . . . the methods and materials section.

Woman: What did you include there? The lab assistant said that it was important to be specific when we did this part.

Man: Yeah, he did. So I mentioned that there were ten subjects, and five were drinking gin and tonic, but the other five . . . that's the control group . . . they were drinking tonic only, and no one knew which group was which. Then they each had to drive in a computerized . . . what was it called? A . . . a simulator . . . a simulator of a car that was supposed to be moving at 35 miles an hour. And when they saw a bicycle, they were supposed to hit the brakes.

Woman: So far so good. The only thing I can think of that you might want to add is maybe a little more about the subjects. I think they were college students, and they were selected at random to be in the experimental or control group.

Man: Good idea. Especially the part about the random selection. That would be important information if someone wanted to duplicate the experiment, and didn't he say that this section had to be specific enough for another researcher to be able to repli . . . repli . . . Q20

Woman: replicate . . .

Man: Yeah. Replicate the study.

Woman: Okay, so what did you do with the results section?

Man: That's the problem. I can't seem to figure out what to put in the results section and what to use for the discussion section. If I put the chart with the reaction times in the results, should I explain the chart in the discussion, or what?

Woman: Oh, now I see the problem. The chart's fairly self-explanatory, isn't it? I mean, it's really a simple chart to read. Q21

Man: That's what I thought.

Woman: But you still have to explain the chart in the results section.

Man: You do?

Woman: Yeah. Um, look, here's what I'd do. I'd look at the chart and try to come up with a few general statements. For example, um, well, all of the subjects who were drinking alcohol had longer reaction times. Then you can look at the range—1 second to 4 seconds for the subjects who were drinking only tonic, and that's compared with 3 seconds to 20 seconds for the subjects who were drinking gin with the tonic. Q19

Man: So, I'm really just repeating what's on the chart, but I'm explaining it in words.

Woman: Right. But, here's the thing—you shouldn't draw any conclusions in the results section. Just the facts.

Man: You mean, just what happened in the experiment.

Woman: Right. You have to save the conclusions for the discussion section. Q22

Man: Okay. So in the conclusions, I might say that driving after having four drinks . . . if you have four drinks, you probably won't be in a position to avoid an accident.

Woman: That's good. And you could also point out problems in the research, if there are any, or suggestions for future research.

Man: Like doing the experiment with beer instead of hard liquor or repeating the same experiment with three drinks instead of four.

Woman: Sure. That's the idea.

Audio 18. What is the purpose of this conversation?
Answer B The woman is helping the man to write a report.

Audio 19. What is the study about?
Answer A Reaction times for drivers drinking alcohol in comparison with those of nondrinkers

Audio 20. According to the man, why is it important to mention that the subjects were randomly selected?
Answer **B** This information allows another researcher to repeat the experiment.

Audio 21. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Oh, now I see the problem. The chart's fairly self-explanatory, isn't it? I mean, it's really a simple chart to read."
"That's what I thought."
Audio Why does the woman say this:
Replay "The chart is fairly self-explanatory, isn't it?"
Answer **C** She is certain the man agrees with her. A tag question with a falling intonation indicates that the speaker assumes agreement.

Audio 22. Which section includes the conclusions?
Answer **A** Discussion

LISTENING 5 "BIOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is discussing blood types.

Professor:
Q23 Before we begin our discussion of blood types, let's review what we know about blood. According to the textbooks, about half of the volume of blood is made up of blood cells that begin as stem cells in bone marrow. And these stem cells can develop into any of the other kinds of cells found in blood, including red cells, white cells, and platelets. So . . . some stem cells become white cells or leukocytes and these are essential to the immune system. And when bacteria or germs invade the body, some of the white cells form antibodies to resist the infection directly while other white cells begin to work on the chemistry of the foreign substance itself . . . to fight the infection. Now, compared with red blood cells, there are relatively few white blood cells . . . only about one for every seven hundred red cells. And the smallest of the blood cells are called platelets, but what they don't have in size they make up for in numbers. Well, most of us have about two trillion of them and they work to help the blood to clot and . . . , uh, repair holes in the walls of blood vessels. But we need a way to transport the blood, right? Plasma is the liquid substance in blood that transports most of the chemicals . . . vitamins, minerals, hormones and enzymes.

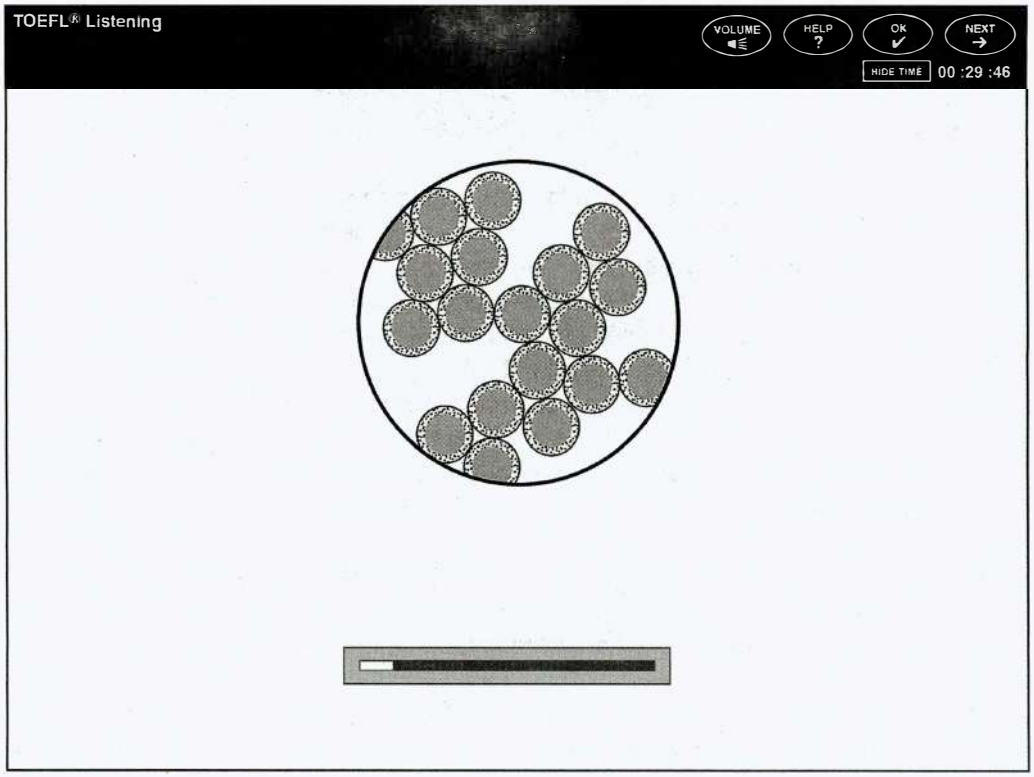
But most stem cells become red blood cells, or erythocytes. They're the most numerous. As I mentioned before, there are about seven hundred to every one white blood cell. So the red cells give blood
Q23 the color red, and they're important for what we call blood typing. And blood typing is what I want to get going on today.

Now blood types are a classification of red blood cells according to the presence of specific substances . . . antigenic proteins and carbohydrates . . . and you can see them under the microscope on the surface of the cells. The four blood types are identified by letters . . . A, B, AB, and O. Blood type A contains red blood cells with the antigen A. Blood type B contains red blood cells with the antigen B. The AB blood type contains both antigens, and the O blood type contains no antigens, but the individual with this type can form antibodies containing either A or B antigens.

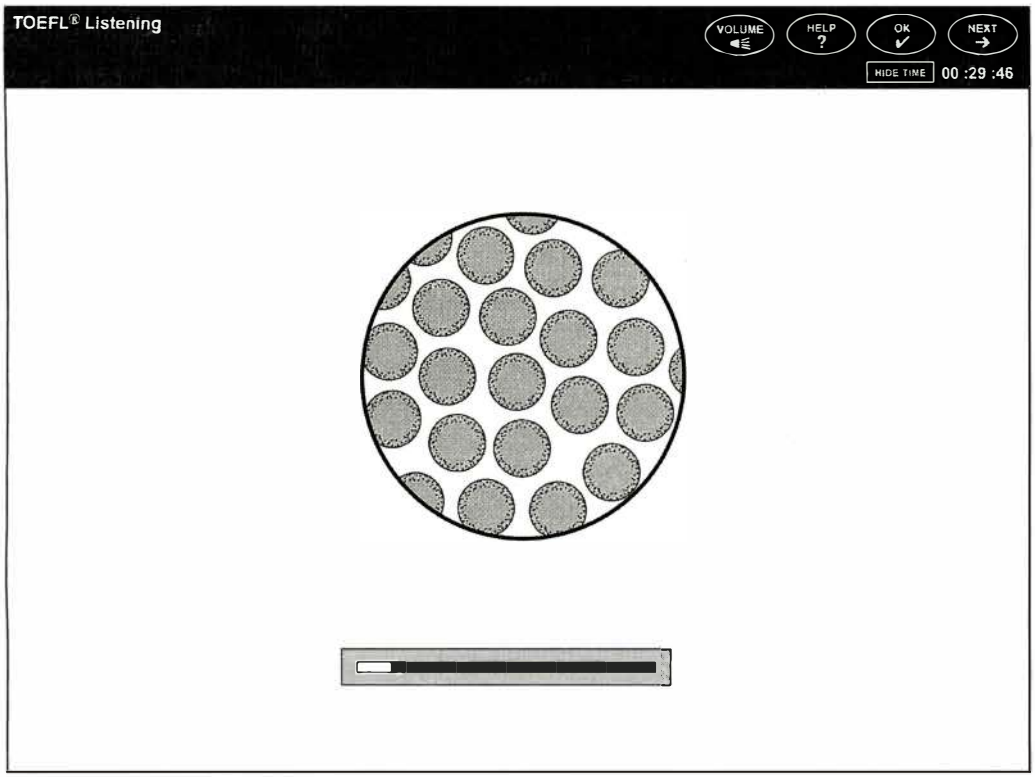
Student 1:
Q24 Excuse me. Is that why the O blood type is considered a universal blood type? Because it can form antibodies with either A or B antigens?

Professor:
Right you are. But, in typing the blood, the antigens are really much more complex than this explanation might suggest. There are at least 300 different antigens. In fact, there are so many potential combinations that an individual's blood type is almost as unique as a fingerprint. But anyway, these basic types are used for determining compatibilities for blood transfusions. Before a transfusion is approved, hospitals always perform a procedure called a cross match, which involves taking a sample of the donor's red blood cells and mixing them with a sample of the patient's plasma. You see, in almost every individual, the plasma contains antibodies that will react to antigens that aren't found on their own red blood cells. So during a transfusion, antibodies in the patient's plasma can bind to antigens on the donor's red blood cells when the donor's blood isn't similar to that of the patient. Well, many minor reactions can occur like fever or chills, but some reactions are so severe that they lead to a . . . a spontaneous destruction of the red blood cells from the donor and that can result in shock or even death. So you can understand why blood typing is so important. Cross matching lowers the risk of a serious reaction. Q25

Okay. In cross matching, we take red cells from one person and plasma from the other person, and we watch to see whether there's a negative response. Take a look at this diagram. It's on page 112 in your textbook. Here's what you would be looking at with a reaction caused by incompatible blood. See how the cells clump together?



The reason that this is happening is because there's a chemical reaction between the protein molecules in the red cells of one person and the plasma of the other. Now look at this slide. This diagram is on the next page in your text and this shows a compatible match with no clumping. Q26



See how the cells are evenly spaced?

Well, of course, doctors prefer to use the same type as that of the patient, but compromises have to be made in emergencies. Type A patients can't receive type B blood, and type B patients can't receive type A blood, but back to your question; since an O donor has blood that's compatible with both A and B antigens, it's the ideal, or as you said, the universal donor. In an emergency, type O blood can be used for patients of all blood types. And fortunately, worldwide, type O is the most common, followed by type A. Relatively few people have type B blood, and the fewest have type AB.

Q27 Student 2: Professor Stephens, can you tell us anything about artificial blood?

Professor:

Well actually, scientists have developed artificial blood that's been used successfully in blood transfusions with human patients. It's a white fluid, chemically similar to Teflon, the material that coats cookware and prevents material from adhering to it. The fluid can be used as a match with all blood types, and so, the cross matching step in transfusions . . . that can be eliminated. So far, artificial blood has done a good job of replacing the red cells by carrying oxygen through the body and eliminating carbon dioxide, but there are no white cells present, no antibodies, no platelets. So, it doesn't clot, and it doesn't remain in the body very long. Still, continuing research along these lines should probably be encouraged. Um, even with cross matching and other precautions, transfusions with human blood involve risks.

Q28

Audio 23. What aspect of blood does the professor mainly discuss?
Answer **D** A discussion of blood typing

Audio 24. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Excuse me. Is that why the O blood type is considered a universal blood type? Because it can form antibodies with either A or B antigens?"
"Right you are."

Audio Why does the student say this:
Replay "Excuse me."
Answer B She is interrupting politely to ask a question.

Audio 25. Why does the professor mention fingerprints?
Answer A To demonstrate that blood types are different for individuals

Audio 26. In cross matching, how does a compatible match appear under the microscope?
Answer A All of the cells are at an equal distance from each other.

Audio 27. Why does the professor mention artificial blood?
Answer B She is answering a question.

Audio 28. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Still, continuing research along these lines should probably be encouraged. Um, even with cross matching and other precautions, transfusions with human blood involve risks."
Audio What does the professor imply when she says this:
Replay "Still, continuing research along these lines should probably be encouraged."
Answer D She agrees that research should continue in spite of problems.

Listening 6 "Orientation Session"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an orientation class.

Professor:
For the most part, college students don't read fast enough to keep up with the demands of their reading assignments. Q29 Let's just say that the typical college student reads 150 to 300 words per minute. Okay. The professor in the Western Civilization course uses the topics from Chapter 1 of the textbook for three lectures the first week of the semester. Each page has about 500 words on it, and that includes space for pictures and drawings. So, at 150 words per minute . . . let me see . . . each page will take more than three minutes to complete, and . . . if my figures are right . . . that's almost three hours just to read the textbook assignment once through. That doesn't even count what you need to do to think and connect the lectures with the book, and you can be sure that there will be additional reading or other assignments besides the lectures and the textbook. . . . Have you heard about the *times two rule*?

Student 1:
Isn't that . . . doesn't that mean a student should spend two hours of study time for every hour of class time in every subject?

Professor:
Exactly. Okay. I think you'll agree that reading faster is important to success in college. So it's only practical to learn to read faster. And that's why I'm going to talk with you about the human capacity *for reading* . . . and some habits that you may have that could be slowing you down. First, I want you Q31 to think about reading like you think about running. The more you run, the faster and farther you can go . . . and the more you read, the faster you're going to read. In fact, researchers hypothesize that our physical capacity to read surpasses our ability to turn the pages. In other words, our brains can take in the information faster than our hands can move. So reading 700 to 1,000 words a minute should be a reasonable goal for almost everyone. That would be quite a time saver, wouldn't it?

Student 1: Yeah. It sure would.

Professor:
Now, let's talk about why most of us probably aren't reading at that speed . . . at 1,000 words a minute . . . why we're not doing that now. We know that we have the capacity—that our brains can take it in. But there are a few habits that prevent readers from reaching that target speed of 700 to 1,000
Q33 words. In the first place, some people are auditory readers. That means that they hear every word in their minds. Some people even move their lips so they seem to be speaking while they're reading. This is a serious problem because we can only speak about 300 words per minute, but, uh, our capacity to read . . . it's many times faster. So if you're hearing the words in your head or moving your lips, you know that you're preventing your mind from processing as fast as it can. Can any of you relate to that?

Student 2: I can. I hear every word.

Professor:
Q33 A lot of people do. Now, another problem is something called *fixations*. Fixations are the actual pauses that the eye makes. We can't see while the eye is moving so we have to stop to take in the text. Everyone has to fixate to see the print, but some people . . . they stop their eyes on every single word and that will really slow you down. So if you're looking at every word or even at every few words, that habit is something to work on. When you're not reading word by word, your mind has to connect and build associations and . . . and patterns. You can do this because so much of a written text is redundant—that means that there's a lot of repetition, so quite a few words can be skipped without losing the meaning.

Student 3: So you're saying we should try to guess the meaning?

Professor:
I think I would use the term *predict* rather than *guess*, but basically the answer to your question is "yes." Now this may surprise you. Using a dictionary is a *good* habit. Right? Well, yes, in moderation. But stopping to look up *every* new word is a *bad* habit because you don't need to know every word in order to understand what you're reading. Remember what I just said about redundancy. So stopping to use the dictionary too often . . . that interrupts your train of thought and prevents you from reaching *your potential* reading speed.

Student 3: I've heard that before and it makes sense but . . .

Professor: But you're afraid to try it?

Student 3: That's probably true.

Professor:
Q32 Well, I'll come back to that in a minute. First I want to point out one more problem. A lot of readers go back over the words they've already read to clarify the meaning. But this is probably the worst habit because when we're repeating twice or even more times, that causes our reading speed to drop and
Q33 it goes to 50 or even 30 percent of our capacity. Did I mention that this is called *regression*? Okay, well this regression not only slows us down, it also makes it more difficult to understand the meaning because, uh, the way that we comprehend . . . we understand by connecting with the next phrase, so going back all the time makes us lose the connections.

Q30 And *this* is what's really important in all of this—research demonstrates a correlation between speed and comprehension. In an overwhelming number of cases, when students increase their reading speed, they also increase their comprehension of the material. So how can *you* do this? First break the habits that are causing you to read slowly. Don't think the words in your head or move your lips to

sound out each word. Don't let your eyes pause on every word. Don't look up every new word in the dictionary. And try not to go back over paragraphs and, uh, sentences that you've already read. But, that's hard to do if you have these habits, isn't it? Especially if you're also trying to read in order to learn a new subject. That's why you're afraid to try it . . . because you have to learn the content in order to pass the course and . . . you don't want to try something new . . . to take a risk.

Student 3: Yeah. That's about the size of it.

Professor:
Well, I understand that. But you can take a risk and try to change some of those habits, but it helps if you do it in a structured environment like the Learning Center. It's free and you'll more than make up for the time you spend in one of the reading courses they offer when you begin to read all of your assignments at twice the speed you're reading them now. Q34

Audio 29. What is this discussion mainly about?
Answer **B** How to read faster

Audio 30. How does the professor organize the discussion?
Answer **A** She cites research to support her arguments. She does this at several points in the discussion.

Audio 31. Why does the professor mention running?
Answer **B** To make a comparison between reading and running

Audio 32. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Well, I'll come back to that in a minute. First I want to point out one more problem."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Well, I'll come back to that in a minute."
Answer **C** She thinks the idea will fit in better later on. Professors often make a comment and then remark that they will "come back" or "get back" to it later. This is usually an indication that the information relates to points that will be made later in the lecture.

Audio 33. The professor mentions several negative habits. Match these habits to the explanations. Click on the habit and drag it to the correct explanation.
Answer

Habit	Explanation
A Fixating	Pauses that the eye makes
C Regressing	Reading the same words more than once
B Auditory reading	Moving your lips while reading

Audio 34. What would the professor probably like the students to do?
Answer **D** Get help at the Learning Center

➤ Speaking



Model Test 4, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 14

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A City"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Which city in the world would you like to visit? Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Schools"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Agree or disagree with the following statement:

A coeducational school is a better environment than a school that provides education for men only or women only. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "English Requirements"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A meeting is planned to explain the proposal for a change in the English language requirements for Community College. Read the notice in the college newspaper [printed on page 378]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to a student who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the policy for international students.

Student:
I think that this is a good policy because sometimes international students don't do well on an English test but they're still good students in their major field. So, they can probably succeed with a lower score on the TOEFL. And besides that, um, it's a good idea to begin with one credit class instead of a full course load. I mean, studying part time while finishing the language classes will provide more of a . . . a transition into regular courses. Also, after several semesters in the English Language Institute, most international students become impatient . . . and this opportunity . . . to begin regular classes . . . it would increase their motivation toward the end of their language program.

Narrator 1: The student expresses her opinion of the policy for international students. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Myths and Legends"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about myths and legends [printed on page 379]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in an anthropology class. The professor is talking about the legend of Paul Bunyan.

Professor:
Paul Bunyan is one of the more popular characters in American legends. A hero among the lumberjacks of the American Northwest, Paul Bunyan had the size, strength, and the frontier spirit of the North American continent that embraced the stories about him. According to legend, Paul Bunyan was a giant of a man who ate forty bowls of porridge for breakfast and used wagon wheels for the buttons on his shirts. His feet were so large that while he was walking west across Minnesota, his footprints created 10,000 lakes. He's also attributed with the creation of the Grand Canyon, Puget Sound, and the Black Hills. Some of my colleagues who specialize in folklore believe that the legend has a French-Canadian origin; however, they agree with me that the whole idea of the giant fits in well with the expansion of the frontier in both Canada and the United States. The legend was retold and embellished in the logging camps of Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota. Some of the earliest publications are found in the *Detroit News-Tribune* in 1910.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the reading, explain the differences between myths and legends. Then refer to the lecture to explain why Paul Bunyan would be considered a legend.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Roommate"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and her advisor.

Student: So, I really like my roommate, I mean, we get along great, and she's a good student. We take a lot of the same classes, and we study together, but . . . well, I have a problem, and I just don't seem to be able to deal with it.
Advisor: Okay. What's the problem?
Student: You see, she has a boyfriend in Florida, and she calls him on my cell phone.
Advisor: Then you have a bill for the extra minutes at the end of the month.
Student: Exactly. And I really can't afford it.
Advisor: Have you talked with her about it?
Student: Not really. I just don't know what to say.

Advisor: Well, I think you have a couple of options. You can tell her that you can't let her use your cell phone anymore, and you can offer to go with her to buy her own cell phone. That way she'll see that you're trying to help.

Student: That might work, but she'll probably still be upset . . .

Advisor: Or another possibility is . . . you could let her use your cell phone if she pays you for the extra minutes that you have had to cover for her, and if she agrees to pay her share of all the bills from now on. Just tell her that you can't afford it.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her advisor makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Urban Wildlife"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare, and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is discussing the types of habitats for wildlife found in cities.

Professor:
Although cities have not generally been associated with wildlife, there are many species that have become so much a part of the urban landscape that they are, for the most part, unnoticed neighbors. For example, in New York's Central Park, almost 300 species of birds have been identified. Urban parks certainly provide some of the world's safest and in many ways, best wildlife habitats, and as the natural habitats shrink, well, these urban parks will become more and more important to the conservation of wildlife, including not only birds . . . but also freshwater animals and, even small mammals. So, as you see, man-made areas are one important type of habitat in cities. But artificial structures in the urban landscape . . . these can also provide a home for animals that adapt to life in the city. For instance, chimney swifts are birds that originally lived in hollow trees, but now chimney swifts are commonly found in the long brick chimneys in factories or other vertical shafts in tall buildings. Think about it. A city has more chimneys than there are hollow trees in a forest of equal area. Consequently, these birds flock to the city. Another case of adaptation is the urban drainage system, which is usually made up of concrete ditches, and they naturally attract stream and marsh animals. Again, to use New York City as an example, probably 250 species of fish are found in the harbor, many of which make their way into the pools and ponds and ditches in the New York drainage system. In Boston, the Back Bay was actually designed to create habitats and attract marshland wildlife to the city.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two general types of habitats for wildlife found in urban areas.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 4, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 15

Integrated Essay "Sales Principles"

First, read the passage [printed on page 383] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
*The r*eading lists three traditional sales principles, and almost everyone who takes even an introductory business course will be familiar with them, but recent research by Neil Rackham and mutually sponsored by several Fortune 500 companies, well, they have called all three into question.

First, let's look at the principle that to get more orders, you should make more calls. According to Rackham's findings, a high volume of calls *does* correlate with sales for items that cost *less*, but it doesn't prove true for *expensive* items. In fact, the opposite is true. Rackham attributes this difference to the preparation that's required for a call. A reduction in preparation in order to increase the number of calls may make the salesperson sound less informed and that could influence the sale of an item that requires a bigger decision, as when the company is asked to make a *large* expenditure.

Second, it *does* seem logical to call people who hold higher positions in the organization for the reasons that the reading suggests. Still, the research results reveal the same level of success for an even distribution of calls across the levels of the organizations contacted. And for salespersons who call very high-level executives, the questions that they are obliged to answer are more specific and require a better understanding of the company than many salespersons are prepared to demonstrate . . . a situation that relates back to the issue of preparation time.

Third, contrary to traditional guidelines, the salespersons who put their effort into conversations early on in the sales . . . they report that those sales close easily, without pressure or imposed deadlines. Making sure that the customer's concerns are addressed, summarizing the benefits, and proposing a next step is enough to encourage the customer to close the sale without deadlines or additional incentives.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 4, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 16

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "A City"

If I could visit any city in the world, I'd like to see Rome because I'm an architecture major, and it would be exciting to see the structures in the old city like the Colosseum and the Forum and, uh, temples. I'd also want to inspect the arches that define the perimeter of the old city. I think one of them is almost 2,000 years old, but it's still supposed to be quite beautiful and strong. In a book about Rome, I read that the streets in the old city are made of the original cobblestones laid in ancient times. So besides seeing the architecture, it would be exciting to walk on the stones. I have a good imagination, and I'm sure I could visualize soldiers and philosophers even if I'm looking at a lot of other tourists.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Schools"

I agree that a coeducational school is a better environment for both men and women because it's more representative of the, uh, the world that they'll live in after they finish school. In modern society, men and women will compete for employment opportunities so it's good practice to compete in classes. And men and women need to learn how to interact socially, and a coeducational school provides activities and social events where they can associate with each other in a somewhat supervised environment. So I think if men and women are separated throughout their school life, it might be harder for them to work together and develop social relationships after they finish school.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "English Requirements"

The college is considering a change in the TOEFL requirement. It would allow international students who score five points below the cut-off score of 80 to take a credit class while they're finishing their English courses in the English Language Institute. Um, the student thinks that the new policy is a good idea because . . . some students have problems taking a test but they still have the . . . the capacity to succeed in their credit classes, especially in their major field. And students who qualify will have an academic advisor so they'll be more likely to take a class they can handle. So she also suggests that a part-time schedule would give students a smoother transition into a full-time academic schedule and, uh, it would also motivate students who have been in the Institute for a long time and they're getting tired of studying English.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Myths and Legends"

Myths are stories from ancient times that offer an explanation for why things happened and they often have their origin in religion, but legends are stories about more current heroes who really lived and they represent examples of the best values of their culture. So Paul Bunyan would be considered a legend because there was probably a big lumberjack, and as the stories about him were told, they got more and more exaggerated until he was a giant who used wagon wheels for buttons on his shirt and he could create lakes with his big footprints. The professor says that this legend was appropriate for Canada and the United States during the Westward expansion of these countries because the stories were about recent events and the territories were so vast, a hero would need to be a *giant* to represent the best values of such a time and place.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Roommate"

The woman's problem is that she's friends with her roommate but the roommate's using her cell phone to call a boyfriend long distance and it's getting expensive and she can't afford the extra minutes on the bill. Her advisor suggests that she tell her roommate not to use her cell phone anymore and she could even offer to help buy her roommate a cell phone . . . or another idea was that she could ask her roommate to pay for the extra minutes from previous calls and any future calls. Well, I think the woman should reconsider the friendship because a *real* friend wouldn't take advantage of her like that. So, I don't think the advisor gave her very good advice. In my opinion, the woman should go back to the advisor and ask him to help her find a new roommate in the dorm.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Urban Wildlife"

Both man-made areas and artificial structures become habitats for wildlife in cities. One of the most impressive examples of a man-made area is Central Park in New York, which has become a safe haven for hundreds of species of birds, small mammals, and even freshwater animals that live in the streams and lakes. Back Bay in Boston is a marshland environment that was developed to provide habitats for wildlife. Um, artificial structures allow wildlife to adapt to city living by using a space that has similar advantages to those of a natural habitat. For example, the chimney swift is a small bird that makes its home in hollow trees but . . . it has adapted itself to the city by nesting in chimneys, and the fish that live in natural harbors often swim into the ditches that connect to urban drainage systems. So, even in cities, wildlife can survive and thrive.

Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Sales Principles"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart

Sales Principles
recent research Rackham

Make more calls	
Logical = more contacts Practice = better at calls	High volume OK lower cost item Not true for expensive items More prep, fewer calls, expensive Item = higher profit
Call higher in organization	
Efficient authority to deal Extra step Lower → higher → sale Sales makes better case	More specific Q? from higher Same success higher + lower
Close early	
Objections first Urgency, deadline improves	Early conversations → close easy Next step = close No deadlines, pressure

Example Essay "Sales Principles"

The lecture refutes the reading passage. According to the professor, recent research by Rackham contradicts three traditional sales assumptions.

First, although it is logical that more calls will result in a higher sales volume, newer studies demonstrate that making more calls is only effective for items that do not require a large expenditure. For high-dollar items, fewer calls translate into higher profits. The professor speculates that the salesperson's time may be better spent on additional preparation than on more calls for expensive purchases.

The second point in the passage encourages calls to people higher in the company because they are in a position to approve the sale; however, Rackham's investigation reveals the same rate of success for calls to higher and lower employees in the organization.

Finally, the professor disputes the rule that closing early and imposing deadlines will assure success. The professor maintains that early conversations and a series of logical next steps will close the deal without deadlines and pressure. In short, the old sales principles are not borne out by the new research studies.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "Lifestyle"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

Outline

Comfortable living

- Healthy lifestyle–less pressured, less stress
- Time with family members

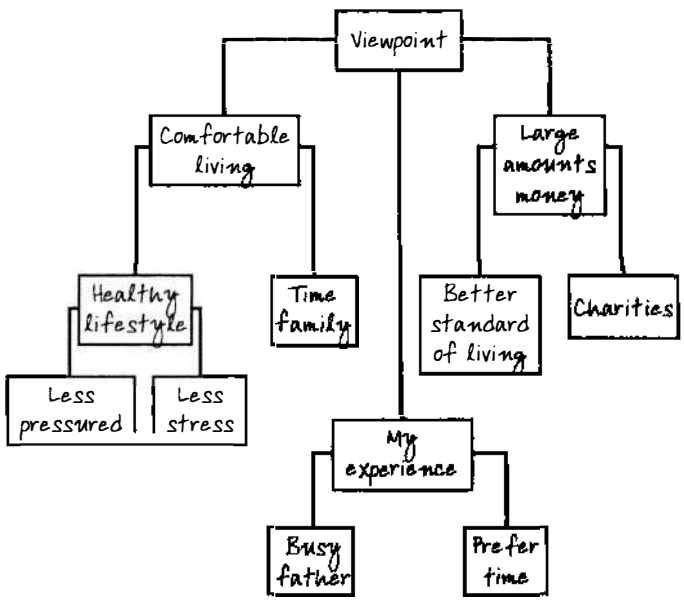
Large amounts of money

- Better standard of living for family
- More opportunities for charities

My experience

- Busy father
- Prefer time with my children

Map



Example Essay

When we are considering options for a major field in college, the counselors often mention the amount of money that we can expect to earn if we make that career choice. Then it is up to us to decide whether it is important to make large amounts of money or whether we are satisfied to earn a comfortable living. Certainly, there are good reasons for both decisions.

If we make a lot of money, it will be possible to provide a better standard of living for our families. We can live in better homes, our children can go to more prestigious schools and participate in activities or take lessons, we can go on vacations and have experiences that would be impossible without the financial resources that a high-paying job produces. We can enjoy what the material world has to offer because we can pay for it. Besides supporting our personal lifestyles, we can afford to give generously to charities.

In contrast, if we make a comfortable living, the advantages are less visible but nonetheless important. We can participate in a healthy lifestyle because we will be less pressured. A job that pays less may have a slower pace and fewer responsibilities. Less stress may allow us to sleep better. There may be fewer demands on our time so we can exercise more and have more meals at home, contributing to good health. The extra time can also be spent with family members instead of at the office. We can be at the ball game when our child hits the home run.

In making a personal decision, I am opting for a comfortable living instead of the high-powered job with a larger salary. As the son of a successful executive, I remember expensive vacations that my father paid for but did not participate in because he was too busy at work. I prefer to spend time with my children instead of spending money on them. I plan to be at the ball game.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 5: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "RISING SEA LEVELS"

1. **B** In this passage, *scale* is a synonym for "range." Context comes from the numbers in the following sentence, ". . . 10–20 cm . . . ."
2. **B** In this passage, *probably* is a synonym for "likely."
3. **B** The author mentions an iceberg "the size of Delaware" to impress the reader with the size of the icebergs. Choices A, C, and D are not noted in the reference to Delaware.
4. **D** "In response to the increasing warmth, the Antarctic Peninsula is sporting new vegetation growth." Choices A and C are true, but they are not the reason for the new plant life. Choice B is not correct because the islands have appeared because of ice melt, not because the land masses have split.
5. **B** "About 8000 km of ice shelf are gone, changing maps, freeing up islands to circumnavigation, and creating thousands of icebergs." Choice A is not correct because a rise in temperature breaks an ice shelf into icebergs. Choice C is not correct because the reference to islands relates to warmer temperatures and melting ice. Choice D is not correct because mountain glaciers that melt will cause a rise in sea level, not the creation of icebergs.
6. **B** Most of paragraph 5 is in quotation marks in reference to data in a study by the IPCC. Choice A is not correct because the author is quoting data from a source. Choice C is not correct because data on sea levels does not compare one area with another. Choice D is not correct because the author does not mention his studies when he is presenting the data.
7. **A** In this passage, *definite* is a synonym for "conclusive." Context comes from the phrase "the clearest and best evidence" in the following sentence.
8. **A** *The IPCC did not have the data* paraphrases ". . . the new measurements . . . did not reach the IPCC."
9. **C** ". . . people move away from coastal flooding from the sea-level rise." Choice A is not correct because the temperature on land is not mentioned. Choice B is not correct because the vegetation along the coastlines will die as seawater floods it. Choice D is true, but it is not the reason why people will migrate.
10. **C** The reference to "Particularly tragic social and economic consequences" in the last paragraph gives an insight into the author's opinion. Choices A and B are not correct because they are not directly expressed and cannot be concluded from information in the passage. Choice D is not correct because the breaking up of ice shelves and the melting of ice causes the sea levels to rise, not the new glaciers that are created when the ice shelves disintegrate.
11. **D** In this passage, *influences* is a synonym for "impacts." Context comes from the word "consequences" in the same sentence.
12. **A** Alphabetical order is a transitional device that connects the sentences. Larsen A, B, and C are mentioned in order. The insert sentence is an introductory statement.
13. **C, B, E** summarize the passage. Choice A is an example that supports major point C. Choice D is a detail that supports major point B. Choice F is an example that supports major point C.

READING 2 "ORGANIC ARCHITECTURE"

14. **C** "One of the most striking personalities in the development of early-twentieth-century architecture was Frank Lloyd Wright. . . . Wright set out to create 'architecture of democracy.'" Choices A, B, and D are major points that support the main idea, the work of Frank Lloyd Wright.
15. **C** According to a quote by Wright, "This ideal [organic unity] . . . I called . . . continuity." Choice A is not correct because it refers to classical architecture, not to organic architecture. Choice B is not correct because, although he considered organic architecture his ideal, he referred to it as "continuity." Choice D is not correct because Wright rejected classic architecture.
16. **A** "Wright manifested his vigorous originality early, and by 1900 he had arrived at a style entirely his own [style]." The phrase "his own" does not refer to Choices B, C, or D.
17. **C** In this passage, *created* is a synonym for "conceived." Context comes from the word "designed" in the previous sentence.
18. **D** In this passage, *Discontinuing* is a synonym for "Abandoning." Context comes from the contrast of "symmetry" with the "spaces . . . grouped freely."
19. **B** "Wright fully expressed these elements and concepts in Robie House." Choice A is true but it is only one of the original ideas expressed. Choice C is not correct because, although it is often true of Wright's designs, the accessories for Robie House were not mentioned in the passage. Choice D is not correct because the house was built between 1907 and 1909, but Wright did not live there during the construction.
20. **A** In this passage, the phrase *most important* describes "prime." The word "prime" is often used with "example."
21. **C** Because "the city lot constrained the building-to-site relationship" at "Robie House," the description of "Fallingwater" implies that it was better suited to the site. Choice A is not correct because "Fallingwater" was built after "Robie House." Choice B is not correct because "Fallingwater" extended the "Robie House" design in all four directions. Choice D is not correct because "Robie House" had many large and open spaces in the "wandering" floor plan.
22. **B** ". . . he acted on a cherished dream to provide good architectural design for less prosperous people by adapting the ideas of his prairie house to plans for smaller, less expensive dwellings." Choice A is not correct because the smaller, prairie houses were not designed specifically for Europe. Choice C is not correct because many younger architects adopted his designs, but he did not build prairie houses to help architects. The revolution in architecture mentioned in Choice D occurred, but it was not Wright's purpose in building the smaller versions of his prairie designs.
23. **A** "The publication of Wright's plans brought him a measure of fame in Europe . . . and an exhibition of his designs [in Berlin] . . . stimulated younger architects to adopt some of his ideas." Choice B is not correct because lectures are not mentioned in the passage. Choices C and D are correct, but they are not the reasons that Wright's work became well known in Europe.
24. **C** The entrance in a prairie house was "all but concealed." Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 5. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 7. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 7.
25. **B** A general statement followed by examples is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the following sentences. The insert sentence introduces the examples of the relationship between interior and exterior spaces.
26. **C, F, D** summarize the passage. Choices A, B, and E are details of Wright's professional life that are not main points in the passage.

READING 3 "NEW WOMEN OF THE ICE AGE"

27. **B** In this passage, *experts* is a synonym for "authorities." Context comes from the reference to "Soffer," a person.

28. **B** "Amassing critical and previously overlooked evidence . . . Soffer [proposes] a technique of hunting previously invisible in the archaeological evidence." Choice A is not correct because her theories "make her conservative colleagues cringe." Choice C is not correct because conservative researchers concentrated on studies of tools and bones and used them to support their theories. Choice D is not correct because she uses not only modern cultural evidence but also archeological evidence, including small game bones and tools that could have been used to make nets.
29. **C** In this passage, *suggestions* is a synonym for "implications." Context comes from the clause "they raise serious questions" in the same sentence.
30. **B** Because her views "make her conservative colleagues cringe," it must be concluded that her views are not as conservative. Choice A is not correct because she disagrees about the role of women as hunters, not as caretakers. Choice C is not correct because she is identified as an authority on the Ice Age and as an archeologist, not as a biologist. Choice D is not correct because she is a leading authority on hunting and gathering in the Ice Age.
31. **A** In this passage, *limit* is a synonym for "constrain." Context comes from the logical supposition in the same sentence.
32. **D** . . . *historically* paraphrases "In many historical societies" and *not perilous* paraphrases "nor . . . in physical peril." . . . *did not require great strength* paraphrases "did not call for brute strength," and *women have been important participants* paraphrases "women played a key part."
33. **D** "'Everybody and their mother could participate [in net hunting].'" Choice A is not correct because the Australian hunters were not fishermen, and there is no evidence that they developed it. Choice B is not correct because net hunting did not place young mothers in physical peril. Choice C is not correct because net hunting was used to capture game, not to protect the camp.
34. **A** The author mentions Native American and Aborigine groups to give examples of modern groups in which women participate in net hunting. Choice B is not correct because the author presents facts, not opinions. Choice C is not correct because the techniques do not place women in peril but they do not protect them, either. Choice D is not correct because the example of the people in the Congo reinforces the information about the Native American and Aborigine groups.
35. **C** ". . . Mbuti in the forests of the Congo report that they capture game every time they lay out their woven traps, scooping up 50 percent of the animals encountered." Choice A is not correct because nets are valued more than bows and arrows. Choice B is not correct because they trade the surplus meat with neighbors. Choice D is not correct because vegetables are not mentioned.
36. **B** ". . . some of their inhabitants whittled bone tools that look much like the awls and net spacers . . . " Choice A is true but it is not mentioned as evidence. Choice C is not correct because Soffer believes that net hunting was more widespread than these two sites. Choice D is not correct because the camps stretched from Germany to Russia, but the researchers from those areas were not mentioned.
37. **D** In this passage, *functions* is a synonym for "roles." Context comes from the reference to "activities" in the same sentence.
38. **C** A conclusion based on evidence is a transitional device that connects the conclusion in the *insert sentence* to the evidence in the previous sentences. Choices A and B are not correct because the conclusion in the insert sentence would appear before the evidence. Choice D is not correct because the insert sentence would interrupt the relationship between the first and second sentences in the last paragraph.
39. **B, D, F** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that is not developed. Choice C is a detail that is mentioned to support major point D. Choice E is true, but it is not mentioned in the passage.

➤ Listening



Model Test 5, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 17

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between a student and a professor.

Student: Professor Collins. I'm really sorry. I mean . . . These are my daughters. They're twins. I wouldn't ordinarily bring them to an appointment, but the babysitter didn't show up, and I couldn't leave them. I didn't want to cancel. I hope it's okay.

Professor: It's okay. I have three kids of my own, and I've been in the same situation.

Student: Thanks. Well, this shouldn't take much of your time. I really just have one question.

Professor: All right.

Q1 Student: I'm having a problem understanding the difference between declarative memory and procedural memory. I think from my notes that they're both examples of . . . let me see . . . I have it down here . . . "Declarative and procedural memory are two broad types of memory circuits in long-term memory."

Professor: That's right. But you need to distinguish between them.

Student: Exactly.

Professor: Okay, well, declarative memory is a memory that links us to a fact. Like a name or a date or even an experience.

Student: So when I remember a professor's name when I see him, that's declarative memory?

Professor: Yes, at its most basic level, it is. But declarative memory also includes problem solving. Like today, when you decided to bring your daughters to my office, you were using declarative memory to access previous experiences and facts that would allow you to make a decision.

Student: Oh, right. I remember your example in class. That makes sense now. You were talking about problem solving by recalling experiences. But wasn't that episodic memory?

Professor: Very good. Yes, it's called episodic memory. But declarative memory includes episodic memory, which is the ability to access prior experiences or personal episodes in

Q2 our life, usually for the purpose of making a decision or solving a problem. So episodic memory is a subcategory of declarative memory, so to speak. And semantic memory is just the storehouse of facts that we have in our memory circuits . . .

Student: . . . which is also a subcategory of declarative memory?

Professor: Precisely.

Student: Okay. Then procedural memory doesn't include facts or experiences.

Q3 Professor: Not directly, no. Procedural memory refers to skills that we've learned and are now remembering in order to, uh, to perform the skill without really thinking much about it. Like, for example, riding a bike or . . . or do you play a musical instrument?

Student: Piano, sort of. Not really.

Professor: Okay. Well, when you ride a bike then, you aren't thinking about the name of every part of the bike and how to use the handle bars or the pedals . . . or at least not consciously.

Student: No.

Professor: But at some level, you *are* remembering how to do these things, so you are using your memory.

Student: And that would be procedural memory.

Professor: Yes, it would.
Student: Okay, then. That's why you said that declarative memory can be more rapidly learned, but it can also be more rapidly forgotten—because a fact can come and go in the memory. But procedural memory takes repetition and practice, so it's harder to unlearn. I'm not saying that very well.
Professor: But you have the idea. Often with declarative memory, you're consciously trying to remember, but with procedural memory, you're performing a skill without consciously trying to recall how . . . without each step in the process.
Student: That's what I mean. . . . But . . .
Professor: Yes?
Student: Well, I was thinking about language. When my girls were learning to talk . . .
Professor: Oh, I see where you are going. You want to know whether language learning is declarative or procedural.
Student: Yeah.
Professor: What do you think?
Student: I was thinking that maybe it's both? Because you have to memorize vocabulary, but eventually, it's more like a skill . . . like riding a bike . . . because you don't think about each individual word. It's more . . . more automatic. Um. Do you see what I mean?
Professor: A very good analysis. I think you've got this. Q4
Student: Okay. Well, thanks a lot.
Professor: And, uh, if you ever need to ask me a question and it's . . . hard to get in to see me, just drop me an email.
Student: I thought about that, but . . .
Professor: Look, I'm always glad to see you, but I answer a lot of questions like this by email every day and if it's easier for you, that's fine with me. Q5
Student: That's very kind of you. Thank you so much.

Audio 1. Why does the woman go to see her professor?
Answer **B** To clarify several terms that she doesn't understand—declarative memory and procedural memory.

Audio 2. What do semantic memory and episodic memory have in common?
Answer **C** They are subcategories of declarative memory.

Audio 3. When the professor gives the example of riding a bicycle, what kind of memory is he referring to?
Answer **C** Procedural memory

Audio 4. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "Um. Do you see what I mean?"
"A very good analysis. I think you've got this."
"Okay. Well, thanks a lot."
Audio What does the student mean when she says this:
Replay "Do you see what I mean?"
Answer **A** She wants confirmation that the professor understands.

Audio 5. What does the professor suggest?
Answer **C** He offers to respond to additional questions by email.

LISTENING 2 "HISTORY CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a history class.

Professor:

Q6 Frontier home design in the United States was greatly influenced by the provisions of the Homestead Act of 1862. The legislation gave settlers the right to open land but mandated that homesteaders build a structure that was at least ten by twelve feet and included at least one glass window, and they had to live on their homestead and improve the land for five years before their claim was recognized. Of course, when they first arrived, most homesteaders lived in their wagons or pitched tents until they filed claims and planted crops. And even then, knowing that fully half of the homesteaders wouldn't make it through the five years required to complete their claims, homesteaders tended to view the construction of their homes as semi-permanent dwellings . . . more likely they'd build something better later or try to improve on what they'd built initially if they made it through the first five years. So, in addition to the requirements in the Homestead Act, the settlers needed a home that was easy to build, cheap, and maybe even disposable.

Q7 Well, the log cabin is the construction that comes to mind when we think of Western settlements, but the plains and the prairies had so few trees that log construction was almost impossible. So the sod

Q8 house was a practical solution for homesteaders on flat, treeless land. So how do you build a sod house? Well, first you wait for a rain that makes the earth soft, then you use a sod cutter to form sod bricks about

Q11 two or three feet square and a few inches thick. Then, you stack the bricks to form walls, and weave branches or twigs and grass into a roof that's finally covered with sod as well. Now, there were tremendous advantages to this type of construction. In the first place, it was very cheap . . . there are journals

Q9 from the 1800s that document construction prices at about $2.50, and most of that was for the glass window. And, it took very little time to build, probably a day or two. And the thick walls actually kept the house quite cool in the summer and fairly warm in the winter. If a better home could be built later, the sod house would simply dissolve into the soil. But there were serious disadvantages as well. Even well-built roofs leaked onto the dirt floors, forming mud puddles, and sometimes the roof even collapsed from the water weight. Or, in dry spells, the dirt crumbled from the roof into the home. Not to mention the infestations of insects and even snakes that inhabited the dirt walls.

Q8 So, those settlers who arrived in wooded areas opted to build log cabins instead of sod homes. Like the sod construction, the log cabin could be built in a few days, using simple tools, often only an axe. But it was much more comfortable. There's evidence that the first log cabins were introduced by Swedish settlers as early as the 1700s but other immigrant settlers quickly adopted the construction.

Q11 First, you build a foundation of rocks to keep the logs away from dampness that might cause them to rot. Then, you cut down the trees and square off the logs, cutting notches in the top and bottom of each end so they could fit together when they were stacked at the corners and it also had the advantage of assuring structural integrity. And there were several types of notching techniques that were used, depending on the skill of the builder. In any case, with notching, no nails were required and that was good since nails had to be shipped into towns and then transported out to the new settlements.

Q11 But there were gaps in the walls so these had to be filled by a technique called *chinking*. In *chinking*, grass, hay, moss and mud were worked into rolls about a foot long and maybe four inches wide and then they were inserted into the cracks between the logs. These rolls were commonly referred to as *mud cats* and were very effective in keeping out the cold and keeping in the heat. Of course, the tighter the logs, the fewer chinks were required, and that's important because the chinks were the weakest part of the cabin, and with the expansion and contraction that resulted from freezing and thawing, well, chinking tended to deteriorate and needed constant maintenance and repair.

Okay, there was usually a stone or brick fireplace along one wall. And the roof was usually made of wood shingles. So you can imagine, this was quite an improvement over the sod house. The advantages were that the home could be kept clean. Even though the floor was usually dirt or gravel because flat boards were difficult to obtain, it was still an effective shelter to keep out the rain and dust.

Q10

Later, at the end of the 1800s, when the railroads brought materials such as asphalt shingles, tar paper, and finished boards to the frontier, the sod house was abandoned for one-room board shanties, covered with tar paper. Whether this was an improvement is subject to debate. For one thing, since they were often built without foundations, the harsh winds of the prairies literally blew the shanties away. Still, many settlers considered the shacks preferable to the old soddies even though they weren't as easy to heat and cool. To go back to the log cabin for a minute, the effect of new construction materials on the log cabin was . . . aesthetic . . . as well as practical. The logs were often covered on the outside by finished boards and on the inside with plaster, which gave the cabins a more finished look and improved insulation. And by this time the old one-room ten-by-twelve was also being replaced with larger homes with several rooms. The frontier settlers had weathered the hardships of their first five years, they'd received their claims, and they and their homes were a permanent part of the great western expansion.

Audio 6. What is the lecture mainly about?
Answer **C** Frontier homes in the West

Audio 7. How does the professor organize his lecture?
Answer **D** He contrasts several types of homes in the West—log cabins, sod houses, and board shacks.

Audio 8. What does the professor imply about construction materials for early homes?
Answer **A** Settlers used the materials from the natural environment.

Audio 9. What is the evidence for the inexpensive price of a sod home?
Answer **D** Personal records and accounts—journals

Audio 10. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Later, at the end of the 1800s, when the railroads brought materials such as asphalt shingles, tar paper, and finished boards to the frontier, the sod house was abandoned for one-room board shanties, covered with tar paper. Whether this was an improvement is subject to debate."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Whether this was an improvement is subject to debate."
Answer **B** To demonstrate uncertainty

Audio 11. In the lecture, the professor identifies attributes for different frontier homes. Indicate whether each attribute refers to a sod house or a log cabin. Click in the correct box for each phrase.
Answer

	Sod House	Log Cabin
A A mud roof	✔	
B A rock foundation		✔
C Chinked walls		✔
D Notching techniques		✔
E Thick brick insulation	✔	

LISTENING 3 "GEOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a geology class.

Professor: The exploitation of minerals involves five steps. First, you have to explore and locate the mineral deposits, then you set up a mining operation, next, you must refine the raw minerals and transport the refined minerals to the manufacturer.

Student 1: Excuse me. Sorry. I only have four steps. Could you . . . ?

Professor: Sure. That's exploration, mining, refining, transportation, and manufacturing.

Student 1: Thanks.

Q12 Professor: So, each of these activities involves costs, there are costs associated with them, and the costs can be economic, but not necessarily so. Mineral exploitation also has environmental costs associated with it. For example, the exploration stage will clearly have a high economic cost because of . . . of personnel and technology, but the environmental cost will probably be quite low. Why would that be, do you think?

Student 2: Because you aren't actually disturbing the environment. You're just looking, I mean, after you find a mineral deposit, you don't do anything about it at that stage.

Professor: Right. So the environmental costs would be low. But what happens when you use up
Q17 all the resources that are easy to find? Then what?

Student 2: Then the costs go up for exploration.

Q17 Professor: Which costs?

Student 2: Well, probably both of them, but I can see where the economic costs would increase.

Professor: Okay. Let's say, for example, that some areas such as national parks or historic reserves have been . . . off-limits to exploration. What will happen when we use up the minerals outside of these areas? Remember now that these are . . . nonrenewable resources that we're looking for.

Student 1: Then there will be a lot of pressure . . . you know . . . to open up these areas to exploration and exploitation.

Q17 Professor: Probably so. And that means that there could be a high environmental cost. Any other options?

Student 1: Find an alternative.

Professor: Yes. You're on the right track.

Q15 Student 1: Okay. Find an alternative, I mean a substitute, something that will substitute for the mineral. Maybe something man-made?

Professor: Good. That will involve a different kind of exploration, again with economic costs. I'm talking about basic research here to find synthetics. But, uh, let's go on to the other steps, and we'll see if we can pull this all together. How about mining? Now, we're looking at high environmental costs because of the destruction of the landscape and . . . and the accumulation of . . . waste products that have to be dealt with. Air and water pollution is almost always a problem. . . . Any ideas on refining?

Student 2: Wouldn't it be the same as mining? I mean, you would have high costs because of labor and equipment, and there would be problems of waste and pollution, like you said.

Professor: True. True. And in refining, well that often involves the separation of a small amount of a valuable mineral from a large amount of surrounding rock. So that means that refining also carries the additional cost of cleanup. And don't forget that it's often difficult to get vegetation to grow on piles of waste. In fact, some of it, the waste piles I mean, they can even be dangerous to living creatures, including people. Not to mention the
Q16 appearance of the area. So the environmental costs can be extremely high. Isn't it sad and ironic that so much of the mining and refining must take place in areas of great natural beauty?

Student 1: So you're saying that both mining and refining have heavy costs . . . heavy economic and environmental costs.

Professor: Right. And in both mining and refining, you would need transportation to support the movement of supplies, equipment, and personnel. But, after the minerals are mined and refined, then transportation becomes even more essential.

Student 2: And I was just thinking that in addition to the economic costs of the transportation for trucks and fuel and labor and everything, there could be, there might be some construction too, if there aren't any roads in or out of the area. Q14

Professor: And that would mean . . .

Student 2: That would mean that the landscape and even the ecosystem for the plants and animal life could be altered, so . . . so that's an environmental cost. Q13

Professor: It is indeed. Good point. That leaves us with manufacturing. After we find it, mine it, refine it, and transport it, we still have to manufacture it. What are the costs associated with that? Well, construction again, for factories, then there would be energy costs, technology, and labor.

Student 1: So all that's economic. No environmental costs in manufacturing then.

Professor: Well, yes there are actually. Pollution is often a costly problem for manufacturing plants.

Student 1: Oh right. I was thinking of the natural landscape, and the manufacturing is often positioned near cities to take advantage of the labor pool. But, um . . . cities have the environmental problems associated with pollution. So, every step has both economic and environmental costs then. Q12

Professor: Right.

Audio 12. What is this discussion mainly about?
Answer **D** The economic and environmental costs of exploiting minerals

Audio 13. According to the professor, what are two problems that can be anticipated when roads are cut into an area for mining?
Answer **B** The natural landscape is damaged.
D The ecosytem is disturbed.

Audio 14. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "And I was just thinking that in addition to the economic costs of the transportation for trucks and fuel and labor and everything, there could be, there might be some construction, too, if there aren't any roads in or out of the area."
"And that would mean . . ."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "And that would mean . . ."
Answer **A** Professors often begin a sentence and then wait for a student to complete it. In this case, the professor is encouraging the student to continue by adding information to the answer that he gave initially.

Audio 15. What option is proposed as an alternative when all of the mineral resources in easily *accessible* locations have been depleted?
Answer **C** Developing synthetic resources [man-made] to replace [natural] minerals

Audio 16. What does the professor imply about the environmental costs of mineral exploitation?
Answer **B** Because the professor comments that it is "sad and ironic that so much of the mining and refining must take place in areas of great natural beauty," it may be concluded that he regrets that the environment is damaged.

Audio 17. What does the professor want the students to do in this class session?
Answer **C** Because the professor encourages student questions and asks questions that will generate participation, he must want the students to ask questions and draw conclusions.

Listening 4 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation on campus between a student and a professor.

Q18 *Student:* Hi. I'm Ron Watson. I'm here to apply for the work-study job.
Professor: Oh, good. Um, have you ever had a work-study position?
Student: Not really. To tell the truth, I'm not exactly sure how it works.
Professor: Well, it's like this: on work-study, you have regular hours and assigned responsibilities, but, if you get everything done, you can study. You can't leave because there may be something else to do later, during your hours. But you should always bring your books and, oh, I'd guess that probably about 25 percent of the time, you should be able to study.
Q19 Student: This is even better than I thought. What kind of assignments would I have, I mean, if I get this opportunity.
Professor: Clerical mostly, I'm afraid. Nothing too demanding, but it isn't the most interesting work either. Filing, copying, delivering mail, some grading, but only multiple-choice tests, and we use a grading machine for that.
Student: Would someone show me how to operate the grading machine? I'm sure I could do it if someone showed me once or twice.
Professor: No problem. We have a secretary here in the department, and she'll be the main person you'd report to. She'd show you how to do everything.
Student: Okay. Great.
Professor: Now, let's see whether your hours will fit in with the hours we need. Could you work Monday through Thursday from ten to two?
Student: That's sixteen hours a week?
Professor: To start. We may actually want to extend that to Fridays, so, if that happens, it would be twenty hours. You'll notice that the hours include the usual lunch break. That would let Nancy . . . she's the secretary . . . so she could get you started on the work, and then take her lunch from noon to one, and be back for the last hour of your day, in case you had any questions.
Student: Okay.
Professor: Oh, and I should tell you about the phone. While Nancy's gone for lunch, we'll want you to answer the phone.
Q20 Student: Sure. I can do that. Uh, will there be any work on the computer? I'm familiar with most of the basic office programs. I used to help my Dad in his office when I was in high school. He's a lawyer.
Professor: Oh. Well, we hadn't planned to include anything like that in the job, but it's a plus.
Student: Sorry to ask, but . . . how does the pay work? Do I get paid for the time I work minus the study time or . . .
Q21 Professor: Oh no. You get paid for sixteen hours a week whether you're working or studying. This is a special program for students.
Student: It seems too good to be true.
Professor: Well, you need to have an interview with Nancy. Since you'll be working closely with her, she'll make the final decision.
Student: Okay. Should I make an appointment or . . .

Professor: No. Just go over to her desk and tell her who you are. She's expecting you. We want to get the position filled as soon as possible.
Student: Well, thank you for seeing me. I hope I'll be working here.
Professor: Good luck. . . . Oh, yes, be sure to tell Nancy about the computer experience. Q22
Student: I will.
Professor: And let her know I've already interviewed you, and I referred you to her.
Student: Thanks again. I really appreciate your taking the time to explain everything to me.
Professor: You're welcome.

Audio 18. Why does the student go to the professor's office?
Answer B To apply for a job

Audio 19. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "What kind of assignments would I have, I mean, if I get this opportunity."
"Clerical mostly, I'm afraid. Nothing too demanding, but it isn't the most interesting work either."
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this:
Replay "Clerical mostly, I'm afraid."
Answer C She is concerned that the man will be bored.

Audio 20. What experience does the man have that may be helpful?
Answer C He has used computer programs for office work.

Audio 21. What is the pay for the work-study position?
Answer A An hourly rate for sixteen hours per week regardless of the activity.

Audio 22. What can we assume about the meeting?
Answer A Because she sent him to the secretary for an interview and she wanted the student to tell the secretary that she referred him, it may be concluded that the professor was impressed with the student.

Listening 5 "Music Appreciation Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a music appreciation class.

Professor:
As you know, tonight's the concert that I want you to attend so I'll keep the class short today. Let me Q23
tell you a little bit about the history of chamber music so you'll be prepared to appreciate the music that you hear tonight. The University Quartet is one of the best in the region so you'll be hearing an excellent example . . . anyway . . . about chamber music. From medieval times through the eighteenth century, musicians in Europe had basically two options for employment—the church or the nobility. So . . . when they weren't creating pieces for religious occasions and performing at church functions . . . musicians were playing in the chambers of stately homes. Now a *chamber* is the name for a room where guests Q24
may be assembled, kind of like a *hall*. And because of their association with this room, this chamber, the musicians who played for the wealthy patrons came to be known as *chamber players*.

Chamber music is written to be performed by a relatively small group . . . more than one, but fewer than a dozen musicians. I should tell you that pieces for more than eight players are unusual though, and it's very rare to see a conductor. It may surprise you to know that any combination of instruments can be used for chamber music. The strings, woodwinds, and piano are so often associated with chamber music and . . . uh . . . they remain the most popular, even today, but chamber music has been written for other instruments as well.

Q28 Well, the history of chamber music is usually divided into three distinct periods. In the Classical Period . . . and that extends from the mid seventeen hundreds to around 1820 . . . so in the Classical
Q25 Period, chamber music, like many other expressions of the arts . . . it reacted to the extravagant Baroque style by creating new structures, and these structures expressed simplicity, balance, and order. It was the age of the Enlightenment with the ideals of logic and reason. So this translated into compositions with one melodic line. The line . . . the melody . . . it was usually written for the violin and all other instruments provided an accompaniment. Early chamber music in the classical tradition often included the recorder, the harpsichord, and the viola.

Vienna was a hub of activity . . . for chamber music, and three composers dominated the artistic scene. Franz Joseph Haydn is generally credited with organizing the string quartet, and he produced more than 80 pieces for it . . . the quartet. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart also composed chamber music,
Q25 including not only quartets but also quintets, and trios with clarinet, and even piano sonatas. Since the music was relatively simple, many amateurs played for their own enjoyment. This was new, but by then, music was being printed and more people had access to it. So music rooms became popular and people played chamber music as a social activity.

Q26 Well, it was Ludwig Von Beethoven who probably bridged between the Classical Period and the Romantic Period, and I say that because his works were longer and . . . and perhaps more complex than his predecessors. And I find this amazing since the later quartets were all created when he was totally deaf. In any case, composers and performers were beginning to . . . to break free of the formal confines of the Classical Period. Their works became increasingly more difficult, expressing some of the high emotions of the nineteenth century, which, as you will recall the backdrop of that century . . . the French and the American revolutions . . . they were defining moments. So Chopin, Liszt, and Wagner wrote very little chamber music . . . because they preferred the emotional power of the full orchestra . . . or, uh, the personal expression in a piano solo. It was also at about this time that Franz Schubert, Johannes Brahms, Felix Mendelssohn, and Antonin Dvorak made their contributions, and they wrote melodic, passionate compositions for chamber players. But now the music was more difficult to play, and the patronage system was declining anyway, so . . . so most chamber music moved from the great homes of the wealthy and into the concert halls, which were frequented by a growing middle class. And it was a very creative period for chamber music, and professional chamber groups emerged during this time. The composers probably felt a new freedom because they weren't so much pressed to please their patrons and they could explore their art.

Well, at the turn of the century, the Modern Period ushered in an opportunity for even greater exper-
Q27 imentation. Painters were bringing Impressionism to the forefront of the artistic consciousness, and this was reflected musically in the work of Claude Debussy and Maurice Ravel. Their chamber music was considered revolutionary . . . Debussy and Ravel . . . because, unlike previous composers, their compositions had recurring themes instead of a continuous melody. And there are a number of other composers who wrote chamber music in the Modern Period but . . . but whether they'll be remembered is, well, a question to be answered by future historians. What we *do* know is that the Modernists gave chamber music new combinations of instruments and arrangements. And as the music became more . . . more . . . unexpected, often with unusual tonality, well, it also became even more difficult to play and that meant that the scores for modern chamber music had to be played by very skilled ensemble musicians.

This evening, at the concert, the University Quartet will perform one of the Classical pieces by Hayden. You'll hear the *Quartet in D Minor, Opus 76, Number 2, Third Movement*. There are two violins, one cello, and one viola. So, that said . . . I'll see you tonight.

Audio 23. What is the main purpose of the lecture?
Answer **A** To explain chamber music

Audio 24. What is the origin of the term *chamber music*?
Answer **C** A place where the music was played

Audio 25. Which of the following are the key characteristics of chamber music in the Classical Period?
Answer **A** Orderly structures
D Amateur musicians

Audio 26. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Well, it was Ludwig Von Beethoven who probably bridged between the Classical Period and the Romantic Period, and I say that because his works were longer and . . . and perhaps more complex than his predecessors. And I find this amazing since the later quartets were all created when he was totally deaf."
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this about Beethoven:
Replay "And I find this amazing since the later quartets were all created when he was totally deaf."
Answer **B** Her positive tone indicates that she is in admiration of Beethoven's exceptional talent.

Audio 27. Why does the professor mention Impressionism?
Answer **A** She is comparing the experimentation in art with that in music.

Audio 28. How did the professor organize the lecture?
Answer **B** She arranged the information in chronological order.

Listening 6 "Botany Class"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a botany class. The professor is talking about hydroponics.

Professor:
Although the recent interest in hydroponics may lead you to believe that it's a relatively new idea, the process probably originated in ancient times. Q29 In fact, the famous Hanging Gardens of Babylon may well have been one of the first successful attempts to grow plants in water, that is, hydroponically. Early agriculture in Pakistan and India as well as other areas throughout the Middle East included water crops, and we also have evidence that the Egyptians were growing plants in water along the Nile . . . and that was without soil. Asia and the South Pacific were prime locations for early hydroponic gardens. And, in the Western Hemisphere, we know that the Aztecs had developed an advanced system of water agriculture along the marshlands of Lake Tenochtitlan in the Central Valley of Mexico because, when the Spanish arrived, they made drawings in their journals of "floating islands of trees and vegetation," in other words, hydroponic agriculture.

Okay, well, this isn't a history class. It's a botany class. But I think it's important when we're talking about scientific discoveries that we understand how science works. Sometimes we're rediscovering and refining methods that have been used for a very long time, and that's certainly the case of hydroponics. Q30 Through the years, it's been called *nutriculture, chemiculture*, *acquiculture*, *soilless* culture, but the current term is *hydroponics*, and that encompasses the modern science of growing plants without soil by using an inert medium such as sand, peat, gravel, or . . . or even sawdust or Styrofoam. Of course, you have to add a solution of nutrients.

Clearly, good soil has the nutrients necessary for plant growth, but when plants are grown without soil, all the nutrients must be provided in another way. So, why do you think that we would go to all of this additional effort to replace soil?

Student 1:
Well, I think the book mentioned something about keeping the growing medium more sterile.

Professor:
Umhum. Soil-borne diseases and pests and even weeds can be . . . virtually eliminated . . . by using a soil alternative.

Student 1:
So I was thinking probably you wouldn't require as much labor, to get rid of the pests and weeds.

Professor:
Good thought. Now tell me what you know about fertilizer and water.

Student 2:
Oh, right. Less fertilizer and water are required per plant since they're constantly reused, and aren't the results more uniform because of the highly controlled conditions?

Professor:
Q31 Right on both counts. But probably the most important advantage is the ability to cultivate a larger number of plants in a limited space. . . . Where would this be important do you think?

Student 1:
Well, small or isolated environments or very arid climates with limited fresh water supplies probably.

Student 2:
Q32 Or regions with poor soils, for instance, in developing countries where the weather conditions aren't dependable and . . . and famine might, well, could happen.

Student 1: Or the area may have a dense population.

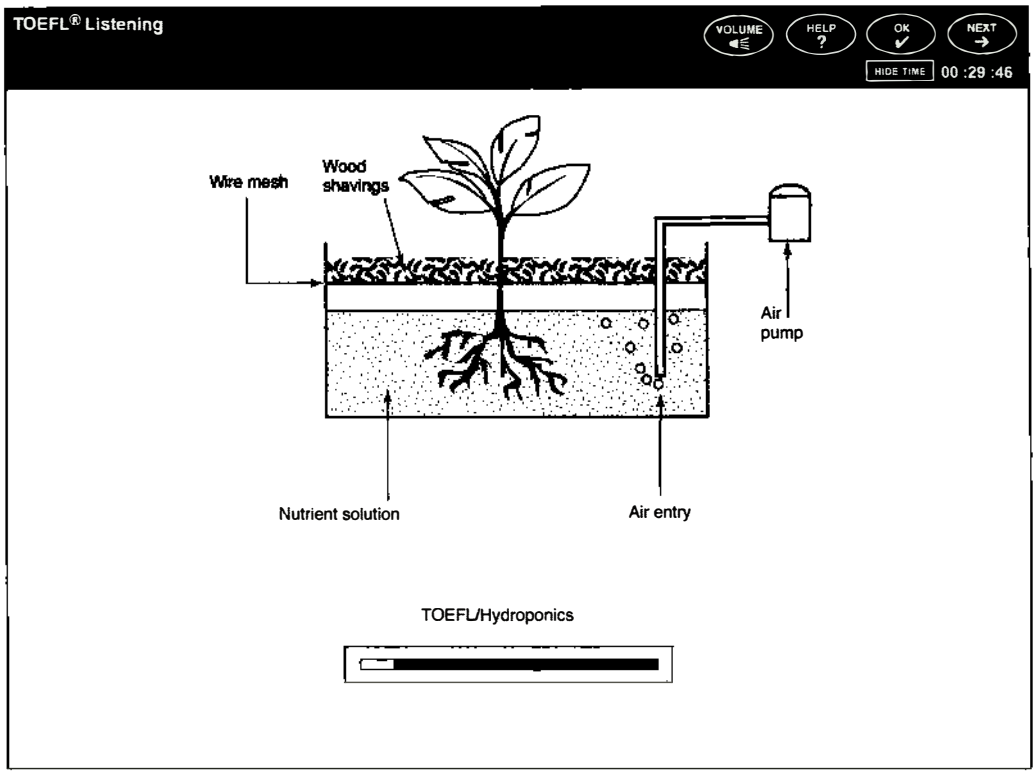
Professor: So hydroponics is limited to developing regions then.

Student 3:
I'm not sure about that. Even in highly industrialized nations, populations are growing and . . . and isn't the total acreage in cultivation dropping to accommodate the expansion of urban areas?

Professor:
Well stated. As agricultural land is sold for development, hydroponics has become a viable option for, well, for almost every country in the world.

Now earlier, I said that we're often rediscovering ancient methods in science, but we're also adapting them by using improvements from other scientific research. In the case of hydroponics, there are probably two modern discoveries that have supported progress in hydroponics. Okay. First, the development of plastics . . . that allowed growers to abandon the old concrete beds, which were costly to construct and problematic because . . . because they leached into the nutrient solution. But, plastic beds are cheap, they're light, and sterile . . . an ideal replacement for concrete. And many of the greenhouses themselves are even built of plastic panels. Okay. The other important advancement is the knowledge we've accumulated about plant nutrition. Of course, like I said, good soil has the nutrients necessary for plant growth, but when plants are grown without soil, all the nutrients must be provided in another way. And now we have a much better idea of what we need to use in the solution to obtain the best results.

So . . . all of that said, let's talk about the lab experiment that we've set up here. This solution contains potassium nitrate, ammonium sulfate, magnesium sulfate, monocalcium phosphate, and calcium
Q33 sulfate. Don't try to write down all of that now. You can refer to your lab workbook for the list of substances and the proportions needed for proper plant growth.



For now, just look at this diagram. The drawing in your lab workbook should look more or less like this one. As you know, for plants grown in soil, the roots absorb water and nutrients, but they also serve to anchor the plant. That's why the roots of our hydroponic plants aren't placed directly in the water and nutrient solution. We used sterile gravel held in place by wire mesh to anchor the plants and that allowed us to suspend the roots in the tank below. Remember, the tank contains the water and nutrient solution. So . . . because oxygen is also taken in by the roots, we had to attach an air pump to mix oxygen into the solution. Remember, a constant source of oxygen is one of the major problems with hydroponics tanks of this kind. And you can see the way that the pump is attached to the tank. Q34

Okay, it's almost time for our break this morning, so I'd like you to come over to the hydroponics area and examine the experiment close up. I'd also like you to take a closer look at this specimen of nutrient solution. What do you notice about this? Can you draw any conclusions? Today is Day 1 for you to record your observations on the chart in your workbook.

Audio 29. What is this discussion mainly about?
Answer **A** Growing plants without soil

Audio 30. Why does the professor talk about the history of hydroponics?
Answer **A** She wants to put the modern method in historical context.

Audio 31. According to the professor, what is the greatest advantage of hydroponics?
Answer **D** Less space is needed to produce a large number of plants.

Audio 32. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Or regions with poor soils, for instance, in developing countries where the weather conditions aren't dependable and . . . and famine might, well, could happen."
"Or the area may have a dense population."
"So hydroponics is limited to developing regions then."
"I'm not sure about that."

Audio Replay Why does the professor say this: "So hydroponics is limited to developing regions then."
Answer A Her tone is not conclusive. She is making a statement to generate further discussion.

Audio 33. Why does the professor suggest that the students refer to their lab workbook?
Answer C To find a list of important plant nutrients

Audio 34. According to the professor, why are roots important to plants?
Answer A To absorb water and nutrients
C To suspend the plants in the solution

Listening 7 "Library"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between a librarian and a student.

Student: Excuse me.
Librarian: Yes?
Student: Are you the reference librarian?
Librarian: Yes. How can I help you?
Q35 Student: Well, I'm looking for a book that compares Great Britain, Australia, Canada, and the United States.
Librarian: Okay. What exactly are you trying to compare?
Student: I'm not quite sure. How about the cost of living?
Librarian: Oh. Well cost of living is, uh, it's not very specific. I mean, what aspects of the cost of living do you need to find? Cost of living is a fairly broad topic.
Student: It is?
Librarian: Well, yes. Do you want this for personal information or is it for a class?
Student: It's for my economics class.
Librarian: Unhuh.
Student: With Professor Brooks.
Librarian: Oh, okay. Well, do you just need numbers . . . or is it a report . . . a narrative?
Q39 Student: Just the numbers. I'm supposed to make a chart. It can be either a pie chart or a bar graph. And I have to have some demographic information, you know, in order to do the chart.
Librarian: So you want a general comparison. I'm trying to imagine what you'll put on the graph.
Student: Well, I'm not too clear about that. I was thinking I might make several graphs, you know, one for each country, with the cost of basic things on it, and then I could compare the graphs.
Librarian: Was that the assignment? Maybe if you could explain the assignment to me . . .
Student: Okay. I, uh, I have it right here . . . somewhere. Just a minute. . . . Okay, here it is.
Q36 It says, "make a pie chart or a bar graph with at least four parts. It should be large enough to share with the class."
Librarian: That's it?
Student: Unhuh. But it's for an economics class, and we have to be able to explain it to everyone. So that's why I was going for the cost of living and my major's international business so I was interested in comparing several countries.
Librarian: But the professor really only asked you for *one* chart.
Student: I guess so . . . but I'm trying to figure out how to compare those countries on one chart and it's not that easy.

Librarian: Okay. Well . . .
Student: You think I should just do the one chart then?
Librarian: It's usually better to follow the instructions for an assignment unless . . .
Student: Oh. Even if it's more than, uh, more than the professor asked for?
Librarian: It's usually better to check with the professor first if you want to change the assignment. Q37
Student: Okay then. I guess I need to choose one country and compare several factors for the one country.
Librarian: Or, if you want to compare several countries, you probably need to zero in on one factor.
Student: Yeah.
Librarian: Like the average income for a family of four or . . . Q38
Student: Oh I see. . . . Maybe I could compare the cost of a home.
Librarian: Right.
Student: So I could find that in an encyclopedia then.
Librarian: Well, maybe, but you want current data and I'm not sure that you'd find demographics on income and home prices in an encyclopedia. Anyway . . . look, why don't I show you where you can find some reference materials in economics? Then, you can browse for a while. Maybe you'll find something that sparks an idea. But if you don't, then just come back to my desk and I'll look with you.
Student: Thanks. That's great.

Audio 35. Why does the man approach the librarian?
Answer **C** He needs help finding some data. He wants to compare information about several countries.

Audio 36. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "It says, 'make a pie chart or a bar graph with at least four parts. It should be large enough to share with the class.'"
"That's it?"
"Unhuh."
Audio What does the woman mean when she says this:
Replay "That's it?"
Answer **B** She is expressing surprise by the stress and tone of her voice.

Audio 37. What does the librarian imply?
Answer **D** The man should not change the assignment.

Audio 38. What example does the librarian give for the assignment?
Answer **B** Average family income in several countries

Audio 39. What will the man do with the information?
Answer **C** Draw a chart or a graph

Listening 8 "Engineering Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an engineering class.

Professor:
Because every earthquake presents us with unique conditions, it's difficult to anticipate the stresses that will ultimately affect the structures we design and build. So our challenge is to try to design a building that will be as . . . safe as possible . . . for all types of earthquakes. Besides that, during the past decade, the expectations for earthquake-resistant structures have changed. Whereas in the Q40

past, it was considered adequate for a building not to collapse during an earthquake, now insurance companies and . . . and even clients . . . they're demanding buildings that will be able to maintain their structural integrity through an earthquake and remain sound . . . after the earthquake subsides.

Q40 So, in recent years we've developed several techniques for building more earthquake-resistant structures. For relatively small buildings, all we have to do, really, is bolt the buildings to their foundations and, uh . . . provide some support walls. Remember these walls are referred to as *shear walls* in your textbook. They're made of reinforced concrete, and by that I mean concrete with steel rods embedded in it. This not only strengthens the structure but . . . but it also diminishes the forces that tend to shake a building during a quake. And in addition to the shear walls that surround a building, shear walls can be situated in the center of a building around an elevator shaft or a stairwell. This is really an excellent reinforcement. It's commonly known as a *shear core*, and it contains reinforced concrete, too.

Q41 Okay. Let's talk about walls. Walls can also be reinforced, using a technique called cross-bracing. Imagine steel beams that cross diagonally from the ceiling to the floor . . . and this happens on each story in a building. So before the walls are finished, you can see a vertical row of steel x's on the structure. And this cross-bracing tends to make a building very rigid, and consequently, very strong.

But besides steel reinforcements, engineers have also devised *base isolators*, which are positioned below the building, and their purpose is to absorb the shock of the sideways shaking that can under-

Q42 mine a building and cause it to collapse. Most of the base isolators that are currently being used are made of alternating layers of steel and synthetic rubber. The steel is for strength, but, uh . . . the rubber absorbs shock waves. In higher buildings, a moat of flexible materials allows the building to sway during seismic activity. Or . . . or large rubber cylinders support all of the corners of the building, and in between each floor, and they allow the building to sway during an earthquake. So, you can see that these alternatives are quite different from cross-bracing or shear walls.

So the combination of reinforced structures and flexible materials has been proven to reduce earthquake damage. But even these engineering techniques are insufficient if the building has been

Q43 constructed on filled ground. Soil used in fill dirt can lose its bearing strength when subjected to the shock waves of an earthquake, and the buildings constructed on it can literally disappear into the Earth. So, in areas where earthquakes are known to occur, it's important to understand the terrain, and you have to be sure that the ground is either solid or it's been adequately prepared.

Okay, let's assume that we do everything right . . . we choose and prepare the construction site

Q44 and we design a building with plenty of reinforcements and flexible materials. With cross-bracing, we *probably* have a building with the strength to hold up under earthquakes, even those of relatively high magnitudes. And while this is great for the building, what about the occupants? Well, the structure may be strong, but the furniture will probably be overturned or shifted during the earthquake and that could result in major injuries for the people inside. So, now that we've made progress in solving the problem of how to preserve the buildings, one of the more recent areas of research is how to better protect the occupants during an earthquake.

Q45 One interesting possibility is to design buildings that house a series of pistons, and these pistons are filled with fluid and controlled by sensors in a computer. So . . . by analyzing signals from the sensors, the computer should be able to determine the magnitude of an earthquake in progress . . . and when it does that, it can trigger electromagnets in the pistons to increase or decrease the . . . the rigidity of the shock absorbers . . . built into the structure. If the earthquake is minor, then the building can be programmed to sway gently, and the people and everything else inside get a safe ride. But during high-magnitude earthquakes, the shock absorbers can freeze the building to prevent it from shaking at all. So the beauty of the concept is that the computer sensors work very quickly, reacting within one one-thousandth of a second, and they can run on battery power since the electrical system usually

Q45 fails during an earthquake. Will the concept work? Well, the National Science Foundation is supporting more research into the potential of pistons, and the results so far are promising.

Audio 40. What is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **C** Earthquake-resistant structures

Audio 41. Which technique is used to reinforce walls?
Answer **A** Cross-bracing

Audio 42. Which two materials are used in base isolators?
Answer **A** Rubber
B Steel

Audio 43. What happens to fill dirt during an earthquake?
Answer **C** It becomes unstable and collapses.

Audio 44. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "With cross-bracing, we probably have a building with the strength to hold up under earthquakes, even those of relatively high magnitudes. And while this is great for the building, what about the occupants? Well, the structure may be strong, but the furniture will probably be overturned or shifted during the earthquake and that could result in major injuries for the people inside."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "And while this is great for the building, what about the occupants?"
Answer **A** He is introducing a new major point—how to protect the occupants.

Audio 45. What does the professor think about computer sensors for buildings?
Answer **B** He finds the research on sensors for pistons very encouraging.

LISTENING 9 "ART HISTORY CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an art history class. The professor is talking about action art.

Professor:
In the 1950s, Abstract Expressionism emerged among a group of painters that came to be known as the New York School, although the members included artists from many regions of the United States and several European countries as well. In any case, we know that the brushstrokes were a significant feature of the work of Impressionist and Post Impressionist painters, and like them, the Abstract Expressionists were interested in the expressive qualities of paint, and particularly in the case of action painters or gesture painters . . . they were sometimes called gesture painters . . . and they developed new methods for applying the paint. They dripped, threw, sprayed, and, uh, splattered . . . paint on the canvas . . . with a view to expressing artistic . . . actions or gestures . . . as part of the creative process. Q46

Now, according to your textbook, probably the best-known of the action painters was . . . who?

Student 1: Pollock.

Student 2: Jackson Pollock.

Professor:
No doubt about it. Pollock was a highly individual artist. He's famous for huge mural-sized works. And . . . to create them, he'd spread his unstretched canvas on the floor, and he'd approach the work from all four sides, walking around it and attacking it with commercial house paint in cans that he carried with him.

He dripped the paint from sticks or brushes that he dipped in the cans or . . . or he threw the paint and splashed it in patterns . . . that, uh, . . . that reflected the motion of his arm and his body, as he

engaged in his so-called action painting. I think you can see how the name applies to this method. So Pollock claimed that this process allowed him to be *in* the painting, not apart from it.

Let me show you a picture of Pollock with a work in progress.

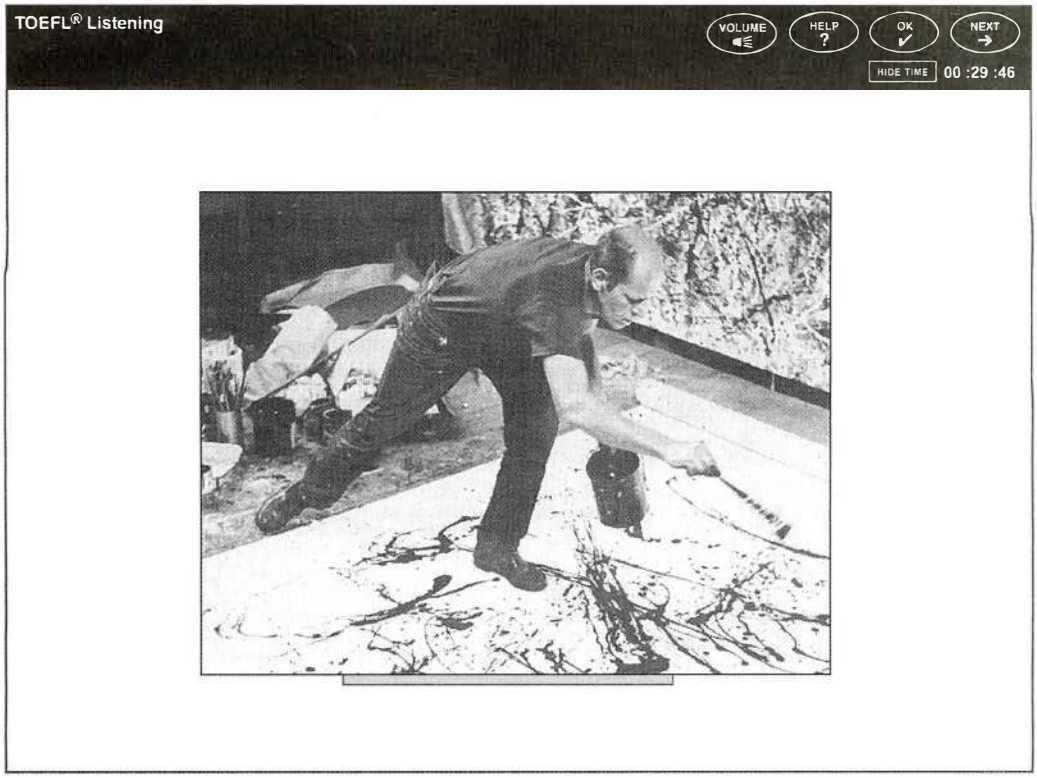


Photo of Jackson Pollock painting
Photograph by Hans Namuth
Courtesy Center for Creative Photography, University of Arizona
© 1991 Hans Namuth Estate

As you can see . . . and this is Pollock . . . he's stepping right onto the canvas, splattering and dripping the paint. He's focusing on the act of painting and he's using grand, rhythmic gestures . . . sort
Q47 of similar to a dance. In fact, some critics referred to the work as a performance or a choreographed activity. He also used to pour the paint directly out of the can, and occasionally threw sand, broken glass, uh . . . pebbles, and string, and other objects . . . he would throw them onto the canvas.

So, how much of the action art was a result of decisions and how much was pure chance? What do you think?

Student 3: Well, there was probably a little bit of both going on there.

Professor:
Probably so. But Pollock contended that he could control the flow of the paint with the motion of his arm and body . . . and that his work was *not* accidental. And it certainly *was* spontaneous in the sense that it happened very quickly and the decisions that he made were . . . of necessity, split second
Q48 choices. So, I would say you're right, that action art, and Pollock's work in particular, is a combination of chance, of artistic intuition, and control. And I should point out that he was known to retouch a drip with the brush on occasion.

Now let me show you an example of the paintings themselves.



© Lauren Jade Goudie/Shutterstock.com

Professor: What do you see?

Student 2: There's no visual center of attention.

Professor: Which means . . . ?

Student 2: Which means . . . the image has no foreground, no background, no focus of attention.

Professor:
I see. However, I think you'll agree that it *does* have a . . . a complex unity, a balance of form and color. Look at the patterns. Wouldn't you agree that they're caused by the separation and weaving of one pigment in another? And it was this . . . this weaving that produced a number of tones from a minimal palette of paints. . . . Have any of you ever seen an original Pollock?

Student 3: I have. I went to the Guggenheim Museum when I was in New York last year.

Professor: Could you tell the class a little about it?

Student 3:
Sure. I thought that the work looked like skeins of yarn. Because the dripping and the small objects produced . . . uh . . . uh . . . Q49

Professor: Texture?

Student 3:
Yeah. Texture as well as form, like yarn. And I also remember the light that seemed to be *in* the canvas.

Professor:
And precisely because of the texture and light, it's really a disservice to see this as a flat slide.

Student 3: Oh another thing. A lot of the paintings were identified by numbers instead of names.

Professor:
Oh, thanks for bringing that up. Some people think he did that because he didn't want to limit the
Q50 imagination. He wanted others to view a painting, without prejudice, so to speak. But one piece has come to be called "Lavender Mist." I'm not really sure whether Pollock actually named it or not, but it's particularly interesting because the artist marked the image with his handprints. I think it's in your textbook, but again, seeing it with the texture of the paint is a different experience.

Okay, so, after the process of creation, we see beauty, order, unity, perhaps even rhythm in an incredible light emanating from the canvas. Pollock wanted to express his feelings rather than to
Q51 merely illustrate them, and I think he *did* achieve that. And, whether you like them or not, and many critics argued and continue to argue their merits, but it's undeniable that works by Pollock are unique and recognizable . . . and virtually impossible to copy. It's also clear that he had a remarkable influence on later artists . . . color-field painters who adapted the paint-pouring methods . . . and modern artists who chose to work with allover patterns . . . and the performance artists who continue to push the envelope on activity and process.

Audio 46. What is this discussion mainly about?
Answer **C** Abstract Expressionism

Audio 47. To what did some critics compare Pollock's work?
Answer **B** Dancing, because the work appeared to be choreographed

Audio 48. According to the professor, what defines action art?
Answer **A** Control
C Coincidence

Audio 49. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Could you tell the class a little about it?"
"Sure. I thought that the work looked like skeins of yarn. Because the dripping and the small objects produced . . . uh . . . uh . . . "
"Texture?"
"Yeah. Texture as well as form, like yarn."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Texture?"
Answer **A** He is helping the student to find the exact word.

Audio 50. What is interesting about the painting, "Lavender Mist?"
Answer **C** The artist's handprints

Audio 51. What is the professor's opinion of Pollock?
Answer **B** He argues that Pollock's work was influential.

➤ Speaking



Model Test 5, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 18

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Tourist Attraction"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Your friend's cousin is going to visit your country and you promised to show her some interesting places. Which one would be more interesting?

1. A beautiful landscape
2. A historical city
3. Your home

Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Success"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Some people believe that the best way to succeed is to set goals and work hard to achieve them. Other people think that hard work is not as important as good luck. Which point of view do you think is true and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Auto Registration"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A student meeting is planned to discuss the policy for vehicle registration. Read the policy in the college catalogue [printed on page 421]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to a student who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the policy.

Student:
Well, I don't mind paying a parking fee, and I even think that $20 is reasonable, but my concern is that some of us are using more than one car, and since the registration is for the car, not the student, well, then you have to pay $40 so you can drive both of your cars on campus, but you're only one student. See what I mean? Like me, sometimes I have to take my husband's car and one time last semester . . . I didn't have it registered and I got a ticket. I think that every student should pay a parking fee, and then just put a parking permit on the windshield of whatever car the student is driving that day, don't you?

Narrator 1: The student expresses her opinion of the policy for vehicle registration. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Stress"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about stress [printed on page 422]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class. The professor is talking about an experiment.

Professor:
Let me tell you about a classic experiment on rats. I think it was first done in the early seventies by Weiss and reported in the *Scientific American*. Anyway, the rats were divided randomly into three groups. Rats in the first group were given shocks, but just before the shock was induced, they received a warning in the form of a tone. The second group of rats was also given shocks, but this group didn't receive the warning tone. And the final control group received no shocks, but they were exposed to the same warning tone as the first group. After a few weeks the rats were examined, and the animals that had received shocks with no warning were already showing severe signs of stomach ulcers. The other two groups of rats showed little or no instance of ulcers. According to Weiss, the experiment confirmed that unexpected events are more stressful than those that can be predicted. In related experiments, there was also evidence that even a small amount of control over the circumstances surrounding the stress can lower the negative effects. When rats were allowed to select their own rest and feeding times, they experienced less physical damage than did rats that received the same amount of rest and feeding at times that were selected *for* them.

Narrator 1: Explain the causes of stress and relate them to the experiment with rats.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Art Project"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and her friend.

Friend:	What are you going to do for the project?
Student:	I don't know. I was hoping you could help me think of something.
Friend:	Well, you're such a good artist, you could talk about watercolor while you're doing one in front of the class. That would be totally awesome. If I were you, that's what I'd do.
Student:	Maybe, but what if I make a mistake in front of everyone?
Friend:	Come on. You're really talented. Besides, you wouldn't have to do much preparation beforehand.
Student:	True. And it fits in with what we've been talking about in class.

Friend: Yeah. Or, how about this? You could bring in a photograph, a pencil drawing, and a watercolor of the same subject. Something simple so it wouldn't take so much time to do, like a flower. Then you could show the advantages and disadvantages of working with different materials.
Student: I could do that one ahead of time.
Friend: You could, but remember, it would take a lot more time.
Student: Gee, thanks. I'll have to think about it, but these are both really good options.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Caverns"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare, and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a geology class. The professor is discussing caverns.

Professor:
Okay, as you'll recall, caves form in limestone when acidic groundwater follows some kind of weakness in the rocks. Now the rock formations in a *cavern* . . . that's the technical name that we use for a cave . . . the rock formations there are of two kinds . . . stalactites and stalagmites. Both of these formations are water that contains dissolved minerals that . . . that accumulate and build deposits. But stalactites hang down from the ceiling of the cavern, and stalagmites protrude up from the floor of the cavern. Well, these words sound a lot alike, and this can be confusing, so I always tell my students to remember that there is a *t* in stalactites, and the *t* has a tail that hangs down just like the stalactites that hang down from the ceiling of the cave, but there is an *m* in stalagmites and the points on an *m* stick up like the stalagmites that protrude up from the ground in a cave. And if that doesn't work for you, another way to remember the difference is that stalactite has a *c* in it, and so does the word *ceiling*, whereas stalagmite has a *g* in it, and so does the word *ground.* So stalactites drip down from the ceiling and stalagmites build up from the ground. So with these little tricks for remembering the difference, I expect you *all* to get this right on the next quiz.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the two kinds of rock formations in a cavern, and explain how the professor helps his students remember the difference between the two.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 5, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 19

Integrated Essay "Competition in the Classroom"

First, read the passage [printed on page 426] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
Although it's claimed that competition in the classroom plays an important role in academic achievement, today we'll challenge the assumptions that competition is good for students. First of all, competition supposedly provides motivation, but in well-documented research, competitive classrooms can cause high degrees of performance anxiety, which actually interferes with learning and impedes the goal of motivation. Increased instances of cheating, fear of failure, antagonism among students, and low self-esteem also tend to increase in highly competitive educational settings.

A second assumption is that competition increases productivity, but in an analysis of 122 studies on this topic, Alfie Kohn found that cooperation promoted higher productivity than competition in about half of the studies, and 25 percent of the studies didn't discriminate between productivity in cooperative and competitive cases. In numerous studies since, the benefits of cooperative learning, or the structuring of groups to work together in the classroom, has confirmed the increase in productivity that accompanies a focus on group goals.

The assumption that competition is *fun* may have been true in the past, when emphasis was placed on the process, that is, *playing* the game. But in contemporary society, the emphasis seems to have changed. Children are so dedicated to *winning* the game, that the spontaneous fun is often lost in the contest. Even sports competitions have become all about the outcome. And losers don't have nearly as much fun as winners.

So here's my solution: why not retain all of the *good* aspects of competition by allowing students to compete against themselves? Instead of a situation in which one person wins because he's read the most books—everyone wins because each child has read more books *this* term than he or she did *last* term? See what I mean?

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 5, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 20

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Tourist Attraction"

Although a case could be made for showing a tourist the beautiful mountain region or the historic capital city in my country, I would probably take a tourist to my *home* because living with a family would give this visitor a perspective about my country that few tourists have. Shopping, eating meals together, um . . . interacting and participating in the usual everyday activities, attending religious services, and . . . and visiting friends in their homes, um, this would let the visitor live in my culture for awhile. I think this is more impressive than taking photos of places because you can see all of the usual tourist attractions in videos or magazines, but you can't understand how people live unless you live *with* them.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Success"

I think it's important to set goals and work hard to achieve them. For one thing, goals help you think clearly about what you're doing. By identifying goals, you get organized. Another thing is the advantage of sharing goals with people who can help you. If others know what you're trying to do, sometimes they give you advice or assistance. As for good luck, I agree that a lucky opportunity or a chance meeting with a person who can help you is sometimes a key to success . . . but unless you know where you're going and what you want to achieve, you might not even recognize a lucky opportunity. So, in my opinion, the best way to succeed is to know what you want and work to create your own good fortune. Then, if luck shines on you, you'll just reach your goal sooner.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Auto Registration"

To park on campus, students have to buy permits for each vehicle. They cost $20. The woman doesn't oppose the fee, but she believes that it . . . I mean the fee . . . it should cover all the vehicles that a student might need to use. She uses a personal example from last term when she had to drive her husband's car and she got a ticket even though she had a paid permit for her own car. So, um, so her solution is to pay for parking on campus and then display the permit on the vehicle that the student happens to be driving that day. That way, if there are several cars in the family, the student can drive any of them, using the same parking permit. In other words, she thinks that the $20 registration should be for the student who needs the parking space, not for the vehicle that the student's driving.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Stress"

Stress is caused by changes in the environment that require people to adjust to new circumstances. It's interesting that these new conditions don't have to be negative. For example, you'd expect to have stress after a divorce or a health problem, but even moving to a new house or going on a trip can be stressful. Okay, in the experiment by Weiss, one group of rats was shocked after they heard a tone, so they knew that the shock was going to happen. Another group of rats heard the tone but didn't get the shock, and the other group received shocks at random without warning. So . . . the rats that received shocks without warning . . . they were the ones who developed ulcers but the other two groups had fewer ulcers or none at all. And this research proved that unexpected experiences are more stressful than those we can predict. Additional investigations also showed that even a little bit of control like choosing times to rest or eat could reduce stress.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Art Project"

The woman's trying to decide what to do for her project and her friend makes a couple of suggestions. He encourages her to paint a watercolor in front of the class while she's giving a talk about watercolor. The advantage of that project is she wouldn't have to prepare very much before the presentation. The other idea is to show three different versions of one subject, like a flower . . . in watercolor, a pencil sketch, and maybe a photograph. She could talk about the pluses and minuses of working in each of the three media. Um, the advantage of the second project is that she could prepare it before class, but the problem is it would be more time-consuming. I think she should go with the second idea because she seemed nervous about doing a spontaneous watercolor, and even though it would take more time, showing the three pieces of art would be less stressful and the advanced preparation might influence the professor to give her a better grade.

Checklist 5

✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Caverns"

The rock formations in caverns are made up of water that's saturated with dissolved minerals. As they drip and deposit themselves in the cave, you'll notice some of them hang from the ceiling and some of them grow up from the floor. The terms for each of these deposits are so similar that the professor suggests some tricks to help keep them straight. *Stalactite* has the letter *t* in it, which reminds students of *a tail* that hangs down . . . but *stalagmite* has the letter *m* in it, which brings to mind two points that stick up. He also points out that *stalactite* has a *c* in it, like the word *ceiling*, and stalactites drip down from the ceiling, but *stalagmite* has a *g* in it, like the word *ground*, and stalagmites grow up from the ground. So . . . so these memory aids . . . they help us recall that stalactites are the rock formations that grow down from the cavern and stalagmites are the ones that grow up from the floor.

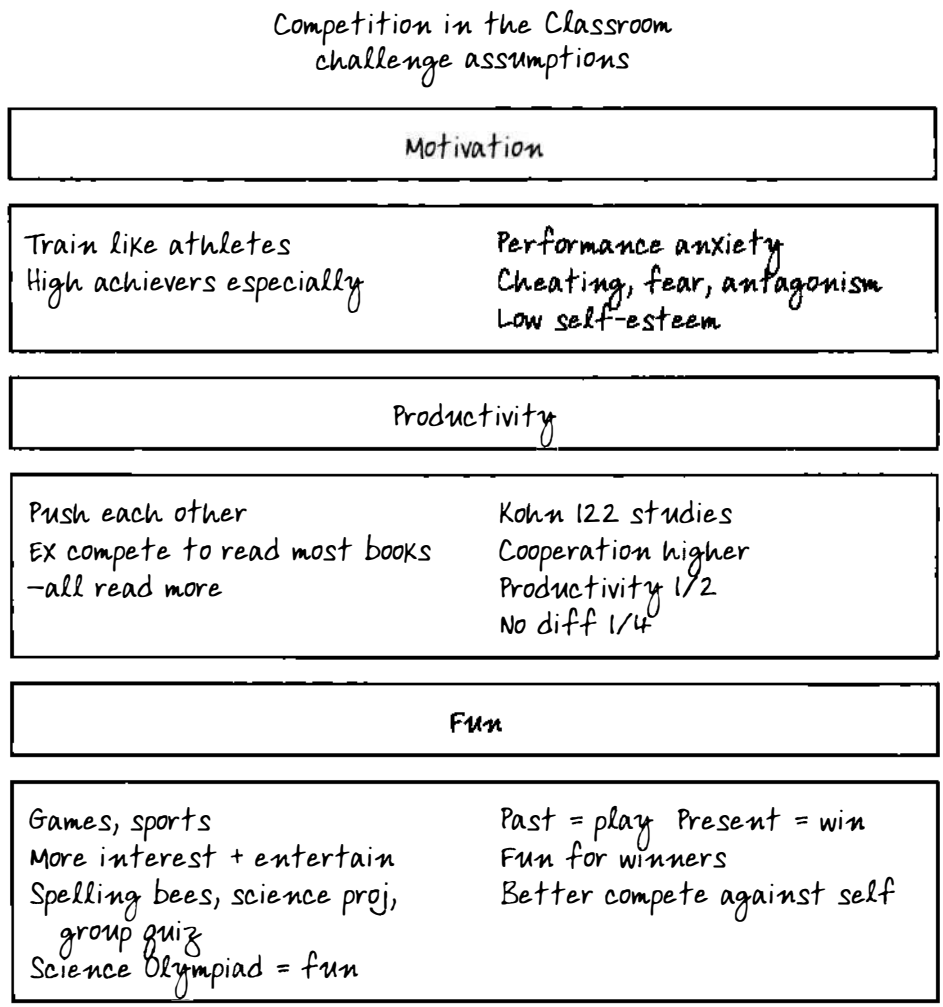
Checklist 6

✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Competition in the Classroom"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Competition in the Classroom"

The lecture challenges the assumptions in the reading passage, presenting the benefits of competition in the classroom. According to the lecturer, higher motivation, productivity, and fun do not justify competitive classrooms.

First, although high achievers may be motivated by competing with their classmates, most students experience performance anxiety before the competition, and low self-esteem when they don't win. According to the professor, cheating, fear, and antagonism often occur as a result of competition in the classroom.

Next, the professor cites research by Kohn in which he looked at 122 studies of cooperation in the classroom. In half of the studies, productivity was higher in a cooperative classroom, and in a quarter of the studies, there was no difference between the levels of productivity in cooperative and competitive classrooms.

Last, the lecture discredits the idea that a competitive classroom is fun, specifically that games and sports like spelling bees and science projects are more interesting and entertaining. The professor argues that in the past, it was fun to play, but currently, the emphasis is on winning, and it is only fun for those who manage to beat their fellow students in the competition. The lecture makes a case for students having the opportunity to compete against themselves to improve their scores.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "Technological Innovations"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

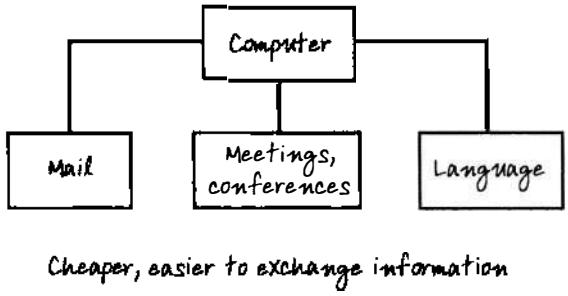
Outline

Computer

- Mail
- Meetings + conferences
- Language

Cheaper, easier to exchange information

Map



Example Essay

Without doubt, computers have changed the way that nations interact with each other in a global society. One type of communication that has been greatly affected by the computer is international mail. For example, prior to the widespread use of computers, a letter from the United States to my country would take weeks for delivery. I recall that the cost was almost $10 U.S. at a time when the same amount of money would buy groceries for a family for one week. Now mail can be delivered instantly at virtually no cost by electronic mail.

Another way that computers have affected international communication is in the way that people assemble in meetings and conferences. Before the introduction of computer technology, it was necessary to fly into a central location to conduct business or training. The time involved in travel was often ten times that of the actual meeting time. Now, through the miracle of teleconferencing, participants from many nations can meet in local sites and connect by means of satellite to a central conference facility. They can see each other on large screens and interact with each other from multiple sites around the world. After the initial investment in the equipment, a company can expect to save money because the travel budget can be adjusted down.

Finally, computers have influenced the language of communication around the world. Although English was a popular foreign language prior to the advent of the Internet, it is even more useful now. The computer keyboards in Roman letters are more efficient and, at least initially, the flood of information onto the "information highway" was often in the English language. To be connected in a global society increasingly means knowing English as a second language.

Computers have changed the way that nations interact with each other to send international mail, to attend world meetings and conferences, and to connect to the Internet. They have made it cheaper and easier to exchange information.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 6: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "EXOTIC AND ENDANGERED SPECIES"

1. **C** ". . . exotic species . . . a resident of an established community that was deliberately or accidentally moved from its home range and became established elsewhere." Choice A is not correct because it refers to an endangered species, not an exotic species. Choice B is not correct because exotic species are moved from their communities. Choice D is not correct because an exotic species becomes established, unlike most imports, which fail to thrive outside of their home range.
2. **B** In this passage, *connect* is a synonym for "bond." Context comes from the result at the end of the same sentence. ". . . they started to import familiar animals."
3. **C** ". . . no natural predators . . . was the reality." Choice A is not correct because it refers to a solution for the problem, not why the plan failed. Choice B is not correct because Australians imported rabbits because they liked the familiar species. Choice D is not correct because it refers to the reason that the rabbits were introduced, not to why the plan failed.
4. **D** In this passage, *usual* is a synonym for "normal."
5. **C** The rabbits create deserts by eating the vegetation, but they were not moved to deserts. Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 6. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 7. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 9.
6. **B** "Biting insects, mainly mosquitoes and fleas, quickly transmit the virus from host to host." Choice A is not correct because South American rabbits are the normal hosts for the myxoma virus. Choice C is not correct because it is the *O. cuniculus* rabbit that dies when infected. Choice D is not correct because resistant populations of *O. cuniculus* rabbits, not fleas, have an immunity to the virus.
7. **C** ". . . researchers are now questioning whether . . . it can . . . infect animals other than rabbits (such as humans)." Choice A is not correct because insects were not mentioned in the Spencer Gulf experiment. Choice B is not correct because the purpose of the experiment was to kill the rabbits. Choice D is not correct because 80 to 95 percent of the rabbits are being killed, but the small number with immunity is not identified as dangerous.
8. **C** In this passage, *results* is a synonym for "consequences." Context comes from the logical connection between researchers "questioning" and the phrase "long-term," which describes the "consequences."
9. **D** The farm and processing plant will manufacture products from kudzu, which will offer partial solutions. Choice A is not correct because kudzu was imported to control erosion, not for manufacture. Choice B is not correct because no argument is presented in defense of the decision. Choice C is not correct because it grows in Asia already.
10. **A** In this passage, *surpasses* is a synonym for "exceeds." Context comes from the logical relationship between "demand" and "supply."
11. **D** "When you hear someone bubbling enthusiastically about an **exotic species**, you can safely bet the speaker isn't an ecologist . . . they [exotic species] make native species **endangered species**." This introduction establishes the author's opinion that exotic species are often disruptive to the ecology.
12. **C** Vocabulary reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The connection is the reference to "starch" in both the insert sentence and the previous sentence.

13. **E, B, C** summarize the passage. Choice A is a minor point that refers to major point C. Choice D is a detail that is not developed as a major point. Choice F is an important fact, but it is not a major point because is it not developed.

READING 2 "PALEOLITHIC ART"

14. **C** ". . . the remoteness and difficulty of access . . . suggest[s] . . . magical properties . . . rituals or dances." Choice A is not correct because they were probably used for rituals. Choices B and D are not mentioned or implied in the passage.
15. **D** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 1, sentence 5. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 1, sentence 6. Choice C is implied in paragraph 1, sentences 3 and 5.
16. **A** In this passage, *admission* is a synonym for "access." Context comes from the contrast with "remoteness" and "difficulty" in the same sentence.
17. **C** In this passage, *assist* is a synonym for "facilitate." Context comes from the contrast of "destruction" and "survival" in the same and following sentences.
18. **B** In this passage, the phrase *not believed* describes "discredited." Choice A describes *distracted*. Choice C describes *discouraged*. Choice D describes *disorderly*. Context comes from the parts of the word. The prefix *dis* means "not." The root *credit* means "believe."
19. **B** ". . . and composition (how the motifs are arranged on the surface). . . . A definition appears within the parentheses that follow the word. Choices A and C are not correct because neither an example nor a contrasting statement is included in reference to the word *composition*. Although "art historians" are mentioned in a previous sentence about the intent of the paintings, they are not referred to in order to define a word.
20. **A** *It is true* paraphrases "cannot . . . be doubted" and *the paintings were meaningful* paraphrases "the paintings did have meaning."
21. **C** In this passage, the phrase *a single* is a synonym for "an individual."
22. **B** "Some researchers have considered them [positive imprints] 'signatures' of cult or community members, or . . . individual artists." Choices A and C are not correct because they are not mentioned or implied. Choice D is not correct because the author states that the "handprints . . . must have had a purpose."
23. **C** "Old Stone Age painters and sculptors frequently . . . used the caves' naturally irregular surfaces to help give the illusion of real presence to their forms." Choice A is not correct because the hardness of the stone is not mentioned. Choice B is not correct because the rock formation, not the animals, provided inspiration. Choice D may have been true, but it is not the reason that they selected certain surfaces in the caves.
24. **C** Because the author presents several different theories and does not offer a strong argument for any of them, the author's opinion is probably that the exact purpose of cave paintings is not known. Choice A is not correct because the author also presents the food-creation theory and the mythology theory as alternatives to the hunting ritual theory. Choice B is not correct because the mythology theory is not the only possibility discussed. Choice D is not correct because the author suggests several reasons why this theory cannot explain the narrow range of subjects or the inaccessibility of many of the paintings.
25. **B** Example is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the general statement in the previous sentence. The connection is between the general statement "animals that seem to have been diet staples . . . are not . . . portrayed" and the example that "red deer, not bison were eaten."
26. **B, D, A** summarize the passage. Choice C is true, but it is a minor point that is mentioned as evidence for Choice B. Choice E is not mentioned in the passage. Choice F is true, but it is a point that is used to develop the ideas in Choice A.

READING 3 "GROUP DECISION MAKING"

27. **A** "Groups accumulate more information, knowledge and facts . . . and often consider more alternatives." Choice B is not correct because a group tends to view a problem in more than one way. Choice C is not correct because making recommendations instead of decisions is not mentioned or implied in the passage. Choice D is not correct because each person has experience, but the experience of a group is not mentioned as a reason why a group is chosen to participate.
28. **B** ". . . people will . . . be more committed to a decision in which they have had a say than to a decision made for them." Choice A is true, but more ideas do not explain why the decisions are successful. Choice C is not correct because the help provided by a large number of people is not mentioned in the passage as an advantage during implementation. Choice D is not correct because implementation is successful in group decisions, but the decisions themselves may or may not be successful.
29. **B** In this passage, *significant* is a synonym for "considerable." Context comes from the reference to the "time required to make a decision" as a "disadvantage."
30. **D** In this passage, *As a result* describes "Consequently." Context comes from the conclusion that follows the word "Consequently."
31. **B** "One obvious disadvantage of group decision making is the time required to make a decision." Choice A is not correct because the implication is that sometimes a decision could have been made as effectively by an individual. Choice C is not correct because the "cost" refers to the time, not to the pay for group members. Choice D is not correct because groups tend to avoid disagreements.
32. **B** "All group members need to be encouraged and permitted to contribute." Choice A is not correct because the group should have goals, and personal goals by one member [the leader] should not dominate the discussion. Choice C is not correct because it is considered a disadvantage when an individual such as the group leader dominates the group. Choice D is not correct because expectations are not mentioned as a responsibility of the group leader.
33. **B** In this passage, *debatable* is a synonym for "controversial." Context comes from the contrast with "social pressure . . . to conform."
34. **C** ". . . a group may try too hard to compromise . . . to maintain friendships and avoid disagreements." Choice A is not correct because the group may not make optimal decisions when the members try too hard to compromise. Choice B is not correct because groupthink requires agreement rather than compromise. Choice D is not correct because helping one member to reach a personal goal or win an argument would be the opposite of compromise.
35. **A** "It occurs when groups are highly cohesive, have highly directive leaders, are insulated so they have no clear ways to get objective information, and—because they lack outside information—have little hope that a better solution might be found than the one [solution] proposed by the leader or other influential group members." The phrase "the one" does not refer to Choices B, C, or D.
36. **B** ". . . self-appointed 'mind guards' . . . bring pressure on dissenters." Choice A is not correct because people who conform will not necessarily pressure others. Choice C is not correct because "mind guards" use force to exert influence and may not be the most ethical members. Choice D is not correct because "mind guards" do not disagree with the group.
37. **C** ". . . decisions . . . are made without consideration of . . . alternative options." Choice A is not correct because the group exerts pressure on dissenters, but dissenters do not exert pressure on the group. Choice B is not correct because it is neither mentioned nor implied in the passage. Choice D is not correct because when groupthink takes place, poor decision making and wrong decisions occur.
38. **A** Generalization and example is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with following sentences. "In fact, the traditional group is prone to a variety of difficulties" provides

a general statement that introduces the disadvantages developed in the following sentences. Choices B, C, and D would interrupt the examples by inserting the generalization.

39. **A, B, D** summarize the passage. Choice C is a general introductory statement, not a major point. Choice E is true but is not mentioned in the passage. Choice F is a minor point that supports major point A.

Reading 4 "Four Stages of Planetary Development"

40. **C** "The planet Earth has passed through four stages of planetary development." This introductory sentence provides the thesis for the passage. Choice A is not correct because the four stages are explained in the following paragraphs. Choice B is not correct because the Earth and all the terrestrial planets have passed through the same stages. Choice D is not correct because exploration is not mentioned in the passage.
41. **A** *The Earth may have been liquid* paraphrases "Earth was probably molten," and *the heat collected faster than it dissipated* paraphrases "this heat would have accumulated much more rapidly than it could leak away." In addition, *if the formation took place quickly* paraphrases "If Earth formed rapidly."
42. **B** In this passage, *broken into small parts* describes the word "pulverized." Context comes from the reference to "battered."
43. **D** In this passage, the phrase *most important* describes the word "dominant." Context comes from the contrast with the phrase "still occasionally" earlier in the sentence.
44. **B** Because radioactive decay "releases heat" and "helped melt Earth," it must be concluded that radioactive matter generates intense heat. Choice A is not correct because all traces of early lava flooding caused by radioactive heating have been destroyed. Choice C is probably true, but the relative importance of the stages is not mentioned in the passage. Choice D is not correct because the heating, not the flooding, is caused by radioactive decay.
45. **B** ". . . water fell as rain, filling the deepest basins to produce the first oceans." Choices A, C, and D are true, but they do not describe how the oceans formed.
46. **A** According to the passage, *cratering* is the second stage and *flooding* is the third stage. Choice B is not correct because *slow surface evolution* is the fourth stage, after *flooding*. Choice C is not correct because *differentiation* is the first stage, which comes before, not after *cratering*. Choice D is not correct because it is not a stage, although it is an important process.
47. **B** ". . . this process [the presence of living matter] seems to be totally missing from other worlds in our solar system." Choice A is not correct because the author does not express doubt in her opinion. Choice C is not correct because she gives her opinion in the final sentence. Choice D is not correct because she states that living matter is "totally missing."
48. **D** Addition is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The reference to the way that the "mountains" and "continents" are "changing" in the previous sentence introduces the way that "air and water erode the surface and wear away geological features [like mountains and continents]" in the insert sentence. Choices A and B are not correct because they refer to flooding, not to the processes in slow surface evolution such as erosion. Choice C is not correct because the sentence does not include a reference to erosion and cannot introduce an additional sentence about erosion.
49. **B** "No one is sure how the presence of living matter [which is peculiar to Earth] has affected the evolution of Earth." Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 1, sentence 1. Choice C is mentioned in paragraph 1, sentence 2. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentence 5.
50. **A** In this passage *different* is a synonym for "peculiar." Context comes from the word "Nevertheless," which signals a contrast with the previous sentences that show similarities between Earth and the other planets.
51. **A** In this passage, *procedure* is a synonym for "process."
52. **E, F, B** summarize the passage. Choice A is not correct because the stages *are the same*. Choice C is true, but it is a minor point that refers to major point E. Choice D is true, but it is a minor point that refers to major point F.

➤ Listening



Model Test 6, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 21

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to a conversation between a student and a professor.

Student: Hi Dr. Davis. I'm a little early. Should I wait outside?

Professor: No. Come on in. I'm free. What did you want to talk about?

Student: Q1 Well, I've read the first couple of books you had on my list . . . the reading list for my independent study . . . and I was just wondering how you want me to report them to you. We didn't really talk about that.

Professor: Well, I'm glad you stopped by. Let me think . . . didn't you have a project to do in addition to the reading list?

Student: Yes. You said it could be a research paper or I could come up with a proposal for a different kind of project.

Professor: That's right. So, the reading list is . . . background information then. Why don't you just come in when you finish the first part of the list. I think it was divided in two distinct parts . . . so just come in, and we'll talk about the readings.

Student: You mean I should prepare a synopsis of each book and . . . and kind of report to you on each one?

Professor: Q4 No, no. Nothing as formal as that. I was thinking more along the lines of a conversation. As I recall, the list has a focus, doesn't it?

Student: Definitely. All of the books are novels and plays from the second half of the twentieth century.

Professor: The Post Modern Period then. And all North American novelists and playwrights.

Student: Right.

Professor: So we should be able to find some common threads then. Remember, though, Post Modernism is very difficult to define precisely. Maybe we could start with a discussion of the themes that emerge in the collection of literature from that period.

Student: That sounds interesting.

Professor: I think so, too. And by the time you get through with the second half of the reading list and we get together again, maybe we can figure out whether we're looking at a logical extension of Post Modernism or whether there's actually a new movement there . . . in the readings on the second part. If you'll notice, there are quite a few minority writers represented, so you might want to think about what *that* means.

Student: Q2 I noticed that in the list. The first part of the list has the usual North American writers and, of course, a good representation of women writers, as you would expect, but the second part of the list includes a number of African-American authors, several Hispanic-American writers, and a few Asian-Americans.

Professor: It's a multiethnic mix.

Student: Yeah.

Professor: Good. So have you decided whether you want to do a paper or . . . something else perhaps?

Student: To tell the truth, I'd really like to do something a little more creative. Maybe bring in some visuals on the computer as part of the . . . I don't know . . . I suppose you would call it a mixed media report. But I've never done anything like that before.

Professor: But that's what an independent study is designed to do. It's an opportunity to experiment and to have some one-on-one time with a professor.
Student: But a research paper is easier in some ways. At least I know that I can do a decent job. The computer project is unknown territory.
Professor: True. But remember, it's unknown territory for all of us. I think I've heard some references to Cybermodernism, if you want to investigate some of the work that's being created in, as you call it, mixed media literature. Q3
Student: Cybermodernism? Wow!
Professor: I think you'd find it interesting. Anyway, it's up to you. It's *your* project.
Student: Thanks. I'm really excited about doing this independent study. Actually, I'm spending more time on it than on any of my other classes.
Professor: I've found that students usually invest more time and energy in a class that they can design. That's why I like to direct them. Oh, and Terry, if you run into any problems, don't wait until you're halfway through your reading list. Just stop by during my office hours. Maybe I can give you some references or at least a sounding board. Q5
Student: Thanks. This is better than I even expected.

Audio 1. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer **C** To ask about the professor's requirements

Audio 2. How is the second part of the reading list different from the first part?
Answer **A** More minority authors are represented.

Audio 3. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I think I've heard some references to *Cybermodernism*, if you want to investigate some of the work that is being created in, as you call it, mixed media literature." "Cybermodernism? Wow!"
Audio What does the man mean when he says this:
Replay "Cybermodernism? Wow!"
Answer **B** His tone expresses interest and excitement.

Audio 4. What will the man probably do before the next meeting?
Answer **D** Prepare to talk with the professor

Audio 5. What can be inferred about the professor?
Answer **B** She is willing to help her students.

LISTENING 2 "ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an environmental science class. The professor is talking about wind power.

Professor:
Today I want to talk with you about another renewable source of energy . . . wind power. This isn't a new concept. In fact, wind has been used for centuries to pump water and launch sailing vessels. But more recently, wind power has been used to generate electricity. Q6

By the year 2000, California was using, maybe 15,000 wind turbines to produce about 400 megawatts of electricity. And that was happening at a cost that would be considered competitive with coal or nuclear power. And, although California currently leads the United States in harnessing wind power, there are several other areas that also hold considerable potential for increased production. Texas

and the Dakotas alone have enough wind potential to power the nation, but, since the winds there are so variable, well, wind power alone would be unreliable as a primary source of continuous energy.

Q7 Nevertheless, it could be used as a secondary resource, along with fossil fuels. The strong and steady winds of the Pacific Northwest, especially in the Columbia River Basin . . . these winds would be ideal as a supplement to hydroelectric power when the river is experiencing periods of low water levels. Studies by the U.S. Department of Energy indicate that wind power generated from the Great Plains in the middle of the country could supply the continental United States with almost . . . 75 percent of the electricity required for the region.

In another section of the same report, it was noted that wind power is the world's fastest growing energy source. Since 1998, the capacity for wind energy has increased by more than 35 percent worldwide. And improvements in wind turbine technology in the past couple of decades has improved efficiency, cutting the cost dramatically, from roughly 40 cents to about 4 cents per kilowatt hour, and a new turbine design is being tested with a lower torque, so that may actually move the price closer to 3 cents.

Q8 Europe currently accounts for over 17 . . . Oh, sorry that's 70 . . . seven-zero percent of the world's wind power. India, China, Germany, Denmark, Italy, and Spain have published plans for major increases in wind-generated electricity projects in the next few years, and recent interest and exploration have been initiated in the United Kingdom and Brazil. Remote areas, especially islands, and other regions at a distance from electrical grids are vigorously exploring wind options. Clearly, the global implications not only for cheap energy but also for clean energy could be enormous. And, in some areas, the consumers are even willing to pay a subsidy for the pollution-free energy that wind provides their communities. In Colorado, for instance, through a program called Windsource, about 10,000 customers pay an additional $2.50 per month for every 100-killowatt hours of wind power. Legislation in several states in the United States now requires utility companies to guarantee that a percentage of their electricity will be generated from renewable sources like wind power.

Of course, there are some problems associated with wind power that do need to be considered.

Q9 The blades on the turbines present a hazard to migrating birds. In some cases, the vibrations interfere with television reception in the area. And, there have been objections to wind farms because they produce noise and because they're not visually appealing to residents nearby. So, in addition to the studies to improve turbine design and energy efficiency, some of the attendant problems also require research and development. Regarding the noise, let me mention that design modifications, basically modifying the thickness of the turbine blades and making adjustments to the orientation of the turbines . . . these modifications have diminished the noise substantially in a number of sites. As for visual appeal, some creative ways to share the land to create a more attractive wind farm are being piloted.

So that brings us to the issue of storing wind power. And, although wind energy can be stored temporarily as battery power, the real challenge for wind power exploration will be how to level out the energy source. Alternatives for storage will be critical because, even in an area with steady winds, wind is

Q10 still not totally reliable. But, the Tellus Institute has released promising results from studies to investigate the problem of intermittent wind. This is what they did. By dividing the wind turbines from one farm into two smaller farms with geographical separation, the capacity of the pair of farms increased by 33⅓ percent over the efficiency of the larger farm with the same number of turbines. So, by taking advantage of the slightly different wind patterns, a more continuous supply of wind power can be generated.

Q11 So where are we with all of this? Well, the research that will make wind power a viable option is underway but we need to continue to study in order to solve some of the problems before we can use wind power as a primary source of energy, globally.

Audio 6. What aspect of wind power is the lecture mainly about?
Answer **D** Wind as a renewable energy option

Audio 7. Which two regions of the United States have the greatest potential for supplying wind power?
Answer **B** The Midwestern Plains
D The Pacific Northwest

Audio Replay 8. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
"Europe currently accounts for over 17 . . . Oh, sorry that's 70 . . . seven-zero percent of the world's wind power. India, China, Germany, Denmark, Italy, and Spain have published plans for major increases in wind-generated electricity projects in the next few years, and recent interest and exploration have been initiated in the United Kingdom and Brazil."

Audio Replay Why does the professor say this:
"Europe currently accounts for over 17 . . . Oh, sorry that's 70 . . . seven-zero percent of the world's wind power."

Answer C He is correcting a previous statement.

Audio 9. In the lecture, the professor identifies several problems associated with wind power. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the problems mentioned. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

Answer

	Yes	No
A Poor television reception	✔	
B Noisy turbines	✔	
C Expensive operating costs		✔
D Remote areas		✔
E Dangerous blades for birds	✔	

Audio 10. How did the Tellus Institute solve the problem of intermittent wind?
Answer D By separating one wind farm into two locations

Audio 11. What is the professor's opinion about the future of wind power?
Answer A He thinks that wind power will require more research before it becomes practical.

Listening 3 "Philosophy Class"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a philosophy class.

Professor:
The earliest Greek philosophers, also known as the pre-Socratic philosophers, they were very interested in determining the nature of the universe. Q12 Initially, Thales proposed that water was the original material from which all other material was derived, and by that he was referring not only to things on Earth but also in the heavens. He observed that life sprouts from a moist ground, unlike death that dries and shrivels into dust. The fact that water could transform itself into a solid as it does when it freezes into ice or it could change into air as it does when heated into steam, well, this convinced him that everything had originated as water and would eventually return to water. He believed that all things are living things, including rocks and metals, and so literally everything would transform itself into the original material, water, in a logical pattern of change.

A little later, Anaximander, and he was a student of Thales, so Anaximander was set on a path that involved questioning which of the elements was the most basic or fundamental. But he suggested that the universe was not originally made up of water as Thales had reasoned, but was a living mass, which he called the *infinite.* The word in Greek actually means "unlimited" but most translators have used the term *infinite* since it probably captures the meaning a little better in English. So Anaximander put forward what some believe is the first theoretical postulate . . . that the infinite was constantly in motion . . . up and down, back and forth. So, although the infinite had begun as a whole, the motion had caused pieces to Q13 be broken off to form all of the elements of the universe . . . the Earth, the Sun, stars. Then, he speculated that as the oceans had begun to evaporate, the first sea plants and animals had formed, and from them their descendants, the birds and land animals evolved, until finally, mankind was created.

Student 1: That sounds a lot like evolutionary theory.

Professor:
Yes, it does. Probably the first instance of evolutionary theory among Europeans, although the Chinese philosophers had discussed this possibility earlier. Okay, so what do you think he postulated about the continued motion of the universe? Anyone?

Student 2:
I remember that part. He thought that all of these separate elements would eventually be put back together into the original infinite mass.

Professor:
Precisely right. But good students think for themselves, and some years later, Anaximander's student Anaximenes, criticized his teacher's view. He deduced that the original element of the universe was air, which was timeless and boundless, and in fact, alive. Because mankind and all the animals must breathe air in order to survive, he believed, therefore, that air had been transformed into blood, bone, and flesh. He also concluded that air was the origin of water, stone, and earth, and I think you can see the analogy with the parts of the body there. Furthermore, he contended that the solid condensations of air constituted the body of the world, but the ethereal quality of air constituted the spirit of the world, and it was the spirit that remained alive forever.

Now these three philosophers . . . Thales, Anaximander, and Anaximenes . . . they were all resi-*dents* of Miletus, and were very active beginning about 600 years before the Christian Era. So they were called the Milesian philosophers. And they all had different views, but they also had something in common.

Student 1:
Q14 Do you mean that they were all materialists? Because they were trying to explain the universe in terms of perceivable elements like water and air?

Professor:
Q15 Good observation. Let's take that a step further. They all attempted to explain the unknown in terms of the familiar instead of looking to the current mythologies or to a divine presence. And that's what is truly extraordinary about these pre-Socratic philosophers. A naturalistic account of the cosmos was profoundly different from the myths and legends of gods and goddesses that had been the basis for explaining the origin of the universe.

Student 2: So what do you mean by naturalistic?

Professor:
I mean that they tried to use scientific arguments, and this marked a very new way of thinking. Unlike the exciting narratives of superhuman beings with the powers to create and change the universe, they proposed that the universe was made up of something very basic, and that it was constantly undergoing *natural* changes. The Milesians made a major contribution . . . and they did this by moving beyond the old mythologies and folktales, and some scholars even suggest that they were responsible for the beginnings of Western philosophy as we know it. Now when we talk about philosophy, it's important to point out that for many centuries philosophy was *not* a separate discipline from other areas of thought and knowledge. In fact, early philosophers were mathematicians, physicists, chemists, and biologists before any of these sciences were identified as separate, . . . subjects, or . . . fields of study. So the pre-Socratic philosophers were trying to discover a scientific basis for the universe long before the scientific method and the technologies were available to support their investigations. But, really, many scholars argue that these philosophers did initiate the process at least, and the process eventually resulted . . . years later . . . as the beginning of the physical sciences. Q16

Okay, all of this appears on the surface to be very positive, right? But at the time, many philosophers as well as ordinary citizens were feeling much less comfortable with the very sparse tenants of emerging science than they had been with the rich and complicated stories that had explained the universe for them. Remember that this is all before Socrates, Aristotle, and Plato who were . . . by then . . . well, more able to expand on protoscientific thought and produce a massive and elaborate scientific alternative to the ancient beliefs. Q17

Audio 12. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **C** The nature of the universe

Audio 13. Why does the student mention evolutionary theory?
Answer **D** He is comparing evolution to Anaximander's theory.

Audio 14. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Do you mean that they were all materialists? Because they were trying to explain the universe in terms of perceivable elements like water and air?"
"Good observation. Let's take that a step further."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Good observation. Let's take that a step further."
Answer **C** She is going to expand on the comment. To "take a step further" means to "elaborate" or "provide details."

Audio 15. What view did the three Milesian philosophers share?
Answer **B** They introduced a scientific approach to explaining nature.

Audio 16. What can be inferred about the early Greek philosophers?
Answer **A** They were exploring the physical sciences.

Audio 17. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Okay, all of this appears on the surface to be very positive, right? But at the time, many philosophers as well as ordinary citizens were feeling much less comfortable with the very sparse tenants of emerging science than they had been with the rich and complicated stories that had explained the universe for them."
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this:
Replay "Okay, all of this appears on the surface to be very positive, right?"
Answer **B** She is introducing doubt. "On the surface" implies that there is more to know.

LISTENING 4 "PROFESSOR'S OFFICE"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Now listen to a conversation between a student and a professor.

Student: Excuse me, Professor Jones. I was wondering whether I could talk with you for a minute? If you're busy now, though . . .

Professor: Sure, Anne. What's up?

Student: Well, I've been working on my research project. I'm doing it on decaffeinated beverages.

Professor: Oh, I remember. That's going to be interesting. How's it going?

Q18 Student: Good. I've got all the data, but the report is turning out to be fairly short. It took such a long time to do the research, I thought I'd have a lot more to write about.

Professor: Well, how long will it be, do you think?

Student: Probably five or six pages, and that includes a couple of pages with charts in them.

Professor: That sounds about right.

Student: It does?

Professor: Yes. Of course, it depends on what you included in the five pages. The issue here is whether the research design was well thought out, and whether you have all of the information in your report that you need to explain what you did . . . the approach . . . and the results that you found.

Student: Okay. I have a short introduction . . . just a few paragraphs really . . . so that's about caffeine, and then I talk about the benefits of decaffeination, and several ways to do that.

Professor: Unhuh. What else?

Student: Well, I explain my research design . . . and that's sort of a problem too because I'm not sure whether to make this sound like a book, you know, the way the studies are explained in our textbook, or whether I should just write it up as clearly as I can so that anyone would understand what I did.

Q19 Professor: I'd go for that option. In fact, why don't you ask a few friends to read it before you turn it in? If your friends get it, that's a good indication that you've explained it well, but if they have a lot of questions, then maybe you need to do some rewriting. And Anne, it's even better if your friends aren't chemistry majors like you are.

Student: Well, I would never have thought of that.

Professor: Then I'm glad I suggested it. By the way, did you include references at the end of your study?

Student: Just two. That's all I used.

Professor: Okay. Good. Just as long as you cite the references you used.

Student: Well, thanks. This is the first time I've ever done my own research. It was hard because I didn't have any experience, but it was fun, too. I was thinking about trying to get a part-time job as a lab assistant next year.

Q20 Professor: I think you'd be a good candidate. In fact, why don't you write up a draft of that report, and I'll look it over for you before you hand in the final copy.

Q21 Student: That would be perfect. I could bring it in on Monday since that's when you have your usual office hours. Would that be okay?

Professor: Yes, but that would only give you one day before the report is due.

Student: Oh right.

Professor: Okay then. Why don't you bring it to class on Friday?

Student: That would be great.

Professor: And Anne, if you're really serious about that lab assistant position, I can give you some information about that when I see you.
Student: I can't thank you enough.
Professor: Not at all, Anne. You've got a lot going for you. I'm glad to help. Q22

Audio 18. Why does the woman want to talk with her professor?
Answer C She has some questions about the report she is writing.

Audio 19. What advice does the professor give the woman?
Answer A Have some friends read the research

Audio 20. What does the professor offer to do?
Answer A Read a draft of the report before the woman submits it

Audio 21. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I could bring it in on Monday since that's when you have your usual office hours. Would that be okay?"
"Yes, but that would only give you one day before the report is due."
"Oh right."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Yes, but that would only give you one day before the report is due."
Answer A His tone expresses reluctance because he realizes that she won't have time to revise the report.

Audio 22. What is the professor's opinion of the woman?
Answer B He is very impressed with her attitude.

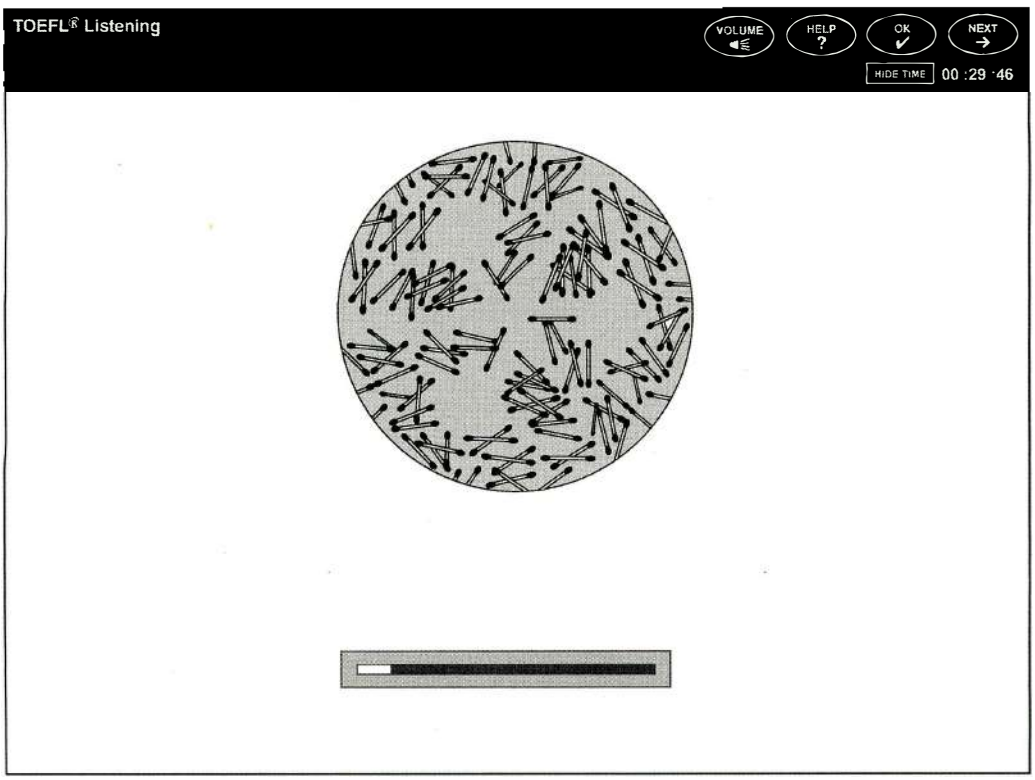
Listening 5 "Biology Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is talking about bacteria.

Professor:
Bacteria is the common name for a very large group of one-celled microscopic organisms that, we believe, may be the smallest, simplest, and perhaps even the very first forms of cellular life that evolved on Earth. Because they're so small, bacteria must be measured in microns, with one micron measuring about 0.00004 inches long. Most bacteria range from about 0.1 microns to about 4 microns wide and about 0.2 microns to almost 50 microns long. So how can we observe them? I'll give you one guess. Under the microscope, of course. As I said, bacteria are very primitive and simple. In fact, they're unicellular, which means that they're made up of a single cell. Q25 We think they probably evolved about three and a half billion years ago. Some of the oldest fossils are bacterial organisms. They've been found almost everywhere on Earth, including all the continents, seas, and fresh water habitats, and in the tissues of both plants and animals.

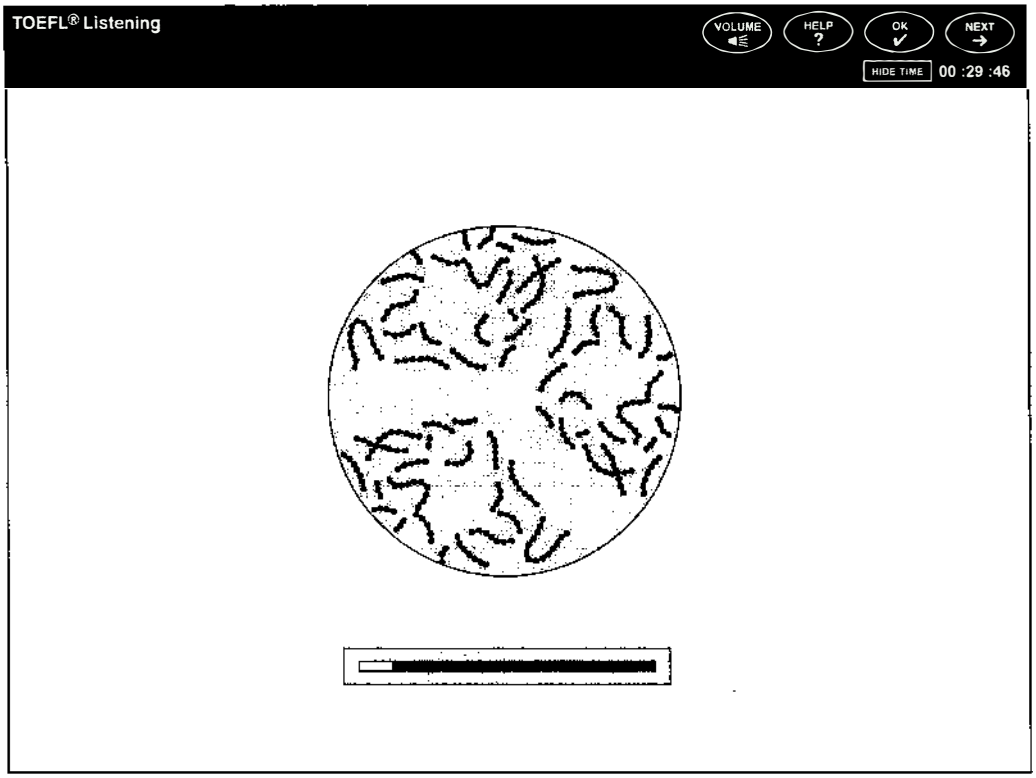
Well, since they're so prevalent, you might ask, how do they reproduce? Okay, they grow in colonies and can reproduce, quite rapidly, in fact, by a process called *fission*. Q25 In fission, the cell, and remember, there's only one in bacteria, one cell. So the cell increases in size and then splits in two parts. Fission is also referred to in your text as *asexual budding*. Now you'll also read about *conjugation*, and that's when two separate bacteria exchange pieces of DNA, so there are two ways that reproduction can occur, but we think that fission is more common.

Okay. Bacteria were virtually unknown until about 1600 when microscopes were introduced, and at that time, bacteria were observed and classified into three main types according to their shapes, Q23 and that classification hasn't really changed that much over the years. So that's what I want to talk about today—the main types of bacteria. The slides that I'm going to show you are enlargements of bacteria that I observed under the microscope in the lab earlier today. Now, this first slide is an example of *bacilli*.

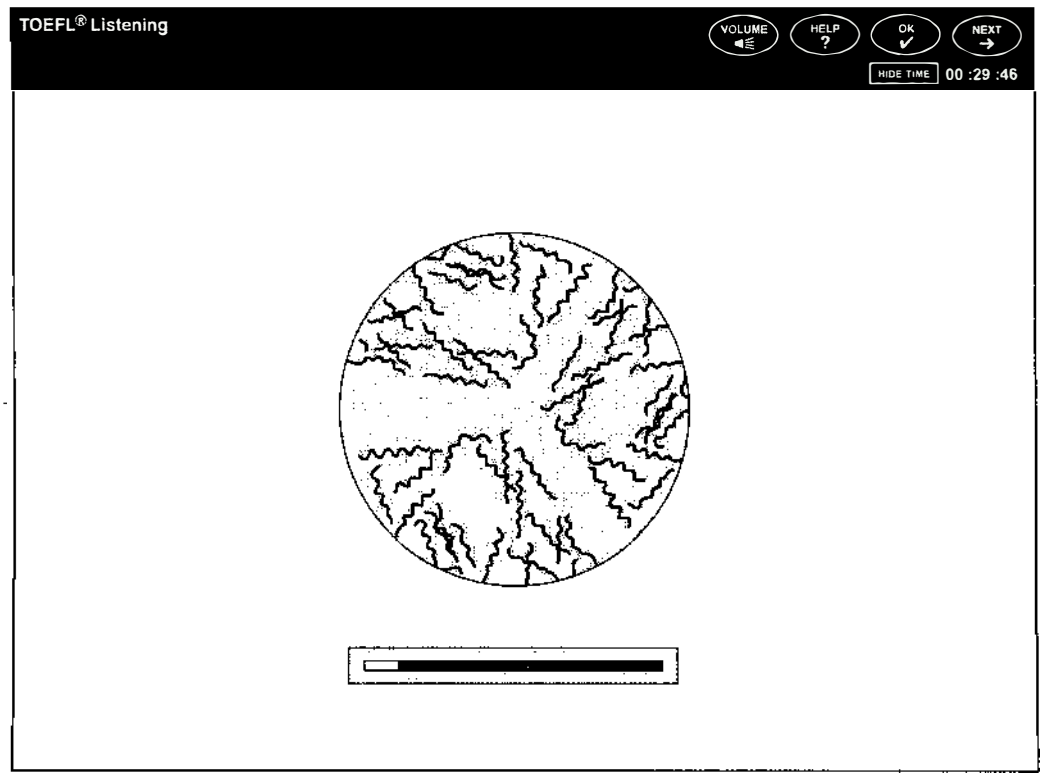


The bacilli are a group of bacteria that occur in the soil and air. As you can see, they're shaped like rods, and if you were to see them in motion, they'd be rolling or tumbling under the microscope. Of course, you can't see that because this is a still visual, but later, when you go into the lab, you'll see that rolling motion in examples of bacilli. These are kind of a greenish blue, but some are yellow. So don't try to identify them by their color. Look at the shape. These bacilli are largely responsible for food spoilage.

Q24 Okay, the next slide is a very different shape of bacteria. It's referred to as the cocci group, and it tends to grow in clusters or chains, like this example. This specimen is one of the common streptococci bacteria that cause strep throat.



Finally, let's look at the spiral-shaped bacteria called the *spirilla*.



This is the spirilla. They look a little like corkscrews, and they're responsible for a number of diseases in humans. But I don't want you to get the wrong idea. It's true that some species of bacteria *do* cause diseases, but for the most part, bacteria are benign.

There's a lot of bacteria in this room in fact. We all have it on us. They live harmlessly on the skin, Q26 in the mouth, and in the intestines. In fact, bacteria are very helpful to researchers because bacterial cells resemble the cells of other life forms in many ways, and may be studied to give us insights. For example, we have a major research project in genetics here at the university. Since bacteria reproduce very rapidly, we're using them to determine how certain characteristics are inherited.

Okay, now, let me review these three types with you . . . cocci are spheres, bacilli are rods, and Q27 spirilli are spirals. One of my students came up with a way to remember them. Just try to visualize the first letter in the name of each of the different types: Cocci starts with C like the shape of half a sphere. Bacilli starts with a straight line on the B, and a rod is straight. Spirilla starts with an S, and that's a spiral shape. If it helps you, use it.

In any case, although I want you to know the three major classifications, within these basic groups there are virtually hundreds of variations that make them somewhat more difficult to identify and clas- Q28 sify than the rather straightforward specimens that I showed you a minute ago. Because, you see, bacteria can join in chains, clusters, pairs. And sometimes, more than one type of bacteria may be found together in a specimen. I think you get the picture.

Okay then, in addition to identifying bacteria by their shape, which we now know isn't really a very good method for distinguishing them easily, if we really want to identify what type of bacteria we're dealing with, it's better to study the biochemistry or genetic structure of the specimen. They have one chromosome of double-stranded DNA in a ring, which we can analyze fairly easily.

Audio 23. What aspect of bacteria is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **D** The three major types of bacteria

Audio 24. Which of the following slides contain cocci bacteria?
Answer **B** The cocci bacteria are shown in this slide.

Audio 25. Which two characteristics are common in bacteria?
Answer **A** They have one cell.
C They reproduce quickly.

Audio 26. Why are bacteria being used in the research study at the university?
Answer **C** Bacteria are similar to other life forms.

Audio 27. How does the professor help the students to remember the types of bacteria?
Answer **C** He uses the first letter to represent the shape.

Audio 28. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "Because, you see, bacteria can join in chains, clusters, pairs. And sometimes, more than one type of bacteria may be found together in a specimen. I think you get the picture."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "I think you get the picture."
Answer **D** To "get the picture" means "to understand." He thinks that the information is very clear.

LISTENING 6 "LITERATURE CLASS"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a literature class.

Professor:
Today we're continuing our discussion of Gulliver's Travels by Jonathan Swift. We left off last session at the point where Gulliver began his fourth voyage as the captain of a merchant ship. As you'll recall, his crew had confined him and cast him ashore on an island. While making his way along a road, he was attacked by a herd of deformed beasts with brown skin and no tails, but suddenly the attack was interrupted by the appearance of a beautiful horse. And this is where we left off. So what happens next? Q29

Student 1:
Well, another horse comes along, and they appear to be having a conversation, the two horses, I mean, and they keep using the words *Yahoo* and *Houyhnhnm* so Gulliver is able to understand that Yahoo refers to the animals that attacked him and Houyhnhnm refers to the horses. Then Gulliver goes home with the horses.

Professor:
And what is Gulliver thinking about while he's observing the Yahoos and the Houyhnhnms?

Student 2:
Oh, this was good. He starts to understand that the only difference between himself and the Yahoos is his clothing. But he's . . . he's horrified by this, so we see him trying to be more like the horses. Q30

Professor: How do you know that he's striving to emulate the Houyhnhnms?

Student 2: Well, he learns their language . . . so he can communicate with them.

Professor:
Right. So this brings us to the most important part of the narrative—the comparison between the Yahoos and the Houyhnhnms. First tell us how the Yahoos are portrayed. What do they eat? How do they look?

Student 3:
Well, I think the author used the word depraved several times. They eat dog and donkey meat and even garbage, and they drink, um, they drink . . . too much. And he says they're filthy, and they stink. Q31

Professor:
So their behavior . . . the Yahoos' behavior . . . is neither rational nor moral. Now take a look at the description of the Yahoos that Gulliver has known in England. Let me refer to the book here. Okay, Gulliver explains that Yahoos in England fight wars for religious reasons, that lawyers use reason to argue for the wrong side, that the wealthy live to acquire more luxuries, and that greed makes them ill. By this, we assume that he's referring to the rich gourmet diet that causes gout and other health problems among the upper classes. So this is in contrast with the Houyhnhnms, right? How so?

Student 1 Student 2:
Well . . . Yes . . .

Student 1: Sorry, go ahead.

Student 2:
I was just going to say that they eat oats, bread, and honey, but not meat, not other animals. And they don't drink.

Student 1:
I think it's important that they don't even understand the concept of a lie. That proves that they are . . . that they have a very innocent nature.

Professor:
Good point. You're referring to the fact that they failed to grasp how the crew was able to initiate the mutiny that brought Gulliver to their island.

Student 1: Umhum.

Professor:
Okay, so what do the Houyhnhnms think about Gulliver? And what does Gulliver conclude about himself?

Student 2:
Well, Gulliver isn't really a Yahoo and he isn't really a Houyhnhnm either. I'd say he's kind of in the
Q31 middle. But, he's trying to become a Houyhnhnm. When he goes back to England, he's actually afraid of other humans . . . I mean . . . Yahoos.

Professor:
Q32 But he can't quite achieve his transformation, can he? Even though his pride motivates him to continue the impossible pursuit of perfection. . . . So, what does this all mean?

Student 1:
I think it's like the other chapters. The fourth voyage is . . . it's another critique of the weaknesses in human nature.

Professor:
Then Swift is making the point that although humankind is capable of rational behavior, we seldom choose to exercise it. The very meaning of the word *Yahoo* in the Houyhnhnm language is "evil." So
Q33 Swift is very satirical then. And when we consider the time period for the book, the early 1700s, we must appreciate the exceptional departure from the literature of the era, which was mostly written to
Q34 flatter or entertain. Swift used satire to provide the reader with a perspective that's very different from that of other writers in an age of science and reason.

Audio 29. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **B** A narrative of the fourth voyage of Gulliver

Audio 30. What does Gulliver learn about himself?
Answer **A** He is like the Yahoos in many ways.

Audio 31. In the discussion, the professor describes the characteristics of the Yahoos. Indicate whether each of the following is one of their characteristics. Click in the correct box for each sentence.

Answer

	Yes	No
A They eat flowers.		✔
B They have a foul odor.	✔	
C They engage in an immoral lifestyle.	✔	
D They are satirical caricatures of humans.	✔	
E They live in trees.		✔

Audio 32. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "But he can't quite achieve his transformation, can he? Even though his pride motivates him to continue the impossible pursuit of perfection. . . . So, what does this all mean?"
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "So what does this all mean?"
Answer B She is asking the students a question. Sometimes professors ask rhetorical questions that they intend to answer as they continue the lecture, but, in this case, the professor pauses long enough to indicate that she is waiting for a student to respond.

Audio 33. According to the professor, what kind of book is *Gulliver's Travels*?
Answer B A satire about mankind.

Audio 34. What can we infer about the literature of the period?
Answer D The tone was not very serious. It was meant to entertain.

➤ Speaking



Model Test 6, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 22

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Good Son or Daughter"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: *In your opinion*, what are the characteristics of a good son or daughter in a family? Use specific examples and details to explain your answer.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Job Opportunities"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Some people are attracted to jobs that include a great deal of travel. Other people prefer jobs that allow them to return to their homes every evening. Which type of job opportunity would you prefer and why? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Excused Absence"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: The professor's attendance policy is published in the course syllabus. Read the policy in the course syllabus [printed on page 467]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to a student who is talking with friends about the policy.

Student:
On the one hand, it's good that you can be absent *once* without explaining *why*, but on the other hand, you can't be absent more than one time without getting a lower grade, so, I'd rather have the option of explaining my problem to the professor if I need to be absent, and then try to figure out a way to make up the work. Look, if I'm sick for two weeks, I don't think it's fair for the professor to lower my grade

as long as I keep up with the class. Or, if you have a legitimate reason not to be there—like a family emergency or something. I don't think you should have to choose between your health or your family and your grade in the class.

Narrator 1: The student expresses his opinion of the professor's policy for excused absences. Report his opinion and explain the reasons that he gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Insects"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about insects [printed on page 468]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a biology class. The professor is talking about insects.

Professor:
Strictly speaking, a spider *isn't* an insect. True, it's an invertebrate and an arthropod, but it belongs to a class identified as *arachnids*. Arachnids are not included in the insect world because their body structure is very different. The bodies of spiders are divided into two parts—a head with a fused thorax, which is all one structure, and the second part is a separate abdomen joined to the large head-thorax part by a narrow stalk. The head contains what many researchers now believe is a highly developed brain. There are no antennae, but four pairs of eyes and eight legs covered with fine, sensitive hairs more than compensate for the absence of the antennae. These hairy legs and feet explore the environment sending sensory messages back to the brain. Okay . . . the abdomen—remember that's the second part of the spider—it includes not only the digestive and reproductive systems but also the silk glands that allow spiders to spin their webs. So, as you see, even though spiders and insects are commonly grouped together as bugs, they're really not the same. An oversimplification is that spiders have too many legs and not enough wings. In reality, the entire body structure is quite different.

Narrator 1: Describe the structure of an insect and explain why a spider is not strictly considered an insect.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Meeting People"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a conversation between a student and his friend.

Student:	Can you believe that I've been here almost a whole semester, and you're the only friend I've made.
Friend:	No. How can that be?
Student:	I don't know. You know me better than anyone here at school. I thought maybe you could give me some advice.
Friend:	Sure. Um, well, do you belong to any clubs or any organizations on campus? That's always a good way to meet people.
Student:	No. I don't have a lot of time to, you know, go to meetings.
Friend:	Well, neither do I, but I do play intramural sports.
Student:	What's that?
Friend:	It's just a group that meets regularly to play basketball. Of course, there are lots of other teams, besides basketball, I mean. You could join a football team, or soccer . . . uh baseball, volleyball. Just go over to the Recreation Center and sign up. They'll put you on a team. You could use some time away from the books.
Student:	I'd like to do that, but . . .
Friend:	Well, since you don't want to take time away from your studies, why don't you join a study group, or get one going in one of your classes? That way, you wouldn't feel like you are wasting time, and besides, the people you meet will be serious students, so maybe they would be better friends for you anyway.

Narrator 1: Describe the man's problem, and the two suggestions that his friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the man should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Skinner Box"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class. The professor is discussing the Skinner Box.

Professor:
There have been several references to the Skinner Box in your textbook because a lot of behavioral modification experiments still use similar devices, even today, so let's just take a few minutes and make sure that everyone understands exactly what a Skinner Box *is* and how it works. The box, which was named for B. F. Skinner, the American psychologist who developed it . . . it was used in Skinner's original experiment in 1932, and its construction hasn't changed much from that time. It's just a small, empty box, really, except for a bar with a cup underneath it. So picture this: In Skinner's experiment, a rat that had been deprived of food for twenty-four hours was placed in the box. As the animal began to explore its new environment, it accidentally hit the bar, and a food pellet dropped into the cup. The rat ate the pellet and continued exploring for more food. After hitting the bar three or four times with similar results, the animal started hitting the bar with intention instead of by accident. It had learned it could get food by pressing the bar. In other words, the food stimulus reinforced the bar pressing response. So . . . many psychology experiments were modeled after Skinner's original research. Um, various animals have been placed in modified Skinner Boxes and presented with conditions that will result in a reward—food or some other desirable object or experience. In most of the behavior modification experiments in your book, you'll see a citation for Skinner's classic study.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the Skinner Box, and then explain how the device is used in psychology experiments.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing



Model Test 6, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 23

Integrated Essay "Formation of the Moon"

First, read the passage [printed on page 472] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
Unfortunately, I don't see a convincing theory among the three presented in the reading. Let me explain. Two problems cast doubt on the fission theory. When put to the test, models show that a force capable of breaking off a chunk of the Earth the size of the Moon would've destroyed the entire planet instead of sinking into the ocean. Also, an inspection of lunar rocks collected during the Apollo missions convinces us that the Moon was once hotter than the Earth. So you see, fission would've been pretty much impossible. And another issue—the rocks themselves have a different chemical composition from that of the Earth's crust.

Now let's look at co-accretion. Remember that this hypothesis assumes that the Moon and the Earth came into existence at the same time, but here's the problem with that—gravitational forces would probably have fused them together, or they would share more characteristics than they do. I mean, how do we explain the relatively small iron core of the Moon at only 25 percent compared to the much larger iron core of the Earth at 50 percent?

Which brings us to the impact hypothesis. Let's say for purposes of argument that the planet that crashed into Earth—the one about as big as Mars—let's say that happened, and the debris from both planets orbited the Earth and eventually created the Moon. But if there was debris, then why didn't it form a *group* of moons as would be predicted, instead of just *one* moon? And why didn't the moon rocks show evidence of the kind of biochemical processes we would expect, the kind that would accompany extreme evaporation from a massive collision?

So, from my point of view, and quite a few of my colleagues would agree with me, well, we just need to keep looking, because none of our current theories are adequate.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 6, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 24

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Good Son or Daughter"

The role of a good son or daughter changes over the years. Initially, being an obedient child is probably all that a parent requires. But when a child grows up and begins to become independent, then a good son or daughter is a person who has good character—who does well in school or succeeds in a career and demonstrates the personal qualities that the parents have tried to teach. Um . . . a good son or daughter is also a good parent when they have children of their own. When parents see their grandchildren being brought up well, uh, they know that they have provided a good example. And . . . and when the parents become old and need care, a good son or daughter won't be too busy to spend time with them and provide them with help.

Checklist 1

✔ The talk answers the topic question.
✔ The point of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Job Opportunities"

Although a job that involves travel seems glamorous to people who spend day after day in an office, it really isn't for me. For one thing, traveling for business usually means going to the same places repeatedly and staying in the same, tired hotel rooms. Besides that, the pace of a business trip doesn't allow much time to see anything besides the inside of an office building and the road to the airport. And eating in restaurants isn't that healthy, and traveling all the time is exhausting. No, I'd rather have a job opportunity that . . . that would let me sleep in my own bed and, uh, eat my own cooking. Um . . . but ideally, the job would also include a three-week paid vacation so . . . I could travel to a destination of *my* choice and relax.

Checklist 2

✔ The talk answers the topic question.
✔ The point of view or position is clear.
✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Excused Absence"

According to the professor's policy, students can be absent from one class without explaining unless there's a test scheduled, and then the professor expects students to go to her office to give her an explanation for being out of class and arrange for making up the test. Also, being absent more than once could mean that your grade could be lowered by one letter for each time you miss class. The student doesn't agree with the excused absence policy because he thinks that his grade shouldn't be affected by absence if he makes up the work. Um . . . from his point of view, a valid reason for absence, uh, like an emergency, a family problem, or illness, uh, that shouldn't jeopardize his grade unless he fails to keep up with the class or his work's unsatisfactory.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Insects"

Insects are arthropods with a three-part body structure—a head, a thorax, and an abdomen. The head has a pair of eyes and a pair of antennae, and three pairs of legs and two pairs of wings are usually attached to the thorax. Now, although a spider is also an arthropod, it isn't considered an insect, uh, because, um, because it only has a two-part body structure. The head and the thorax are joined together on a spider and attached to its abdomen by a thin stem. And a spider doesn't have antennae but it *does* have four pairs of eyes. Instead of six legs, it has eight, hairy legs that are used kind of like an insect uses its antennae to explore the environment. A spider doesn't have wings. It has a unique glandular system that allows it to spin its webs. So, because of this very different body structure, a spider is not really an insect.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Meeting People"

The man's problem is that he hasn't been very successful meeting people and making friends. He's been on campus for an entire semester, and the woman's the only friend he has. She suggests that he participate in some clubs, but he's reluctant to spend the time required for meetings. The woman plays intramural basketball. She says that there are a lot of sports options at the Recreation Center. Another possibility that she recommends is for the man to join a study group. That way, he'd meet some serious students and he'd still be using the time to study for classes while he was getting to know people. I think that the man should join a group to play sports for an hour twice a week because he probably needs the exercise, and he should also try to get into a study group because he'll probably have more in common with the people who are using their time to study for their classes.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Skinner Box"

A Skinner Box is a small box that's empty except for a cup and a bar. When the bar over the cup is depressed, a food pellet drops into the cup. An animal that's placed in a Skinner Box will explore the environment for food, and at some point, will accidentally hit the bar, releasing the pellet. So . . . after the animal hits the bar about three or four times and it's rewarded with food, then it learns how to find food, using the bar, and it begins to hit the bar on purpose. The Skinner Box, or something like it, it's commonly used in psychology experiments that involve behavior modification. By presenting a subject with the opportunity for a reward, the behavior that produces the reward is reinforced. In the case of the classic experiment, the subject's opportunity for a reward is a food pellet, and the behavior that's reinforced is pressing the bar, but many types of rewards and behaviors have been used.

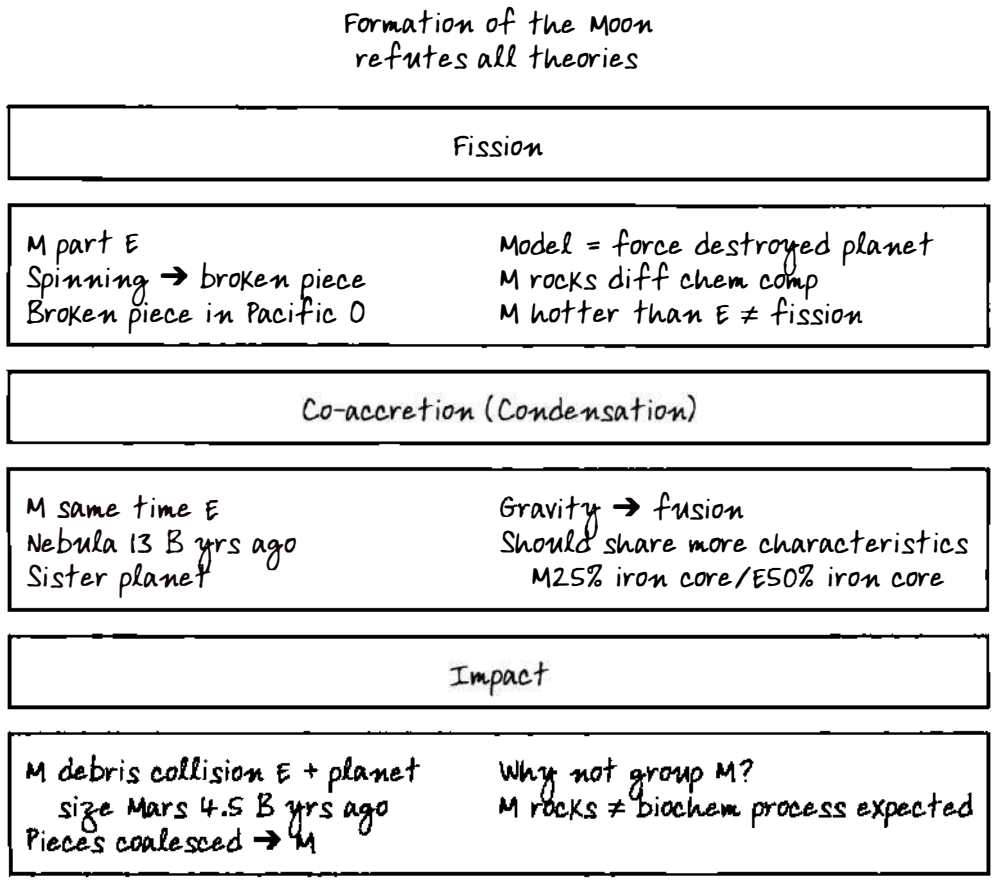
Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Formation of the Moon"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced In Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Formation of the Moon"

The lecture discusses three theories that explain the formation of the Moon. The professor refutes each theory that was presented in the reading passage.

First, the fission theory was challenged because the force of a chunk of the Earth breaking off would have destroyed the planet. In addition, the Moon rocks should have had a different chemical composition. Furthermore, the Moon would have to have been hotter than Earth for fission to occur.

Second, the co-accretion or condensation theory contradicts the fact that gravity would have caused fusion, not separation. Moreover, if the Moon and the Earth were formed from the same nebula at the same time, they should share more characteristics, but the Moon's core is 25 percent iron, whereas the Earth's core is 50 percent iron.

Finally, the impact hypothesis does not stand up under scrutiny because the debris from an impact by a planet the size of Mars would have more likely resulted in a group of moons, not just one large Moon. Also significant is the examination of Moon rocks, which do not reveal the kind of biochemical processes that would be expected if the impact hypothesis were correct.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "Learning a Foreign Language"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

Outline

Advantages own country

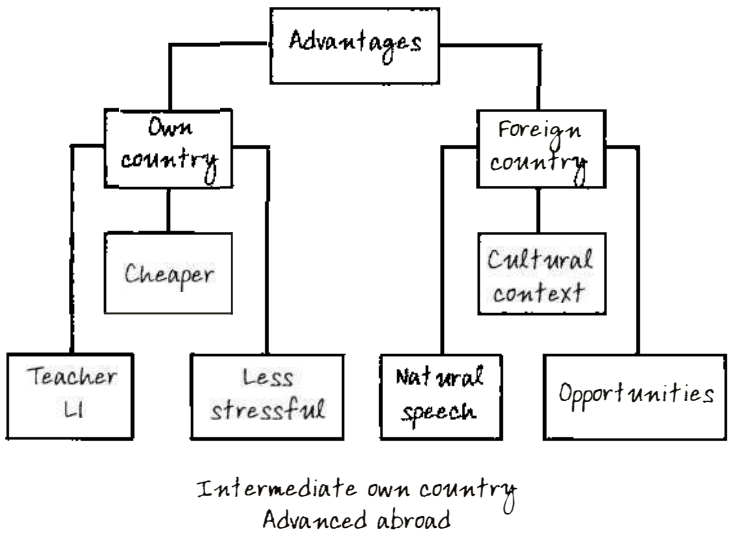
- Teacher has similar experience–can use L1
- Cheaper than foreign travel
- Less stressful

Advantages foreign country

- Natural speech–accent + idioms
- Cultural context–behaviors
- Opportunities

My opinion–intermediate proficiency own country + advanced abroad

Map



Example Essay

There are many advantages to learning a language in your own country. In the first place, it is quite a lot cheaper than it would be to travel to the country where the language is spoken. The cost of airfare, living accommodations, food, and tuition at a foreign school can be prohibitively high. In addition, there is less stress involved in learning in a familiar environment. Studying abroad requires that you speak the foreign language all the time to accomplish basic activities. Although it is an opportunity to use the language daily in a real setting, it can be very wearing. Finally, it is advantageous to have teachers who speak your native language because they have gone through the same stages of learning the foreign language that you are experiencing, and they know how to explain the new language by relating it to the native language.

Nevertheless, an argument can be made for learning a language in the country in which it is spoken. *Only* there can you truly hear the accent and idioms of natural speech. Being surrounded by the foreign language allows you to acquire nuances that elude the classroom. It is also beneficial to learn the language *within* the context of the culture so that you can learn the behaviors that accompany language. For example, learning how to order in a restaurant when you are right there with native speakers will also let you see how to behave in a restaurant in the foreign country. Finally, there are often opportunities that occur while you are in another country. Friendships can result in invitations to spend time with native speakers in their homes, and possibilities can present themselves for work or study in the foreign country.

In my opinion, the best way to learn a language is to achieve an intermediate level of proficiency in your own country and then to travel to the country where the language is spoken to make progress from the intermediate to the advanced level. By using this plan, you can benefit from the advantages of both options.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 7: PROGRESS TEST

➤ Reading

READING 1 "THE HYDROLOGIC CYCLE"

1. **B** *Solar energy is the source of power for the hydrologic cycle* paraphrases "The hydrologic cycle is driven by solar energy" and *begins by evaporating water from plants, soil, oceans, and freshwater sources* paraphrases "evaporates water from oceans, freshwater bodies, soils, and vegetation."
2. **D** "The hydrologic cycle is the transfer of water from the oceans to the atmosphere to the land and back to the oceans." Choices A and B are not correct because they are not complete since they refer to only part of the cycle. Choice C is not correct because it refers to water sources, not the process.
3. **D** "Of the total 1.3 billion cubic km water on Earth, about 97% is in oceans, and about 2% is in glaciers and ice caps. The rest [of the water] is in freshwater on land and in the atmosphere." The pronoun phrase "The rest" does not refer to Choices A, B, and C.
4. **C** ". . . water on land [freshwater] is important in moving chemicals, sculpturing landscape, weathering rocks, transporting sediments, and providing our water resources." Choice A is not correct because the rate of evaporation is not compared. Choice B is not correct because 97% of the water is in oceans, not freshwater sources. Choice D is true, but it is not the reason why freshwater is considered important.
5. **B** ". . . the building of large dams and reservoirs, can change the amount of water evaporated into the atmosphere and change the location and amount of precipitation on land." Choice A is not correct because pavement increases flooding. Choice C is not correct because it refers to the purpose of the man-made water sources, not to their effect on the water cycle. Choice D is not correct because aqueducts transport water from the mountains, but they do not improve the flow into the oceans.
6. **B** In this passage, *part* is a synonym for "component." Context comes from the references to "percentages."
7. **C** In this passage, *basic* is a synonym for "fundamental." Context comes from the usage with "unit," which is often described as "basic" or "fundamental."
8. **A** "A drainage basin is usually named for its main stream or river, such as the Mississippi River drainage basin." The phrase "such as" signals an example. Choices B, C, and D are true, but they are not the reason that the author mentions the Mississippi River.
9. **D** ". . . this relatively small amount of water in the global water cycle [0.001% of the total water on Earth] . . . produces all our freshwater resources." Choice A is not correct because the residence time of 9 days is more than one week. Choice B is not correct because both glaciers and oceans are unsuitable for human use. Choice C is not correct because only a relatively small amount of water is in the global water cycle at any one time.
10. **C** ". . . 99% of Earth's water in its natural state is unavailable or unsuitable for beneficial human use." Choice A is not correct because total water abundance is not the problem. Choice B is not correct because water can be found at or near the Earth's surface. Choice D is not correct because the age of water is not mentioned as a safety hazard.
11. **C** In this passage, *important* is a synonym for "significant." Context comes from the numbers in the fraction.
12. **C** Cause and effect is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. The cause is "distribution of water on land is far from uniform" and the result is water shortages in some areas. Choices A, B, and D are not correct because the cause and result are not in consecutive order.

13. **C, E, A** summarize the passage. Choice B is a minor point that refers to major point C. Choice D can be inferred from the passage, but it is not developed as a major point. Choice F is true but it is not mentioned in the passage.

READING 2 "PIAGET'S COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT THEORY"

14. **B** In this passage, *support* is a synonym for "underlie."
15. **C** We *engage in both organization of what we see and experience* paraphrases ". . . In addition to organizing our observations and experiences" and *adaptation of novel ideas* paraphrases "we *adapt*, adjusting to new environmental demands."
16. **A** The concepts are explained by the toddler's new experience with the car as the child "has assimilated these objects . . . and fine-tunes the category . . . accommodating the scheme." Choice B is not correct because the concepts, not the demonstration, are the lesson. Choice C is not correct because the toddler solves the problem. Choice D is not correct because the example demonstrates the ways that people adapt, not the stages of development.
17. **A** In this passage, *change* is a synonym for "adjust." Context comes from the reference to "adapt" in a previous sentence.
18. **C** In this passage, *different* is a synonym for "distinct." Context comes from the reference to "different" in the next sentence.
19. **B** In this passage, *complex* is a synonym for "sophisticated."
20. **B** ". . . *operations*, which are internalized mental actions." Choice A is not correct because symbolic thought occurs in a later stage, after operations. Choice C is not correct because it occurs in an earlier stage, before operations. Choice D is not correct because the reasoning that children can perform in operational stages does not explain the term operations.
21. **B** ". . . concrete operational thinkers cannot imagine the steps necessary to complete an algebraic equation, which is too abstract for thinking at this stage." Choice A is not correct because algebra requires formal, not concrete, operational thinking. Choice C is not correct because a child of 10 has reasoning abilities, if they are applied to concrete examples. Choice D is not correct because it is the abstract nature of the steps, not the number of steps, that makes algebra too difficult for a 10-year-old.
22. **C** "They might think about what an ideal parent is like and compare their parents to this ideal standard." Choice A is true, but it is not the reason that the author mentions parents. Choices B and D are not mentioned in the passage.
23. **A** Because the formal operational stage is the last stage in Piaget's theory, and the age range is between 11 and 15, it must be concluded that people who are older than 15 have completed all of the stages. Choice B is not correct because the age range for the formal operational stage is between 11 and 15. Choice C is not correct because logical reasoning replaces intuitive thought in the concrete operational stage from 7 to 11 years of age. Choice D is not correct because there is no evidence to support this conclusion in the passage.
24. **C** Choice A is mentioned in paragraph 4, sentence 2. Choice B is mentioned in paragraph 3, sentences 2 and 3. Choice D is mentioned in paragraph 7, sentences 3 and 4.
25. **C** Chronological order is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the following sentence. "At the beginning" should appear in the sentence before "At the end" in reference to the sensorimotor stage.
26. **E, A, B** summarize the passage. Choice C is an explanation of the concrete operational stage, which is a minor point that is used to develop major point B. Choice D is an example of accommodation that supports major point A. Choice F is true, but it is not directly referred to in the passage.

READING 3 "SPEECH AND WRITING"

27. **D** "When linguists study language, therefore, they take the spoken language as their best source of data and their object of description. . . ." Because they use the spoken language, researchers must prefer speech samples. Choice A is not correct because when researchers study Latin, they must make an exception [use written samples]. Choices B and C are not mentioned in the passage.
28. **A** ". . . the majority of the Earth's inhabitants are illiterate." Choice B is not correct because illiterate populations are quite capable of spoken communication. Choice C is not correct because the majority of the Earth's inhabitants in the modern world are illiterate. Choice D is not correct because it is not mentioned in the passage.
29. **D** *Both simple and complex writing systems* paraphrases "Writing systems [that] vary in complexity," and *require direct instruction* paraphrases "must all be taught."
30. **B** In this passage, the phrase *come close to* is a synonym for "approximate." Context comes from the words "imperfectly" and "ideals" in the same sentence.
31. **B** In this passage, *thought* is a synonym for "deliberation." Context comes from the contrast with "spontaneous and simultaneous formulation of ideas" later in the sentence.
32. **C** ". . . the association of writing with the standard variety is not a necessary one, as evidenced by the attempts of writers to transcribe faithfully the speech of their characters." Choice A is not correct because the speech of their characters is transcribed [written down]. Choice B is not correct because the examples are transcriptions of speech, not writing styles. Choice D is not correct because examples of the two varieties are not provided and could not be contrasted.
33. **B** In this passage, *temporary* is a synonym for "transient." Context comes from the contrast with writing, which tends to "last."
34. **D** "Writing could also change if it were made to follow the changes of speech. The fact that people at various times try to carry out spelling reforms amply illustrates this possibility [writing could change to follow the changes in speech]." Choice A is not correct because examples of British and American spelling are different. Choice B is not correct because pronunciation in British and American English is not compared. Choice C is not correct because spelling changes because of pronunciation, but pronunciation does not change because of spelling.
35. **A** "The fact that people at various times try to carry out spelling reforms amply illustrates this possibility [writing could also change]." The phrase "this possibility" does not refer to Choices B, C, or D.
36. **C** "Despite all this evidence, it is a widely held misconception that writing is more perfect than speech." This statement expresses the author's opinion, which is developed in an essay with argument and persuasion. Choice A is not correct because the history of writing begins many years later than that of speech. Choice B is not correct because the author says that "the association of writing with the standard variety is not a necessary one." Choice D is not correct because the author points out that "Writing could also change if it were made to follow the changes of speech."
37. **C** The author organizes the passage as a persuasive argument by explaining the reasons why speech is primary and then demonstrating why people have the "misconception" that writing is more perfect than speech. Choices A, B, and D are included as part of the argument.
38. **C** Reference is a transitional device that connects the insert sentence with the previous sentence. *The Sumerians* in the insert sentence refers to "Sumer" in the previous sentence.
39. Speech: **B, C, E, I** Writing: **D, F, G** Not used: **A, H**

➤ Listening



Model Test 7, Listening Section, CD 2, Track 25

Listening 1 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to a conversation between a student and a professor.

Professor: Okay Chris. Do you understand why I asked you to see me? Q1
Student: I guess so. I did something in class . . . I apologize.
Professor: But do you understand what's bothering me?
Student: No, not really. I like your class.
Professor: I'm glad you do. But Chris you're disturbing the other students with your constant talking. Q2
Student: I am?
Professor: Yes. I've had several people complain about it. They're missing key parts of the lecture because you're talking.
Student: But I'm talking about the lecture. I'm not just making conversation.
Professor: Look, Chris. It doesn't matter. When *I* am talking, *you* should be listening.
Student: Well, I'm sorry. Sometimes I don't get a word or a phrase so I ask someone about it.
Professor: Okay. I really don't think you're creating a disturbance on purpose. If I did, I'd simply ask you to drop the class. Period. Q3
Student: Oh please don't do that.
Professor: That's not my plan, but it has to be an option. Look, maybe you need to record the lectures. I don't mind if you do that. Then, you can fill in the blanks when you listen the second time instead of asking your neighbor during the class.
Student: That's a great idea. I really wanted to do that, but I was thinking you probably wouldn't want me to.
Professor: And another thing. If you have questions, I need you to write them down and make an appointment to talk with me about them. That's why I have office hours twice a week. Just call the department, and we'll arrange a time.
Student: Excuse me, Dr. Pierce. Can I tell you something? Um, I'm embarrassed to ask you questions.
Professor: Why in the world would that be? I ask for questions at the end of every lecture. I encourage students to use my office hours . . .
Student: I know you do. It's just that where I went to school before I came here, if you asked a professor a question, it was an insult because . . . because it implied that he hadn't explained everything well. You see, if the professor does a good job on the lecture, everything will be clear and no one will need to ask a question.
Professor: I see. Well, it's different here. I'm not saying that your other experience is wrong . . . I'm just saying that we do things differently at the university in this country. In my class I don't expect you to understand everything in the lectures. And I don't take it as a challenge when someone asks a question. I view the question as . . . kind of a compliment . . . because it means that person is very interested and is really trying to learn. That's the kind of student I want. Q4
Student: So, I can ask you questions in class?

Professor: Or in my office. Just don't ask other students questions while I'm trying to give my lecture. That does upset me.
Student: Oh, Professor Pierce. I'm so sorry. I was trying to be respectful. I'm interested in the class and I want to know everything.
Professor: I see that. Now I'm asking you to show your interest and respect in a different way. I want you to ask me the questions at the times that I provide for question-and-answer—at the end of the lecture and during my office hours.
Q5 Student: And I can record the lectures?
Professor: Yes. Just don't make a lot of noise in class, okay?
Student: Oh no, I won't. Thank you so much.

Audio 1. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer **D** His professor asked him to come to the office.

Audio 2. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I like your class."
"I'm glad you do. But Chris you are disturbing the other students with your constant talking."
"I am?"
Audio Why does the student say this:
Replay "I am?"
Answer **B** The student's tone expresses surprise.

Audio 3. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "I really don't think you're creating a disturbance on purpose. If I did, I'd simply ask you to drop the class. Period."
"Oh please don't do that."
"That's not my plan, but it has to be an option."
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this:
Replay "That's not my plan, but it has to be an option."
Answer **A** She is warning the student that she could take more serious action.

Audio 4. How does the professor feel about questions in class?
Answer **B** She thinks that students who ask questions are showing interest.

Audio 5. What will the man probably do during the next class?
Answer **B** He will tape record the lecture.

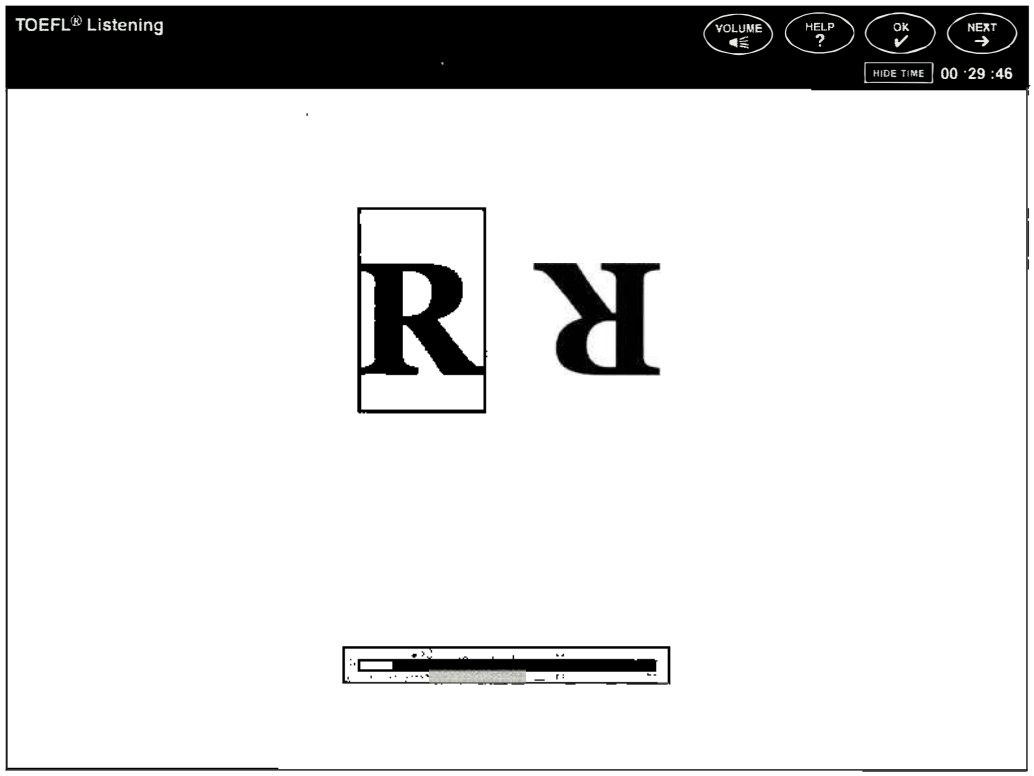
Listening 2 "Art Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in an art class.

Professor:
Q6 Symmetry is a concept that, yes, is expressed in the graphic arts, but to understand its fundamental nature, we must go beyond art. We find symmetry in nature, it reverberates in music, translates into
Q7 choreography for dance, and . . . underlies basic mathematical formulas. But I'm getting ahead of myself. Let's begin with a dictionary definition of symmetry. And I'm reading here from the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*: Symmetry is "exact correspondence of form and con-

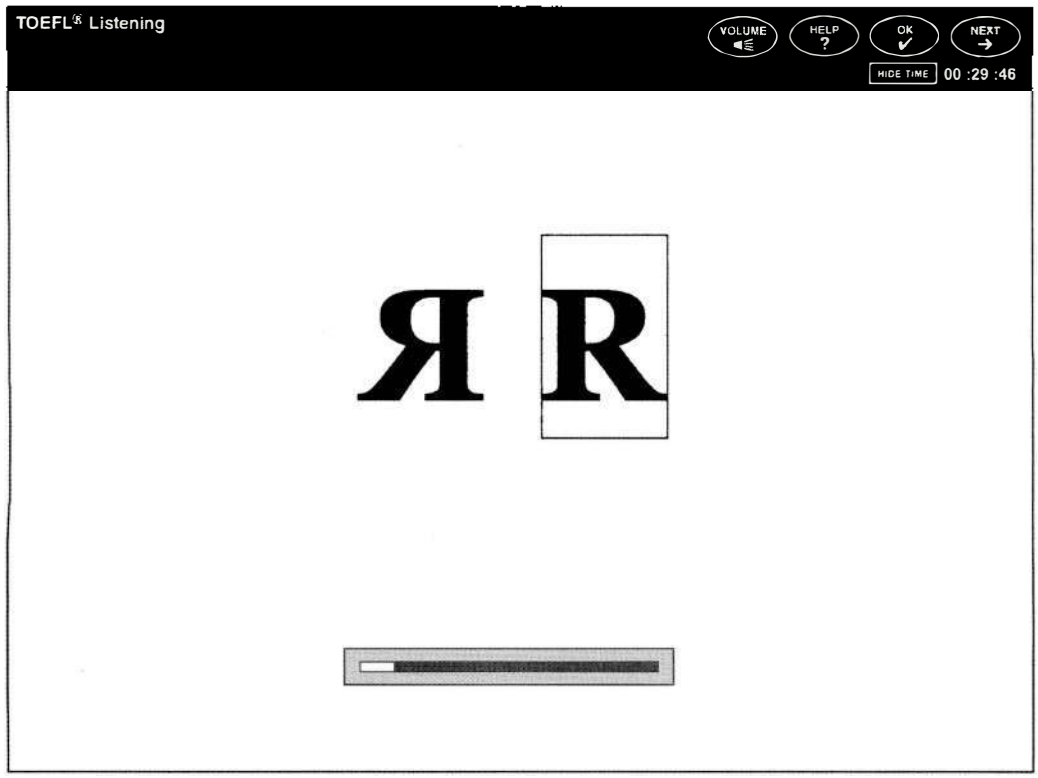
stituent configuration on opposite sides of a dividing line or plane or about a center or an axis." And it's also identified in the same source as "beauty as a result of balance or harmonious arrangement." So we experience beauty and harmony when symmetry of form is expressed, and the form may be interpreted by any of the senses as . . . harmonious. But in this class we're going to focus on symmetry in the visual arts, and that's symmetry in a visual plane.

Let's just look at some examples. In general, there are four types of symmetry in a plane, and a pattern is symmetrical if there's at least one type of symmetry. So, let me show you the four types since it's much easier to understand when you see them.

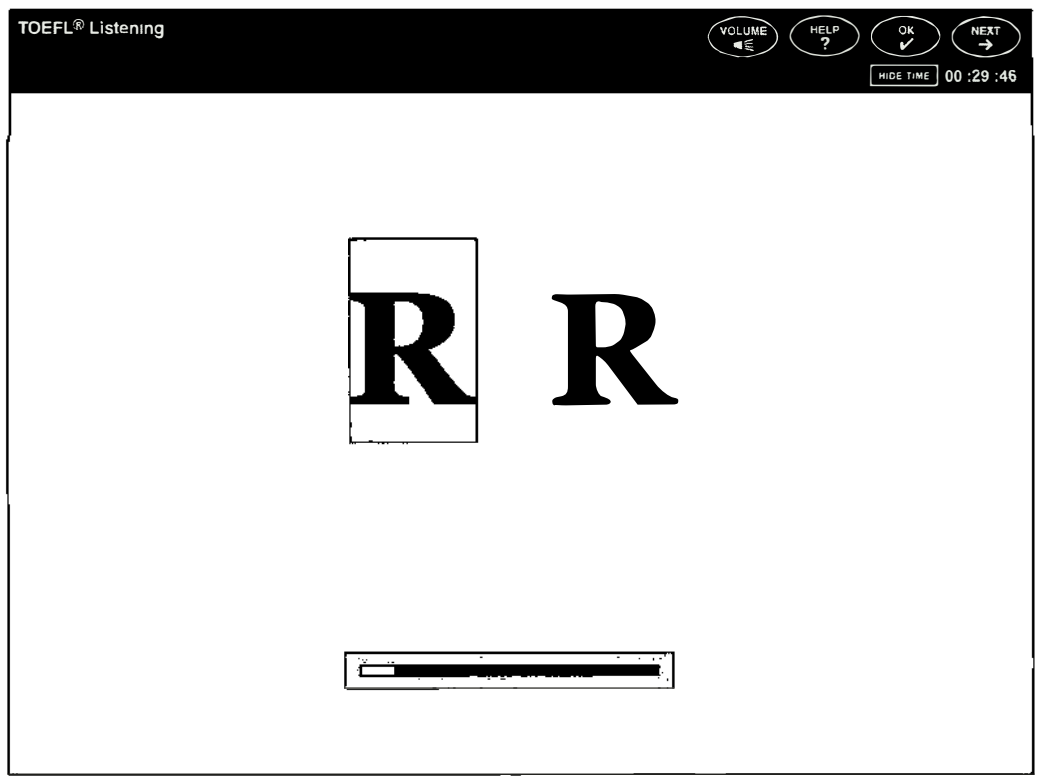


This is *rotation* symmetry. For this example, I used the letter *R*, but any object could have been used. And in the rotation, the object, in this example, the letter *R*, is turned around a center. In this case, there's a right angle, but any angle could have been selected.

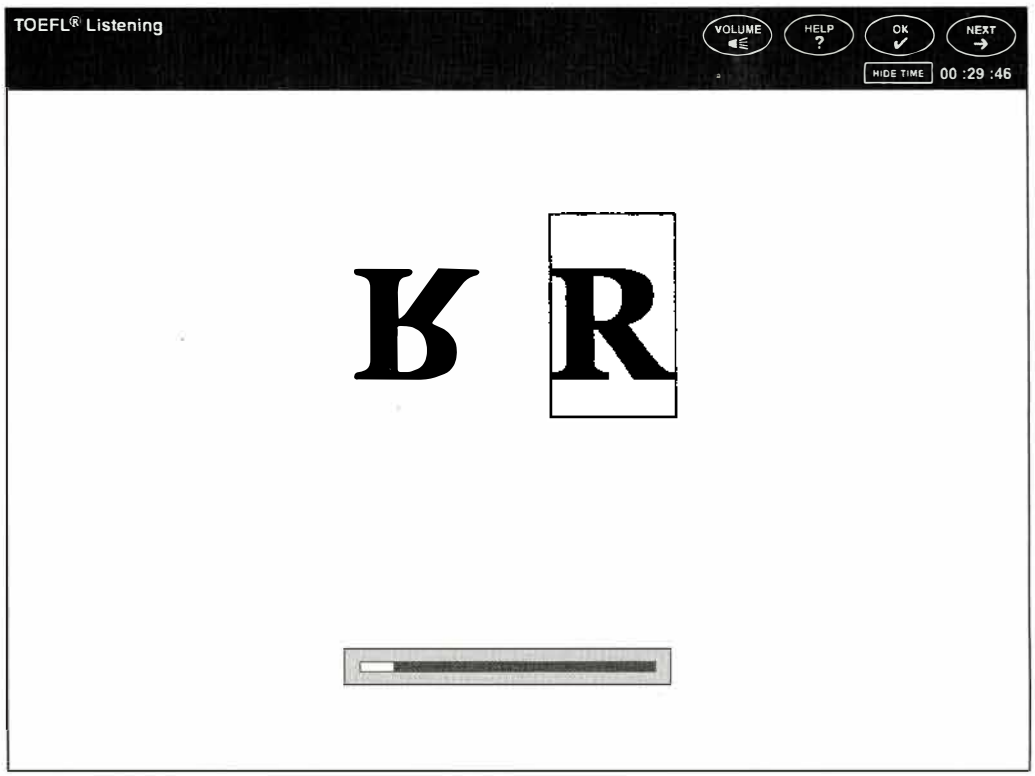
Reflection is . . . wait a minute. Okay, here's the slide. Q8



Reflection is what we see in a mirror, so every reflection has a mirror line. A reflection of the letter *R* is a mirror image or a backwards letter *R*. So, unlike the rotation around a circle, this type of symmetry flips the object over.



Here's a *translation.* To translate an object means that we move it, but we do it without rotation or reflection. It's simply placed somewhere else on the plane. And for our purposes, we're talking about a flat plane. So, in this example . . . we just moved it over a little bit.



Okay, this is my last example of symmetry and it's referred to as *glide* reflection. This is the most complex type of symmetry because it involves two steps instead of one. A glide reflection is a combination of a reflection and a translation along the direction of the mirror line. So, . . . you can see the two steps here. First, we flip it over and then we move it somewhere else on the plane.

Of course these concepts can be generalized to include spatial symmetry as well. But, symmetry on a flat plane involves positioning all points around the plane so their positions in relationship to each remain constant . . . although their absolute positions may be subject to change. To put it in simple terms, if an object looks the same to you after you spin it around, flip it over, or look at it in a mirror, then that object probably has symmetry.

Symmetry is such a fundamental organizing principle that an object with symmetry can be identified . . . without our being able to see the, . . . the entire object. Our brains somehow piece together the missing pieces to form a symmetrical whole. Which is really rather extraordinary, when you think about it. At some very basic level, symmetry may be part of the way that we . . . that we organize our thinking. And of course, that would explain why it's so pleasing. Q9

So now let's return to symmetry in art. Symmetry stands out and attracts attention. It's the system of organization for patterns. But what is a pattern? A pattern has three characteristics—a system for organization, and like we said before, this is often symmetry, but a pattern also has a basic unit, that is, uh,i t's an object that's the smallest discrete part of the image. As you'll recall from the types of symmetry that we discussed, the letter R was the basic unit. Okay, finally, a pattern has repetition, which can be the repetition of a unit or a group of units. And, . . . this repetition, in much of art . . . this repetition is arranged symmetrically. Q10

Just look around the classroom. Look at the tiles on the floor. Here you see a symmetrical design with four repeating tiles. The tiles were not placed at random. There's a pattern here with all three characteristics of a pattern—first, there's a unit, a basic unit, of four tiles; second, there's repetition of the tiles with solid tiles surrounding them; and . . . third, there's symmetry . . . within the four tiles, which to be specific, looks like rotation symmetry to me.

Q11 Now, for your studio assignment, I want you to draw a pattern that has as its organizing principle, a symmetrical design. It can be either in color or in black and white, but it must fit on a piece of standard 8½ by 11-inch paper. On a second sheet of paper, I want you to identify the type of symmetry that you used. Perhaps some of you will want to experiment with several types of symmetry, but if you do, please be sure to identify each of them clearly in your narrative. For this first effort, I recommend that you stick to something relatively simple, like the tile floor. So, when you come to class next week, be ready to share your design with three other people in a group. Then I'll collect them at the end of the hour.

Audio 6. What is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **A** All of the other choices are mentioned in relationship to the main topic: Symmetry in the visual arts.

Audio 7. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "We find symmetry in nature, it reverberates in music, translates into choreography for dance, and . . . underlies basic mathematical formulas. But I'm getting ahead of myself. Let's begin with a dictionary definition of symmetry."
Audio What does the professor mean when he says this:
Replay "But I'm getting ahead of myself."
Answer **D** He wants to talk about that subject later.

Audio 8. Which of the following slides represents reflection symmetry?
Click on the correct diagram.
Answer **C** Reflection symmetry is shown in diagram C.

Audio 9. How is it possible to recognize an object when only part of it is visible?
Answer **A** The brain recognizes symmetry and visualizes the whole.

Audio 10. In addition to a system for organization, what characteristics define a pattern?
Answer **A** A basic unit
C Repetition

Audio 11. What assignment does the professor give his students?
Answer **D** They have to design a pattern that includes symmetry.

Listening 3 "Sociology Class"

Audio Discussion

Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a sociology class. The professor is talking about gangs.

Q12 Dr. Jackson: Last class, I asked you to read some articles about gang activity. We're trying to come up with a definition, so let's just go around the table and share what we found. Tracy, will you begin please?

Q13 Tracy: Okay. Um, actually, I read a review of the research for sociological studies on gang activity, and I found that gangs have been prevalent for much longer than I'd assumed. I was so surprised. For some reason, I thought that gang activity was a fairly recent phenomenon, but actually, one of the largest studies was carried out by Thrasher in 1936.

Dr. Jackson: Good. Good. I'm pleased that you found that. Thrasher's study is a classic research investigation. Can you summarize the findings? Of the Thrasher study?

Tracy: Sure. First, I should say that the study included more than 1300 gangs with more than 25,000 members. So . . . according to Thrasher, a gang is a group that may form spontaneously, but after that, it will . . . integrate . . . and that happens through conflict and violence. Over time, a spirit of solidarity and an attachment to a local territory kind of forms. What's most interesting, besides the long history of gangs in the United States, the interesting part . . . it's the fact that not much has changed over the years. And, oh yes, gang behavior seems pretty similar even across cultures.

Dr. Jackson: That *is* interesting.

Bill: Dr. Jackson, may I go next? I have just a brief comment that seems to fit in here.

Dr. Jackson: Please.

Bill: Well, another classic study, much later, about 1987 or 8, I think, by Joan Moore . . . that study indicated that gang behavior is probably caused by normal adolescent insecurities . . . the desire for peer approval, respect, support, acceptance, and, in some cases, protection, if the neighborhood is perceived as dangerous. It seems that gangs take the place of the more childish cliques . . . those in-groups that develop in high schools. Q14 Q17

Dr. Jackson: Good point. And if we can refer back to the Thrasher study, he also suggested that gangs actually form in play groups where children of a very young age begin with the usual games like hide-and-seek or kickball, and progress as they get older to playing craps or engaging in petty theft on the street. Now, back to Moore. Bill?

Bill: Right. Well . . .

Dr. Jackson: What about Moore's definition of a gang? That relates to the Thrasher study.

Bill: Oh, I see what you mean. I have that right here. Moore defined a gang as an "unsupervised peer group who is socialized by the streets rather than by conventional institutions," and I was thinking that the institutions might be schools, churches, organized clubs like boys' clubs. And one other thing, Moore emphasized that the gang had to define itself as a gang, you know, with some kind of criteria for membership that would be recognized by all of the gang members. Q17 Q15

Dr. Jackson: Such as?

Bill: Such as participating in a crime, either stealing something and bringing it back to the gang, or . . . or even killing someone in an initiation.

Sandy: Dr. Jackson, I looked up the definitions of gang members by police departments and law enforcement agencies.

Dr. Jackson: Oh, great. Let's hear it.

Sandy: Okay. Well, according to the California Youth Gang Task Force, for example, a gang member will be recognizable because of gang-related tattoos, clothing, and paraphernalia like scarves and hats that identify a particular gang and, sometimes these are called the *colors*, so that allows other people to confirm that the people with the colors on . . . that they have a right to be on the gang's turf. And, to follow up on Tracy's comments about the history of gangs, it looks like these criteria have been in place for a long, long time.

Dr. Jackson: Good job. So far, what I'm hearing though, what I'm hearing refers to gang membership in general. So now let's talk about the ages of gang members. Typically, who belongs to a gang?

Tracy: Well, this was an eye-opener. There seem to be stages, or maybe not stages, but at least categories of gang membership. It starts about age 10 or 12, which fits in with what you were saying earlier about play groups. So these kids are playing together and they start writing graffiti on their school lockers or their notebooks, and they look up to the gang members who are about 14–20. So the little kids are "Peewees" and Q17

the teenagers are called "Gang Bangers." But the members who are 20–25 years old, they're the "Hardcores," and most of the gangs that I read about didn't have very many members over 25 years old. So I would say that, in general, gang membership is for young men.

Dr. Jackson: Thanks for your assessment of membership by age. And I would certainly agree with you. But what about females? Did anyone find any research on their role in gang activity?

Q16 **Bill:** I did. And there are a few girl gangs—that's what they called them in the references . . . but I found that females are generally not considered members of the male-dominated gang. They're viewed as more of a support system, and an extended social group—friends and girlfriends to party with.

Sandy: That's what I found, too. And another interesting thing. Maybe this is naïve, but I sort of imagined that gang activity was always . . . always criminal activity. But, uh, according to a study by . . . it was James Lasley . . . he looked at gangs in Los Angeles about ten years ago . . . and anyway, he found that they spent a lot of time hanging out, listening to music, drinking beer, and just partying with their girlfriends. And he made another good point. Since they don't have spending money, to go places like the movies or ball games, the neighborhood is their . . . entertainment.

Bill: Yeah. I read that study. Didn't he say that some of the criminal activity was for fun . . . not really for financial gain?

Q17 Sandy: Exactly. And there seems to be very little planning. Just kind of going with whatever turns up. Of course, there are instances of crimes for revenge or honor to maintain the reputation of the gang, but a lot of the time, crimes simply occur while gang members are looking for something to do.

Audio 12. How does the professor organize the discussion?
Answer **A** By defining gang activity, using information from articles

Audio 13. What was surprising about Thrasher's study?
Answer **D** The fact that gang activity has been prevalent for so long

Audio 14. According to the study by Moore, what causes gang activity?
Answer ***B*** Normal feelings of insecurity in teens

Audio 15. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "And one other thing, Moore emphasized that the gang had to define itself as a gang, you know, with some kind of criteria for membership that would be recognized by all of the gang members."
"Such as?"
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "Such as?"
Answer **B** To encourage the student to give an example

Audio 16. What is the role of women in gangs?
Answer **C** They are a support system for the gangs.

Audio 17. In the discussion, the students identify aspects of gang activity. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the aspects. Click in the correct box for each phrase.

Answer

	Yes	No
A A replacement for high school cliques	✔	
B A group socialized on the streets	✔	
C A peer group that is 14–20 years old		✔
D Young people who have dropped out of school		✔
E A group that makes careful plans		✔

Listening 4 "Students on Campus"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to part of a conversation between two students.

Man: Hi. How did your presentation go? Q18
Woman: Really well.
Man: See. I told you.
Woman: I know, but I was really nervous.
Man: So what happened?
Woman: Well, the T.A. asked for volunteers to go first, and I raised my hand right away because I wanted to get it over with before I got any more nervous than I already was.
Man: So you went first.
Woman: Yeah. And I used a lot of visuals. I had about twenty slides on PowerPoint, and that really helped me to stay on track. I mean, I didn't read the slides to the class or anything, but, you know, some of the titles kind of jogged my memory . . . so I knew what I wanted to say while each slide was shown. Q19
Man: That's the beauty of PowerPoint.
Woman: Of course, I'm always afraid the computer program won't work . . . and then there I am without anything. But, I made overheads, you know, copies of all the slides, just in case. Q20
Man: So you could have used the overhead projector as a back up. Good idea.
Woman: And I had most of the stuff on handouts so they could follow along without spending a lot of time taking notes. That way I could move along faster and get more in in ten minutes.
Man: Yeah. Ten minutes isn't very long when you're trying to present something as complex as population density.
Woman: That's for sure. The maps really helped.
Man: A picture's worth a thousand words.
Woman: So true.
Man: Listen, I can't remember whether you had a group or you had to present all by yourself. Q21
Woman: You had a choice, but I decided to do my own presentation. I don't know. Group projects are really popular but . . . you know.
Man: I hear you. I'd rather take responsibility for the whole presentation, if I were you.
Woman: No surprises that way.
Man: Is that one of your handouts? . . . Wow. That looks fantastic.
Woman: It's easy. PowerPoint has an option for putting the slides on a handout.
Man: Still, it looks so . . . professional.
Woman: Thanks.
Man: So did you have any questions after the presentation? Q22
Woman: Not really. I think people were mostly just wanting to get on with their own presentations.

Man: But they seemed interested.
Woman: Oh, yeah. And the T.A. said something about "getting off to such a good start," so I felt good about that.

Audio 18. What are the students discussing?
Answer **B** The other choices relate to the main topic of discussion: The woman's presentation.

Audio 19. Which strategy does the woman use for her presentation?
Answer **C** Show visuals to explain the points

Audio 20. Why did the woman make overhead copies of the slides?
Answer **B** She was afraid that the computer program would fail.

Audio 21. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "You had a choice, but I decided to do my own presentation. I don't know. Group projects are really popular but . . . you know."
"I hear you."
Audio What does the man mean when he says this:
Replay "I hear you."
Answer **D** He understands the woman's point of view and may even imply agreement. "I hear you" is an idiomatic way to say, "I understand."

Audio 22. Why didn't the class ask questions after the presentation?
Answer **D** They were anxious to make their presentations.

Listening 5 "Biology Class"

Audio Lecture
Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a biology class.

Professor:
By studying the fossil record we can read the history of life on Earth. Interestingly enough, it appears that there are long periods in which not very much change occurs; then sporadic brief periods in which there are mass extinctions of species followed by diversification of the groups that survived. How does this happen? Well, sometimes a habitat is destroyed or the environment changes. Did you know that if the temperature of the ocean falls by even a few degrees, many species will die? Incredible, isn't it? Or, even when the environment is relatively stable, biological conditions can change when other species evolve in different directions. For example, let's see, when a similar species evolves by developing a shell, then the related species without shells may be more vulnerable to predators and could become
Q23 extinct as a result of changes in the other species. So you can see that extinction is a natural consequence of history. It's, well, inevitable. But sometimes mass extinctions occur and most of the known species are lost. And this is very different.

Q24 Let me mention two such mass extinctions. First, the Permian mass extinction, which occurred about 250 million years ago. According to fossil records, more than 90 percent of the marine species and about 30 percent of the orders of insects . . . perished. Then about 65 million years ago, the Cretaceous mass extinction claimed more than half of the marine species and many terrestrial species of plants and animals, including the dinosaurs.

Q25 So what causes mass extinction? This isn't an easy question to answer. You see, it's obvious from the fossil records that species exist during a certain geological time period, and then, they disappear, and we have solid evidence for that. But *why* they disappear is, well, more speculative. In the Permian, several extreme conditions may have converged, including the merging of the continents into one

large land mass. As you can imagine, such a radical change in the distribution of land and water would have disturbed habitats and caused the climate to change. There's also evidence that volcanic activity during this period may have produced enough carbon dioxide to cause global warming, which in turn would have affected the temperature and depth of the oceans, and it, and I'm referring here to global warming, so it probably also caused the oxygen levels in the oceans to decrease. All of these conditions could have converged to extinguish an enormous number of species at the same time. That's mass extinction.

And, a similar set of conditions may also have contributed to the mass extinction in the Cretaceous period as well. We can gather data that convinces us about continental drift . . . that it occurred along with receding seas along the continental coastlines. In addition, we know that cooler climate was probably the result, at least in part, of . . . increased volcanic eruptions, and these eruptions probably released enough material into the atmosphere to block the sunlight. Having said all of that, many scientists now favor a very different hypothesis. They theorize that maybe a large asteroid collided with the Earth. Advocates of the so-called impact hypothesis speculate that there were two events that caused the mass extinction. First, the impact probably caused a fire storm of such proportion that most of the life in North America would have been decimated within minutes. Second, they postulate that an enormous cloud of fallout could have blocked out the sunlight and . . . that the impact was, in fact, large enough to . . . darken the Earth . . . and we're talking about months or even years. So the result . . . of the darkness, I mean . . . that would have caused a reduction in photosynthesis, which, in turn, would have created a disruption in the food chain. Now, such a disruption would have affected many species. Q26

So the advocates of the impact hypothesis . . . they put forward evidence that a thin layer of clay, rich in iridium deposits, uh, can be found in the geologic material that separates the Mesozoic and the Cenozoic eras—precisely the time period for the Cretaceous mass extinction. So what's special about this clay? Well, iridium is a very rare element on Earth, but it's quite common in meteorites and other extraterrestrial debris that's been analyzed. So, it's possible that this sediment is the remains of the impact. The fact that there was more serious damage to the species in the Western Hemisphere could also be explained by the *point* of impact, and the fact that the dust cloud could have caused more acidic precipitation nearer the area of impact. Or, there may have been a number of calamities that converged simultaneously, disrupting planetary balances. Q27

But whatever the cause or causes, the fact remains that the mass extinctions occurred, and they influenced the biological diversity of our planet in profound ways. The species that survived, whether because they had genetic advantages or because they were fortunate enough to be farther from the catastrophes . . . these species became the ancestors of the species that have played important roles in biological evolutionary history. Q28

Audio 23. What aspect of the fossil record is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **B** The other points relate to the main topic of the lecture: Mass extinctions.

Audio 24. Identify the main periods of mass extinction.
Answer **A** Permian
C Cretaceous

Audio 25. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay "You see, it's obvious from the fossil records that species exist during a certain geological time period, and then, they disappear, and we have solid evidence for that. But *why* they disappear is, well, more speculative."
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "But *why* they disappear is, well, more speculative."
Answer **A** The word "speculative" expresses uncertainty.

Audio 26. What is the impact hypothesis?
Answer **D** The premise that an asteroid crashed, blocking the sunlight on Earth

Audio 27. What is the evidence for the impact hypothesis?
Answer **A** The clay from the Cretaceous Period contains an element that is rare on Earth.

Audio 28. What can be inferred about the professor's opinion?
Answer **C** He thinks that mass extinctions were important to evolution.

LISTENING 6 "ANTHROPOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in an anthropology class. The professor is talking about totem poles.

Professor:
Some of the largest and most elaborate totem poles are those carved by the Haida people who live on Queen Charlotte Island about 150 kilometers west of the coast of British Columbia, as well as on the smaller islands along the West Coast of Canada. These islands are densely covered with huge red cedar trees that have served for many years as the material for the poles. Some of the totem poles are as tall as the trees themselves.

Q29 Historically, the Haida have carved and raised the totem poles for several important reasons . . . to honor an elder who's died, to record family ancestry and the accomplishments of the clan, to serve as a reminder for ancient stories that are part of an oral tradition, and . . . to recognize a person who's Q30 sponsored a Potlach ceremony. As an aside, the Potlach is a celebration that includes feasting and the exchange of gifts. There might also be singing, story telling, and dancing, and I'll go into that more a bit later in the semester.

But back to the significance of the totem poles. When you see a totem pole, it's obvious that the carvings depict figures of animals and humans, stacked one on top of the other. It's probably less clear Q31 that the selection and placement of the carved figures is deeply symbolic. So to really understand how important the totem poles are in Haida culture and to have an insight into the symbolism, I want you to think about all of the symbols in a European coat of arms. For example, the Coat of Arms of Canada includes a unicorn and a lion, a fleur de lis, and maple leaves. What's the point? Anyone? Come on. I'll give you one guess.

Student 1:
Do you mean that this coat of arms is a symbol . . . uh, I mean it identifies the people of Canada?

Professor:
Precisely. And that's what a totem pole does as well. It identifies the people of a family or clan or village in a symbolic way. The raven and the eagle are usually incorporated in the pole because the Haida people traditionally belong to one or the other of these two important clans. Other animals may recall a time before people lived on the Earth, when birds and animals talked with each other and supernatural events explained history and provided examples for religious teachings.

But some symbols and the stories associated with them . . . these are known only to the owner of the pole, and of course, to the carver. Although some symbolic meanings are repeated, such as the association of healing power with the wolf or dignity with the bear, still, it's just not possible to recreate a story merely by looking at the pole. So, unless the stories are passed down to relatives or recorded by an anthropologist, then the meaning attached to an individual totem pole can be . . . lost.

Student 2:
Excuse me, I keep thinking about that old expression, *low man on the totem pole*. How does that fit in . . . to the symbolism, I mean.

Professor:
I knew someone would bring that up. Okay. *Low man on the totem pole* means "a person with very little status" but actually, we know that this expression isn't at all in keeping with the tradition of carving totem poles. In fact, the lower figures on the totem pole are usually the most important. Q32

Student 3: Why?

Professor:
For a very practical reason. Not symbolic at all. Remember the size of a totem pole? Well, it's often carved by more than one artist, usually a master carver and a number of apprentices, and the master carver is the one who carves the bottom ten feet of the pole, leaving the upper figures to the less experienced apprentices. The most elaborate carving and therefore, the most important figures are at the bottom of the pole where people are able to see them more clearly than they can see the figures at the top. In fact, many totem poles have a thunderbird at the top, which serves as a cap. As the lord of the sky, this choice is logical, but most of the time, it has very little significance in the story of the pole and it might be the . . . the crudest carving. Q33

Student 3: So did the Haida people worship the totem poles?

Professor:
That's another old myth. Totem poles were *not* worshiped and were *not* used to frighten away evil spirits as some early records supposed.

Now, no one knows exactly how long the Haida have been carving totem poles, and the reason for this is that a cedar pole that's been exposed to the elements . . ., uh, it will decay in fewer than one hundred years, so archeologists don't have a physical record of totem poles over the centuries. Probably the best description that we have of the tradition dates back to the late 1700s when European sailing vessels began trading with the Haida, and we know from ships' journals that totem poles were a well-established tradition at that time. Some of them were painted and others weren't, so that option seems to have been left to the discretion of the owner and the carver.

Okay, it's almost time for the bell to ring, but I want to mention that although our discussion has focused on the Haida, interestingly enough, many other aboriginal people have a history of carving totem poles as well. Just off the top of my head, I'd have to include the Tlingit and Tsimshian people of Alaska and the Salish people of Western Washington and British Columbia. And . . . the Maori people of New Zealand . . . and the . . . the Ainu people from Northern Japan. But that isn't an inclusive list by any means. Q34

Audio 29. Which of the following is an important reason the Haida people carve totem poles?
Answer **C** To recall traditional stories

Audio 30. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "As an aside, the Potlach is a celebration that includes feasting and the exchange of gifts. There might also be singing, story telling, and dancing, and I'll go into that more *a bit later* in the semester."
Audio What does the professor mean when he says this:
Replay "As an aside, the Potlach is a celebration that includes feasting and the exchange of gifts."
Answer **A** An "aside" is information that does not directly relate to the topic.

Audio 31. Why does the professor mention the coat of arms of Canada?
Answer **A** To compare the symbolism to that of a totem pole

Audio 32. What does the saying *low man on the totem pole* mean?
Answer C A person who has the least status among the members

Audio 33. Why do the master carvers work on the bottom figures?
Answer B The figures near the bottom are more visible to the public.

Audio 34. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "Just off the top of my head, I'd have to include the Tlingit and Tsimshian people of Alaska and the Salish people of Western Washington and British Columbia. And . . . the Maori people of New Zealand . . . and the . . . the Ainu people from Northern Japan. But that isn't an inclusive list by any means."
Audio What does the professor mean when he says this:
Replay "Just off the top of my head, I'd have to include the Tlingit and Tsimshian people of Alaska and the Salish people of Western Washington and British Columbia."
Answer D He is informing the students that there may be more information that he is not able to recall right now. "Off the top of my head" is an expression that speakers use when they are providing information spontaneously.

Listening 7 "Professor's Office"

Audio Conversation

Narrator: Listen to a conversation in a professor's office.

Student: Thanks for seeing me.
Professor: No problem. What . . .
Student: I'm here. Oh excuse me.
Professor: Go ahead.
Q35 Student: I'm here because, well, I just don't seem to be able to keep up, with the assignments, I mean.
Professor: I see. Is that just in my class or is this a general problem?
Student: Oh, no. I'm getting behind in my assignments in *all* my classes. There's just so much. It's overwhelming.
Professor: Hmnn.
Q35 Student: But I came to you because I thought you . . . you could give me some advice.
Professor: Well, I'll try. So how many classes are you taking?
Q36 Student: Four, which is about average, I think.
Professor: And what are they?
Student: Sorry?
Professor: Which classes are you taking?
Student: Oh. Well, I have Western Civilization, World Literature, um, your class in Psychology of course, and Philosophy.
Q37 Professor: Unhuh. Well, that's the problem. All of your courses are reading-intensive classes.
Student: If you mean that I have a lot of reading to do, that's the truth.
Professor: Look, when you registered, did you talk with your advisor?
Student: Not really.
Professor: But you had to have your advisor's signature in order to complete the registration process . . .
Student: Yeah, but I just had him sign it. I . . . I didn't really make an appointment or anything. See, I thought the best thing to do was to get all of my required courses out of the way so I could spend the last two years concentrating on my major.
Q37 Professor: And that's a good plan, but the problem is that you selected four courses that had heavy reading assignments and probably papers to write in addition to tests, right?

Student: Right. But most courses have a lot of reading, don't they?

Professor: Some have more than others, and that's what I mean by a reading-intensive class. Listen, if you had taken a lab course, like . . . like Botany or Chemistry, well, then you would have had one course with a textbook and another course with a small lab manual. Now you'd have had to spend time in the lab to finish your experiments but you would have received credit for two courses and you wouldn't have had any papers to write—just tests.

Student: Oh, I see, and with the literature, I have eight books to read, plus the textbook, and there are . . . how many? . . . four or five books in your class.

Professor: So when you register, you really need to think about the course requirements so you aren't putting all of your reading-intensive courses together in the same semester.

Student: Like I did this time. So, maybe it's not that I'm such a slow reader. Maybe I just have too much to read.

Professor: Could be. In any case, the schedule has to be at least a part of the problem.

Student: So what should I do now?

Professor: Okay, well, how are you doing in your classes?

Student: I'm getting Bs and Cs, but I know I could get As if I had more time in the day. And I'm really worried about those Cs.

Professor: Well, here's a possibility. Why don't you drop one of your courses? The one that takes the most time. Q38

Student: That would be my literature class.

Professor: You could take it next semester. It's offered every term, and you would have some of the reading done already.

Student: But wouldn't that mess up my graduation date?

Professor: I don't know. You'd have to check that with your advisor to be sure.

Student: But maybe the professor would be upset, about my dropping the class. Then next semester, when I show up again . . .

Professor: You could talk with the professor and explain your plan. But if you decide to do this, you'll need to do it right away because there's a cut-off date for dropping a course and I think it's the end of this month.

Student: I wish I hadn't gotten myself into this.

Professor: Well, the main thing is to learn from it.

Student: So next semester I could take some reading-intensive courses and some that are . . . *less* reading-intensive.

Professor: And you should really see your academic advisor when you're selecting courses next time—to talk, I mean. Not just for a signature. Q39

Audio 35. Why does the man go to see his professor?
Answer C He would like some advice about his classes.

Audio 36. Listen again to part of the conversation and then answer the following question.
Replay "So how many classes are you taking?"
"Four, which is about average, I think."
"And what are they?"
"Sorry?"
Audio Why does the man say this:
Replay "Sorry?"
Answer B "Sorry" indicates that he does not understand. He is asking the woman to explain.

Audio 37. What is the man's problem?
Answer D He took classes with heavy reading assignments.

Audio 38. What does the professor suggest?
Answer C Immediate withdrawal from one of the courses

Audio 39. What can we infer about the situation?
Answer A The student will probably talk with his advisor before registration next term.

LISTENING 8 "PSYCHOLOGY CLASS"

Audio Lecture

Narrator: Listen to part of a lecture in a psychology class.

Professor:

Q41 The National Institute of Mental Health has been doing some interesting research on chemicals in the brain, the neurotransmitters, . . . by looking at brain images, and . . . at least some of the research has shown that the brain circuits responsible for sleep, appetite, concentration, and, . . . and mood . . . they are altered during depressed states. So, basically, we've concluded that depression is caused by chemical imbalances in the brain. But we're still unclear about what triggers those imbalances in the first place.

Some types of depression appear to be genetically inherited, but often there's no family history of depression, or, conversely, a person with a family history may never develop a depressive disorder. So . . . It's a thorny problem.

Q40 Here at the university, we've been studying a disorder called *seasonal affective disorder*. Norman Rosenthal first identified this disorder in the mid 80s. The theory is that a decrease in light during the Q41 long winter months may be responsible for triggering a chemical imbalance that in turn may cause depression among those people with a predisposition to depression. Supposedly, there's an area of the brain called the *suprachiasmatic nucleus*, which is very close to the retina of the eye, so this area of the brain responds to light by sending a signal to the pineal gland, and the signal causes the gland to Q42 suppress the secretion of a hormone called *melatonin*. To make a long story short, the more light, the less melatonin in the blood.

Q43 Okay, the acronym for seasonal affective disorder that's being used in the field is S.A.D. We didn't come up with that, and in fact, I personally think that it's an inappropriate way to refer to such a serious type of depression since it sounds rather mild, and seasonal affective disorder can be a very severe and debilitating disorder for some people. In fact, in extreme cases, it's life-threatening when patients become suicidal.

So anyway, as you can appreciate, the winter here is very dark, cold, and gray. By spring, almost everyone is tired of the gloom, but for some people, those suffering with seasonal affective disorder, it can be a serious problem. People with seasonal affective disorder experience deep and prolonged depression throughout the winter months, with what looks like a spontaneous alleviation of the condition . . . when spring arrives. Before the disorder was identified, it was rather a mystery for friends and family since the depression appeared to vanish only to return several months later.

Q44 Now, although previous research isn't conclusive, we do know that younger people, especially younger women, these women are at a higher risk for developing the disorder, and for being affected by it in a more severe form. If I recall, about 75 percent of those affected are women, with a typical age of onset about thirty years old. Other factors that contribute to the problem, apart from the long, dark days of course, these factors include heredity and stress.

What are the symptoms? Well, the usual spectrum of problems associated with depression—anxiety, lack of concentration, a tendency to sleep more and eat more, cravings for food with a high sugar content. This may be accompanied by weight gain. On the other hand, some people actually lose their appetites and tend to lose a significant amount of weight. We also see lower energy levels and for some people, a dull headache may accompany the problem.

So building on the research studies that identified the symptoms of seasonal affective disorder and the high-risk profile, we decided to undertake a longitudinal study of 120 subjects, and our research is really focusing on therapies that might help those people affected by S.A.D. Traditionally, psychotherapy has been used to identify and modify behaviors that contribute to depression, and it's been somewhat successful with patients identified with seasonal affective disorder, especially when used in combination with relaxation and stress reduction therapies. Antidepressant drug therapy has also been proven to reduce depression in studies of people who had seasonal disorders. But we've been using phototherapy almost exclusively with the subjects in our studies. It's very simple really. We've supplied each subject with a light box that provides the same type of natural lighting that would normally be shining through the window during the spring and summer. The subjects have been instructed to turn on the light box for two hours and then simply go about their activities in the room where the box is placed. They're not supposed to use the box like a sun lamp—no staring into the light, either with the eyes closed or open. They just ignore it once it's turned on.

So . . . although we're still evaluating our data from the first group of subjects, we have a few preliminary findings that I'll share with you today. First, we think that it's probably better to be exposed to the light box during the morning hours. Second, we're noticing a relationship between sleep patterns and seasonal depression, so maintaining a regular schedule for sleep seems to be a helpful therapy in conjunction with the light treatment. We're also fairly sure that the duration of light therapy can be modified for individuals. . . . Some subjects who were exposed to the light for less than two hours did very well while others showed no evidence of relief until they reestablished the two-hour treatments. One interesting possibility that we're working on is whether fluorescent lights might work as well as full spectrum light with the ultraviolet rays filtered out. In our first trials, we used UV light exclusively, but now we have some trials underway with fluorescent light, and the results so far are encouraging. I'm also happy to report that there are few subjects who are experiencing side effects. There's no evidence of eye damage. We've been careful to filter out any potentially damaging UV rays. And, in fact, the only negative side effect was minor headache that seemed to disappear after a few treatments. Q45

So . . . next semester, we plan to begin the second stage of our studies, and we'll be comparing the degree of depression on the part of subjects undergoing light treatments with control groups who will receive either drug treatments or psychotherapy. What we really want to know is whether light treatments alone are as effective as the other options for therapy.

Audio 40. What is this lecture mainly about?
Answer **B** Seasonal affective disorder

Audio 41. What are neurotransmitters?
Answer **B** Chemicals in the brain

Audio 42. What happens when there is a reduction of light during the winter months?
Answer **A** An increase in melatonin may cause a chemical imbalance.

Audio 43. Why does the professor think that the acronym S.A.D. is unsuitable?
Answer **B** It does not reflect the seriousness of the problem.

Audio 44. Listen again to part of the lecture and then answer the following question.
Replay " . . . although previous research isn't conclusive, we do know that younger people, especially younger women, these women are at a higher risk for developing the disorder, and for being affected by it in a more severe form. If I recall, about 75 percent of those affected are women, with a typical age of onset about thirty years old."
Audio What does the professor mean when she says this:
Replay "If I recall, about 75 percent of those affected are women, with a typical age of onset about thirty years old."
Answer **D** She is expressing uncertainty about the information.

Audio 45. In the lecture, the professor reports the preliminary results of her research. Indicate whether each of the following is one of the findings.
Click in the correct box for each sentence.

Answer

	Yes	No
A Morning exposure for the treatment is superior.	✔	
B A regular sleep schedule supports therapy.	✔	
C Eye damage occurs in only a few subjects.		✔
D Sessions of less than two hours are preferable.		✔
E Fluorescent lighting cannot be used for therapy.		✔

LISTENING 9 "PHYSICS CLASS"

Audio Discussion
Narrator: Listen to part of a discussion in a physics class.

Professor Blake:
Okay, you'll remember that when Einstein was doing his research, uh, the strong and weak forces—they hadn't been identified yet, but still, he had some questions about the two forces that were generally accepted at the time—electromagnetism and gravity. You see, Einstein thought that nature, or rather a theory of nature, a good theory of nature had to be much simpler and, to use his term, more "elegant." So he spent the next thirty years in an effort to arrive at a . . . a unified field theory that he assumed . . . that . . . that would demonstrate how these two forces were really defined by one underlying principle.

Q46 So, today, and that would be about sixty years later, a group of physicists believe that they are close to finding that principle in something called *the theory of everything*.

[Laughter]

That's okay. A lot of other equally distinguished physicists are also laughing at this idea. But, anyway, for the first time in the history of our field, we have, uh, at least, uh, a structure, a framework, with the potential to explain every fundamental characteristic of the universe. You see, until fairly recently, we've been conceptualizing the particles, that is, the protons, neutrons, electrons, quarks, and everything else . . . we've been viewing them as points—very tiny points. But string theory assumes that if we could really take a look at the particles, and that would have to be with technology that we haven't yet discovered, but if we could, then we'd see that the particles aren't points at all but . . . but strings

Q47 and these strings are looped back into themselves. Look, think of the strings like a very thin rubber band. Oh, and . . . and these strings vibrate.

Jim:
So everything in the universe is made up of the same thing then? It's all a combination of . . . of strings?

Professor Blake:
According to the theory, yes. But of course . . . we see differences, and those differences, uh, they're accounted for because the vibrations of the strings are different.

Jim:
So in physics, you buy into the theory of everything or . . . or what?

Professor Blake:
Well, Jim, the choice isn't that clear. Um, not at all. There are a lot of scientists in between, and by that I mean that they see the theory of everything in a more limited way. They think that string theory, and understand that string theory is incorporated into the theory of everything . . . um, that string theory can explain all of the properties of the forces that cause the particles to interact and influence each other. Yes, Ellen. Did you have a comment?

Ellen:
Well, a question, really. Wouldn't it be true that if you understand everything about the . . . I think you called it the fundamental characteristics of the universe . . . so if you understand that, don't you understand everything?

Jim:
Wait a minute. So that would mean that we know it all now and there isn't anything else to discover, right? Because, uh, everything is physics . . . everything is just a reaction between vibrating strings.

Ellen:
I see your point, but you could . . . you might look at it as a . . . as a starting place to build our knowledge. Dr. Blake, you said that it'd be a structure, didn't you? So we'd have to fill in a lot of information but . . . we'd have a structure to start with. In my math class we were talking about string theory because some of the recent advances in mathematics have been possible because of string theory.

Professor Blake:
True enough. And, string theory isn't finished by any means. It's evolved from the beginning when we first started to think about it and, the early models that included both open strings and the closed strings that I just described to you—the ones that look like a thin rubber band. And there's a lot of discussion about vibration or rather various types of vibration. Then there's the possibility of branes—b-r-a-n-e-s—which are kind of like closed strings with a membrane over them.

Jim:
But all of this is theoretical, right? Because we don't have the technology to observe strings—closed or open—and we certainly can't verify that there are branes out there.

Ellen:
Sure. But there are some very complex and . . . and . . . persuasive mathematical formulas, and they're presented in support of the theories. It isn't like someone's just dreaming this up without calculations.

Jim:
But I don't see why we should accept calculations when some of those calculations require us to think beyond what we can observe.

Professor Blake:
And many physicists would agree with you, Jim. String theory's unverified. Richard Feynman wrote a very interesting book, *The Character of Physical Law*, and to Feynman, to him, the test of any scientific theory has to be whether the consequences agree with the measurements we take in experiments. Of course, that assumes that the experiment was performed correctly and, . . . that the calculations were done without error, but anyway, I think you see the point.

Ellen:
So you're saying that string theory requires further developments?

Professor Blake:
What do *you* think?

Jim:
Q49 Well, I tend to be an empirical scientist. I'm a biology major, and I just want to take something into the lab and dissect it.

Professor Blake:
Fair enough.

Ellen:
Q50 But I'm a physics major and . . . the idea of a theory of everything appeals to me. I know that we can't observe strings . . . yet . . . but maybe that's just a problem with the technology and . . . and eventually, we may be able to observe strings in the laboratory or . . . or we could find a way to observe strings in a natural setting and . . .

Jim:
Come on. It's just conjecture.

Professor Blake:
Well, in fairness, any new theory has to *begin* as conjecture, but the real question is, can string theory pass through the developmental stages to a point where it can be verified or rejected. And, uh, these developments could be in the area of technology like Ellen suggests or perhaps they could be new methods of performing calculations and, deriving the mathematical predictions. What I'm going to suggest is that we take a look at the website that supplements your textbook. There are videos as well as animations and it includes a really good history of string theory, . . . but that's not why I want you to see it. I think the site demonstrates where we need to go from here if we're going to pursue an ultimate
Q51 theory, a . . . a theory of everything, if you will. And it's fairly objective so it should provide us with some interesting data for both sides of the debate.

Audio 46. What is the discussion mainly about?
Answer **A** The theory of everything

Audio 47. How does the professor explain the closed string?
Answer **C** He compares it with a thin rubber band.

Audio 48. Listen again to part of the discussion and then answer the following question.
Replay "So you're saying that string theory requires further developments?"
"What do *you* think?"
Audio Why does the professor say this:
Replay "What do *you* think?"
Answer **D** He does not want to influence the woman's thinking.

Audio 49. According to the discussion, what reason does the man give for rejecting string theory?
Answer **B** Strings have not been observed in a laboratory.

Audio 50. What can be inferred about the students?
Answer **C** They have reached different conclusions about the theory.

Audio 51. Why does the professor suggest that the students visit a website?
Answer **B** The website should provide objective data, which they can use for the next discussion.

➤ Speaking

 **Model Test 7, Speaking Section, CD 2, Track 26**

Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Book"

Narrator 2: Number 1. Listen for a question about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Think about a book that you have enjoyed reading. Why did you like it? What was especially interesting about the book? Use specific details and examples to support your response.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Independent Speaking Question 2 "Foreign Travel"

Narrator 2: Number 2. Listen for a question that asks your opinion about a familiar topic. After you hear the question, you have 15 seconds to prepare and 45 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Agree or disagree with the following statement:

Traveling independently is better than traveling as part of a tour group.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 15 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 45 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Old Main"

Narrator 2: Number 3. Read a short passage and listen to a talk on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: A public meeting is planned to discuss alternatives for renovating the original building on campus. Read the notice from the college newspaper [printed on page 512]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to a professor who is speaking at the meeting. She is expressing her opinion about the proposals.

Professor:
Although there may be some practical reasons for tearing down the structure surrounding the clock tower, I urge the committee to consider the historical importance of Old Main and opt for renovation of the original structure. I think we all agree that the brick structure is quite beautiful and basically sound. Only a few minor repairs would be necessary to preserve it. The cost of new electrical and plumbing systems for the old structure would be less than the cost of a new building with the same systems. And if a new building were to be erected, the clock tower would seem out of place somehow.

Narrator 1: The professor expresses her opinion of the plan for the renovation of Old Main. Report her opinion and explain the reasons that she gives for having that opinion.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Pangea"

Narrator 2: Number 4. Read a short passage and then listen to part of a lecture on the same topic. Then listen for a question about them. After you hear the question, you have 30 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now read the passage about Pangea [printed on page 513]. You have 45 seconds to complete it. Please begin reading now.

[Reading Time: 45 seconds]

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a geography class. The professor is talking about Pangea.

Professor:
The theory of *continental drift* posits that 250 million years ago the continents were all connected in one gigantic continent, which we refer to as Pangea, and that was surrounded by one huge ocean called Panthalassa. At that time, the northernmost region of the continent corresponded to a landmass that included most of the modern continent of Asia, and Europe was south of the Asian region instead of north as it is now. So Asia and Europe were connected to the west with what is now North America. Africa and the Arabian Peninsula were positioned south of Europe with South America to the west, India to the east, and Antarctica and Australia south and southeast. Then, about 200 million years ago, this super continent began to separate into a northern continent and a southern continent. The northern continent was made of what is currently North America, Greenland, Europe, and Asia, and the southern continent included Antarctica, Australia, India, and South America. By 135 million years ago, the two continents had moved into positions that began to resemble the map that we see today, with seven continents.

Narrator 1: Explain how plate tectonics relates to the theory of *continental drift*.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 30 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Headaches"

Narrator 2: Number 5. Listen to a short conversation. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to a short conversation between a student and her friend.

Friend: Are you still having headaches?
Student: Yeah. I'm taking Tylenol every day.
Friend: That doesn't sound good. Why don't you go over to the Health Center?
Student: I keep thinking it'll go away. Probably just a tension headache. I feel really stressed out this semester.
Friend: Well, you're probably right, but it still wouldn't hurt to get a checkup. Maybe the doctor will refer you for an eye exam. I used to get headaches from eyestrain, especially when I was using my computer a lot. And guess what? I needed to get my glasses changed.
Student: No kidding? I hadn't thought about that, but I do notice that it gets worse after I've been using my computer.

Friend: Well, then. That's important to mention when you see the doctor at the Health Center.
Student: You think I should still go to the health center? I mean, if it's my eyes, I . . . I could just make an appointment with the eye doctor.
Friend: You could, but you really aren't sure what it is. I'd go to the doctor at the Health Center, and I'd ask for a referral to the eye doctor. Besides, if you get referred, I think your student health insurance will pay most of the cost of new glasses.

Narrator 1: Describe the woman's problem, and the two suggestions that her friend makes about how to handle it. What do you think the woman should do, and why?

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Fax Machines"

Narrator 2: Number 6. Listen to part of a lecture. Then listen for a question about it. After you hear the question, you have 20 seconds to prepare, and 60 seconds to record your answer.

Narrator 1: Now listen to part of a lecture in a business class. The professor is discussing the way that a fax machine transmits and receives data.

Professor:
Okay, to illustrate my point that many new machines are simply combinations of machines that are already available, let's talk about the fax machine. To understand how a fax machine works, I'd like you to think of it as three machines . . . a copier, a modem, and a printer. First, the data is copied. How does that happen? Well, when you load paper into the fax machine, a light shines on it and optical sensors read whether a specific point on the paper is black or white. These sensors communicate the digital information into a microprocessor, where a copy of the page is made of black or white dots. Thus, you see that in the first step, the fax machine functions like a copier. Next, the fax machine works like a modem. Remember, a modem takes a black-and-white image and converts this digital data into an analog signal, that is, electronic impulses that can be sent over a phone line. The fax machine calls another fax machine to transmit, using two different types of tones to represent the black and white dots in the document. For example, it might send an 800-Hertz tone for white and a 1,300-Hertz tone for black. The last part of a fax machine is the printer. After the receiving fax machine answers the sending fax machine, it begins to accept the electronic impulses, and then it converts them back to the black-and-white dots in a digital image. Finally, it prints the image out on paper just like any other printer.

Narrator 1: Using the main points and examples from the lecture, describe the three parts of a fax machine and then explain how the fax process works.

Narrator 2: Please prepare your answer after the beep.

Beep

[Preparation Time: 20 seconds]

Narrator 2: Please begin speaking after the beep.

Beep

[Recording Time: 60 seconds]

Beep

➤ Writing

 **Model Test 7, Writing Section, CD 2, Track 27**

Integrated Essay "Urban Forest Plan"

First, read the passage [printed on page 517] and take notes.

Narrator: Now listen to a lecture on the same topic as the passage that you have just read.

Professor:
No one would deny that the urban forest is a positive aspect of our city or that we need a plan to take care of the mature trees. However, many earlier attempts to protect the existing urban forest by legislation have not succeeded, and, in my opinion, this plan is also destined to fail.

The first goal, legislation, sounds good on the surface, but legislating the problem hasn't worked very well over the years. The reasons that past laws have come to nothing are, first, because the legislation was too complicated—too many rules published in language that wasn't easily understood. And, second, the legislation was simply not enforced. The consequences of ignoring the law didn't deter anyone from *breaking* the law.

Next, support to maintain and conserve the trees is just another way to say that taxes are going to increase. It would be wonderful if the public would voluntarily come forward to provide funding for the project, but again, in the past, a very small percentage of the budget for maintenance and conservation has come from private donations. Almost 80 percent has come from taxes, and, although this new plan doesn't specify how much of a tax increase will be necessary, it's clearly going to cost taxpayers to implement it.

The public information campaign is probably the best idea, and it should happen before anything else. But again, in the past, similar campaigns have focused on very vague goals like improving the lifestyle, and I hear the same ambiguous incentives again this time. If the public is going to support a costly project, people need to see how their lives will be improved. Will golfers enjoy a better golf course? Will the dog park be cleaned up for pet owners? These are the specifics that the public might be willing to support.

➤ Example Answers and Checklists for Speaking and Writing



Model Test 7, Example Answers, CD 2, Track 28

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 1 "A Book"

The Power of Positive Thinking by Dr. Norman Vincent Peale is one of my favorite books. Um . . . according to Dr. Peale, a positive outlook is essential to a happy, successful life. But what is especially interesting about the book are the practical strategies that help maintain an optimistic approach to living, even when, uh, things don't happen to be going well. He recommends reflection on all the aspects of life that are positive, and cultivating an "attitude of gratitude." He also recommends positive statements and mental pictures to encourage and motivate and . . . and to replace negative thoughts that come to mind.

Checklist 1

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Independent Speaking Question 2 "Foreign Travel"

I agree that traveling independently is better than traveling as part of a tour group. I've taken several tours, but I prefer to make my own travel plans because . . . I don't want to spend a lot of time at tourist hotels. In my experience, large hotels insulate travelers from the foreign culture. Instead of eating typical food, they prepare special meals for the tourists. And when I'm with groups of tourists, it's less likely that local people will approach me to talk. On my own, I've had some wonderful conversations with locals. Another reason that I like to travel independently is because I'm kind of . . . a spontaneous person, so I like to take advantage of opportunities that present themselves on the trip.

Checklist 2

- ✔ The talk answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ There are only minor errors in grammar.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 3 "Old Main"

The professor doesn't support the plan to demolish the main structure of Old Main and build a new structure around the original clock tower. She presents three arguments. Um . . . first, she says that the brick structure now standing is strong and it would require only minor repairs. And second, she points out that the electrical and plumbing problems in the old building could be repaired for less than the . . . the expenditure for a new building. Finally, she opposes the construction of a new building around the original clock tower because she thinks that the tower would be . . . would look odd in the new setting. She would probably support the alternative plan, which is, um . . . to repair the original building.

Checklist 3

- ✔ The talk summarizes the situation and opinion.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 4 "Pangea"

According to the theory of plate tectonics, the outer layer of the Earth is made up of plates that are continually moving, and consequently, changing the relative position of the land and oceans. Building on this theory, scientists have proposed that about 250 million years ago, there was only *one* landmass, a huge continent that they have named Pangea, and it included *all* of the continents that we observe today. But about 200 million years ago, the plates caused Pangea to drift and break into a Northern continent that included North America, Greenland, Asia, and Europe, and a Southern continent that contained South America, India, Antarctica, and Australia. By about 135 million years ago, the plates had separated the landmasses into more or less the seven continents that we recognize today and positioned them fairly close to their current locations.

Checklist 4

- ✔ The talk relates an example to a concept.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 5 "Headaches"

The woman's suffering from daily headaches, and she's controlling the pain by taking Tylenol. The man suggests that she make an appointment with a doctor at the Health Center because the problem should be diagnosed by a professional, but he also mentions the possibility that the doctor might refer her for an eye exam. Apparently, the problem's worse when she's been staring at the computer for long periods of time. Um . . . he reminds her that if the doctor at the Health Center refers her for the eye exam, the student health insurance may pay a large percentage of the cost for glasses. So . . . I think the woman should take the man's advice because eyestrain's a common problem for college students, and she probably *does* need an eye appointment, but by going to the doctor at the Health Center first, she can be certain that there isn't something more serious going on, and if she needs glasses, the referral will probably allow her to use her insurance benefit.

Checklist 5

- ✔ The talk summarizes the problem and recommendations.
- ✔ The speaker's point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the opinion.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Answer for Integrated Speaking Question 6 "Fax Machines"

A fax machine has three parts. The fax that's sending text and images has sensors to read black-and-white points on paper and communicate the patterns digitally to a microprocessor, and the microprocessor . . . it recreates the images in black-and-white dots. So this part of the process is like a copy machine. So then the digital information . . . I mean the image in black-and-white dots . . . it's converted into an analog signal that's made up of electronic impulses. The impulses are sent over a phone line, like a modem. Then the fax machine that's sending the information connects with another fax machine that's receiving the information. They communicate with two tones, one that signals a black dot and another that signals a white dot. And the fax machine that receives the tones begins to print the dots on paper in the same way that any printer produces an image. So a fax is really a combination copier, modem, and printer.

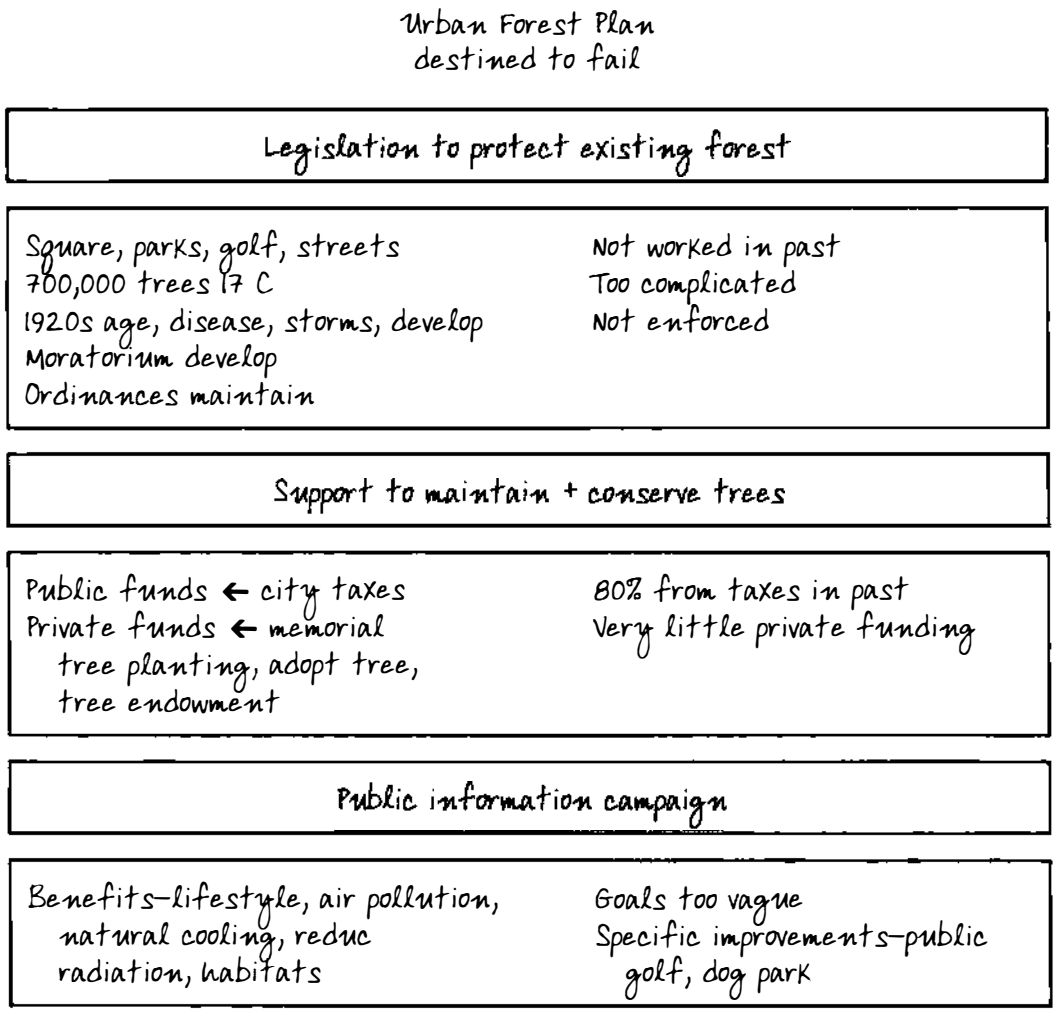
Checklist 6

- ✔ The talk summarizes a short lecture.
- ✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
- ✔ The talk is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The speaker expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ The speaker paraphrases in his/her own words.
- ✔ The speaker credits the lecturer with wording.
- ✔ Errors in grammar are minor.
- ✔ The talk is within a range of 125–150 words.

Example Response for Integrated Essay "Urban Forest Plan"

Many writers begin with a chart like those you practiced in Chapter 3. Only the essay will be scored.

Chart



Example Essay "Urban Forest Plan"

A new plan to protect and maintain the urban forest includes legislation, financial support, and a public information campaign, but the lecturer claims that it is destined to fail.

According to the lecturer, legislation has not been successful in the past because it was too complicated and often not enforced. Another moratorium on development and additional ordinances to maintain the trees in public areas would probably not be effective either, for the same reasons.

About 80 percent of the support for maintaining the urban forest in previous plans has come from taxes, with very little private funding. Although the new plan offers some good ideas for soliciting private funds, public funding from city taxes is still the primary source.

The lecturer points out that prior plans have not included specific goals that would encourage public support, a mistake that will probably be repeated in the public information campaign this time. In order to persuade the public that the urban forest is worth preserving and maintaining, people need to understand how their personal lives will improve. The lecturer names several public areas that people often use, including golf courses and dog parks, which would benefit from the conservation of the trees growing there.

Checklist for Integrated Essay

✔ The essay answers the topic question.
✔ Inaccuracies in the content are minor.
✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
✔ The sentences are logically connected.
✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
✔ The writer paraphrases in his/her own words.
✔ The writer credits the author with wording.
✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
✔ The essay is within a range of 150–225 words.

Example Response for Independent Essay "Study Abroad"

Some writers begin with an outline and others begin with a map of their ideas. Only the essay will be scored.

Outline

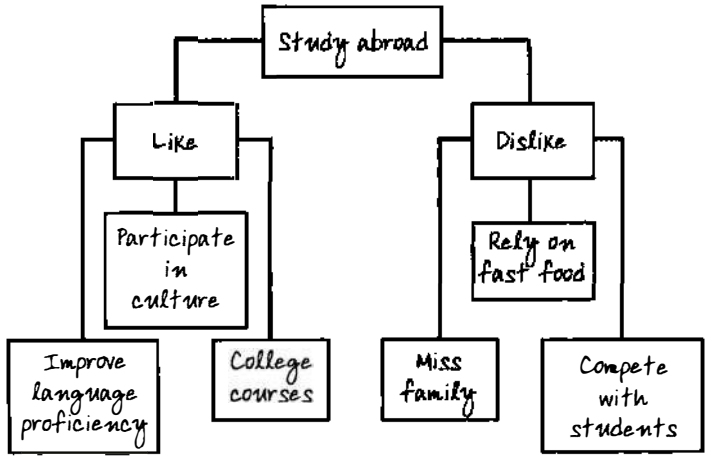
Like

- Improve language proficiency
- Participate in culture
- College courses

Dislike

- Miss family
- Rely on fast food
- Compete with students

Map



Example Essay

Living abroad provides many opportunities and challenges. When I study abroad, I look forward to making friends. By getting to know people, I will be able to improve my English language proficiency. There are idioms and words that are best learned within the context of real conversations with native speakers. I also look forward to being a participant in a new culture. At the end of my stay, I hope that I will understand the culture in a different and deeper way than is possible when information is derived from only movies and books. In addition, I am excited about studying on a foreign campus. I expect the college courses to be challenging, and I am eager to learn about the latest technological advances in my field of study.

I am realistic about the disadvantages of foreign study, however. I know that I will miss my family very much. It will be too expensive to return to my country to spend holidays with them, and I will be very lonely during the times when I know that they are gathered for special celebrations. Another aspect of the experience that I do not look forward to is the reliance on fast food that is so typical of college students. Pizza, hamburgers, and other junk foods are easier to find and prepare than the meals that I enjoy in my country, but they aren't as good, and they probably aren't as healthy. Finally, I imagine that my life will be very stressful because I will be competing with students who know the language of the classroom and are accustomed to the expectations that the professors have for their students. I am a competitive person by nature, and I am apprehensive about my ability to compete with my classmates.

Once I am living abroad, I will no doubt find many other opportunities to take advantage of and many challenges that I must confront. Nevertheless, I expect my experience to be overwhelmingly positive, and I intend to see the lessons in both adventures and adversity.

Checklist for Independent Essay

- ✔ The essay answers the topic question.
- ✔ The point of view or position is clear.
- ✔ The essay is direct and well organized.
- ✔ The sentences are logically connected.
- ✔ Details and examples support the main idea.
- ✔ The writer expresses complete thoughts.
- ✔ The meaning is easy to comprehend.
- ✔ A wide range of vocabulary is used.
- ✔ Various types of sentences are included.
- ✔ Errors in grammar and idioms are minor.
- ✔ The essay is within a range of 300–350 words.

MODEL TEST 8: CD-ROM TEST

The *Explanatory and Example* Answers for Model Tests 1–7 are found in this book and also on the CD-ROM that supplements the book. The Explanatory and Example Answers for Model Test 8 are part of the bonus test that is found only on the CD-ROM. To access Model Test 8 and the Explanatory and Example Answers for Model Test 8, launch the CD-ROM and click on Model Test 8.

6

SCORE ESTIMATES

IMPORTANT BACKGROUND INFORMATION

It is not possible for you to determine the exact score that you will receive on the TOEFL® iBT. There are three reasons why this is true. First, the testing conditions on the day of your official TOEFL will affect your score. If you are in an uncomfortable room, if there are noisy distractions, if you are upset because you arrived in a rush, or if you are very nervous, then these factors can affect your score. The administration of a model test is more controlled. You will probably not be as stressed when you take one of the tests in this book. Second, the model tests in the book are designed to help you practice the most frequently tested item types on the official TOEFL® iBT. Because they are constructed to teach as well as to test, there is more repetition in TOEFL model tests than there is on official TOEFL® iBT tests. Tests that are not constructed for exactly the same purposes are not exactly comparable. Third, the TOEFL scores received by the same student will vary from one official TOEFL examination to another official TOEFL examination by as many as twenty points, even when the examinations are taken on the same day. In testing and assessment, this is called a standard error of measurement. Therefore, a TOEFL score cannot be predicted precisely, even when two official tests are used. But, of course, you would like to know how close you are to your goal. To do that, you can use the following procedure to estimate your TOEFL® iBT score. An estimate is an approximation.

PROCEDURE FOR SCORING

The official TOEFL® iBT tests have either a longer Reading section or a longer Listening section. The extra part on each test contains experimental questions that will not be graded as part of your score. You will need to do your best on all of the questions because you will not know which questions are experimental. The model tests in this book have either a longer Reading section or a longer Listening section. Use the procedure below with the charts on the following pages to determine your score estimate for each TOEFL® iBT model test.

Test with a short Reading section and a long Listening section

1. Count the total number of correct answers for the Reading section. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Reading section.

2. Count the total number of correct answers for the Listening section. Multiply the number by .66 and round to the nearest whole number. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Listening section.
3. Rate each of the six questions for the Speaking section on a holistic scale 0—4, add the six scores and divide by 6. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Speaking section.
4. Rate each essay for the Writing section on a holistic scale 0—5, add the two scores and divide by 2. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart.
5. Add the scaled scores for all four sections. This is your TOEFL estimate.

Test with a long Reading section and a short Listening section

1. Count the total number of correct answers for the Reading section. Multiply the number by .75 and round to the nearest whole number. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Reading section.
2. Count the total number of correct answers for the Listening section. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Listening section.
3. Rate each of the six questions for the Speaking section on a holistic scale 0—4, add the six scores and divide by 6. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart. This is your section score for the Speaking section.
4. Rate each essay for the Writing section on a holistic scale 0—5, add the two scores and divide by 2. This is your raw score. Now find the scaled score that corresponds to the raw score on the reference chart.
5. Add the scaled scores for all four sections. This is your TOEFL estimate.

Note: The scoring of the tests on the CD-ROM is more exact because the alogrithm accounts for questions that are worth more than 1 point. Nevertheless, your estimates using this procedure will give you a good idea of your progress.

REFERENCE CHARTS

Reading

Raw Score	*Scaled Score*
39	30
38	29
37	29
36	28
35	27
34	26
33	25
32	24
31	23
30	22
29	21
28	20
27	19
26	18
25	17
24	16
23	15
22	14
21	13
20	12
19	11
18	9
17	8
16	7
15	6
14	5
13	4
12	3
11	2
10	1
9	0
8	0
7	0
6	0
5	0
4	0
3	0
2	0
1	0
0	0

Listening

Raw Score	*Scaled Score*
34	30
33	29
32	29
31	28
30	27
29	26
28	25
27	23
26	22
25	21
24	19
23	18
22	17
21	15
20	14
19	13
18	11
17	10
16	9
15	8
14	7
13	6
12	5
11	5
10	4
9	3
8	3
7	2
6	2
5	1
4	0
3	0
2	0
1	0
0	0

Speaking

Raw Score	*Scaled Score*
4.0	30
3.5	27
3.0	23
2.5	19
2.0	15
1.5	11
1.0	8
0	0

Writing

Raw Score	*Scaled Score*
5.0	30
4.5	28
4.0	25
3.5	22
3.0	20
2.5	17
2.0	14
1.5	11
1.0	8
0	0

EXAMPLES FOR SCORING MODEL TESTS

Example of TOEFL® iBT Model Test with Long Reading Section

Reading Section	*Correct Answers*		*Raw Score*	*Scaled Score*
4 passages 52 questions	46 × .75	=	34.5 = 35	27

Listening Section	*Correct Answers*	*Raw Score*	*Scaled Score*
6 passages 34 questions	30	30	27

Speaking Section	*Holistic Rating*	*Scaled Score*
Speaking Question 1	4	
Speaking Question 2	4	
Speaking Question 3	3	
Speaking Question 4	3	
Speaking Question 5	4	
Speaking Question 6	3	
Average number of ratings	3.5	27

Writing Section	*Holistic Rating*	*Scaled Score*
Integrated essay	4	
Independent essay	5	
Average number of ratings	4.5	28

TOTAL **Add scaled scores for all sections**	109

Example of TOEFL® iBT Model Test with Long Listening Section

Reading Section	*Correct Answers*	*Raw Score*	*Scaled Score*
3 passages 39 questions	36	36	28

Listening Section	*Correct Answers*		*Raw Score*	*Scaled Score*
9 passages 51 questions	44 × .66	=	29.0 = 29	26

Speaking Section	*Holistic Rating*	*Scaled Score*
Speaking Question 1	4	
Speaking Question 2	4	
Speaking Question 3	3	
Speaking Question 4	3	
Speaking Question 5	4	
Speaking Question 6	3	
Average number of ratings	3.5	27

Writing Section	*Holistic Rating*	*Scaled Score*
Integrated essay	4	
Independent essay	5	
Average number of ratings	4.5	28

TOTAL **Add scaled scores for all sections**	109

SCORE COMPARISONS

Common European Framework (CEFR)	*Internet TOEFL (iBT)*	*Institutional TOEFL (ITP)*
C1	110-120	627–677
B2	87–109	543–626
B1	57–86	460–542

Note: *TOEFL* scores are also reported as they relate to the Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR), which is an internationally recognized measure of language proficiency. The equivalency chart above cites equivalencies determined by major research studies; however, they are only estimates of individual scores.

FEEDBACK

A new feature of the TOEFL score report is feedback. A general analysis of your strengths and weaknesses will be included with the numerical score. The computer program on the CD-ROM that supplements this book provides feedback along with an automatic score report at the end of each model test.

OPTIONS FOR PERSONAL EVALUATION

SPEAKING

➤ SpeechRater™

Your Speaking section score on the TOEFL® iBT is determined by human raters. SpeechRater™ is an automated prediction of the score that a human rater would probably assign to your responses. This computer rating includes some, but not all of the features that a human rater considers in evaluations—pronunciation, vocabulary, grammar, and fluency. Although the scoring will provide experience, the actual score may not be the same as your TOEFL score.

WRITING

➤ Criterion e-rater®

Your Writing section score on the TOEFL® iBT is a combination of evaluations that include both human and computer raters. The e-rater® in the Criterion® service is an automated prediction of the combined score that a human rater and a computer rater would probably assign to your responses. This computer rating includes some, but not all of the features that a human rater considers in evaluations—organization, style, grammar, vocabulary, complexity, and mechanics. The scoring will provide experience, and is more advanced than the SpeechRater™ however, the actual score may not be exactly the same as your TOEFL score.

For more information about these personal evaluation options, visit *www.ets.org/toefl*. Click on TOEFL Practice Online. Each test costs $45.95, which includes automated scoring for the Speaking and Writing sections.

7
RESOURCES

WEBSITES FOR TOEFL

These websites may include short commercials as well as fee-based media and services, but many free options are also included on the sites. Click on the free material to practice English and help you prepare for the TOEFL.

SHORT AUDIO OR VIDEO CLIPS

These are good resources for the Listening, Speaking, and Writing sections.

www.bbc.com
This site has video and written scripts. Click on *Earth* or *Nature* for content that is most helpful to you as you prepare for the TOEFL.

www.history.com
This site has a large number of short video clips and articles under a variety of academic topics. Click on these categories for TOEFL preparation: *History* or *Science and Technology*. TV programs on the site are not as helpful.

www.openculture.com
This site contains online courses that include lectures in various academic subjects. The lectures are presented by professors from some of the leading colleges and universities. Click on a subject to see a list of lecture topics. They are delivered as free YouTube audio or video files.

www.ted.com/talks
This site includes thought-provoking talks by experts in various fields of study. Browse the topics and find talks that are of interest to you. Subtitles are available in a limited number of languages.

www.video.nationalgeographic.com
This site is part of the National Geographic Society. Use the following short video categories: *Animals and Nature* (also listed as *Wildlife*), *Environment*, *Science and Space*, *Travel and Culture*. Full feature films are also found on this site, but they are not as useful for TOEFL preparation as the short clips.

Listening Section

Take notes while you listen. Then compare your notes with those of a friend.

Speaking Section

Using your notes, summarize the clip by telling your friend about it.

Writing Section

Referring to your notes, write a summary sentence about the topic.

READING PASSAGES

These are good resources for the Reading section.

www.encyclopedia.com
This site offers unlimited possibilities for short reading passages on academic topics from reliable research sources. To solve the problem of what to choose, click on one of the *Featured Topics*. After a trial period, you may be asked to pay a small fee to continue using the site, but you are not obligated.

en.wikipedia.org
This site is a free encyclopedia that is written in English and edited by the general public. Click on *Featured Articles* to search for interesting topics by academic category. There is no charge to read the articles in Wikipedia.

SPEAKING AND PRONUNCIATION

This is a good resource for the Speaking section.

www.cooldictionary.com
This site is a free talking dictionary sponsored by Webster dictionaries. First click on **Pronunciation Help** and then type in a word or phrase and click on **Generate Sound**. Although it may seem slow at times, the words or phrases are pronounced very well.

TOEFL® iBT RESOURCE CENTERS

Contact a local TOEFL iBT Resource Center for general information about the TOEFL. These centers cannot help you register for the test or provide you with your scores.

Canada
DesignedUX
Email: *dustin@designedux.com*
Phone: **1-647-436-6521**
Website: *www.designedux.com*

Egypt
AMIDEAST
38 Mohie El Din Abou El Ezz Street, Dokki-Giza, Egypt
Phone: **+20-2-19263**
Fax: **+20-2-795-2946**
Email: *egypt@amideast.org*

France
ETS Global B.V.
Email: *mcondette@etsglobal.org*
Phone: **+31 (0)20 880 4166**
Website: *www.etsglobal.org*

Germany
ETS Global B.V.
Email: *tkraninko@etsglobal.org*

India
Learning Links Foundation
1209 Padma Tower 1, 5 Rajendra Place, New Delhi, 110008 INDIA
Email: *toeflinfo@learninglinksindia.org*
Phone: **+91 9 7112 37111**
Website: *http://www.learninglinksindia.org*

Indonesia
International Test Center
Plaza Sentral lt. 17 Jalan Jendral Sudirman Kav. 47 Jakarta Pusat 12930
Phone: **+6282123237788** (TOEFL® iBT Hotline)
Phone: **+62215711943**
Fax: **+62215711944**
Website: *www.itc-indonesia.com*

Japan
CIEE
Cosmos Aoyama, 5-53-67 Jingumae, Shibuya-ku, Tokyo 150-8355, Japan
Email: *toefl@cieej.or.jp*
Phone: **(81 3) 5467 5477**
Website: *http://www.cieej.or.jp*

Mexico
IIE Mexico
Berlin 18 60 Piso Col. Juarez, Mexico City C.P. 06600
Email: *cmaldonado@iie.org*
Phone: **55925260**

Poland
ETS Global in Poland
ul. Barska 28/30, Block B, 2nd Floor, 02-315 Warszawa
Email: *jwrzesinska@etsglobal.org*
Phone: **+48 22 890 00 17 ext. 13**
Website: *www.etsglobal.org*

Saudi Arabia
AMIDEAST
Al Kindi Plaza #59 Diplomatic Quarters P.O. Box 352,
Riyadh 11411 Kingdom of Saudi Arabia
Phone: **01-483-8800**
Email: *saudiarabia@amideast.org*

Spain
ETS Global B.V.
Email: *jrrufo@etsglobal.org*

Taiwan
Chun Shin
2F, No.45, Sec2, Fu Xing S Rd, Taipei 106 Taiwan, ROC
Email: *service@toefl.com.tw*
Phone: **(88 6) 2 2701 7389**
Website: *www.toefl.com.tw*

Turkey
ETS Global B.V.
Email: *timre@etsglobal.org*

United Arab Emirates
AMIDEAST
CERT Technology Park Higher Colleges of Technology Muroor Road (4th Street)
PO Box 5464 Abu Dhabi, Abu Dhabi
Phone: **(971-2) 445-6720**
Fax: **(971-2) 443-1489**
Email: *uae.testing@amideast.org*

Vietnam
IIG VIETNAM JSC
Hanoi Head Office No. 75, Giang Van Minh Street Ba Dinh District–Hanoi City, Vietnam
Email: *info@iigvietnam.com*
Phone: **(84 4) 3773 2411**
Website: *www.toefl.com.vn*
Website: *www.iigvietnam.com*

IIG VIETNAM JSC
Danang Branch Office No. 268 Tran Phu Road Hai Chau District–Danang City, Vietnam
Email: *danang@iigvietnam.com*
Phone: **(84 511) 3565 888**
Website: *www.toefl.com.vn*
Website: *www.iigvietnam.com*

IIG VIETNAM JSC
No. 3, 3 Thang 2 Road Ward 11 District. 10–HCM City, Vietnam
Email: *saigon@iigvietnam.com*
Phone: **(84 8) 3929 2633/34**
Website: *www.toefl.com.vn*
Website: *www.iigvietnam.com*

GLOSSARY OF CAMPUS VOCABULARY

academic advisor n. a person who helps students make decisions about their academic programs

Example: Dr. Jones is the *academic advisor* for the engineering students.
Suggestion: You should see your *academic advisor* before you decide.
Surprise: Dr. Jones is your *academic advisor*?
Problem: I can't see my *academic advisor* until Friday.

ace v. to receive a grade of A

Example: I *aced* that exam.
Suggestion: Find someone who *aced* the course to help you.
Surprise: Kathy *aced* her computer science class?
Problem: If I don't *ace* the final, I'll get a B in the class.

admissions office n. the administrative office where students apply for admission to a college or university

Example: I have an appointment at the *admissions office* to review my application.
Suggestion: Why don't you go over to the *admissions office*?
Confirmation: Did you say you couldn't find the *admissions office*?
Problem: I need to get to the *admissions office* before five o'clock.

all-nighter n. a study session that lasts all night

Example: We had to pull an *all-nighter* to get ready for the final exam.
Suggestion: If I were you, I wouldn't pull another *all-nighter*.
Surprise: So your roommate *did* pull another *all-nighter*.
Problem: I have to pull an *all-nighter* in order to be ready for the final exam.

article n. a publication about an academic subject

Example: We read six *articles* in addition to the reading in the textbook.
Suggestion: You had better read the *articles* that were assigned.
Surprise: You read the *articles* already?
Problem: I need to read the *articles* again.

assignment n. work that must be done as part of the requirements for a class

Example: The *assignment* was to read two chapters in the textbook.
Suggestion: You had better read the *assignment* before class.
Surprise: So you *do* read the *assignments* after all.
Problem: I can't finish the *assignment* before class.

assistant professor n. a college or university teacher who ranks above a lecturer and below an associate professor

Example: Dr. Green is an *assistant professor*.
Suggestion: Why don't you find out whether he is a lecturer or an *assistant professor*?
Confirmation: Dr. Green is an *assistant professor*, right?
Problem: I need to find out whether Dr. Green is an *assistant professor*.

assistantship n. an opportunity for a graduate student to teach or do research in exchange for a stipend

Example: Terry got an *assistantship* from State University.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would apply for an *assistantship*.
Surprise: So you *did* get an *assistantship* from State University.
Problem: The *assistantship* doesn't pay as much as I thought it would.

associate professor n. a college or university teacher who ranks above an assistant professor and below a professor

Example: Dr. Peterson is an *associate professor* now, but she will be promoted to a full professor at the end of the year.
Suggestion: You could ask the secretary if Dr. Peterson is an *associate professor*.
Confirmation: Dr. Peterson isn't an *associate professor*, is she?
Problem: If Dr. Peterson is an *associate professor*, I used the wrong title in my letter to her.

audit v. to attend a course without credit

Example: It usually costs as much to *audit* a course as to take it for credit.
Suggestion: You could *audit* the course if you don't need the credit.
Surprise: You mean you are *auditing* the course?
Problem: If I *audit* the course, I won't get credit for it.

bear n. a difficult class

Example: That computer science course was a *bear*.
Suggestion: I heard that Dr. Young's class is a real *bear*, so I would advise against it this semester.
Surprise: Your roommate thought this class was a *bear*?
Problem: Two of the classes I am in are real *bears*.

be (get) behind v. to be late; to have a lot of work to do

Example: I *am behind* in my physics class.
Suggestion: You *are behind* in your psychology class so you should study.
Surprise: Bill *is behind*?
Problem: I can't go to the party because I *am behind* in my classes.

bike n. an abbreviation of the word bicycle

Example: Many students ride their *bikes* on campus.
Suggestion: You could park your *bike* outside the student union building.
Confirmation: Did you say your *bike* was locked?
Problem: I can't ride my *bike* to the pizza parlor because there isn't any parking for it.

bike rack n. the metal supports where bicycles are parked
Example: That *bike rack* is full, but there is another one by the library.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would use the *bike rack* closest to the door.
Surprise: The *bike rack* was moved from in front of the library?
Problem: The *bike racks* at my dormitory will not hold all of the students' bikes.

blackboard n. the (black) writing surface in the front of the classroom
Example: Dr. Mitchell always writes the important words on the *blackboard*.
Suggestion: You had better copy everything the instructor writes on the *blackboard*.
Confirmation: Did you say you copied all of the material that was on the *blackboard*?
Problem: I can't see what is written on the *blackboard*.

book n. a written work
Example: The *books* for this class cost eighty dollars.
Suggestion: You shouldn't wait too long to buy your *books*.
Surprise: You didn't buy all of your *books*?
Problem: I can't buy all of my *books* with only fifty dollars.

book bag n. a bag in which to carry books and school supplies
Example: This *book bag* is very heavy.
Suggestion: Why don't you buy a sturdy *book bag* so it will last longer?
Surprise: Your brand new *book bag* fell apart?
Problem: I can't carry all of my books at one time because my *book bag* is too small.

bookstore n. the store on campus where students buy their textbooks
Example: The *bookstore* opens at seven in the morning.
Suggestion: You should be at the *bookstore* before it opens so that you can get a used book.
Surprise: You mean that you were at the *bookstore* early and there were still no used books?
Problem: The *bookstore* is too far from my apartment for me to walk.

break n. a pause in work or study
Example: Let's take a *break* after we finish our homework.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would take a *break* before I began a new project.
Surprise: You mean you're taking a *break* right now?
Problem: I can't take a *break* until I complete this section of the problem.

bring up v. to improve
Example: If Jack doesn't *bring up* his grades, he won't get into graduate school.
Suggestion: If you want to *bring up* your grades, you will have to study more.
Surprise: You *brought up* your grades without studying?
Problem: If I don't study more, I won't be able to *bring up* my grades.

cafeteria n. a restaurant where students can select food from several choices and carry their meals on trays to their tables

Example: Let's order a pizza instead of going to the *cafeteria*.
Suggestion: Why don't we meet in the *cafeteria* before going to see our advisor?
Confirmation: You like the food in the *cafeteria*, right?
Problem: I can't meet you in the *cafeteria* because I have to speak with my professor after class.

call on v. to acknowledge in class; to invite to speak

Example: The professor *calls on* students who sit in the front more often than those who sit in back.
Suggestion: If you want the professor to *call on* you frequently, then sit in the front of the room.
Surprise: You sat in the front of the room and weren't *called on*?
Problem: I didn't know the answer when the professor *called on* me.

call the roll v. to read the names on a class roster in order to take attendance

Example: Some professors don't *call the roll*, but Dr. Peterson always does.
Suggestion: You should always find out whether or not the professor *calls the roll*.
Confirmation: You weren't there when Dr. Peterson *called the roll*, were you?
Problem: I need to get to class earlier so that I will be there when Dr. Peterson *calls the roll*.

campus n. the buildings and grounds of a college or university

Example: State University has a beautiful *campus*.
Suggestion: You should see the *campus* before you decide to apply to school here.
Surprise: You mean you walked the entire *campus* by yourself?
Problem: I can't go with you to see the *campus* if you go this afternoon.

campus security n. the police on campus

Example: In an emergency, call *campus security*.
Suggestion: You had better call *campus security* to report that your bicycle is missing.
Confirmation: The *campus security* is understaffed, isn't it?
Problem: Carol had to call *campus security* to help her get her car started.

carrel n. a private study space in the stacks of the library

Example: There are never enough *carrels* for all of the graduate students.
Suggestion: You should go to the library early in the evening if you want a *carrel*.
Surprise: You mean the *carrels* are free?
Problem: There aren't enough *carrels* in the library.

chapter n. a division in a book

Example: The professor assigned three *chapters* in the textbook.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would set aside several hours to read all of the *chapters* assigned today.
Surprise: So you *did* allow enough time to finish the *chapters*.
Problem: I have to go to the lab, and I am in the middle of a *chapter*.

cheat v. to act dishonestly
Example: Students who *cheat* may be expelled from the university.
Suggestion: You should not *cheat* because the penalty is serious.
Confirmation: Gary was expelled because he *cheated*, right?
Problem: I know that some of my friends *cheated*, but I don't know what to do about it.

cheating n. a dishonest act
Example: Sharing answers on an exam is *cheating*.
Suggestion: You could sit alone during the exam so that the professor knows you are not *cheating*.
Surprise: You consider copying a few sentences from a book *cheating*?
Problem: Should I report it to the professor if I see someone *cheating*?

check out v. to borrow
Example: You must have a library card to *check out* books.
Suggestion: If you want to *check out* books for your research paper, you had better go to the library soon.
Surprise: So you *didn't* go to the library to *check out* the books you needed.
Problem: I need a new library card to be able to *check out* books.

class n. the meeting place and the content of a course
Example: We have three *classes* together this term.
Suggestion: You could arrange your schedule so that you have three *classes* on the same day.
Surprise: So you wanted your *classes* to be on Friday?
Problem: I have to work on Tuesdays and Thursdays, so I can't have *classes* on those days.

class discussion n. an exchange of ideas during a class
Example: Dr. Green often has *class discussions* instead of lectures.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would prepare for a *class discussion* in tomorrow's class.
Confirmation: You prepared for the *class discussion*, didn't you?
Problem: I am not ready for the *class discussion* today.

closed out adj. to be denied access to a class
Example: Register early so that you aren't *closed out* of the classes you want.
Suggestion: Why don't you plan to register tomorrow before you are *closed out* of the classes you need to graduate?
Surprise: Sue registered early to avoid being *closed out* of her classes?
Problem: I was *closed out* of the English class I needed.

coed adj. an abbreviation for *coeducational*, which is a system of education in which both men and women attend the same school or classes
Example: Most of the schools in the United States are *coed*.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would live in a *coed* dormitory.
Confirmation: Did you say you don't attend a *coed* school?
Problem: My parents don't want me to live in a *coed* dormitory.

college n. a school that grants a bachelor's degree; an undergraduate division or a school within a university

Example: Steve applied to the *college* of business at State University.
Suggestion: You need to apply to the *college* of nursing early.
Surprise: So you *did* apply to several *colleges* after all.
Problem: The *college* of education requires three letters of recommendation.

commencement n. a graduation ceremony

Example: Larger colleges and universities usually have *commencement* more than once each year.
Suggestion: You had better be early for *commencement* because it starts on time.
Surprise: So you *did* attend last year's *commencement* exercises.
Problem: I don't have a cap and gown for *commencement*.

committee n. a group of professors who guide a graduate student's program and approve the thesis or dissertation

Example: Bill's *committee* signed his dissertation today.
Suggestion: You should be prepared before you meet with your *committee*.
Surprise: Your *committee* didn't approve your dissertation topic?
Problem: I need to do more research before I meet with my *committee*.

computer n. a programmable electronic machine that calculates, processes, and stores information

Example: At some universities, students must bring their own *computers* with them to school.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would purchase a *computer* before going to college.
Surprise: You mean you don't know how to use a *computer*?
Problem: I need to have my *computer* repaired.

computer disk n. a magnetic disk on which computer data is stored

Example: It's a good idea to save a copy of your papers and projects on a *computer disk*.
Suggestion: You should always have extra *computer disks*.
Confirmation: You saved your work on a *computer disk*, didn't you?
Problem: I can't print my paper until I find my *computer disk*.

counselor n. a person who gives advice, often of a personal nature

Example: See your advisor for academic advice and a *counselor* for personal advice.
Suggestion: Why don't you speak with your *counselor* about the problems with your roommate?
Confirmation: You have to make an appointment before seeing your *counselor*, don't you?
Problem: I can't see my *counselor* until tomorrow.

course n. a class

Example: How many *courses* are you taking this semester?
Suggestion: If I were you, I would take fewer *courses* this semester.
Surprise: You registered for your *courses* already?
Problem: I need to take *courses* that apply to my major.

course request (form) n. a form used to register for a class
Example: A student's academic advisor usually signs a *course request* form.
Suggestion: You should pick up a *course request* form from the registrar's office today.
Surprise: So you *did* pick up your *course request* form.
Problem: I need to speak with my advisor about my *course request* form.

cram v. to study at the last minute
Example: Nancy always *crams* for the quizzes in her math class.
Suggestion: Why don't you study each night instead of *cramming* the night before the test?
Surprise: You mean you *crammed* for the biology final?
Problem: I need to be more organized so I won't have to *cram* for my tests.

credit n. a unit of study
Example: I have thirty *credits* toward my master's degree.
Suggestion: Why don't you check your *credits* with your advisor?
Confirmation: You have enough *credits* to graduate, right?
Problem: I have to take thirty more *credits* in my major area.

credit hour n. the number that represents one hour of class per week for one term
Example: This course is three *credit hours*.
Suggestion: You could take eighteen *credit hours* this semester.
Surprise: So you *did* complete fifteen *credit hours* last summer.
Problem: I can't take enough *credit hours* to graduate this semester.

curve n. a grading system that relies on the normal curve of distribution, resulting in a few A grades, the majority C grades, and a few failing grades
Example: Grading on the *curve* encourages competition.
Suggestion: Forget about the *curve*, and just do your best.
Surprise: Dr. Graham grades his tests on the *curve*?
Problem: Since the exams were graded on the *curve*, a 95 was a B.

cut class v. to be absent from class, usually without a good excuse
Example: My roommate *cut class* on Monday because he didn't come back to campus until late Sunday night.
Suggestion: You had better not *cut class* on Thursday.
Surprise: You *cut class* to sleep in?
Problem: I can't *cut class* because I have too many absences.

dean n. an administrator who ranks above a department chair and below a vice president
Example: The *dean* called a meeting with the department chair.
Suggestion: You should meet with the *dean* about your problem.
Surprise: So you *did* speak with the *dean*.
Problem: Vicki has to prepare a presentation for the *dean*.

dean's list n. the honor roll at a college or university
Example: You must maintain a 3.5 grade point average to be on the *dean's list*.
Suggestion: You had better improve your grades if your want to make the *dean's list*.
Confirmation: Jack made the *dean's list* last semester, didn't he?
Problem: I can't make the *dean's list* this semester.

declare v. to make an official decision about a major field of study
Example: Most students *declare* their major in their third year at the university.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would *declare* my major before I take any more classes.
Confirmation: You *declared* your major last year, right?
Problem: Joe needs to *declare* his major soon.

degree n. an academic title awarded to a student who completes a course of study
Example: The three most common *degrees* are a bachelor's, a master's, and a doctorate.
Suggestion: You should get your *degree* before you get married.
Surprise: So you *did* graduate with a *degree* in music theory.
Problem: I can't get a good job without a *degree*.

department n. a division of a college or university organized by subject
Example: The English *department* offers classes for international students.
Suggestion: Why don't you check the *department's* phone number again?
Surprise: So you *did* work in the English *department* office.
Problem: I can't find the list of the *department* offices.

department chair n. a university administrator for a division of a college or university
Example: The professors in a department report to the *department chair*.
Suggestion: You could speak to the *department chair* about auditing the class.
Confirmation: Dr. Carlson is the new *department chair*, isn't he?
Problem: I can't meet with the *department chair* until after registration.

diploma n. the certificate of completion for a degree
Example: Students receive their *diplomas* at the graduation ceremony.
Suggestion: You should get your *diploma* framed.
Surprise: So you *did* show your family your *diploma*.
Problem: I need to mail this form and pay my fees before I can get my *diploma*.

dissertation n. a thesis that is written in partial fulfillment of the requirements for a doctorate.
Example: Dr. Green wrote his *dissertation* on global warming.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would consider several ideas before selecting a *dissertation* topic.
Surprise: You mean you already started your *dissertation*?
Problem: I can't find enough research on my *dissertation* topic.

distance learning n. courses organized so that students can complete the requirements by computer, or other media, often without going to campus
Example: There are several *distance learning* opportunities for working adults.
Suggestion: Why don't you sign up for that course through *distance learning*?
Surprise: So you *did* take that *distance learning* class.
Problem: I can only take three *distance learning* classes.

division n. a group of departments in a college or university
Example: The *division* of modern languages includes both the Spanish department and the French department, as well as the German department.
Suggestion: Why don't you go to the *division* of math and sciences to find more information about biology instructors?
Surprise: You mean you've already spoken to Dr. Conrad about the entrance exam for the *division* of social sciences?
Problem: I need to find out what opportunities the *division* of modern languages offers for foreign study.

doctorate n. the degree after a master's degree awarded to an academic doctor
Example: Karen will receive her *doctorate* in the spring.
Suggestion: You should meet with your academic advisor to discuss a *doctorate*.
Surprise: So you *did* receive your *doctorate* from State University.
Problem: I must complete my dissertation before I get my *doctorate*.

dorm n. an abbreviation for dormitory
Example: Living on campus in a *dorm* is often cheaper than living off campus.
Suggestion: You should live in a *dorm* for at least one year.
Confirmation: Did you say you have lived in a *dorm* for four years?
Problem: Sue needs to apply now for a room in the *dorm*.

draft n. a preliminary copy of a paper or other written document
Example: A good student does not turn in a first *draft* of a paper.
Suggestion: You should edit each *draft* on the computer.
Surprise: You mean you wrote the first *draft* in one night?
Problem: I can't turn in my essay because I have only the first *draft* written.

drop v. to withdraw from a course
Example: If you *drop* a course early in the term, you may get a partial refund.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would *drop* the class immediately.
Surprise: You mean you *dropped* the class because it was too hard?
Problem: Bill needs to *drop* one of his classes because he is taking too many credit hours.

drop out v. to withdraw from a college or university
Example: Mark *dropped out* because he needed to work full-time.
Suggestion: You could *drop out* and then reenter next semester.
Confirmation: Did you say Diane *dropped out* after her junior year?
Problem: I have to *drop out* because I don't have enough money for tuition.

due adj. expected on a certain date
Example: The assignment is *due* on Friday.
Suggestion: Why don't you turn in the paper before it's *due*?
Confirmation: The project is *due* this week, isn't it?
Problem: I can't complete the assignment by the *due* date.

elective (course) n., adj. an optional academic course
Example: In the junior year, most students are taking elective *courses*, as well as requirements.
Suggestion: Take some *elective* classes in your areas of outside interest.
Confirmation: You are going to take an *elective* in art appreciation, right?
Problem: I can't take any *elective* classes this semester.

enroll v. to register for a course or a university program
Example: Only a few students *enroll* in seminars.
Suggestion: Why don't you *enroll* early before the class fills up?
Surprise: You mean you didn't *enroll* in the computer class?
Problem: I can't *enroll* in that class without taking the introductory class first.

essay n. a short composition on a single subject, usually presenting the personal opinion of the author
Example: An *essay* is often five paragraphs long.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would make an outline before writing the *essay*.
Surprise: So you *did* get an A on the *essay*.
Problem: I have to write an *essay* for my class on Friday.

exam n. an abbreviation for examination
Example: The professor scheduled several quizzes and one *exam*.
Suggestion: You had better prepare for the *exam* in chemistry.
Surprise: You studied for the physics *exam*?
Problem: I have to meet with my study group before the *exam*.

excused absence n. absence with the permission of the professor
Example: Dr. Mitchell allows every student one *excused absence* each semester.
Suggestion: You could take an *excused absence* in your Friday class so we could leave early.
Confirmation: You have two *excused absences* in biology, don't you?
Problem: I already have one *excused absence* in Dr. Mitchell's class.

expel v. to dismiss from school
Example: Gary was *expelled* because he cheated on an exam.
Suggestion: You should avoid getting *expelled* at all costs.
Surprise: Gary was *expelled* from the university?
Problem: I would be *expelled* if I helped you.

extension n. additional time
Example: We asked Dr. Peterson for an *extension* in order to complete the group project.
Suggestion: You should organize your time so that you will not have to ask for an *extension*.
Surprise: You mean your request for an *extension* was denied?
Problem: I need to meet with my professor to discuss an *extension*.

extra credit n. additional points for doing an optional assignment
Example: *Extra credit* can bring up your grade by one letter.
Suggestion: You could talk to the professor about doing something for *extra credit*.
Confirmation: You signed up for *extra credit*, right?
Problem: Professor Stephens doesn't offer any options for *extra credit.*

faculty member n. a teacher in a college or university
Example: Dr. Baker is a *faculty member* at State University.
Suggestion: Why don't you ask a *faculty member* for directions?
Confirmation: You didn't meet any of the new *faculty members* when you visited the campus, did you?
Problem: I don't know the other *faculty members* in my department very well.

fail v. to receive an unacceptable grade
Example: If Mary gets another low grade, she will *fail* the course.
Suggestion: You had better complete the project or you will *fail* the class.
Surprise: You mean you *failed* the exam?
Problem: I have to study tonight, or I will *fail* the test tomorrow.

fee n. a charge for services
Example: You must pay a *fee* to park your car on campus.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would pay my *fees* before the late penalty applies.
Confirmation: Did you say there are *fees* for using the recreational facilities?
Problem: I need to go to the business office to pay my *fees*.

field trip n. a trip for observation and education
Example: The geology class usually takes several *field trips* to the museum.
Suggestion: You should wear sturdy shoes on the *field trip*.
Surprise: You didn't sign up for the *field trip* to the art gallery?
Problem: I have to go on a *field trip* Saturday morning, but my boss won't let me off work.

fill-in-the-blank(s) (test) n., adj. an objective test in which the student completes sentences by writing in the missing words
Example: Dr. Stephens always gives *fill-in-the-blank* tests during the semester, but he gives short-essay finals.
Suggestion: You had better study the definitions for the *fill-in-the-blank* portion of the test.
Confirmation: The test was all *fill-in-the-blanks*, right?
Problem: Kathy needs to do better on the *fill-in-the-blank* questions.

final (exam) n. the last examination of an academic course
Example: The *final* will include questions from the notes, as well as from the textbook.
Suggestion: You should use both your notes and the text to review for the *final exam*.
Surprise: You finished your *final* in an hour?
Problem: I have to prepare for two *final exams* on the same day.

fine n. a sum of money paid for violation of a rule
Example: The *fine* for keeping a library book after the due date is one dollar per day.
Suggestion: You should move your car to avoid a *fine*.
Confirmation: Did you say you were charged a *fine* for parking there?
Problem: I need to pay my *fines* before the end of the semester.

flunk v. to fail
Example: I would have *flunked* the course without my study group.
Suggestion: You could make an appointment with the professor before he *flunks* you.
Confirmation: Did you say you might have flunked the test?
Problem: We are going to *flunk* this quiz if we don't study for it.

flunk out v. to be dismissed from school for failure
Example: Tim *flunked out* of State University before he enrolled here.
Suggestion: You had better start working harder or you are going to *flunk out*.
Confirmation: Your roommate *flunked out*, right?
Problem: If I don't get good grades on my finals, I am going to *flunk out*.

fraternity n. a social organization for male college students
Example: Bill is going to join a *fraternity*.
Suggestion: You could join a professional *fraternity*.
Surprise: You were invited to join three *fraternities*?
Problem: I can't afford to join a *fraternity*.

fraternity row n. a street where many fraternity houses are located
Example: I live on Fifth Street, near *fraternity row*.
Suggestion: Why don't you walk down *fraternity row* to look at the homecoming decorations?
Surprise: Ken isn't going to live on *fraternity row* next year?
Problem: I can't find a place to park on *fraternity row*.

freshman n. a first-year college student
Example: Most of the students in Manchester Hall are *freshmen*.
Suggestion: You should establish good study habits while you are a *freshman*.
Surprise: You didn't live in a dorm when you were a *freshman*?
Problem: The *freshmen* have to take requirements.

full-time adj. the number of hours for standard tuition at a college or university, usually 9 hours for a graduate student and 12–15 hours for an undergraduate student
Example: Tom is a *full-time* student this semester.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would register as a *full-time* student this semester.
Confirmation: The scholarship is only available to *full-time* students, right?
Problem: I need to register as a *full-time* student to be eligible for a loan.

get (be) behind v. to be late or off schedule
Example: I am *getting behind* in my math class.
Suggestion: You had better study this weekend or you will *get behind* in English.
Confirmation: Ken *got behind* in his classes, didn't he?
Problem: I *got behind* in French, and now my class is really confusing.

get caught up v. to bring up-to-date
Example: We are going to *get caught up* in our classes this weekend.
Suggestion: Why don't you *get caught up* in English before you start your next project?
Confirmation: Sue *got caught up* over vacation, didn't she?
Problem: I need to *get caught up* before final exams.

G.P.A. n. abbreviation for grade point average
Example: Kathy's *G.P.A.* as an undergraduate was 4.0, but she isn't doing as well in graduate school.
Suggestion: You should be concerned about your *G.P.A.*
Surprise: Laura's *G.P.A.* dropped last semester?
Problem: I can't raise my *G.P.A.* if I take calculus.

grade point average n. a scale, usually 0–4, on which grades are calculated
Example: If students' *grade point averages* fall below 2.0, they will be placed on probation.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would speak to my academic advisor about your *grade point average.*
Surprise: You mean an applicant's *grade point average* is more important than work experience?
Problem: I need to improve my *grade point average.*

grades n. a standard number or letter indicating a student's level of performance
Example: We will get our *grades* in the mail a week after the semester is over.
Suggestion: You should check the *grades* that the professor posted.
Surprise: Our *grades* are already in the mail?
Problem: I have to have better *grades* to get into the college of business.

graduate school n. a division of a college or university to serve students who are pursuing masters or doctoral degrees
Example: I would like to apply to *graduate school* after I complete my bachelor's degree.
Suggestion: Why don't you work a year before applying to *graduate school*?
Surprise: So Tracy *did* get accepted to *graduate school.*
Problem: I have to get letters of recommendation to apply to *graduate school.*

graduate student n. a student who is pursuing a master's or doctorate
Example: *Graduate students* must maintain higher grades than undergraduate students.
Suggestion: You had better work with the other *graduate students* on this project.
Confirmation: Only *graduate students* are allowed to take this class, right?
Problem: All of the students in the class are *graduate students* except me.

grant n. funds for research or study
Example: Carol received a *grant* for her research in psychology.
Suggestion: You should apply for a summer *grant*.
Surprise: You mean there are *grants* available for undergraduate students?
Problem: Bill needs to write a proposal before Tuesday if he wants to be considered for a *grant*.

group project n. an assignment to be completed by three or more students
Example: I prefer to work on *group projects* instead of on assignments by myself.
Suggestion: You should select your *group project* before midterm.
Surprise: You've chosen your *group project* already?
Problem: The *group project* will take more time than I thought.

hand back v. return an assignment
Example: Dr. Graham always *hands back* our assignments the next day.
Suggestion: You had better be there when Dr. Mitchell *hands back* your exam.
Confirmation: Dr. Mitchell hasn't *handed back* your exam yet, has he?
Problem: I can't find the exam that he *handed back.*

handout n. prepared notes that a teacher provides to the class
Example: Dr. Stephen's *handouts* are always very helpful.
Suggestion: You had better save all of your *handouts*.
Surprise: You lost the *handouts*?
Problem: I need to organize all of my *handouts* before I start to study for the final.

head resident n. the advisor for a dormitory
Example: The *head resident* can help you resolve problems with your roommate.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would introduce myself to the *head resident.*
Surprise: So you *did* speak with the *head resident.*
Problem: I can't find the *head resident.*

health center n. the clinic on campus to provide basic health care for students
Example: We are going to the *health center* for a free eye examination.
Suggestion: You had better go to the *health center* for that cough.
Surprise: You mean the *health center* is closed?
Problem: I am too sick to go to the *health center.*

health insurance n. protection for students who may need medical attention
Example: *Health insurance* is required on most campuses.
Suggestion: You need to purchase *health insurance* through the university.
Confirmation: You don't have *health insurance*, do you?
Problem: I have to earn some more money to pay for my *health insurance.*

hit the books v. to study very hard
Example: I have to *hit the books* tonight and tomorrow to get ready for the midterm.
Suggestion: You had better *hit the books* for Dr. Sheridan's exam.
Surprise: You mean you didn't *hit the books* for the psychology exam?
Problem: My friends have to *hit the books* this weekend so they can't go to the party with me.

homework n. schoolwork done at home
Example: If I do my *homework* every day, I understand the lectures better.
Suggestion: Why don't you do your *homework* before dinner?
Confirmation: There wasn't any *homework* last night, was there?
Problem: I have to do my *homework* in order to be prepared for the class discussion.

honors adj. special recognition for exceptional students
Example: Jane is an *honors* graduate.
Suggestion: You could live in an *honors* dorm.
Surprise: So you *did* enroll in the *honors* program.
Problem: The courses in the *honors* program are much harder than the regular courses.

housing office n. an administrative office for residence halls and off-campus rentals
Example: Let's go over to the *housing office* to ask about apartments near the campus.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would check at the *housing office* for a dorm application.
Confirmation: The *housing office* closed early, right?
Problem: I need to speak with someone in the *housing office* about my application.

incomplete n. a grade in a course that allows students to complete requirements the following term
Example: I asked Dr. Young for an *incomplete* in his class.
Suggestion: You should request an *incomplete* at least two weeks before the end of the term.
Confirmation: Bill took an *incomplete* in sociology last semester, didn't he?
Problem: I can't ask Dr. Young for another *incomplete*.

instructor n. a college or university teacher who ranks below an assistant professor
Example: My *instructor* for math is from Hawaii.
Suggestion: You should check with the *instructor* to see if there is room in the class.
Confirmation: Did you say the *instructor* was absent?
Problem: I can't seem to get along with my *instructor*.

interactive television (course) n. a distance learning course that is taught on two-way television connections
Example: The instructor for our *interactive television course* is on a campus about fifty miles away.
Suggestion: You could take that course on the *interactive television*.
Surprise: Dr. Stephen's course is offered on *interactive television*?
Problem: *Interactive television courses* make me uncomfortable.

interlibrary loan n. a system that allows students on one campus to borrow books from other libraries on other campuses
Example: It takes at least a week to receive a book by *interlibrary loan*.
Suggestion: You could see if the book is available through *interlibrary loan*.
Confirmation: Your *interlibrary loan* books arrived in time, right?
Problem: I can't seem to find the desk for *interlibrary loans*.

internship n. a training opportunity for an advanced student or a recent graduate
Example: Bill got an *internship* at the University Hospital.
Suggestion: You should apply for an *internship* very early.
Surprise: You are getting paid for your *internship*?
Problem: I need to serve a two-year *internship*.

junior n., adj. a third-year college student
Example: When I am a *junior*, I plan to study abroad for a semester.
Suggestion: You could concentrate on your major your *junior* year.
Surprise: A *junior* can study abroad?
Problem: I need to carry eighteen credit hours both semesters of my *junior* year.

keep grades up v. to maintain a good grade point average
Example: If Joanne doesn't *keep her grades up*, she will lose her scholarship.
Suggestion: You need to study harder if you want to *keep your grades up*.
Surprise: Kathy didn't *keep her grades up* this semester?
Problem: I can't *keep my grades up* and work full-time.

lab n., adj. abbreviation for laboratory
Example: The course includes a five-hour *lab*.
Suggestion: You had better allow sufficient time for your biology *lab*.
Confirmation: You missed the last *lab* session, right?
Problem: I need to find a partner for my psychology *lab*.

lab assistant n. a graduate student who helps in the lab
Example: Bill is Dr. Peterson's *lab assistant*.
Suggestion: You could ask the *lab assistant* for help.
Confirmation: You are the *lab assistant*, aren't you?
Problem: I need to speak with the *lab assistant* before class.

laboratory n. a classroom equipped for experiments and research
Example: The physics *laboratory* at State University is very old.
Suggestion: You could meet your biology study group in the *laboratory*.
Confirmation: The *laboratory* isn't closed Saturday, is it?
Problem: I have to get directions to the *laboratory*.

lab report n. a written description of the laboratory activities
Example: Our *lab reports* are due every Friday.
Suggestion: If I were you, I wouldn't wait to start my *lab report*.
Surprise: You mean the *lab reports* have to be typed?
Problem: I have to turn in my *lab report* tomorrow.

laptop n. a compact, portable computer that you can use on your lap
Example: Mary's *laptop* goes with her everywhere.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would buy a new *laptop*.
Surprise: Your laptop *crashed*?
Problem: I forgot to bring my *laptop* with me to class.

learning assistance center n. an area used for tutoring and special programs to help students with their classes
Example: I have to meet my tutor at the *learning assistance center* at four o'clock.
Suggestion: You should go to the *learning assistance center* for help in the morning.
Surprise: So Nancy *did* go to the *learning assistance center* for tutoring.
Problem: The tutors at the *learning assistance center* are all juniors and seniors, so I don't qualify.

lecture n. a presentation for a class, delivered by the professor
Example: The *lectures* are really interesting, but I don't enjoy the labs as much.
Suggestion: You should take more notes during Dr. Mitchell's *lectures*.
Confirmation: Did you say say the *lecture* is canceled for today?
Problem: I can't keep up with the *lectures*.

lecturer n. a college or university teacher, usually without rank
Example: Mr. Lewis is only a *lecturer*, but his classes are very good.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would speak with the *lecturer* about your questions.
Surprise: The *lecturer* isn't here?
Problem: I can't take notes because the *lecturer* speaks too fast.

library n. the building on campus where books and other research materials are kept
Example: Vicki has a job in the *library*.
Suggestion: Your study group could reserve a study room in the *library*.
Surprise: You mean the *library* is within walking distance?
Problem: I need to return my books to the *library*.

library card n. an identification card that permits the holder to borrow books and materials from the library
Example: Without a *library card*, you can't borrow books here.
Suggestion: You should get a *library card* right away.
Surprise: So you *did* bring your *library card* with you.
Problem: I can't use my *library card* because I owe a fine.

library fine n. a payment for returning books and materials after the due date
Example: You can't get your grade report unless you pay your *library fines.*
Suggestion: You should pay your *library fines* immediately.
Confirmation: You owe ten dollars in *library fines*, don't you?
Problem: Nancy needs to pay her *library fines* before she checks out any more books.

lost and found n. an area on campus where items are kept for their owners to reclaim
Example: Maybe someone picked up your book and took it to the *lost and found*.
Suggestion: Why don't you check at the *lost and found* for your backpack?
Surprise: You mean Sue's wallet wasn't at the *lost and found*?
Problem: Sue needs to fill out a report at the *lost and found.*

lower-division (course) adj. introductory-level courses for first- and second-year students
Example: Seniors don't usually take *lower-division* courses.
Suggestion: You should take *lower-division* classes your first year.
Surprise: You mean all of the *lower-division* classes are full?
Problem: I have to take a *lower-division* class before I can take the advanced course.

major n. a field of study chosen as an academic specialty
Example: My *major* is environmental studies.
Suggestion: You should declare your *major* by your junior year.
Confirmation: You have to declare a *major* to graduate, don't you?
Problem: I have to tell my advisor my *major* tomorrow.

makeup test n. a test taken after the date of the original administration
Example: Dr. Stephens usually allows her students to take a *makeup test* if there is a good reason for being absent.
Suggestion: You could speak with Dr. Stephens about taking a *makeup test*.
Surprise: So Dr. Peterson *did* let you take a *makeup test*.
Problem: Dana needs to take a *makeup test* before spring break.

married student housing n. apartments on or near campus for married students
Example: There is usually a waiting list to be assigned to *married student housing*.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would get an application for *married student housing* today.
Confirmation: Did you say there are no vacancies in *married student housing*?
Problem: We need to pick up an application for *married student housing*.

Mickey Mouse course n. a very easy course
Example: This is a *Mickey Mouse course*, but it is on my program of study.
Suggestion: Why don't you take one *Mickey Mouse course* this semester just for fun?
Surprise: You thought physics was a *Mickey Mouse course*?
Problem: I have to take this *Mickey Mouse course* to fulfill my physical education requirement.

midterm n. an exam that is given in the middle of the term
Example: I got an A on my *midterm* in accounting.
Suggestion: Why don't you study with your study group for the music theory *midterm*?
Surprise: You mean Sue failed her economics *midterm*?
Problem: I have three *midterms* in one day.

minor n. a secondary area of study
Example: With a major in international business, I decided to do my *minor* in English.
Suggestion: You should *minor* in economics since you're studying prelaw.
Confirmation: You've completed all of your *minor* classes, right?
Problem: I need one more class to complete my *minor*.

miss (class) v. to be absent
Example: My roommate is missing a lot of classes lately.
Suggestion: If I were you I wouldn't *miss* Dr. Mitchell's class today.
Surprise: So you *did miss* class last Friday.
Problem: I can't *miss* any more of Dr. Mitchell's classes, or my grade will be lowered by one letter.

multiple-choice test n. an objective test with questions that provide several possible answer choices
Example: We usually have *multiple-choice tests* in Dr. Graham's classes.
Suggestion: You had better study very carefully for Dr. Graham's *multiple-choice test*.
Confirmation: It was a *multiple-choice test*, wasn't it?
Problem: I don't usually do well on *multiple-choice tests*.

notebook n. a bound book with blank pages in it for notes
Example: I lost the *notebook* with my biology notes in it.
Suggestion: You should make sure that your *notebook* is well organized.
Surprise: You lost your *notebook*?
Problem: I need to organize my *notebook* this weekend.

notebook computer n. a computer the size of a notebook
Example: Joe has a *notebook computer* that he uses in class.
Suggestion: Why don't you use my *notebook computer* to see whether you like it?
Surprise: So you *did* purchase a *notebook computer*.
Problem: I can't possibly afford a *notebook computer* right now.

notes n. a brief record of a lecture to help students recall the important points
Example: We didn't take *notes* in class today because most of the lecture was from the book.
Suggestion: You should copy Tracy's *notes* before the next test.
Surprise: You mean you lent your *notes* to someone?
Problem: I need to recopy my *notes* this evening.

objective test n. a test with questions that have one possible answer, usually presented in a multiple-choice, matching, or true-false format
Example: The final exam will be an *objective test*, not an essay test.
Suggestion: You should probably prepare for an *objective test* in math.
Confirmation: The final exam was an *objective test*, right?
Problem: I have to study harder for *objective tests*.

off campus adj. not on university property
Example: There are some very nice apartments just *off campus* on State Street.
Suggestion: You should come to campus early unless you want to park *off campus*.
Surprise: You mean Carol doesn't want to live *off campus*?
Problem: I need to live *off campus* to save money.

office n. a place for university faculty and staff to meet with students and do their work
Example: Mr. Lewis has an *office* in Madison Hall.
Suggestion: Most of the advisors' *offices* are in Sycamore Hall.
Surprise: So you *did* find Mr. Lewis's *office* before he left for the day.
Problem: I have to go to the business *office* tomorrow to ask about my bill.

office hours n. a schedule when faculty are in their offices to meet with students
Example: *Office hours* are usually posted on the door of the professor's office.
Suggestion: You should write down the instructor's *office hours* in your notebook.
Confirmation: You don't know Dr. Miller's *office hours*, do you?
Problem: I can't find my copy of Dr. Miller's *office hours*.

online course n. a course taught on the Internet
Example: There is a separate list of *online courses* this semester.
Suggestion: Why don't you consider an *online course* in economics?
Confirmation: Joe took an *online course* last year, right?
Problem: I need a computer to take an *online course*.

on probation prep. phrase experiencing a trial period to improve grades before disciplinary action
Example: Kathy is *on probation*, so she will probably be studying this weekend.
Suggestion: You had better keep up your grades or you will end up *on probation*.
Surprise: Sue is *on probation* again?
Problem: I can't let my parents find out that I am *on probation*.

on reserve prep. phrase retained in a special place in the library, usually for use only in the library
Example: Dr. Young always puts a lot of books *on reserve* for his classes.
Suggestion: You could check to see if the book is *on reserve*.
Surprise: You mean the articles are *on reserve*?
Problem: I have to find out which books are *on reserve*.

open-book test n. a test during which students may consult their books and notes
Example: *Open-book tests* are often longer than other tests.
Suggestion: You should still prepare even though it is an *open-book test.*
Surprise: You mean you didn't know it was an *open-book test*?
Problem: I can't find my notes for the *open-book test*.

orientation n. a program for new students at a college or university during which they receive information about the school
Example: I missed the first day of *orientation*, so I didn't get a map.
Suggestion: You should sit near the front during *orientation*.
Surprise: So you *did* go to freshman *orientation*.
Problem: I have to go to *orientation* tomorrow evening.

override n. permission to enter a class for which the student does not qualify
Example: Dr. Stephens will usually give you an *override* if you need the class.
Suggestion: You should speak to the professor about getting an *override* for that class.
Confirmation: Did you say your request for an *override* was denied?
Problem: I need to get an *override* so that I can take that class.

paper n. a research report
Example: The *papers* for this class should be at least ten pages long.
Suggestion: You had better follow Dr. Carlyle's guidelines for this *paper*.
Surprise: Laura turned in her *paper* late?
Problem: I can't print my *paper* because I need an ink cartridge for my printer.

parking garage n. a structure for parking, usually requiring payment
Example: The *parking garages* are too far away from the classrooms.
Suggestion: You had better get a parking permit for the *parking garage*.
Surprise: You mean you don't know which *parking garage* you used?
Problem: I have to find a *parking garage* with a vacancy.

parking lot n. an area for parking
Example: This *parking lot* is for students only.
Suggestion: You should avoid leaving your car in the *parking lot* overnight.
Surprise: You mean your car was towed from the *parking lot*?
Problem: I have to leave early to get a spot in the *parking lot* beside the dorm.

parking permit n. permission to park in certain parking lots or garages
Example: Your *parking permit* expires at the end of the month.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would get a *parking permit* when you register.
Confirmation: My *parking permit* hasn't expired, has it?
Problem: I need to pay my fines before they will issue me another *parking permit*.

parking space n. a designated area for one car
Example: There is a car in my *parking space*.
Suggestion: You should not use a reserved *parking space*.
Surprise: So you *did* park in someone else's *parking space*.
Problem: I can't find a *parking space*.

parking ticket n. notice of a fine due for parking in a restricted area
Example: If you don't take care of your *parking tickets*, you won't be able to register for classes next semester.
Suggestion: You could avoid getting *parking tickets* by using the student parking lots.
Surprise: You mean Carol got a *parking ticket* because she didn't have a permit?
Problem: I have to save money to pay my *parking tickets*.

part-time adj. less than the full work day or school day
Example: Laura has a *part-time* job after school.
Suggestion: Why don't you get a *part-time* job to pay for your books?
Confirmation: You applied for a *part-time* job on campus, right?
Problem: I need to find a *part-time* job this summer.

pass back v. to return tests and assignments to the owner
Example: Dr. Young is going to *pass back* our quizzes today.
Suggestion: You should ask Dr. Young for an appointment after he *passes back* the tests.
Surprise: Dr. Young didn't *pass back* the papers?
Problem: I have to get my paper from Dr. Young because I wasn't there when he *passed them back*.

placement office n. the office where students receive assistance in locating employment
Example: Several companies are interviewing students at the *placement office* this week.
Suggestion: Why don't you check the interview listing in the *placement office* on Monday?
Confirmation: Joe got his job through the *placement office*, didn't he?
Problem: I need to schedule an interview in the *placement office.*

plagiarize v. to use someone else's written work without giving that person credit
plagiarizing n. the use of someone else's work without giving that person credit
Example: To avoid *plagiarizing*, always cite the source.
Suggestion: If you change this sentence, it will keep you from *plagiarizing*.
Surprise: You mean you know someone who *plagiarized*?
Problem: The professor thought that I had *plagiarized* a report.

pop quiz n. a quiz that is given without notice
Example: We had a *pop quiz* in our sociology class today.
Suggestion: You should always be prepared for a *pop quiz.*
Confirmation: Did you say you passed all of the *pop quizzes*?
Problem: I have to be on time to class in case there is a *pop quiz* at the beginning of class.

post (grade) v. to publish a list and display it in a public place
Example: The grades for the exams are *posted* on Dr. Graham's door.
Suggestion: You should see if the grades have been *posted* yet.
Confirmation: The assignments aren't *posted* yet, are they?
Problem: I can't get to campus to see if the grades are *posted*.

PowerPoint (presentation) n. a series of slides created on the computer, which can be viewed using a projector

Example: Most of the professors use *PowerPoint* presentations in class.
Suggestion: You could do a *PowerPoint* presentation for your project.
Confirmation: *A PowerPoint* presentation will fulfill the requirement, won't it?
Problem: I am not very happy with my *PowerPoint* presentation.

prerequisite n. a course required before a student is eligible to take a higher-level course

Example: This English class has two *prerequisites*.
Suggestion: You should check the *prerequisites* before seeing your advisor.
Surprise: You took the *prerequisites* last year?
Problem: I have to pass the *prerequisites* before I can register for the next class.

presentation n. a lecture, speech, or demonstration in front of the class

Example: Your *presentation* in our anthropology class was very interesting.
Suggestion: You could use more pictures in your *presentation*.
Surprise: You mean your *presentation* is fifty minutes long?
Problem: I need to get over my fear of public speaking before I give my *presentation*.

probation n. a period of time to improve grades

Example: Jane is on *probation* this term.
Suggestion: You should hire a tutor before you are put on *probation*.
Confirmation: Did you say you are on *probation*?
Problem: I have to pass this class, or I'll get put on *probation*.

professor n. a college or university teacher who ranks above an associate professor

Example: Dr. Baker is a *professor* of English.
Suggestion: Why don't you speak with your *professor* about the project?
Confirmation: The *professor's* office hours are posted, aren't they?
Problem: I need to speak to my *professor* before class on Friday.

program of study n. a list of the courses that a student must take to fulfill the requirements for graduation

Example: If you want to change your *program of study*, you must see your advisor.
Suggestion: Why don't you review your *program of study* in your catalog?
Confirmation: The *program of study* is a four-year plan, isn't it?
Problem: I need to become familiar with my *program of study*.

project n. an assignment that often involves the application of knowledge

Example: We can do the *project* by ourselves or in a group.
Suggestion: Why don't you and your study group do the *project* together?
Surprise: You did the *project* that everyone is talking about?
Problem: I have to present my *project* to the class.

quarter n. a school term that is usually ten to twelve weeks in length
Example: This *quarter* has gone by very quickly.
Suggestion: You could take fewer classes next *quarter*.
Surprise: You mean you have to finish your thesis this *quarter*?
Problem: I need to study harder next *quarter*.

quiz n. an evaluation that is usually shorter and worth fewer points than a test
Example: We have a *quiz* in our algebra class every week.
Suggestion: You should always be prepared for a *quiz*.
Confirmation: The *quiz* doesn't include last night's reading, does it?
Problem: We have a *quiz* in chemistry this week.

registrar n. a university official in charge of keeping records
Example: You need to see the *registrar* about your grade change.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would check with the *registrar* about your transcript.
Surprise: So you *did* file a change of address with the *registrar*.
Problem: The *registrar* is unavailable until next week.

registration n. the process for enrolling in courses at a college or university
Example: *Registration* always takes longer than I think it will.
Suggestion: You should meet with your advisor before *registration*.
Surprise: You mean that early *registration* is available for graduate students?
Problem: I can't get to *registration* before noon.

report n. a written or oral presentation of results, either of research or experimentation
Example: Ken gave an excellent *report* in our management class today.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would allow more time for my next *report*.
Surprise: So you *did* listen to Ken's *report*.
Problem: I have to do five oral *reports* for speech class.

research n. investigation or study
Example: Dr. Peterson is going to give a lecture about her *research* on cross-cultural interaction.
Suggestion: You could use my class for your *research*.
Confirmation: Your *research* is complete, isn't it?
Problem: I need more sources for my *research*.

research assistant n. a research position under the supervision of a faculty member
Example: The *research assistants* get to know the faculty better than the other graduate students do.
Suggestion: You could apply to be a *research assistant* next year.
Surprise: You mean Don's a *research assistant*?
Problem: I need to speak to the *research assistant* who works in the psychology lab.

research paper n. a written report based on research
Example: Use at least ten references for your *research papers*.
Suggestion: You had better go to the library soon if you want that book for your *research paper*.
Confirmation: We have to present our *research paper* to the class, don't we?
Problem: I can't get started on my *research paper*.

residence hall n. a dormitory on campus
Example: All freshmen have to live in a *residence hall*.
Suggestion: You could move to another *residence hall*.
Confirmation: You have a single room in a *residence hall*, right?
Problem: All of the *residence halls* are full.

resident advisor n. an advisor who lives in a dormitory in order to provide supervision and counseling for the students
Example: We call our *resident advisor* the "head resident."
Suggestion: Why don't you speak to the *resident advisor* about your problem?
Surprise: You live next door to the *resident advisor*?
Problem: I need to speak with the *resident advisor* regarding the desk in my room.

review session n. a study meeting to review material before a test, often led by the professor
Example: I'm on my way to a *review session* for my art appreciation class.
Suggestion: You could schedule a *review session* with your study group.
Surprise: The *review session* was productive?
Problem: I can't meet Thursday afternoon for the *review session*.

room and board n. fees for room rent and meals
Example: *Room and board* goes up every year.
Suggestion: You should plan to include the price of *room and board* in your budget.
Confirmation: Did you say your scholarship covers *room and board*?
Problem: I need to find a part-time job to pay for *room and board*.

roommate n. a person who shares a room or rooms
Example: I think Diane is looking for a *roommate*.
Suggestion: Why don't you and Diane get another *roommate*?
Surprise: You mean you're looking for another *roommate*?
Problem: I need a *roommate* to share my rent.

schedule n. a list of courses with days, times, and locations
Example: My *schedule* this semester allows me to work in the afternoons.
Suggestion: With your *schedule*, you could get a job at school.
Confirmation: Your *schedule* doesn't include evening classes, does it?
Problem: I can't fit that class into my *schedule*.

scholarship n. a grant awarded to a student
Example: Tracy got a *scholarship* to attend a special summer course abroad.
Suggestion: Why don't you apply for a *scholarship*?
Confirmation: There aren't any *scholarships* available for international students, are there?
Problem: I have to turn the application in tomorrow to be eligible for the *scholarship*.

section n. one of several options for the same course
Example: Everyone wants to take the *section* that Mrs. McNiel teaches.
Suggestion: You could ask Mrs. McNiel to let you into her *section*.
Surprise: You mean there are no *sections* open in the morning?
Problem: I can't get into that *section* because it is closed.

semester n. a school term that is usually fifteen to eighteen weeks in length
Example: When the *semester* is over, I am going to visit my family.
Suggestion: You could sign up for more classes this *semester*.
Confirmation: This *semester* ends before winter break, doesn't it?
Problem: I need to take eighteen credit hours next *semester*.

senior n. a fourth-year student
Example: Laura will be a *senior* next semester.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would take that class as a *senior*.
Surprise: You mean Dana is a *senior*?
Problem: I have to take five classes when I'm a *senior*.

short-essay test n. a test with questions that require a written response of one sentence to one paragraph in length
Example: I would rather take a *short-essay test* than an objective test.
Suggestion: You had better study your notes for Dr. Mitchell's *short-essay test*.
Surprise: You think a *short-essay test* is easier than an objective test?
Problem: I have three *short-essay tests* in that class.

shuttle n. a bus that has a short route around the campus area
Example: Carol has a car, but she still uses the campus *shuttle* most of the time.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would take the *shuttle* at night.
Confirmation: Did you say there's no *shuttle* on Sundays?
Problem: I need to leave early to catch the *shuttle*.

sign up (for a class) v. to enroll (in a class)
Example: Let's *sign up* for the same geology class.
Suggestion: You should *sign up* for Dr. Brown's music theory class.
Surprise: So you *did sign up* for the field trip.
Problem: I can't *sign up* for that class because it conflicts with my schedule.

skip class v. to be absent
Example: Nancy has been *skipping class* again.
Suggestion: If I were you, I wouldn't *skip class* this week.
Surprise: Ron *skipped class* yesterday?
Problem: Bill *skipped class* on the day of the test.

snack bar n. a small restaurant area where a limited menu is available
Example: We usually meet at the *snack bar* for a quick lunch.
Suggestion: You could meet me at the *snack bar*.
Surprise: So you *are* going to the *snack bar* after class.
Problem: I need to go to the *snack bar* between classes because I don't have a break for lunch.

social security number n. a nine-digit number that is often used for student identification, as well as for employment purposes
Example: What is your *social security number*?
Suggestion: You should memorize your *social security number*.
Confirmation: Your *social security number* is on your license, isn't it?
Problem: Anna doesn't have a *social security number.*

sophomore n. a second-year college student
Example: A full-time student is usually a *sophomore* by the third semester.
Suggestion: You had better complete your general education classes by the end of your *sophomore* year.
Surprise: You mean Bill is only a *sophomore*?
Problem: I can't take advanced psychology because I am only a *sophomore*.

sorority n. a social organization for female college students
Example: About a dozen *sororities* are on campus.
Suggestion: You should consider joining a *sorority*.
Surprise: So you *did* join a *sorority*.
Problem: *Sororities* require a lot of time.

spring break n. a short vacation in the middle of the spring semester
Example: Some of my friends are going to Florida for *spring break*.
Suggestion: Why don't you visit your family over *spring break*?
Confirmation: You got your research paper done over *spring break*, right?
Problem: I have to work during *spring break*.

stacks n. the area of the library where most of the books are shelved
Example: At a small college, the *stacks* are usually open to all of the students.
Suggestion: You should look in the *stacks* for that book.
Surprise: The librarian let you go up in the *stacks* to look for your own book?
Problem: I need to find a carrel in the *stacks*.

student n. one who attends a school
Example: State University has more than fifty-thousand *students* enrolled on the main campus.
Suggestion: If you tell them that you are a *student*, maybe you will get a discount.
Surprise: You mean you aren't a *student*?
Problem: I need to find five *students* to complete my study.

student I.D. number n. a number used for identification at a college or university, often a social security number
Example: Your social security number is your *student I.D. number.*
Suggestion: You should write your *student I.D. number* on all of your papers.
Confirmation: Pat has a *student I.D. number*, doesn't she?
Problem: I can't seem to remember my *student I.D. number*.

student services n. an administrative branch of a college or university that provides noninstructional support services for students
Example: I have to go over to *student services* to meet with a financial aid advisor.
Suggestion: You had better go to *student services* to check on your dorm application.
Confirmation: The *student services* office is open during registration, isn't it?
Problem: I have to go to the *student services* office before the end of the day.

student union n. a building on campus where students can relax
Example: There is a movie at the *student union* tonight.
Suggestion: You could meet Ken in the *student union* before the concert.
Surprise: You mean the *student union* is closed over the holidays?
Problem: The *student union* closes at 10:00 P.M.

studies n. research investigations
Example: Many *studies* have been conducted here at State University.
Suggestion: Why don't you speak with Dr. Mason about her *studies*?
Surprise: So Jane is beginning her *studies*?
Problem: I have to complete my *studies* by the end of the semester.

study v. to acquire knowledge or understanding of a subject
Example: I have to *study* if I want to get a good grade in this class.
Suggestion: Why don't you plan to *study* at my house this weekend?
Confirmation: You *studied* for that test, didn't you?
Problem: I need to allow more time to *study*.

study date n. a date in which the activity is studying
Example: Joe and Diane have *study dates* most of the time.
Suggestion: You could arrange a *study date* with Jack before the test.
Surprise: You mean you don't have a *study date* tonight?
Problem: I have to meet Jack at the library for our *study date*.

study lounge n. a quiet area of a dormitory where students can go to study
Example: Even the *study lounge* is noisy in this dorm.
Suggestion: Why don't you meet me in the *study lounge* this evening?
Confirmation: Did you say that the *study lounge* is quiet?
Problem: I can't concentrate in the *study lounge*.

subject n. an area of study
Example: Math is my favorite *subject*.
Suggestion: Why don't you ask Tracy for help with the *subjects* she tutors?
Confirmation: You can get tutoring in all of the *subjects* taught at the university, can't you?
Problem: I have to take a lot of classes in *subjects* that I don't really like.

summer school n. the summer sessions, which are usually June through August
Example: *Summer school* starts the second week of June this year.
Suggestion: Why don't you take the art appreciation course in *summer school*?
Surprise: You mean you've gone to *summer school* every summer?
Problem: I can't go to *summer school* this year.

T.A. n. an abbreviation for teaching assistant
Example: Laura has applied to be Dr. Graham's *T.A*.
Suggestion: You should see the *T.A.* if you have questions about the lecture.
Surprise: So Bill *did* apply to be a *T.A*.
Problem: I have to find Dr. Graham's *T.A*. before class tomorrow.

teaching assistant n. a graduate student whose teaching duties are supervised by a faculty member
Example: We have a *teaching assistant* for the discussion session of this class.
Suggestion: You had better speak with the *teaching assistant* before the next lab session.
Confirmation: Did you say you haven't spoken with the *teaching assistant*?
Problem: The *teaching assistant* is really difficult to understand.

tenure n. an academic rank that guarantees permanent status
Example: Professor Peterson has *tenure*, but Mr. Lewis doesn't.
Suggestion: Why don't you request the requirements for *tenure*?
Surprise: You mean Dr. Peterson has *tenure*?
Problem: Mr. Lewis will have to get his Ph.D. to qualify for *tenure*.

term n. a time period when school is in session, usually a quarter or a semester
Example: Dana needs two more *terms* to graduate.
Suggestion: Dana had better take statistics next *term*.
Confirmation: Nancy passed all of her classes last *term*, right?
Problem: I have to complete my dissertation in three *terms*.

test n. an evaluation that is usually longer and worth more points than a quiz, but shorter and worth fewer points than an exam

Example: You will have a *test* every week in this class.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would work with my study group before the *test*.
Surprise: You mean you forgot about the *test*?
Problem: I have to study for two *tests* next week.

textbook n. a book that is used for a course

Example: The *textbooks* can be purchased at the bookstore or ordered over the Internet.
Suggestion: You could purchase used *textbooks* for some of your classes.
Surprise: You mean you had to buy new *textbooks*?
Problem: I can't find good used *textbooks* anywhere.

thesis n. a written research report in partial fulfillment of a graduate degree

Example: Tracy isn't taking any courses this semester because she is writing her *thesis*.
Suggestion: You should get the handbook at the graduate school before starting your *thesis*.
Confirmation: Tracy isn't writing her *thesis* this semester, is she?
Problem: I need to allow at least one semester to write my *thesis*.

transcript n. a printed copy of a student's grades

Example: The admissions office requires two *transcripts* with every application.
Suggestion: Why don't you request an extra copy of your *transcript*?
Confirmation: You got your *transcript*, didn't you?
Problem: I have to have those *transcripts* by next Monday.

transfer v. to change schools

Example: It is better to *transfer* at the beginning of the third year.
Suggestion: If I were you, I would *transfer* as soon as possible.
Confirmation: Dana *transferred* to State University, right?
Problem: I can't *transfer* colleges because I would lose credits.

tuition n. fees for instruction at a school

Example: The *tuition* is different from school to school.
Suggestion: You should check the *tuition* before deciding on a college.
Surprise: *Tuition* at private colleges is more?
Problem: I need a scholarship to pay my *tuition*.

tuition hike n. an increase in the fees for instruction

Example: There is a *tuition* hike every year at State University.
Suggestion: You should sign the petition protesting the *tuition* hike.
Confirmation: Did you say you graduated before the *tuition* hike?
Problem: I can't afford another *tuition* hike.

turn in v. to submit an assignment
Example: Please *turn in* your homework before you leave.
Suggestion: You had better *turn in* your paper before the end of the day.
Surprise: You mean I could have *turned in* my paper tomorrow?
Problem: I have to *turn in* the paper by Friday or I will get an F.

tutor n. a private instructor, often another student
Example: I have to meet my *tutor* at the library.
Suggestion: Why don't you get a *tutor* for your accounting class?
Surprise: You mean Jack is your *tutor*?
Problem: I can't afford to hire a *tutor*.

tutoring n. private instruction
Example: Nancy needs some *tutoring* in this class.
Suggestion: You could earn extra money *tutoring* for math.
Surprise: So you *did* get the *tutoring* job.
Problem: *Tutoring* takes a lot of time.

undergrad n., adj. abbreviation for undergraduate
Example: I think that Dana is an *undergrad*.
Suggestion: You could still enroll for *undergrad* classes while you are waiting to hear from the graduate school admissions office.
Confirmation: You're an *undergrad*, right?
Problem: I need to apply for an *undergrad* scholarship.

undergraduate (student) n., adj. a student pursuing a bachelor's degree
Example: Some *undergraduates* require five years to complete a four-year program.
Suggestion: You should look at more than one *undergraduate* program.
Surprise: You mean you completed your *undergraduate* courses in three years?
Problem: I can't complete my *undergraduate* degree before we move.

upper-division (course) adj. advanced courses for third- and fourth-year students
Example: Most of the *upper-division* courses are numbered 400 or above.
Suggestion: Why don't you take an *upper-division* music class?
Surprise: You mean grammar is an *upper-division* course?
Problem: Dana needs to take an *upper-division* math class.

whiteboard n. the (white) writing surface in the front of the classroom
Example: Professor Jones always writes the discussion topics on the *whiteboard* at the beginning of class.
Suggestion: You had better sit in front if you want to be able to read the notes on the *whiteboard*.
Confirmation: We will have a *whiteboard* in the room, won't we?
Problem: The *whiteboard* is too small.

withdraw v. to leave school
Example: My roommate *withdrew* from school.
Suggestion: You should *withdraw* so that you won't have failing grades on your transcript.
Surprise: You mean your parents want you to *withdraw* from school?
Problem: I have to *withdraw* from school at the end of the semester.

work-study adj. a special program that allows study time when there is nothing to do on the job
Example: There are several *work-study* positions open in the finance office.
Suggestion: Dana should apply for the *work-study* program next semester.
Confirmation: Vicki's library job is a *work-study* position, isn't it?
Problem: The *work-study* students couldn't answer my questions.

Xerox (machine) n. a copy machine
Example: There is a long line at the *Xerox* machine.
Suggestion: You could use the *Xerox* machine in the library.
Surprise: You mean there are only three *Xerox* machines on campus?
Problem: I need to find a *Xerox* machine.

Preparing to take the TOEFL? Get the help you need from BARRON'S

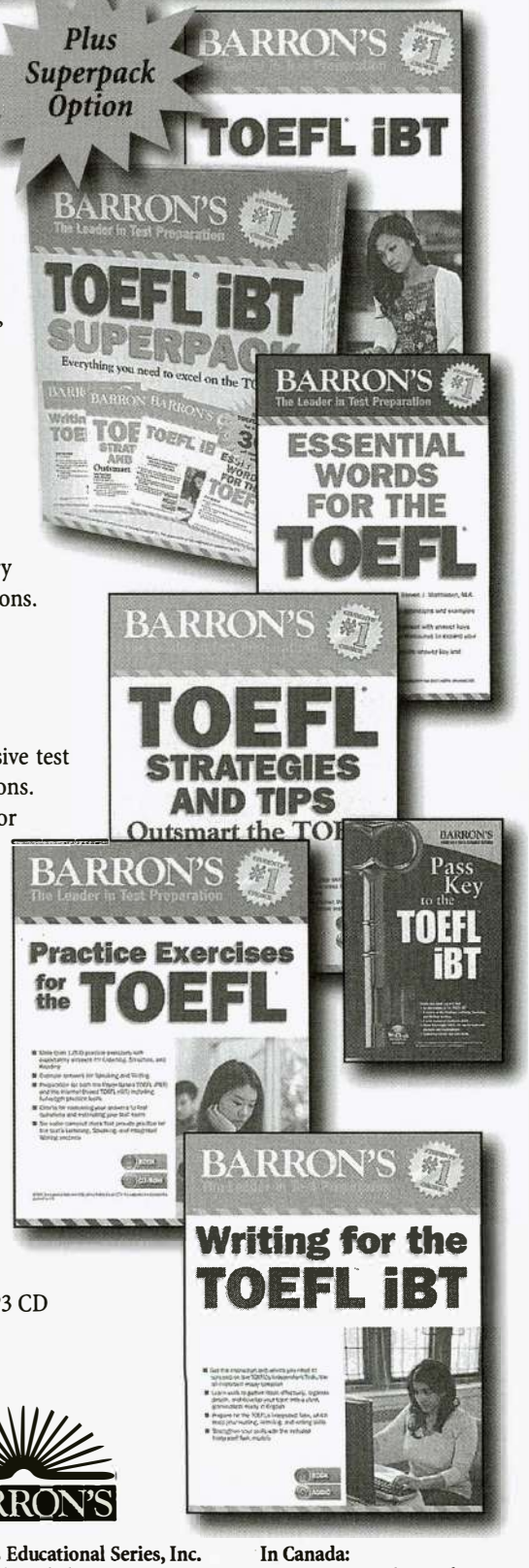
Barron's TOEFL iBT

Book with MP3 CD or Book with MP3 CD and CD-ROM
15th Edition

Barron's TOEFL iBT is available in options that include a book with MP3 CD or book with MP3 CD and CD ROM. The manual offers seven model TOEFL iBT tests with answer explanations and review of required academic and language skills; the CD-ROM simulates actual test-taking conditions and includes all seven model tests in the book as well as a bonus model test. The MP3 CD presents audio prompts for the Listening, Speaking, and Writing sections. Includes an online glossary with over 200 flash cards featuring campus vocabulary, example sentences, and audio pronunciation.

Book w/MP3 CD: ISBN 978-1-4380-7624-9, $34.99, *Can$41.99*
Book w/MP3 CD and CD-ROM: ISBN 978-1-4380-7625-6, $39.99, *Can$47.99*
TOEFL iBT Superpack, 3rd Ed.: ISBN 978-1-4380-7661-4, $69.99, *Can$83.99*

Plus Superpack Option



Essential Words for the TOEFL

6th Edition

Detailed advice for ESL students on expanding their English language vocabulary accompanies a list of approximately 500 need-to-know words with their definitions.

Book only: paper, ISBN 978-1-4380-0296-5, $11.99, *Can$13.99*

TOEFL Strategies and Tips

Outsmart the TOEFL, 2nd Edition w/MP3 CD

Detailed coaching helps ESL students succeed on the TOEFL with a comprehensive test prep study plan. Includes detailed strategies and exercises covering all test sections. Answer keys for all questions at the back of the book. Comes with an MP3 CD for more practice and review.

Paperback w/MP3 CD, ISBN 978-1-4380-7566-2, $24.99, *Can$29.99*

Pass Key to the TOEFL iBT

9th Edition w/MP3 Audio CD

This shorter version of Barron's full-size TOEFL iBT manual presents three model TOEFL iBTs, with answers explained or example answers. The enclosed MP3 audio CD present audio prompts for the Listening, Speaking, and Writing sections.

Book, paperback w/MP3 CD, ISBN 978-1-4380-7626-3, $18.99, *Can$22.99*

Practice Exercises for the TOEFL

8th Edition w/MP3 CD

More than 1,000 items with explanatory answers and example answers that prepare students for both the TOEFL ITP and the iBT TOEFL. The enclosed MP3 CD offers practice in listening comprehension, speaking, and integrated writing.

Paperback w/MP3 CD, ISBN 978-1-4380-7547-1, $34.99, *Can$39.99*

Writing for the TOEFL iBT

5th Edition w/MP3 CD

A three-step program designed to help students write like native speakers of English. Content will prepare students for the TOEFL's Independent Task, the all-important essay question, and the Integrated Task, which combines reading, listening, and writing skills.

Book, paperback w/MP3 CD, ISBN 978-1-4380-7456-6, $21.99, *Can$24.99*

Available at your local book store or
visit **www.barronseduc.com**

BARRON'S

Barron's Educational Series, Inc.
250 Wireless Blvd.
Hauppauge, NY 11788
Order toll-free: 1-800-645-3476

In Canada:
Georgetown Book Warehouse
34 Armstrong Ave.
Georgetown, Ontario L7G 4R9
Canadian orders: 1-800-247-7160

Prices subject to change without notice.

(#185) 3/16

Here's more expert help for students of English as a Second Language



501 English Verbs with CD-ROM, 3rd Ed.

Verbs are alphabetically arranged in table form, one per page, and conjugated in all tenses and forms. A bonus CD-ROM offers practice exercises in verb conjugation and a concise grammar review.

Paperback, ISBN 978-1-4380-7302-6, $18.99, *Can$21.99*

Handbook of Commonly Used American Idioms, 5th Ed.

This pocket-size dictionary defines approximately 2,500 American-English idiomatic words and expressions.

Paperback, ISBN 978-1-4380-0167-8, $8.99, *Can$9.99*

The Ultimate Phrasal Verb Book, 2nd Ed.

ESL and EFL students will find 400 common phrasal verbs and the ways they are used in everyday American English. Phrasal verbs are word groups that include a verb combined with a preposition or an adverb—for instance, "comedown," "breakup," and "showoff," among countless others.

Paperback, ISBN 978-0-7641-4120-1, $14.99, *Can$17.99*

Basic American Grammar and Usage
An ESL/EFL Handbook

This book explains different kinds of sentences—affirmative, negative, and interrogative, and follows up with focus on different parts of speech, describing their uses in verbal and written communication.

Paperback, ISBN 978-0-7641-3358-9, $16.99, *Can$19.99*

Painless English for Speakers of Other Languages, 2nd Ed.

This user-friendly book is especially useful for middle school and high school students in families where English is not the first language. A step-by-step approach covers all parts of speech, and is followed by advice for improving vocabulary, spelling, and American English pronunciation.

Paperback, ISBN 978-1-4380-0002-2, $9.99, *Can$11.50*

English for Foreign Language Speakers the Easy Way

Following a diagnostic pretest, the author guides students through the details of reading, writing, developing vocabulary and grammar, listening, speaking, and correct pronunciation of American style English. She devotes separate chapters to each of the parts of speech, as well as to sentence structure, punctuation, capitalization, word roots, homonyms and synonyms, idioms, rules for academic writing in English, and more.

Paperback, ISBN 978-0-7641-3736-5, $18.99, *Can$21.99*

The Ins and Outs of Prepositions, 2nd Ed.

Unlike most languages—which have relatively few prepositions to serve many different communication needs—English has dozens of them. But very few English prepositions follow a clear, consistent set of rules. This book offers practical guidelines for correct usage.

Paperback, ISBN 978-0-7641-4728-9, $12.99, *Can$14.99*

A Dictionary of American Idioms, 5th Ed.

More than 8,000 American idiomatic words and phrases are presented with definitions and sample sentences. Especially useful for ESL students, this book explains and clarifies many similes and metaphors that newcomers to American English find mystifying.

Paperback, ISBN 978-1-4380-0157-9, $16.99, *Can$19.50*

Prices subject to change without notice.

Barron's Educational Series, Inc.
250 Wireless Boulevard
Hauppauge, NY 11788
Order toll-free: 1-800-645-3476

In Canada:
Georgetown Book Warehouse
34 Armstrong Avenue
Georgetown, Ontario L7G 4R9
Canadian orders: 1-800-247-7160

Available at your local book store or visit **www.barronseduc.com**

BARRON'S BOOKS AND CDs TO HELP YOU SUCCEED IN ESL EXAMS

Barron's ESL Guide to American Business English

Focused to fit the needs of ESL students. Paperback handbook describes a variety of business writings and sample correspondence. Review section covers the basics of English grammar.

ISBN 978-0-7641-0594-4, $18.99, *Can$22.99*

The Ins and Outs of Prepositions, 2nd Edition

Written for ESL students, this book examines more than 60 prepositions and presents guidelines for the many different, sometimes tricky ways they are used in English.

ISBN 978-0-7641-4728-9, $12.99, *Can$14.99*

American Accent Training with 6 Audio CDs, 3rd Edition

This combination book/audio CD package provides innovative instruction for students and business people with pronunciation exercises covering all vowel sounds, consonants, blends, and diphthongs. Also includes nationality guides for 10 languages: Chinese, Japanese, Indian, Spanish, French, German, Russian, Korean, Arabic, and the U.S. Southern accent.

ISBN 978-1-4380-7165-7, $39.99, *Can$45.99*

American Accent Training: Grammar with 2 Audio CDs

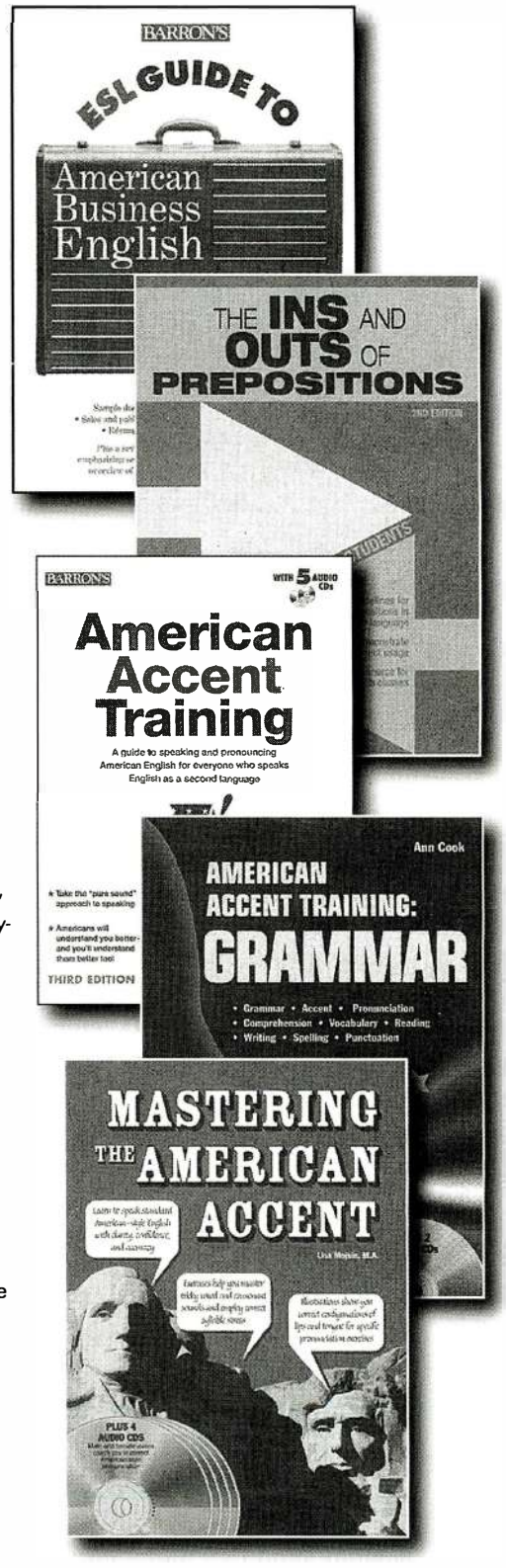
This book and audio compact disc program instructs beginning, intermediate, and advanced students of English as a second language in the elements of grammar, presenting a grammar review that emphasizes speech and correct pronunciation. The compact discs combine grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, reading, writing, comprehension, and the American accent into a simple, step-by-step learning process.

ISBN 978-0-7641-9651-5, $24.99, *Can$29.99*

Mastering The American Accent

This combination book and audio instructional program is designed to diminish the accents of men and women who speak English as their second language. Specific exercises concentrate on vowel sounds, problematic consonants such as V, W, B, TH, and the American R, employ correct syllable stress, link words for smoother speech flow, use common word contractions such as won't instead of will not, and more. Additional topics that often confuse ESL students are also discussed and explained. Enclosed with the book are four compact discs that use male and female voices to coach correct American-style pronunciation.

ISBN 978-0-7641-9582-2, $29.99, *Can$35.99*



Barron's Educational Series, Inc.
250 Wireless Blvd.
Hauppauge, NY 11788
Order toll-free: 1-800-645-3476

In Canada:
Georgetown Book Warehouse
34 Armstrong Ave.
Georgetown, Ont. L7G 4R9
Canadian orders: 1-800-247-7160

Prices subject to change without notice.

Available at your local book store
or visit **www.barronseduc.com**

BARRON'S

(#6a) R11/13

The following documentation applies if you purchased
TOEFL® iBT, 15th Edition with CD-ROM.
Please disregard this information if your version does not contain the CD-ROM.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Windows® PC
2.33GHz or faster x86-compatible processor, or Intel Atom™ 1.6GHz or faster processor for netbook class devices
Microsoft® Windows Server 2008, Windows 7, Windows 8.1 Classic or Windows 10
512MB of RAM (1GB recommended)
Speakers and microphone, or an integrated headset with mic
Plug-Ins: Latest versions of Adobe Air (Included on the CD-ROM)

Mac® OS
Intel® Core™ Duo 1.83GHz or faster processor
Mac OS X v10.7, and above
512MB of RAM (1GB recommended)
Speakers and microphone, or an integrated headset with mic
Plug-Ins: Latest versions of Adobe Air (Included on the CD-ROM)

***You need a microphone or headset with a microphone in order to use the recording function in the Speaking sections of the Model Tests.**

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

First Time Users

Windows® PC:
Insert the CD-ROM. AutoPlay may start the install process automatically. If it does start automatically, follow the on screen directions. If it doesn't start automatically, follow these steps:
1. Double-click My Computer.
2. Double-click your CD-ROM drive (TOEFL).
3. Inside the Windows folder, double-click TOEFL.exe to begin the install process and follow the on screen directions by clicking Install, and Continue.
4. After the installation has finished, the program will start automatically.
5. Remove the CD-ROM from your computer and keep it in a safe place. It is no longer required.

Mac®:
Insert the CD-ROM.
1. Double-click the CD-ROM on the desktop to open it in a window.
2. Inside the Mac OS folder, double-click the Adobe Air Installer to install Adobe Air.
3. Double-click TOEFL.air to begin the install and follow the on screen directions by clicking Install, and Continue.
4. Enter your Administrator password if asked to do so.
5. After installation has finished, the program will start automatically.
6. Remove the CD-ROM from your computer and keep it in a safe place. It is no longer required.

Second Time/Repeat Users
The program is already installed on your computer. There is no need to use the CD-ROM.

Windows® PC:
- Double-click the TOEFL desktop icon to start the program.
- If there is not a desktop icon, double-click My Computer > Local Disk (C:) > Program Files > TOEFL.exe.

Mac®:
- Open a Finder window and navigate/browse to Macintosh HD > Applications > TOEFL.
- Double-click TOEFL to start the program.

BARRON'S LICENSING AGREEMENT/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

1. **Ownership of Rights.** The CD-ROM in the plastic sleeve was created for Barron's Educational Series, Inc., and the editorial contents therein remain the intellectual property of Barron's. Users may not reproduce the CD-ROM, authorize or permit its reproduction, transmit it, or permit any portion thereof to be transmitted for any purpose whatsoever.
2. **License.** Barron's hereby grants to the consumer of this product the limited license to use same solely for personal use. Any other use shall be in violation of Barron's rights to the aforesaid intellectual property and in violation of Barron's copyright interest in such disks.
3. **Limited Warranty: Disclaimer of Implied Warranties.** If the CD-ROM fails to function in a satisfactory manner, Barron's sole liability to any purchaser or user shall be limited to refunding the price paid for same by said purchaser or user. Barron's makes no other warranties, express or implied, with respect to the disk. Barron's specifically disclaims any warranty of fitness for a particular purpose or of merchantability.
4. **Consequential Damages.** Barron's shall not be liable under any circumstances for indirect, incidental, special, or consequential damages resulting from the purchase or use of the CD-ROM.

Book/Audio/CD-ROM Package

The audio for the quizzes and activities in Chapters 2 and 3 is provided on the enclosed two MP3 CDs. References to CD and Track Numbers appear in those chapters.

The CD-ROM contains computer simulations for the 7 Model Tests that appear in the book, including audio prompts for the Listening, Speaking, and Writing Sections of the Model Tests and visuals. The CD-ROM also includes an additional bonus test. Instructions for using the CD-ROM appear on the last page of the book.

Labeling for Tracks

CD 1

Track 1	Introduction
Track 2	Review Listening Questions 1–4
Track 3	Review Listening Questions 5–10
Track 4	Quiz Listening
Track 5	Review Speaking Question 1 and Example Answer
Track 6	Review Speaking Question 2 and Example Answer
Track 7	Review Speaking Question 3 and Example Answer
Track 8	Review Speaking Question 4 and Example Answer
Track 9	Review Speaking Question 5 and Example Answer
Track 10	Review Speaking Question 6 and Example Answer
Track 11	Quiz Speaking
Track 12	Quiz Speaking Example Answers
Track 13	Review Writing Question 1
Track 14	Quiz Writing
Track 15	Activity 2 Surprise
Track 16	Activity 3 Surprise
Track 17	Activity 4 Surprise
Track 18	Activity 5 Confirmation
Track 19	Activity 6 Confirmation
Track 20	Activity 7 Suggestions
Track 21	Activity 8 Listening Task 1
Track 22	Activity 9 Speaking Task 3
Track 23	Activity 10 Speaking Task 5
Track 24	Activity 12 Topics
Track 25	Activity 13 Purpose
Track 26	Activity 17 Cues
Track 27	Activity 18 Repetition
Track 28	Activity 19 Abbreviations
Track 29	Activity 20 Relationships
Track 30	Activity 22 Phrases
Track 31	Activity 23 Explanations
Track 32	Activity 28 Citations
Track 33	Activity 30 Sources
Track 34	Activity 31 Major Points
Track 35	Activity 33 Topic Sentences
Track 36	Activity 34 Major Points
Track 37	Activity 35 Minor Points
Track 38	Activity 36 Organization
Track 39	Activity 37 Accuracy
Track 40	Activity 38 Emphasis
Track 41	Activity 39 Objectivity
Track 42	Activity 45 Speaking Task 3
Track 43	Activity 46 Speaking Task 4
Track 44	Activity 47 Writing Task 1
Track 45	Activity 47 Example Responses
Track 46	Activity 48 Speaking Task 3
Track 47	Activity 48 Speaking Task 4
Track 48	Activity 48 Writing Task 1
Track 49	Activity 49 Speaking Task 3
Track 50	Activity 49 Speaking Task 4
Track 51	Activity 49 Writing Task 1
Track 52	Activity 50 Speaking Task 3
Track 53	Activity 50 Speaking Task 4
Track 54	Activity 50 Writing Task 1

CD 2

Track 1	Model Test 1 Listening
Track 2	Model Test 1 Speaking
Track 3	Model Test 1 Writing
Track 4	Model Test 1 Example Answers
Track 5	Model Test 2 Listening
Track 6	Model Test 2 Speaking
Track 7	Model Test 2 Writing
Track 8	Model Test 2 Example Answers
Track 9	Model Test 3 Listening
Track 10	Model Test 3 Speaking
Track 11	Model Test 3 Writing
Track 12	Model Test 3 Example Answers
Track 13	Model Test 4 Listening
Track 14	Model Test 4 Speaking
Track 15	Model Test 4 Writing
Track 16	Model Test 4 Example Answers
Track 17	Model Test 5 Listening
Track 18	Model Test 5 Speaking
Track 19	Model Test 5 Writing
Track 20	Model Test 5 Example Answers
Track 21	Model Test 6 Listening
Track 22	Model Test 6 Speaking
Track 23	Model Test 6 Writing
Track 24	Model Test 6 Example Answers
Track 25	Model Test 7 Listening
Track 26	Model Test 7 Speaking
Track 27	Model Test 7 Writing
Track 28	Model Test 7 Example Answers
Track 29	Model Test Closing Message

SCORE HIGHER with BARRON'S

For more than 75 years, BARRON'S experts have been helping students surpass their expectations on standardized tests. This book will help you achieve the score you want on the TOEFL.

BOOK

- ✔ General orientation to the TOEFL iBT provides the latest information about the test, including a review of the major question types for each section of the exam
- ✔ A review of required academic skills, including note taking, paraphrasing, summarizing, and synthesizing
- ✔ A completely updated study section for success in synthesis for the integrated Speaking and Writing tasks
- ✔ Seven full-length model tests in the book simulating the actual tests

AUDIO

- ✔ Two MP3 CDs with audio prompts for all audio activities and model tests

CD-ROM

- ✔ Includes computerized versions of the seven tests in the book, plus a bonus test

ONLINE

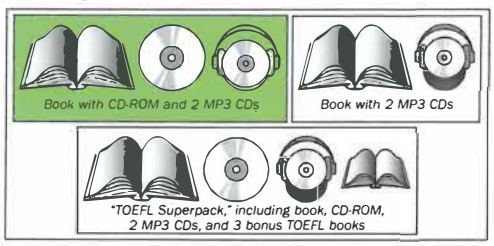
- ✔ Free access to an online site with more than 200 flash cards to practice and improve pronunciation of campus vocabulary

BARRON'S GIVES YOU THE ANSWERS!

Includes evaluation charts with estimates of your scores for the model tests and checklists for scoring the Speaking and Writing sections

Scan to view a video message from the author

Barron's TOEFL iBT products are available in the following combinations:



BARRON'S STUDYGREEN.
- Printed on partially recycled paper
- Fully recyclable

ISBN: 978-1-4380-7625-6
EAN 9 781438 076256 53999 >
$39.99 Canada $47.99
www.barronseduc.com
PRINTED IN THE USA